









The 2021/22 edition of the *South Africa Yearbook* (SAYB) coincides with a time of renewed hope and restoration in our country, as we gradually recover from the impact of the Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) pandemic that has dealt a harsh blow to our already ailing economy.

Although government had moved swiftly to deal with the pandemic by safeguarding lives and livelihoods, limited economic activity during the national lockdown resulted in job losses and increased poverty.

COVID-19 has hampered our efforts to tackle the triple challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment through higher rates of economic growth, the creation of more jobs and the provision of better services to the people of South Africa.

As part of our economic recovery process, the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan primarily focuses on growing the economy, promoting foreign investment and creating much-needed jobs.

Infrastructure development is one of the ways identified as crucial to the growth of the economy and creation of jobs. Substantial funds have been allocated for catalytic infrastructure projects over the next few years. This will, among others, support the upgrading of roads, bridges, water and sewer, transport, schools, hospitals and clinics.

In addition to fighting the pandemic, government has also been waging an intensive and sustained war against the 'second pandemic', gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), which is destroying the fabric of our society.

We have since unveiled legislation that deals harshly with perpetrators of GBVF – the Criminal and Related Matters Amendment Act, 2021 (Act 12 of 2021), Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2021 (Act 13 of 2021) and Domestic Violence Amendment Act, 2021 (Act 14 of 2021).

Our fight against the scourge of corruption, which undermines the gains of our democracy, is gaining momentum. Government is doing all in its power to ensure that perpetrators of corruption and related malfeasance are held accountable and face the full might of the law. This intervention will ensure that South Africans have confidence in public institutions and promote a capable state.

Through ongoing support, government has enabled small businesses to recover from the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic. The Employment Tax Incentive encourages employers to hire more young and less experienced work seekers. Other important interventions include the Presidential Employment Stimulus, which aims is to create jobs and strengthen livelihoods, and the

Social Relief of Distress (SRD) Grant, which provides temporary assistance to unemployed persons. The SRD Grant has been extended until the end of March 2023.

To create a conducive environment and encourage businesses to operate in South Africa, government has created a dedicated red tape team in The Presidency.

The team will identify priority reforms for the year ahead, including mechanisms to ensure government departments pay suppliers within the required 30 days. It will also support current initiatives to simplify processes relating to property registration, cross-border trade and construction permits.

South Africa remains committed to developing the African economy through the African Continental Free Trade Area, which promotes investment and tourism within the continent, accelerates industrialisation, and drives green growth and low-carbon development.

To address migration issues orderly, government has formulated the National Labour Migration Policy that will provide a framework and legal basis to regulate the extent to which employers can hire foreign nationals while also protecting the rights of migrants.

The chapters of the SAYB provide more information on these and other government programmes, plans and projects.

Cyril Kamaphose

Mr Cyril M. Ramaphosa
President of the Republic of South Africa
October 2022

South Africa Yearbook (SAYB) 2021/22 Twenty-ninth (29th) edition (Originally published as South Africa Official Yearbook)

Compiled, edited and published by:

Government Communications (GCIS) Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000 Website: www.gcis.gov.za

Editor: Miriam Mokoena

Assistant editors: Malphia Honwane and Elias Tibane

Editorial support: Dimpho Mogale and Lindokuhle Mabena

Picture coordinator: Elizabeth Sibiya

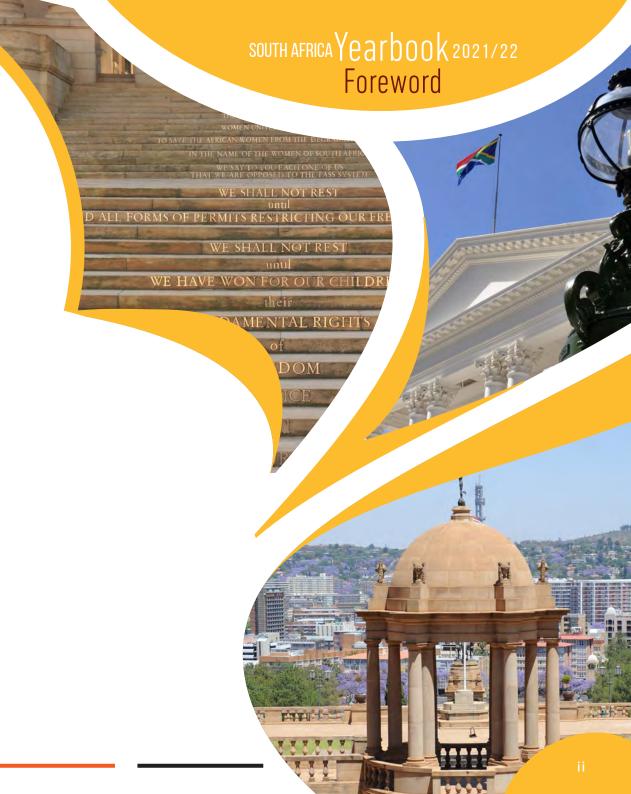
Images supplied by: GCIS

Design and layout: Moipone Mampane

ISBN: 978-0-621-50083-7

The SAYB is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the SAYB or more detailed specific information, should contact the responsible government institution. Additional information is also available on *Government Online (www.gov.za)*.

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available by November 2022.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Land and its people

Land and its people

South Africa occupies the most southern tip of Africa with its long coastline stretching more than 3 000 kilometres (km), from the desert border with Namibia on the Atlantic coast southwards around the tip of Africa and then north to the border of subtropical Mozambique on the Indian Ocean.

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, about 860 bird species, and 8 000 plant species. The annual sardine run is the biggest migration on the planet.

South Africa comprises nine world heritage sites and is divided into eight biomes.

The heritage sites are:

- Fossil Hominid Sites of South Africa (i.e. Cradle of Humankind, Taung Skull Fossil Site and Makapan Valley)
- · Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape
- Robben Island
- · Cape Floral Region Protected Areas
- · iSimangaliso Wetland Park
- · Vredefort Dome
- uKhahlamba / Drakensberg Park
- ‡Khomani Cultural Landscape.

The hinmes are:

- Grassland
- Savanna
- Succulent Karoo
- Nama Karoo
- Forest
- Fynbos
- Desert
- Thicket.

 The country is a

The country is considered to be the cradle of humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth.

The land

Stretching latitudinally from 22°S to 35°S and longitudinally from 17°E to 33°E, South Africa's surface area covers 1 219 602 square km (km2).

Physical features range from bushveld, grasslands, forests, deserts and majestic mountain peaks, to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

The country shares common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Eswatini, while the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho is landlocked by South African territory in the south-east.

The Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947, lie some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town.

The oceans and coastline

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for significant differences in climate and vegetation, as well as differences in marine life.

Owing to the cold waters of the west coast being much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast. Saldanha Bay on the west coast is the only ideal natural harbour.

Rivers and lakes

None of the country's rivers are commercially navigable and most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year.

South Africa has no significant natural lakes. Artificial lakes are used mostly for crop irrigation. The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. Rising in the Drakensberg Mountains, it traverses through the Lesotho Highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern Cape and the Free State before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean forming the border with Namibia.

Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and Molopo.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast.

Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 metres (m) in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised – the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climate

A subtropical location, moderated by ocean on three sides of the country and the altitude of the interior plateau, account for the warm temperate conditions. South Africa is a relatively dry country, with an average annual rainfall of about 500 millimetres (mm). While the Western Cape gets most of its rainfall in winter, the rest of the country

is generally a summer-rainfall region. Temperatures in South Africa tend to be lower than in other countries at similar latitudes, owing mainly to greater elevation above sea level. On the interior plateau, the altitude – Johannesburg lies at 1 694 m – keeps the average summer temperatures below 30°C. In winter, for the same reason, night-time temperatures can drop to freezing point or lower in some places. South Africa's coastal regions are therefore relatively warm in winter.

The hottest place in South Africa is Letaba in Limpopo, with a mean annual temperature of 23.7°C and an average annual maximum temperature of 30.7°C. The coldest place is Buffelsfontein near Molteno in the Eastern Cape, with a mean annual temperature of 11.5°C and an average annual minimum temperature of 2.9°C.

The wettest place is Matiwa in Limpopo with an average annual rainfall of 2004 mm (calculated over a 60-year period). The driest place in the country is Alexander Bay in the Northern Cape, with an average annual rainfall of only 46 mm and the windiest place is Cape Point in the Western Cape, which experiences only 2% of all hours in the year with calm conditions. The average wind speed is 6.9 m/s with 42.1% of the wind speeds higher than 8 m/s.

City	Summer		Winter	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Bloemfontein	31	15	18	-2
Cape Town	26	16	18	7
Durban	28	21	23	11
East London	26	18	21	10
George	25	16	19	8
Johannesburg	26	15	17	4
Kimberley	33	17	19	2
Mthatha	27	17	21	5
Musina	34	22	25	8
Mbombela	28	18	22	7
Pietermaritzburg	28	19	23	6
Polokwane	28	17	21	5
Gqeberha	26	18	20	8
Pretoria	29	18	20	5
Richards Bay	29	21	23	12
Skukuza	33	21	26	6
Thohoyandou	30	20	23	10
Upington	36	20	21	4

The people

Life expectancy at birth for 2022 is estimated at 60,0 years for males and 65,6 years for females. The infant mortality rate for 2022 is estimated at 24,3 per 1 000 live births. The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,9% among the South African population.

The total number of people living with HIV (PLWHIV) is estimated at approximately 8,45 million in 2022. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 19,6% of the population is HIV positive. There is a reduction in international migration, which is indicative of the COVID-19 travel restrictions and subsequent impact on migratory patterns since March 2020

Migration is an important demographic process, as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population (and so the country's population structure). For the period 2021–2026, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 443 978 and 460 489 respectively.

Gauteng still comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 16,10 million people (26,6%) living in this province. KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with an estimated 11,54 million people (19,0%) living in this province. With a population of approximately 1,31 million people (2,2%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

About 28,07% of the population is aged younger than 15 years (17,01 million) and approximately 9,2% (5,59 million) is 60 years or older. The provinces reflecting the highest percentage of children younger than 15 within its structure are Limpopo (33,6%) and Eastern Cape (32,7%). The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 years and older in South Africa is increasing over time and as such policies and programmes to care for the needs of this growing population should be prioritised.

Languages

Besides the official languages, scores of others – African, European, Asian and more – are spoken in South Africa, as the country lies at the crossroads of southern Africa. Other languages spoken in the country and mentioned in the Constitution are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, sign language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. There are also a few indigenous creoles and pidgins.

English is generally understood across the country, being the language of business, politics and the media, and the country's lingua franca. But it only ranks fourth out of 11 as a home language.

South Africa's linguistic diversity means that all 11 languages have had a profound effect on one another. South African English, for example, is littered with words and phrases from Afrikaans, isiZulu, Nama and other African languages.

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, isiZulu is the most common home language spoken by 24.6% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17%), Afrikaans (12.1%), Sepedi (9.5%), Setswana (8.8%), and English (8.3%), Sesotho (8%), Xitsonga (4.2%), Siswati (2.6%), Tshivenda (2.4%) and isiNdebele (1.6%).

In terms of the Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012), and as part of promoting social cohesion and nation-building, every government department, public entity and enterprise is expected to establish a language unit and adopt a language policy.

Religion

South Africa is a secular democracy with freedom of religion. Many religions are represented in the ethnic and regional diversity of the population. They include Christianity, Islam, Traditional African religion, Hinduism, Buddhism, Bahaism, Judaism, Atheism and Agnosticism.

The provinces

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, at 168 966 km2, is South Africa's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13.9% of the total land area.

The province has a population of more than 6.6 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

It is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the Wild Coast. The region has remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

Various floral habitats meet in the province, ranging from tropical forests in the north to the more temperate woods of the south. The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including Rhodes University, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

It has airports in Bhisho, East London, Mthatha and Gqeberha. It also has two major harbours in East London and Gqeberha respectively.

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho
Principal languages:

IsiXhosa 82.7% Afrikaans 10.3% English 3.9%





Population: 6 676 691
Percentage share of the total population: 11.0%

Area: 168 966 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Agriculture, fisheries and forestry

The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Makhanda area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa.

An olive nursery developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare forms a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape. The coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate

climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west, which makes it particularly suitable for forestry.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

Industry

There are two industrial development zones: the West Bank in East London and Coega, near Gqeberha, which includes the deepwater Port of Ngqura.

The metropolitan economies of Gqeberha and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important being automotive manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's motor industry. With its ability to link throughout the economy, government has identified the automotive industry as a key growth sector. It already exhibited significant growth under the Motor Industry Development Programme.

Other important sectors include renewables and green industries, forestry and timber processessing, pharmaceuticals, plastics and chemicals, capital goods and tourism.

Free State

According to the mid-year population estimates of 2022, there were over 2.9 million people in the Free State on about 129 825 km2 of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa. The Free State has wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns.

It lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

Mangaung, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, has an established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure. With Bloemfontein being South Africa's judicial capital, the province houses the Supreme Court of Appeal. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem and the charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other tourist attractions include the Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State. The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is South Africa's seventh World Heritage Site.

Aariculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km2 and natural veld and grazing 87 000 km2 of the province. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural

income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Free State

Capital: BloemfonteinPrincipal languages:Sesotho71.9%Afrikaans10.9%IsiXhosa5.7%Population: 2 921 611





Percentage share of the total population: 4.8%

Area: 129 825 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Mining

The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone. The De Bron-Merriespruit Gold Project and the Bloemhoek Gold Project are included as potential development projects in the scope of work of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission.

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

The Free State's gold reef of more than 400 km stretches across the province from Gauteng. South Africa's largest gold-mining complex is Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km2.

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg. The province also produces high quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

Manufacturing and industry

The Maluti-a-Phofung Special Economic Zone is the Free State's share of the logistics and industrial corridor. The Vehicle Distribution Centre was established in partnership with the German Bremen Logistics Group, which committed R60 million towards this project. The Harrismith Food Processing Park forms part of the broader development initiative.

The green economic solar zone in the Xhariep district was expected to result in the establishment of the Xhariep Solar Park, harnessing the solar radiation in the southern part of the Free State.

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme forms part of Eskom's Capital Expansion programme. This energy infrastructure project is located on the border of the Phumelela and Maluti-a-Phofung Local Municipalities in the Free State and eMnambithi Local Municipality and the uThukela District Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal.

Sasol South Africa, the largest producer of synthetic fuels on the sub-continent, remains a key role-player in the Free State economy.

Its investment in its Sasolburg operations is evident from the Wax Expansion project, the Ethylene Purification Unit 5, the Gas Engine Power Plant and Clean Fuels 2. The Omnia Nitric Acid complex, located within the Sasol Industrial Complex, includes a nitric acid plant, an ammonium nitrate plant, a porous ammonium nitrate plant, a fleet of 145 specialised ammonia rail tankers and other ancillary facilities.

Gauteng

The mid-year population estimates of 2022 show that Gauteng remains the most populous province — with approximately 16.9 million people (26.3%). Gauteng contributes 33.9% to South Africa's gross domestic product and is also one of the biggest contributors to the economy of the continent.

Gauteng accounts for the bulk of all employees' remuneration in the country, at a whopping 47.7%, and is responsible for 50.4% of all company turnover in South Africa. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

It is the business heart of South Africa, but it is also the shopping mecca of Africa, with tourists from the rest of the continent citing shopping as their reason for visiting the province.

The population of more than 15 million people has the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg. South of Johannesburg lies Soweto, the most populous urban residential area in the country, with a population of more than a million.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies South Africa's administrative capital, Pretoria. The magnificent Union Buildings, which overlook the city from Meintjieskop, represent the official seat of the South African Government and house the offices of the country's President.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and Ga-Rankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi lie to the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville.

Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspruit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg.

The province also has several other tertiary education institutions such as universities of technology and further education and training colleges. Gauteng is also home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products. All major gold and diamond mining houses have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers. Although gold-mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Gauteng dominates the South African economy in every major sector except agriculture, mining and quarrying. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng's total income and 31% of export earnings.

Technology

Gauteng

Capital: JohannesburgPrincipal languages:IsiZulu23.0%Afrikaans10.1%English11.3%Population:16 098 571





Percentage share of the total population: 26.6%

Area: 18 178 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

More than 60% of South Africa's research and development takes place in Gauteng.

The CSIR is one of South Africa's leading science and technology research, development and implementation centres. Located in Pretoria, the CSIR's research and development areas include biosciences; the built environment; information and communication; materials science and manufacturing; natural resources and the environment; mineral resources; space technology; nanotechnology and synthetic biology.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

Industry and agriculture

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle." The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three sub regional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. It includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast, stretching from Port Edward in the south to Mozambigue in the north.

The Drakensberg mountain range stretches the entire length of KwaZulu-Natal's western boundary. The Drakensberg forms the boundary between South Africa and the mountain kingdom of Lesotho, and offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

It provided the backdrop for the films Zulu (1964) and Yesterday (2004) and the setting for Alan Paton's novel Cry, the Beloved Country, and is the inspiration for a million picture postcards.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare sweep of basalt summits and buttresses; this section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate. The Midlands area is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Eswatini to the edge of the

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban, or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several nature reserves, including the Royal Natal National Park. Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

Tertiary institutions of learning in the province include the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Industry and agriculture

KwaZulu-Natal has a diverse industrial sector, with major industries having developed around the port of Durban.

Major industries in the province are agriculture, forestry, aluminium, petro-chemicals, automotive manufacturing, steel production, plastics and packaging, paper and board manufacturing, and a range of industries associated with imports and exports though the major ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg Principal languages: IsiZulu 82.5%

Afrikaans 1.0% 12.5% English

Population: 11 538 325

Percentage share of the total population: 19.0%

Area: 94 361 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

Limpopo

South Africa's northernmost province shares borders with Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, natural beauty and historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa: Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range: Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, which is well-known for its majestic baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi are Limpopo's major mining centres, while the town of Tzaneen in the picturesque Magoebaskloof is known for its tea plantations, forestry products and tropical fruit.

The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. Natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown.

Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of the Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950 AD to 1200 AD.

Agriculture

Limpopo produces a wide range of agricultural products. The area is a potato belt and known for its superior quality potatoes for high-end markets. It also produces 75% of the country's mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas and litchis; 60% of its avocados and two thirds of its tomatoes.

Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, tobacco, sunflower, maize, wheat and grapes. In addition, more than 170 plantations produce timber.

Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game

ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat) – a popular South African delicacy.

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane Principal languages: Sepedi 56.0% Tshivenda 17.1% 16.6% Xitsonga





Population: 5 941 439

Percentage share of the total population: 9.8%

Area: 125 754 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province's economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. Metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay.

Other reserves include antimony, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

The Medupi Power Station, a dry-cooled, coal-fired power station. is under construction near Lephalale. Medupi is a Sepedi word, which means "gentle rain". The station is expected to create around 40 000 job opportunities.

Mpumalanga

Spectacular scenic beauty and an abundance of wildlife make the province one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

Mpumalanga, which means "Place Where the Sun Rises", is home to more than four million people. The principle languages are Siswati and isiZulu. With a surface area of only 76 495 km2, it is the secondsmallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Eswatini in the east, and Gauteng in the west, the province is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks terminating in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The province has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Owing to its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie, which lies in the centre of one of the largest man-made forests in the world. Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome.

The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome. The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, facilitates economic development and growth for the region.

Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate. The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on the high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

Agriculture, as the backbone of the province's economy, employs 8.1% of its total workforce. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced in the province.

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit
Principal languages:
SiSwati 29.1%
IsiZulu 28.8%
IsiNdebele 10.1%
Population: 4 720 497

% %



Percentage share of the total population: 7.8%

Area: 76 495 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's orange exports. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in the city.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also grown there.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol 2 and Sasol 3 are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. In the Lowveld sub region, industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo is expected to stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves with eMalahleni being the biggest coal producer in Africa. South Africa's major power stations are situated in this province. Kendal power station's cooling towers are the largest structures of their type in the world. The Kusile Power Station near Delmas is the country's biggest, contributing a massive 4

800 megawatts of electricity to the national grid. One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg, which produces steel and vanadium, is home to Columbus Stainless, South Africa's only producer of stainless-steel flat products.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest province, taking up almost a third of the country's total land area. However, the province is sparsely populated with only about 1.2 million people on 372 889 km2 of land. About 68% of the people speak Afrikaans while Setswana, isiXhosa and English are also widely spoken.

The last remaining true San people live in the Kalahari area, mainly along the Orange and Vaal rivers. Many fossils and San rock engravings have been found here, some of which are displayed at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley. The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

The Northern Cape borders the Atlantic Ocean in the west with Namibia and Botswana to the north and north-west, respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border.

With two major airports at Kimberley and Upington, and an excellent road network, the province's interior is easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope. The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) radio-telescope. Developed by scientists from 17 countries, the SKA will be the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, including the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Ai-Ais/ Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park and Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the dry Nama-Karoo Biome, which contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man) tree, aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents. The area is well known for its spectacular annual spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists.

Agriculture and industry

The economy of the province's Karoo region depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district.

The province has fertile agricultural land, especially in the Orange River Valley. A variety of fruit is cultivated at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton facilitates the production of wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton.

Wine is also produced in the Northern Cape's Orange River wine region, which accounts for 25.6% of South Africa's Colombard vines

and 10% of its Chenin Blanc. The Niewoudtville Rooibos Tea processing initiative centres on the development and economic empowerment of smallholder farmers. It is aimed at unlocking economic potential, creating sustainable jobs and increasing the skills base. The installation of pasteurisation equipment has been completed and tea has been exported to countries such as Germany, Spain and Japan.

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley
Principal languages:
Afrikaans 56.8%
Setswana 33.4%
IsiXhosa 5.2%
Population: 1 308 734





Percentage share of the total population: 2.2%

Area: 372 889 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Minina

Mining contributes 27.6% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by China's demand for steel.

Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela. New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining, in contrast, has seen declining volumes and job losses. Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The province also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

North West

North West is bordered by Botswana in the north and fringed by the Kalahari Desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province", owing to its wealth of this precious metal.

The province has a population of more than four million people who mainly speak Setswana. Mahikeng is the capital city and well known for the Mafikeng Siege, which took place in October 1899 during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Most of the province's economic activity is concentrated between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as in Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83.3% of the province's economic activity takes place. The province has various tourist attractions, including Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, Madikwe Game Reserve, and the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust. A portion of one of South Africa's world heritage sites also falls within the borders of North West namely the Taung hominid fossil site, which has been incorporated into South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.

Mining and manufacturing

Mining contributes 23.3% to North West's economy, and makes up 22.5% of the South African mining industry. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of the province's total employment.

North West's manufacturing sector centres on the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mahikeng, which together account for more than 50% of the province's total manufacturing production.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry. In the manufacturing arena, automotive parts, machinery, electronic, audio, and medical equipment are manufactured using local materials and resources.

Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. The areas around Rustenburg are fertile, mixed-crop farming land, with maize and sunflowers being the most important crops.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of the African continent, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Cape Town, often referred to as the "Mother City", is South Africa's legislative capital and houses Parliament. The province has a strong network of higher education institutions, including the universities of Cape Town, Stellenbosch and the Western Cape, and has the highest adult education level in the country.

Visitors to the province can disembark at one of the province's two main airports, Cape Town International or George Airport or at the seaports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay and Saldanha. Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape. The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Agriculture and fisheries

The Western Cape's sheltered valleys between mountains are ideal for the cultivation of export-grade fruit such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges. A variety of vegetables is cultivated in the eastern part of the Western Cape, while the Swartland and Overberg districts are well-known as the country's prime wheat-growing areas. The agricultural sector is critical to the Western Cape economy, accounting for 60% of regional exports.

The Western Cape is also well known for its wine production. Some 75% of all South African fishing takes place along the Western Cape coastline.

The rich fishing grounds on the west coast are protected from exploitation by a 200 km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the delicacies found in these waters.

Other exports are fruit, wine, wool and ostrich. The high quality of exports, combined with the relative weakness of the local currency, makes the products some of the most affordable high-quality exports in the world.

North West

Capital: Mahikeng
Principal languages:
Setswana 71.5%

Afrikaans 7.2% IsiXhosa 5.1%

Population: 4 186 984

Percentage share of the total population: 6.9%

Area: 140 882 km²

Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Industry

The Saldanha Bay Industrial Development Zone is drawing strong international interest.

Saldanha Bay is strategically located to serve as a service, maintenance, fabrication and supply hub for the booming African oil and gas sector, due to the increasing number of oil rigs requiring maintenance, and their traffic flow passing from the west to the east coast of Africa.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

History

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi and San, although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples. The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which generally are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron Age culture and domesticated crops.

After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "Highveld," where they adopted a more extensive cattlefarming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and, hence, hierarchies of authority within communities. Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope. Aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century onwards.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (Vereenigde Oostindische Compagnie (VOC)) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoikhoi for slaughter stock

soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions in the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities. As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists).

The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantuspeaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east. It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion.

As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana

chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, thus controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims.

The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns. One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for "people of colour" within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of "apprenticeship" with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation. The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot. Increasingly, they were lumped together as the "coloured" people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the "Cape Malays" (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms. The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land. Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms.

They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security. Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape.

Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was en-trenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indentured Indian labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi, also known as Mahatma Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that black and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the "liberal tradition" in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of black people within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated blacks indentured for equality met with increasingly

fierce resistance. At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil John Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become Prime Minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Gqeberha, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The Transvaal was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) State, which fell within the Republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Eswatini escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed

obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895.

The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, blacks exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to blacks were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of blacks into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying blacks rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Blacks could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa," but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs." Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations." This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war. In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the Northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boes rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled

the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorchedearth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves of employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used blacks as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war.

Most blacks supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for blacks to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for blacks.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the black people back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, black resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of blacks came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants.

This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The blacks' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years. The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and James Barry Munnik Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide.

The National Convention drew up a Constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910. The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to blacks' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights.

Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on black political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion.

The experiences of studying abroad and, in particular, interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part.

A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as John Tengo Jabavu, Pixley ka Isaka Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest. Worker militancy emerged in the wake of World War I and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting the extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by him in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act, 1913 (Act 27 of 1913).

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves. The centenary of this Act was commemorated in 2013.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizens and black non-citizens, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also reserved skilled work for white people and denying black workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act, 1923 (Act 21 of 1923), entrenched urban segregation and controlled black mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force blacks into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power.

In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English-and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after the union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the first world war against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/ South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming. An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people. Soon, labour issues came to the fore.

In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines.

As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force.

In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression. This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr Daniel François Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the qualifying Africans of the Cape Province from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

In 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves. The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, Ashby Solomzi Peter Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with World War I, the experience of World War II and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent.

For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The State became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced. South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the Governor-General) as Head of State.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas."

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development," divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations," each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence," supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly

degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3.5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed.

Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education and healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour. However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People's Congress; the Congress of Democrats (a small white congress organisation); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The State's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

The year 2012, marked the 60th anniversary of the 1952 Women's March. You strike a woman, you strike a rock! Wathint' abafazi, wathint' imbokodo! In 1956, with these words, thousands of women advanced the cause to liberate South Africa from apartheid rule. The phrase has come to symbolise women's courage and strength in South Africa.

During the early 1950s, Lilian Ngoyi, Helen Joseph, Albertina Sisulu, Sophia Williams-De Bruyn, and many others formed the Federation of South African Women. With the Blacks (Abolition of Passes and Coordination of Documents) Act, 1952 (Act 67 of 1952), the South African Government amended the pass laws, requiring all black people over the age of 16 to carry a "reference book" at all times.

On 9 August 1956, more than 20 000 women of all races marched through the streets of Pretoria to the Union Buildings to hand over a petition to Johannes Gerhardus Strijdom, South Africa's Prime Minister, protesting the introduction of the new pass laws and the Group Areas Act, 1950 (Act 41 of 1950). The latter enforced different residential areas for different races and led to forced removals of people living in "wrong" areas. On the day of the march, Strijdom had arranged to be elsewhere, and the petition was eventually accepted by his secretary.

However, the first attempt to make black women carry passes was in 1913 when the then Orange Free State introduced a new requirement that women, in addition to existing regulations for black men, had to carry reference documents. The resulting protests, by a multiracial group of women, many of whom were professionals, took the form of passive resistance through refusing to carry the new passes. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as the mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) ("Spear of the Nation"), were arrested in 1963.

In the Rivonia Trial, eight ANC leaders, including Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming

repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the State.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe).

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (ZIPRA) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces. Although the joint MK-ZIPRA force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage. White capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973 and black trade unions were revived. A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, being drawn into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students – the Congress of South African Students, and college and university students – the Azanian Students Organisation.

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy. Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the

government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance. An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of blacks outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the Executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

Frederik Willem de Klerk, who replaced Pieter Willem Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990, the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting. Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and the PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its raison d'être. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The first decade of freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the State, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The NP and the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socioeconomic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the first decade of freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, the roving Executive Council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly communicate directly with the public about the implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mandela. It saw a sharp decline in the popularity of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names. The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council.

It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit in 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the summit, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the first decade of freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment that is more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces. South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa.

The then President, Thabo Mbeki, chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to to former President of Mozambique Joaquim Chissano in July 2003. In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September that year. By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the first decade of freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It hosted several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented in international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

The second decade of freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development. As government took stock of the first decade of freedom in the Towards a Ten Year Review, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, Thabo Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which was about 2.5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65.9%; the DA 16.6%; the newly-formed Congress of the People (Cope) 7.4%; the IFP 4.5%; and the Independent Democrats 0.9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. Government adopted 14 outcomes as its focus areas. These include among other things: improving the quality of basic education and health services, strengthening the fight against crime, creating decent employment through inclusive growth, and boosting skills development. It also included ensuring food security for all, building sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life, improving local government structures and an efficient and development-oriented public service.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the second decade of freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world. The local government elections held on 18 May 2011 were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The

Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57.6% registered voter turnout – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23.9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and Cope.

To secure a better quality of life for all, government finalised the National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030 in 2011. The plan was a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa.

By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

The revised NDP 2030 document titled, Our future – make it work, is a policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030. Implementation of the plan will be broken up into five-year chunks, in line with the electoral cycle, with the 2014 to 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework forming the first five-year building block of the plan.

The 2019 to 2024 and 2024 to 2029 planning cycles will be used to initiate the remaining activities and will be informed by a performance review of the previous cycle.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

On 30 October 2012, Statistics South Africa released the Census 2011 results. In 2011, the country held its third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa.

The census analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality. Results showed that the country's population grew to 51.8 million people from 44.8 million in 2001, representing a 15.5% increase.

In December 2012, Zuma was re-elected as the President of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung. Cyril Ramaphosa was elected as the party's Deputy President.

While receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon, Mandela, died at the age of 95, on 5 December 2013. Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after serving 27 years in prison for his political activities. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013. South Africa celebrated 20 years of freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country. The Twenty Year Review, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlighted that poverty,

inequality and unemployment continued to negatively affect the lives of many people.

As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

On 7 May 2014, the country elected a new National Assembly and new provincial legislatures. It was the fifth election held in South Africa under conditions of universal adult suffrage since the end of the apartheid era in 1994, and the first held since the death of Mandela. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election.

The National Assembly election was won by the ANC (62.1%). The official opposition, DA won 22.2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6.4% of the vote.

Eight of the nine provincial legislatures were won by the ANC. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51.5% to 59.4%.

The discovery of Homo naledi, an extinct species of hominin, in September 2015 became worldwide news. In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which advocated for a non-racial South Africa.

The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

The 2016 Local Government Elections were held on 3 August. The ANC won 53.9% of the total votes, followed by the official opposition DA with 26.9% and the EFF with 8.2%.

In 2017, South Africa commemorated the centenary of the birth of Tambo, the late former President of the ANC and one of the key founding fathers of South Africa's liberation and constitutional democracy. The centenary celebrations were held under the theme: Life and Legacy of OR Tambo.

The year 2018 marked the centenary of the birth of South Africa's first democratically elected President Mandela and Struggle stalwart Albertina Sisulu respectively. Centenary celebrations for the two icons were marked with year long series of awareness, educational, celebratory and legacy commemoration events. Mandela's centenary celebrations were held under the theme: "Be the legacy" while the Albertina Sisulu commemorations were held under the theme: "A woman of fortitude".

On 8 May 2019, the country held its sixth national and provincial elections. On 25 May 2019, Ramaphosa was inaugurated as the sixth democratically elected President of South Africa.In a departure from the tradition of holding the inauguration at the Union Buildings, the event took place at the Loftus Versfeld Stadium in Pretoria.

On 1 November 2021, the country held its sixth local government elections. The ANC won the majority seats in 161 municipal councils, followed by the DA in 13 municipalities and the IFP in 10 municipalities. A total of 66 municipal councils were hung – meaning that no party gained an outright majority in those councils.

From 9 to 18 July 2021, South Africa experienced civil unrestmainly in some parts of KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, which left in its wake over 354 people dead.

The Judicial Commission of Inquiry into Allegations of State Capture, Corruption and Fraud in the Public Sector, led by then Deputy Chief Justice Raymond Zondo (now Chief Justice), handed all its report to The Presidency in 2022.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Agriculture,
Land Reform and
Rural Development

Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development

The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD) includes developing agricultural value chains, providing agricultural inputs, and monitoring production and consumption in the agriculture sector, as well as facilitating comprehensive rural development.

Chapter 6 of the National Development Plan (NDP) envisions an integrated and inclusive economy that involves the expansion of agricultural activity, the need for effective land reform and the promotion of sustainable rural development. This vision is expressed specifically in terms of Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework, with which the work of the DALRRD is directly aligned.

The nature and extent of the department's interventions are, therefore, underpinned by reducing poverty and inequality, and creating employment by allocating adequate resources and requisite skills to address the persistent challenges associated with agriculture, land reform and rural development in South Africa.

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on improving agricultural production and revitalising essential agricultural infrastructure; accelerating land reform and finalising land restitution claims; and increasing its research and development capacity to improve the agricultural value chain and increase the safety and quality of agricultural products.

Improving agricultural production and revitalising infrastructure

Extension officers support farmers with decision-making by providing them with information on effective and sustainable farming practices based on current research. They are essential in providing a link between farmers and new markets and are therefore central to economic transformation and job creation in this sector.

In recognition of their vital role, the department plans to employ 10 000 extension officers over the medium term, which is set to result in a five-fold improvement in the ratio of extension officers to farmers. This is expected to result in expenditure of R936 million over the medium term through the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme Grant.

This investment will be complemented by a focus on revitalising enabling agricultural infrastructure. To this end, the department plans to upgrade 21 fresh produce markets across the country and revitalise five irrigation schemes to make production schemes functional.

It will also continue to assess the viability and allocation of state land (including communal land) for production. Spending for these activities is within an allocation of R2.1 billion over the period ahead in the Rural Infrastructure Development subprogramme in the Rural Development programme.

Accelerating land reform and finalising land restitution claims

The department aims to acquire 130 687 hectares of productive land for land reform purposes at a projected cost of R3 billion over the medium

term in the Food Security, Land Reform and Restitution programme to address social injustice and inequality through accelerated land reform. To fund this, the department has adopted a blended finance model comprising grant and loan portions.

The department is responsible for funding the grant component and prospective applicants are expected to finance the loan component of their total requirements. To fulfil its responsibility, the department has allocated R1.2 billion over the MTEF period

Increasing research and development capacity to improve agricultural outputs

Over the period ahead, the department plans to enhance capacity in research and development to improve logistics, market access, and the safety and quality of agricultural products. This entails streamlining the policy and legislative framework related to quarantine and regulated plant pest surveillances to improve market access through surveillance and export certification.

As part of its efforts to strengthen biosecurity, sanitary and phytosanitary standards for agricultural products – and thereby protect existing international markets and open new ones – R1.3 billion is allocated over the medium term in the Agricultural Production, Biosecurity and Resources Management programme.

This includes an allocation of R47 million over the medium term to, among other things, commission studies to inform biosecurity decision-making, particularly on the management and control of pests and diseases.

Legislation and frameworks

The DALRRD executes its legislative mandate by implementing, managing and overseeing the following key pieces of legislation, among others:

- Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994), which makes
 provision for the restitution of rights to land to people or communities
 dispossessed of such rights after 19 June 1913 as a result of racially
 discriminatory laws or practices of the past. To administer this task,
 the Act established a Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
 and a Land Claims Court;
- Provision of Land and Assistance Act, 1993 (Act 126 of 1993), which
 makes provision for the designation of certain land, the regulation
 of the subdivision of such land and the settlement of persons
 thereon. It also provides for the acquisition, maintenance, planning,
 development, improvement and disposal of property, and the
 provision of financial assistance for land reform purposes;
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013), which seeks to enable the transformation of South Africa's settlement patterns by adopting a new approach to spatial planning and land use management;
- Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990), which
 provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural
 products, and the sale of some imported agricultural products; and
- Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983),

which makes provision for control over use of the country's natural agricultural resources to conserve soil, water sources and vegetation.

Budget and funding

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DALRRD was allocated R18 billion. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.3%, from R18 billion in 2021/22 to R18.2 billion in 2024/25. Transfers and subsidies are the department's largest cost driver, accounting for an estimated 52.1% (R28.2 billion) of total expenditure over the MTEF period.

These include transfers to provinces for conditional grants (the comprehensive agricultural support programme grant, the land care programme grant and the Ilima/Letsema projects grant), transfers to public entities, and land reform and restitution grants. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 22.7% (R12 billion) of total spending over the MTEF period.

Agriculture

The NDP identifies the latent potential of the agricultural and agroprocessing industries, to spur inclusive economic growth and mitigate the triple challenge of inequality, poverty and unemployment. Despite challenges brought by the COVID-19 pandemic, the agricultural sector has shown tremendous resilience, growing by 8.3% year-on-year in 2022.

This growth follows on a buoyant growth of 13.1% year-on-year in 2020. Such growth also had a pull effect on the interlinked industries such as the agricultural machinery industry. For instance, the combined harvester sales amounted to 268 units in the same period, an increase of 46% from 2020.

According to the Quarterly Economic Brief published in March 2022, the agriculture sector grew by 12.2% and contributed 0.3 percentage points to GDP growth. This growth was driven by increased production of animal products.

The agriculture, forestry and fishing sector grew by 3.3% in real value added over the first three quarters of 2021 compared with the same period in 2020. Good summer and winter rains, coupled with favourable prices, will sustain a second consecutive year of growth despite the third-quarter contraction.

Although summer field crops and horticulture expanded over this period, the livestock sector confronted several animal disease outbreaks. Agriculture is expected to continue growing during 2022 in response to broadly favourable conditions. Trade and logistics disruptions, and ongoing animal-health concerns, are risks to the sector.

Agriculture's role in the national and international economy

According to the Agriculture Survey, 2019, published in May 2021, total income earned in the agriculture and related services industry was R351.4 billion in 2019, compared with R314.0 billion in 2017.

The total income figures reflect an annualised increase of 5.8% between 2017 and 2019. In 2019, animals and animal products

generated the largest sales (R153.1 billion), followed by horticultural crops and products (R86.3 billion) and field crops (R61.9 billion).

The highest annualised percentage increase was recorded for income earned from the sale of animals and animal products (9.1%), followed by horticultural crops and products (8.0%) and field crops (2.2%). The total number of persons employed in the agriculture and related services industry as at the end of June 2019 was 768 171, compared to 764 428 in June 2017, an annualised increase of 0.2%.

According to the Economic Review of the South African Agriculture 2020/21, the value of agricultural production in South Africa increased by 11.6% and is estimated at R346 035 million in 2020/21, compared to R310 179 million in 2019/20, largely because of the increase in values of field crops (23.9%), horticultural products (8.0%) and animal products (7.2%).

The South African primary agricultural sector grew by an average of 6.1% per year since 2011, while the contribution of agriculture's value added to GDP increased from 2.2% in 2011 to 2.3% in 2020.

Gross farming income from all agricultural products increased significantly by 20.4% to R369 418 million for the year ended 30 June 2021, from R306 798 million in the previous period. This was mainly as a result of the increase in income from field crops by 68.5%.

The weighted average price received by farmers for their agricultural products increased by 6.7% as the result of the increase in prices of field crops and horticultural products by 15.7% and 7.0%, respectively.

The 15.7% increase in weighted average price of field crops was the result of the increase in prices of oilseeds by 34.8%, tobacco by 34.1%, sugarcane by 15.3%, hay by 15.2%, summer grains by 14.2%, dry beans by 12.6% and winter grains by 8.2%. The prices of cotton decreased by 1,9%.

The weighted average price of horticultural products increased by 7.0% due to the increase in the prices of vegetables and fruit by 16.5% and 4.2%, respectively. The prices of viticulture showed a decrease of 5.7%

The weighted average price of animal products increased by 2.0%, largely because of the increase in prices of milk by 17.6%. The prices of pastoral products decreased by 3.5% and poultry meat slightly by 0.2%, while those of slaughtered stock remained unchanged.

The prices paid for farming requisites, including machinery and implements, material for fixed improvements, as well as intermediate goods and services, increased by 4.8%, compared to 2.8% the previous period. The prices of building material increased by 8.0%, seeds (7.4%), feeds (7.2%), fencing material (4.8%), trucks (4.5%), packing material (4.1%), fertilisers (3.9%), animal health and plant protection (3.8%) and tractors (1.9%). The prices of maintenance and repairs of machinery and implements decreased by 15,5% and fuel slightly by 0.6%.

The domestic terms of trade increased by 1.0% due to the higher prices earned from agricultural products by the farmers. The net farming income increased drastically by 46.0% and is estimated at R157 360 million for the period ended June 2021, compared to R107 780 million the previous period.

Volume of agricultural production

The estimated volume of agricultural production in 2020/21 was 3.7% more than the previous year. The field crop production volume for 2020/21 increased by 11.7%, mainly as a result of increases in the production of summer crops (maize and sorghum), winter crops (wheat, barley, canola and oats) and the oilseed crops (soya bean and groundnuts).

Maize production increased by 1.1 million tons (7.1%) and sorghum by 52 880 tons (29.1%) from 2019/20. Wheat production increased by 587 598 tons (38,1%), barley by 243 000 tons (70.4%), canola by 70 200 tons (73.9%) and oats production increased by 40 500 tons (245.4%), compared to the previous season. Furthermore, the production of soya bean increased by 672 650 tons (54.0%) and groundnuts by 9 980 tons (17.6%) as compared to 2019/20.

Horticultural production for 2020/21 increased by 2.4% from the previous season, which can mainly be attributed to increases in the production of deciduous and citrus fruit. The production of apples increased by 78 123 tons (7.9%), table grapes by 45 096 tons (13.7%), plums by 30 154 tons (46.2%), pears by 29 941 tons (7.1%), apricots by 17 811 tons (115.1%) and peaches by 6 413 tons (4.0%), which all contributed to an increase in the production of deciduous fruit as compared to 2019/20. Furthermore, the production of lemons increased by 154 169 tons (30.1%), soft citrus by 120 953 tons (37.0%) and grapefruits by 37 492 tons (9.9%), which all led to an increase in the production of citrus fruit from the previous season.

Animal production increased by 0.7%, mainly as a result of increases in the production of stock slaughtered (cattle and calves, pork and goats) and poultry meat for 2020/21 as compared to 2019/20. The production of stock slaughtered for cattle and calves increased by 18 606 tons (2.2%), pork by 15 844 tons (5.7%) and goats by 23 tons (1.6%) as compared to 2019/20. Furthermore, the production of poultry meat increased by 38 043 tons (2.1%) as compared to the previous season.

Farming income

According to the Crops and Markets Fourth Quarter 2021, gross income from all agricultural products increased by 11.3% and is estimated at R367 875 million for the period ended 31 December 2021, compared to R330 598 million the previous year.

This was mainly driven by the increase in income earned from all agricultural products. The income from field crops increased by 27.0%, mainly because of the increases in income from soya beans by 74.1%, grain sorghum by 51.9%, maize by 37.0%, tobacco by 34.9%, sunflower seed by 30.4%, groundnuts by 22.7%, canola by 19.1%, wheat by 12.6% and sugar cane slightly by 0.8%.

The income from animal products increased by 7.6% due to the increase in income from pigs slaughtered by 30.4%, cattle and calves slaughtered by 14.1%, milk by 12.2%, poultry meat by 2.8%, sheep slaughtered by 1.3% and eggs slightly by 0.9%.

The income made from horticultural products increased by 3.8% due to the decrease in income from deciduous and other fruit increased by

16.9%, viticulture by 8.9% and subtropical fruit by 7.9%. The prices of citrus fruit and vegetables decreased by 3.7% and 1.6%, respectively.

Consumer prices

The consumer prices of all agricultural products increased by 3.5% for the year ended June 2021, compared to 3.7% the previous period. The consumer prices of food increased by 5.7% and non-food items by 3,2%. The consumer prices of meat showed an increase of 6.6%, milk, eggs and cheese (6.3%) and grain products (5.7%).

The consumer prices of fats and oils increased by 12.2%, sugar by 7.9%, fruit by 6.1%, fish by 5.4%, coffee and tea by 5.2%, vegetables by 3.4% and other food by 3.1%.

Imports and exports of agricultural products

The estimated value of imports for 2020/21 amounted to R87 646 million, an increase of 2.2% from R85 788 million for 2019/20. The value of exports increased by 7.4%, from R134 776 million in 2019/20 to R144 687 million in 2020/21. According to the 2020/21 export values, citrus fruit (R26 731 million), dried grapes (R12 773 million), grape must (R10 528 million), apples (R9 692 million) and maize (R7 565 million), were the most important agricultural export products.

Rice (R9 002 million), palm oil (R6 435 million), offal of fowls (R4 893 million), gin (R3 830 million) and oil cake (R3 203 million) accounted for the highest imports in terms of value.

During 2020/21, Afghanistan, with exports to the value of R18 754 million, Albania (R13 70 million), Algeria (R10 781 million), American Samoa (R7 942 million) and Andorra (R7 398 million) were the five largest trading partners of South Africa in terms of export destinations for agricultural products.

The five-largest trading partners for South Africa's imported agricultural products during 2020/21 were Thailand (R5 759 million), Indonesia (R5 142 million), Argentina (R3 015 million), Brazil (R2 902 million) and India (R2 902 million).

Products

Crop estimates

According to the first production forecast for summer crops by the Crop Estimates Committee for the 2022 production season, the expected South African maize crop was 14,528 million tons, which was 11.0% less than the 16.315 million tons of the 2021 season and 0.6% or 83 950 tons more than the five-year average of 14.444 million tons up to 2021.

The estimated area that South African commercial producers planted to maize during the 2022 season was 2.613 million ha. This was 5.1% or 141 900 ha less than the 2.755 million ha planted in the previous season. Of this area, 1.221 million ha (46.7%) were in the Free State, 540 000 ha (20.7%) in the North West and 515 000 ha (19.7%) in Mpumalanga.

The plantings of maize in the Free State decreased by an estimated 8.0%, from 1 328 million ha in 2021 to 1,221 million ha in 2022 and in the North West, it decreased by 6.9%, from 580 000 ha to 540 000 ha.

Plantings in Mpumalanga decreased by an estimated 1.9%, from 525 000 ha in 2021 to 515 000 ha in 2022.

The ratio of white to yellow maize plantings for 2022 is 60:40, as against 61:39 the previous season. The estimated white maize plantings were 1.571 million ha, which were 7.1% less than the previous season's 1.692 million ha, while the yellow maize plantings were estimated to be 1.043 million ha—2.0% less than the 1.063 million ha for 2021.

Most of the country's maize crop was produced in the Free State (41.9%), Mpumalanga (23.0%) and the North West (16.5%). The production forecast for white maize was 7.535 million tons, which was 12.4% or 1,065 million tons less than the 8.600 million tons of 2021 and 294 600 tons less than the average of the five years up to 2021.

The expected yield for white maize was 4.80 t/ha, as against 5.08 t/ha the previous season. In the case of yellow maize, the production forecast was 6.993 million tons, which was 9.4% or 722 150 tons less than the 7.715 million tons of the previous season and 378 550 tons more than the five-year average up to 2021. The yield for yellow maize was expected to be 6.71 t/ha, as against 7.25 t/ha in 2021.

The expected sunflower seed crop was 914 350 tons, which was 34.9% more than the 678 000 tons of the previous season and 17.8% more than the average of 776 100 tons for the five years up to 2021. The area planted to sunflower seed was estimated at 655 700 ha, which was 37.2% more than the 477 800 ha planted in 2021. The expected yield was 1.39 t/ha, as against 1.42 t/ha the previous season.

The production forecast for soya beans was 1.821 million tons, which was 4.0% less than the 1.897 million tons of the previous season.

The estimated area planted was 915 300 ha, which was 10.7% or 88 200 ha more than the 827 100 ha planted in 2021. The expected yield was 1.99 t/ha, as against 2.29 t/ha in 2021. The expected groundnut crop was 69 200 tons, which was 7.6% or 4 900 tons more than the 64 300 tons of the 2021 season and 12 634 tons more than the five-year average of 56 566 tons per annum up to 2021.

The area planted to groundnuts was an estimated 44 900 ha, which was 16.5% or 6 350 ha more than the 38 550 ha planted the previous season. The expected yield was 1.54 t/ha, as against 1.67 t/ha in 2021. The production forecast for sorghum was 146 590 tons – 31% less than the 215 000 tons of the previous season. The area planted to sorghum was estimated to be 37 700 ha, which was 23.4% or 11 500 ha less than the 49 200 ha planted in 2021. The expected yield was 3.89 t/ha, as against 4.37 t/ha the previous season.

The production of dry beans was expected to be 59 690 tons, which was 3.5% or 2 018 tons more than the 57 672 tons of the previous season and 5 652 tons less than the five-year average of 65 342 tons per annum up to 2021. The estimated area planted was 42 900 ha, which was 9.5% less than the 47 390 ha planted the previous season. The expected yield was 1.39 t/ha, as against 1.22 t/ha for 2021.

Grains

The DALRRD announced that South Africa would have sufficient staple grains supply in the 2020/21 marketing year, which started in May 2020 and ended in April 2021.

Data released by the DALRRD, in May 2020, showed that the 2020 summer grains harvest could amount to 17.5 million t, which is the second-biggest harvest in the history of this country.

South Africa will continue to export agricultural commodities and products, which are crucial for generating foreign exchange. The largest contributor towards the gross value of field crops for the past five seasons is maize (46.7%), followed by sugar cane (13.3%), wheat (9.8%), soya beans (8.8%) and sunflower seed (6.2%). The gross value of maize for 2019/20 amounted to R40 238 million, which is 42.8% more than in the previous year.

Despite the impact of COVID-19 and the measures imposed to flatten the curve, 2020 was a very good year for summer crops. By the time the lockdown measures were imposed, the crop was almost ready for harvest and weather conditions had been favourable, particularly in the western production regions.

Maize

Maize is the most important grain crop in South Africa, being both the major feed grain and the staple food of the majority of the country's population. The maize sector comprises both commercial and noncommercial farmers; the latter mostly in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and northern KwaZulu-Natal provinces.

According to the Trends in the Agricultural Sector 2021, 53.1% of maize produced in South Africa is white and the remaining 46.9% is yellow. White maize is primarily used for human consumption, while yellow maize is mostly used for animal feed production. The gross value of agricultural production is determined by the quantity produced and prices received by producers.

The two main white maize-growing provinces in South Africa – the Free State and North West, produced about 77% of the white maize harvest in 2021, whereas the Free State and Mpumalanga produced about 69% of the yellow maize harvest.

Maize is planted during late spring/early summer, with optimal planting times in November and December. However, planting can start as early as October and extend to January. In a particular season, the rainfall pattern and other weather conditions determine the planting period as well as the length of the growing season. Most of the maize is harvested from late May up to the end of August.

Sorghum

Sorghum is an indigenous crop in Africa, and is regarded as the fifth most important cereal in the world. There are two types of sorghum, namely bitter and sweet sorghum cultivars. Preference is given to the sweet cultivars. Bitter sorghum is planted in areas where birds are a problem because it contains tannin, which gives a bitter taste and consequently birds tend to avoid feeding on it.

Sorghum for commercial purposes is mainly produced in the western Free State, Mpumalanga, the drier parts of the North West and Limpopo provinces. Sorghum, like other grains, has two basic markets that it serves – the human component and the animal feed component. It is consumed mainly in the human food market and, as in the case

of maize, consumers tend to replace sorghum-based products with preferred products as the household income increases.

During the 2021 production season, sorghum contributed only approximately 0.9% to the gross value of field crops. The commercial sorghum crop for the 2021 season was estimated at 209 980 tons, which is 32.9% more than the 158 000 t of the previous season. The yield for 2021 is estimated at 4.27 t/ha.

Wheat

In terms of value of production, wheat is the fourth most important field crop produced in South Africa and plays an important role in national food security. Most of the wheat produced in the country is bread wheat. Small quantities of durum wheat, used to make pasta, is produced in certain areas. In South Africa, wheat is mainly used for human consumption (including bread, biscuits, breakfast cereals and rusks) and the remaining as seed and animal feed.

Other non-food uses include the reduction of alcohol for ethanol, absorbing agents for disposable diapers, adhesives and industrial uses, such as starch on coatings.

Wheat is mainly planted between mid-April and mid-June, in the winter rainfall area, and between mid-May and the end of July, in the summer rainfall area. The crop is harvested from November to January.

Wheat is generally classed as hard or soft. Hard wheat tends to have higher protein content than softer wheat and is used mainly for bread. Soft wheat, on the other hand, is more suitable for confectionery.

The estimated area planted to wheat for the 2020 season was 509 800 ha. The estimated area planted to wheat for the 2021 season is 523 500 ha, which is 2.7% more than the 509 800 ha of the previous season. The area planted to wheat in the Western Cape is 360 000 ha (69%), which is 34 000 ha more than the 326 000 ha planted in the previous season. In the Free State, the area planted is 70 000 ha (13%), which is 24 000 ha less than the previous seasons' area of 94 000 ha. The decrease in wheat plantings in the Free State is mainly due to dryland producers who have moved from wheat plantings to the planting of summer crops such as maize, sunflower seed and soya beans.

Based on conditions prevailing towards the end of October 2021, the expected commercial wheat crop for 2021 was 2.099 million t, the second-largest wheat crop in a decade.

South Africa, a net importer of wheat, relies on imports from Australia, Lithuania and Poland, amongst other countries, to meet its domestic demand.

A quota of 300 000 t can be imported duty free from the European Union (EU) under the Economic Partnership Agreements. South Africa is expected to import almost two million t by 2026. South Africa remains the largest wheat producer in Sub-Saharan Africa, after Ethiopia.

Barley

Barley is one of the most important grain crops in South Africa, surpassed only by wheat and maize, and is following wheat, the most important small grain type.

The cultivation area for malting barley under dryland conditions is at present restricted to a very specific region, namely the southern Cape, which stretches from Bot River in the west to Heidelberg in the east. It would not be economically viable to cultivate malting barley on dryland in an area that does not receive 350 millimetres of well-distributed rainfall during the growing season (April to October). Currently, five varieties are recommended for malting barley production in the Southern Cape, viz., SabbiErica, SabbiNemesia, Disa, Agulhas and Hessekwa.

The concentration of the production of a relatively minor commodity, for instance malting barley, in a specific area, has various advantages, for example, it facilitates transport, storage, control, extension and research, which also implies cost advantages.

However, because of the risk of unpredictable weather conditions in the southern Cape, barley production has also been introduced to the cooler central irrigation areas in the Northern Cape. There are also farmers in other areas of South Africa, such as North West, Limpopo and the Free State, who plant small quantities of malting barley under irrigation.

Malting barley under irrigation has a higher yield and is more stable than in the southern Cape, where the crop is dependent on rainfall. The area planted to malting barley for the 2021 season was estimated at 94 730 ha. Of the 94 730 ha planted in 2021, 85 000 ha (89.7%) are in the Western Cape, 5 700 ha (6.0%) are in the Northern Cape, 1 300 ha (1.4%) are in Limpopo, 1 650 ha (1.7%) are in North West, 1 000 ha (1.1%) are in Free State, and only 80 ha (0.1%) are in Gauteng. A total crop of 339 800 tons of malting barley was expected for the 2021 season.

Barley is mainly used for the production of malt (for brewing beer), animal feed and pearl barley.

Dry beans

Dry beans are warm-season annual legumes. Gross returns from dry beans can easily be higher than for soya beans. While yields are typically lower, dry beans fetch a relatively higher price.

South Africa has a dry bean deficit and relies on imports. This provides an opportunity for the whole of southern Africa to increase production. The crop is mainly produced in the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, North West and the Northern Cape. Producers sell directly to the trade or to wholesalers and cooperatives.

An estimated amount of 68 799 t of dry beans was expected to be consumed locally during the 2021/22 marketing season, which is 15.0% more than the 59 844 tons in 2020/21. The projected per capita consumption for 2021/22 is 1 kg, 19.0% more than the 0.84 kg in 2020/21.

Oilseeds

Groundnuts

The normal planting time for groundnuts is mid-October to mid-November. Groundnuts are a high value crop produced mainly in the north-western regions of South Africa, particularly the western and north-western parts of the Free State, in North West and in the Northern Cape. Groundnuts are also produced in Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga, but to a lesser extent.

Oil made from groundnuts can be used for cooking and to make peanut butter. It can also be used to manufacture soap, massage oil, and shaving and hair creams.

According to the Trends in the Agricultural Sector 2021, the local commercial consumption of groundnuts for 2021/22 is estimated at 63 050 t - 100 t for oil and oilcake, 36 000 t for peanut butter, 26 500 t for the direct edible market and 450 t as pods. Other consumption (released to end consumers, seed, etc.) amounts to 2 700 t. The projected exports during 2021 are 6 000 t. Carry-over stocks on 28 February 2022 are expected to be approximately 15 600 t.

In South Africa, groundnuts are mainly consumed in two forms — as edible nuts and processed peanut butter. The local commercial consumption of groundnuts for 2020/21 was estimated at 73 300 t — 700 t for oil and oilcake, 40 500 t for peanut butter, 31 800 t for the direct edible market and 300 t as pods. Other consumption amounts to 2 100 t. The projected exports for 2020 were 8 600 t.

Sunflower seeds

Sunflower seeds can be planted from the beginning of November to the end of December in the eastern parts of the production areas, and up to the middle of January in the western parts. Sunflowers grow best when planted in midsummer, to ensure that less moisture is lost from the soil during the crucial growing phases.

The Free State and North West are the major producers of sunflower seeds, followed by Limpopo, Mpumalanga and Gauteng. The seed is used for the manufacturing of sunflower oil and oilcake. The oil is marketed in the form of refined oil for domestic and industrial cooking and baking purposes and is also processed into margarine and other consumer products.

During the 2021 production season, the bulk of the crop was produced in the Free State (49.2%), North West (32.9%) and Limpopo (16.0%). Commercial seed production during 2021 is approximately 677 240 t, which is 14.1% less than the previous season (788 500 t) and 14.4% less than the average of 791 500 t for the previous five years. Non-commercial agriculture contributed an estimated 26 899 t (3.8%) to the total sunflower seed production in South Africa in 2021.

Compared to other crops, sunflower performs well under dry conditions. This is probably the main reason for the crop's popularity in marginal production areas in South Africa. A close link exists between the area planted to maize and the area planted to sunflower seed because farmers can easily switch to sunflower if the normal period for maize planting has passed.

Major exporters of sunflower seeds to South Africa are Romania, Botswana, Bulgaria and Argentina. Importing from the Southern African Development Community (SADC) countries uses the SADC Free Trade Agreement, which facilitates the flow of commodities among countries in the region at no tariff charges.

The sale of sunflower seeds is mostly to the domestic market, with very small quantities destined for the export market. Mostly, South Africa remains a net importer of sunflower seeds.

Soya beans

Soya beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are also produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. Various soya bean cultivars have adapted quite well to South African conditions. Depending on prevailing local conditions, soya beans are usually planted in November and December.

In South Africa, soya beans are mainly used for animal feed. The local demand for soya bean meal, as the preferred source of protein for animal feed, has increased in correlation with the increase in poultry production in South Africa and more than doubled over the past decade.

The plantings of soya beans ranged between 100 130 ha and 827 100 ha over the past 20 years. During the 2021 season, an estimated 827 100 ha were planted for commercial use, compared to an estimated 705 000 ha the previous season. The crop of an estimated 1,890 million tons in 2021 (the highest on record) represents an increase of 51. 8% from the 2020 crop of 1.246 million tons.

From being one of the most dynamic sectors in the South African agriculture sector over the past decade, the soya bean industry is now maturing and further expansion is expected to occur at a much slower rate. Total soya bean processing capacity in South Africa (crush and full fat) is derived from a combination of dedicated soya bean processing facilities, as well as plants with the ability to switch between soya beans and sunflower seeds.

The local commercial consumption of soya beans for 2021 was projected at 1.696 million tons – 165 000 tons for feed (full-fat soya), 1.475 million t for oil and oilcake and 21 500 t for human consumption. Other consumption was estimated at 12 700 tons. The projected exports for 2021 was 22 000 t. Carry-over stocks on 28 February 2022 were expected to be approximately 207 303 tons.

Canola

Almost the entire canola crop in South Africa is produced in the Western Cape. Over time, farmers in areas such as the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and North West also started to plant small quantities of canola. Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds, such as sunflower seeds and soya beans.

Local and international investors in the oilseed crushing sector are boosting South Africa's capacity to process oilseed crops, such as soya beans, canola and sunflower seeds. This forms part of efforts to meet growing domestic demand for proteins and to be less dependent on imports of these crops.

Canola is primarily used for the manufacturing of canola oil and oilcake. It is the healthiest commodity oil available to consumers, the food service industry and food processors. Canola meal is used as an animal feed for dairy cows, pigs and poultry. Its unique characteristics are especially valuable in the dairy industry, where it has been shown

that by including 20% canola meal in a feed ration improves milk production by one litre per cow per day.

For the 2021/22 marketing season, the total supply of canola was estimated at 207 340 tons (the estimated canola crop of 190 000 tons, together with carry-over stocks of 17 340 tons). Domestic demand for canola is estimated at 126 020 tons, while carry-out stocks at the end of September 2022 was expected to reach 81 330 tons.

Cotton

In South Africa, cotton is grown in the warm regions of Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal, where minimum night temperatures are at least 15 °C during the growing season.

The cotton industry is labour-intensive and provides work for roughly one worker per hectare of cotton planted. Oil extracted from cotton seed can be used for cooking and salad dressings. Extracted seed can also be used as a fertiliser or as feed for livestock, poultry and fish.

As part of the cotton industry's objective to broaden participation by emerging farmers, a training programme has been established by Cotton South Africa and other stakeholders, including the private sector and government. Lack of knowledge and expertise among smallholder cotton farmers are among major constraints that impede success in the emerging cotton farming sector.

Tobacco

Tobacco is tropical in origin, but is grown successfully under tropical, subtropical and temperate climates. Normally, it requires about 100 to 120 days, in a frost-free climate, with an average temperature of 20 °C to 30 °C between transplanting and harvesting.

In South Africa, tobacco is grown in five provinces – Limpopo (Lephalale, Mokopane, Mookgophong and Sterkrivier); North West (Brits, Groot Marico and Rustenburg); Mpumalanga (Loskop, Groblersdal and the Lowveld: Mbombela and Barberton); the Eastern Cape (Gamtoos Valley); and the Western Cape (Oudtshoorn). The areas are classified according to the production of different types of tobacco.

Flue-cured tobacco is produced mainly in Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West, while air-cured tobacco is produced in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, Limpopo and North West.

Sugar

Sugar cane is a ratoon crop, which means that after cropping, new shoots emerge from the roots. It yields up to 10 crops from the original rootstock, after which it is uprooted and the field is replanted. This is done on a rotational basis, with approximately 10% of the area under cane being replanted each season. Planting usually coincides with the first spring rains.

South Africa produces cost-competitive, high-quality sugar. The sugar sector is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw

and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, as well as a range of by-products. The R14 billion South African sugar industry is cost-competitive, consistently ranking in the top 15 out of approximately 120 sugar producing countries worldwide. The industry makes a positive difference to the lives of more than a one million people and is a catalyst for economic growth and development. Sugar cane is a strategic crop for Kwazulu-Natal and Mpumalanga, where sugarcane production is located, comprising nearly 50% of field crop gross farming income across the two provinces.

Sugar cane is grown by approximately 21 926 registered growers, farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal, with substantial operations in Mpumalanga, and some sugar cane production in the Eastern Cape. Employment within the industry is estimated at 435 000 people (direct and indirect) and the industry produces an average of approximately 2.2 million t of sugar per season.

Government and stakeholders in the sugar industry have signed the Sugar Industry Master Plan, which seeks to take urgent action to protect thousands of jobs, rural livelihoods and businesses. The plan also aims to create a bold new ambition for the future, which seeks to create diversified revenue streams for sugar producers and create new job opportunities.

As part of the master plan, industrial users and retailers agreed to a minimum offtake of sugar for a period of three years; with at least 80% of sugar consumption to come from South African farms and millers during the first year, increasing to 95% by 2023. During this period, the sugar industry has agreed to price restraint, and to begin a process of managed restructuring for the industry to help diversify revenue sources.

Employment within the industry is estimated at 435 000 people (direct and indirect) and the industry has produced an average of approximately 2. 2 million t of sugar per season. Production for the 2021/22 season at 17. 9 million t was expected to be 2.3% lower than in 2020/21.

Deciduous fruit

The deciduous fruit industry in South Africa, including fresh, dried and canned fruit for local consumption and export, is a multimillion-rand industry. The exporting of deciduous fruit is a major earner of foreign exchange for South Africa.

Deciduous fruits grown in South Africa include apples, pears, apricots, nectarines, peaches, plums, grapes, olives, figs and cherries.

Although some producers grow fruit both for processing (canning, juice and drying) as well as fresh consumption, it is estimated that in South Africa there are about 1 152 producers of fruit for fresh consumption, 1 066 producers of dry and table grapes, 887 producers of stone fruit and 624 producers of pome fruit.

The main deciduous fruit producing areas in South Africa are situated in the Western Cape and Eastern Cape, mostly in areas where warm, dry summers and cold winters prevail.

Dried fruit

Dried fruit is produced mainly in the western and southern parts of the Western Cape and the Lower and Upper Orange River areas in the Northern Cape. Tree fruit, as opposed to vine fruit, is dried mainly in the Western Cape.

The most important dried fruit products in terms of volume are Thompson seedless raisins, golden sultanas, unbleached sultanas, currants, peaches, pears, apricots and prunes.

Apricots are grown mainly in the Little Karoo and prunes are produced almost exclusively in the Tulbagh District in the Western Cape.

Most raisins are produced in the area along the Lower Orange River and currants are mainly from the Vredendal District in the Western Cape. Expectations were that most subtropical fruit types' production would increase during the 2021/22 production season.

Honeybush and rooibos tea

Honeybush production is a young, growing industry that is unique to South Africa. Honeybush is part of the fynbos that grows wild in the Western Cape and is not produced anywhere else in the world. The plant grows naturally on the wetter and cooler southern slopes of mountains. Some species are mostly harvested in the wild, while others are cultivated commercially.

The cultivated tea comes from a few farmers who have established successful honeybush plantations, as well as a handful of community-based projects. Rooibos tea is exclusively farmed in the Cederberg and Sandveld areas of the Western Cape. On average, South Africa produces about 15 000 t of rooibos tea a year. According to the South African Rooibos Council, out of the 15 000 t of rooibos tea produced a year, 50% of it is consumed in South Africa.

In June 2021, rooibos became the first African food to be registered by the European Commission as having a protected designation of origin and protected geographical indications. This means South Africa is acknowledged as the designation of origin for rooibos. For tea to be labelled as rooibos, it has to be made using leaves that were cultivated or wild-harvested in designated local municipalities of the Western and Northern Cape provinces.

The registration will also allow South Africa's Rooibos industry to use the EU logo that is well recognised by consumers in Europe, which will indicate its value as a unique and exclusive product.

Wine

South Africa is the eighth-largest wine producer in the world, with a contribution of 4.0% to the world's wine production.

The wine industry is labour intensive and provides employment to approximately 296 000 people directly and indirectly. The number of primary wine grape producers in South Africa is estimated at 2 778. Wine is produced mainly in the Western Cape and along parts of the Orange River in the Northern Cape. The traditional wine-growing areas along the coastal zone benefit from its cooling breezes that moderate the summer temperatures. The Cape mountain ranges form a backdrop to what is internationally recognised as one of the most beautiful

wine-producing areas of the world. The vineyards lie in valleys and mountain foothills in some areas, and in flatter plains in others. One of the potential competitive advantages of the Cape winelands is a great variety of soils.

Nietvoorbij, the internationally acclaimed research farm of the ARC, is synonymous with quality research in oenology and viticulture. Annually, 1 000 different wines (10 – 20 l) are made for research purposes in the modern experimental cellar. Next door, in the old, thatched roof cellar, traditional and modern winemaking methods are combined to create unique wines for enjoyment.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

Citrus is one of South Africa's most important subsectors in the agricultural sector. It provides a significant contribution to job creation and economic activity in South Africa's rural communities.

Government is committed to working with the industry and other stakeholders to expand market access to destinations such as the United States of America, China and India, and the EU and other countries that already enjoy South African citrus.

The growth projections for soft citrus, lemons and Valencia oranges alone indicate an expected additional R6.8 billion in foreign exchange earnings and the creation of 22 250 sustainable jobs over the next three years.

Citrus fruit is grown in Limpopo, the Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga, the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, in areas where subtropical conditions (warm to hot summers and mild winters) prevail. The area under citrus production is estimated at 81 638 ha.

The Western Cape and Eastern Cape are considered cooler citrus growing areas and production is focused on Navel oranges and lemons. The cooler climate enables farmers to respond to consumer demand for easy peelers like clementines and satsumas. Farm sizes are also smaller and most citrus in the Western and Eastern Cape is packed by privatised cooperatives in facilities that are amongst the largest in the world.

In Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal, the climate is warmer and better suited to the cultivation of grapefruit and Valencia oranges. Farms in these regions are larger and many farmers pack in smaller privately-owned facilities. Pineapples are grown mainly in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal.

Subtropical crops, such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts, are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, as well as in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The largest contributors to the sales of subtropical fruit on the major fresh produce markets are bananas, pineapples and avocados, followed by mangoes and papayas. The cultivation of some types of subtropical fruit is only possible in specific areas of the country because of particular climatic requirements.

In general, subtropical fruit types need warmer conditions and are sensitive to large temperature fluctuations and frost. Fruit types such as granadillas and guavas are also grown in the Western Cape, while pineapples are cultivated in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

The ARC Infruitec-Nietvoorbij is responsible for managing nine genebanks. The genebanks include field collections of various deciduous tree fruit crops, grapevines, olives, indigenous flowers of the Proteaceae and honeybush, in vitro collections of yeasts, fungi and bacteria as well as some tree fruit and berry crops in medium term cold storage.

The main purpose of the field genebanks is to conserve genetic diversity of fruits, grapes and indigenous crops, particularly in support of breeding programmes; the yeast collection contributes to oenological research; and the fungal and bacterial collections provide for research and diagnostics.

Vegetables (excluding potatoes)

Vegetables are produced in most parts of the country. However, in certain areas farmers tend to concentrate on specific crops, such as green beans that are grown mainly in Kaapmuiden, Marble Hall and Tzaneen; green peas, grown in George and Vaalharts; and asparagus, grown mainly in Krugersdorp and Ficksburg.

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. In Limpopo, South Africa's main tomato-growing area, most of the crops are found in Letaba, Mooketsi and Musina.

Onions are grown mainly in Mpumalanga, certain areas of the Western Cape and the southern Free State and in all areas of Limpopo, with the main production areas being Polokwane and Mokopane.

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but the largest crops are in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal.

Potatoes

There are 16 distinct potato-production regions in South Africa, which are spread throughout the country. The main regions are situated in the Free State, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga.

Potatoes are planted at different times because of climate differences in the production areas, resulting in fresh potatoes being available throughout the year.

In the early 1990s, there was a major shift in production from dryland to irrigation and, currently, almost 80% of plantings are under irrigation.

Livestock

Extensive livestock farming is vast in the country, appropriating fourfifths of the agricultural land in South Africa. However, livestock is also found in areas where there is a combination with other farming enterprises.

Below normal rainfall over recent years has meant that the area involved in cattle, sheep and goat farming, which is approximately 590 000 square kilometres, has been negatively affected. Representing

53% of all agricultural land in the country, this badly affected grazing area has not recovered in the past year as near normal to normal rainfall has not been recorded in most provinces.

Livestock conditions recorded were reasonable to good in most provinces over the same period. Commercial sheep farming also takes place in other areas, such as Kgalagadi, the winter rainfall area and the grasslands of Mpumalanga, as well as the eastern Free State and KwaZulu-Natal, with challenges of wild animals and stock theft threatening the successful farming thereof.

Foot-and-Mouth disease is still prevalent in some parts of KwaZulu-Natal, as of October 2021, with movement restrictions in place for identified locations. As such, practices for biosecurity are encouraged in order to curb further spread of the disease. Other diseases that continue to affect the industry are African Swine Fever and Brucellosis.

Cattle

Cattle are found throughout the country, but mainly in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State and North West. Herd sizes vary according to type of cattle, ranging between less than 50 and 300 for dairy cattle, while beef cattle herds range from fairly small (less than 20 head of cattle) to large farms and feedlots (more than 4 000).

Some farms in North West and Gauteng have been found to have some of the largest cattle herds in in the country. The production of weaners for the feedlot industry is the main form of cattle farming – feedlots account for approximately 75% of all beef produced in the country.

The total number of cattle in South Africa at the end of August 2021 is estimated at 12.10 million, comprising various international dairy and beef cattle breeds in addition to indigenous breeds such as the Afrikaner and the Nguni. Beef cattle contribute approximately 80% to the total number of cattle in the country, while dairy cattle make up the remaining 20%. Holstein-Friesian, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire are the four major dairy breeds found in South Africa.

Although milk is produced in all the areas of South Africa, the coastal areas are the most suitable because of their mild temperatures and good rainfall conditions, which lead to improvements in animals and pasture conditions.

The industry comprises various economic activities, with significant differences in farming methods, and the processing of dairy products, including the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, and cheese and its by-products.

Sheep

Although sheep farms are found in all provinces, these are concentrated in the more arid parts of the country. Flock sizes vary between less than 50 and 1 800 animals. Sheep flocks in the Eastern, Western and Northern Cape provinces tend to be much larger than those in other provinces.

The animals are kept mainly for wool and mutton production and the

industry is therefore represented by organisations from the mutton and the wool industry. The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, such as the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, Afrino and Letelle breeds. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton produce. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found in the more arid areas.

The total number of sheep in South Africa at the end of August 2021 were estimated at 21.30 million. For August 2021, the largest numbers of sheep were estimated to be in the Eastern Cape (30%), Northern Cape (24%), Free State (20%) and Western Cape (12%).

Goats

Goats are found mainly in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa.

Herds of goats intended for meat production are usually smaller than sheep flocks, averaging approximately 300 goats per farm. Angora goats are kept primarily for mohair production, while Boer goats are mainly for meat production. According to the SA Milch Goat Breeders' Society, there are also farmers who have adopted a market differentiating strategy by producing goat milk and these are increasing in numbers.

Through selective breeding and farming techniques, the Angora goat farmer plays a crucial role in promoting the constant availability of quality natural fibres. Most of the world mohair production is imported to South Africa for further processing, after which it is exported together with locally (including Lesotho) produced mohair. China remains the leader in mohair imports from South Africa, followed by Italy and Taiwan.

Estimates indicate that the number of goats decreased from 5.170 million in August 2020 to 5.118 million in August 2021.

Pigs

The South African pork industry is small in terms of the overall South African agricultural sector. It contributes 2.2% to the primary agricultural sector. Pigs are found predominantly in Limpopo, North West, Gauteng and the Western Cape. There are approximately 400 commercial pork producers and 19 stud breeders in South Africa. It is estimated that pig numbers decreased from 1.357 million in August 2020 to 1.328 million in August 2021, a drop of 2.13%.

The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price farmers receive. The trend in gross value follows a pattern of prices, because the industry is characterised by volatile prices.

Pork is produced throughout South Africa, with Gauteng and Western Cape being the largest producers, contributing to 40% and 21%, respectively, to total production. There are about 132 commercial, four stud and about 400 smallholder pig farmers.

They own about 120 000 sows (100 000 commercial and 10 000 smallholder sows) and employ about 3 005 workers, comprising about 2 200 farm workers and 805 workers in the abattoir sectors. The 145

registered pig abattoirs use modern technology to ensure a streamlined slaughtering process. The total number of employees in the formal pork production industry in South Africa is estimated to be approximately 10 000, comprising about 4 000 farm workers and 6 000 workers in the processing and abattoir sectors.

Poultry farming

The poultry industry consists of the day-old chick, broiler and egg supply. The broiler industry continues to dominate the agricultural sector in South Africa as the main supplier of animal protein. The distribution of broiler birds (including broiler breeders) per province is as follows: North West (24.5%), Mpumalanga (22.5%), the Northern and Western Cape (14.2%), the Free State (13.4%), Gauteng (9.7%), the Eastern Cape (6.6%), KwaZulu-Natal (5.8%) and Limpopo (3.3%). During the first six months of 2021, an average of 24.0 million broilers were slaughtered per week.

The distribution of layers per province is as follows: Gauteng (33.5%), the Free State (15.9%), the Northern and Western Cape (14.0%), KwaZulu-Natal (10.5%), the North West (10.3%), Limpopo (7.5%), Mpumalanga (6.3%) and the Eastern Cape (2.8%).

Poultry Master Plan

For the past decade, poultry production in South Africa has been static despite the fact that consumption has continued to grow. This was due to the fact that imported poultry has come into the economy in large quantities, displacing South African meat, especially at the lower end.

In an effort to address threats to the local production of poultry, government, together with a number of stakeholders in the industry, including poultry producers, farmers, processors, exporters, importers and organised labour, developed the Poultry Master Plan.

The plan provides a framework for a determined effort to grow jobs in the industry through a number of measures that will be implemented over a number of years. Signed during the second South African Investment Conference in November 2019, the plan is also expected to ensure that locally produced products make up an increasingly larger proportion of consumption over time.

As of March 2021, the poultry industry had invested R870 million to upgrade production and grow poultry production by 5%. The money would also create markets for 50 black contract growers and facilitate exports to create local jobs. The industry had also paid for business studies for 19 black farmers who were in a programme with the DALLRD. A year after the plan was signed, 13 black contract grower farmers were established and 960 jobs were created.

The industry was also assisting a further 40 independent black farmers by providing them with poultry-related advice and training.

Since the master plan was signed, government has implemented higher tariffs on certain cuts of poultry, and has further triggered an investigation into the structure of tariffs to provide a more effective trade environment for poultry.

Chicken producers have committed to R1.5 billion in fresh investment in their own production facilities within the next four years towards the

investment drive. This is expected to result in nearly 4 000 additional jobs in the production of chicken in pursuit of these outcomes.

In addition, the industry and various government agencies will invest R1.7 billion in the establishment of 50 commercial scale contract farmers.

Information for international travellers

Pests and invasive species are not only introduced through formal trade, but are also brought into South Africa by tourists.

Once a pest has entered South Africa, climate change may influence its establishment and spread, as well as the damage it causes. When travelling to South Africa, tourists should make sure that they do not bring in prohibited agricultural products. These products may harbour pests that occur in other countries and their introduction may endanger South Africa's competitiveness in trade and agricultural productivity.

Animals and animal products such as meat and dairy products, plants and plant products, honey and honey products as well as other regulated goods, are all potentially high-risk materials. These materials may only be imported into South Africa by means of an import permit, unless exempted, and must be declared with the DALRRD inspectors for inspection at ports of entry before entering South Africa. Inspectors from the department conduct luggage and consignment inspections at the ports of entry, with the help of sniffer dogs to ensure compliance with the import permit requirements.

Prohibited products will either be confiscated, destroyed or returned to the country of export and those found carrying them may face a fine of up to R20 000 or imprisonment.

Food import and export standards

Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the World Trade Organisation, to which South Africa is a signatory. This includes the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measurements Agreement, the World Organisation for Animal Health, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health.

The DALRRD collates information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products. The department also coordinates promotion and awareness programmes addressing crosscutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, and plant and animal health.

The DALRRD and the Perishable Products Export Control Board (PPECB) work closely to assist South Africans to export their products successfully in a highly competitive global arena.

National Analytical Services (NAS)

There are two in-house laboratories within NAS – one situated in Stellenbosch and the other in Pretoria.

The laboratories provide and coordinate the analysis of certain

agricultural products (fresh fruit and vegetables, grains, wines and spirits, dairy products and processed food) in support of the enforcement of the food safety and quality standards and requirements as laid down in the Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990 and the Liquor Products Act, 1989 (Act 60 of 1989).

Disaster and risk management

The National Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Committee provides strategic guidance on policy and advises government on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management.

The committee comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture, such as the National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (NAFU SA), Agri SA, Transvaal Agricultural Union of South Africa (TAU SA) and the ARC and relevant directorates within the DALRRD.

The National Drought Task Team, chaired by the DALRRD, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster management centres, organised agriculture and relevant directorates within the department.

The DALRRD frequently responds to hazards such as droughts, veld fires, floods and outbreaks of pests and disease, which includes the control of migratory pests such as locusts and quelea. It is also responsible for the control of blackfly.

Weather and climate Climate change

The agricultural sector in South Africa faces considerable impact from climate change, which affects the livelihoods of most people, especially those who are vulnerable to food insecurity. South Africa responds to international obligations regarding climate through various government departments.

The Climate Change Programme implemented by the DALRRD includes programmes on raising awareness, policy development, the development of sector mitigation and adaptation plans, conducting vulnerability assessments countrywide, and identifying and coordinating climate-related research projects. The Climate Change Adaptation and Mitigation Plan outlines useful mitigation and adaptation options promoting soil, water and nutrient conservation for agricultural production.

The DALRRD's Crop Suitability programme is aimed at promoting best adaptation management practices and enhancing adaptive capacity and resilience of the agricultural systems to minimise the risk of the negative impacts of climate change as drastic increases in temperature have a negative impact on crop growth and crop yields.

South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance which, among other objectives, aims to enhance collaborative research into reducing agricultural emissions and increasing support and resourcing for agricultural emissions research. South Africa has already been involved in stock takes and regional workshops run by the Livestock Research Group.

Early warning unit

The increasing risk of disaster is reduced by strengthening early warning systems and disseminating early warnings, as well as raising awareness through campaigns. This helps to build resilient farming communities.

The DALRRD has, therefore, developed and implemented an Early Warning System (EWS) that disseminates extreme weather warnings to farming communities. The EWS communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings, in support of reducing disaster risk. The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system. National Agro-Meteorological Committee meetings are held quarterly.

Other risk reduction activities include continuous research to identify areas and measures in addressing and improving disaster risk management, including awareness campaigns and education and training so as to strengthen disaster risk management. In addition, the DALRRD continues to encourage integration of disaster risk management into all departmental programmes and projects.

The DALRRD also encourages the strengthening of EWS by all relevant role players to be prioritised, including the creation of disaster units in provinces.

Sustainable resource management and use

The DALRRD and the ARC's Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The National Land Type Survey, available for use at a 1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision making at national level.

All available natural resource spatial information and other required data sets, including the latest Spot-5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agis). Using interactive web-based applications, Agis provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

The Advanced Fire Information System tracks all fire outbreaks in the SADC region through the use of Moderate- Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer satellite imagery. The information may be viewed at *afis.meraka.org.za*.

Soil degradation

Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in organic soil matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-term fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. South African soils are extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in both dryland and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem. Its effect is

severe since it impacts on the country's scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land. In commercial agriculture, there has been capital-building of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

Genetically modified organisms (GMOs)

GMOs provide a way to meet the growing demand for food without placing greater pressure on scarce resources. South Africa has commercialised three different genetically modified crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans. The country is also the ninth-largest producer of genetically modified crops in the world and remains the pioneer for the adoption of genetically modified crops. This is aligned to Section 24 of the Constitution, which advocates for sustainable use of biodiversity.

National LandCare Programme

This is a government-supported community-based initiative, which is active throughout the country. Driven by both the public and private sectors through partnerships and cooperation, it seeks to:

- · conserve natural resources;
- use them in a sustainable way;
- · create a conservation ethic through education and awareness; and
- create jobs and address poverty by launching various natural resource rehabilitation, improvement and conservation projects.

Serious concerns about land and water degradation are identified in each province and specific projects address these issues. Projects have been implemented in all nine provinces through the LandCare Conditional Grant, whereby ring-fenced funding is transferred to provinces.

The National LandCare Programme is aligned with government's broader objective of job creation. The temporary jobs created under the programme are funded through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The programme adheres to the target of 55% women, 40% youth and 2% people with disabilities as specified by the EPWP.

Funding for these projects is transferred quarterly to the respective provincial departments as implementing agents, as conditional grants under the Division of Revenue Act, 2013 (Act 2 of 2013). Assessment and reporting requirements are specified in the Act, as well as by the EPWP. The provincial departments use the reporting tools provided by the EPWP to report on the number of jobs created.

Provincial departments forward additional quarterly and annual reports to the DALRRD to monitor performance and the impact of the programme on the state of the natural agricultural resources.

Extension and advisory services

The National Policy on Extension and Advisory Services for the agricultural sector recognises and calls for the involvement of a wide array of stakeholders involved in the delivery of extension and advisory services through a pluralistic and integrated approach. The

implementation process of the National Policy on Extension and Advisory Services commenced with the establishment of the Provincial Extension Coordinating Forum (PECF). The PECF is operational in all provinces and meetings are held on a quarterly basis. The DALRRD provides support to the PECF to ensure provincial integrated service delivery.

Training

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities. South Africa has a number of regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects as well as specialised agricultural high schools, such as Bekker High School in North West, Harry Oppenheimer Agricultural High School in Limpopo and Boland Agricultural High School in the Western Cape.

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture, such as Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in the Eastern Cape, Cedara College of Agriculture in KwaZulu-Natal and Madzivhandila College of Agriculture in Limpopo.

In September 2020, Cabinet approved the establishment of agricultural colleges as the competency of higher education colleges in terms of the Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), as amended.

The relocation of these colleges to the Department of Higher Education and Training will align them to the prescribed Higher Education Act of 1997 and improve their governance and management.

Universities, some with designated faculties of agriculture, offer degree courses. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

Research and innovation

It is only through proper research that the country can be able to increase productivity, come up with disease resistant plants and animals, and alleviate the impact of climate change.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the DALRRD engages with the Department of Science and Innovation on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation.

The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural Research and Development Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development while the Government Agricultural Research and Development Action Group provides a platform for government and state-owned entities to plan research and technology development within the national agricultural

research system. The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to government on the coordination of research, development and transfer of technology to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

Animal identification

Any owner of cattle, sheep, goats or pigs is compelled by law to mark their livestock. The registered mark is put on the National Register of Animal Identification System. This register is available to the South African Police Service (SAPS) to help it trace individual animals in cases of stock theft.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Animal Identification Act. 2002 (Act 6 of 2002).

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (SAPCA) is the official representative of the pest, termite and woodborer-control industries. All SAPCA-qualified inspectors have to register with the DALRRD.

South Africa regularly liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

To respond comprehensively to the management of regulated plant pests and diseases, the DALRRD, in close collaboration with the South African fruit industries, has developed an early warning surveillance programme for the quarantine of fruit flies. The technical forum continues to identify, prioritise and manage quarantine pest risks, such as the African invader fruit fly.

Rural Development

Rural development creates and maintains an equitable and sustainable land dispensation, and acts as a catalyst in the development of rural areas, to ensure sustainable rural livelihoods, decent work and continued social and economic advancement for all South Africans. Approximately 33.7% of the South African population lives in rural areas. This figure is below the global average of 44.7%, and has been declining gradually over the past ten years, owing to rapid urbanisation.

While rural areas were a key development priority in the early 2000s, an increasing global focus on cities through the development of the New Urban Agenda and Sustainable Development Goal 11 focusing on sustainable cities, has meant that rural areas have been deprioritised to a certain extent. This has been a contributing factor to the state of rural poverty and underdevelopment.

In South Africa, rural areas have the highest poverty concentration. It is estimated that 59.7% of the population living below the poverty line is found in rural areas. This is illuminated when the provincial distribution of poverty is analysed. There is a correlation between low poverty levels and highly urbanised provinces, such as Gauteng and the Western Cape – and conversely, between high poverty levels in provinces where the majority live in rural areas, such as the Eastern Cape and Limpopo. This illustrates that there are spatial patterns of economic development in South Africa, which result in acute poverty

in rural areas. While the disconnected nature of rural areas may be an explanatory factor of this phenomenon, the spatial configuration of national value chains and broader economic climate are also key factors.

The characteristically poverty-stricken nature of rural South Africa is both a cause and effect of poor performing socio-economic indicators, including education, healthcare and employment. The majority of rural South Africa fell under the homelands system during colonialism and apartheid, emphasising their historic exclusion from service delivery.

Limited access to quality education and healthcare is an acute challenge in rural areas because of undeveloped infrastructure and limited economic activity. There are 11 252 schools in rural areas across South Africa, many of which face infrastructural challenges, teacher shortages and other critical challenges.

While there are a number of factors affecting this disparity, the ruralurban divide is chief among them. A contributing factor to rural poverty and underdevelopment is the rapid rate of rural-urban migration that is taking place in South Africa.

The rate of rural-urban migration has almost doubled over the past two decades, increasing from 15 people per 1 000 to 28 people per 1 000.23. Both economic and non-economic reasons cause citizens to move from rural areas to urban areas, including hopes of employment and higher wages, better access to social services, such as healthcare and education, and to reunite with family living in cities. While the promise of the city may seem appealing to rural residents, prosperity in urban areas is not necessarily guaranteed, as the rapid influx of people into the cities has put pressure on social services and housing requirements.

In rural areas, the outflow of citizens who constitute the majority of the economically active population exacerbates underdevelopment. This results in decreased economic activity and investment in rural areas. It is within this context that the DALRRD is mandated to serve residents in rural areas by providing economic stimulation in a three-pronged manner by stimulating the agricultural sector, coordinating rural development and promoting access to and productivity of land.

In the face of rapid rural-urban migration, the DALRRD plans to focus specifically on stimulating economic activity and uplifting social conditions in rural areas through its mechanisms of agricultural support, land administration and tenure, and rural development coordination.

Economic structure of rural South Africa

Agriculture and mining are traditionally thought to be the foundations of rural economies, as these sectors tend to be the

key drivers of external investment into rural areas. While this chiefly refers to commercial agriculture, it is worth noting that subsistence agriculture plays an important role in meeting the needs of residents in rural areas.

Beyond agriculture and mining, there are also a number of other components of the rural economy, which can be leveraged for rural development.

While secondary sector activities such as manufacturing, processing and construction are most often developed in urban or peri-urban settings, they also form an important economic driver in rural and semi-rural areas. In terms of the tertiary sector, there are critical activities that support rural communities, in the form of both local business and chain stores.

Overall, all of these components of the rural economy are interconnected and connected to industrial activity and the urban economy. There are two key inflows of support for social infrastructure aside from external investment – international or local aid and government programmes. In terms of aid, there are a myriad of multilateral, bilateral and local non-governmental organisations, such as the United Nations Development Programme, the Belgian Development Agency and the Rural Development Support Programme, which have programmes in areas that contribute to rural development.

Government has various schemes and programmes that support the rural economy. One of government's largest contributors to the social infrastructure of rural areas is the Social Grant Scheme, which includes financial stipends for old-age pensions, child support, care dependency, war veterans, foster child support and disabilities. A total of 44.3% of households in South Africa are receiving at least one grant, the majority of which reside in rural areas.

Provinces with a higher rural population such as the Eastern Cape, Northern Cape and Limpopo have a higher proportion of households receiving social grants. This illustrates that social grants play an important role in supporting the social infrastructure of rural economies.

Rural development remains a strategic and important element of national economic development. As outlined in the NDP, the country is working towards achieving an inclusive and integrated rural economy. The DALRRD plays a fundamental role in coordinating national efforts in order to reduce rural poverty and create gainful socio-economic development in rural South Africa.

However, as the face of rural South Africa is rapidly changing, there are certain considerations that need to be taken into account, specific to challenges and trends emerging in the sector. Key considerations for the DALRRD are:

The decreased profitability of the mining sector may result in less investment in rural communities and potential job losses.

Agricultural productivity challenges threaten existing and new farmers, resulting from climate change, increased water scarcity and a lack of training available for new farmers. A decreased economically active population in rural areas further limits economic activity.

Decreased funding and social programmes for South Africa and rural areas – while South Africa experienced a boom in foreign aid post-1994, this has declined as there is currently increasing competition for aid globally. This coupled with decreasing contributions from donors and implementing regulations that are more rigorous will have adverse effects on funding for rural areas in South Africa.

The commercialisation of the retail sector in rural areas has increased competition for previously owner-run businesses. The department is

uniquely positioned to tackle these challenges strategically through the coordination of rural development efforts in the private and public sectors. Over the medium term, the department will prioritise the inclusion of rural areas in the economic activities of this country by providing social and economic opportunities to overcome the triple challenges associated with poverty, unemployment and inequality. It requires better planning and coordination in the provision of basic services, food security and rural town development.

The land reform landscape

One of the most critical areas of redress in South Africa is the issue of land. Throughout South Africa's history, dispossession of land has been systemic, embodied in policies such as the Native Land Act, 1913 (Act 27 of 1913), and the Group Areas Act, 1950 (Act 41 of 1950), during the apartheid era.

In 1994, it was estimated that 83% of agricultural land was owned by white capital. Therefore, from the onset of democracy, land reform as a mechanism for redress has been a focus of the South African Government, historically carried out by what is currently the DALRRD.

Over the past 25 years, there have been a number of policies and legislation put in place in order to implement land reform in South Africa. Predominantly, the national position on land reform has been a willing buyer-willing seller model mediated by government, coupled with a legal restitution process.

Despite headway made by both the restitution and redistribution programmes, it is estimated that only 9% of South African agricultural land has been redistributed, well below the initial target set of 30%.

While this target was adjusted down to 16.5 million ha (approximately 20%) in the NDP, there is still substantial work to be done by government to acquire land and redistribute it. To accelerate the land reform process, there has been a political shift to allow land expropriation without compensation.

In April 2021, government handed over 764 000 ha of land to the Covie community, in the Western Cape, after a successful land settlement claim – as part of efforts to accelerate land reform. The land is expected to positively impact 411 households' ability to gain financial freedom.

During the same month, over two million land claimants benefitted from land restitution, resulting in the transfer of around 2.7 million ha.

As of May 2021, a total of 436 563 ha of the 700 000 ha vacant stateowned land earmarked for the Land Distribution Programme had been released and approved for allocation, and over 5 540 ha of the land had been approved for disposal and the remainder for leasing.

The releasing of the state-owned land aims to address development pressures around urban and rural human settlements, agricultural production and industrial development. The process is targeted at vulnerable groups, and is expected to empower women, youth and people with disabilities.

To ensure that the land is productively used by beneficiaries, government is paying attention to the provision of effective post-

settlement support. It is focusing on improving the coordination of integrated post-settlement packages to beneficiaries of land, including finance, infrastructure and access to water resources for development.

Land Court Bill

In 2021, Cabinet approved the submission of the Land Court Bill to Parliament for processing. The Bill establishes a specialist Land Court, with its judgements, orders and decisions appealable at the proposed specialist Land Court of Appeal.

The Bill will resolve the challenges that were experienced under the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994, such as backlogs in land claims and dispute resolution mechanisms when disputes arise. It will also contribute immensely in the implementation of the Land Reform Programme.

The Bill seeks to ensure stronger judicial oversight over claims, which is expected to lead to better settlements, reduce the scope for corruption and avert the bundling of claims into dysfunctional megaclaims that lead to conflict. It also seeks to address the systemic hurdles that make it difficult for land claimants to obtain land restitution.

For instance, the Bill allows for hearsay evidence for families who have to rely on oral history and the existence of elders with knowledge of description, location and extent of land which their descendants previously occupied. It allows for expert evidence regarding historical and anthropological facts relevant to any particular land claim.

The Land Court Bill gives effect to the mandate of the Sixth Administration, namely; to ensure the country's approach to land reform is based on three elements – increased security of tenure, land restitution and land redistribution.

This Bill is a concrete intervention to improve the functioning of all three elements of land reform. It creates a policy framework to ensure that land reform is guided by sound legal and economic principles and contributes to the country's investment objectives and job creation initiatives.

Programmes and projects Agricultural Production, Biosecurity and Natural Resources Management

The programme oversees livestock production, game farming, animal and plant health, natural resources and disaster management. Its objectives include managing biosecurity and related sector risks.

Over the medium term, this will be achieved by conducting nine countrywide surveys of plant pests and diseases, in particular the exotic fruit fly, citrus greening disease and banana bunchy top virus, to manage their spread and incursion, and eradicating them, as well as conducting nine planned animal risk surveillance exercises on footand-mouth disease, ovine rinderpest and Newcastle disease.

In addition, the programme plans to ensure access to primary animal healthcare services through the implementation of compulsory community services by deploying 100% of veterinary graduates to rural areas by 2023/24. It will enforce an animal disease regulatory framework

to reduce the level of disease outbreaks and reduce interception at export channels in production areas to a minimum level by conducting three planned animal risk surveillance exercises on foot-and-mouth disease and goat plague in each year over the medium term.

Furthermore, the DALRRD will implement regulatory compliance and monitoring interventions to prevent plant and animal pest and disease outbreaks through quarantine inspections, surveillance, and testing and registration of products used in agriculture by 2023/24.

Food Security, Land Reform and Restitution

Under the programme, the DALRRD aims to acquire and redistribute land, and promote food security and agrarian reform. The programme's objectives include:

- redressing equitable access to land by conducting research and finalising land claims;
- coordinating the implementation of the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security by providing production inputs such as seeds and fertilisers, and cultivating underused land in communal areas over the medium term.
- improving delivery capacity in support of sustainable growth in the sector by implementing policies to develop capacity in agricultural sectors, such as the National Policy On Extension and Advisory Services, facilitating collaborations with commodity organisations to build the capacity of extension officers by the end of 2023/24 and providing strategic leadership and support, such as research, training and extension services, to targeted subsistence and smallholder producers by transforming all agricultural colleges into agricultural training institutions by the end of 2023/24.
- coordinating comprehensive support systems and programmes provided to producers by supporting subsistence and smallholder producers, supporting the commercialisation of smallholder producers through the blended finance model, placing unemployed agricultural graduates in farms and further supporting access to resources for agribusiness development.

The National Food and Nutrition Security Plan (NFNSP) 2017 – 2022 embodies a collective response by government to the challenges of food insecurity and malnutrition in the country. It reflects a common vision across government departments and entails a unified set of national goals and objectives, indicators and targets for monitoring progress and a common budget for implementation of activities.

It enables the country to address problems, such as hunger, malnutrition and micronutrient deficiencies that affect physical growth and cognitive development, especially among children, as directed by the NDP 2030.

The goal of the NFNSP is to implement a priority set of actions and establish the necessary institutional architecture to lead, coordinate, budget and monitor the implementation of these actions to deliver significant improvements in food and nutrition status by 2030.

The NFNSP actions are guided by six strategic objectives which were derived from a consultative process aimed at establishing a

governance and leadership system, to review current policies and strategies, reform the current duplicated and uncoordinated delivery of food and nutrition security (FNS) interventions and ensure the implementation of strategic and comprehensive FNS initiatives in a coordinated manner.

It also took into account the recommendations from Cabinet; the Policy on FNS, and the diagnostic/implementation evaluation of nutrition interventions for children from conception to five years, which compared South Africa to Brazil, Colombia, Malaysia, Malawi and Mozambique.

The DALRRD also worked with the private sector to develop the Agricultural Policy Action Plan (APAP), which plans to bring one million ha of underused land into full production over the next few years.

Through the APAP, the DALRRD aims to bring more smallholders into the mainstream as envisaged in the NDP.

However, the effective participation of the previously excluded black majority in agriculture and food production will only occur meaningfully when they have access to land and the means to work it.

An inclusive and scientific process will be used to assess the situation in terms of land capability for different commodities and in different localities, so as to inform land acquisition and allocation for different categories of producers across the country.

Rural Development

The purpose of the programme is to facilitate rural development strategies for socio-economic growth. Its objectives include promoting an integrated and inclusive rural economy through the coordination and implementation of rural development strategies over the medium term.

Economic Development, Trade and Marketing

The purpose of the programme is to promote economic development, trade and market access for agriculture products; and foster international relations for the sector. The programme's objectives, over the medium term, include:

- upskilling 600 agro-processing entrepreneurs by training them on food manufacturing norms and standards;
- increasing market access and maintaining existing markets by certifying and accrediting producers of fresh produce for exports through good agricultural practice certification and an accreditation programme;
- building national skills capabilities in international market research by providing for the transfer of marketing skills to small and medium agro-processing entrepreneurs;
- providing technical sector leadership in trade negotiations and implementing trade agreements to improve market access by linking producers to high-value markets; and
- ensuring shared growth by developing the agricultural value chain and improving market access.

Land Administration

The purpose of the programme is to provide and maintain an inclusive, effective and comprehensive system of planning, geospatial information and cadastral surveys; legally secure land tenure; and conduct land administration that promotes social, economic and environmental sustainability.

Over the medium term, the programme aims to ensure spatial transformation and efficient land administration by rolling out and implementing the electronic deeds registration system and reducing the number of days taken to process general plans, sectional plans and diagrams to 14 days.

The Braille atlas for the visually impaired is a first in South Africa and is primarily intended to give visually impaired people access to geospatial information.

Deeds registration

The core responsibility of South Africa's deeds registries is to:

- · register real rights in land;
- maintain a public land register;
- · provide registration information; and
- · maintain an archive of registration records.

There are deeds registries in Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Kimberley, King William's Town, Mthatha, Nelspruit, Pietermaritzburg, Pretoria and Vryburg.

These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 (Act 95 of 1986).

The Deeds Registry is open to any member of the public to access information regarding:

- · the registered owner of a property;
- · the conditions affecting such property;
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property:
- the purchase price of the property:
- · rules of a sectional title scheme;
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds:
- a copy of a sectional title plan;
- · township-establishment conditions; and
- · information relating to a property or deed.

Entities

Agricultural Land Holding Account

The Agricultural Land Holding Account was established in 2009 in terms of the Provision of Land and Assistance Act of 1993. The Act authorises the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development to purchase land to enable the DALRRD to accelerate the land redistribution process, acquire land in nodal areas and other areas of high agricultural potential, improve the process of identifying and selecting beneficiaries

and the planning of land on which people could be settled, and ensure the maximum productive use of land acquired.

Over the medium, the entity will focus on promoting equitable land redistribution and agricultural development by acquiring 110 850 ha of strategically located land, of which 50% is set to be allocated to women, 40% to young people, and 10% to people with disabilities.

Expenditure and revenue are both expected to amount to R3.5 billion over the period ahead, increasing at an average annual rate of 0.8%, from R867.1 million in 2021/22 to R888.4 million in 2024/25. The entity expects to derive 84.8% (R3 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department and the remainder through lease of land to farmers.

Agricultural Research Council

The ARC was established in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990) and is the main agricultural research institution in South Africa. The council's primary mandate is to conduct research and development, and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry, contribute to a better quality of life, and facilitate and ensure the conservation of natural resources.

Over the medium term, the council will focus on generating knowledge and technologies that will enhance the efficiencies of crop production, animal production and health, the management of natural resources, and research and development. Accordingly, it will prioritise the development of a foot-and-mouth disease vaccine production facility at an estimated cost of R235 million over the MTEF period to address the limited supply of these vaccines. Additional focus areas include maintaining national public goods assets such as gene banks, biobanks, natural science collections and vast living collections; and providing diagnostic and analytical services.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.5%, from R1.4 billion in 2021/22 to R1.5 billion in 2024/25. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 56.3% (R2.4 billion) of this spending, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.2%, from R783.2 million in 2021/22 to R811.3 million in 2024/25. Expenditure on goods and services constitutes an estimated 38.9% (R1.7 billion) of total expenditure over the period ahead.

Transfers from the department account for a projected 66.9% (R3.1 billion) of the council's total revenue over the medium term. Remaining revenue is generated through analytical services, research services, and the sale of farm products and rentals of premises.

The KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board

The KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Act, 1994 (Act 3KZN of 1994) makes provision for the 2.8 million ha of land spread across the province to be held in trust and managed on behalf of communities. The affairs of the trust are administered by the KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board, which was established in terms of the Act.

Over the medium term, the board will focus on improving the administration of land tenure, protecting land from illegal occupants

with assistance from traditional leaders, and encouraging spatial planning for integrated development, in line with government's service delivery priorities.

The board is responsible for providing land tenure rights to an estimated 4.5 million people living on 2.8 million ha of land under the jurisdiction of 241 traditional councils. It expects to grant 3 000 land tenure rights in the form of leases for commercial purposes at an estimated cost of R73.2 million over the MTEF period. This accounts for an estimated 81% of its expenditure over the period ahead.

The board expects to derive 81% (R73 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department and the remainder through income grants received from the Ingonyama Trust.

The Office of the Valuer-General

The Property Valuation Act, 2014 (Act 17 of 2014) prescribes that the Office of the Valuer-General must be impartial in exercising its powers and performing its functions, and be accountable to the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development. The Act states that the office must value all land to be acquired for the purpose of land reform in accordance with a defined set of criteria based on Section 25(3) of the Constitution.

The act states that the office must value all land to be acquired for land reform purposes in accordance with a prescribed set of criteria based on section 25(3) of the Constitution. Over the medium term, the office will continue to focus on valuing all land for land reform purposes and completing all requested valuations.

Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 47.4% (R182.9 million) of expenditure over the MTEF period, decreasing at an average annual rate of -5.4%, from R74.8 million in 2021/22 to R63.4 million in 2024/25. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.2%, from R131.8 million in 2021/22 to R162.2 million in 2024/25. The entity derives all its revenue, amounting to R424.7 million over the medium term, through transfers from the department.

Onderstepoort Biological Products

The entity was established as a public company in terms of the Onderstepoort Biological Products Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999). Its mandate is to prevent and control animal diseases that affect food security, human health and livelihoods by developing, manufacturing and commercialising animal vaccines, and ensuring food security through the promotion of animal health.

Over the medium term, the entity will continue to focus on developing and manufacturing vaccines and other related products to prevent and control animal diseases that impact on food security and animal health; and maintaining a reserve stock of vaccines for government, to be used in the event of an outbreak of animal diseases.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.4%, from R172.4 million in 2021/22 to R185 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 58.1% (R312

million) of this spending, increasing at an average annual rate of 5%, from R94.3 million in 2021/22 to R109.1 million in 2024/25. The entity generates revenue mainly from the sale and supply of livestock vaccines and uses it to fund its business operations. Revenue is projected to increase at an annual average rate of 5.5%, from R183.7 million in 2021/22 to R216 million in 2024/25, as the entity expects smallholder farmers to require greater access to vaccines and that there will be an increase in the sale of vaccines in the export market because of improved production and marketing.

National Agricultural Marketing Council

The National Agricultural Marketing Council derives its mandate from the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996), which provides for the authorisation, establishment and enforcement of regulatory measures to intervene in the marketing of agricultural products, including the introduction of statutory measures on agricultural products.

The council is primarily involved in conducting research and development in areas such as the cost of food, commodity value chains, trade policy, market opportunities, and models to integrate smallholder farmers into formal agricultural markets. As the council employs highly skilled personnel such as agricultural economists, scientists and researchers for this work, compensation of employees is the main cost driver, accounting for an estimated 67% (R105.6 million) of total expenditure over the medium term. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.2%, from R50.2 million in 2021/22 to R55.1 million in 2024/25.

The council expects to derive 94.6% (R150.6 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 3.4%, from R47.3 million in 2021/22 to R52.3 million in 2024/25.

Perishable Products Export Control Board

The PPECB is an independent service provider for quality assurance, food safety and cold chain management services for producers and exporters of perishable food products.

It is mandated by government in terms of the Perishable Products Export Control Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983), which broadly requires the board to ensure the orderly export of perishables and monitor the proper maintenance of a continuous cold chain for exports; and the Agricultural Products Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990), which broadly requires the board to monitor the minimum quality standards of perishable exports as required by government and bilateral agreements with importing countries.

To create cost and operational efficiencies over the MTEF period, the board will focus on developing its mobile platform to conduct electronic export certification and introduce an integrated enterprise resource plan system. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.1%, from R532.2 million in 2021/22 to R636.3 million in 2024/25. Expenditure is mainly driven by compensation of

employees and goods and services as the board continues to develop its technology in mobile electronic export certification. Compensation of employees accounts for 68.2% (R1.3 billion) of this expenditure over the MTEF period to support a workforce that is multiskilled, competent and consistent in its inspection activities.

The board expects to derive all its revenue, amounting to R1.8 billion over the medium term, through levies and tariffs charged on the export of perishable products, inspection services, laboratory services and export certification services.

The Registration of Deeds Trading Entity

The Deeds Registries Act of 1937 makes provision for the administration of the land registration system and the registration of rights to land.

The Act requires that deeds and documents are prepared and lodged in the deeds registry by a conveyancer or public notary and are scrutinised for accuracy and compliance with common law, case law and statutory law. The entity's main goal is to contribute to effective land planning, administration and property registration.

Over the medium term, the entity will seek to create a more secure, accessible, integrated, innovative, scalable, cost-effective and self-sustainable deeds registration system by implementing digital processes to provide accurate and reliable land administration and information. The system will also accommodate the registration or recording of other insecure land tenure rights, and lead to enhanced confidence in the country's land registration process. The development of the system is driven by the Electronic Deeds Registration Systems Act (2019).

Expenditure and revenue are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.2%, from R955.5 million in 2021/22 to R991.4 million in 2024/25. As the entity's work is labour intensive, compensation of its 1 529 employees accounts for an estimated 68% (R2.1 billion) of expenditure over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R657.9 million in 2021/22 to R734.3 million in 2024/25. The entity generates revenue mainly through selling deeds information and registering properties.

Role players

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights

The Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994 created the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights under a chief land claims commissioner and seven regional commissioners. In addition, the Act established the Land Claims Court to address land claims and other land-related issues though later amendments enabled an administrative process of settling claims with court referrals only in cases of dispute.

The DALRRD is authorised to administer the Act, including by negotiating on behalf of the State, acting as a respondent before the court, and managing the implementation and finances of the restitution process. Legally, all land claims are against the State and not against past or current landowners.

Consultants are extensively used as part of the pre-settlement of claims, and are a major cost driver in the restitution programme.

Agri-parks

The agri-parks initiative supports rural enterprises, develops rural industries and facilitates the efficient movement of rural produce to markets. The initiative develops networked systems of agro-production, processing, logistics, marketing, training and extension services in district municipalities and developments on underused land.

Each agri-park supports smallholder farmers by providing capacity-building, mentorship, farm infrastructure, extension services, and production and mechanisation inputs. Smallholder farmers own 70% of an agri-park, while the remainder is owned by government and commercial farmers.

Agri-parks are expected to contribute to government's targets of creating one million new jobs in rural economies by 2030.

Communal Property Associations (CPAs)

The CPAs Act, 1996 (Act 28 of 1996) is aimed at enabling communities to form juristic persons, to be known as CPAs – to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed upon by members of a community in terms of a written constitution and to provide for matters connected therewith.

The DALRRD has facilitated the establishment of CPA district forums to assist in the provision of support to the associations and serve as a platform for them to share experiences, approaches and lessons on how to handle matters.

Credit and assistance

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

Established in 1912, the Land Bank is a government-owned development finance institution with the mandate of financing agricultural development to achieve food security, and to drive economic growth and development in South African agricultural sector.

The bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services, including crop insurance, to established commercial farmers, developing farmers and agrienterprises.

Through its direct lending, the Land Bank currently supports approximately 1 500 black farmers and relinquished approximately R74 million of its profits to subsidise interest rates to these farmers.

The bank provided support to farmers impacted by the drought, disbursing more than R240 million in loans under its drought relief programme, administered in conjunction with the Industrial Development Corporation.

As part of its transformation objective, the Land Bank Insurance Company subsidiary launched and implemented the Agricultural Insurance Assessors Development Programme to train agricultural economist graduates (or equivalent) in crop insurance assessment protocols to service the agricultural sector. It is charged with promoting

agricultural and rural development, as well as providing a range of financial products and services, including crop insurance to farmers and agribusinesses.

Micro Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (MAFISA)

The MAFISA provides production loans to smallholder operators within the agriculture sector. The scheme's operations are guided by the MAFISA Credit Policy. Loans are provided at a low interest rate and accessed through a network of institutions accredited by the DALRRD as retail intermediaries.

Intermediaries submit monthly and quarterly reports to the DALRRD as part of its monitoring process. Regular workshops and inspection visits to intermediaries are also conducted as part of monitoring.

The scheme offers production loans of up to R500 000 per person, with the repayment terms structured according to the income cycle of the enterprise. The loans are limited to South African citizens who meet the eligibility criteria set in the MAFISA Credit Policy.

The MAFISA loans are available for the entire value chain of agriculture though most of the loans are still in respect of primary production and largely in agriculture. To date, most of the loans are in respect of livestock, sugar cane, vegetables and grain crops.

Currently, the MAFISA is accessed through the following intermediaries:

- National Emergent Red Meat Producer Organisation livestock in all provinces.
- South African Sugar Association sugar cane in KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga.
- Peulwana Agricultural Financial Services grains, vegetables, sugar cane and fruits in KwaZulu-Natal.
- Mpumalanga Economic Growth Agency various agricultural commodities in Mpumalanga.
- Eastern Cape Rural Development Agency various agricultural commodities in the Eastern Cape.

Farmers' organisations

Agri SA

Agri SA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. Its mission is to promote the development, profitability, stability and sustainability of agriculture in South Africa by means of its involvement and input on national and international policy and the implementation thereof.

Agri SA, through its affiliated membership, represents a diverse group of individual farmers. Agri SA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, taxation, financing, land reform, labour laws, training, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights and water pricing, other input-related issues, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government. Furthermore, the organisation maintains an extensive communication network with its members and

other affected communities, organisations and individuals. Agri SA is a member of high-level business, trade and agricultural entities that includes Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce, the World Farmers' Organisation, the Southern African Confederation of Agricultural Unions and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders.

Agri SA is committed to ensuring a safe environment for all people involved in the agricultural sector. A sound working relationship has been established with the SAPS at both policy and operational level, with a view of addressing the relevant rural safety problems.

Agricultural Business Chamber (Agbiz)

The Agbiz is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses operating in South Africa and southern Africa. The function of Agbiz is to ensure that agribusiness plays a constructive role in the country's economic growth, development and transformation, and to create an environment in which agribusinesses of all sizes and in all sectors can thrive, expand and be competitive.

The Agbiz is the only organisation that serves the broader and common overarching business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa. It addresses the legislative and policy environment on the many fronts that it impacts on the agribusiness environment. The Agbiz facilitates considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment.

The strategic intent of the Agbiz is to advocate for and facilitate a favourable agribusiness environment in order for its members to perform competitively and sustainably.

Transvaal Agricultural Union of South Africa

The TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of property rights, economic issues, and safety and security. The TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa

The NAFU SA is an independent, autonomous farmers organisation governed by and representing farmers in South Africa, united for the purpose of analysing their problems and formulating action to achieve economic emancipation and development through production efficiencies, access to market opportunities and education.

It was formed in 1991 as part of the broader process of economic liberation and empowerment of, mainly, black farmers who were excluded from mainstream economic landscape of South Africa. Its predecessor, the National African Chamber of Commerce and Industry, for many years had fought against economic oppression and marginalisation of African people in this country.

Over many years, the union has acted as an advocacy and pressure group calling for policy reforms and the support and development of

farmers. Through its interventions and contribution to policy formulation, the NAFU SA has contributed to the following:

- · access to productive land being made available to farmers;
- · access to finance and other support for farmers;
- · access to markets and information for farmers; and
- · skills development and technical support.

The NAFU SA pursues these items by implementing the following broad programmes:

- · advocacy, lobbying and policy research,
- · cooperatives and commodity group development, and
- · farm enterprise development.

African Farmers' Association of South Africa (AFASA)

The objectives of AFASA are to create a sustainable united body of African farmers with capacity to influence policies through lobbying and advocacy, to facilitate development of competencies of African farmers in order for them to participate meaningfully in formal and informal markets, and to mobilise resources for the benefit of African farmers.

Grain SA

Grain SA was established in June 1999. Its mission is to provide commodity strategic support and services to South African grain producers, as well as to support sustainability.

Grain SA is a voluntary association of grain farmers established to represent the interests of its members. It aims to be recognised as an autonomous and independent grain producers' organisation.

The organisation also aims to be involved in all matters bearing on the well-being of the industry and to be consulted about policy issues relating to the industry. The association is controlled by farmers and structured to ensure members' democratic control over their elected office bearers.

Female Entrepreneur Awards

The Female Entrepreneur Awards are a joint venture between the provincial departments of agriculture and key partners in the sector. They honour female farmers and recognise their role in the sector and their entrepreneurial skills in mainstream agriculture, forestry and fisheries. The major thrust of the awards is to underline the fact that women play a significant role in food security, job creation, economic growth and poverty alleviation.

World Food Day

World Food Day provides an occasion to highlight the plight of 870 million undernourished people in the world. Most of them live in rural areas where their main source of income is agriculture. Global warming and the biofuel boom are now threatening to push the number of hungry even higher.

South Africa joins the world in marking World Food Day on 16 October every year, to highlight the plight of millions of undernourished people in the world. World Food Day is commemorated annually around the world in remembrance of the founding of the Food and Agriculture

Organisation in 1945. In South Africa, October has been declared Food Security Month. The objective of Food Security Month is to create a platform for heightening public awareness on issues pertaining to food security in the country. World Food Day 2021 w celebrated under the theme; "Our actions are our future. Better production, better nutrition, a better environment and a better life".

Regional and international cooperation and trade Regional cooperation

South Africa has strong and mutually dependent economic links with countries in southern Africa through the SADC and the Southern African Customs Union (SACU) regions.

As a contribution to the African regional development, the DALRRD continues to implement South Africa's foreign policy objectives, through the facilitation of the SADC and African Union engagements and implementation of the South-South Cooperation.

The International Relations Strategy is an instrument put into place to interact with various sector stakeholders at regional and international level in support of producers to access international markets.

Regional trade

South Africa, as a member of the SACU and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with other nations in the region. The SACU opened its markets to the countries of the SADC region by implementing its tariff reduction commitments under the SADC Trade Protocol.

The signatories to the SADC Trade Protocol are Botswana, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, Eswatini, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Angola and the Democratic Republic of Congo are still in the process of acceding to the protocol.

The first objective of the trade protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade between SADC countries The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers, in which the DALRRD is involved as a contact point to receive traders' complaints.

South African agriculture products continue to benefit from the Tripartite Free Trade Area Agreement of the SADC, Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa and the East African Community.



SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Communications and Digital Technologies

Communications and Digital Technologies

The Department of Communications and Digital Technologies (DCDT) is mandated to enable South Africa's digital transformation to achieve inclusion and economic growth by creating relevant policy and regulatory environment. This is done through the implementation of the 2016 National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper, which provides for the participation of multiple stakeholders for inclusive digital transformation; interventions to reinforce competition and facilitate innovation across the value chain; measures to address issues raised by information and communications technology (ICT) and convergence; and the establishment of a new national postal policy framework. It also provides for policies to address the digital divide and affordable access, supply-side issues and infrastructure roll out, and demand-side issues to facilitate inclusivity.

Over the medium term, the department will mainly focus on implementing the Broadcasting Digital Migration Policy to release high-demand spectrum, which will aid socioeconomic development and bridge the digital divide; rolling out broadband to government facilities through the South Africa Connect project; and implementing the legislative programme to support the 2016 National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper.

Broadcasting digital migration

To fast-track the Broadcasting Digital Migration Project, the department has revised its delivery model. All analogue transmitters were expected to have been shut down by the end of 2021/22. The bulk of funding for this project has been transferred to the Universal Service and Access Fund and the South African Post Office (SAPO) in previous financial years and has been retained by the entities with approval from National Treasury where required. As a result, spending in the Broadcasting Digital Migration subprogramme in the ICT Infrastructure Development and Support programme is expected to decrease from R1.3 billion in 2021/22 to R84.1 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 59.5%.

Rolling out broadband through South Africa Connect

The department will continue to provide broadband connectivity to government facilities through the South Africa Connect Project, which will be supported by relevant state-owned entities. Accordingly, at a projected cost of R744 million over the MTEF period in the Broadband subprogramme in the ICT Infrastructure Development and Support programme, the department will monitor and maintain the provision of broadband services to 970 government buildings that have already been connected.

Supporting and enabling legislative environment

The department will continue to provide a supporting and enabling legislative environment through the development of relevant policies, strategies and legislation. Over the MTEF period, this will include finalising the Audio-Visual White Paper; providing policy direction

on discontinuing the local production of and importing analogue television sets; drafting and finalising the Digital Transformation Bill, the ICT Regulatory Reform Bill, and the State Digital Infrastructure Company Bill; and providing policy direction for the deployment of 5G. Expenditure for these activities is within an allocation of R155.5 million over the period ahead in the ICT Policy Development and Research programme.

White Paper on Audio and Visual Content Services Policy Framework

In September 2020, Cabinet approved the draft *White Paper on Audio and Visual Content Services Policy Framework*. This White Paper is necessary as there is a growing need to level the playing field between traditional broadcasting, on-demand services providers – these include catch-up TV service, video on-demand services as well as news portals – and video-sharing platforms.

This White Paper proposes policy and regulatory changes and makes recommendations to reposition the audio-visual media sector for future growth and investment promotion. It also emphasises the review of:

- sports broadcasting rights matters,
- · promotion of foreign direct investment within the broadcasting sector,
- licensing of the over-the-top services (OTT),
- competition issues in relation to pay-TV and free-to-air markets,
- availability of spectrum for the transmission of audio-visual content, and
- skills development to fast-track digital transformation within the audio-visual sector.

Legislation

The DCDT derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999), as amended, which establishes a broadcasting policy in South Africa;
- the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), as amended, which provides the legal framework for convergence in the broadcasting, broadcasting signal distribution, and telecommunications sectors. It also allows for the granting of new licensees and social obligations; the control of the radio frequency spectrum; and the regulation of electronic communication network services, electronic communication services, and broadcasting services:
- Film and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996), as amended, which
 provides for the classification of certain films and publications, and
 establishes the Film and Publication Board (FPB) and Tribunal;
- Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) Act, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000), which establishes the regulator in the sector; and
- Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998), as amended, which makes provision for the regulation of postal services.

Budge

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DCDT was allocated 3.9 billion. The department has a budget of R7.7 billion over the medium term, of which 72.2% (R5.4 billion) is allocated for transfers to entities for their operations, and for project-specific funding. Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 13.3%, from R3.9 billion in

2021/22 to R2.5 billion in 2024/25 because of a one-off allocation of R1.1 billion in 2021/22 for the broadcasting digital migration project. The department's second largest cost driver is compensation of employees, spending on which increases at an average annual rate of 1%, from R295.8 million in 2021/22 to R304.4 million in 2024/25. The number of personnel is expected to decrease from 379 in 2021/22 to 376 in 2024/25 in line with the new organisational structure, which is expected to be finalised over the medium term. This is also expected to enable the department to remain within its expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees.

Impact of COVID-19 on the ICT sector

The pandemic has affected several industries across the globe — with ICT being one of them. The industry witnessed a dynamic change during these times, with some of the technologies finding new applications and others witnessing an all-time low.

The ICT sector has proved to be the pillar of many economies, both developed and developing countries. With that realisation, many organisations have made investments into the sector, from new Internet service providers to postal services companies, and TV and radio broadcasters. Nevertheless, it is important that the sector focuses on adopting the 4IR.

Technologies that gained traction during the period include OTT services, video conferencing technology, artificial intelligence (AI), video streaming platforms, team collaboration software, mobile security technology, video on demand market and cloud gaming market amongst others. Technologies that witnessed a dip in sales and applications include industry 4.0 market, wireless sensors market, robotic process automation market and the radar sensor market.

With organisations promoting working remotely, there is already an exponential rise in video calls/phone calls, as an increasing number of people are organising meetings via applications (apps) or collaboration platforms. Digital media and OTT content players are benefiting while virtual private networks, cybersecurity, and data security are other technologies that will see a surge as most workforces are operating remotely.

Cloud services is further expected to grow, boosted by higher usage of content, gaming downloads, video conferencing, and the impact of remote access to corporate networks. There will also be an increased focus on technologies like AI, big data, augmented reality and virtual reality, among others going forward.

Other areas where there is an uptake include e-learning, online education, and e-governance. As shoppers self-isolate and avoid crowded areas, the clear winner is the e-commerce sector, with digital payment taking over a lot faster than the physical payment options.

The media industry (both traditional broadcasters and newer streaming platforms) are playing a vital role during the pandemic in providing correct and responsible health information to the public, with search engines and social media platforms. In terms of the morale of those isolated, access to the wealth of quality content available is important.

The current circumstances may also accelerate the adoption of 5G to meet the demands of bandwidth, performance and network slicing. There will be more focus on the sufficiency of networks to carry the significantly increased traffic as working from home continues to ramp up. Social distancing and self-isolation mean that telecommunication

has become an elevated essential service. Communications service providers – both mobile network operators and cable operators, should be able to meet the challenge of their new critical role in the changed world. Access to ICT goods and services in South Africa continues to grow. Household access to mobile telephony has reached a plateau, closing in on universal service, with over 96% of households reporting one or more members having cellphones. Fixed-line telephony access continues to shrink, with households using them to supplement communications.

The level of household Internet access is far lower, with some households reporting one or more members having access to or using the Internet. However, most of this access takes place using mobile devices, with just over 10% of households reporting Internet access at home

Telecommunications sector

The telecommunications sector is a critical part of modern lifestyles and has significant influence on the growth of the country's economy as it strengthens productivity levels. South Africa's telecommunications sector has continued to grow despite the economic challenges faced by the nation. Mobile subscriptions and Internet penetration, and other related services continue to grow. South Africa's fibre network and data centre markets are expanding rapidly.

The ICASA continues to work on regulatory initiatives aimed at reducing the cost to communication and engaged with the Competition Commission on its final findings and recommendations report for the data services market inquiry. The purpose of the inquiry was to investigate the cause and reason for alleged high prices for data services in South Africa, and to make recommendations that would lead to lower prices for data services.

Mobile subscriptions, device ownership, and Internet penetration continues to grow, and the majority of service revenue growth is due to double-digit increases in the value of data. South Africa's fibre and data centre markets are expanding rapidly.

Telecommunications companies are having to adapt to widespread disruption; the structural shift from voice to data is impacting traditional margins and increases in data traffic are being offset by a proportional decline in effective data prices. The market is maturing, and operators are having to compete to grow their share of the prepaid and lower-income markets, from which the majority of future growth is expected to come. Investment in the sector is highly influenced by South Africa's poor economic growth, regulatory changes and technological developments.

Broadcasting sector

The broadcasting sector plays a very important role in education, entertainment and informing the public through radio and TV (both public and commercial broadcasting). The sector has been affected by the rapid changes in technology, which are changing the broadcasting landscape. The process of migrating broadcasting signals from analogue to digital is expected to clear the radio frequency spectrum currently occupied by broadcasters to enable the provision of wireless mobile broadband services and other innovative applications.

While broadcasting revenues continue to grow annually, on-demand audio and video online streaming services are causing significant disruptions in the broadcasting sector globally and will offer serious

competition to South African broadcasters in the near future. The digital revolution sweeping video entertainment is affecting community TV stations, free-to-air and public broadcasters, while subscription TV services are having to adapt to keep up with these developments.

Local broadcasters are planning or implementing new business models to integrate their offerings with digital platforms. The sector was undermined by sustainability concerns and numerous issues at the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC). The delays in digital migration also had an impact. Meanwhile, the DCDT is prioritizing interventions towards final analogue switch-off.

While TV and radio revenues continue to grow, streaming services such as DStv's Showmax, Netflix and Amazon Prime Video are disrupting traditional broadcasting. The dramatic digital revolution sweeping video entertainment is affecting community TV stations, free-to-air, public broadcasters and subscription TV services. Traditional TV and pay-TV are facing a threat of survival. The radio sector is faced with an increase in audio content created for online delivery and via mobile phones and an increase in non-traditional players entering the market.

Postal Services sector

The postal services sector contributes 3.16% to the country's gross domestic product. This includes the courier and express parcel services. Letter post is declining both in terms of volumes and its percentage contribution to revenue that is generated in the sector. The trend for the decline in letter mail volumes is attributed to the electronic substitution effects. Through identification and review of legislative gaps in the postal sector, there is an emphasis for the sector to ensure that postal outlets offer connectivity through Internet services.

Although the courier, express and parcel services sector faces weak economic conditions, it is benefitting from the growth in e-commerce sales, increasing demand for just-in-time deliveries and from the service provided by the post office. Increasing customer demand for speedy and flexible deliveries and the growth of disruptive start-ups and innovative delivery options are forcing traditional operators to review their distribution strategies and in some cases partner with or invest in new disruptive on-demand delivery organisations to provide innovative and alternative delivery options.

While the poor economy, low business and consumer confidence are affecting the volume of goods requiring express delivery, the development of the on-demand economy is providing growth drivers for the industry. These include the need for speedy deliveries created by the rise in online shopping, service delivery levels from the Post Office, the need for just-in-time delivery of parts and components to minimise stock levels and save costs and delivery demands for medical products.

The continuous development of drones, robots and autonomous vehicles are driving ongoing change in the industry.

Entities

Broadband Infraco (BBI)

The BBI's legislative mandate, which is set out in the BBI Act, 2007 (Act 33 of 2007), is to provide ICT infrastructure and broadband capacity in South Africa. Its main objectives are to expand the availability and affordability of access to electronic communications, including but not limited to, underdeveloped and underserviced areas; to ensure that the

bandwidth requirements for specific projects of national interest are met; and to enable the State to provide affordable access to electronic communications networks and services.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on becoming financially and operationally sustainable. This will involve obtaining access to additional infrastructure, investment and funding, which will assist its growth and enable it to offer customers better network and connectivity. Structural changes such as working from home and delivering education online have resulted in greater cost efficiencies. The entity will harness these insights to optimise its business model; review its operating model; and implement improved processes, systems, structures and governance. Over the MTEF period, the entity plans to facilitate the connection of 713 government sites to broadband and maintain the time taken to restore faults on the core network at 7.5 hours.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R734.8 million in 2021/22 to R820 million in 2024/25. This is mainly due to increased spending on goods and services, which accounts for an estimated 53.9% (R1.3 billion) of the company's total expenditure over the MTEF period. Revenue is derived mainly from rendering connectivity services and is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.5%, from R914.2 million in 2021/22 to R929.1 million in 2024/25.

Film and Publications Board

The FPB was established in terms of the Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996), as amended, and is listed as a schedule 3A public entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). Its mandate is to regulate the creation, production, possession and distribution of certain publications and films by classifying them; imposing age restrictions on content; and rendering the exploitative use of children in pornographic publications, films or online material punishable.

Over the medium term, the board plans to improve its productivity by automating registration processes to allow distributors to register online; review its classification guidelines to align them with societal norms and standards; and deploy compliance monitors to conduct 21 000 inspections at all identified distributors of content to ensure their compliance with relevant legislation.

To carry out these activities, expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.7%, from R116.8 million in 2021/22 to R138 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees is the board's main cost driver, accounting for an estimated 53.1% (R207 million) of its expenditure over the MTEF period.

The board expects to derive 81.4% (R315.3 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department and the remainder through fees for classification and registration. Revenue is expected to be in line with expenditure over the medium term.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

The authority was established by the ICASA Act of 2000 to regulate the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sectors. It is listed as a Schedule 1 public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999, and is a Chapter 9. It derives its mandate from the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 to license and regulate electronic communications and broadcasting services, and the Postal Services Act of 1998 to license and regulate the postal services sector.

The authority is empowered to monitor licensee compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations for the three sectors, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers in relation to these services. The authority plans to issue 13 community television licences per year over the medium term and monitor 255 broadcasting licences. In its efforts to protect consumers against unfair practices by service providers over the period ahead, the authority plans to develop 6 tariff analysis reports and resolve an average of 85% of consumer complaints.

In addition, to increase competition in the telecommunications and broadcasting sectors, various projects are planned over the period, including finalising regulations on the subscription television broadcasting market and developing regulations on call termination.

To increase access to quality broadband services, the authority plans to implement the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and develop a monitoring report on the impact of the deployment of 5G in the ICT sector. Additional funding of R300 million in 2022/23 is earmarked for strengthening regulatory capacity and licensing spectrum for international mobile telecommunications, specifically wireless broadband services.

Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.7%, from R524.3 million in 2021/22 to R513.5 million in 2024/25, because of one-off funding of R48.2 million in 2021/22 for the licensing of spectrum. As the authority requires highly specialised personnel to conduct its work, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 67% (R1.1 billion) of expenditure over the MTEF period. The moratorium on the filling of vacant posts is expected to be maintained over the period ahead to remain within the expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees.

The authority receives all (R1.7 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to decrease in line with expenditure.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA)

The NEMISA was established as a non-profit institute for education in terms of the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008), and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999.

Its programmes were initially structured to enhance the market readiness of students in broadcasting, but its mandate has been expanded to include the development of South Africans' e-skills capacity. The institute is also responsible for the implementation of e-skills programmes in collaboration with its partners.

Over the medium term, the institute will continue to implement its operating model and digital skills agenda in collaboration with government, businesses, civil society and the education sector. Identified e-skills priority areas include government e-enablement, creative new media industries, e-inclusion and social innovation. Accordingly, over the medium term, the institute aims to provide specialist technology skills to 9 400 citizens and train 370 000 learners in e-literacy.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.1%, from R98.5 million in 2021/22 to R111.2 million in 2024/25. Goods and services, mainly rental costs for office space and in-house training, account for an estimated 38.4% (R121.6 million) of expenditure over medium term, while transfers and subsidies to higher education institutions to fund e-skills projects account for an estimated 27.3% (R85.9 million). The institute derives all its revenue through transfers

from the department. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure over the period ahead.

Sentec

Sentech was established in terms of the Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996), and is listed as a Schedule 3B public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. It is responsible for providing broadcasting signal distribution services to licensed TV and radio broadcasters. In 2002, following the deregulation of the telecommunications sector, Sentech was granted two additional licences, allowing the entity to provide international voice-based telecommunications and multimedia services.

Over the MTEF period, the entity will continue to develop new and innovative digital solutions in response to shifts in consumer behaviour and preferences; expand its radio network; improve its existing infrastructure; and conclude the process of shutting down analogue transmitters in the migration to digital, which is expected to be completed by 31 March 2022. Accordingly, the entity will ensure that it provides digital television coverage to 85% of households each year over the medium term, and that digital terrestrial television is available for 99% of households.

Sentech plans to spend R1.1 billion on the acquisition of property, plant and equipment over the MTEF period. Goods and services account for an estimated 37.6% (R1.5 billion) of expenditure over the period ahead, mostly for service expenses such as satellite costs. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 25.9% (R1 billion) of the entity's budget, spending on which is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.1%, from R1.5 billion in 2021/2 to R1.4 billion in 2024/25. This is due to a moratorium on the filling of vacant posts arising from resignations.

The entity expects to derive 93.8% (R4.1 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through television, radio and streaming services rendered to customers, and the remainder through other sources such as rental income. Revenue is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.3%, from R1.5 billion in 2021/22 to R1.4 billion in 2024/25, because of the analogue signal network being switched off, resulting in television revenue decreasing slightly before recovering again.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC derives its mandate from the Broadcasting Act of 1999 and is listed as a Schedule 2 public entity in the PFMA of 1999. The corporation is mandated to provide broadcasting and information services through a wide range of programming that displays South African talent in educational and entertainment programmes; offer diverse views through a variety of news, information and analysis; and advance national and public interests through popular sports.

Over the medium term, the corporation will continue to transform its programming, operations and management. It will also explore other revenue opportunities through the introduction of its own streaming and satellite services and seek to increase revenue generated from advertising. The corporation will work with the department on legislative and regulatory interventions to assist with its long-term sustainability and will continue to focus on implementing its turnaround plan to ensure financial sustainability.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.4%, from R7 billion in 2021/22 to R8.5 billion in 2024/25, driven by

increased investment in content, audience research and broadcasting costs. Compensation of the corporation's estimated 2 699 employees accounts for 33% (R7.7 billion) of its projected spending over the medium term. As the corporation is mostly self-funding, transfers from the department account for an estimated 2.9% (R663.2 million) of revenue over the medium term, while proceeds from television licence fees account for an estimated 15.9% (R3.8 billion). The remaining 81.2% (R20.2 billion) is expected to be generated by advertising and other commercial activities. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.9%, from R6.4 billion in 2021/22 to R8.8 billion in 2024/25.

South African Post Office

The SAPO is a Schedule 2 public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. It is a government business enterprise established to provide postal and related services to the public, and derives its mandate from the Postal Services Act of 1998 and the the SAPO state-owned company Limited Act, 2011 (Act 22 of 2011).

The Postal Services Act of 1998 grants the post office an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services in the reserved sector for items such as letters, postcards and parcels less than one kilogram. This Act makes provision for the regulation of postal services and the operational functions of the postal company, including universal service obligations.

Over the medium term, the post office will continue to provide universal access to postal and related services, focusing on courier services, postal services, financial services and e-commerce. The COVID-19 pandemic and subsequent lockdown restrictions resulted in a slowing down of the post office's business activities, which negatively affected revenue in 2020/21 and 2021/22. Accordingly, over the period ahead, the post office plans to focus on the implementation of its revised turnaround strategy to improve its financial position.

A total of R1.6 billion over the MTEF period is allocated to fund the post office's public service mandate. This will enable it to maintain 1 979 points of presence, including post offices and retail postal agencies, and provide postal services in areas that have been historically neglected. Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 4.8%, from R7 billion in 2020/21 to R6 billion in 2024/25.

This is mainly due to a decrease in spending on compensation of employees, from R4 billion in 2021/22 to R2.7 billion in 2024/25, due to the staff optimisation project, which will see the number of employees decrease from 16 275 in 2021/22 to a projected 10 254 in 2024/25. The post office derives its revenue from providing postal and courier services, and from fees for financial transactions.

Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.7%, from R5.5 billion in 2021/22 to R6.3 billion in 2024/25, due to expected opportunities in the government sector and the unreserved market in which the post office competes with the private sector.

In an effort to ensure that all South Africans have access to telecommunications and government services during the COVID-19 pandemic, the ICASA assigned temporary radio frequency spectrum to mobile network operators. The DCDT working with the departments of the Basic Education and Higher Education and Training and, in partnership with mobile network operators and internet service providers, approved 471 local websites to be zero-rated for educational purposes.

The zero-rated websites include technical and vocational education and training colleges, universities, basic education sites and sites that provide information which could help South Africans contain the spread of the pandemic.

Zero rating of telecommunications and data services for health, education and public service pronouncements is a very important intervention to empower society and the youth, in particular, to mitigate the negative impact of COVID-19 on their education prospects.

This will continue to help provide up-to-date and accurate medical information, statistics, as well as information about new government regulations.

State Information Technology Agency (SITA)

The agency was established through the SITA Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998), and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity. The agency is mandated to provide IT, information systems and related services to and on behalf of government departments and organs of state. This includes the provision and maintenance of transversal information and data-processing systems and their associated services, the maintenance of secure information systems, and the execution of its functions according to approved policies and standards.

Over the medium term, the agency will focus on its financial sustainability, and has reconfigured its strategic programmes to complement the objectives of the national economic reconstruction and recovery plan. In line with this focus, it will continue to seek collaborations with the industry and learning institutions to create relevant and useful content and seek to build innovation capital by encouraging initiatives such as hackathons among the public.

The agency will also partner with local research institutions to develop innovative digital solutions for government and focus on information and cybersecurity to ensure that the state and its citizens are able to transact, communicate and interface within a secure and safe environment.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.8%, from R6.2 billion in 2021/22 to R7 billion in 2024/25. Goods and services accounts for an estimated 61.2% (R12.2 billion) of expenditure over the medium term, mostly for the provision of IT services, whereas compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 33.5% (R6.7 billion). As the implementation of strategic projects – such as South Africa Connect, cloud infrastructure and the Gauteng broadband network – require substantial capital investment, R1.5 billion is allocated for the acquisition of assets over the MTEF period.

The agency generates revenue by providing ICT infrastructure and services to government departments and organs of state. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.3%, from R6.2 billion in 2021/22 to R7.1 billion in 2024/25.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA)

The USAASA was established in terms of Section 80 of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 as a statutory body and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. Its sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications services, electronic communications network services and broadcasting services.

The agency is allocated a total budget of R263.7 million over the MTEF period, which is derived through transfers from the department. These funds will mostly be used to manage the implementation of the broadcasting digital migration project. Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 20%, from R177.1 million in 2021/22 to R90.8 million in 2024/25, because of additional funding for the broadcasting digital migration project, which was earmarked for the SAPO to cover distribution costs, coming to an end in 2021/22.

Universal Service and Access Fund

The USAF was established in terms of Section 89 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005, and is listed as a Schedule 3A public entity in the PFMA of 1999. The fund's sole mandate is to subsidise ICT equipment and services, and electronic communications and broadcasting networks for needy people in underserviced areas. The fund is managed by the USAASA.

Over the medium term, the fund will focus on concluding the broadcasting digital migration project, which will ensure the release of much-needed spectrum. In line with the president's 2021 State of the Nation Address, analogue transmission is set to be shut down and switched to digital on 31 March 2022. As such, the fund will focus on providing aftermarket support for the installation of set-top boxes, supporting the objectives of the revised analogue switch-off plan adopted by Cabinet in September 2021, and funding the operational costs and the maintenance of the national call centre established to support broadcasting digital migration. The fund will also provide 850 sites in underserviced areas with internet connectivity and maintain these connections over the period ahead.

The fund is allocated R386.7 million over the medium term, mostly for implementing activities related to broadcasting digital migration. These funds will be supplemented with transfers that have been made to the fund in previous financial years and retained with the approval of National Treasury in terms of section 53(3) of the Public Finance Management Act (1999). Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 10.2%, from R183.5 million in 2021/22 to R133.1 million in 2024/25, as the one-off allocations for broadcasting digital migration conclude in 2021/22. The fund derives all its revenue through transfers from the department and has no personnel.

Programmes and projects National e-Government Strategy and Roadmap

The e-government or digital government concept is the innovative use of communications technologies (including mobile devices), websites, apps and other ICT services and platforms to link citizens and the public sector, and facilitate collaborative and efficient governance. ICT is perceived as a key enabler to governments globally, in efforts to deliver better services and efficiency while enhancing their relationship with citizens and business.

The National Development Plan stipulates that by 2030, government will make extensive use of ICT to engage with and provide services to citizens. This will be achieved through an enabling coordinated and integrated e-Strategy that cuts across government departments and sectors.

The purpose of the National e-Government Strategy and Roadmap is to guide the digital transformation of South Africa into an inclusive digital society where all citizens can benefit from the opportunities offered by digital technologies to improve their quality of life. This strategy defines a renewed approach and programme of action that will radically improve the electronic government situation in South Africa.

Fourth Industrial Revolution (4IR)

The 4IR has necessitated that countries develop new policies, strategies and innovation plans to enable an inclusive developmental approach that will comprise of the representatives of a cross section of stakeholders, including the public sector, business, academia and research institutions, experts, labour, SMMEs, youth, women and non-governmental organisations. In essence, South African policies, strategies and plans should seek to advance the goals of inclusivity and shared growth. A core short-term focus of South Africa's national response will be on the impact of the changing technological landscape on the economy and employment.

The country needs a more broad-based approach that looks at threats and opportunities that technological change and

convergence will have on South Africa's other development imperatives. This includes economic infrastructure, environmental sustainability and transitioning to a low-carbon economy, an integrated and inclusive rural economy, human settlements, education, training and innovation, health, social protection, safer communities, and building a capable and developmental state.

The DCDT's priorities are anchored in an endeavour to prepare South Africa for the 4IR. Key initiatives in this regard included coordinating the establishment of the Presidential Advisory Commission on the 4IR to ensure that the country is in a position to seize opportunities and manage the challenges of rapid advances in ICT. The commission acts as an advisory body that ensures that South Africa leverages on the benefits of the latest technology by coordinating and planning across the industries and sectors that will underpin the drive towards the 4IR.

Its work is centred on eight work streams dealing with the impact of technological advancement on human capital and the future of work as well as social and economic development.

The 30-member commission, chaired by President Cyril Ramaphosa, comprises eminent persons from different sectors of society and reflects a balance in gender, youth, labour and business, including digital start-ups as well as digital entrepreneurships.

The commission's objectives are to:

- develop an integrated country strategy and plan to respond to 4IR, including detailed interventions to be carried out achieving global competitiveness of the key economic sectors (agriculture, finance, mining, manufacturing, ICT, and science, technology and innovation);
- advise on a technology research and development programme to advance 4IR;
- · advise on strategies for skills development and future of work;
- make recommendations on enabling relevant infrastructure for the country to participate in the digital economy; and

 make recommendations on an institutional framework and mechanism to coordinate 4IR programmes.

The commission also serves as a platform to address challenges identified through research and consultation, and ensures that ICTs are regarded as drivers in creating jobs, through innovations and development of ICT SMMEs.

The 4IR Commission Report, published in 2020, has identified eight key priorities that are important for the country to focus on, both for government and the private sector, as well as civil society. Among the areas of focus highlighted in the report is investment in human capital, establishing an AI institute and the establishment of a platform for advanced manufacturing. The report also highlighted the importance of government to secure data for it to be used commercially for, among others, innovation by small businesses. The commission recommended that government incentivise future industries, platforms and application technologies.

4IR ICT Skills Programme

The DCDT, through the Media, Information and Communication Technology Sector Education and Training Authority, has launched the 4IR Skills Programme as part of its efforts to create one million new jobs by 2030.

The programme, which provides skills in key 4IR domains namely; data science, 3D printing, cloud computing, drone piloting, software development, cyber security and digital content production, is in partnership with Deviare, Microsoft, Cisco and Leaders in Motion Academy. Deviare has developed an online platform 4IRSkills.Africa to initiate recruitment of learners for the programme. 4IRSkills.Africa is an active platform for building the capability and capacity for future digital skills that can be applied across sectors in African.

The learning methodology promotes blended, high touch and outcome-oriented learning, giving learners the opportunity to access training anywhere anytime through virtual classrooms, access to global teaching assistants and mentorship programmes.

National Digital and Future Skills Strategy

The combined impact of digital technology trends, such as the Internet of Things (IoT), big data, robotics, and AI, is changing the ways in which people, economies and societies operate. The ability of countries, organisations and individuals to participate in the growing social and economic revolution, to benefit from and to be enriched by it, increasingly depends on the acquisition and deployment of digital skills.

Globally and locally, the mining, manufacturing and services sectors are in the process of being transformed by digital automation, Al and a range of other digital technologies. Furthermore, government entities, private sector firms and development institutions increasingly rely on digital technologies to drive economic growth, promote social development and provide cultural enrichment.

Legacy skills, and even existing ICT skills, are becoming obsolete, while new digital skills are in short supply. This means that countries seeking to advance the competitiveness of their key economic sectors and public services need to adopt a continual skills upgrade approach, where both ordinary citizens and research specialists acquire and advance their digital skills as part of a broad spectrum of 21st century skills. The whole of society must become digitally adoptive and digitally adaptive to ensure digital inclusivity for future generations.

The challenges implied by these ongoing developments, therefore, requires that South Africa adopts a clear and comprehensive digital and future skills strategy in order to foster the country's ability to engage with, compete within, and benefit from the emergent digital revolution, also referred to as the 4IR.

The National Digital and Future Skills Strategy envisages a society of digitally skilled South Africans. It sets out a structured series of initiatives intended to contribute to the capacities of South Africans to meet the challenges arising from the increasing deployment and adoption of digital technologies in economy and society, understanding that the digital revolution (using cloud technologies that enable big data; bringing virtual and augmented reality into a real world environment; introducing autonomous vehicles and drones; making IoT, AI, robotics and 3D printing part of everyday life) occurs within the context of the broader 4IR (working with advanced materials, biotechnology innovations, and the wider landscape of scientific innovation).

The combined impact of these technology trends is having a substantial impact on the world of work, on schooling, education and research, individuals and communities. The strategy presents a vision of a South Africa in which all its people are able to benefit from enhanced digital skills, thereby contributing to a significantly enhanced quality of life, improved education and higher economic growth.

Digital skills are one of the key skills sets required for the creation of new kinds of 21st century jobs. Originality, agility, critical thinking and problem-solving are important 21st century skills that must be interwoven with digital skills.

The strategy elements needed to realise that the digital skills vision will need to be undertaken by a range of stakeholders, including government, private sector, and educational institutions, who should engage in continuous, structured consultation, collaboration and coordination involving all stakeholders.

The strategy is underpinned by current research and its implementation will be assessed through ongoing monitoring and evaluation.

Positioning South Africa as a global ICT leader

The DCDT's international programme is focused on positioning South Africa as a global ICT leader; influencing the debates and decisions of multilateral organisations in favour of national interest and development agenda; increasing investment in the economy; and promoting South African business and technological capabilities.

South Africa was elected to the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) Council for the period 2019 – 2022. The ICASA Radio Communications Manager Mandla Mchunu, representing South Africa, was elected to the Radio Regulations Board of the ITU for the period 2019 – 2022. South Africa was also elected to the African Telecommunications Union Council for the same period.

As a legacy of the ITU Telecom World, the DCDT has launched a Digital Transformation Centre whose objective is to incubate enterprise talent and harness innovation. With the support from the ITU, the World Economic Forum and other partners, the centre will assist the entry and growth of SMMEs in various aspects of these future communication systems and networks, focusing on management of intellectual property rights, standardisation, conformance testing, and SMME innovation. It will further support the production and usage of ICT technologies and break the current monopolies in the electronic manufacturing industry.

The international branch of the DCDT continues to be the primary vehicle through which the department pursues government's priority of contributing to a better South Africa and safer Africa in a better world.

The country also served as a member of the Universal Postal Union (UPU) Council of Administration for a second term, 2017 – 2020. It was also responsible for chairing a new committee dealing with strategy. South Africa has contributed significantly to the UPU's work in developing national address systems. The country's use of global positioning systems to allocate addresses to people in rural and undeveloped areas has proved critical.

Internet

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021, released in June 2022, about 77,5% of South African households had at least one member who had access to, or used the Internet at locations such as their homes, work, place of study, internet cafés, or at public hotspots.

Access to the Internet using all available means was highest in Western Cape (89,1%) and Gauteng (86,7%), and lowest in Limpopo (63,7%) and Eastern Cape (64,7%). About one-tenth (10,4%) of South African households had access to fixed Internet at home.

Access to the Internet at home was highest among households in Western Cape (25,9%) and Gauteng (16,4%), and lowest in Mpumalanga (1,7%) and Limpopo (1,9%). household access to the Internet at home was highest in Western Cape (25,9%) and Gauteng (16,4%) and lowest in Mpumalanga (1,7%) and Limpopo (1,9%).

While 17,2% of households in metropolitan areas had access to the Internet at home, this was true for only 1,2% of rural households in general and less than one per cent of rural households in Eastern Cape (0,2%), North West (0,3%) and KwaZulu Natal (0,2%).

A larger percentage of households access the Internet at work (17,6%), Internet cafés or at educational institutions (13,6%) than at home (10,4%). Households in Gauteng (27,8%) and Western Cape (22,2%) were most likely to access the Internet at work, while those in North West (6,6%) were least likely to do so.

Using mobile devices to access the Internet includes access on cellular telephones or using mobile access devices such as 3G cards. It is clear from Table 13.1 that mobile access to the Internet has made it much more accessible to households in rural areas.

Nationally, Internet access using mobile devices (69,4%) was the most common form of access to the Internet. Although the use of mobile Internet access devices in rural areas (59,2%) still lags behind its use in urban (73,7%) and metro areas (73,4%), it is much more common in rural areas than any of the alternative methods.

On 17 May each year, South Africa joins the rest of the word to commemorate World Information Society Day. The purpose of the day to help raise awareness of the possibilities that the use of the Internet and other ICTs can bring to societies and economies, as well as of ways to bridge the digital divide. The 2021 event was held under the theme; "Accelerating Digital Transformation in Challenging Times". The origins of World Telecommunication and Information Society Day date back to the signing of the First International Telegraph Convention on 17 May 1865, which marked the establishment of the ITU.

Social media

The emergence of social media as a social and business communication tool in the last few years has been dramatic. In South Africa, a country where first and third-world conditions are often separated by just a few kilometres, social media has levelled the playing field and created a platform that is affordable for everyone, easy to use and highly effective as a communication tool.

According to datareportal.com, there were 28.00 million social media users in South Africa in January 2022. social media users in South Africa increased by 3.0 million (+12.0%) between 2021 and 2022. The number of social media users in South Africa at the start of 2022 was equivalent to 46.4% of the total population.

Online retail

According to World Wide Worx, online retail in South Africa more than doubled in just two years, due to the explosion in demand for home deliveries brought about by the COVID-19 pandemic. Online Retail in South Africa 2021, a study conducted by World Wide Worx with the support of Mastercard, Standard Bank and Platinum Seed, shows that the total growth for online retail in South Africa in 2020 came to 66%, bringing the total of online retail in the country to R30.2 billion.

According to the study, the categories experiencing the highest growth, aside from data and airtime top-up, were clothing, at 56%, and groceries, at 54%.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

Cyberspace comes with new types of challenges to governments of the world and it, therefore, introduces a further dimension to national security.

The cyberworld is a borderless platform that enables more sophisticated threats such as cybercrime, cyberterrorism, cyberwar and cyber-espionage. For this reason, cyberthreats need to be addressed at both the global and national levels.

The National Cybersecurity Hub is South Africa's National Computer Security Incident Response Team, and strives to make cyberspace an environment where all South Africans can safely communicate, socialise, and transact in confidence. It offers alerts and warnings, announcements, security-related information dissemination, incident-handling and incident response support as services to its constituents.

These services can be categorised as proactive, reactive and social services. Incidents are logged via the National Cybersecurity Hub website and depending on their evaluation, they are timeously resolved or escalated to other agencies for further investigation.

Mobile communications

South Africa has one of the largest telecommunications markets on the continent. It has four mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom and Telkom Mobile. Mobile phones are the dominant technology for voice and data communication among base of pyramid (BoP) users and for informal businesses.

People in this group access the Internet mostly via their mobile phones and smartphones because they have taken over functions that used to be performed by computers. Users are also finding innovative ways to bypass expensive cellphone SMS rates by using Facebook Zero or other instant message services such as WhatsApp.

Although half of the South African population lives below the poverty line, more than 75% of those in low-income groups, who are 15 years or older, own a mobile phone. In terms of mobile ownership at the BoP, households with an income of less than R432 per month, per household member, is relatively high, compared to other African countries.

This is according to research commissioned by infoDev, a global partnership programme within the World Bank Group, about the use of mobile phones amongst BoP users. About 98.5% low-income groups who own mobile phones in South Africa have a prepaid SIM card, but there is a small percentage (1.5%) of BoP mobile owners who have post-paid contracts. According to the GHS of 2021, nationally, only 2,2% of households did not have access to either landlines or cellular phones while only 0,5% of South African households only used landlines.

By comparison, 90,8% of South African households exclusively use cellular phones. The exclusive use of cellular phones was most common in Eastern Cape (94,2%) and lowest in KwaZulu-Natal (86,3%). Households that had higher usage of both cellular phones and landlines were most common in Western Cape (9,7%) and KwaZulu-Natal (9.6%).

PostNet

PostNet is South Africa's largest privately-owned counter network in the document and parcel industry, trading across more than 400 owner-managed retail stores. It serves in excess of 70 000 walk-in customers per day, countrywide. There are five product types within PostNet: courier, copy and print, digital, stationery and mailboxes.

The media

South Africa has vibrant and independent media. According to the Bill of Rights, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- · freedom of the press and other media:
- · freedom to receive or impart information or ideas;
- · freedom of artistic creativity; and
- · academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

Radio

Radio is a great communications medium and still enjoys the broadest reach of any media category in South Africa. The diversity of stations, formats, voices and offerings ensures that most of the public's needs are catered for.

It also fulfils a vital need for information and entertainment, with relatively low costs to the distributors and the listeners. As a communication medium, radio has very few barriers to access. SABC radio has more than 25 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

The fact that radio cuts across boundaries of illiteracy strengthens the importance of the medium to the consumer and the advertiser. The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations, of which 15 are dedicated specifically to public service broadcasting.

These include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa: a cultural service for the Indian community

broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape.

The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM. Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- YFM
- 702 Talk Radio
- · Metro FM
- 5FM
- · Channel Africa
- · Good Hope FM
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- · Capricorn FM
- Radio KFM
- Lotus FM
- X-K FMTruFM
- Tiui
- RSG

• Power 98.7.

Radio platforms such as 94.2 Jacaranda FM, 94.7 Highveld Stereo, OFM, Algoa FM, Classic FM, Kaya FM and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster. Many of South Africa's radio stations are also available online.

Community radio

Community broadcasting remains an important project for the South African Government. From the early days of Cape Town's Bush Radio, Africa's oldest community radio station project, to today's broadcasting landscape which boasts more than 200 stations across the country's nine provinces, community radio has provided communities with an indispensable platform from which to raise awareness of their grassroots issues, irrespective of race, gender, disability or economic class.

Still a relatively youthful sector, community radio can trace its origins back to Bush Radio, the idea for which started in the 1980s when community activists and alternative media producers explored ways in which media could be used for social upliftment. The radio was officially formed in 1992, broadcasting illegally, following numerous attempts to apply for a broadcast license from the apartheid government.

It was however only after the first democratic elections of 1994 that South Africa saw the liberalisation of the airwaves with the establishment of an independent regulator, the Independent Broadcasting Authority, now the ICASA.

Television

The SABC's TV network comprises of three free-to-air channels and two other channels carried on a subscription digital satellite network. South

African TV is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in sign language. According to the GHS of 2021, about 27,3% of households owned one or more computers while 87,7% owned televisions and 87,3% owned refrigerators. Households in urban and metropolitan areas were much more likely to own any of these assets than households in rural areas.

Community TV

Soweto TV was the first community TV station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from ICASA in 2007. Since then, more seven-year licences have been issued to stations operating in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay. The issuing of new community TV licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

Free-to-air TV

eMedia Holdings owns e.tv – South Africa's first private, free-to-air TV channel, launched in 1998. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and third-largest overall.

e.tv also has a pan-Áfrican presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries. The company launched a 24-hour news channel on the DStv platform, eNews Channel Africa (eNCA) in 2008.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice started as the subscriber management arm of M-Net. It is the leading multichannel digital satellite TV operator across the African continent. MultiChoice provides its DStv services to different market segments. The DStv bouquets cater for different lifestyles and pockets, from entry level to premium.

StarSat offers three main packages and multiple add-on packages that viewers can use to customise their experience. eSat.tv (branded eNCA) supplies TV, mobile and online news to various channels in South Africa, including the 24-hour eNCA (Channel 403). The company provides live news bulletins to viewers each night on e.tv in English, on eKasi+ in IsiZulu (available on OpenView HD) and on kykNET through eNuus in Afrikaans (available on DStv).

Newzroom Afrika is a premier South African 24-hour TV news channel on the DStv Platform (Channel 405).

Prin

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include:

- · Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa);
- · Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group;
- Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd; and
- · Arena Holdings.

Other important media players include:

- · M&G Media Ltd;
- · The Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd;

- · Primedia Publishing Ltd;
- · Ramsay Media; and
- Kagiso Media.

Some of the prominent daily and weekly newspapers in South Africa include *The Sunday Times*; *Citizen*; *Sowetan*; *The Daily Sun*; *The Witness*; *Sunday World*; *City Press*; *The Weekly Mail and Guardian*; *Beeld*; *Pretoria News*; *The Star*, *Die Burger*; *The Cape Argus*; *Cape Times*; *Son*; *Daily Dispatch*; *The Herald*; *The Daily News*; *The Mercury*; *The Witness*; *Business Day*; *Die Volksblad*; *Diamond Fields Advertiser*, *Isolezwe*; *Rapport*; *Sunday Tribune*; *Ilanga*; *The Post*, and *Soccer Laduma*.

Magazines

Some of the prominent magazines in South Africa are: The Financial Mail; Finweek; Entrepreneur, Forbes Africa; Noseweek; BusinessBrief, Leadership; Farmer's Weekly; Landbouweekblad; Plaastoe; Veeplaas; Personal Finance; TV Plus; Drum; Huisgenoot; YOU; The Big Issue; Taalgenoot; Leisure; Easy DYI; Sarie Kos; Elle, Decoration; SA Home Owner, Tuis Home; VISI; Woolworths' Taste; Fresh Living/Kook en Kuier, Braintainment; Destiny Man; Blaque Magazine; GQ; Men's Health; Popular Mechanics; Stuff; Tjop & Dop; Amakhosi; Kick Off; Golf Digest; Compleat Golfer, Magnum's Game; Hunt/Wild; Jag; SA Hunter, Zigzag; Modern Athlete; CAR; Leisure Wheels; Drive Out/WegRy, Auto Trader, Bike SA; SA 4x4; Speed and Sound; Getaway; Weg/Go; Glamour, Elle; Fair Lady; Finesse; Destiny Magazine; Ideas/Idees; Leef; Move!; True Love; Fitness Magazine; Kuier, Marie Claire; Sarie; Women's Health and Longevity.

Media organisations and role players

The non-profit-making Print and Digital Media South Africa (PDMSA) was originally formed to bring together under one roof, publishers of diverse print genres. The PDMSA recognised the advantages of extending its footprint online by extending its membership to include digital media publications.

The purpose of the PDMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PDMSA is a member of a number of international bodies such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to the PDMSA, but not a constituent member, is the Audit Bureau of Circulations, responsible for auditing and verifying print media circulation figures.

The Association of Independent Publishers (AIP) represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (SANEF) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

SANEF membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman. Should they not be satisfied

with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PDMSA, SANEF and the Media Workers' Association of South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship. The Forum of Community Journalists is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the Community Press Association into the AIP.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct. Members include the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and the Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with x-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

Media Monitoring Africa (formerly Media Monitoring Project) is a nonprofit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF) lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of communityowned and run radio stations and support-service organisations.

Radio station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the:

- · Foreign Correspondents' Association of Southern Africa,
- Printing Industries Federation of South Africa,
- South African Typographical Union,
- · South African Guild of Motoring Journalists,
- · Professional Photographers of South Africa,
- · Media Institute of Southern Africa,
- · Publishers' Association of South Africa, and
- · Press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

The African News Agency, Africa's first syndicated multimedia content service, began publishing South African and international news stories in 2015. The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are:

- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- · Deutsche Presse Agentur
- · United Press International.

Journalism and media awards

South Africa's most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards,
- · Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards.
- South African Brfeweries Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards.
- Sanlam Financial Journalist of the Year Award,
- · CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards,

- · Discovery Health Journalism Awards.
- · SANEF's Nat Nakasa Award, and
- Local Media Excellence Awards.

Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Marketing, Advertising and Communications SA (MAC SA) Charter Sector Council

In March 2022, government launched the MAC SA Charter Sector Council to redress economic imbalances. The council has been tasked with broadening the meaningful participation of blacks, women, youth and people with disabilities in the marketing, advertising and communications (MAC) sector – not just as consumers but also as entrepreneurs.

It will monitor transformation of the sector by facilitating the implementation of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (B-BBEE) Sector Code. The council is also tasked with building progressive partnerships that will unleash the creative abilities of professionals and technically skilled people in this sector and change MAC and society for the better.

The council has representatives from academia, government, the regulator, marketers, women, youth, and people with disability, public relations institutes, organised labour, outdoor media, industry associations and interactive marketers.

The council will ensure that transformation in the sector is promoted, monitored and reported on annually in line with the provisions of the B-BBEE Act of 2003, as amended.

The council is responsible for, amongst others:

- oversight over the implementation of the MAC Charter Sector Code; monitor compliance with the MAC Charter Sector Code;
- providing guidance on matters relating to B-BBEE in the MAC sector;
 and
- engaging and advising the sector Minister, the Government Communication and Information System and other relevant regulatory entities regarding the MAC Charter Sector Code.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

It is an independent body established and funded by the marketing communication industry to manage advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

The code is the ASA's guiding document based on the International Code of Advertising Practice, prepared by the International Chamber of Commerce.

Drawn up by the ASA with the participation of representatives of the marketing communication industry, the code is amended from time to time to meet the changing needs of the industry and the South African society.

Public relations

Public Relations Institute of Southern Africa (PRISA)

Established in 1957, the PRISA represents professionals in public relations and communication management throughout the southern African region and has registered practitioners in Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho, Eswatini and South Africa.

It is a founding member of the Global Alliance for Public Relations and Communication Management, and initiated the formation of the Council for Communication Management in South Africa. The council is the coordinating body representing various groupings of professionals in South Africa.

PRISA plays a leading role in uniting professionals and driving transformation. As the recognised leader of the public relations and communication management profession in southern Africa and beyond, PRISA provides the southern African industry with the local professional advantage.





Yearbook 2021/22

Education, Science and Innovation

Education

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, declares basic education as an inalienable basic human right for all South Africans. In 2015, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) adopted the global education agenda, Education 2030, which is part of the 17 UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) that make up the Agenda 2030 for sustainable development. SDG 4 calls for an "inclusive, quality and equitable education and lifelong opportunities for all".

The National Development Plan (NDP) states that by 2030 South Africans should have access to education and training of the highest quality, leading to significantly improved learning outcomes. The education system will play a greater role in building an inclusive society, providing equal opportunities and helping all South Africans to realise their full potential.

Education is governed by two national departments, namely the Department of Basic Education (DBE), which is responsible for primary and secondary schools, and the Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET), which is responsible for tertiary education and vocational training.

Accessibility to education has improved significantly over the years, ensuring that South Africans are exposed to education at all levels to ensure that socio-economic challenges in the country are addressed.

The inclusive education system plays a major role in ensuring that there is access to quality basic education for leaners with special needs. This system contributes immensely towards the achievement of an inclusive economy and inclusive society.

The Early Childhood Development (ECD) Programme has ensured that the initiative is expanded to all socio-economic levels of society. This programme ensures that school readiness is a priority among South Africans and equal basic education is achieved by government.

Evaluation and research has been a serious deficiency in the country and the education sector, but over the years, with the introduction of monitoring, research and evaluation in the sector, performance has also improved. There is substantial research conducted within the sector which assists in identifying gaps and also creates a platform to monitor the sector through evidence-based evaluations.

Basic education

The DBE is mandated to monitor the standards of education provision, delivery and performance across South Africa, annually or at other specified intervals, to assess compliance with provisions of the Constitution and the National Education Policy.

- · The functions of the DBE include:
- managing the development, evaluation and maintenance of policy, programmes and systems for ECD in the reception years;
- developing, evaluating and maintaining an accreditation system for providers and trainers;
- developing and maintaining policy concerning programmes, qualifications and assessment for ECD; and

 rendering support to qualifications and quality assurance authorities concerning ECD.

Schooling 2025, the overarching plan for the basic education sector, encapsulates the long-term vision of education priorities, targets and programmes articulated for the sector in the NDP.

The Policy on Screening, Identification, Assessment and Support (SIAS) was developed over a period of 10 years through a rigorous process of field testing and consultation. It aims to ensure that all children of school-going age who experience barriers to learning, including people with disabilities, will be able to access inclusive, quality, free, primary and secondary education on an equal basis with other young people in the communities in which they live.

The policy aims to standardise procedures to identify, assess and provide programmes for all learners who require additional support to enhance their participation and inclusion in school, making teachers and parents central to the support processes.

The successful implementation of the Policy on SIAS will be an important step towards meeting the obligations of government in respect of the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities as ratified by Cabinet in November 2007, in terms of ensuring an inclusive education system at all levels.

Over the medium term, the DBE will continue to focus on improving school infrastructure, providing high quality support materials for learners and teachers, developing skills for a changing world, facilitating the increase in supply of quality teachers, while preparing serving teachers to teach new subjects that will prepare learners for a changing world, taking over the early ECD function from the social development sector and providing nutritious meals for learners through the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).

School attendance

There were approximately 15 million learners at school in 2021. The largest percentage of these learners attended schools in KwaZulu-Natal (21,5%) and Gauteng (21,3%). Although only 5,6% of learners attended private schools, there were large variations between provinces. While 12,5% of learners in Gauteng attended private schools, only 2,4% of learners in North West and Eastern Cape attended such institutions.

The Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) negatively affected school attendance in 2020 and 2021. According Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021, a much higher percentage of children aged five and six years old were not attending educational institutions in 2020 and 2021 than in 2019, before COVID-19 started.

Amongst five year olds the percentage of children who did not attend any education institutions increased from 10,9% in 2019 to 37,7% in 2020, before declining to 19,4% in 2021. It is clear that the young age groups were worst affected by the closure of nursery schools and pre school centres during this time.

A similar pattern was observed for children aged six (3,5% in 2019 increasing to 11,8% in 2020 before declining to 5,9% by 2021). Although participation (enrolment) in education was still relatively high,

data shows that a slightly higher percentage of children in older age groups were not attending school compared to 2019.

The percentage of persons aged seven to 24 who attended educational institutions increased from 73,1% in 2002 to 76,3% in 2021. Attendance increased across most provinces between 2002 and 2021, with the highest increase observed in Northern Cape (+7,8 percentage points) and Free State (+7,3 percentage points).

Males and females in the age group 7–18 years provided various reasons for not attending any educational institutions. Learners most commonly reported illness and disability (22,7%), poor academic performance (21,2%) and a lack of money for fees (19,5%) as the main reason for not attending an educational institution.

Although 7,8% of individuals left their studies as a result of family commitments (i.e. getting married, minding children and pregnancy), it is noticeable that females were much more likely to offer these as reasons than males (13,4% compared to 0,5%).

Approximately 2,3% of individuals reported that education was useless. Males were more likely to share this sentiment than females in this instance. Although inadequate access to money to pay for fees remains a major hurdle for learners, attendance of no-fee schools has increased notably since 2002.

The percentage of learners aged five years and older who attended schools where no tuition fees were levied increased from 0,4% in 2002 to 65,9% in 2014, before increasing more slowly to 70,2% in 2021. Provincially, 92,8% of learners in Limpopo and 78,7% of learners in Eastern Cape attended no-fee schools, compared to 49,7% of learners in Western Cape and 56,4% in Gauteng.

The percentage of individuals aged 20 years and older who did not have any education decreased from 11,4% in 2002 to 3,2% in 2021, while those with at least a Grade 12 qualification increased from 30,5% to 50,5% over the same period. Inter-generational functional literacy has also decreased markedly.

While 35,8% of South Africans over the age of 60 years did not complete at least a Grade 7 qualification, this figure dropped to only 3,2% for those aged 20- 39 years of age. Almost one-third (31,5%) of individuals aged five years and older attended some kind of educational institution. Nationally, 87,6% of these individuals attended primary or secondary schools, while a further 5,6% attended tertiary institutions. Only 2,1% of individuals attended Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges.

The percentage of individuals aged five years and older and who attended school was the highest in Limpopo (92,7%) and Eastern Cape (92,4%), and lowest in Gauteng (80,2%). Attendance of higher education institutions was most common in Gauteng (9,5%), Free State (7,0%) and Western Cape (6,9%).

The percentage of individuals aged 5–24 years that attended educational institutions by single ages shows very high school attendance in the age group 7–14 years, after which the attendance of educational facilities drops sharply.

By the age of 24 years, approximately 10,0% of individuals were still attending an educational facility. The figure also shows a noticeable

representation of learners who were older than the ideal graduation age in primary and secondary schools.

Improving school infrastructure

The department is committed to improving the physical infrastructure and environment at every public school in the basic education sector. To this end, spending on the education infrastructure grant and the school infrastructure backlogs grant in the Planning, Information and Assessment programme accounts for an estimated 51.8% (R47.4 billion) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period.

The Education Infrastructure Grant is allocated R38.8 billion over this period, including an additional R470.5 million to repair school infrastructure damaged by storms in KwaZulu-Natal. Funds from this grant are transferred to provinces as a supplementary conditional grant to help accelerate the construction, maintenance, upgrading and rehabilitation of new and existing infrastructure in the basic education sector.

Funds from the School Infrastructure Backlogs Grant are intended to provide schools with water and sanitation, and to replace schools constructed with inappropriate materials such as mud. Over the medium term, R6.7 billion is allocated to the grant to build 30 new schools, provide water to 50 schools, and provide safe sanitation to 450 schools. These projects are set to be completed by the end of 2022/23, after which the School Infrastructure Backlogs Grant will be incorporated into the Education Infrastructure Grant.

Providing high quality support materials

The department ensures that all learners have access to quality support materials in languages, mathematics and life skills by printing and distributing to all public schools who request them; targeting 65 million workbooks for 9 million learners in grades R to 9 each year over the MTEF period. To this end, R3.7 billion is allocated over the period ahead in the Curriculum and Quality Enhancement Programme subprogramme in the Curriculum Policy, Support and Monitoring programme.

Developing skills for a changing world

To prepare learners for jobs in a changing and increasingly digitised world, the DBE plans to enhance the curriculum by introducing new technical subjects. These new subject choices include coding, robotics and data analytics at primary school level. Several public ordinary secondary schools will be transformed into focus schools over the MTEF period.

In addition to prioritising mathematics, science and aviation, new technology subjects and specialisations will be introduced at these focus schools. This initiative will be funded through the Maths, Science and Technology Grant, which will also provide resources for workshops and laboratories, information and communications technology (ICT) equipment and support to 1 000 schools, including 200 technical high schools and 300 primary or feeder schools over the same period. The grant has a total allocation of R1.3 billion over the medium term.

The Funza Lushaka bursary scheme addresses critical educator shortages in specified subject areas such as mathematics, science and technology in various school phases by providing bursaries to prospective teachers. Over the MTEF period, R4.1 billion is allocated to the scheme with the aim of providing more than 36 000 bursaries. Over the period ahead, the department plans to introduce new subjects such as coding, robotics and data analytics in primary schools. To this end, R78.5 million is reprioritised from the Funza Lushaka bursary scheme to train teachers in these subjects.

Implementing a curriculum with skills and competencies for a changing world

This includes implementing the Three Stream Model, Fourth Industrial Revolution, entrepreneurship and focus schools, among others. The department has developed the Coding and Robotics Curriculum for grades R-9, which was repackaged to ensure proper sequencing and seamless progression from one phase to the next.

In partnership with the Department of Communications and Digital Technologies, the DBE has identified 152 sites in 76 education districts to be equipped with virtual classroom infrastructure. Through this initiative, the sector will fully embrace the digital revolution of remote learning. Districts will be able to benefit through curriculum specialists' streamed lessons on digital platforms.

The process of incrementally refocusing the teaching and learning of the previously marginalised African languages in South African schools has led to the introduction of Kiswahili as a second additional language (SAL) in grades 4-12 in 90 schools (10 per province). The Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (CAPS) for Kiswahili SAL for grades 4-9 has been versioned and the Kiswahili Toolkit has been developed for the respective grades.

Initially, 54 technical schools will be monitored for the implementation of the CAPS. Nationally, 540 schools will be monitored for implementing compulsory entrepreneurship education and 54 schools will be monitored for piloting and implementing the coding and robotics curriculum. Annual sector reports will be produced on the establishment of focus schools per provincial education department. A total of 81 schools will be monitored for utilisation of ICT resources and 307 special schools will be provided with access to electronic devices.

The DBE aims to provide occupationally oriented curricula for 21 subjects, to 74 schools of skill and 13 subjects to 103 ordinary schools, over the MTEF (to pilot in 2021 and 2022).

Taking over the ECD function

The NDP envisions quality ECD as a priority for South Africa to improve the overall quality of education and the long-term prospects of its future generations. From April 2022, the DBE took over the ECD function from the Department of Social Development. The department would also take over responsibility for the ECD Grant, which is allocated R3.7 billion over the MTEF period. In 2022/23, R1.1 billion is allocated for ECD subsidies to provide for and increase the number of children

accessing subsidised ECD services; and R97.9 million is allocated for maintenance improvements to support ECD providers and to pilot the construction of new, low-cost ECD centres.

According to the GHS of 2021, nationally, almost two-thirds (64,6%) of children aged 0-4 stayed home with a parent or guardian, or with another adult. This figure was most pronounced in North West (79,4%), Northern Cape (74,1%) and KwaZulu-Natal (74,0%). Only 28,5% of children in this age group attended formal ECD facilities, nationally. Attendance of ECD facilities was most common in Western Cape (39,8%) and Free State (39,6%).

Providing support to improve matric completion rates

In response to the NDP's call to reduce the learner drop-out rate, the Second Chance Programme provides support to matric learners who do not meet the pass requirements of the National Senior Certificate (NSC) examinations.

Over the MTEF period, the programme's new policy priority will be to include learners with disabilities. Accordingly, the DBE will use the existing 23 special schools for the blind and 43 schools for the deaf as sites of support for learners with disabilities in the Second Chance Programme.

In addition, as a measure to support the performance of all learners, the DBE will develop a web-based system that will allow multiple users to upload subject support for learners to access. The programme will provide support in subjects such as mathematics, science, accounting and languages, facilitate the establishment of 80 face-to-face centres, and appoint more than 800 teachers and 80 centre managers to teach after school hours and over weekends.

Facilitating an increase in the number of quality teachers

Over the medium term, the DBE plans to continue facilitating an increase in the number of newly qualified teachers in mathematics, science and technology in various phases. This is expected to be achieved by providing 37 500 Funza Lushaka bursaries to prospective teachers.

The number of bursary awards is expected to be maintained at 12 500 per year over the MTEF period. This is on condition that general increases in university costs do not exceed average annual increases in allocations to the bursary scheme of approximately 5% over the same period.

While prospective Funza Lushaka bursary recipients may qualify for fee-free funding at universities, the DBE expects the demand for Funza Lushaka bursaries to remain unchanged as the guarantee of employment provided by the bursary's work-back provision remains a strong incentive.

Providing meals for learners

The NSNP is directly aligned with the NDP's priority of eliminating poverty and supporting food security. As part of the NSNP, a targeted nine million learners in each year over the medium term will be provided with a meal on school days. The programme is funded by the NSNP Grant, which was allocated R26.7 billion over the medium term

in the Educational Enrichment Services programme. Provinces are also required to ensure that meals are provided on school days when learners are not at school because of COVID-19 restrictions.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2021, more than three-quarters (77,3%) of learners who attended public schools benefitted from school feeding schemes in 2021, compared to 63,1% in 2009. Learners in Limpopo (91,9%) and Mpumalanga (89,1%) most commonly benefitted from this programme, while only 55,2% of learners in Western Cape and 61,2% of learners in Gauteng benefitted from this type of programme.

Implementing standardised assessments

The DBE plans to improve quality and efficiency through the implementation of standardised assessments – to reduce failure, repetition and dropout rates, and introduce multiple qualifications such as the General Education Certificate (GEC) before the Grade 12 exit qualification. Preparations for the GEC has shown a significant progress since several schools have been randomly selected for the pilot study during the 2022 Academic Calendar. A refined policy framework will be submitted to Umalusi in 2022 for registration on the National Qualifications Framework (NQF).

The assessment model of the GEC was expected to be administered in almost 270 schools, randomly selected from across all nine provinces in 2022 – to provide lessons on how to strengthen the quality of assessment tools, their infusion into school-based assessment and how to generate a holistic GEC scorecard for learners.

Test exemplars and administration manuals on the end-of-year standardised tests and project-based assessments would be provided to participating schools and the training of teachers and subject advisors was scheduled for mid-2022. In 2023, the number of participating schools will be up-scaled to cover all education districts. The aim is to ensure that all public schools are empowered to administer the assessment model of the GEC at the Grade 9 level by 2024.

The department has drafted the National Assessment Framework (NAF) to coordinate all assessments conducted in the general and further education and training (FET) bands. A basket of purpose-driven assessments from school entry (Grade R) to Grade 9 has been designed for implementation. A significant intervention of the NAF is the roll-out of the Systemic Evaluation initiative, targeted at establishing key learner competencies in mathematics and languages at the end of grades 3, 6 and 9, and determining the enabling school and system support factors that contribute to the improvement of learning outcomes. The DBE will work towards implementing the first cycle of the Systemic Evaluation initiative, which is scheduled for 2022.

These assessment programmes and the country's participation in international benchmark assessments (such as the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS) 2019, Progress in International Reading Literacy Study 2021 and Southern and Eastern Africa Consortium for Monitoring Educational Quality V), will be implemented accordingly, during the medium term. In addition, the assessments and public examination system in the FET band are also being reviewed so that they can be aligned with the NAF.

Through the Examinations and Assessments unit, the DBE will facilitate the quality assurance of school-based assessment (SBA) in the FET band and facilitate the high quality and standardised marking of the NSC, provision of the reliable instrument for the NSC and provision of reliable data and feedback on the NSC examinations.

The NAF replaces the Annual National Assessment as an indicator reflecting performance objectives. The programmes linked to the NAF will enable the generation of a national report on the monitoring of learning outcomes each year over the MTEF.

Promoting social cohesion, health and school safety

The DBE continues to implement enrichment and school safety programmes in collaboration with various partners and government departments. These programmes promote physical activity, literacy, arts and culture through education enrichment.

Over the MTEF, the department will use allocated resources to monitor and support the implementation of sport, social cohesion, arts and culture, and school safety programmes in districts. It also plans to host national enrichment programmes that support learners.

The department will monitor the implementation of the school safety, social cohesion and sports and enrichment programmes in 75 education districts. Due to the limited number of professionals such as social workers and psychologists in the sector, the department will continue to build the capacity of learner support agents through the implementation of the Guide for Learner Support Agents (LSAs) and schools on providing psychosocial support to learners. Additional skills will be provided to LSAs through a partnership to provide training on the Common Elements Treatment Approach.

The HIV and AIDS Life Skills Education Conditional Grant is utilised to support the implementation of the DBE's National Policy on HIV, Sexually Transmitted Infections and Tuberculosis for Learners, Educators and Support Staff in South African Public Schools.

Legislation

The DBE derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- the National Education Policy Act, 1996 (Act 27 of 1996), which inscribed into law the policies, legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Basic Education, and the formal relations between national and provincial authorities;
- the South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), which
 promotes access to quality education and democratic governance in
 the schooling system, and makes schooling compulsory for children
 aged seven to 15, to ensure that all learners have access to quality
 education without discrimination; and
- the Employment of Educators Act, 1998 (Act 76 of 1998), which regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, as well as the competency requirements for teachers.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the department was allocated R27.2 billion. Allocations to the department increase at an average annual

rate of 3.3%, from R28.5 billion in 2021/22 to R31.4 billion in 2024/25. Transfers and subsidies account for an estimated 84% of the department's expenditure, increasing at an average annual rate of 4.2%, from R23.6 billion in 2021/22 to R26.6 billion in 2024/25.

Entities

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE aims to enhance the status of the teaching profession through registering educators appropriately, managing professional development and promoting a code of ethics for all educators. It was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

Before their employment, educators are required to register with the SACE, which has a register of about 500 000 educators. The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking applicants' professional standing. The SACE has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include:

- the Professional Development Portfolio Project, which aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and take responsibility for their own professional development;
- · teacher education and development research activities;
- setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development (CPTD) System;
- celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators; and ensuring that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics, and
- the CPTD System, which recognises professional development undertaken by educators on their own initiative.

The council expects to generate 81.2% (R279.3 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period from membership fees, and the remainder through interest on investments and transfers from the department. Transfers from the department are set to decrease by R9 million over the period ahead as a result of the reprioritisation of funds for teacher training programmes that focus on coding and robotics.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.1%, from R113.1 million in 2021/22 to R113.3 million in 2024/25.

Umalusi Council for Quality Assurance in General and FET

The Umalusi Council for Quality Assurance in General and FET derives its mandate from the NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008) and the General and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001). As an external and independent quality assurance body, the council's mandate is to set and maintain standards in general and FET through the development and management of the General and FET Qualifications Sub-framework.

It is tasked with the certification of the following qualifications:

- · Schools: the NSC.
- TVET colleges: the National Technical Certificate (Level N3) and the National Certificate Vocational.
- Adult learning centres: the General Education Training Certificate Adults.

- · To issue learners with certificates that are credible, the council:
- develops and evaluates qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard;
- · moderates assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable;
- · accredits providers of education and training, as well as assessment;
- · conducts research to ensure educational quality; and
- · verifies the authenticity of certificates.

To fulfil its obligations, the council's expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.2%, from R195 million in 2021/22 to R196 million in 2024/25. The council is set to derive 85.1% (R494.3 million) of its revenue through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 2.5%, from R157.4 million in 2021/22 to R169.4 million in 2024/25.

Role players

Provincial departments of education

The role of the DBE is to translate government's education and training policies and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

The DBE works closely with provincial education departments to ensure that provincial budgets and strategies are in line with and support national policies. The national department shares a concurrent role with the provincial education departments for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each provincial education department to finance and manage its schools directly.

District offices are the provincial education departments' main interface with schools. Not only are they central to the process of gathering information and diagnosing problems in schools, but they also perform a vital support and intervention function.

This includes organising training for personnel, dealing with funding, resourcing bottlenecks and solving labour-relations disputes. District offices are key to ensuring that school principals remain accountable to provincial education departments and that accountability lines within the school, to the principal and school governing body, are maintained.

Equity in education expenditure between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula, the National Norms and Standards for School Funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

Council of Education Ministers

The council, comprising of the Ministers of Basic Education, and Higher Education and Training, as well as the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education, meets regularly to discuss the promotion of the national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa and coordinates action on matters of mutual interest.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

The committee comprises the Director-General (DG) of the DBE, deputy DGs of the national department and the heads of provincial

departments of education. The purpose of the committee is to facilitate the development of a national education system, share information and views on national education, coordinate administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advise the DBE on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

National Education Evaluation and Development Unit (NEEDU)

The NEEDU ensures effective evaluation of all educators based on the extent to which learner performance improves. Its core responsibilities include:

- providing the Minister of Basic Education with an independent account of the state of schools, including the quality of teaching and learning at all schools;
- providing an independent account on the development needs of the school education system;
- accounting for the attainment of the standards by all schools through a monitoring and evaluation system;
- identifying, on a system-wide basis, the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement and making focused recommendations for redressing problem areas that undermine school improvement;
- proposing appropriate sanctions to ensure that schools offer effective education for all learners;
- strengthening internal evaluation capacity within schools in ways that inform and complement external evaluation;
- monitoring the different levels of school support and the extent action is considered on proposed interventions, whether in the form of developmental support or disciplined action;
- reviewing and assessing existing monitoring, evaluation and support structures and instruments regularly, to ensure clarity and coherence in the way schools and teachers are assessed and supported;
- providing schools with evidence-based advice on how to pursue school improvement in their particular context; and
- promoting school improvement through the dissemination of good practice.

The NEEDU completed its first five-year cycle of systemic evaluations by identifying, on a system-wide basis at school, district and provincial levels, the factors that inhibit or advance school improvement. The findings were in the following areas:

- Reading: Teachers in the 134 rural schools visited did not have a
 good method to teach foundational level learners how to read.
 Actions taken include a Reading Advisory Committee to advise on
 reading matters, prioritising reading support in the provinces, and
 piloting the Early Grade Reading Assessment.
- Curriculum delivery: Gaps such as the development and implementation of provincial literacy and numeracy were observed in curriculum delivery. Actions taken included asking for learners' books to monitor quality of writing and holding school management teams and principals accountable for curriculum delivery.
- Use of learning and teaching support materials: Most learners in primary schools did not have sufficient learning and teaching support

materials, as well as textbooks for mathematics and languages due to an ineffective retrieval system from previous learners. Actions taken included developing policies that ensured that textbooks were retrieved from schools that did not have a good retrieval system.

- Time management: Many schools experienced time management issues such as tardiness and absenteeism by learners and teachers, while some teachers did not follow the time allocated to subjects on the timetable. Actions taken included monitoring of time management in schools by district and provincial officials. The DBE and the Minister of Basic Education engaged district and provincial officials in a discourse on time management.
- Assessment: Teachers in most schools were not able to construct/ set assessment items of good quality. Learners perform well in SBAs but poorly in common and international assessments. Teachers assess what they have taught, not what they ought to have taught. Few schools had school improvement plans that were informed by assessments. Actions taken by the DBE included aligning provincial education department school improvement plans with DBE plans. Subject committees and SBA workshops were conducted in provinces to train advisors in setting up quality tasks.
- Special schools: The preliminary findings indicated that special schools did not have a systemic way of admitting learners and different curricula were used in each special school. Findings at school level were presented to districts and provincial education departments to take necessary actions.

During the second five-year cycle (2017-2021), the focus shifted to development to ensure the system-wide impact of the NEEDU's findings.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC serves the public education sector nationally. It is a statutory council, initially established by the Education Labour Relations Act, 1993 (Act 146 of 1993), but draws authority from the Education Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995).

The main purpose of the council is to maintain labour peace within public education through processes of dispute prevention and resolution.

These include collective bargaining between the educator unions and the DBE as the employer. The ELRC also conducts various workshops to increase the level of awareness and understanding of sound labour-relations procedures.

Educator unions

Educators are organised into six educator unions:

- · National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa.
- · National Teachers' Union.
- · South African Teachers' Union.
- · Professional Educators' Union.
- · Cape Professional Teachers' Association.
- · South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

There is an existing labour relations framework agreement between the DBE and unions. It encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation

and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the Framework for the Establishment of an Occupation-specific Dispensation (OSD) for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths, where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to, or higher than, those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It also provides for a new category of posts for teaching and learning specialists and senior learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

The 2021 World Teachers' Day was celebrated under the theme; "Teachers at the heart of education recovery", focusing on the support teachers needed to fully contribute to the COVID-19 recovery process. Held annually on 5 October since 1994, World Teachers' Day commemorates the anniversary of the adoption of the 1966 International Labour Organisation recommendation concerning the status of teachers.

Matric 2021 results

The total number of candidates who registered for the 2021 NSC exams was 897 163, comprising 733 198 full-time candidates; as well as one 163 965 part-time candidates. The 2021 NSC overall pass rate, with the progressed learners included was at 76.4% – an improvement of 0.2% from the pass rate achieved by the Class of 2020. This represents a record of 537 687 candidates, who passed the 2021 NSC examinations – an improvement of 21.9% passes from 2020. Without the progressed learners, the overall pass rate stands at 79.8%.

The number of candidates qualifying for admission to Bachelor studies at universities was 256 031 – an improvement of 21.4% from 2020. This represents 36.4% of the total number of candidates, who wrote the 2021 NSC exams. The 2021 Bachelor passes in number was the highest attained in the history of the NSC examinations; but the second-highest to that attained in 2019, when expressed as a percentage. KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng achieved the most Bachelor passes.

The number of candidates who passed with a Diploma was 177 572 – an improvement of 17.8% from 2020. This represents 25.2% of the total number of candidates who wrote the 2021 NSC examinations.

The number of candidates who passed with a NSC was 103, representing 0.01% of total number of candidates who wrote the 2021 NSC exams

Curriculum Recovery Plan

To make up for lost time due to COVID-19, government has come up with a three-year curriculum recovery plan. As part of the plan, from 2021, the DBE will be implementing recovery annual teaching plans (ATPs) from Grade R to 12. The basis of the recovery ATPs is the trimmed curriculum, including the learning losses to be recovered in each grade, based on the

learning losses in the previous grade. The start of the COVID-19 pandemic led to lost learning time as schools shutdown and ultimately reopened with several changes to the schooling environment, which included social distancing protocols, rotational attendance and the intermittent closure of schools due to increased localised infections.

To mitigate the impact of lost time, the recovery process will occur over a three-year period, straddling 2021 to 2023, to gradually recover the learning losses, while building on foundational content required for the next grade. The multi-year recovery plan also ensures that the impact of further learning losses are minimised.

The recovery ATPs focus mainly on core and fundamental content knowledge, skills, attitudes and values required in each grade and subject, to ensure deep learning and content mastery as opposed to superficial learning.

To assist in the recovery plan, the basic education sector will receive 300 000 young employees in schools. This is part of the Presidential Employment Stimulus Programme to create 200 000 employment opportunities for education assistants, and 100 000 for general school assistants. This will be accomplished through the Basic Education

The BEEI seeks to address COVID-19 academic disruption, as well as address some of the lingering systemic challenges. Education assistants will support teachers in the classroom and provide extra support to learners. General school assistants will help schools to comply with COVID-19 protocols, while ensuring that teaching and learning take place in a safe, secure and hygienic environment.

The 300 000 employment opportunities were targeted at young people, to strengthen capacity in schools, at least until the end of March 2021.

In planning its recovery plan, the DBE published a proposed staggered school calendar for 2022, in which coastal and inland provinces open schools on different dates.

Higher Education, Science and Innovation

The DHET and the Department of Science and Innovation (DSI) report to the Ministry of Higher Education, Science and Innovation but exist as separate votes.

Higher Education and Training

The NDP envisages that by 2030, South Africans should have greater access to post-school education and training (PSET) opportunities through a system that is responsive to their needs. The DHET's vision is to have an integrated, coordinated and articulated PSET system for improved economic participation and the social development of youth and adults. The 2014 White Paper for Post-School Education and Training points out that the PSET system is an important institutional mechanism that must be responsive to the needs of society.

The system should be inclusive and cut across state boundaries, ethnic, gender, disability, class and socio-economic status, and national and religious identities, to achieve a united human race based on human dignity. This is supported by Priority 2 (education, skills and health) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on

expanding access to and enhancing performance at higher education institutions, and increasing their capacity.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2021, the total number of students enrolled at higher education institutions increased by almost 57,8% between 2002 and 2021, growing to 968 109.

The percentage of black African students increased by 13,3 percentage points to 73,5% during this time, while the percentage of white students virtually halved to 14,8%. Even though most students are black African, the education participation rate of this population group remained proportionally low in comparison with the Indian/Asian and white population groups.

The percentage of persons aged 18 to 29 that were enrolled at an institution of higher education in the country increased from 4,3% in 2002 to 6,5% in 2021. Enrolment at a higher education institution was most common among whites (24,6%) and Indian/Asians (16,2%), while only 6,2% of the coloured and 5,3% of the black African population groups were enrolled.

The percentage of individuals aged 20 years and older who have attained at least Grade 12 has been increasing consistently since 2002, expanding from 30,5% in 2002 to 50,5% in 2021. Over this period, the percentage of individuals with some post-school education increased from 9,2% to 14,6%. The percentage of individuals without any schooling decreased from 11,4% in 2002 to 3,2% in 2021.

Expanding access to higher education and facilitating the transition to work

The department is in the process of updating the guidelines for the implementation of the bursary scheme for students from disadvantaged backgrounds. This is to strengthen funding criteria to ensure that only eligible students are funded, and thereby ensure that the scheme remains financially sustainable.

The department will continue to implement plans to develop capacity at universities, eliminate the certification backlog in TVET colleges, and conduct advocacy campaigns on the use of open-access learning and teaching support materials in Community Education and Training (CET) colleges.

In the department's efforts to expand access to higher education, transfers to the National Student Financial Aid Scheme for student loans and bursaries account for an estimated 37.8% (R143.3 billion) of total expenditure over the medium term, including an additional R32.6 billion to sustain the current levels of support to qualifying students. This funding is expected to benefit 1.3 million university and 1.1 million TVET college students from poor and working class backgrounds.

Additional allocations of R194.5 million in 2022/23 and R209.2 million in 2023/24 are to continue implementing initiatives that were started in the sector in 2021/22 as part of the presidential employment intervention. Of these amounts, the graduate employment programme implemented by universities receives R193.7 million to enhance the employability of a targeted 6 000 graduates through placements in universities to gain workplace experience; and the National Skills Fund (NSF) receives R210 million to provide demand-responsive training for jobs in priority growth areas such as the digital and ICT sectors, targeting 16 000 jobs.

Enhancing performance by upgrading infrastructure and increasing capacity at higher education institutions

The department plans to ensure that its institutions have appropriate infrastructure to accommodate students accessing higher education. To alleviate overcrowding and upgrade ailing infrastructure at universities, the university infrastructure and efficiency grant is allocated R6.7 billion over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 31.6%, from R1 billion in 2021/22 to R2.3 billion in 2024/25; and the TVET infrastructure and efficiency grant is allocated R1.8 billion over the same period, increasing at an average annual rate of 38.2%, from R214.5 million in 2021/22 to R566.3 million in 2024/25.

These allocations will enable infrastructure repairs and maintenance in priority areas such as bulk services, sanitation, teaching and learning facilities, and student accommodation. The high growth rates in spending through these grants over the MTEF period is due to reprioritisations away from these grants to address the shortfall in funding for student bursaries in 2021/22.

Allocations of R600 million in 2022/23 and R300 million in 2023/24 will be used to deliver a target of 9 500 beds at four institutions as part of the student housing infrastructure programme. This funding will be supplemented by R540.3 million over the MTEF period from the university infrastructure and efficiency grant and R82.9 million from the TVET infrastructure and efficiency grant.

Of this funding, the Tshwane University of Technology is allocated R337.9 million, the University of KwaZulu-Natal R200.3 million, Gert Sibande TVET College R188 million, and Majuba TVET College R173.8 million.

The Historically Disadvantaged Institutions Development Programme

The programme is fully described in the draft HDI-DP Framework that has been fully consulted with historically disadvantaged institutions in the university sector.

The HDI-DP Framework seeks to address challenges that threaten the viability and sustainability of historically disadvantaged institutions and will draw on the Historically Disadvantaged Institutions Development Grant as a resource. It will also draw on a range of other institutional, department and partner resources.

The Framework sets the following strategic priority areas for development focus:

- · strengthen institutional management and governance systems,
- · improve institutional infrastructure and facilities,
- · enhance effective staff recruitment, development and retention,
- · strengthen the academic enterprise, and
- · leverage locality and community.

The notion of universities as anchor institutions will be a key feature of the programme. Once it is presented and approved, the DHET plans to roll out its full implementation in the next five years.

Funding for the missing middle

Addressing the dearth of funding for the missing middle students was a priority for the 2020/21 financial year. In working towards a financial

aid system that is inclusive of missing middle students, it would be necessary to explore the possibility of a loan scheme for the higher education sector, within the funding constraints, and working with private sector partners and other government departments, taking into account work already done.

Ensuring the sustainability and effective administration of the NSFAS would also be key to the success of the financial aid system.

Student accommodation

Plans are underway to develop and finalise a multi-faceted and comprehensive strategy for student housing. The strategy will include a range of possibilities for increasing the availability of student housing on and off university and TVET campuses.

This will include accelerating the Student Housing Infrastructure Programme, which is already underway, through which university- and college-owned housing will be developed, leveraging private sector investments and development potential, as well as developing a policy framework on the accreditation of private student accommodation. The norms and standards for student housing for the PSET system is also expected to be developed and implemented.

Establishing universities

Over the next five years, the system is expected to expand to provide additional spaces in higher education. In order to enhance the planned expansion in terms of the current enrolment plans of institutions, two new institutions will be established – a university for crime detection in Hammanskraal and a university for science and innovation in Ekurhuleni.

The Higher Education Act of 1997 allows for new institutions to be established as either higher education colleges or university colleges. This decision will be dependent on the outcome of a feasibility study, followed by a development plan for each new institution. Once funding is secured, the new institutions can be established as either a university college or a higher education college.

Over a period of time, a university college may be established as a fully-fledged university once it has met requirements to be established as such.

Expanding access to TVET colleges and improving their performance

Expanding access to skills programmes that address the labour market's need for intermediate skills that include practical components is one of the DHET's key mandates. Over the medium term, the department will work towards improving the quality of the PSET system by establishing more entrepreneurship hubs to enable TVET college students to realise their potential and become actively engaged in the economy, either through employment in the labour market or self-employment. While the enrolment projections in TVET colleges are held constant over the next five years in order to eliminate funding gaps, the DHET is committed to expanding provision in the TVET college system through the development of comprehensive proposals involving a diversity of stakeholders and modalities of delivery, and to grow the number of

students who can access vocational education and training. However, growth in the TVET college core programmes must take cognisance of the number of opportunities available to students for work-integrated learning.

Among these proposals will be the provision of open learning opportunities, primarily in the form of e-learning, as a key strategy towards reaching out and expanding access to students in remote locations, as well as to those already in employment. Furthermore, it is becoming evident that highly responsive and quality short skills programmes will grow in demand as organisations seek to reskill and upskill employees to meet rapidly changing workplace practices and standards.

Colleges will, therefore, partner with a diversity of stakeholders to deliver fit-for-purpose training in order to meet these localised needs. Programme diversification will constitute the cornerstone of expansion of the TVET system. The DHET will work collaboratively with the DSI to leverage the innovation service points already in existence nationally, for the enhancement of skills development in TVET colleges.

Initial engagements will focus on augmenting and modernising current provision in TVET colleges through innovation and creativity to prepare students for the world of real work in a 21st Century context. To facilitate this, teaching and learning support plans will be implemented in TVET colleges.

Establishing and operationalising centres of specialisation

Establishment and operationalising centres of specialisation in TVET colleges is a critical project for which the DHET continues to engage employers to work with young people as apprentices. The project aims to provide fully qualified artisans for a range of sectors in the economy, including high-technology manufacturing, the creative industries, computer software and aerospace engineering.

Developing artisans

Over the medium term, the DHET aims to improve the public skills development system by managing the performance of service-level agreements with sector education and training authorities (SETAs) more effectively, and by providing funding to trade and quality assurance institutions for occupational qualifications. These institutions play a pivotal role in increasing the number of qualified artisans by rolling out skills programmes, learnerships, internships and apprenticeships, and by establishing partnerships with TVET colleges, universities and the labour market to provide opportunities for workplace experience.

Through the SETAs, over the medium term, 93 000 new artisans are expected to be registered for training and 75 000 artisan learners are expected to qualify. For this purpose, R347.8 million over the medium term is allocated. Through the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan, the DHET has targeted 30 000 artisans per annum over the medium-term period to address shortage of artisanal skills in the country. Income generated through the skills development levy, which is collected from employers by the South African Revenue Service (SARS) and transferred to SETAs and the NSF as a direct charge

against the National Revenue Fund, contributes significantly to key performance areas of the public skills development system, including artisan development.

Strengthening governance of the CET sector

The DHET recognises that improving the CET sector is key for development as it has the potential to provide students with access to a comprehensive range of programmes that lead to part and full qualifications and employment opportunities, including entrepreneurial opportunities.

To ensure that the sector rises to its potential, the DHET will continue to prioritise the development and training of lecturers in CET colleges and learning centres by enabling them to upgrade their qualifications, with a particular focus on mathematics and science. The DHET has also strengthened its recruitment policies so that only qualified lecturers are employed in the sector.

Establishing the Imbali Education Precinct

The Imbali Education Precinct will be made up of an interconnected network of education and support institutions that will work together in a locality for the mutual benefit of all involved – to create seamless, enhanced, quality education pathways from early childhood education to higher education for the community it serves.

Some progress has been made in implementing the Imbali Education Precinct Development Plan, mostly on the Indumiso Campus of the Durban University of Technology (DUT) through the allocation of existing resources, including significant infrastructure developments, and the development of a range of new teacher education programmes for TVET and CET college lecturers. However, there has been slow progress for a range of reasons, including changed leadership at DUT and a lack of on-the-ground champions.

A project team and project office will be established to take the work forward over the next five years. The idea and model of the development of education precincts will be tested in terms of the Imbali Project. It is envisaged that, over the next 10-year period, at least three such precincts will be developed across the country. This approach will support the District Development Model.

South African Institute for Vocational and Continuing Education and Training

Colleges must evolve into institutions that are highly responsive to the mid-level skills demands in the labour market. This requires expert and accurate planning in identifying much-needed skills sets, identifying appropriate modalities of skills training and delivery, efficient turnaround times in the development and delivery of occupational curricula, and vastly expanding the opportunities for work-based experience and learning through stakeholder engagements and partnerships.

The DHET will, in partnership with the German government, seek to strengthen the TVET system through:

 sectorial coordination and cooperation to implement governance and policy through the facilitation of cooperation agreements between

- the public and private sectors that build on existing initiatives and take forward new initiatives.
- private-sector engagement by assisting partner organisations to increase the level of private sector representation in decision-making bodies and to promote systematic stakeholder dialogue.
- the implementation of reformed vocational and technical skills development to support the provision of demand- oriented skills development to youth by promoting on-the-job or work-based training approaches, the training of vocational teaching personnel, and strengthening the quality of artisan training in centres of specialisation.

Reviewing the NSF

The 2014 White Paper for Post-School Education and Training enunciates that the NSF will be responsible for skills development aligned to national development strategies and priorities, including building linkages within the skills system and providing funds for government strategies such as youth programmes, building small businesses and cooperatives, and rural development. It will also fund research and innovation that is not confined to a particular sector.

Coupled with the White Paper and other government strategic policy instruments, is the establishment of the new Ministry of Higher Education, Science and Innovation, which necessitates a review of policy and systems. On the other hand, the DSI has introduced the White Paper on Science, Technology and Innovation, which is critical in ensuring that science, technology and innovation enable inclusive and sustainable South African development in a changing world.

With the rising unemployment rate, especially among the youth, and sluggish economic growth, prioritisation and focused skills development interventions that support national policies need urgent attention and resourcing. To this end, the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation intends to undertake a review of the NSF – to evaluate the general operations of the NSF, including, but not limited to its efficiency and relevance regarding the country's national priorities.

Legislation

Key policies and legislation relating to Higher education and training in South Africa include the:

- Continuing Education and Training Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006), which
 provides for the regulation of continuing education and training, the
 establishment of governance structures for, and the funding of, public
 TVET colleges and CET colleges, the registration of private colleges,
 and the promotion of quality in continuing education and training;
- Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), which provides for a unified national system of higher education;
- NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), which provides for the NQF, the SAQA and quality councils for the issuing and quality assurance of qualifications required by the sub-frameworks of the NQF;
- NSFAS Act, 1999 (Act 56 of 1999), which provides for the granting
 of loans and bursaries to eligible students attending public higher
 education and training institutions, and the subsequent administration
 of such loans and bursaries;

- Skills Development Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 37 of 2008), which enables the creation of the National Skills Authority, sector education and training authorities, the establishment of the Quality Council for Trades and Occupations, and the regulation of apprenticeships, learnerships and other matters relating to skills development; and
- Skills Development Levies Act, 1999 (Act 9 of 1999), which provides for the imposition of skills development levies.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DHET was allocated R116.8 billion. Transfers and subsidies account for an estimated 91.3% (R374.1 billion) of the department's planned expenditure, with R212.5 billion earmarked for departmental agencies and accounts, R845.7 million for non-profit institutions and R160.7 billion for higher education institutions.

Total expenditure is set to increase at an average annual rate of 7.2%, from R116.8 billion in 2021/22 to R143.7 billion in 2024/25. These funds will contribute to building a high- quality, demographically representative higher education sector that provides students and staff with opportunities for access and success.

Expenditure on compensation of employees is expected to be R10.8 billion in 2022/23, R10.9 billion in 2023/24 and R11.5 billion in 2024/25. The bulk of this funding is for TVET college lecturers and support staff, and CET educators. Spending on compensation of employees constitutes an average 94.4% (R31.3 billion) of the budgets in the TVET and CET programmes.

National Skills Development Strategy

The key driving force of the NSDS 3 (2011-2020) was improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It promoted the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis was particularly on people who did not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.

The strategy promoted partnerships between employers, public education institutions, TVET colleges and universities and private training providers to ensure that cross-sectoral and intersectoral needs were addressed. The NSDS 3 was guided by, and measured against, several key developmental and transformation imperatives, such as race, class, gender, geographic considerations, age differences, disability, and HIV and AIDS. The NSDS 3 addressed the scope and mandate of the SETAs. The SETAs facilitated the delivery of sector-specific skills interventions that helped achieve the goals of the strategy, address employer demand and deliver results.

The strategy emphasised the relevance, quality and sustainability of skills training programmes focusing on eight goals, namely:

- establishing a credible institutional mechanism for skills planning, and ensuring that the national need in relation to skills development is researched, documented and communicated to enable effective planning across all economic sectors;
- · increasing access to occupation-specific programmes targeting

intermediate and higher-level professional qualifications:

- promoting the growth of a public TVET college system that is responsive to sector, local, regional and national skills needs and priorities;
- addressing the low level of youth and adult language and numeracy skills to enable additional training;
- · encouraging better use of workplace-based skills development;
- encouraging and supporting cooperatives, small enterprises, workerinitiated non-governmental organisation and community-training initiatives:
- increasing public-sector capacity for improved service delivery and supporting the building of a developmental state; and
- · building career and vocational guidance.

Entities

Council on Higher Education

The CHE is a statutory body established in terms of the Higher Education Act of 1997, as amended. The council is mandated to advise the Minister responsible for higher education on all matters pertaining to higher education; develop and manage the higher education qualifications sub-framework; and develop and implement a suite of policies and criteria to facilitate the implementation of the framework and sub-framework, and protect their integrity.

Over the medium term, the council will continue to focus on becoming a recognised centre for information and policy analysis on higher education, and on advising the Minister by researching and monitoring the higher education sector.

The council's spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 46.8% (R112.2 million) of its total budget of R252.3 million over the medium term as the core functions of providing research, quality assurance, knowledge and advisory services, and monitoring and evaluation are labour intensive. The number of personnel is expected to remain constant at 50 over the medium term. If capacity challenges arise, it will appoint external academics as consultants.

Transfers from the department account for an estimated 91.1% (R244.5 million) of total revenue over the period ahead. These are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.5%, from R70 million in 2021/22 to R86.9 million in 2024/25, as a result of the council's baseline increase of R60 million to implement its approved quality assurance framework. The remainder of the council's revenue is set to be generated through interest on investments and fees charged for accreditation services provided to private higher education institutions.

National Skills Fund

The NSF was established in 1999 in terms of Section 27 of the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998). The fund focuses on national priority projects identified in the NSDS, projects related to the achievement of the purposes of the Act, as determined by the DG of Higher Education and Training, and any activity undertaken by the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation to achieve a national standard of good practice in skills development.

Over the medium term, the fund aims to contribute to the development of skills for 4 900 small, medium and micro enterprises and cooperatives; facilitate the acquisition of various skills for 34 500 learners through community-based skills development initiatives; fund education and training for occupations in high demand for 117 000 learners; fund education and training programmes for 107 400 learners from rural areas; pursue priority projects such as the development of infrastructure at TVET and CET colleges; and conduct research and innovation aimed at expanding, integrating and improving the effectiveness of the post-school education and training system. An estimated 93.1% (R10.6 billion) of its expenditure over the medium term is set to go towards these skills development and infrastructure initiatives.

The fund receives R210 million over the first two years of the MTEF period as part of the presidential employment intervention to continue the pay-for-performance model to provide demand-responsive training for jobs in priority growth areas such as the digital and ICT sectors. A total of 16 000 jobs are expected to be created through the model.

The fund derives its revenue through the skills development levy, which is collected from employers by the SARS and transferred to the fund as a direct charge against the National Revenue Fund; and interest earned on investments at the Public Investment Corporation.

Over the MTEF period, revenue from the levy is estimated at 87.9% (R13.6 billion), increasing at an average annual rate of 7.4%, from R3.9 billion in 2021/22 t R4.8 billion in 2024/25. The remaining 12.2% of revenue from interest is estimated at R1.9 billion.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

The NSFAS was established in terms of the NSFAS Act of 1999, as amended. The scheme is responsible for providing loans and bursaries; developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students in consultation with the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation; raising funds; recovering past loans; maintaining and analysing a database of funded students; undertaking research for the better use of financial resources; advising the Minister on matters relating to student financial aid; and undertaking other functions assigned to it by the Act or the Minister.

The scheme aims to provide bursaries to more than 1.3 million undergraduate university students and an estimated 1.1 million TVET college students over the MTEF period at a projected cost of R147.9 billion, and plans to enter into sector stakeholder partnerships and undertake research to determine ways to increase funding so that more students can obtain bursaries. It also aims to enhance the bursary application process so that funding confirmation is immediate and that any issues that arise with the disbursement of tuition and student allowance fees are dealt with promptly. Transfers from the department constitute an estimated 94.2% (R144.3 billion) of the scheme's total revenue over the MTEF period, increasing at an average annual rate of 10.4%, from R38.6 billion in 2021/22 to R51.9 billion in 2024/25 as a result of an additional allocation of R32.6 billion over the MTEF period to fund the increased number of students qualifying for financial support.

The remainder (R4.7 billion) is derived mainly through transfers from the DBE for the Funza Lushaka teacher bursary programme, the NSF SETAs and other government departments. Total revenue is expected to increase by 9.2% over the MTEF period, from R42 billion in 2021/22 to R54.7 billion in 2024/25.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations

The Quality Council for Trades and Occupations was established through the Skills Development Act of 1998. It is mandated to oversee the development and maintenance of the occupational qualifications sub-framework in the NQF, and advise the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation on all policy matters concerning occupational standards and qualifications.

The council's quality assurance role and its management of the occupational qualifications sub-framework contribute to the post-school sector's broader imperative of providing access to education and training of the highest quality that leads to significantly improved learning outcomes.

Over the medium term, the council will focus on overseeing the conversion of national accredited technical education diploma qualifications into occupational qualifications that have greater industry relevance, and developing and submitting new occupational qualifications to the SAQA for registration. These activities will be funded at a projected cost of R231.3 million over the medium term, comprising an estimated 61.4% of total expenditure.

The council will also intensify its quality assurance functions for occupational qualifications by evaluating, assessing and verifying the qualifications provided by registered providers at an estimated cost of R36.9 million over the MTEF period.

The council expects to derive 75% (R303.1 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period from SETAs for the provision of quality assurance for skills and training programmes, and 21.4% (R86.3 million) through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 13.8%, from R95.4 million in 2021/22 to R140.7 million in 2024/25, driven mainly by an expected increase in revenue from SETAs.

Sector education and training authorities

The Skills Development Act of 1998 mandates SETAs to implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve skills in the South African workforce, provide learnerships that lead to recognised occupational qualifications, and fund skills development. The authorities derive their objectives directly from the NSDS, which aims to increase access to occupationally directed programmes, promote the growth of public TVET colleges, address low levels of youth and adult literacy and numeracy skills, and encourage the better use of workplace-based skills development.

Over the medium term, the authorities will focus on strengthening and delivering relevant priority skills to South Africa's labour market, with particular emphasis on partnerships with TVET colleges, universities

and the market; monitoring and evaluation; improved institutional research capacity; artisan development; apprenticeships, learnerships, internships and bursaries; and the development of small, medium and micro enterprises to provide opportunities for work experience.

Carrying out these activities is expected to cost R62.9 billion over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 6.6%, from R18.6 billion in 2021/22 to R22.6 billion in 2024/25. The authorities will continue to support artisan development through skills development centres, with the specific aim of addressing skills shortages identified by occupational teams working on strategic infrastructure projects. The sector plans to train 68 000 artisans over the medium term through this initiative at a projected cost of R4.7 billion.

The authorities derive the bulk of their revenue through the skills development levy, which is collected from employers by the SARS and transferred as a direct charge against the National Revenue Fund. Revenue from the levy comprises an estimated 90.1% (R55.6 billion) of total revenue over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 8.2%, from R15.8 billion in 2021/22 to R20 billion in 2024/25, in line with the expectation that the economy will begin to recover. The remainder (R5.3 billion) is set to be derived through interest on investments.

South African Qualifications Authority

The institution is a statutory body established in terms of the SAQA Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995) and exists under the NQF Act of 2008, as amended. Its mandate and goals are to advance the objectives of the NQF, coordinate the higher education qualifications and occupational qualifications sub-frameworks, and oversee the further development and implementation of the NQF.

Over the medium term, the authority will focus on implementing framework policies effectively; registering quality qualifications; promoting, recording and analysing learning initiatives; lobbying to strengthen and align relevant legislation so that the authority's mandate is clearly reflected in amendments to the NQF Act (2008); recognising professional bodies; registering professional designations; verifying national and foreign qualifications; locating foreign qualifications within the NQF; and reporting on misrepresented qualifications.

As this work is labour intensive, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 67.1% (R243.8 million) of the authority's total projected expenditure over the period ahead, increasing at an average annual rate of 2.6%, from R78.1 million in 2021/22 to R84.3 million in 2024/25.

The authority is set to receive 70.3% (R261.9 million) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 3.8%, from R82.8 million in 2021/22 to R92.6 million in 2024/25. The remainder is set to be derived through the evaluation of foreign qualifications, income from professional bodies and the verification of national qualifications. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.7%, from R120.2 million in 2021/22 to R130.3 million in 2024/25.

Universities

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- · Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- · National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela University (NMU)
- North-West University
- · Rhodes University
- · Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University
- Sol Plaatje University, Northern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology
- University of Cape Town (UCT)
- University of Fort Hare
- · University of the Free State
- · University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- · University of Limpopo
- · University of Mpumalanga
- · University of Pretoria
- · University of South Africa
- University of Stellenbosch
- · University of Venda
- · University of the Western Cape
- · University of the Witwatersrand
- · University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology
- · Walter Sisulu University, Eastern Cape.

Science and Innovation

In 2020/21, the DSI started working under a new five-year strategic plan, which saw the department begin to implement a new policy that has replaced the 1996 White Paper on Science and Technology. The revised mandate of the DSI is articulated in the 2019 White Paper on Science, Technology and Innovation.

The White Paper increased the scope for science, technology and innovation in support of South Africa's inclusive development. This revision in policy has attempted to firm up policy efforts in areas where the DSI has encountered challenges in implementation. The new strategic plan has adopted six outcomes, which the department will pursue between 2020/21 and 2024/25.

These are:

- a transformed, inclusive, responsive and coherent National System of Innovation:
- · increased knowledge generation and innovation outputs;
- knowledge utilisatiion for economic development in revitalising traditional industries and stimulating research and development

(R&D)-led industrial development;

- · knowledge utilisation for inclusive development; and
- innovation in support of a capable and developmental state.

The NDP identifies science, technology and innovation as a primary driver of economic growth, job creation and socio-economic reform. Central to this identification is the emphasis of the 2019 White Paper on Science, Technology and Innovation on the themes of inclusivity, transformation and partnerships.

The White Paper is aimed at improving policy coherence, developing human capabilities, expanding knowledge, improving innovation performance and increasing investment. The work of the DSI is pivotal in realising these goals, particularly the initiatives it champions for innovation in the challenging fields of energy, food security, poverty alleviation and healthcare.

The implementation of the Strategic Plan on Transformed, Inclusive, Responsive Coherent National System of Innovation will be strengthened through the finalisation of the Decadal Plan 2020-2030, that will define specific missions which will be pursued collectively by the National System of Innovation in support of national priorities.

The DSI will introduce the Sovereign Innovation Fund, during the 2020/21 financial year, to support knowledge utilisation for economic development in revitalising traditional industries and stimulating R&D-led industrial development.

Once fully operational, the Sovereign Innovation Fund will serve as a new financing instrument between the public and private sectors. Its overall objective will be to harvest and commercialise South African technology innovations for deployment in national and international markets.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on developing human capital, ensuring the effective use of publicly funded intellectual property, implementing the National Space Strategy, and implementing the National Integrated Cyberinfrastructure System.

Developing human capital

Human capital is key to the development of a national system of innovation that is globally competitive and responsive to South Africa's developmental needs. For this purpose, the DSI has allocated R8.5 billion over the MTEF period in the Human Capital and Science Promotions subprogramme to provide postgraduate bursaries and scholarships; internships; and support for emerging and established researchers, including strategic instruments such as the South African research chairs initiative, and the centres of excellence.

To date, the department has awarded 252 research chairs and will continue to support the 14 established centres of excellence that serve as hubs that draw together a range of universities and science councils to tackle challenges in health, food security, human development, energy and biodiversity, among other things.

Effective use of publicly funded intellectual property

The DSI will continue to work towards identifying, protecting, using and commercialising intellectual property and technology. Over the MTEF

period, this includes generating a targeted 365 knowledge products (including peer-reviewed scientific articles and applications for or the registration/granting of intellectual property rights); developing and approving 12 science, technology and innovation strategic policy directives; and developing and/or maintaining nine interventions to improve the delivery of government services or functions. These activities are expected to contribute to spending of R5.5 billion in the Technology Innovation programme over the medium term.

National Space Strategy

The national space strategy is intended to ensure, through activities such as Earth observation, navigation and meteorological monitoring, that South Africa captures a reasonable share of the global space market. To this end, R642.2 million is allocated over the medium term to the Space Science subprogramme in the Technology Innovation programme.

In addition, as the department seeks to contribute to a reduction in greenhouse gas emissions and air pollution through more diverse and sustainable energy solutions, R598 million in the Hydrogen and Energy subprogramme, in the same programme, will be invested in the development of technologies such as hydrogen fuel cells, renewable energy and carbon capture.

National Integrated Cyberinfrastructure System

The National Integrated Cyberinfrastructure System is expected to enable the successful and sustainable implementation of national projects such as MeerKAT and the Square Kilometre Array (SKA). To this end, R3.7 billion is allocated over the medium term to the Basic Science and Infrastructure subprogramme in the Research, Development and Support programme for the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research to implement the system. The MeerKAT telescope, for example, is expected to add 20 antennae to its current array of 64 at a projected cost of R800 million over the period ahead.

Legislation

Legislation governing the DSI include the:

- Intellectual Property (IP) Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008), provides for the more effective use of IP emanating from publicly financed R&D, through the establishment of the National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO), the IP Fund, and offices of technology transfer at institutions;
- Technology Innovation Act, 2008 (Act 26 of 2008), intends to promote the development and exploitation in the public interest of discoveries, inventions, innovations and improvements, and for that purpose establishes the Technology Innovation Agency;
- South African National Space Agency (SANSA) Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008), establishes the SANSA to promote space science research, cooperation in space-related activities and the creation of an environment conducive for the development of space technologies by industry;

- Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act 27 of 2003), establishes
 the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions, and
 legislates the registration of professional natural scientists, natural
 scientists-in-training, natural science technologists and natural
 science technologists-in-training;
- NRF Act, 1998 (Act 23 of 1998), establishes the NRF to promote basic and applied research, as well as the extension and transfer of knowledge in the various fields of science and technology;
- National Advisory Council on Innovation (NACI) Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997), establishes the NACI to advise the Minister responsible for science and innovation on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives;
- Africa Institute of South Africa (AISA) Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001), establishes the AISA to promote knowledge and understanding of African affairs by encouraging leading social scientists;
- Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Act, 2008 (Act 17 of 2008), provides for the HSRC, which carries out research that generates critical and independent knowledge relative to all aspects of human and social development;
- Scientific Research Council Act, 1988 (Act 46 of 1988), refers to the
 activities of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR),
 one of the leading scientific and technological research, development
 and implementation organisations in Africa, which undertakes
 directed R&D for socio-economic growth in areas including the
 built environment, defence, the environmental sciences, as well as
 biological, chemical and laser technologies;
- Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007), provides for the preservation and protection of areas in South Africa that are uniquely suited to optical and radio astronomy, and for intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas;
- Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 12 of 2010), amends the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), to mandate the Council for Geoscience to be the custodian of geotechnical information; to act as a national advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure and development, and to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors:
- South African National Research Network (SANReN), which is responsible for the roll-out of a high-speed broadband network to all academic and research institutions in the country, was awarded a private electronic communications network licence exemption under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005); and
- Science and Technology Laws, Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 7 of 2014), seeks to, among other things, streamline the process for the nomination and appointment of members of the boards or councils of such entities as well as the filling of vacancies on the boards.

Budge

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DSI was allocated R2.6 billion. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.4%,

from R9 billion in 2021/22 to R9.7 billion in 2024/25. Transfers to entities account for an estimated 93.7% (R26.3 billion) of the department's expenditure over the MTEF period. The second-largest cost driver is compensation of employees, spending on which is set to increase at an average annual rate of 1%, from R363.3 million in 2021/22 to R374.5 million in 2024/25.

Entities

Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

The academy was established in terms of the ASSAf Act, 2001 (Act 67 of 2001), as amended, to promote outstanding achievements in all fields of scientific inquiry, recognize excellence, and provide evidence-based scientific advice to government and other stakeholders.

Over the medium term, the academy aims to achieve enhanced national capacity to produce and publish research, provide evidence-based policy advice to government, and increase the quality and visibility of South African research publications. This will entail undertaking various studies in the areas of health, education, climate change, energy, the science-policy nexus, biosafety and biosecurity, poverty reduction, gender-responsive issues; and, where possible, young people and people living with disabilities.

Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 4.7%, from R43 million in 2021/22 to R37.2 million in 2024/25. This is mainly a result of the academy using digital platforms, which are more cost effective than physical venues, for most of its activities since the onset of the COVID-19 pandemic. Transfers from the department account for an estimated 95.6% (R103.3 million) of the academy's total revenue over the period ahead, also decreasing at an average annual rate of 4.9%, from R41.3 million in 2021/22 to R35.5 million in 2024/25.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR was established in 1945 and is governed in terms of the Scientific Research Council Act of 1988. The council fosters industrial and scientific development in the national interest, through multidisciplinary research and technological innovation to improve the ability of the State to efficiently deliver basic services, in fields such as health, education, social security, energy and shelter, to all South Africans, and in so doing, reduce inequality.

Over the medium term, the council will focus on conducting highquality and relevant research, pursuing technological innovation to foster industrial and scientific development, and furthering industrial development opportunities in fields such as pharmaceutical innovation and agro-processing.

The council's ability to generate its own revenue is directly related to its ability to attract and retain the requisite expertise and skills to deliver favourable research outcomes. As such, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 54.1% (R5.9 billion) of the council's total expenditure, increasing at an average annual rate of 7%, from R1.7 billion in 2021/22 to R2 billion in 2024/25. To retain a high calibre of staff and strengthen its value proposition, the council also offers non-monetary employee benefits such as training and exchange programmes.

The council generates revenue mainly through the services it renders, such as contract research and development, income from intellectual property, proceeds from technology transfer, and royalties.

Transfers from the department account for an estimated 21.6% (R2.3 billion) of its projected total revenue of R10.9 billion over the MTEF period.

The council expects to post a net profit of R2 million in 2022/23, which it anticipates increasing to R3 million by the end of the MTEF period. These profits will be invested in resources and capabilities such as property, plant and equipment.

In January 2021, the CSIR was recognised as a top employer in South Africa by the Top Employers Institute Programme, which certifies organisations based on the participation and results of their Human Resource Best Practices Survey. The survey covers six human resource domains consisting of 20 topics such as people strategy, work environment, talent acquisition, learning, well-being, and diversity and inclusion, among others.

Human Sciences Research Council

The HSRC was established in 1968 to undertake, promote and coordinate research in human and social sciences. The council is mandated to initiate, undertake and foster strategic, basic and applied research in human sciences; and address developmental challenges by gathering, analysing and publishing relevant data, especially through projects linked to collaborative programmes oriented towards the Public Sector.

The council's research outputs are widely disseminated to support policy development at all levels of government. As such, over the medium term, the council will continue to focus on producing research that serves the public; contributing to good governance and public service delivery; helping to address the challenges of poverty, inequality and inclusive development; and building the capacity of scholars and researchers.

As a research institute, human capital plays a central role in the council's work. As such, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 49.6% (R893.5 million) of the council's budget, increasing at an average annual rate of 4.4%, from R273.4 million in 2021/22 to R311 million in 2024/25. The council is set to receive 56.6% (R980.2 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department, decreasing at an average annual rate of 1.5%, from R352.4 million in 2021/22 to R336.8 million in 2024/25. The remaining revenue is generated by research contracts and grants from national and international agencies, government departments and private sector foundations.

National Research Foundation

The NRF is mandated to fund research, develop human resources, promote indigenous knowledge, and provide research facilities to enable knowledge creation, innovation and development in all fields of science and technology.

Over the MTEF period, the foundation will focus on implementing its 10-year strategy: Vision 2030. This entails interventions to catalyse transformation in the science and technology system through measures

such as creating grant funding instruments that focus on women and black researchers, and fast-tracking black women doctoral graduates towards obtaining their foundation rating.

To procure specialised equipment at iThemba Labs, the SKA and the extension of the MeerKAT telescope, capital expenditure of R5 billion over the MTEF period is allocated in the National Research Infrastructure Platforms programme.

The foundation receives funding primarily through a parliamentary grant, which accounts for an estimated 89% (R12.4 billion) of its projected revenue over the MTEF period. Other revenue is derived through transfers from the department, contract funding for specific projects and programmes from other government departments and entities, and income generated by sales and interest earned. Transfers from the department are expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 3.6%, from R4.5 billion in 2021/22 to R4.1 billion in 2024/25, due to the completion of Phase 1 of the SKA.

South African National Space Agency

The agency was established in terms of the SANSA Act of 2008, as amended, to promote the peaceful use of space, foster international cooperation in space-related activities, and facilitate the creation of an environment conducive to space technology and industrial development. Over the medium term, the agency will focus on broadening the suite of products and services available in the space sector, and contributing to promoting socio-economic development across Africa. This will be achieved by building adequate space capacity; improving geospatial information; developing key infrastructure in support of the sector; and providing technical skills interventions, research capacity, and knowledge-management tools.

As the agency relies on highly skilled professionals to fulfil its mandate, compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 52.8% (R475 million) of its planned spending, increasing at an average annual rate of 0.8%, from R163.7 million in 2021/22 to R167.4 million in 2024/25. Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 8.5%, from R363.8 million in 2021/22 to R278.8 in 2024/25, particularly in administration-related activities, as a result of an anticipated decrease in revenue, mainly from the parliamentary grant.

Transfers from the department account for an estimated 72.6% (R611 million) of the agency's revenue over the MTEF period. Additional revenue is generated by services rendered to government institutions and other organisations, mainly international clients in the space sector.

Technology Innovation Agency

The Technology Innovation Agency Act of 2008, as amended, mandates the agency to serve as a key institutional intervention to bridge the innovation gap between R&D outcomes from higher education institutions, science councils, public entities and private companies. This with the purpose of intensifying the effect of technological innovation in the economy.

Over the medium term, the agency will continue to focus on: bridging the innovation gap between research and development; supporting technologies within the national system of innovation; scaling up all strategic programmes by increasing the pace at which applications and internal processes take place; and creating a conducive environment for engaging with innovators, stakeholders and suppliers.

Accordingly, the agency plans to license 41 new technologies, provide technology development funding and support in strategic high-impact areas to 83 innovators, and ensure that at least 470 patents, publication outputs and knowledge-based products are produced.

To fund these initiatives, expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.1%, from R572.2 million in 2021/22 to R608.3 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 19.7% (R348.1 million) of expenditure over the period ahead. The agency derives the bulk of its revenue through transfers from the department. These are set to increase at an average annual rate of 2.4%, from R447.7 million in 2021/22 to R480.8 million in 2024/25 as the agency aims to increase the number of technologies it licenses and commercialises.

In 2021, South Africa was elected as an International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) designated Regional Space Weather Centre. The announcement came after the country received excellent audit results from ICAO.

South Africa, through the South African National Space Agency, has been designated to provide space weather information that is now an adopted standard by ICAO for all aviation requirements.

The country has been given three years to upgrade its current limited capacity to meet ICAO's requirements. The requirements include 24-hours/seven-day operations with an established team of trained forecasters and specialist space researchers. It has also been granted permission to collaborate with the Pan-European Consortium for Aviation Space Weather User Service.

The designation affords South Africa an opportunity to grow its science and engineering technology and innovation sector, and puts the country on the map as a global player in space science.

Role player

South Áfrican Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)

The SACNASP's mandate is to provide a credible professional registration and regulatory body that allows natural scientists to establish, direct, sustain and ensure a high level of professionalism and ethical conscience in the natural scientific professions sector. Their conduct should be internationally acceptable and in the broad interest of the community as outlined in the SACNASP Code of Conduct.

Policy mandate and programmes **Technology Innovation**

The programme aims to enable R&D in space science and technology, energy security and the bioeconomy, and in the emerging and converging areas of nanotechnology, robotics, photonics and indigenous knowledge systems (IKS), to promote the realisation of commercial products, processes and services.

It also promotes the protection and utilisation of IP, technology transfer and technology commercialisation through the implementation of enabling policies and interventions along the entire innovation value chain. Its subprogrammes include the:

- Space Science, which supports the creation of an environment conducive to the implementation of the national space strategy and South African earth observation strategy, and that addresses the development of innovative applications and human capital to respond to national priorities and support socio-economic development.
- Hydrogen and Energy, which provides policy leadership in research, development and innovation initiatives in the energy sector. This subprogramme plays a key role in developing a sustainable and globally competitive South African energy knowledge base and industry.
- Bio-innovation, which leads the implementation of the national bioeconomy strategy.
- Innovation Priorities and Instruments, which supports and strengthens
 the innovation policy package aimed at creating and sustaining an
 enabling environment for innovation, technology and development,
 and the commercialisation of publicly funded R&D initiatives.
- NIPMO the implementing agency established to provide for the more effective use of IP emanating from publicly financed R&D.

International Cooperation and Resources

The programme strategically develops, promotes and manages international partnerships that strengthen the National System of Innovation. It enables an exchange of knowledge, capacity and resources between South Africa and its international partners, with a focus on building capacity to support science, technology and innovation in Africa. It also supports South African foreign policy through science diplomacy. Its subprogrammes include:

- Multilateral Cooperation and Africa, which advances and facilitates South Africa's participation in bilateral science, technology and innovation cooperation initiatives with other African partners; in African multilateral programmes, especially those of the Southern African Development Community and African Union; and in broader multilateral science, technology and innovation and innovation partnerships, with a strategic focus on South-South cooperation.
- International Resources, which works to increase the flow of international funding into South African science, technology and innovation initiatives, as well as African regional and continental programmes, through concerted efforts to promote foreign investment and the fostering of strategic relations with partners such

- as the EU, as well as foundations and philanthropic organisations and the multinational private sector.
- Overseas Bilateral Cooperation, which promotes and facilitates South Africa's cooperation in bilateral science, technology and innovation agreements with partners in Europe, the Americas, Asia and Australasia, especially for human capital development and collaborative research and innovation; and secures support for joint cooperation with other African partners.

South Africa is regarded by many countries and private sector partners as a preferred and privileged partner for international cooperation. On average, approximately 15% of annual R&D funding in South Africa comes from international investors.

Research, Development and Support

The programme provides an enabling environment for research and knowledge production that promotes the strategic development of basic sciences and priority science areas through the promotion of science human capital development, and the provision of research infrastructure and relevant research support, in pursuit of South Africa's transition to a knowledge economy. Its subprogrammes include:

Human Capital and Science Promotions, which formulates and implements policies and strategies that address the availability of human capital for science, technology and innovation; provide fundamental support for research activities; and contribute to the development of a society that is knowledgeable about science, critically engaged and scientifically literate.

Science Missions, which promotes the development of research, the production of scientific knowledge, and the development of human capital in fields of science in which South Africa enjoys a geographic advantage.

Basic Science and Infrastructure, which facilitates the strategic implementation of research and innovation equipment and facilities to promote knowledge production in areas of national priority, and sustain innovation led by research and development. Astronomy, which supports the development of astronomical sciences around a new multiwavelength astronomy strategy, and provides strategic guidance and support to relevant astronomy institutions in the implementation of strategic astronomy programmes.

Socio-economic Innovation Partnerships

The programme enhances government's growth and development priority areas through targeted science and technology-based innovation interventions, and the development of strategic partnerships with other government departments, industry, research institutions and communities. Its subprogrammes include:

- Sector Innovation and Green Economy, which provides policy, strategy and direction for research and the development-led growth of strategic sectors of the economy; and supports the transition to a green economy.
- · Innovation for Inclusive Development, which supports the

development of science and technology-based innovations for tackling poverty, including the creation of sustainable jobs and human settlements, and the enhanced delivery of basic services.

- Science and Technology Investment, which leads and supports
 the development of indicators and instruments for monitoring
 investments in science and technology, the performance of the
 National System of Innovation, and ways of strengthening policy.
- Technology Localisation, Beneficiation and Advanced Manufacturing, which funds technology and innovation development programmes to advance strategic, sustainable economic growth for the medium and long term; sector development priorities; and service delivery.

National research facilities

The national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the National Research and Development Strategy.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

The SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its prime function is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility and by promoting astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa.

The SAAO contributes to South Africa's future development by creating and disseminating scientific knowledge, providing research infrastructure and providing an interface between science and society. It is also responsible for managing the operations of the South African Large Telescope.

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

The HartRAO is a national facility of the NRF. Its radio astronomy research focuses on stellar evolution, pulsars and masers; and its space geodesy research uses space-based techniques to study the earth. The facility is also used by university students for carrying out research. It also undertakes science awareness programmes for schools and the general public.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (SAIAB)

A national facility of the NRF, the SAIAB is famous for its association with the discovery of the enigmatic coelacanth and is internationally recognised for ichthyological research, dynamic research staff and active postgraduate school. The SAIAB provides unique skills and infrastructure support in marine, estuarine and freshwater ecosystems research, molecular research, collections and bioinformatics.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a business unit of the NRF and serves as a national platform for detecting, translating and predicting environmental change through scientifically designed observation systems and research. The SAEON also captures and makes long-term datasets freely accessible, and runs an education outreach programme. The SAEON has six nodes dispersed geographically across the country.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

The NZG is a rapidly transforming facility reporting to the NRF. It owns an impressive animal collection, conservation centres, the Centre for Conservation Science and the NZG Academy.

The NZG is well placed as an education and awareness platform for visitors comprising educators, learners, students, special interest groups and the general public.

iThemba LABS

iThemba LABS is the continent's largest facility for particle and nuclear research as well as one of only a handful of facilities in the world producing radionuclides for commercial, research and medical applications. In addition, its facilities include a full radiotherapy clinic for the treatment of certain cancers using both proton and neutron therapy.

The facility has secured government support to finance its strategic flagship project, the South Africa Isotope Facility (SAIF) – an initiative that seeks to secure future sustainability of the facility by procuring a dedicated 70 Mega electron-volt cyclotron accelerator to boost the production rate of a range of accelerator-based radioisotopes.

The strategic vision of the facility is to configure its radioisotope production division and establish the SAIF in a flagship project geared to triple the current radioisotope income. The move is set to establish the facility as a formidable international entity with a secure market niche in the accelerator-based radiopharmaceutical sector.

An annual average of more than 155 000 patients worldwide benefit from cancer diagnostic radioisotopes produced using the separated sector cyclotron particle at iThemba LABS.

Infrastructure projects Square Kilometre Array

The multibillion-rand SKA, to be hosted in South Africa and Australia, will eventually extend into eight African countries and will be the world's biggest telescope. It is also one of the biggest-ever scientific projects and multinational collaborations in the name of science. The SKA organisation is progressing well, and South Africa continues to play an active role in the project. It was one of seven countries (with Australia, China, Italy, the Netherlands, Portugal and the United Kingdom (UK)) that signed a treaty establishing the SKA Observatory in March 2019.

South Africa is also working on getting the SKA Observatory treaty ratified by Parliament. The SKA Observatory is an intergovernmental organisation tasked with the construction and operations of the SKA radio telescope. The quality of astronomy infrastructure will allow world-class research.

With thousands of linked radio wave receptors in Australia and in southern Africa, the SKA radio telescope will constantly scan space and feed the data to astronomers around the world.

The amounts of data being collected and transmitted by the SKA in a single day would take nearly two million years to play back on an iPod. This means the project requires supercomputing power and Big Data management and analytics capabilities on an unprecedented scale. The SKA is working with the world's most significant ICT powerhouses on the project.

One aspect of the project will see the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy and the International Business Machines Corporation collaborating to research extremely fast, but low-power exascale computer systems, data transport and storage processes, and streaming analytics that will be required to read, store and analyse all the raw data that will be collected daily.

The SKA project will also have unprecedented data-connectivity needs. Meeting the advanced technological and engineering needs of this project will result in significant local skills development, revolutionise science and technology research and enable innovative new businesses and employment in the science, technology and engineering fields.

Aside from the benefits to African science, Big Data Management and Analytics capabilities could be the biggest spin-off from the SKA project. The innovations, skills development and commercial potential emerging as a result of the project are huge. The potential is not just academic – the taxpayer-funded IP is developed to a point where it is ready to become commercialised and benefit the economy.

Human capital development is already taking place as a result of the SKA project, with bursaries and scholarships being granted to allow students to learn the necessary cutting-edge science, technology, mathematics and engineering skills to support the project. Because the SKA is a long-term project, over decades its effect will increase.

The Centre for High Performance Computing is a member of the international SKA Science Data Processing Consortium. With funding from the DSI, it is also supporting eight African SKA partner countries through an initiative where they have installed its new supercomputer to provide 1 000 teraflops (one petaflop) of computing power to researchers.

The facility was upgraded to meet the growing demand for use by university and industrial researchers. The SKA remains a major platform for cutting-edge innovation in domains such as supercomputing the high-speed transmission and processing of massive data sets. Going forward, there will be a strong drive to leverage the SKA as a spearhead for other programmes — including next generation high performance computing challenges and Big Data challenges.

Two engineering consortia have been hard at work at their sites in Murchison, Western Australia, and the Northern Cape, South Africa, respectively, designing all the essential infrastructure required for the construction of this complex global project to get under way. This includes access roads, power, water and sanitation, buildings, antenna foundations, and the communication, security and site monitoring equipment required to support the SKA telescope.

The South African consortium, Infrastructure South Africa, was led by the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory, which designed, built and operates the 64-dish SKA precursor telescope, the MeerKAT.

Following the successful review of the key infrastructure components of the SKA – considered a major engineering victory – the project will now move on to the bridging phase.

National Integrated Cyberinfrastructure System

The NICIS promotes scientific and industrial development through the provision of high-performance computing capability, high-speed network capacity and a national research data infrastructure integrated hierarchically into globally connected systems and into local system systems, providing seamless access for the research and education communities of South Africa. It is a national initiative of the DSI and is implemented by the CSIR.

The Centre for High Performance Computing is one of three pillars of the NICIS. It provides massive parallel processing capabilities and services to researchers in industry and academia. The other main pillars are the South African National Research Network, which provides high-speed connectivity and advanced networking services, and the Data Intensive Research Initiative of South Africa, which implements services that enable sound data management practices and support efficient data-driven scientific and engineering discoveries.

The NICIS is the national or Tier 1 platform to provide e-infrastructure, tools and services to enable sustainable e-research, human capital and research capacity and skills development; and effective delivery of e-learning.

The implementation of the following projects of the NICIS continued during the 2020/21 financial year:

- A multi-institutional national e-science postgraduate teaching and training programme – to be expanded in terms of the disciplines covered and institutions being added;
- Increasing the number of awards of the e-research support programme;
- · Additional regional Tier 2 data nodes being established; and
- · The big data strategy being implemented.

The DSI, in cooperation with the CSIR, has commissioned the set-up of a core situational awareness platform. The centre, led by the DoH, provides near real-time analytics and dashboards on the COVID-19 outbreak per province, district, local municipality and ward.

The centre is housed in a secure facility at the CSIR in Pretoria and provides a central situational awareness, giving a single view of the reality of the spread of COVID-19 across the country.

The centre is one of several projects that the DSI is working on in support of government's response to the pandemic. Among the centre's capabilities is the Command and Control Collaborator (Cmore) app – a mobile visualisation platform used by community health workers to record screening data and symptoms in the field and transmit the information to the centre.

The Cmore app enables a near-live display of the results of the work being conducted by government's Household Screening and Testing Programme. The data and insights generated by the centre provide significant input for decision making by the National Coronavirus Command Council.

South African Research Infrastructure Roadmap (SARIR)

Through a joint agreement between South Africa and the EU, the SARIR Framework was developed as the basis for prioritising the development of national research infrastructure needs. The SARIR is

a high-level strategic and systemic intervention to provide research infrastructure across the entire public research system, building on existing capabilities and strengths, and drawing on future needs.

This roadmap will provide guidance to the DSI on the strategic development, acquisition and deployment of research infrastructure as a necessary enabler for research, development and innovation.

The SARIR is intended to provide a strategic, rational, medium-to long-term framework for planning, implementing, monitoring and evaluating the provision of research infrastructure necessary for a competitive and sustainable national system of innovation. It also provides a basis for discussion concerning financing future infrastructure for research in South Africa, and for participating in joint international research infrastructure.

The roadmap was developed through a bottom-up process driven from within the national research community, moderated at a technical level by an expert steering committee and aligned with national research priorities through strategic moderation by the DSI. The implementation of the SARIR will continue over the MTSF period, with all 13 research infrastructures approved in the first phase of the roadmap being implemented.

Information and communications technology

The DSI is leading the implementation of the national ICT Research, Development and Innovation Strategy. The strategy's main purpose is to create an enabling environment for innovation and manufacturing facilities and resources in South Africa.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), SANReN and the Very Large Databases are the three pillars of cyberinfrastructure that the DSI supports. Hosted by the UCT and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC was the first of its kind in South Africa and is making scientific supercomputing a reality for the country.

A major project for SANReN is the national backbone network, which aimed to connect all major metros in the country with a 10 gigabyte per second link. SANReN, linking 215 research sites, consists of 1 500 kilometres (km) of dark fibre and 5 000 km of managed bandwidth.

This network is complimented by significant international broadband capacity on the West Africa Cable System and the east coast SEACOM system, ensuring that the DSI's projects support competitive research and innovation as it prepares the national innovation system for the future.

SANReN connects more than 200 sites from Thohoyandou to Cape Town, including all the main campuses of all South African universities and most public research institutions, as well as global projects such as the SKA and the MeerKAT.

Indigenous knowledge systems

The IKS Policy serves as a guide for the recognition, understanding, integration and promotion of South Africa's wealth of indigenous knowledge resources. One of the areas of action identified by the policy is the protection of indigenous knowledge and the holders of

such knowledge against exploitation. This includes ensuring that communities receive fair and sustained recognition and, where appropriate, financial remuneration for the use of this knowledge.

The indigenous knowledge of many communities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles. Traditional songs and languages, clothing, architecture, foods, motifs, daily rituals and mythological epics contain local survival information. Moreover, the diversity of indigenous cultures provides unique insights into how to live harmoniously within nature.

By sharing indigenous stories of vulnerability and adaptation, people learn how communities share ideas on how ancestral wisdom is being incorporated into climatic adaptation strategies.

By cherishing the value of indigenous knowledge, people can discover how best to adapt to a changing climate.

The DSI has three IKS priorities:

- The development of a regulatory environment for the protection of IKS.
- The development of the National Recordal System for the collection, recording, documenting, storage and management and dissemination of IKS in communities in the nine provinces of the country. Until orally transmitted and rapidly disappearing indigenous knowledge is recorded, it will be difficult to protect. The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge.
- Applied research, specifically bio-prospecting activities. An example would be the Moritela Tshwene Tea Project near Zeerust in the North West

A major achievement was to put in place an information infrastructure that would hold IKS in oral format.

In addition, two UK-South Africa bilateral research chairs have been awarded for research into food security – one co-hosted by the universities of the Western Cape and Pretoria, and the other based at the NMU. The DSI has also established indigenous knowledge studies centres of excellence at some of the country's universities.

The centres will play a defining role in generating highly qualified HR capacity in IKS.

Natural resource development

To reinvigorate the South African mining sector and to harness the vast amounts of existing and potential opportunities for industrial and manufacturing growth, it is crucial for the country to create the technologies and mining methods to push mining deeper in a commercially viable manner. South Africa needs a competitive mining industry.

This will only be possible if science and innovation play the quintessential role of changing the cost and exploitation horizons of the sector. None of the existing mining stakeholders (publicly funded research institutions, private sector companies, universities, unions or government) have the scale to impact the situation alone in the long run.

To achieve this, a critical mass of science and knowledge to push

the frontiers of mining will require a national effort consisting of deep partnerships and collaborations across institutions and industries.

Women in Science Awards

Every year since 2003, the DSI has held the SAWiSA to recognise the achievements of prominent women scientists and encourage the participation of women in research. The awards are held in August as part of National Women's Month celebrations, which take place to honour the women who marched to the Union Buildings in 1956 to protest the apartheid system's pass laws.



SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Finance and Economy

Finance and Economy

The economy grew by an estimated 4.8% in 2021 compared with the 5.1% projected in the 2021 Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (MTBPS). The downward revision reflects a sharp third-quarter contraction driven by a new wave of COVID-19, the outbreak of public violence in July 2021, heightened global uncertainty and modest growth expectations for the fourth quarter following renewed power cuts.

Nevertheless, the growth outlook for 2022 has improved slightly since the 2021 MTBPS. Structural constraints have reduced potential economic growth for the past decade and remain an impediment to the recovery. During 2021, the economic effects of the pandemic – lost jobs and delayed investments – were exacerbated by inadequate electricity supply, with the highest levels of load-shedding to date.

There are signs that this combination of factors has led to scarring – defined as medium-term economic performance below pre-pandemic projections. Higher global inflation, monetary policy adjustments, commodity price changes and emerging geopolitical risks also contribute to elevated uncertainty over the medium term. The initial recovery in economic growth during 2021 was not matched by higher employment or investment, and the slow take-up of vaccinations leaves the country vulnerable to new waves of COVID-19 infections. Real GDP growth of 2.1% was projected for 2022, and growth is projected to average 1.8% over the next three years.

Government's previously announced economic reforms are under way, though at an uneven pace. More rapid implementation of these reforms, complemented by fiscal consolidation to provide a stable foundation for growth, will ease investor concerns about South Africa, and support a faster recovery and higher levels of economic growth over the long term. Reducing regulatory constraints, providing effective services, and coordinating and sequencing economic interventions will bolster public and private investment, which will, in turn, increase resilience and support economic transformation.

Economic reconstruction and recovery

As South Africa begins to emerge from the shadow of the COVID-19 pandemic, it confronts deep-rooted social and economic problems. Foremost among these are the crises of poverty and unemployment. The Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan, announced in October 2020, includes a comprehensive health response to save lives and curb the spread of the pandemic; interventions to restore economic activity while controlling the health risks; and reforms to support a sustainable, resilient and inclusive economy.

It was developed through extensive consultations between government, business, labour and civil society. In the short term, the plan focuses on high-impact reforms – speeding up the expansion of electricity generation; creating jobs to sustain livelihoods; rolling out infrastructure aligned with the National Development Plan (NDP); and supporting manufacturing, localisation and beneficiation. The measures will be taken to rebuild confidence, kick-start the economy and continue to mitigate the effects of the pandemic. Structural reforms

will also promote faster, more inclusive growth and employment over the medium to long term.

The economy began to bounce back from the pandemic lockdowns in 202, but the recovery weakened in the second half of the year. GDP growth is expected to average 1.8% over the next three years. Significant risks to the outlook include the emergence of new COVID-19 variants in the context of low vaccination levels, rising global inflation, and continued disruptions to power supply.

Longstanding structural constraints entrench South Africa's high levels of poverty and unemployment. Government continues to advance a multifaceted strategy to achieve higher and sustained economic growth rates. These reforms are intended to build private-sector confidence and investment. The combined impact of structural reforms, support for small business and new infrastructure investment will enable higher rates of growth and job creation over the long term. Over the next three years, government will introduce additional measures to improve the delivery of public infrastructure and attract private capital.

Over the medium term, government will devote considerable attention to strengthening the fight against corruption flowing from the reports of the State Capture Commission, cutting red tape for small businesses and strengthening the green transition. In line with government's international and domestic commitments to climate change adaptation and mitigation, National Treasury plans to pilot a climate budget tagging methodology, which can inform future spending priorities and budget reforms.

Operation Vulindlela

Operation Vulindlela, a joint initiative of The Presidency and National Treasury, is accelerating implementation of the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan by accelerating priority structural reforms. It is based on similar delivery unit initiatives in countries such as the United Kingdom and Malaysia, as well as lessons learnt in South Africa.

The initiative is staffed by a full-time technical team that draws on additional expertise and capacity in the public and private sectors. The team is expected to assist the economic cluster, Cabinet and the President to coordinate and accelerate the implementation of a limited number of priority reforms.

Government, through Operation Vulindlela, has made progress on several key reforms outlined in its October 2020 economic recovery plan. The amendment of Schedule 2 of the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006), raising the licensing threshold from 1 to 100 megawatts (MW), has made it possible for private power generators to sell directly to customers. This will reduce pressure on the national grid and alleviate the risk of power cuts. The pace and scale of private generation will largely depend on the ease of the National Energy Regulator of South Africa registration process, which needs to be streamlined. Amended regulations also enable municipalities to self-generate or procure power directly from independent power producers. Over the longer term, creating a competitive energy market will help

contain the costs of generating electricity and support GDP growth. Government has announced the corporatisation of the Transnet National Ports Authority as an independent subsidiary of Transnet and appointed an interim board. The separation of port infrastructure and operations will create incentives for efficiency and competitiveness between port service providers – reducing delays, improving services and introducing cost discipline.

However, critical reforms in the telecommunications space have been delayed, constraining innovation and access to better-priced data. These reforms include the release of spectrum through an auction and digital migration, delayed due to recent legal challenges launched by mobile operators. In addition, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa's possible recall of temporary spectrum at the end of November will affect the quality of digital services for those working from home and leave millions of households without free access to educational and health websites. Government assigned this spectrum in April 2020 to alleviate pressure on digital services in light of the COVID-19 lockdowns.

The durability of the recovery will depend on the implementation of a broad range of structural reforms that inspire confidence and create an enabling environment for accelerating and sustaining economic activity. In the context of limited fiscal space, reforms that require little budgetary support – including regulatory reforms that enhance competition – are being prioritised.

South Africa Investment Conference (SAIC)

In 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa committed to raising over R1.2 trillion worth of investments over a five-year period. South Africa has, so far, hosted four annual investment conferences, at which the President set out the policy context and reforms, and the private sector provided feedback and made pledges to invest. The conference has drawn delegates from South Africa and the rest of the world with the objective of showcasing the investment opportunities available in the country. To date, the SAIC has attracted more than R1.14 trillion worth of investment commitments.

As South Africa seeks to recover from the economic challenges exacerbated by the COVID-19 pandemic, tackling unemployment, poverty and inequality among others remains a key priority for government.

The fourth SAIC, which took place on 24 March 2022, built on the successes of the previous editions, successfully showcasing the strengths and competitive advantages that South Africa offers and why the country is an ideal investment destination for local as well international investors looking for a foothold into the rest of Africa.

Economic indicators Domestic outlook

National Treasury projected real economic growth of 4.8% in 2021 and 2.1% in 2022, compared with 2021 MTBPS estimates of 5.1% and 1.8%, respectively. Real GDP growth is expected to moderate to 1.7% in 2024. Although South Africa is still expected to return to

pre-pandemic production levels this year, it is important to note that the economy was in recession before the outbreak of the pandemic – largely due to the impact of existing structural constraints.

Global uncertainties and an uneven domestic recovery will weigh on the economic outlook over the medium term. While the outlook for 2022 has been revised upward, persistent structural constraints continue to inhibit the pace of the recovery from COVID-19 and longer-term growth. Accelerated implementation of reforms is necessary to create jobs and encourage investment over the medium term.

Household consumption

Household spending is estimated to have grown by 5.6% in 2021, following a contraction of 6.5% in 2020. Spending levels were recovering until July, but fell in response to the public violence, and remain below pre-pandemic levels. Consumer confidence declined, and retail operations and supply chains were severely affected.

Household consumption is expected to grow by 2.5% in 2022. Over the next three years, it is supported by sustained growth in private-sector wages, growth in household credit extension and relatively low borrowing costs. Consumption is supported in the near term by the extension of the special COVID-19 social relief of distress grant in 2022/23, and a relatively mild fourth wave of infections followed by further easing of COVID-19 restrictions at the end of 2021. Nonetheless, a weak employment outlook and higher inflation are likely to limit the pace of recovery in 2022. Sustained GDP growth and job creation are needed for higher consumption.

Global outlook

After the resurgence of COVID-19 infections towards the end of 2021, the International Monetary Fund (IMF) lowered its expectation for global growth in 2022 from 4.9 to 4.4%. Alongside new restrictions, elevated inflation, withdrawal of the US fiscal support package and the consequences of volatility in China's troubled real-estate sector have reduced growth projections.

A key risk is that new COVID-19 variants will prolong the pandemic and disrupt economic activity. Vaccination rates in developing countries are much lower than in their developed counterparts, and the emergence of new variants increases global vulnerability. There remains a high degree of uncertainty over the trajectory of the virus and policy responses.

The shape of the global recovery has exacerbated inequality across countries and sectors. By the end of 2022, developed countries will have returned to pre-pandemic output levels, but developing countries will not have fully recovered. In many cases, employment continues to recover more slowly than GDP.

Inflation is proving more persistent than expected, particularly in the United States, as a result of disruptions to global supply chains and rising energy costs. In developed countries, consumer price inflation is expected to rise from 3.1%in 2021 to 3.9%in 2022. As supply imbalances diminish and monetary policy changes take effect, inflationary pressures are expected to start dissipating in 2023. In

developing countries, consumer price inflation is expected to rise marginally from 5.7% to 5.9% in 2022, before falling to 4.7% in 2023. Prices in global equity markets declined towards the end of 2021 amid higher expected real interest rates, but remain relatively high as a result of strong corporate earnings.

The IMF expects earnings to surpass pre-pandemic levels in most sectors in 2022. In 2021, global bond yields rose broadly in response to mounting inflation and expectations of tightening monetary policy. Low yields in developing countries have been supported by accommodative monetary policy in developed countries. As developed countries begin to raise interest rates, this will reverse. The US dollar strengthened significantly in 2021 on expectations that the Federal Reserve would raise interest rates, reinforcing rand depreciation that began in mid-2021.

Capital flows to developing economies, excluding China, have declined, posing a particular threat to highly indebted countries. Government debt-to-GDP levels in developing economies rose from 54% at the end of 2019 to 63% by the end of 2021. Tightening financial conditions put these economies at risk of financial stress and could slow their recovery.

While some major commodity prices declined during the second half of 2021, prices remain above pre-pandemic levels (final quarter of 2019) providing further support to commodity exporters. In the near term, a further easing in iron ore, platinum and palladium prices is expected. Conversely, oil and coal prices are expected to continue to increase in response to the recovery in demand. Over the longer term, easing coal and iron ore prices are expected to offset gradually rising precious metal prices.

Investment

Gross fixed-capital formation contracted in the third quarter of 2021. As a result, investment remains about R84.6 billion below pre-pandemic levels – with private investment, the largest component of fixed-capital formation, accounting for 84% of the shortfall. Renewed investment in fixed capital is vital to economic recovery and growth. Higher and more effective public-sector investment, specifically in network industries such as transport and energy, is needed to catalyse a sustained recovery.

Structural constraints, weak demand and low confidence are expected to weigh on private investment prospects in the short to medium term. As government stabilises and reduces its debt, real interest rates are likely to decline, creating more space for private investment. The rollout of energy infrastructure planned through the Renewable Independent Power Producer Programme, embedded generation projects and investment in bulk infrastructure will support both public and private investment over the medium term. The implementation of outstanding policy initiatives, energy investments and a gradual improvement in confidence will boost investment in 2022 and 2023.

In 2021, government welcomed car maker Ford's investment into the South African economy. The new Ford investment at the manufacturer's Silverton plant, when completed, will pump R1.3 billion in wages and salaries annually into the economy. The R16 billion in investment is expected to cover expansion of the Ford assembly plant in phases to reach a capacity to assemble 200 000 vehicles locally, principally centred on the new Ford Ranger bakkie.

An anticipated 1 200 jobs will be created in the Ford plant with thousands of additional jobs at suppliers to the company.

The company has been in negotiation with the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition on the expansion of the plant, making it one of the largest Ford Ranger plants outside of the United States of America.

Credit rating

In May 2022, S&P Global Ratings (S&P) revised South Africa's credit rating outlook to positive from stable, while affirming the long term foreign and local currency debt ratings at 'BB-' and 'BB', respectively.

According to S&P, recent favourable terms of trade in South Africa have improved the external and fiscal trajectory, while the country's reasonably large net external asset position, flexible currency and deep domestic capital markets provide strong buffers against shifts in external financing.

In addition, the agency expects South Africa to post a current account surplus in 2022 for the third consecutive year, as prices for key metals and mining exports have risen significantly since the start of the Russia-Ukraine conflict.

S&P also noted some improvement on the implementation of key reform targets under Operation Vulindlela, as well as higher than-expected tax revenue.

In December 2021, Fitch Ratings (Fitch) affirmed South Africa's long-term foreign and local currency debt ratings at 'BB-' and revised the outlook from negative to stable.

According to Fitch, the revision of the outlook to stable reflected the "faster than expected" economic recovery, the surprisingly strong fiscal performance and significant improvements in key fiscal indicators, following the rebasing of national accounts.

Inflation

Headline inflation is projected at 4.8% in 2022 and 4.4% in 2023. Food and energy prices – especially municipal rates from rising electricity prices, high domestic food inflation and elevated fuel prices – are expected to be the key sources of inflationary pressure in 2022.

Fuel prices were up 40.4% in the year to December 2021 owing to higher global crude oil prices. Fuel prices are expected to ease during 2022, but remain elevated and above the 2019 average price level. Global supply- demand imbalances triggered an acceleration in the price of raw materials and intermediate inputs, which will continue to put upward pressure on consumer inflation. Medium-term risks to the inflation outlook are to the upside, primarily as a result of price pressures from food and non-alcoholic beverages, along with petrol,

energy and other administered prices. Although the forecast assumes 2022 and 2023 electricity prices rise in line with Eskom's application for a tariff increase in 2022/23, there is a risk that electricity inflation may exceed the assumption due to increasing costs of ensuring electricity supply.

Government expenditure

Total consolidated government spending is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 3.2%, from R2.08 trillion in 2021/22 to R2.28 trillion in 2024/25. The social wage will make up 59.4% of total non-interest spending over this period. Economic development and community development grow faster than other functions at 8.5% and 7.9% respectively.

This is mainly due to the allocation of additional funding to address the backlog in the rehabilitation of the non-toll road network and to the local government equitable share to cover shortfalls from bulk services that cannot be recovered through charges to poor households. Spending in other functions grows marginally or contracts, mainly due to downward revisions to spending implemented in the 2021 budget, or once-off allocations made in 2021/22 and 2022/23.

Debt-service costs will average R333.4 billion annually over the MTEF period. At 10.7%, they grow faster than any function.

Current payments form the largest share (60.4%) of the budget. Compensation of employees is the biggest cost driver in this category, and the second-largest spending item after transfers and subsidies. It will increase at an average annual rate of 1.8%, from R665.1 billion in 2021/22 to R702 billion in 2024/25. Departments remain responsible for budgeting within their compensation ceilings.

Transfers and subsidies constitute 33.4%of the budget, with the bulk of these transfers funding social grants. The three-year allocation of R76.9 billion for payments for financial assets is mainly for the recapitalisation of Eskom and the Land Bank.

Financing strategy

Government aims to finance its borrowing at the lowest possible cost within a set of strategic risk benchmarks. Within this financing strategy, government determines the best mix of debt instruments and maturities to finance the gross borrowing requirement, while minimising refinancing risk, currency risk and overall borrowing costs.

In 2021/22, the gross borrowing requirement was financed through a combination of domestic short- and long-term loans, foreign-currency loans and cash balances. Government continued its bond-switch programme – exchanging shorter-dated bonds for longer ones – to reduce refinancing risk and manage the large number of short-term redemptions falling due. In addition, government accessed lower-cost funding from international financing institutions.

Government continues to develop South Africa's capital market and ensure a diversified portfolio of instruments. A floating rate note and domestic rand-denominated sukuk (Islamic bond) remain part of the funding strategy. To promote domestic savings, a South African retail savings top-up bond will be offered to the public in April 2022.

Individuals and informal groups can invest from R500 and top up in increments of R100 in this low-risk, accessible and competitive three-year bond.

Trade, Industry and Competition

The dtic leads economic development policy formulation and planning. It also facilitates access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans through an understanding of the economy, knowledge of economic opportunities and potential, and anticipation of future economic trends.

The department catalyses economic transformation and development, and provides a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens. In addition, it contributes to achieving government's vision of an adaptive and restructured economy characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity.

The NDP presents a broad vision for sustainable industrialisation and economic development and transformation in South Africa and, by extension, Africa. This vision is expressed specifically in terms of Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 7 (A Better Africa and World) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The dtic will continue with the development and implementation of various sectoral master plans as part of the Reimagined Industrial Strategy, which presents a multipronged approach to industrial development with emphasis on building partnerships with the private sector to secure job-creating investment. This will entail a focus on providing industrial finance, developing industrial infrastructure, and enhancing competition oversight to support the implementation of key interventions of South Africa's economic reconstruction and recovery plan.

Providing industrial finance

In support of the ERRP, initiatives in the Industrial Financing programme are aimed at growing sustainable and competitive enterprises through providing direct or indirect access to industrial financing.

Over the period ahead, the dtic will continue to provide financial support to the automotive incentive scheme, the black industrialist programme, the agro-processing support scheme, the strategic partnership programme and the aquaculture development and enhancement programme.

Allocations to the Manufacturing Incentives subprogramme account for an estimated 51.6% (R7.6 billion) of the Industrial Financing programme's budget over the medium term. The department will also provide financial assistance or support through the clothing and textiles competitiveness programme, which has a budget of R1.8 billion over the medium term in the Industrial Policy programme. It expects to provide financial assistance or support to 404 clothing and textile firms.

Developing industrial infrastructure

A critical part of the ERRP includes interventions to build catalysts for investment through infrastructure development. Support for infrastructure investment is provided mainly through the Industrial Financing programme, and includes the development of special economic zones (SEZs) and the roll-out of infrastructure within industrial parks, with 12 parks set to be revitalised over the medium term in support of the District Development Model.

"The Infrastructure Investment Support subprogramme is allocated R5.3 billion over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 0.4%, from R1.76 billion in 2021/22 to R1.79 billion in 2024/25. Of this, R4.6 billion is allocated for SEZs, R359.6 million for critical bulk infrastructure such as water, electricity and sewerage connections, and R424.6 million for industrial parks.

Legislation

The mandate of the dtic is derived from a broad legislative framework, which includes the:

- Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003);
- Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008);
- · Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998), as amended;
- Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008);
- Industrial Development Act, 1940 (Act 22 of 1940);
- International Trade Administration Act, 2002
- (Act 71 of 2002);
- · Manufacturing Development Act, 1993 (Act 187 of 1993); and
- SEZs Act, 2014 (Act 16 of 2014).

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the dtic was allocated R11.8 billion. The department received additional allocations amounting to R2.1 billion in 2021/22. Of this amount, R800 million was to create work opportunities through the presidential employment initiative, and R1.3 billion was to respond to the social unrest in July 2021 and the negative impact of the COVID-19 pandemic.

As a result of this high baseline, spending in the Industrial Financing programme is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 4.8%, from R6.2 billion in 2021/22 to R5.4 billion in 2024/25. Allocations to the programme account for an estimated 49.3% (R15.5 billion) of the department's expenditure over the MTEF period, mainly to fund incentive programmes. The department's total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R11.8 billion in 2021/22 to R10.6 billion in 2024/25.

Entities

Companies and Intellectual Property Commission (CIPC)

The CIPC was established in terms of Section 185 of the Companies Act of 2008, to register companies, close corporations, cooperatives, trademarks, patents, designs and copyright; and enforce rules and regulations.

Over the medium term, the commission will continue to focus on modernising its information and communications technology (ICT) systems to make services such as company registration and the submission of annual returns easier. These improved capabilities are expected to create a reputable business environment by effectively regulating the behaviour of companies and the intellectual property system, protecting intellectual property, increasing knowledge and awareness of intellectual property rights, and promoting compliance with company law and relevant legislation.

The ICT Modernisation Project accounts for an estimated 11.2% (R240 million) of the commission's total expenditure over the medium term. Of this amount, R192 million is provided for maintaining secure, accurate, and accessible registration services for companies and intellectual property; and R9.8 million for training and mentoring personnel to use the system more effectively to handle queries and develop capabilities in intellectual property services.

Companies Tribunal

In its contribution to the creation of a just, fair and ethical regulatory business environment, in line with the Companies Act of 2008, the Companies Tribunal facilitates the resolution of company disputes through mediation, conciliation and arbitration. Through this work, the tribunal aims to support sustainable enterprise development and a business environment that attracts investment.

Over the medium term, it will continue to facilitate the resolution of company disputes through mediation, conciliation and arbitration, thereby contributing to the creation of a just, fair and ethical regulatory business environment. The entity will further focus on improving the case management system to enable better interaction between tribunal members and clients while allowing for cases to be managed more efficiently. As a result, the number of cases is expected to increase from 27% in 2021/22 to 60% in 2024/25.

Competition Commission

The Competition Commission is empowered to investigate, control and evaluate restrictive business practices, including the abuse of dominant positions and mergers; and to promote the advocacy of competition issues to achieve equity and efficiency in the South African economy.

Over the medium term, the commission will focus on strengthening its internal capacity to enable it to execute its expanded mandate, which includes the prosecution and criminalisation of certain offences in terms of the Competition Amendment Act of 2018. One way in which it plans to begin doing this is by reviewing its organisational structure to ensure that it is aligned with its expanded mandate in terms of amendments to the Act, and the new strategy arising from there.

The commission has a large load of complex cases and many respondents contest proceedings, which places pressure on its personnel. As the commission seeks to strengthen its internal capacity to cope with these demands, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.9%, from R293.5 million in 2021/22 to R329.2 million in 2022/23. This accounts for an

estimated 59.9% (R945.8 million) of spending over the medium term. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.1%, from R479.8 million in 2021/22 to R542.1 million in 2024/25.

Competition Tribunal

The Competition Tribunal adjudicates all large corporate mergers and allegations of restrictive practices brought before the tribunal by the Competition Commission and other interested parties. Its quasi-judicial nature prevents it from setting proactive objectives or embarking on focused interventions that target any sector or emphasise any specific criteria in its decision-making.

As such, the tribunal's caseload is determined by complaint referrals and notified mergers, and each case is adjudicated on its merits.

Over the medium term, the tribunal will focus on continuing to provide responsive and reliable adjudication services to deal with the cases brought before it. Expenditure in this regard is expected to comprise 49.7% (R92.3 million) of total estimated spending over the medium term. To strengthen organisational capacity to deliver on its mandate of holding hearings and adjudicating matters and educating and creating awareness among stakeholders on matters relating to competition, the tribunal plans to fill 6 vacant posts over the period ahead. Accordingly, compensation of employees is expected to account for 65.7% (R121.3 million) of total expenditure, increasing at an average annual rate of 4.4%.

Export Credit Insurance Corporation

The Export Credit Insurance Corporation was established in terms of the Export Credit and Foreign Investments Insurance Act, 1957 (Act 78 of 1957), to facilitate and encourage South Africa's export trade by underwriting export credit loans and investments outside South Africa.

The corporation provides comprehensive export credit and investment insurance solutions in support of South African exporters doing business in risky sectors or countries, and thereby contributes to the expansion of exports, economic growth and the creation of local jobs.

Over the medium term, the corporation will focus on proactively attracting business from new and existing customers to facilitate more exports and cross-border investments, with the value of projects planned for approval amounting to US\$1.68 billion (about R25.6 billion). In its efforts to achieve this target while contributing to increased sustainability and stakeholder satisfaction, the corporation aims to maintain a competent and competitive workforce, enhance and automate key business processes and systems, and pursue good governance, transformation and sound risk management practices.

The corporation's four-year ICT strategic plan (2020/21 to 2023/24) seeks to digitally transform the business. In this regard, R10.8 million is allocated towards the automation of 46 identified business processes in the areas of human capital management, risk and compliance, finance management, procurement management, contract management, customer relationship management, underwriting, portfolio management and investment management.

Industrial Development Corporation

The IDC is a national development finance institution established in terms of the Industrial Development Act of 1940. It is mandated to lead industrial capacity development through investments in individual business enterprises, and by acting as a catalyst for the creation or revitalisation of industries.

Over the medium term, the corporation plans to continue to contribute to job creation and an inclusive economy by facilitating investment of more than R100 billion. Of this amount, R48.7 billion will be provided directly to black industrialists; and R12.9 billion is earmarked for companies owned by historically disadvantaged groups, particularly women and young entrepreneurs. This funding is aimed at supporting businesses operating in targeted industries and special economic zones, and that enable localisation.

The corporation expects to bring in a strategic equity partner to take over some of the equity in its major subsidiaries, resulting in a significant decrease in expenditure and revenue as the operational activities of subsidiaries shift to the partner.

Small Enterprise Finance Agency

The Small Enterprise Finance Agency was established in April 2012. It combines the small business operations of Khula Enterprise Finance, the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund and the small business component of the IDC. The agency is a wholly owned subsidiary of the IDC and derives its mandate from the Industrial Development Act of 1940, particularly the objectives related to the development of small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs).

Over the medium term, the agency will focus on implementing economic recovery programmes, and will continue to manage COVID-19 relief programmes such as the SMME Debt Relief Fund and the Business Growth/Resilience Facility. As a result, the agency expects to approve R6.3 billion in finance over the period ahead for SMMEs and cooperatives and disburse R5.1 billion.

In August 2021, Cabinet approved the incorporation of the Small Enterprise Finance and Cooperative Banks Development Agency into the Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA). The merger of these entities will enable integrated government support to small, medium and micro enterprises as well as cooperatives with effect from April 2022.

A proposed single agency will provide both financial and non-financial support to these businesses. By pooling all the resources together, the agency will be more impactful and accessible in all districts and metros.

The approved incorporation will result in the reclassification of the SEDA (which will be renamed later) in terms of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), from a Schedule 3A to a Schedule 2 entity.

International Trade Administration Commission (ITAC)

The ITAC was established through the International Trade Administration Act of 2002. The aim of the commission is to foster economic growth and development, raise income levels, and promote investment and employment in South Africa and the Southern African Customs Union (SACU) area, by establishing an administration system for international trade.

The commission's core functions are to conduct customs tariff investigations, institute trade remedies, and provide import and export controls. Its ongoing key strategic objectives are to ensure appropriate contribution to growth and development, and provide continued support to the dtic and government by:

- regulating the movement of specific goods across the borders of South Africa;
- conducting trade remedy investigations in accordance with policy and domestic and international law; and
- setting tariffs with the objective of promoting domestic manufacturing activity, employment retention and creation, and international competitiveness.

In carrying out its duties, the commission plans to issue 8 000 import and 8 000 export permits, conduct 40 container inspections and initiate investigations on 70% of new anti-dumping cases in each year over the medium term.

National Consumer Commission

The National Consumer Commission was established in terms of Section 85 of the Consumer Protection Act of 2008, with jurisdiction across South Africa. The commission aims to conduct investigations against suppliers allegedly engaging in prohibited conduct; promote the resolution of disputes between consumers and suppliers; and promote compliance with the Act through advocacy, education and awareness.

Over the medium term, the commission will focus on conducting investigations into suspected suppliers and enforcing their compliance with the act, conducting education and awareness campaigns to ensure greater compliance, and reforming legislation or practices that are inconsistent with the act. In doing this, it will also seek to facilitate the resolution of disputes between consumers and suppliers in a speedy, cost-effective, fair and transparent manner.

National Consumer Tribunal

The National Consumer Tribunal was established as an independent adjudicative entity in terms of the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005). It is mandated to review decisions made by the National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Commission, and adjudicate on applications and referrals in terms of NCA of 2005 and the Consumer Protection Act of 2008.

Various parties can bring cases before the tribunal, including the National Credit Regulator, the National Consumer Commission, consumers, credit providers, debt counsellors and credit bureaus. The tribunal may impose remedies and/or administrative penalties, as provided for in the Acts.

Over the medium term, the tribunal will continue to focus on the adjudication of cases and manage the expected increase in its caseload from a forecast of 28 250 cases in 2021/22 to 30 250 cases by 2024/25. As the entity implements the provisions of the National Credit Amendment Act (2014), it anticipates receiving 50 000 debt- relief intervention applications annually. Despite the expected increase in the number of cases, the commission still plans to reduce the average number of days it takes from the date of complete filing of debt rearra gement agreements to the date of issuing order to filing parties per year from 65 in 2021/22 to 55 in 2024/25.

National Credit Regulator

The NCR was established in terms of Section 12 of the National Credit Amendment Act, 2019 (Act 7 2019), and is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. The regulator is mandated to promote the development of an accessible credit market, particularly to address the needs of historically disadvantaged persons, low-income individuals, and remote, isolated or low-density communities.

Over the medium term, the regulator will focus on carrying out education, research and policy development; registering industry participants and investigating complaints; enforcing the National Credit Act (2005); and assisting consumers who qualify for debt relief interventions.

To achieve this, the regulator plans to conduct 1 420 investigations into the cost of credit, with the target of up to 90% enforcement action to be taken for noncompliance; and conduct 1 330 investigations into reckless lending and/or collection of prescribed debt, with the target of up to 85% enforcement action to be taken for noncompliance. The regulator also plans to conduct 690 and 150 consumer education and awareness campaigns on consumer rights and deceptive and unfair practices, respectively; and to register 99% of applications within 6 business days of receipt of signed proposed conditions and payment of registration fees.

National Empowerment Fund

The fund was established in terms of the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic empowerment (BEE) and economic transformation. In providing financial and non-financial support to black businesses and structuring accessible retail savings products for black people, the fund is mandated to implement the codes of good practice for BEE. The fund has five core divisions, namely SMMEs, rural development, venture capital, corporate finance and women-empowerment funds.

Funding approvals are projected to increase from R800 million in 2021/22 to R1.2 billion in 2024/25, driven mainly by the uMnotho Fund, the iMbewu Fund, the Rural and Community Development Fund, the Strategic Projects Fund and the Women Empowerment Fund. These funds are expected to support 11 251 job opportunities over the period ahead through prioritising businesses in the manufacturing, agroprocessing, minerals beneficiation, infrastructure and tourism sectors.

National Gambling Board (NGB)

The National Gambling Board is mandated to maintain a legal, safe and crime-free gambling environment, and protect gamblers from being exploited. The board's ongoing focus is on monitoring the socioeconomic patterns of gambling activities; conducting research on the impact of addictive and compulsive gambling; maintaining a national central electronic monitoring system, a national registry of gambling machines and devices, and other prescribed national registers; and conducting broad-based public education and awareness campaigns about the dangers of gambling.

Over the medium term, the board will focus on coordinating activities such as the development of policy and regulations between the national and provincial spheres of government to establish uniform norms and standards for the gambling industry.

National Lotteries Commission (NLC)

The NLC has a dual mandate to regulate and prohibit lotteries and sports pools, provide for matters connected therewith, and to ensure that funds are distributed equitably and expeditiously to advance the socio-economic well-being of communities in need. Over the MTEF period, the commission will continue to ensure that the integrity of the national lottery is carried out with all due proprietary, protection of player participation and ensuring that the distribution for good causes are impacting the communities.

National Metrology Institute of South Africa

The National Metrology Institute of South Africa is mandated by the Measurement Units and Measurement Standards Act, 2006 (Act 18 of 2006), to ensure that South Africa has a scientifically valid and internationally comparable and accepted measurement system, and that the international system of units is correctly applied. Without this measurement infrastructure, it is difficult to manufacture to international specifications and ensure the integrity of export and import commodities. The entity's work is, therefore, important for health, safety and law enforcement.

Over the medium term, the institution will continue to invest in the development of new and improved national measurement standards, reference materials and reference methods in line with industrial requirements.

National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications

The National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications was established in terms of the Measurement Units and Measurement Standards Act of 2006, to administer compulsory specifications, otherwise known as technical regulations. The regulator aims to protect the health and safety of the public and the environment by administering and maintaining compulsory specifications, implementing a regulatory and compliance system, and engaging in market surveillance to ensure compliance.

Over the medium term, the regulator will continue to implement the processed meat compulsory specification for regulating the processed meat market by conducting regular inspections in the sector. In this

regard, an estimated 2 123 inspections will be conducted in each year over the medium term on locally produced frozen products, and fishery and canned meat processing factories and vessels.

South African Bureau of Standards

The South African Bureau of Standards was established as a statutory body in terms of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act 8 of 2008), and is part of South Africa's standardisation, quality assurance, accreditation and metrology technical infrastructure institutions.

The bureau is mandated to develop, promote and maintain South African national standards; render conformity assessment services; and promote the quality of commodities, products and services. The bureau's overarching objective is to protect the integrity of the South African market, protect consumers, create a competitive advantage and facilitate access by South Africans to local and international markets.

Over the medium term, the bureau will continue to revitalise testing operations and facilities in targeted areas such as the cement sector, radiation protection services and the automotive industry. The bureau will also ensure that standard development processes are improved to enable industrialisation and faster turnaround times, particularly to support the implementation of the local verification programme.

South African National Accreditation System

The South African National Accreditation System was established in terms of the Accreditation for Conformity Assessment, Calibration and Good Laboratory Practice Act, 2006 (Act 19 of 2006). It is mandated to accredit or monitor for good laboratory practice and compliance; promote accreditation as a means of facilitating international trade to enhance South Africa's economic performance and transformation; promote the competence and equivalence of accredited bodies; and promote the competence and equivalence of good laboratory practice facilities compliant with the Act.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on strengthening accreditation effectiveness to support local manufacturing and improve access to export markets by helping South African firms to meet increasingly demanding conformity assessment requirements

The 2021 Annual Front Office Business Process Outsourcing (BPO) Omnibus Survey ranked South Africa first in the world as a destination for BPO. The survey was extended to over 600 executives from eight key sourcing markets, including Australia, Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Spain, the United Kingdom and the USA.

It affirms the proactive work of government and the sector in building the country's BPO capacity, with a strong growth in call centres, technical support, and back and front office services for major multinational and South African firms.

The country's sophisticated digital infrastructure, skilled workforce, knowledge in technology and financial services, and proficiency in English, continue to make it an attractive destination for BPO.

Industrial parks/SEZs

SEZs are geographically designated areas of a country set aside for specifically targeted economic activities, supported through special arrangements (that may include laws) and systems that are often different from those that apply in the rest of the country.

The purpose of the SEZ Programme is to:

- expand the strategic industrialisation focus to cover diverse regional development needs and context;
- provide a clear, predictable and systemic planning framework for the development of a wider array of SEZs to support industrial policy objectives, the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP) and the New Growth Plan:
- clarify and strengthen governance arrangements, expand the range and quality of support measures beyond provision of infrastructure; and
- provide a framework for a predictable financing framework to enable long-term planning.

There are currently five operating Industrial Development Zones (IDZs) in South Africa:

- The Coega is the largest IDZ in southern Africa. It was designated in 2001 and became South Africa's first IDZ. It lies in the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality in the Eastern Cape, which is strategically located on the east-west trade route to service both world and African markets. The Coega IDZ leverages public sector investment to attract foreign and domestic direct investment in the manufacturing sector with an export orientation. It has attracted investment in the agro-processing, automotive, aquaculture, energy, metals logistics and Business Process Services (BPS) sectors. This has advanced socio-economic development in the Eastern Cape region through skills development, technology transfer and job creation.
- The Richards Bay IDZ is a purpose-built and secure industrial estate on the north-eastern South African coast. The N2 business corridor links the province's two major ports, Durban and Richards Bay, and connects with Maputo in Mozambique and, ultimately, areas in East Africa. It is linked to an international sea port of Richards Bay, tailored for manufacturing and storage of minerals and products to boost beneficiation, investment, economic growth and, most importantly, the development of skills and employment. First-world infrastructure allows for the full exploitation of the area's natural and strategic advantages. Through the superb industrial infrastructure, well-established network of shipments, tax and duty-free incentives, the IDZ aims to encourage international competitiveness and the attraction of export-orientated manufacturing investment.
- The East London IDZ has become a prime industrial park in South Africa, renowned for its customised solutions for various industries, including automotive, agro-processing and aqua-culture. The IDZ offers growth-oriented companies a specialised manufacturing platform, innovative industrial and business solutions access to new markets and strategic industry networks. The IDZ, one of the country's leading specialised industrial parks, is located in Buffalo

City, the municipal area which also incorporates Bhisho, the province's capital and King William's Town. It was one of the first IDZs in South Africa to become operational and represents an ideal choice for the location of exported manufacturing and processing. Its location provides investors with connections to major markets both locally and across the globe.

- The Saldanha Bay IDZ in the Western Cape is expected to serve as the primary oil, gas and marine repair engineering and logistics services complex in Africa, servicing the needs of the upstream oil exploration industry and production service companies operating in the oil and gas fields off sub-Saharan Africa. Situated approximately two hours north of Cape Town, the IDZ will include logistics, repairs and maintenance, as well as fabrication activities.
- The Dube TradePort is a catalyst for global trade and a portal between KwaZulu-Natal and the world. It is the only facility in Africa that brings together an international airport, a cargo terminal, warehousing, offices, a retail sector, hotels and an agricultural area. Located 30 km north of Durban, the Dube TradePort is positioned between the two biggest sea ports in southern Africa and linked to the rest of Africa by road and rail. The following two areas have been designated as comprising the IDZ: the Dube TradeZone and the Dube AgriZone. The Dube TradeZone aims to focus on manufacturing and valueaddition primarily for automotive, electronics and fashion garments. The facility involves warehousing, manufacturing, assembling real estate resources, complete with a single facility in which all freight forwarders and shippers are located (Dube TradeHouse), which enjoys a direct link to the adjacent Dube Cargo Terminal via an elevated cargo conveyor system. The Dube AgriZone – a high-tech, future farming facility and host to the continent's largest climatecontrolled growing area under glass – will focus on high-value, niche agricultural and horticultural products. The AgriLab will look into specialised tissue culture, greenhouses, flowers and plants, all of which require swift air transportation.

A number of incentives are available to ensure SEZs growth, revenue generation, creation of jobs, attraction of foreign direct investment and international competitiveness.

These SEZ incentives include:

- Preferential 15% Corporate Tax: Businesses (prescribed in Section 24 (4) of the SEZ Act of 2014, that are located in a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the reduced rate of corporate income taxation. In addition to satisfying the requirements of the Act, further criteria for some of the available tax incentives are stipulated in the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962).
- Building Allowance: Businesses and operators (prescribed in Section 1 of the SEZ Act of 2014) operating within a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the building allowance, subject to requirements contained in the Income Tax Act of 1962.
- Employment Incentive: Businesses and operators operating within a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the employment tax incentive, subject to requirements contained in the Employment Tax Incentive Act, 2013 (Act 26 of 2013).

- Customs Controlled Area: Businesses and operators located within a customs-controlled area of a SEZ will be eligible for tax relief as per the Value-Added Tax (VAT) Act, 1991 (Act 89 of 1991), the Customs and Excise Act, 1964 (Act 91 of 1964), the Customs Duty Act, 2014 (Act 30 of 2014), and the Customs Control Act, 2014 (Act 31 of 2014).
- 12i Tax Allowance: The 12i Tax Incentive is designed to support Greenfield investments (new industrial projects that utilise only new and unused manufacturing assets), as well as Brownfield investments (expansions or upgrades of existing industrial projects). The new incentive offers support for both capital investment and training.

Black industrialists

The Black Industrialists Policy aims to leverage government's capacity to unlock the industrial potential that exists within black-owned and managed businesses that operate within the South African economy through deliberate, targeted and well-defined financial and non-financial interventions as described in the IPAP and other government policies.

This policy targets entities that should have extensive experience, operations and track record in their respective or envisaged industrial sectors and value chains. It is expected that the entities supported will:

- expand their current operations or businesses to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme;
- start a new operation or business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme; and
- acquire an existing or new business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within a specified period.

Such entities should be operating in the manufacturing sectors of the economy in line with the industrialisation path as articulated in the IPAP.

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme is a costsharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprises to help them improve their competitiveness and sustainability, to become part of the mainstream economy and create employment.

The programme provides grants to a maximum of R1 million: R800 000 for tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology.

The objectives of the incentive scheme are to:

- draw existing SMMEs exhibiting potential for growth into the mainstream economy;
- grow black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises;
- complement current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises; and
- enhance the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders.

Role players

Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC)

The PICC has the following 18 strategic integrated projects:

- Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor;
- · South Eastern node and corridor development;
- · Unlocking economic opportunities in North West;
- · Saldanha-Northern Cape Development Corridor;
- · Integrated Municipal Infrastructure Project;
- · Integrated Urban Space and Public Transport Programme;
- Green Energy in Support of the South African Economy;
- · Electricity Generation to Support Socio-economic Development;
- · Electricity Transmission and Distribution for All;
- · Agri-Logistics and Rural Infrastructure;
- · Revitalisation of Public Hospitals and Other Health Facilities;
- · Rational School-build Programme;
- · Higher Education Infrastructure;
- · Expanding Access to Communication Technology;
- · Square Kilometre Array and MeerKat;
- · Regional Integration for African Cooperation and Development; and
- · Water and Sanitation Infrastructure Master Plan.

The main objective of the PICC Awareness Campaign is to promote infrastructure development initiatives across the country, whilst showcasing the tangible benefits in terms of job creation and mainstreaming access to social services.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Limited is a specialist risk-finance company that provides customised financial solutions, technical assistance, mentorship, business premises and other added-value services for formal small and medium enterprises in South Africa and selected African countries.

The company considers financing applications up to R50 million in all sectors of the economy — with the exception of on-lending activities, direct farming operations, underground mining and non-profit organisations — to those formal small and medium businesses whose gross assets are under R100 million, where annual turnover does not exceed R200 million and/or employees are less than 500.

Applications for financing below R500 000 are usually not considered; and the company does not operate in the informal or micro enterprise sectors.

South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network (SAWEN)

The SAWEN is a South African national network that facilitates and monitors the socio-economic advancement of women entrepreneurs and their positive impact on the country's economy.

The objectives of SAWEN are to:

- provide a national vehicle that brings women and women's groups together to address the challenges they face;
- lobby government, public and private institutions on such issues, but not limited to policy, legislation and/or proposed legislation affecting either directly and indirectly the trade and commerce activities of women entrepreneurs;

- align itself with other bodies or organisations with similar business interests at both national and international level, and to leverage the relationships arising out of these alignments for the benefit of its members;
- facilitate access to business resources, information and opportunities for South African women entrepreneurs in a way that promotes their effective participation in the global economy; and
- profile and affirm women in business leadership positions in both public and private sectors.

Isivande Women's Fund (IWF)

The IWF is an exclusive fund that aims to accelerate women's economic empowerment by providing more affordable, usable and responsive finance than is currently available. The IWF assists with support services to enhance the success of businesses. It pursues deals involving start-up funding, business expansion, business rehabilitation, franchising and bridging finance.

The fund is managed by the IDC on behalf of the dtic through a development fund manager.

The Identity Development Fund (IDF) Managers

This is a small to medium enterprise financier aimed at supporting the creation of self-sustaining black-owned and women-owned businesses in South Africa by providing primarily financial and non-financial support to its investee companies.

The IDF Managers are responsible for reviewing eligible business plans requiring funding of R30 000 to R2 million. The enterprises have to meet the following criteria:

- At least six months in operation;
- · Requires early stage, expansions and growth capital;
- · 50% plus one share owned and managed by women;
- · Have potential for growth and commercial sustainability; and
- · Improved social impact in the form of job creation.

Programmes and projects Industrial Policy Action Plan

The adoption of the National Industrial Policy Framework in 2007 introduced a very significant reorientation of South Africa's industrial policy landscape. Its main thrusts have been captured, developed and refined in successive annual iterations of the IPAP. This has become the 'laboratory' for government's broad approach to industrialisation.

The focus areas of the IPAP 2018/19 – 2020/2 were:

- · public procurement and local content:
- · industrial financing and incentives;
- developmental trade policy;
- · african integration and industrial development;
- · SEZs; and
- · innovation and technology.

Furniture Industry Master Plan (FIMP)

The FIMP sets clear guidelines and targets for the furniture manufacturing industry and guides public sector procurement as part of government's efforts to support and stimulate the industry. It has the potential to reposition the country in the sector.

The industry in South Africa sits firmly within the manufacturing sector of the national economy. While its contribution was at less than 1% to the GDP when compared to other manufacturing industries, it is a relatively low capital investment requiring job. It is one of the most labour intensive industries, with a potential to contribute to the reduction of unemployment, and increase the export and development of SMMEs. It contributes to the geographical spread of economic activity, since the products can be developed in rural areas with minimal investment.

The established resources and manufacturing base make it an attractive sector to capitalise on the available opportunities. It has the potential to grow its contribution to both employment and economic growth, as prescribed by the National Industry Policy Framework and the Industrial Policy Action Tool.

Designs can also play a significant role in industry development and beneficiation of raw material. It is possible to position the local industry as a producer of high value products that are based on quality and on differentiated designs.

Sectoral focus areas **Automotives**

The automotive industry remains an important pillar of South Africa's industrial landscape. Government has established a team of technical experts to develop a post-2020 Automotives Master Plan. The mandate of the team is to examine the entire automotive sector and not just the existing Automotive Policy Development Plan.

The purpose is to ensure that in the context of long-term policy certainty, a post-2020 master plan will create a framework to secure even higher levels of investment and production, higher exports, deepening localisation and expanding employment.

The dtic initiated the Medium and Heavy Commercial Vehicles Automotive Investment Scheme (MHCV-AIS), a subcomponent of the Automotive Investment Scheme (AIS), an incentive designed to grow and develop the automotive sector through investment in new and/or replacement models and components that will increase plant production volumes, sustain employment and/or strengthen the automotive value chain.

The MHCV-AIS provides for a non-taxable cash grant of 20% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by medium and heavy commercial vehicle manufactures and 25% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by component manufactures and tooling companies for MHCVs as approved by the dtic.

Some of the conditions are that the applicant must:

 be a registered legal entity in South Africa and must undertake manufacturing in South Africa;

- be a taxpayer in good standing and must, in this regard, provide a valid tax clearance certificate before the MHCV-AIS Grant is disbursed; the grant will only be applicable to investment in assets that will be used in the entity's South African operations; and
- submit a business plan with a detailed marketing and sales plan, a
 production plan, budget and projected financial income statement,
 cash-flow statement and balance sheet; for a period of at least three
 years for the project, submit a BBBEE certificate, ITAC registration
 certificate, projected financial income statement, cash-flow
 statement and balance sheet; for a period of at least three years
 of the relevant division, cost centre or branch where the project is
 located, if applicable, submit a cost benefit analysis for the project in
 cases where it cannot provide information in respect of a cost centre.

Clothing and textiles

After government set a 100% local content requirement, the clothing, textiles, leather and footwear sector saw the reintroduction of products where local production had been discontinued. These include technical fabrics, protective footwear, protective fabrics and chambray fabrics.

This intervention, supported also by the Clothing and Textile Competitiveness Improvement Programme, has contributed to turning the sector around. In response to the flood of cheap clothing imports, government has increased the Import Duty on clothing to 45% in line with World Trade Organisation regulations.

Business Process Services

South Africa's BPS sector continued to maintain its status as a leading global outsourcing destination, while steadily moving up the value chain in terms of service offerings.

BPS already accounts for 200 000 jobs nationally and is one of the country's fastest-growing sectors, with double digit growth over the past five years.

South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive Scheme

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive Scheme is available to South African black-owned qualifying productions. It aims to nurture and capacitate emerging black filmmakers to take up big productions and contribute towards employment opportunities.

World Economic Forum (WEF)

The 2022 WEF was held from 22 to 26 May in Davos Switzerland. Human Settlements Minister and Cabinet's Economic Cluster Head Mmamoloko Kubayi led the South African delegate at the annual meeting. The team's primary focus was to promote South Africa as an attractive investment destination.

The meeting provided an opportunity for government to share an update on the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan, promote the country's economic reforms, and advance important public-private partnerships to support the country's development objectives.

Team South Africa also focused on:

· unpacking government's priorities for supporting higher levels of

economic growth through areas such as infrastructure and industrial growth;

- outlining the country's commitment to higher economic growth by committing to faster implementation of structural reforms through Operation Vulindlela;
- committing to addressing climate change, the green economy and transitioning to lower carbon emissions;
- committing to deepening economic cooperation in Africa and globally, and simulating trade; and
- implementing reforms that will support the ease of doing business, such as reducing data costs and one-stop shops for setting up businesses.

The 2022 event convened at the most consequential geopolitical and geo-economic moment of the past three decades and against the backdrop of a once-in-a-century pandemic. The meeting brought together over 2 000 leaders and experts from around the world, all committed to a "Davos Spirit" of improving the state of the world.

South African Premier Business Awards

The South African Premier Business Awards is an annual event hosted by the dtic in partnership with Proudly South African and Brand South Africa. The awards recognise business excellence and honour enterprises that promote the spirit of success and innovation as well as job creation, good business ethics and quality. These awards bring together all single sectored awards, among others technology, manufacturing and women in business.

International cooperation

The Investment and Trade Initiative (ITI) is part of the dtic's objective to create market penetration for South African value-added products and services, and to promote South Africa as a trade and investment destination.

The ITI focuses on showcasing South Africa's diverse range of capabilities to produce world-class products and services in the targeted sectors, which include agro-processing (rooibos tea, dried fruits, spices, sauces, frozen fish and sparkling 100% fruit juice), industrial chemicals and automotive components.

South African companies have developed highly specialised skills and products and there are various opportunities for them to market their expertise and collaborate on projects with their Brazilian counterparts.

The programme of the ITI includes trade and investment seminars, business-to-business meetings and sector-specific business site visits to companies in São Paulo and Porto Alegre.

Department of Public Enterprises (DPE)

The DPE is the shareholder representative for government with oversight responsibility for seven SOCs in its portfolio, namely the South African Airways (SAA), the South African Express Airways, Transnet, Eskom, Denel, the South African Forestry Company (SAFCOL) and Alexkor. The department is the primary interface between government

and these companies, and provides input into the formulation of policy, legislation and regulation. In executing its responsibilities, the DPE seeks to direct and support improvements in the financial, commercial and operational performance of these companies and their contribution to the South African economy, and support transformation.

Well-governed and financially sustainable public entities play a vital role in national development. In recent years, however, the combined results of financial mismanagement and corruption have led to a severe deterioration in the financial position of many public entities, leaving them unable to deliver on their mandates. A growing number have required state guarantees or bailouts to remain afloat – straining national budgets, draining resources that could be spent on social and economic needs, and setting back economic recovery.

The PFMA of 1999 requires SOCs to generate sufficient financial resources from their operations to meet obligations to employees, tax authorities, the public and debt holders. Several entities cannot meet these obligations.

SOCs in financial distress are expected to expedite the implementation of reforms, which include facilitating private-sector participation, costing developmental mandates and streamlining operations to focus on core mandates. Several reviews are under way that will inform the shape of legislative reforms.

Chapter 13 of the NDP identifies the potential of SOCs to build a capable and developmental state. This is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the mandates of SOCs are closely aligned.

To coordinate reforms in state-owned companies, over the MTEF period, the department will continue to provide the necessary technical and advisory support to the presidential state-owned enterprises council in its efforts to reform, revitalise and reposition state-owned companies. The department has reprioritised R17.5 million over the medium term to: review the treasury management practices of state-owned companies; verify candidates for boards; assess the state's diamond mineral assets; facilitate the unbundling of Eskom; operationalise the presidential state-owned enterprises council; develop the Government Shareholder Management Bill as the overarching legislation aimed at strengthening and standardising the governance and oversight of state-owned enterprises; and conduct forensic investigations into alleged cases of corruption and malfeasance within state-owned companies. Due to capability challenges, the department will use consultants for this work.

Budget

The DPE's budget for the 2021/22 financial year was R39.2 billion. Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 79.5%, from R36.2 billion in 2021/22 to R310.9 million in 2024/25. This is due to substantial allocations made to Eskom (R31.7 billion), South African Airways (R4.3 billion) and Denel (R3.0 billion) in 2021/22 for the settlement of debt and interest.

Payments for financial assets account for 98.2% (R23.6 billion) of total expenditure over the period ahead. These include additional

amounts of R21.9 billion for Eskom and R1.8 billion for South African Airways in 2022/23. Compensation of employees is the department's second-largest expenditure item, increasing at an average annual rate of 5.8%, from R159 million in 2021/22 to R188.1 million in 2024/25. To ensure that the department remains within the expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees over the medium term, only critical vacant posts, will be filled.

State-owned companies

The operational and financial health of many state-owned companies continues to decline. Over the past 12 months, several have missed their capital investment and loan disbursement targets. A number of these companies do not have sustainable business models and cannot continue to operate or honour their obligations without state support, draining scarce resources from social and economic programmes.

Investors have increasingly expressed an unwillingness to extend capital to such entities without government guarantees, leaving many state-owned companies at risk of defaulting on their debts. At the same time, the COVID-19 pandemic and associated lockdowns have reduced operational income and slowed restructuring plans.

To reduce their demands on limited public resources, SOCs need to develop and implement sustainable turnaround plans that align with their mandates, incorporate long-term structural considerations in their sectors and identify appropriate funding models. The Presidential State-Owned Enterprises Council is developing a new approach to government's management of these companies: some will be retained, while others may be disposed of or consolidated. The future SOCs will be informed by the value they create and whether they can be run in a sustainable manner.

In 2022/23, National Treasury will publish a framework outlining the criteria for government funding of SOCs. Government will guide and support credible restructuring plans. Guaranteed debt continues to have the full backing of government.

Alexkor

Alexkor mines diamonds in the Alexander Bay area, including marine mining and land mining. Alexkor was established in terms of the Alexkor Limited Act, 1992 (Act 116 of 1992), to mine marine and land diamonds in Alexander Bay. The company holds a 51% share in the Alexkor Richtersveld Mining Company Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture.

Over the medium term, the company will focus on expanding its diamond-mining operations. Although Alexkor mined more than 28 000 carats per year in 2019/20 and 2020/21, production did not increase year-on-year. Due to a lack of geological information and the relatively low carat value of its diamonds, particularly land-based ones, the joint venture struggled to attract investment.

To increase revenue, Alexkor acquired a licence to sell and market diamonds through the State Diamond Trader in November 2021. The DPE's immediate focus is to review Alexkor's operations to ensure it becomes sustainable. A service provider is expected to be appointed by the beginning of 2022/23 to help determine an optimal operating

model for the State's mineral assets. Alexkor's liquidity has improved due to the settlement of significant obligations and reduced personnel costs. The company is solvent and does not have long-term debt, which has reduced its risk assessment as a going concern.

Denel

Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992, with the South African Government as its sole shareholder. It operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment, and provides strategic defence equipment.

The company's broad focus over the medium term will be on restructuring, which entails optimising its cost structure and implementing its new operating business model to better position it for future sustainability. The new operating model reduces Denel's structure from six core business units to three – engineering, manufacturing, and maintenance and overhaul.

This change will not only result in decreased expenditure, but in the improved allocation of critical resources. It will also require that the company accelerate its disposal of non-core assets and businesses, improve supply chain policies, and align its IT infrastructure with its new organisational structure.

The entity's 2021/22 balance sheet shows that it continues to face liquidity and solvency challenges. It does not have sufficient cash to meet operational requirements, including the payment of salaries and suppliers. This has resulted in core business units operating at an average capacity of less than 30%. Denel has lost experienced personnel with critical skills, which threatens the sustainability of various defence industrial capabilities.

Government has allocated the military and aerospace equipment manufacturer R3 billion to cover capital and interest payments on guaranteed debt. Broader alignment is required between the Department of Defence, the DPE, National Treasury and other relevant stakeholders to agree on Denel's future.

This will enable Denel to implement its strategic plan to consolidate operations, dispose of non-core assets and move ahead with identified strategic equity partnerships.

Eskom

Eskom is governed by the Eskom Conversion Act, 2001 (Act 13 of 2001), and is mandated to generate, transmit and distribute electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. Significant progress has been made on the unbundling of 3 subsidiaries: transmission, generation and distribution. The transmission division was corporatized in 2021/22, and the generation and distribution divisions are expected to be corporatised in 2022/23.

Eskom continues to rely on government guarantees and equity injections to finance its operations. At 64%, Eskom's generation performance was poor in 2021/22, mainly due to a 27% incidence of unplanned plant breakdowns. Delayed and inadequate maintenance

has resulted in deteriorating and unreliable performance, leading to higher maintenance costs. The Eskom Board cancelled its Short-Term Power Purchasers Programme – which aims to procure power from existing facilities with excess capacity, enabled through short-term contracts – because the regulator granted approval for cost recovery for only one of the three years applied for. This increased Eskom's financial risk due to tariff uncertainty. Eskom continues to focus on improving generation performance and reducing load-shedding.

By 31 March 2021, Eskom had used R281.6 billion of its R350 billion government guarantee facility, with another R7 billion committed. As Eskom redeems some of its maturing debt, it creates space within the limits of the facility. Taking into account redemptions over the period, the Minister of Finance approved a special dispensation to allow the utility to access additional guaranteed debt of R42 billion in 2021/22 and R25 billion in 2022/23, which is still within these limits. Meanwhile, government has provided Eskom with equity support of R31.7 billion in 2021/22.

Although Eskom has registered its transmission unit as a subsidiary with the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission, it missed its deadline of 31 December 2021 to complete the legal separation of this unit, in part because lenders have not yet approved the proposed restructuring. The generation and distribution entities are expected to complete legal separation by 31 December 2022. Eskom has prepared financial statements for the three entities and has applied to the regulator for a transmission licence.

To improve maintenance at power stations and ensure the availability of power, the Generation Recovery Plan focuses on detecting defects; reducing trips and full load losses; and accelerating the return of serviced units following long-term forced outages, partial load losses and boiler tube leaks, particularly at the Medupi and Kusile power stations. Medupi's last unit was commercialised in July 2021, and three of the six units at Kusile have been completed. As part of transitioning from coal to renewable energy technologies, in line with government's energy policy, Eskom is in the process of decommissioning old coal-fired power stations. Komati power station, which was expected to be decommissioned in 2022, would be the first pilot site for this transition

Eskom's financial position remains weak, and the entity is not able to generate enough cash from operations to cover debt obligations when they become due. As at 30 September 2021, Eskom's debt amounted to R392 billion, while municipal arrears amounted to R40.9 billion. Given this weak financial position, government has committed to providing financial support to assist with the company's debt-service obligations, with an additional R21.9 billion allocated for this in 2022/23.

South African Airways

The SAA operates a full-service network in the international, regional and domestic markets. The airline is responsible for promoting air links with South Africa's key business, trading and tourism markets across the world, and contributing to key domestic air linkages.

The SAA was placed under business rescue in 2019 to create a

value proposition within the restructured SAA which would make it an attractive proposition for a potential partner. In August 2020, the business rescue practitioners published an approved business rescue plan. To implement the plan, R10.5 billion was allocated in the 2020 second adjustments budget.

The restructured airline resumed operations in September 2021, operating domestically and regionally. However, the fourth wave of the COVID-19 pandemic negatively affected its restart and ramp-up plan as some destinations closed borders to South African carriers. Because the airline was in business rescue between December 2019 and April 2021, it did not generate any revenue from scheduled flights during this period, only a few charter flights.

The airline's total guaranteed debt was R16.4 billion. To settle it, government paid R10.2 billion in 2020/21, R4.3 billion in 2021/22, and is expected to pay the remaining R1.8 billion in the second quarter of 2022/23. The airline is in the process of disposing of some non-core assets as required by the appropriation conditions.

Government is in the process of concluding the sale of its majority shareholding in the airline to a strategic equity partner that is expected to bring in the funding and skills required to strengthen its balance sheet and improve operations. This partnership is expected to be finalised by the beginning of 2022/23. Over the medium term, the airline will focus on improving its operations as international flights resume.

South African Express

South African Express Airways has experienced severe operational and financial challenges for several years, and despite financial support from government, has been unable to recover. The airline was placed under business rescue in February 2020 but was unable to restructure, leading to it being placed under provisional liquidation in April 2020. By October 2020, the process of receiving expressions of interest had commenced. It was expected that the airline would be sold in the fourth quarter of 2021/22.

South African Forestry Company

The SAFCOL was established in 1992 in terms of the Management of State Forests Act, 1992 (Act 128 of 1992). It is mandated to ensure the sustainable management of plantation forests, increase downstream timber processing and play a catalytic role in rural economic development and transformation.

Over the medium term, the company will continue seeking viable partnerships to diversify its product offering by increasing its production of new timber products and investing in the tourism sector. Furthermore, the company plans to continue supporting communities near its operations through providing business opportunities, training and other services.

The company is still struggling to increase investment in its strategic projects – particularly the Timbadola processing plant and the IFLOMA Mozambican investment – to ensure increased revenue in the future. However, with its current board and a full executive team, there has

been a gradual shift in the company's ability to raise funding. The company reported revenue of R920 million for 2020/21 – up by 11% from the previous year despite challenging economic conditions. However, this still represents a loss of R45 million because of high fixed operating expenses.

Increasing processing capacity through upgrading the Timbadola processing plant is one of the short- to medium-term activities envisaged to increase revenue. This will further reduce operating costs, particularly for repairs and maintenance.

The company's liquidity and solvency position is satisfactory as it is not highly indebted. It can raise funding based on the strength of its balance sheet and project viability without support from the fiscus.

Transnet

Transnet provides and operates freight transportation services and infrastructure. The company's current operating model is geared towards lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa, promoting a modal shift from road to rail, creating partnerships with the private sector, developing skills, and supporting demand and market access for local producers and suppliers.

To sustain and expand its capacity, over a 5-year period ending in 2024/25, Transnet planned to invest R127.7 billion, 75.7% (R96.7 billion) of which was earmarked to be invested in rail, ports and pipeline infrastructure across its operating divisions. However, capital expenditure for 2020/21 was reduced by 14%, from R18.6 billion to R15.9 billion, due to the closure of some project sites during the COVID-19 pandemic. In 2021/22, the company expects capital expenditure to amount to R11.8 billion – 12% less than its original target of R13.5 billion. An estimated 80% of this capital expenditure will be from internally generated funds to reduce reliance on debt.

The state rail and ports operator, reported a net loss of R8.3 billion in 2020/21, down from a restated net profit of R2.9 billion in the prior year. Restrictions on economic activity associated with COVID-19 affected rail, port and pipeline sales. Rail volumes also suffered from cable theft, power failures, vandalism, adverse weather and derailments. The bulk and container terminals operated at reduced capacity during the initial lockdown. Pipeline volumes were lower than the prior year due totravel restrictions and the impact of fuel theft.

However, the situation looks likely to improve. The resolution of contract disputes to acquire locomotives is set to improve the availability of rolling stock and maintenance material, as well as Transnet's ability to access certain parts from original equipment manufacturers. Security implementation plans are being prioritised within Transnet and in collaboration with state security agencies and related government departments to address the recurring loss of revenue and the unavailability and unreliability of the rail network due to security incidents in freight corridors.

The cost of these incidents in 2021/22 is estimated to be more than R2 billion. Some Transnet customers are also open to collaborating to limit the occurrence of security incidents.

Through regular engagements and site visits, the DPE will monitor the implementation of structural reforms to ensure Transnet's economic recovery and address inefficiencies in the freight transport sector. In June 2021, the President announced the establishment of the Transnet National Ports Authority as an independent subsidiary of Transnet in line with the National Ports Act of 2005. New port equipment will be procured with the objective of reversing the negative effects of a lack of maintenance at ports over the years.

The company will actively seek private-sector participation in port and rail freight. This investment in ports, which is envisaged to be in place by the end of 2022/23, is expected to contribute to the modernisation of, and improvements in the capacity of the Ngqura Container Terminal, Durban Container Terminal Pier 2, and Kaalfontein Automotive Terminal.

The cost of the Durban Port expansion alone is projected to be more than R100 billion. Private-sector investment is also expected to contribute to the migration from road to rail and reduce the cost of logistics. The DPE will collaborate with the Department of Transport to ensure the implementation of the Road-to-Rail Strategy.

Department of Small Business Development (DSBD)

The DSBD is tasked with the responsibility of leading and coordinating an integrated approach to the promotion and development of entrepreneurship, small businesses and cooperatives; and ensuring an enabling legislative and policy environment to support their growth and sustainability. The realisation of this mandate is expected to lead to a transformed and inclusive economy driven by sustainable, innovative small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) and cooperatives.

Over the medium term, the DSBD will focus on providing support to SMMEs, including by establishing infrastructure to expose SMMEs and cooperatives to new markets; providing greater access to finance forstartups; providing greater access to finance for startups; finalising amendments to the National Small Enterprise Act, 1996 (Act 102 of 1996) and developing master plans for the meaningful int egration of small businesses into the mainstream economy.

The department supports SMMEs primarily through its entity, the Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA), through an allocation of R2.8 billion over the medium term. Additional support amounting to R509 million over the MTEF period will be provided to SMMEs through internally administered incentives such as the Craft Customised Sector Programme and the Cooperatives Development Support Programme in the Development Finance programme, and the Product Markets Programme in the Sector and Market Development programme.

Over the period ahead, the DSBD will intensify its establishment of affordable, safe and modernised spaces where SMMEs and cooperatives can meet potential buyers. Through this exposure to new product markets, small enterprises, particularly those in townships and rural areas, which have more opportunity to test, certify and improve their products. The department aims to link 750 SMMEs and cooperatives to international market opportunities, with particular

emphasis on enterprises run by women, young people and people with disabilities. Expenditure for these activities is within an allocation of R254.6 million over the MTEF period in the Sector and Market Development programme.

Access to finance, particularly for the first three stages of a business's life cycle (ideation, proof of concept and market entry), is crucial for sustainability. To this end, the DSBD will continue to roll out the Township and Rural Entrepreneurship Fund with the aim of supporting 100 000 township and rural enterprises by 2024. This initiative will be implemented through the SEDA at an estimated cost of R2.9 billion over the medium term. In addition, the department has introduced a blended finance model to provide financing amounting to R827.3 million over the medium term to enterprises traditionally not supported by commercial banks and existing development finance institutions. The department has allocated R218.7 million over the same period to the Cooperatives Development Support Programme to continue supporting cooperatives to ensure their meaningful contribution to job creation and economic growth.

In an effort to establish a small enterprise ombud service, regulate and license businesses owned by foreign nationals, regulate unfair business practices, and review the definition of SMMEs to arrive at an inclusive understanding, the department aims to finalise amendments to the National Small Enterprise Act, 1996 (Act 102 of 1996) over the medium term. To ensure small businesses are able to access opportunities and dedicated support measures, the department plans to develop a national small enterprise master plan and contribute to the development of a creative industries master plan. Spending for these initiatives is within an allocation of R416 million over the MTEF period in the Sector and Market Development programme.

Legislation and policies

The DSBD's mandate is guided by a legislative framework that includes the:

- Industrial Development Corporation Act, 1940 (Act 22 of 1940);
- National Small Business Act, 1996 (Act 102 of 1996);
- National Small Business Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 29 of 2004);
- Small Business Development Act, 1981 (Act 112 of 1981);
- Cooperatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005); and
- Cooperatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013).

Budae

For the 2020/21 financial year, the DSBD was was allocated R2.6 billion. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.6%, from R2.6 billion in 2021/22 to R2.7 billion in 2024/25. Transfers and subsidies account for 89.6% (R7 billion) of the department's budget over the period ahead, while 7.8% (R657 million) is allocated for compensation of employees and 2.5% (R191.3 million) for goods and services.

Entity

Small Enterprise Development Agency

The SEDA was established in 2004 in terms of the National Small Business Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 29 of 2004). It is mandated to implement government's small business strategy, design and implement a standard and common national delivery network for the development of small enterprises and integrate government-funded small enterprise support agencies across all spheres of government.

Over the medium term, the agency will continue to promote business competitiveness, viability and localisation, with a particular focus on the development of township, rural and informal businesses by facilitating the establishment of new incubators in these areas. Over the MTEF period, the agency plans to support an estimated 10 500 SMMEs and cooperatives to be competitive in local markets; and create 17 500 jobs within the SMME ecosystem.

To achieve these targets, expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.9%, from R870.8 million in 2021/22 to R949.6 million in 2024/25.

Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI)

The DPWI is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of national government's immovable assets. Since the establishment of the Property Management Trading Entity, the DPWI's role consists of policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert-built environment services to client departments at national level; and, through the entity, the planning, acquisition, management and disposal of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The department is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in initiatives for the creation of jobs through the implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). Public works is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by the national and provincial spheres of government.

Over the medium term, the DPWI will continue to focus on creating work opportunities and facilitating skills development in the construction and built environment sectors. An estimated 87.4% (R22.7 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term is allocated to giving effect to this focus through transfers and subsidies for the operations of its entities, and for conditional grants to provinces and municipalities for the implementation of the expanded public works programme.

The department continues to lead and coordinate the expanded public works programme, which aims to create work opportunities through the use of labour-intensive methods across the three spheres of government. An estimated R8.2 billion over the MTEF period is allocated for transfers and subsidies — mainly to provinces, municipalities, and non-profit organisations — to create further employment opportunities. The department plans to monitor and evaluate the implementation of the programme over the medium term by ensuring that 69 public bodies are provided with programme coordination support and 290 public bodies are provided with technical support at an estimated cost

of R1.2 billion in the EPWP. This will be supplemented by four reports in each year over the medium term on the work opportunities created by public bodies within the programme's reporting system. The EPWP has a total budget of R9.4 billion, increasing at an average annual rate of 3.4%, from R2.9 billion in 2021/22 to R3.2 billion in 2024/25.

Building state capacity in the built environment and property management sectors is central to the department's work. Activities within the Intergovernmental Coordination programme aim to restore the skills pipeline in the built environment and meet the country's longer-term infrastructure delivery objectives.

This entails either restoring or replacing the skills pipeline, through which a variety of skills required within the built environment sector emerge. The department seeks to increase the number of beneficiaries participating in skills pipeline intervention programmes from 1 000 in 2021/22 to 1 200 in 2024/25. For activities related to skills development, R95.5 million is allocated over the medium term in the Professional Services subprogramme in the Intergovernmental Coordination programme.

Legislation and policies

The DPWI's mandate is guided by a legislative framework that includes the:

- Government Immovable Asset Management Act, 2007 (Act 19 of 2007);
- Infrastructure Development Act. 2014 (Act 23 of 2014):
- · Land Affairs Board Act, 1987 (Act 101 of 1987;
- Construction Industry Development Board Act (CIDB), 2000 (Act 38 of 2000):
- Council for the Built Environment (CBE) Act, 2000 (Act 43 of 2000);
- State Land Disposal Act. 1961 (Act 48 of 1961):
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004);
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013);
- National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008);
- · Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 181 of 1993);
- National Building Regulations and Building Standards Amended Act, 1984 (Act 36 of 1984);
- Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997);
- Critical Infrastructure Protection Act, 2019 (Act 8 of 2019);
- PFMA of 1999:
- Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000):
- · Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 30 of 2007) as amended;
- Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000);
- · Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998);
- Public Administration Management Act, 2014 (Act 11 of 2014);
- Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997):
- · BBBEE Act of 2003;
- · Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995) as amended;

- Protected Disclosure Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000);
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000); and
- Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000).

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DPWI's budget allocation was R8.4 billion.

Entities

Agrément South Africa

Agrément South Africa was established to, among other things, evaluate the fitness for purpose of non-standardised products or systems used in the construction industry and for which a national standard does not exist. The implementation of the entity's mandate is dependent on the synchronisation of its work plan with government's national priorities and other national plans, and, in this regard, the entity has indirect links with strategic national planning documents. The functioning and operations of the entity are guided by the DPWI, and legislation and mandates governing the built environment.

Over the period ahead, the entity plans to approve 9 eco-labelling scheme specifications; develop technical criteria and identify suitable experts for assessing unconventional construction products and verifying whether they are fit for purpose; evaluate, assess and approve infrastructure development technologies to better direct investments, particularly in the basic education sector; ensure the affordability and diversity of construction products that are available in the market; and conduct annual inspections of certificate holders and licensees for unconventional construction products.

Over the same period, the entity also plans to conduct validity reviews for 182 certificates that have expired to determine if they are still operating as initially intended and issue another 3-year certificate where necessary. Expenditure for these activities is within an allocation of R38.5 million over the medium term in the Technical Services programme, accounting for an estimated 25.5% of the entity's total budget.

Construction Industry Development Board

The CIDB is mandated to provide strategic leadership to construction industry stakeholders to stimulate sustainable growth; oversee transformation in the industry by encouraging and facilitating the participation of historically disadvantaged groups; establish and promote best practice among role players in the construction delivery process in both the public and private sectors; ensure the uniform application of policy across all spheres of government; set and uphold ethical standards across the industry; ensure improved procurement and delivery management, and equitable procurement practices; and develop systematic methods for monitoring and regulating the industry's performance and its stakeholders, including the registration of projects and contractors.

Over the MTEF period, the board aims to achieve sound corporate

governance and promote an ethical environment in its aim to achieve a clean audit; enforce compliance with its prescripts and provide enabling tools in the form of a register of contractors that facilitates the procurement of targeted enterprises and enables client departments, including the DPWI, to provide expanded work opportunities to black-owned and black-managed contractors; offer development support to contractors and clients as part of its efforts to attain the desired outcomes of transformation and inclusive growth; and monitor and evaluate the industry's performance to ensure that it contributes to development.

The Best Practice Project Assessment Scheme, which is aimed at augmenting developmental programmes for small and emerging contractors in the sector, was implemented in 2021. Functioning as a framework for the entire sector, the scheme will ensure that infrastructure meaningfully contributes to South Africa's developmental goals, and encourages knowledge transfer, upskilling, environmentally sustainable building and a safer construction industry. To carry out these activities, R31.2 million is set aside over the period ahead.

The infrastructure delivery management system provides a documented body of knowledge and set of processes that represent generally recognised best practices for technical and non-technical managers to refer to in the delivery of infrastructure and the management of its life cycle. The board plans to create capacity for at least 404 client departments on the system at a projected cost of R108 million over the MTEF period.

Council for the Built Environment

The council is a statutory entity established by the Council for the Built Environment Act of 2000. The Act mandates the council to promote and protect the interests of the public on built environment issues; promote and maintain a sustainable built and natural environment; promote the ongoing development of human resources in the built environment; promote the sound governance of built environment professions; facilitate participation by built environment professionals in integrated development in the context of national goals; ensure the uniform application of norms and guidelines set by councils for professions in the built environment; promote appropriate standards of health, safety and environmental protection within the built environment; promote cooperation between councils and government on training standards and other issues that affect training in the sector; and serve as a forum for built environment professionals to engage with one another on relevant issues.

The council is an overarching body that coordinates the six councils for built environment professions: architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying.

Over the medium term, the council will focus on driving programmes aimed at creating economic opportunities for historically disadvantaged groups, embarking on policy reforms to enable transformation in the built environment sector, and collaborating with various sectors to

professionalise occupations within the built environment. Accordingly, the council plans to support 148 districts on the implementation of the structured candidacy programme while ensuring that the sector drives demand and increases productivity. An estimated R16.8 million over the MTEF period has been set aside for the required advisory services.

Independent Development Trust (IDT)

The IDT was established in 1990 as a grant-making institution for the development of disadvantaged communities in South Africa, particularly in rural areas. It is listed as a Schedule 2 public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999.

Over the medium term, the trust will continue to focus on empowering poor communities by providing project management services for delivering and refurbishing social infrastructure such as schools, clinics and community centres, mainly in rural areas. These projects are expected to create 193 000 work opportunities through the Expanded Public Works Programme. A further 8 935 estimated work opportunities are expected to be created. over the same period through the programme portfolios of cooperatives, non-profit organisations and community-based organisations.

In terms of the Public Finance Management Act of1999, the trust is expected to operate on a full cost-recovery basis. Since the decline in interest rates precipitated by the global financial crisis in 2008, the trust has experienced a notable decrease in income from its investment accounts, prompting it to repeatedly turn to the fiscus for bailouts. It is against this background that the trust is working with the department to develop a financially sustainable business and funding model to ensure its continued operation.

Property Management Trading Entity

The Property Management Trading Entity was established following a decision that costs related to accommodation be devolved from the DPWI to client departments. The entity performs the immovable asset management function on behalf of the department, including the provision of residential and office accommodation for user departments at the national government level; and acquires, manages, operates, maintains and disposes of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The entity was established to apply professional business approaches in managing and optimising the State's immovable asset portfolio for maximum return. On a cost recovery basis, the entity finances the purchase, construction, refurbishment and maintenance of nationally owned government properties; and manages the leases of privately owned properties accommodating national departments.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on developing precincts to support efficient and integrated government planning by grouping departments that provide similar services to make service delivery more efficient; and refurbishing and maintaining government buildings in its portfolio. To achieve these objectives, the entity plans to spe d R66.8 billion over the medium term, which includes R4.4 billion

allocated for ad hoc building maintenance. A key component of the entity's funds will be channelled towards improving access for people with disabilities, which will include completing 48 infrastructure projects to retrofit buildings to make them more accessible. The department will also carry out refurbishment, repair and capital projects for 24 departments, including correctional centres, police stations, courts and office buildings. The execution of these projects is expected to cost R19.3 billion over the medium term.

Department of Employment and Labour (DEL)

The DEL was created in recognition of the need to respond to increasing levels of unemployment, inequality and poverty in South Africa.

It plays a significant role in reducing unemployment, poverty and inequality by pursuing the objectives of decent work through employment creation and enterprise development; setting of standards and the protection of rights at work, including the facilitation of equal opportunities and social dialogue; and the provision of social protection.

The mandate of the department is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners. These aim to:

- · improve economic efficiency and productivity;
- · facilitate the creation of decent employment;
- · promote labour standards and fundamental rights at work;
- · provide adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers;
- · promote and enforce sound labour relations;
- · promote equity in the workplace;
- eliminate inequality and unfair discrimination in the workplace;
- enhance occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace; and
- give value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for the competitiveness of enterprises, balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

By facilitating the resolution of workplace disputes, improving labour relations, enhancing occupational health and safety, and facilitating job creation, the DEL supports the realisation of the NDP's vision of eliminating poverty and reducing inequality. In giving effect to this vision, Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019-2024 MTSF provides the overall strategic direction for the department's work.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on providing support to work seekers, increasing safety and fairness in the workplace, and regulating the workplace to establish minimum working conditions and fair labour practices.

Supporting work seekers

Facilitating access to decent employment is central to the department's work. As such, over the medium term, it plans to register 2.7 million work seekers, provide counselling to 750 000 work seekers and place 180 000 work seekers in registered employment opportunities.

To provide more young people with access to employment opportunities,

an additional employment youth centre will be established in Germiston (Gauteng) over the medium term to complement those in Cape Town (Western Cape), De Aar (Northern Cape), Durban and Newcastle (KwaZulu-Natal), and Johannesburg (Gauteng). To reduce the cost of looking for employment and accessing learning opportunities for young people in remote areas, 9 mobile employment youth centres will also be set up over the medium term.

The development of the national employment policy is expected to facilitate the provision of support to work seekers. It is aimed at providing a conducive policy environment to improve investment and productivity, and create employment through targeted interventions at the sector, firm and work-seeker levels.

Accordingly, the department hopes to finalise the national labour migration policy by 2022/23, which will improve the governance of labour migration as well as the protection and empowerment of all work seekers. The policy will also create alignment with the labour migration policies of other countries within the Southern African Development Community.

The department is set to receive an additional R304.9 million in 2022/23 and R372.2 million in 2023/24 for the continuation of the pathway management network, which comprises an ecosystem manager and an innovation fund. The network will stimulate demand by creating more employment opportunities, supporting increased access to relevant education and training interventions, assisting young people in making choices in terms of access to learning and/or earning, and identifying barriers to entry into the labour market. More than 1 million young people are expected to be actively involved in the network over 2 years, targeting 255 000 job opportunities in total. The innovation fund will enable the scaling up of the different components of the network through the introduction of between 12 and 15 new partners over the medium term.

The Public Employment Services programme receives an allocation of R2.6 billion over the medium term, decreasing at an average annual rate of 9.7%, from R883.2 million in 2021/22 to R649.5 million in 2024/25, due to the allocations for the presidential employment initiative in 2022/23 and 2023/24.

Increasing safety and fairness in the workplace

Through conducting a targeted 891 216 employment law compliance inspections over the MTEF period, the department aims to improve compliance with occupational health and safety standards for various sectors and as such, increase fairness in the workplace, especially for young people, disabled people and women.

In addition, the implementation of the case management system in 2022/23 is expected to ensure that the department's business processes are fully modernised, which will lead to, among other things, more focused inspections that ensure compliance and workplace safety. Over the medium term, the department plans to serve 95% of noncompliant employers with legal notices within 14 calendar days of inspections per year. In addition, 65% of noncompliant employers who

fail to comply with served notices will be referred for prosecution within 30 calendar days per year.

Expenditure for these activities is within the Inspection and Enforcement Services programme, which is allocated 16.8% (R2 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 0.9%.

Regulating the workplace practices

The department will conduct an annual review of the national minimum wage, including the development of monitoring mechanisms to measure its impact on the economy, collective bargaining, the reduction of income differentials, and proposed adjustments. Sectors pegged below the national minimum wage, such as domestic work, will be required to be adjusted to align with the national minimum wage by the end of 2022/23.

The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration spearheads the department's efforts to advance such efforts towards economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democratisation of the workplace. As a result, the commission expects to receive 79.3% (R3.2 billion) of the allocation to the Labour Policy and Industrial Relations programme over the medium term.

Legislation and policy

The DEL derives its legislative mandate from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, particularly the Bill of Rights, which is given effect through a number of Acts that regulate labour matters in

South Africa. The most important of these are the:

- · Labour Relations Act of 1995;
- Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997;
- · Employment Equity Act of 1998;
- · Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993; and
- Employment Services Act, 2014 (Act 4 of 2014).

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DEL was allocated R3.8 billion.

The department's total budget over the medium term is R11.7 billion after a baseline increase of R52.8 million for salary adjustments in 2022/23, an additional R120 million over the MTEF period to the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration for increasing caseloads, and a total of R677.2 million in the first two years of the MTEF period for the pathway management network, a presidential employment initiative. Expenditure on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 36.6% (R4.3 billion) of the total budget over the MTEF period, with transfer payments to entities amounting to 36.5% (R4.3 billion).

Entities

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration

The legislative mandate of the CCMA is primarily derived from the Labour Relations Act of 1995, as amended. As per the provisions of the act, the commission is mandated to advance, among other

deliverables, economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democratisation of the workplace.

This mandate is further extended by other statutes dealing with employment law. Over the medium term, the commission will focus on implementing its 5-year strategy, which prioritises a dispute-resolution and enforcement service delivery model, a dispute-prevention and management strategy and service delivery model, a human resources strategy, and an integrated governance strategy.

Due to socioeconomic challenges and the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic, the commission's caseload is anticipated to increase from 158 168 in 2021/22 to 185 929 in 2022/23. To address this increasing caseload, an additional R120 million is allocated over the medium term to the dispute resolution and enforcement services programme to employ more part-time commissioners. Hence, 73.2% (R2.4 billion) of the commission's budget over the MTEF period is allocated to dispute resolution and enforcement mediation to support collective bargaining, and capacity-building processes to ensure fairness in the workplace.

Compensation Fund

The Compensation Fund is mandated to administer the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), as amended, which makes provision for the compensation of employees who are disabled as a result of occupational injuries and diseases sustained or contracted at work, and the compensation of the nominated beneficiaries of employees who die from such injuries or diseases.

The fund's focus over the medium term will be on restoring its reputation as a trusted provider of social security to workers; and providing an efficient and effective safety net that strengthens social protection, particularly for vulnerable workers, by rehabilitating, reintegrating and returning employees who have sustained occupational injuries or contracted work-related diseases to work. The fund plans to enhance its capacity to deliver services through advocacy sessions aimed at improving performance, administration and operational efficiency. The improved performance will be measured through an expected improvement in the turnaround time for adjudicating claims, from 85% within 30 working days in 2021/22 to 90% within 5 working days in 2024/25.

A concession was published in 2020 to delink COVID-19 from the requirements of the act and authorise the fund to pay benefits to employees who contract the virus at work or in the execution of their duties, whereas other claimants must submit doctors an accident reports first. The COVID-19 benefit will be available as long as the state of disaster remains in effect.

National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac)

The Nedlac is mandated to promote economic growth, social equity and participation, and seeks to create impact by enabling its social partners to contribute meaningfully to these processes. As such,

over the medium term, the council will focus on addressing relevant social and economic issues by building an effective and accountable institution to facilitate collaboration between leaders of business, community, government and labour constituencies.

Over the medium term, the council intends to move away from physical meetings and conduct all meetings online as this is more cost effective, and will free up resources for building the capacity of the council and its social partners. The council's work has extended from providing input on socioeconomic policy and legislation to collaborating with social partners to mitigate the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic and promote South Africa's subsequent economic recovery. In addition to the council's response to these twin challenges, it will still focus on its core function of enabling its social partners' ontributions to critical policy and legislative matters in the fight against poverty, unemployment and inequality.

Productivity South Africa

Productivity South Africa is mandated to promote employment growth and productivity, and thereby contribute to South Africa's socioeconomic development and competitiveness.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on supporting the improvement of South Africa's competitiveness and the sustainability of its enterprises, specifically SMMEs, through its competitiveness improvement services, and business turnaround and recovery programmes.

Unemployment Insurance Fund

The mandate of the UIF is to alleviate poverty by providing effective short-term unemployment insurance to all workers who qualify for unemployment and related benefits, as legislated in the Unemployment Insurance Act, 2001 (Act 63 of 2001). Over the medium term, the fund will focus on providing social insurance benefits, improving coverage to vulnerable groups and contributors, job creation and job preservation initiatives.

The UIF provides short-term benefits to qualifying workers who are out of work due to retrenchment, illness, or adoption or maternity leave. In 2020/21, it established the Temporary Employee/Employer Relief Scheme to support workers and firms affected by the COVID-19 pandemic. This scheme has paid out R61.5 billion in relief to about 5 million workers. The fund also introduced a benefit for workers affected by public violence in KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng in July 2021, paying R10.1 million to about 2 700 affected workers by the end of January 2022.

Projected benefit payments are set to decrease from R40.7 billion in 2021/22 to R23.3 billion in 2024/25 as temporary COVID-19 relief winds down. The fund will incur an average annual cash deficit of R8.6 billion over the medium term due to higher benefit payments arising from the Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act (2017), which came into effect in 2019/20, exceeding the contributions received. Net asset value is expected to grow to R132.9 billion in 2024/25 due to an

increas in technical reserves to cover outstanding or potential future payments.

Employment figures

The official unemployment rate breached a previous high yet again in the third quarter of 2021, reaching 34.9%. The labour market came under strain amid renewed COVID-19 lockdowns and the outbreak of public violence in July 2021. Of the 660 000 jobs lost in the third quarter, 309 000 were in the trade sector (retail trade, wholesale trade, motor trade, catering and accommodation), which was severely affected by the July violence. Trade sector employment fell to the lowest level since the Quarterly Labour Force Survey began in 2008. The lingering effect on sentiment may weigh on job prospects through 2022.

These events aggravated longstanding problems in the labour market. More than three-quarters of jobless people (78.5%) are in long- term unemployment – defined as unemployment for a year or longer. Job losses continue to be more pronounced in lower-skilled occupations, including sales and services, craftspeople, clerks and elementary workers – many of which were highly sensitive to the pandemic restrictions. There remain 2.1 million fewer people employed in the third quarter of 2021 compared with the final quarter of 2019. As such, government's reform agenda is crucial to foster growth and employment.

The results of the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) for the first quarter of 2022 show that the number of employed

persons increased by 370 000 to 14.9 million, while the number of unemployed persons decreased by 60 000 to 7.9 million compared to the fourth quarter of 2021, resulting in an increase of 310 000 (up by 1.4%) in the number of people in the labour force. The number of discouraged work-seekers decreased by 54 000 (down by 1.4%) and the number of people who were not economically active for reasons other than discouragement also decreased by 112 000 (down by 0.8%) between the two quarters, resulting in a net decrease of 166 000 in the not economically active population.

Employment decreases were observed in private households (down by 186 000) and the agricultural sector (down by 23 000), while employment gains were observed in the formal sector (up by 408 000) and the informal sector (up by 171 000). Compared to a year ago, total employment decreased by 81 000 persons. The number of unemployed persons increased by 8.6% (620 000), while the number of persons who were not economically active increased by 0.2% (39 000).

The Presidential Employment Initiative, which was launched in response to the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic, with a focus on unemployed youth has provided support to more than 840 000 people through a combination of job creation, job retention and income and skills support interventions.

A total of R12.6 billion was allocated for the first phase, which started in October 2020, and R10.9 billion was allocated for the second phase, which started in October 2021.

Over the next two years, R18.4 billion is allocated for the third phase of the initiative to create over 500 000 targeted short-term jobs in each year.

Finance

National Treasury supports economic growth and development, good governance, social progress and rising living standards through the accountable, economical, efficient, equitable and sustainable management of public finances, the maintenance of macroeconomic and financial sector stability, and the effective financial regulation of the economy.

The department's legislative mandate is based on Section 216 (1) of the Constitution, which calls for the establishment of a national treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of the country's public finances.

This role is further elaborated in the PFMA of 1999. The department is mandated to:

- promote national government's fiscal policy and the coordination of its macroeconomic policy;
- ensure the stability and soundness of the financial system and financial services:
- coordinate intergovernmental financial and fiscal relations;
- · manage the budget preparation process; and
- enforce transparency and effective management in respect of revenue and expenditure, assets and liabilities public entities, and constitutional institutions.

The NDP details a vision of building an inclusive economy that advances social equality. This vision is supported by various government priorities, including economic transformation and job creation, education, skills and health, spatial integration, human settlements and local government, a capable, ethical and developmental state and a better Africa and world. The work of National Treasury is closely aligned with these priorities, particularly in its aim to address the challenges of inequality and poverty. Over the medium term, the department will focus on reviewing tax policy and strengthening regulation in the financial sector, supporting sustainable employment, supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities, managing future spending growth and fiscal risk, managing government's assets and liabilities, making government procurement more efficient, strengthening financial management in government, and facilitating regional and international cooperation.

Reviewing tax policy and strengthening regulation in the financial sector

To improve fairness in the tax system, over the medium term, the department plans to make tax proposals part of the annual budgeting process. These proposals will be given effect through technical work such as research, the hosting of workshops and consultations with affected parties. Once this work is completed, necessary legislative amendments will be drafted. These activities will be carried out in the Tax Policy subprogramme in the Economic Policy, Tax, Financial Regulation and Research programme. Allocations to the subprogramme account for 20.3% (R96.3 million) of the programme's total budget over the medium term.

The department's role in regulating the financial sector will continue to ensure that it is safe and provides value- added customer services. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department will focus on preparing, drafting and consulting on legislation to complete the framework for the twin peaks regulatory model. These activities will be carried out in the Financial Sector Policy subprogramme in the Economic Policy, Tax, Financial Regulation and Research programme. Allocations to the subprogramme account for 15.9% (R75.5 million) of the programme's budget over the medium term.

Supporting sustainable employment

The Jobs Fund leverages the technical expertise of project partners to provide support to beneficiaries. This could be in the form of providing holistic support to small and medium-sized enterprises or ensuring better results in training and the matching of unemployed youth with available jobs. To date, the fund has disbursed R5.8 billion to projects in various sectors, including agriculture and infrastructure development. Partners have contributed R11.6 billion to the fund.

Over the medium term, the department anticipates spending R1.7 billion on Jobs Fund activities related to the creation of sustainable employment and sharing good practice with the market. Related activities will be carried out in the Government Technical Advisory Centre subprogramme in the Public Finance and Budget Management programme.

Supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities

The department will continue to facilitate conditional grants and provide financial incentives for infrastructure planning and development to municipalities through the local government financial management grant, the neighbourhood development partnership grant, the programme and project support grant, and the infrastructure skills development grant. Transfers to these grants are projected to amount to R6.9 billion over the medium term through the Facilitation of Conditional Grants subprogramme in the Public Finance and Budget Management programme. This amount includes additional funding of R800 million in 2022/23 and R855.6 million in 2023/24, through the neighbourhood development partnership grant, for the implementation of the presidential employment initiative in metropolitan municipalities.

Managing future spending growth and fiscal risk

Over the medium term, the department will ensure that all government departments remain within the spending limits approved by Cabinet, provide financial analyses of government programmes, and advise on policy and service delivery trends. Future spending growth and fiscal risks in government will continue to be managed through the implementation of spending reviews. These activities will be carried out in the Programme Management for Public Finance and Budget Management, Public Finance and Budget Office and Coordination subprogrammes, which are allocated a combined 4% (R497.5 million) of the Public Finance and Budget Management programme's budget over the medium term.

Managing government's assets and liabilities

The department will continue to finance government's gross borrowing requirement – which comprises the budget balance and maturing debt – in the domestic and international capital markets. Government's financing strategy is informed by strategic portfolio risk benchmarks for interest, inflation, currency and refinancing. The department will continue to manage cash resources to ensure that government remains liquid and surplus cash is invested optimally. In addition, the department will continue its oversight of the financial management of state-owned companies. To carry out these activities, R374 million is allocated in the Asset and Liability Management programme over the medium term.

Making government procurement more efficient

Over the medium term, the Office of the Chief Procurement Officer will continue to monitor government procurement through platforms such as the e-tender portal and the publication of data pertaining to supply chain management spending, including COVID-19 relief measures. These activities will be carried out in the Programme Management for Financial Accounting and Supply Chain Management Systems subprogramme in the Financial Accounting and Supply Chain Management Systems programme. Allocations to the subprogramme account for 10% (R368.8 million) of the programme's budget over the MTEF period.

Strengthening financial management in government

Government's integrated financial management system is designed to enhance the effectiveness of back-end public service functions by improving access to information, improving the quality of data, eliminating the duplication of systems and resources, and limiting the use of manual processes. The department anticipates that the template for the system's software interface will be piloted at selected national and provincial departments in 2022/23, and that rollout will commence in 2023/24. To this end, R1.3 billion over the medium term is allocated in the Financial Systems subprogramme in the Financial Accounting and Supply Chain Management Systems programme.

Facilitating international and regional cooperation

South Africa's shareholding in multilateral development banks ensures that the country has direct representation in the governance structures of these institutions and amplifies the voice of developing countries and the Global South. Through its membership, the South African government also benefits from the technical support that these institutions provide in the implementation of government programmes, as well as the potential of accessing financing at lower than market rates.

To this end, over the MTEF period, South Africa will support the recapitalisation of the World Bank with an amount of R778.7 million and the African Development Bank with R1.9 billion. These amounts are allocated in the International Development Funding Institutions

subprogramme in the International Financial Relations programme.

A further R4.6 billion over the period ahead is allocated for Common Monetary Area compensation payments to Namibia, Lesotho and Eswatini. This expenditure is within the African Integration and Support subprogramme in the International Financial Relations programme.

Public procurement reforms

Initiatives led by the Office of the Chief Procurement Officer aim to deliver lower-cost goods and services more efficiently and transparently through streamlined processes, strategic sourcing, transversal tenders and improved use of technology. The goal is to reduce bureaucratic inertia and red tape and stamp out corrupt procurement practices.

Central Supplier Database (CSD)

The CSD maintains a database of organisations, institutions and individuals who can provide goods and services to government. It serves as the single source of key supplier information for organs of state, providing consolidated, accurate, up-to-date, complete and verified supplier information to procuring organs of state.

This is expected to reduce the administrative and cost burden of procurement, as the requisite documents will only need to be submitted once for a predetermined period.

eTender Publication Portal

The portal provides a single point of entry to identify business opportunities with government. Utilisation of the eTenders Publication Portal has improved. The portal contributes to reducing duplication, fragmentation and inefficiency in government tender publications. Making the information readily available and ensuring that bids are advertised in a competitive process supports government institutions to secure the best suppliers to provide goods or services.

Vulekamali Portal

In an effort to ensure that its services are accessible to the broader South African society, National Treasury launched an online portal that makes information on the country's budget more accessible to ordinary South Africans. The Vulekamali Portal presents information in a simplified format and shows citizens how public resources are generated and used. The portal enables the public to make their inputs, not only in influencing government policy directive as articulated through the budget, but also having access to the budget process and the information contained in the budget.

The portal is a private-public partnership between Imaliyethu and National Treasury. It is a good platform for young South Africans, especially the academia, to access budgeting information to help them gain critical insights.

Legislation and policies

National Treasury's mandate is guided by a legislative framework that includes the:

· PFMA of 1999, which ensures that public funds are managed by

a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability;

- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003), which applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities;
- Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007), provides for the establishment of the Cooperative Banks Development Agency (CBDA) as a public entity under the executive authority of the Minister of Finance:
- SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989);
- · Division of Revenue Act, 2012 (Act 5 of 2012);
- Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 7 of 2012);
- Rates and Monetary Amounts and Amendment of Revenue Laws Act, 2012 (Act 13 of 2012);
- · Adjustments Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 17 of 2012);
- · Division of Revenue Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 18 of 2012);
- · Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012);
- Tax Administration Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 21 of 2012);
- Taxation Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 22 of 2012);
- Credit Rating Services Act, 2012 (Act 24 of 2012);
- Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA) Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997);
- · Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002);
- Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002);
- Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC) Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001);
- PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004);
- South African Revenue Service (SARS) Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997);
- Tax Administration Act, 2011 (Act 28 of 2011);
- Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997);
- National Gambling Act of 2004;
- · Lotteries Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 32 of 2013); and
- NCA of 2005.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, National Treasury was allocated R876.6 billion. The department's budget over the medium term is R2.8 trillion, of which 59.9% (R1.7 trillion) is for transfers to provincial governments for the provincial equitable share. Cabinet has approved an increase on the department's baseline budget amounting to R74 billion over the medium term. A large portion of these funds will be disbursed to the provincial equitable share for adjustments related to compensation of employees in provincial departments, inflationary adjustments for non-governmental organisations within provincial departments of social development, and for the implementation of the presidential employment initiative in provincial departments of education. Debt-service costs amount to 34.4% (R1 trillion) of the department's budget

over the MTEF period. Distributing the general fuel levy to metropolitan municipalities represents 1.7% (R46.9 billion) of the department's spending over the period ahead.

The department has the following increases to its baseline over the medium term: R3 billion to the South African Revenue Service to build the capacity of human resources and implement ICT projects; R304.5 million to the Development Bank of Southern Africa for the social housing programme; and R51 million to the Financial Intelligence Centre to support its operations by increasing capacity to produce intelligence reports, its capability to analyse big data, and its ability to respond timeously to intelligence product stakeholders.

Entities

Accounting Standards Board (ASB)

The ASB develops uniform standards of generally recognised accounting practice for all spheres of government in terms of Section 216 (1) (a) of the Constitution and the PFMA of 1999. A further function of the board is to promote transparency in and the effective management of revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the entities to which the standards apply.

The board's new three-year work programme will focus on catching up with international developments. The International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board and International Accounting Standards Board have issued several standards of significant importance to public sector financial reporting. These include standards on social benefits and related obligations and leases.

The board plans to issue five documents and complete three research projects on the setting of international best practice standards and the current suite of standards for all spheres of government in 2022/23.

Cooperative Banks Development Agency

The CBDA was established in terms of the Cooperative Banks Act of 2007, as amended, with the SARB as the sole supervisor of cooperative banks. The agency is mandated to provide for the registration and supervision of deposit-taking financial services cooperatives, and savings and credit cooperatives, collectively referred to as cooperative financial institutions. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training of these institutions. Over the medium term, the agency will focus on collaboration and partnerships with stakeholders as a new approach in addressing challenges to assist in the seamless implementation of institutional development, organisational strengthening, the enhancing of operational efficiency through innovative technology interventions and solutions, and expanding the footprint of sustainable cooperative banking Institutions through a holistic support programme.

Development Bank of Southern Africa

The DBSA was reconstituted in terms of the DBSA Act of 1997, as a development finance institution with the primary purpose of promoting economic development and growth. The bank also promotes the

development of human resources and institutional capacity building by mobilising financial and other resources from national and international private and public sector partners for sustainable development projects and programmes in South Africa and other Southern African countries.

Over the medium term, the bank aims to measure the socioeconomic impact of the projects it funds. It will actively support infrastructure development in municipalities to address backlogs and expedite the delivery of essential social services to create sustainable living conditions within communities and improve quality of life.

Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC derives its mandate from the FFC Act, 1997 (Act 99 of 1997). The commission's mandate is to advise relevant legislative authorities on the financial and fiscal requirements for the national, provincial and local spheres of government in terms of Section 220 of the Constitution.

Over the medium term, the commission aims to publish policy research papers and conduct briefings on a broad range of topics, including the restoration of local government public finances and the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic and related recovery strategies.

Financial Intelligence Centre

The FIC was established by the FIC Act of 2001. The Act mandates the centre to identify proceeds of unlawful activities, combat activities related to money laundering, combat the financing of terrorist and related activities, exchange information with law enforcement and other local and international agencies, supervise and enforce compliance with the Act, and facilitate effective supervision and enforcement by supervisory bodies.

Over the medium term, the centre will focus on expanding its analytical ability by stabilising and maintaining its ICT network and systems. Accordingly, spending on goods and services accounts for 35.4% (R371.3 million) of the centre's budget over the period ahead. Compensation of employees is the centre's main cost driver, spending on which increases at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R194.1 million in 2021/22 to R216.1 million in 2024/25.

Financial Sector Conduct Authority

The authority was established in terms of the Financial Sector Regulation Act, 2017 (Act 9 of 2017), as one of the two pillars of the twin peaks model for regulating the financial sector. As such, the authority assumes the role of the market conduct regulator of financial institutions that provide financial products and services, and financial institutions that are licensed in terms of a financial sector law.

The authority also assumed the business operations of the Financial Services Board, which ceased to exist on March 2018. The authority's ongoing objective is to play a meaningful role in promoting growth, employment and poverty reduction through regulating the financial services sector and protecting consumers, and promoting an integrated approach to financial inclusion and employment.

Over the medium term, the authority will focus on ensuring the

integrity and efficiency of formal markets and allied institutions, protecting consumers of financial services, improving access to financial services, and providing financial literacy programmes. The outcomes-based regulatory and supervisory approach, named Treat Customers Fairly, will underpin the regulation and supervision of the conduct of financial services providers.

Government Pensions Administration Agency (GPAA)

The GPAA provides pension administration services to the Government Employees Pension Fund in terms of the Government Employees Pension Law (1996). Post-retirement medical subsidies are administered, as provided for, and regulated by resolutions of the Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council.

Military pensions are administered in terms of the Military Pensions Act, 1976 (Act 84 of 1976); injury-on-duty payments are administered in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act of 1993; and special pensions are administered in terms of the Special Pensions Act, 1996 (Act 69 of 1996).

The agency will continue to focus on improving service delivery by enhancing IT infrastructure, optimising office space and employing new personnel as client service agents. Outdated and obsolete systems and applications will be replaced to enhance staff productivity, speed up the processing of claims and effectively manage pension queries.

Core pension administration functions, including benefit payments and membership maintenance processes, are also expected to be improved.

Government Technical Advisory Centre

The Government Technical Advisory Centre is mandated to assist organs of state in building their capacity for efficient, effective and transparent financial management. Its overarching objectives are to render consulting services to government departments and other organs of state; provide specialised procurement support for high-impact government initiatives; render advice on the feasibility of infrastructure projects; and provide knowledge management for projects undertaken and any ancillary support.

The centre's primary contribution lies in helping to build a capable state so that it can, in turn, implement key government institutional policies and plans guided by the NDP and the centre's associated implementation plan.

Independent Regulatory Board of Auditors (IRBA)

The IRBA was established in terms of the Auditing Profession Act, 2005 (Act 26 of 2005), and became operational in April 2006. The board is mandated to protect the public by regulating audits performed by registered auditors; improve the development and maintenance of internationally comparable ethical and auditing standards for auditors that promote investment and, as a consequence, employment in South Africa; set out measures to advance the implementation of appropriate standards of competence and good ethics in the auditing profession;

and provide for procedures for disciplinary action in instances of improper conduct.

Over the medium term, the board will focus on developing and maintaining auditing and ethical standards that are internationally comparable; providing an appropriate framework for the education and training of adequately qualified auditors; inspecting and reviewing the work of registered auditors; and investigating and taking appropriate action against registered auditors who do not comply with standards and are guilty of improper conduct.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

As a development finance institution, the mandate of the Land Bank is to address agricultural and rural development in South Africa. The bank operates in the primary agriculture and agribusiness sectors and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act of 2002 and the PFMA of 1999.

Accordingly, the bank is expected to play a pivotal role in advancing agriculture and rural development. Liquidity constraints over the medium term require that the bank focuses on maintaining a healthy loan book, securing funding for liabilities and reducing the number of non-performing loans. It will seek to ensure its financial sustainability by increasing the development loan book so that it becomes a predominant portfolio."In addition to R3 billion allocated through the 2020 adjustments budget, the 2021 Budget announced conditional allocations of R5 billion to the Land Bank in 2021/22 and R1 billion in each of the two subsequent years.

Due to delays in concluding negotiations with lenders, the R5 billion transfer to the Land Bank is unlikely to materialise in 2021/22. The 2022/23 fiscal framework makes provision in the contingency reserve for a R5 billion conditional allocation to the Land Bank.

Office of the Ombud for Financial Services Providers (FSPs)

The legislative mandate of the Office of the Ombud for FSPs is stated in the FAIS Act of 2002, in terms of which the organisation is established. The Act gives the Ombud statutory powers to consider and dispose of complaints against financial services providers, primarily intermediaries selling investment products. Over the medium term, the ombud will focus on ensuring that cases are properly assessed and appropriately handled until finalisation; informing stakeholders on the role and functions of the ombud; acquiring appropriate skills to properly discharge the mandate and ensuring that such skills are retained; ensuring that risk is adequately managed; and ensuring that appeals/ reviews of decisions are appropriately dealt with.

Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator

The Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator investigates and determines complaints lodged in terms of the Pension Funds Act, 1956 (Act 24 of 1956). In terms of the Act, the adjudicator is required to ensure a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious resolution of complaints by ensuring that its services are accessible to all,

investigating complaints in a procedurally fair manner, reaching a just and expeditious resolution of complaints in accordance with the law, incorporating innovation and proactive thought and action in its activities, and providing opportunities for individual growth. The office has jurisdiction only over funds that are registered under the act.

Over the medium term, the office aims to reduce turnaround times by resolving 85% of pension fund complaints received within six months by developing staff capability, restructuring its internal processes and continuing to modernise its current ICT systems. The entity will also intensify its engagement with relevant stakeholders, such as regulators and pension funds, and will continue its community outreach programmes to create awareness about its existence and mandate.

Public Investment Corporation

The PIC, established by the PIC Act of 2004, is a registered financial services provider wholly owned by government, with the Minister of Finance as its shareholder representative. The corporation is mandated to invest funds on behalf of its clients, as agreed upon with each client and approved by the Financial Sector Conduct Authority. The corporation's clients are public sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds.

The corporation makes investments through the Isibaya Fund under the guidance of the Developmental Investment Framework of the GEPF. This requires the corporation to find a balance between financial returns and support for long-term economic, social and environmental outcomes. The corporation's developmental investments are focused on economic and social infrastructure; sustainability projects; enterprise development; and SMMEs in the manufacturing, tourism, mining and agro-processing sectors.

Over the medium term, the corporation will focus on financial sustainability and fulfilling its legal and investment mandates. At the same time, the corporation will seek to entrench the culture of accountability expected of an asset management company. As an important component of the corporation's business, the ICT subcommittee of the board will continue to exercise oversight on IT governance in line with best practice.

South African Revenue Service

The SARS is mandated to collect all revenue due to the State and administer trade to support government in meeting its key developmental objectives for growth. This involves facilitating legitimate trade, protecting South Africa's ports of entry and eliminating illegal trade and tax evasion. As its principal contribution to South Africa's economic and social development, the revenue service's ongoing focus is on providing government with more than 90% of the revenue it requires to meet its policy and delivery priorities. It aims to do this by modernising its ICT systems to encourage e-filing, improving taxpayers' experience, monitoring compliance and making tax collection more efficient.

Over the period ahead, the revenue service will focus on improving voluntary compliance by making taxpayers and traders aware of their tax

obligations, making it easier and less costly to meet these obligations, and instituting a credible threat of detection and consequences for those who do not comply. R1 billion per year over the medium term is allocated to the entity to achieve these objectives."

The rebuilding of SARS is evident in improved revenue collection and compliance trends. Over the past year, SARS has recruited an additional 490 staff across various levels and skills areas, and has invested R430 million in refreshing and modernising its ICT infrastructure. The dedicated new unit focused on high-wealth individuals is taking shape.

The multi-year customs modernisation programme is under way, with an initial focus on improving Beitbridge border operations through data-driven risk profiling and number plate recognition. SARS will expand the modernisation programme to other ports of entry over the medium term.

SARS has intensified its work to counter criminal and illicit activity. Over R5 billion has been collected through enforcement activities, yet more can be done in this area. SARS has initiated a review of all businesses that received payments from national and provincial government over the past five years. The ongoing review has revealed a number of cases of non-compliance – and enabled SARS to register businesses that were not previously in the tax base, while boosting revenues.

SARS has implemented the majority of the Nugent Commission recommendations and is now aligning the outstanding recommendations with those of the State Capture Commission. A National Treasury discussion document regarding the broader governance and oversight reforms outlined in the recommendations from both commissions will soon be published for public comment. Concurrently, legislative amendments will be proposed.

South African Special Risks Insurance Association (SASRIA)

The SASRIA was established in 1979. It is mandated to support the insurance industry by providing cover for special risks, such as riots, strikes, political unrest, terrorist attacks, civil commotion, public disorder and labour disturbances. It has paid dividends to government in all but two years since 1999/2000. These dividends, generated from its surpluses, amounted to R12.8 billion. The outbreak of public violence and looting in July 2021 led to a large number of claims totalling R32 billion. SASRIA was unable to meet its payment obligation from its available cash reserves, investments and reinsurance coverage.

To help settle claims and ensure that the insurer has sufficient capital to meet regulatory requirements, government has allocated R22 billion to SASRIA in the current financial year. This includes R3.9 billion through the Second Special Appropriation Act, 2021 (Act 15 of 2021), R11 billion through the 2021 adjustments budget and R7.1 billion allocated through section 16 of the Public Finance Management Act, which is used to respond to unforeseen and unavoidable circumstances. To strengthen its ability to respond to risks without relying on government, SASRIA will increase premium prices, review

reinsurance arrangements and explore ways to increase its client base.

Over the medium term, the association will focus on improving its financial performance and revising its reinsurance structure, where 40% of the insurance business is ceded to reinsurers with catastrophe cover of R10 billion in years one and two.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function and policy objectives. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policies.

A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax Acts administered by the SARS, generally excluding customs and excise, was established by the Tax Administration Act of 2011. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law. It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax acts administered by the SARS.

The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax Acts and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of the SARS and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

Office of the Tax Ombud

The Office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to address service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through the SARS's complaints management channels.

South African tax system

Government aims to raise revenue in an equitable, efficient and sustainable manner to support South Africa's development objectives. Over the past two years, tax policy has focused on broadening the tax base, improving administration and lowering rather than raising tax rates. Government intends to continue with this approach by avoiding tax rate increases to the degree possible, subject to major expenditure decisions.

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source, subject to relief under double taxation agreements. Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income.

The Personal Income Tax, Company Income Tax and VAT in aggregate, remain the largest sources of tax revenue.

Taxes on income and profits

This category comprises taxes on persons and individuals; taxes

on companies – both inclusive of Capital Gains Tax and withholding tax on royalties; interest on overdue Income Tax; Dividends Tax and withholding tax on interest.

Personal Income Tax

This tax is levied on the taxable income of individuals and trusts. It is determined for a specific year of assessment. Taxable capital gains form part of taxable income. The main contributors to Personal Income Tax are employment income from salary and wage earners, pensioners, income generated from sole-proprietor activities and partnerships, and other income such as rental and interest above a certain threshold. The tax rates applicable to Personal Income Tax-related taxable income are progressive, marginal rates ranging from 18% to 45%.

As a means of collecting Personal Income Tax from salary, wage and pension income, a mechanism known as Pay-As-You-Earn (PAYE) is in operation. It enables employers to withhold tax due to the SARS from employees and pay this over to the authority monthly and reconciled biannually.

Company Income Tax

The tax is levied on the taxable income of companies and close corporations and cooperatives. After Personal Income Tax and VAT, Company Income Tax has been the largest contributor to total tax revenue for the past decade.

Although the current headline Company Income Tax rate is 28%, some sectors of the economy have different effective tax rates due to sector-specific tax dispensations and deductions.

Exceptions to the 28% flat rate are the lower, progressive tax rates that apply to qualifying small and micro enterprises, as well as a reduced tax rate that applies to companies operating in designated SEZs.

Dividends Tax

Dividends Tax is a final tax at a rate of 20% on dividends paid by resident and by non-resident companies in respect of shares listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE). Dividends are tax exempt if the beneficial owner is a South African company, retirement fund or other exempt person.

Non-resident beneficial owners of dividends may benefit from reduced tax rates in limited circumstances. The tax is to be withheld by companies paying the taxable dividends or by regulated intermediaries in the case of dividends on listed shares.

The tax on dividends in kind (other than in cash) is payable and is borne by the company that declares and pays the dividend.

Taxes on payroll and workforce

Taxes on payroll and workforce include the Skills Development Levy and the UIF contributions. The Skills Development Levy is a compulsory levy intended to fund training costs incurred by employers.

Skills Development Levy

Affected employers contribute to a skills development fund that is used for employee training and skills development. This levy is payable by employers at a rate of 1% of the total remuneration paid to employees. Employers paying annual remuneration of less than R500 000 are exempt from the payment of this levy.

Taxes on property

Taxes on property comprise Donations Tax, Estate Duty, Securities Transfer Tax and Transfer Duty.

Donations Tax

Donations Tax is levied at a rate of either 20% or 25% on the value of the donation, depending on the aggregate value of the property being disposed of in a specific tax year. An annual exemption of R100 000 is available to natural persons.

Estate Duty

Estate Duty is levied at a rate of 20% and at 25% on the dutiable amount of the deceased estate that exceeds R30 million. Specific deductions and abatements are allowed from the total value of the estate.

Securities Transfer Tax

The tax is levied at a rate of 0.25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or members' interests in close corporations.

Transfer Duty

The Transfer Duty is levied on the acquisition of property at progressive rates from 0% to 13% for all persons including companies, close corporations and trusts.

The marginal rate of 13% applies to the portion of the value of property exceeding R11 million from 1 March 2020.

Domestic taxes on goods and services

Domestic taxes on goods and services comprise VAT, specific excise duties, ad valorem excise duties, the Fuel Levy, the Road Accident Fund (RAF) Levy, environmental levies and the Health Promotion Levy. VAT is the largest source of revenue in this category.

Value-Added Tax

VAT is levied at a rate of 15% on goods and services with some exemptions and zero-ratings. It is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive. A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT, if the income (taxable supply) earned is more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount.

A person can also register voluntarily for VAT, if the income earned from supplying goods or services for 12 months exceeded R50 000.

Fuel taxes

The General Fuel Levy is imposed on petrol and diesel (including biodiesel) manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The Fuel Levy is not earmarked, but it implicitly increases the cost of road transport to encourage more efficient and sustainable road use.

The RAF Levy is imposed on petrol and diesel manufactured in or imported into South Africa. The RAF Levy funds the RAF's motor vehicle accident insurance scheme.

For the first time, fuel prices in South Africa exceeded R20/I for inland unleaded petrol in December 2021 due to higher crude oil prices and exchange rate depreciation. To support consumers and the economic recovery, no increases will be made to the general fuel levy on petrol and diesel for 2022/23, providing tax relief of R3.5 billion. There will also be no increase in the RAF levy.

In combination, these changes will ensure that fuel taxes as a percentage of the price of fuel are below 40%. The last time that the fuel price was not increased due to a change in either the general fuel levy or the RAF levy was in 1990. In 2021/22, taxes accounted for on average 34% of the price of petrol and 38% of the price of diesel – a ratio that is below that of India and Mexico, and far lower than the 60% common in Europe.

Environmental levies

Government has responded to the serious global challenge of environmental pollution and climate change by introducing several environmental taxes that are intended to modify behaviour of the country's citizens for sustainable development of the economy.

International Air Passenger Departure Tax

Passengers departing on flights to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Eswatini (known as the BLNS countries) pay a departure tax of R100 per passenger, while passengers on other international flights pay R190.

Plastic Bag Levy

The Plastic Bag Levy was introduced to reduce litter and encourage plastic bag reuse. To further discourage consumers from buying plastic bags, and to support reuse and recycling, it was proposed that the plastic bag levy be increased from 25c/bag to 28c/bag, in line with inflation, from 1 April 2022.

Government aims to reduce single-use plastics. An upstream plastic tax and a tax on single-use plastics will be investigated.

Electricity Generation Levy

The levy was introduced to encourage sustainable electricity generation and use. The levy is applied to electricity generated from non-renewable sources and costs 3.5 cents per kilowatt hour.

Incandescent Bulb Levy

The levy was introduced to promote energy efficiency by discouraging the use of incandescent light bulbs. The incandescent light bulb levy was increased from R10 to R15 per light bulb from 1 April 2022.

Carbon dioxide (CO2) Motor Vehicle Emissions Levy

The CO2 Motor Vehicle Emissions Levy on passenger and double-cab vehicles was introduced to encourage the manufacture and purchase of more energy efficient motor vehicles..

Government proposed an increase on the vehicle emissions tax rate on passenger cars from R120 to R132/gCO2/km and increase the tax on double cabs from R160 to R176/gCO2/km from 1 April 2022.

The carbon tax rate increased from R134 to R144 per tonne of carbon dioxide equivalent, effective from 1 January 2022. The carbon fuel levy for 2022 increased by 1c to 9c/l for petrol and 10c/l for diesel from 6 April 2022, as required by legislation. It was proposed that the carbon tax cost recovery quantum for the liquid fuels refinery sector increase from 0.56c/l to 0.63c/l from 1 January 2022.

Tyre Lev

The levy on new pneumatic tyres was introduced to encourage efficient tyre use. Although the Tyre Levy is not earmarked, it indirectly supports the responsible recycling of obsolete tyres. The current rate is R2.30/kilogram.

Health Promotion Levy

The levy applies to specific sugary drinks and concentrates used in the manufacture of sugary drinks to combat obesity and promote healthier consumer beverage choices.

The health promotion levy for beverages with more than 4 g of sugar content per 100 ml was increased from 2.21c/g to 2.31c/g from 1 April 2022. Consultations will also be initiated to consider lowering the 4g threshold and extending the levy to fruit juices.

Diamond Levv

A diamond export levy on unpolished diamonds exported from South Africa was introduced, effective from November 2008 at a rate of 5% of the value of such diamonds.

Trade agreements

The SARS administers a number of trade agreements or protocols or other parts or provisions thereof, and other international instruments, in terms of the Customs and Excise Act of 1964, which are enacted into law when published by notice in the Government Gazette. The full texts of these types of agreements contain the following:

- Treaty of the SADC and protocols concluded under the provisions of Article 22 of the Treaty.
- Agreement between South Africa and the USA regarding mutual assistance between their customs administrations.
- Southern African Customs Agreement between the governments

of the Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini.

- Memorandum of Understanding between South Africa and China on promoting Bilateral Trade and Economic Cooperation.
- Free Trade Agreement between the European Free Trade Association states and the SACU states.
- Common Market of the South comprising of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay and the SACU comprising of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini which was implemented on 1 April 2016.
- Economic Partnership Agreement between the SADC Economic Partnership Agreement states, of the one part, and the EU and its member states of the other part, which was implemented on 10 October 2016.

Southern African Customs Union

The SACU Secretariat is located in Windhoek, Namibia. The union was established in 1910, making it the world's oldest customs union. Negotiations to reform the 1969 agreement started in 1994, and a new agreement was signed in 2002. The member states form a single customs territory in which tariffs and other barriers are eliminated on substantially all the trade between the member states for products originating in these countries; and there is a common external tariff that applies to non-members of the SACU.

Excise duties

Excise duties are levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. Specific excise duties are levied on tobacco and liquor products. Ad valorem excise duties are levied on products such as motor vehicles, cellular telephones, electronics and cosmetics.

The targeted excise tax burdens for wine, beer and spirits are 11%, 23% and 36% of the weighted average retail price, respectively. Excise duties have increased more than inflation in recent years, resulting in a higher tax incidence. Government proposes to increase excise duties on alcohol by between 4.5 and 6.5% for 2022/23.

The targeted excise tax burden as a percentage of the retail selling price of the most popular brand within each tobacco product category is currently 40%. The consumption of cigars has moved towards more expensive brands, requiring a higher-than-inflation increase to maintain the targeted tax burden. Government proposes to increase the excise duty rate by between 5.5 and 6.5%. Review papers on the alcohol and to accord excise duties policy framework will be released shortly for comment.

Beer powders

The current excise duty regime applies a flat excise rate for traditional African beer powder of 34.7c/kg. There are similar products in the market. In the interest of equity, these products will be included in the tax net with an excise equivalent to the powder rate from 1 October 2022.

Vaping

Following public consultation, government proposes to apply a flat excise duty rate of at least R2.90/ml to both nicotine and non-nicotine solutions. The proposal will be included in the 2022 Taxation Laws Amendment Bill for further consultation before being introduced from 1 January 2023.

Customs duties

Customs duties are imposed by the Customs and Excise Act of 1964. Ordinary Customs Duty is a tax levied on imported goods and is usually calculated on the value of goods imported and collected by the customs unit within the SARS. Customs Duty rates in Part 1 of Schedule 1 and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods — anti-dumping, countervailing and safeguard duty are set out in Schedule 2 of the schedules to the Act and are determined through trade policy in terms of the International Trade Administration Act of 2002 administered by the International Trade Administration Commission.

The Customs Control Act of 2014 and the Customs Duty Act of 2014 were promulgated in July 2014 to provide a platform for the modernisation of customs administration that achieves a balance between effective customs control, the secure movement of goods and people into and from South Africa and the facilitation of trade and tourism.

In addition, VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption.

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage which are collected by municipalities.

Compliance levels

Tax Register

The SARS continues to broaden the tax base and expand its taxpayer and trader register. Contributing positively to the ease of registration are bulk registrations at places of employment and an online facility to register staff when submitting their monthly PAYE returns. The SARS registration policy stipulates that everyone formally employed, regardless of their tax liability, must be registered for Personal Income Tax. If employees are not registered, it is the duty of the employer to register them with the SARS.

Tax compliance

Tax compliance is mirrored in the tax collected from the various types of tax. It is the duty of every taxpayer to ensure that they are registered for the necessary taxes, that all tax returns are submitted by the relevant due dates and that all taxes are paid as and when is required.

Payment channels

The majority of taxpayers are now using electronic payment platforms which significantly improve turnaround times. Cash collections at

branches have been reduced because of the risks associated with them. From 1 May 2020, cheque payments in South Africa may not be in excess of R50 000. Payment methods other than branch payments are:

- eFiling: this requires a taxpayer to register as an eFiling client in order to make electronic payments using this channel; and
- payments at banks: taxpayers can make either an internet banking transfer or an over-the-counter deposit.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme

A permanent Voluntary Disclosure Programme was introduced in terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, in October 2012. The programme is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs.

International tax treaties

South Africa has a number of double taxation agreements and tax information exchange agreements. In 2014, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development, working with the Group of Twenty countries and other stakeholders, developed the Standard for Automatic Exchange of Financial Account Information – the Common Reporting Standard (CRS).

The CRS requires the reporting to tax authorities by certain financial institutions of information in relation to financial accounts they hold for non-resident taxpayers. This information is then automatically exchanged between tax authorities each year in order to tackle crossborder tax evasion. South Africa is an early adopter of the CRS. The USA Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act Intergovernmental Agreement is also in force between the governments of the USA and South Africa to exchange information automatically under the provisions of the double taxation agreements between the two countries.

Role players

Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA)

The AGSA strengthens South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AGSA is one of the Chapter 9 institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AGSA is, therefore, respected and strengthened. As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AGSA is responsible for auditing national and provincial departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AGSA.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as performance audits, information system audits and audit research and development. The AGSA also has an international auditing complement.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank

The primary purpose of the SARB is to achieve and maintain price stability in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth in South Africa. Together with other institutions, it also plays a pivotal role in ensuring financial stability.

The SARB is the central bank of South Africa. It was established in 1921, in terms of a special Act of Parliament and the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), which was the direct result of abnormal monetary and financial conditions that had arisen during and immediately after World War I.

The SARB is governed by the SARB Act of 1989, as amended. In terms of the Constitution, it has been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties.

Since its establishment, the SARB has always had private shareholders who have limited rights. It has more than 700 shareholders. Its shares are traded on the over-the-counter share-trading facility managed by the SARB. Its operations are not motivated by a drive to return profits, but to serve the best interests of all South Africans.

The SARB's head office is in Pretoria and it has cash centres in Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg. The SARB must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities to National Treasury and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and other select committees on finance, from time to time.

The SARB has a unique position in the economy, as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the SARB have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy has remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The SARB publishes monetary policy reviews, and regular regional monetary-policy forums are held to provide a platform for discussions on monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

SARB celebrates centenary

The year 2021 marked 100 years of the SARB's existence. The bank celebrated 100 years of existence on 30 June 2021. When the bank was established, the world had just emerged from World War I, leading to unusual financial and monetary conditions. Its primary objective was to restore and maintain order in the issue and circulation of domestic currency, and restore the gold standard to the pre-World War I rate of exchange. The first batch of banknotes ordered from England was issued to the public on 19 April 1922.

The monetary policy framework adopted at the SARB's founding was the gold standard, linking banknotes to gold. However, the Great Depression and its link to weaknesses in the gold standard ushered in a period of monetary policy reform. A new policy direction linked the value of the South African pound to the British pound sterling, and the further decision to join the Bretton Woods agreement in 1946 as a leading member of the International Monetary System.

In the 1950s, the Decimal Coinage Commission recommended that South Africa formally introduce a decimal system, which eventually led to the introduction of the rand in 1961. The early 1960s, amid the introduction of a new currency, also saw signs of inflation, resulting in anti-inflationary measures that, by 1967, slowed the rate of price increases. These troubles ushered in a period of economic policy reform that eventually led to the current modern approaches to monetary and fiscal policy.

Leading up to the 1980s, South Africa was in deep political and economic turmoil. At the height of the anti-apartheid struggle, inflation hit a high of 18.4% in 1986, and annual growth slowed to 1.6% for the decade. Significant capital outflows resulting from the debt default and economic sanctions saw another policy reform: exchange controls. The SARB adopted a broadly defined money supply growth target framework. Inflation gradually slowed towards the end of the decade, averaging 12.9% in 1989. The SARB Act, 1994 (Act 29 of 1944) was replaced by the SARB Act of 1989, which contained the revised primary objective wording of "monetary stability and balanced growth".

The 1990s ushered in a renewed spirit among South Africans with the advent of democracy. Continuity amidst the change was crucial for the smooth transition to democracy and gaining international investor confidence. This led to then President Nelson Mandela asking Dr Chris Stals to continue serving as Governor. A critical pillar to this was ensuring that the SARB as an institution was stable, by retaining institutional memory and the requisite skills, while at the same time preparing to transform the organisation.

The SARB debuted its 'Big Five' banknote series, and introduced a R5 coin, commemorating the inauguration of the country's first democratically elected President Mandela. As part of its tradition of reflecting the country's history, the bank released a newly designed R5 coin commemorating its centenary. The adoption of the Constitution in 1996 saw the SARB bestowed greater responsibility in the rebuilding of the economy. Central bank independence emerged as an effective way of ensuring that monetary policy focused on the key objective of keeping prices stable. To ensure that the SARB could pursue that objective independently and effectively, the late 1990s was marked by further enquiry into monetary policy frameworks.

The early 2000s saw the country's biggest policy shift, the adoption of the Inflation-Targeting Framework. At the time, South Africa was the 13th country to introduce this policy framework. Then Reserve Bank Governor Tito Mboweni, was tasked with guiding the bank through this uncharted territory. The inflation target, set by the Minister of Finance in consultation with the SARB, is between 3% and 6%. The adoption of inflation targeting saw a radical change in the way in which the SARB communicated with the public, focusing on transparency through communication, and ensuring that independence and accountability worked hand-in-hand.

The flexibility of the Inflation-Targeting Framework and its anchoring of public expectations about inflation assisted the country to weather the global financial crisis in 2008 and 2009. With the critical role of

financial institutions in that crisis underscored, then Governor Gill Marcus helped to expand the SARB's mandate to explicitly include financial stability. In doing so, a financial stability committee was formed and resources expanded for its work. Around 2010, Cabinet approved the move towards the Twin Peaks Model. The Financial Sector Regulation Act of 2017 paved the way for the formation of the Prudential Authority. In April 2018, the Prudential Authority was officially launched, amalgamating the SARB's Bank Supervision Department, the Insurance Division of the Financial Services Board and the Supervisory Team of the Co-operative Banks Development Agency.

The SARB was born at a time when the world was exiting the devastating impact of the 1918 Spanish flu pandemic. As the bank approached its centenary, the world began grappling with the COVID-19 pandemic. The rise of the COVID-19 pandemic in South Africa mandated forceful containment measures to abate the human cost associated with the virus. While these measures minimised the impact on human lives, they came at a great cost to the economy.

In anticipation of the economic shock that would ensue, the SARB responded with a broad array of actions to limit the economic damage. The SARB's policy responses encompassed monetary policy instruments, interventions in financial market operations, regulatory tools as well as collaborations with other entities to provide relief to the economy and enable the financial sector to help customers in need.

In addition, through its participation in global forums, the SARB contributed to the strengthening of the global financial safety net. South Africa entered the COVID-19 crisis with stable and low inflation rates and moderate inflation expectations, giving the SARB significant policy space to provide support to households and firms, primarily through the reduction in the repurchase (repo) rate. The repo rate was cut by a cumulative 275 basis points between March and July 2020. At the current rate of 3.5% (from 6.5% on 1 January 2020), the repo rate is at an all-time low, while the prime rate, at 7.0%, is at a 54-year low.

Functions

The primary function of the SARB is to protect the value of South Africa's currency. In discharging this role, it takes responsibility for, amongst others:

- ensuring that the South African money, banking and financial system as a whole is sound, meets the requirements of the community and keeps abreast of international developments;
- assisting the South African Government, as well as other members
 of the economic community of southern Africa, with data relevant
 to the formulation and implementation of macroeconomic policy;
 and
- informing the South African community and all stakeholders abroad about monetary policy and the South African economic situation.

System of accommodation

The SARB's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its monetary policy. Through its refinancing system, the

SARB provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements. Specifically, banks are required to hold balances at the SARB worth 2.5% of their liabilities, which ensures they have adequate liquidity to settle interbank transactions.

The main instrument for providing liquidity is repo transactions, whereby the SARB lends against high-quality collateral at an interest rate – the repo rate – which is set by the Monetary Policy Committee. The repo rate is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process, affecting short-term rates throughout the financial system and transmitting from there to the economy at large.

The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and automated standing facilities to meet the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs. During the COVID-19 pandemic, the SARB implemented additional liquidity providing measures, both overnight and term repurchase operations, to ensure that there was sufficient flow of liquidity through the system. In addition, the SARB implemented a bond purchase programme, to manage the dysfunction in the domestic government bond market and to increase the value of its Monetary Policy Portfolio, which is used in long-term reverse repos.

To keep the refinancing system effective, the SARB stays abreast of market and other structural developments. The refinancing system, or Monetary Policy Implementation Framework, together with the toolkits used to manage money market liquidity, is currently under review, with the objective of enhancing its effectiveness and efficiency. A consultation paper was published in November 2021, with comments expected by end February 2022. The new Monetary Policy Implementation Framework (MPIF) was expected to be implemented during the course of 2022.

Creating a liquidity requirement

The SARB creates a liquidity requirement – also known as a money market shortage – to ensure that banks seek financing at the SARB, and thereby pay the repo rate. To effect this shortage, the SARB uses a variety of tools to drain surplus liquidity. It can remove liquidity from the market by issuing debentures, or by engaging in reverse repos or FX swaps. It can also shift government's deposits from the market to the SARB.

Since the onset of the COVID pandemic, the shortage has been kept at somewhat smaller levels than normal, between R30-35 billion, as opposed to R56 billion pre-pandemic. Under the proposed MPIF, it is envisaged that the SARB will run a money market surplus position with banks earning the policy rate on excess reserves (up to certain limits).

Promoting the efficient functioning of domestic financial markets

To promote price discovery in the domestic money market, the SARB calculates the South African Benchmark Overnight Rate, which includes the overnight foreign exchange rate. The SARB also conducts surveillance on the calculation of the Johannesburg Interbank Average Rate (Jibar), which is widely used as reference rate.

Following the review of the rate setting of the Jibar and the subsequent code of conduct, additional initiatives involve the improvement and

broadening of existing money-market benchmark and reference rates according to global guidelines.

During 2021, the SARB implemented various measures to strengthen the governance framework and enhance the credibility of Jibar. The Jibar Code of Conduct and Operating Rules were revised to include an increase in the pricing commitment of contributing banks and new provisions that apply under abnormal market conditions. Strate (Pty) Ltd was appointed as the primary publishing agent for Jibar-related post-trade disclosures, which are published daily on the SARB and Strate's websites. These efforts should ensure that Jibar remains robust and reliable until such a time when the rate ceases to exist.

The SARB, together with market participants, designed alternative interest rate benchmarks based on international best practice to broaden the set of available benchmarks and provide an alternative risk-free rate that will replace Jibar. Using historical bona fide transactions data, the benchmarks were tested and published in a feedback report. One of the benchmarks, namely ZARONIA, has been designated has the preferred successor rate for Jibar. However, there is a significant amount of work that needs to be done before a transition to the successor rate can be initiated.

The SARB also engages with other stakeholders to promote the efficient functioning of markets.

Special liquidity assistance and stability in the financial sector

In terms of its 'lender-of-last-resort', the SARB may, in certain circumstances, provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems, for example to provide liquidity against a broader range of collateral as was the case in 2007. The type and conditions of emergency assistance will vary according to specific conditions and will be provided in terms of the SARB's Emergency Liquidity Assistance Policy.

Also, as part of the broader mandate of the SARB and the upcoming Financial Sector Regulations Bill, resolution planning, crisis preparedness and monitoring systemic risks in the financial sector are priority, all aimed at protecting and enhancing financial stability, as well as to deepen South Africa's resilience to external shocks. In view of the interrelationship between price and financial system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.

Service to government

The SARB manages the country's official gold and foreign exchange reserves. In addition, the SARB provides portfolio management, debt issuance, and custody and settlement services to government and other clients/counterparties, while also managing the inherent market and operational risks associated with these services.

Gold and foreign-exchange reserves

The bank is the custodian of the country's official gold and foreignexchange reserves. Subsequent to the conversion of the negative net

open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, gross foreign exchange reserves grew to approximately US\$57 billion in January 2022.

The accumulation and management of reserves is guided by the risk tolerance of the bank through the Strategic Asset Allocation, which seeks to ensure capital preservation, liquidity and return.

Banker and adviser to government as well as funding agent

As the funding agent for government, the main services provided are administering the auctions of government bonds and Treasury bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the SARB and National Treasury, and managing the flow of funds between the exchequer account and tax and loan accounts. The SARB also acts as banker to government and as such, manages the Exchequer and Paymaster General Accounts in the books of the SARB.

Administration of exchange control

The SARB is responsible, on behalf of the Minister of Finance, for the day-to-day administration of exchange controls in South Africa.

Provision of economic and statistical services

The bank collects data and compiles economic statistics, which are then interpreted and published in its Quarterly Bulletin and other statistical releases on the SARB's website to inform the public and policy formulation.

Prudential Authority (PA)

The passing of the Financial Sector Regulation (FSR) Act, 2017 (Act 9 of 2017) marked an important milestone on the journey towards a safer and fairer financial system that is able to serve all citizens.

The Act gave effect to three important changes to the regulation of the financial sector by:

- giving the SARB an explicit mandate to maintain and enhance financial stability.
- creating a prudential regulator, the PA. The authority is responsible for regulating banks, insurers, cooperative financial institutions, financial conglomerates and certain market infrastructures.
- establishinga market conduct regulator, which is located outside of the SABB

The PA is a juristic person operating within the administration of the SARB and consists of four sections: Financial Conglomerate Supervision; Banking, Insurance and Financial Market Infrastructure Supervision; Risk Support; and Policy, Statistics and Industry Support.

The national payment system

The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk, with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.

Of utmost importance to payments, is the safety, efficiency, integrity and stability of the system. Following the initial vision for the national

payment system, a high-value real-time gross settlement system was implemented in 998. This system lies at the heart of the payments ecosystem and ensures that all economic transactions in the economy reach finality through settlement in central bank money. Further the system is important in managing the liquidity positions of banks, and in practically enabling monetary policy transmission. Each day, more than R350 billion is settled safely in the core system. In value terms, the significance of the system is gauged through its turning of value equivalent to the country's GDP, every 12 to 15 days.

The bank is in the process of modernising the system, to align it with the emerging needs and technologies, including, over time, the likely use of other forms of settlement assets, including tokenization of the rand. Other efforts that are in place in relation to tokenization include Project Khokha 2, which will look at understanding the regulatory and policy implications of tokenized debentures within a decentralised financial market architecture. The SARB is also catalysing the development and implementation of a faster retail payment system, to enhance an efficient and inclusive national payment system.

It is further recognised that the payment services landscape continues to be shaped by emerging exponential technologies, such as bigtech, fintech, artificial intelligence, big data analytics, cloud computing, distributed ledgers, mobile technologies, and new form factors, such as QR codes. These enable new technology-savvy firms to enter the payment services domain.

Propelled by COVID-19 lockdown conditions and technological advancements, a gradual shifts to more online digital payment services was observed, necessitating a focused and comprehensive strategy on digital payments, and a robust cyber resilience framework to promote the overall safety of the national payment system.

Further, the National Payment System Act 78 of 1998 will be amended to support access, innovation, competition and financial inclusion by introducing activity-based licensing and regulation thus allowing non-banks to offer payment services without the need to partner with a bank. Information gathered through a Fintech landscaping survey, indicate that more than 220 Fintech firms were identified in South Africa, spanning across eight categories of financial services, including digital savings and deposits, insurtech, alternative lending, capital raising and, most significantly, digital payments. This has seen new innovations that leverage crypto assets, crowdfunding, robo-advice for investments, and open banking efforts by the market using granular financial data enter the system.

Crypto assets activities remain under the spotlight, with the SARB monitoring the adoption and use of these assets for payment purposes, assessing the potential impact on the existing national payment system and determining the required/appropriate regulatory intervention. Additionally, efforts are underway to develop solutions to regularise the practice of screen scraping, paving the way for the enablement and regulation of open banking in our jurisdiction.

As part of the broader Southern African Development Community (SADC) payments integration initiative, the SARB is facilitating the

development of a SADC low-value cross-border payment solution known as the Transactions Cleared on Immediate Basis (TCIB). This solution was developed and launched in a controlled live environment on 30 July 2021.

The TCIB service is built on ISO 20022 messaging standard, and it is designed to be an instant payment offering within SADC available on a 24-hour seven-days a week basis throughout the year. Both banks and non-banks are allowed to offer services in the TCIB payment scheme if they meet the set TCIB access criteria.

The SADC currencies or any approved currencies are used to execute the TCIB payment instructions. In this system, transactions may be initiated through multiple channels such as the mobile phones or approved agents which are also used for cash-in and cash-out services.

The TCIB payment instructions are cleared at the SADC Regional Clearing and Settlement System Operator and settled daily through the SADC-RTGS system or via correspondent banking arrangements where the settlement currency is not yet onboarded on the SADC-RTGS system. In essence, TCIB is an open-loop retail payment system within the SADC region where interoperability between a bank and a non-bank has been enabled.

With the anticipated uptake of the system, the TCIB would transcend the cross-border payments challenges and provide an effective low cost, high speed, wide access, and transparent solution to the SADC retail cross border payments.

Banker to other banks

The bank acts as the custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily, with the bank.

Banknotes and coins

The SARB has the sole authority to produce, issue and destroy South African currency, and is entrusted to ensure the availability and integrity of the South African rand. The Currency Management Department (CMD), is responsible for managing and overseeing the cash supply chain, from planning, distribution and issuance to destruction of cash; as well as the integrity of our currency, ensuring it is used with confidence and pride by regularly improving security features and mitigating counterfeiting. This mandate is embedded within sections 10 and 14 of the SARB Act 90 of 1989.

The CMD operates in conjunction with two subsidiaries of the SARB; the South African Mint Company (RF) Proprietary Limited, mints coins on behalf of the SARB while the South African Bank Note Company (RF) Proprietary Limited, prints banknotes on behalf of the SARB. The legal tender status of South African banknotes and coins is derived from section 17 of the SARB Act 90 of 1989.

The SARB also ensures the availability and adequacy of banknotes and coins throughout the country, in line with section 10(1)(a)(i)-(v) of the SARB Act 90 of 1989. It is responsible for the bulk issuance and

distribution of banknotes and coins, and for meeting public demand for cash. Banknotes are distributed from the SARB's three cash centres into the cash supply chain, while coin distribution has been outsourced to SBV Services. The CMD is responsible for ensuring an adequate supply of banknotes to meet seasonal demand and for the quality of banknotes in circulation.

Monetary policy

The SARB is responsible for monetary policy in South Africa. Its constitutional mandate in this regard is to protect the value of the currency in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth.

To give effect to this mandate, the SARB uses a flexible inflation targeting framework, which aims to maintain consumer price inflation between 3% and 6%. The SARB has expressed its preference for inflation expectations to converge towards the mid-point of the target range, so as to minimise the risk of prolonged deviations from target in the event of unexpected price shocks.

Following a sharp decline in South Africa's headline consumer price index (CPI) during 2020, general prices in the economy started moving higher in 2021. Headline inflation breached the mid-point of the 3-6% target range in May 2021 and remained elevated in early-2022, due to sharply higher oil prices and elevated food inflation. Core inflation, on the other hand, remained well-contained, averaging 3.2% in 2021, down from 3.3% in 2020, due to very low services inflation and low core goods inflation. Core inflation, however, also started showing upward momentum at the start of 2022, which is consistent with the recovery in economic activity as well as constraints on global supply chains.

Headline inflation is projected to remain above target in 2022, and to gradually return to the target over the medium term. Keeping the expectations for inflation anchored closer to the target midpoint is a key objective of monetary policy. Better anchored expectations of future inflation could support lower interest rates and can be realised by achieving a prudent public debt level, increasing the supply of energy, moderating administered price inflation, and keeping wage growth in line with productivity gains. Such steps will enhance the effectiveness of monetary policy and its transmission to the broader economy.

Recent Monetary Policy Committee forecasts show headline CPI averaging 5.8% in 2022 and returning close to the target in 2023. Although the target breach is attributed to food and petrol prices, inflationary pressures have broadened, in line with the normalisation of economic activity from the pandemic-induced lows.

Meanwhile, core inflation is forecast to increase to 4.2% in 2022 and to remain elevated at 5.0% in 2023, before easing somewhat to 4.7% in 2024. Core goods and services price inflation is forecast to remain elevated throughout the horizon. The risks to the inflation outlook are skewed to the upside. Global producer price and food price inflation have also continued to surprise higher in recent months and could do so again, particularly if the war in the Ukraine persists into the crop growing season.

The distribution of risks to this forecast, as captured in the inflation fan charts, is skewed to the upside. It nonetheless indicates a fairly high probability that inflation will be within the target range throughout the forecast period (2022-2024), with 63% of the probability distribution between 3% and 6%. The chance of inflation being outside the target is smaller, with 35% of the distribution above the upper bound and 2% below it, over the full forecast period. The chance of a target overshoot is substantially higher in 2022, however, with almost half of the distribution above the upper bound of the target range.

Since early 2021, however, inflation expectations have risen again, after declining steadily in recent years. Average surveyed expectations of future inflation have increased to 5.1% for 2022, while current-year market-based surveyed expectations for inflation have also increased to 5.5%. Long-term inflation expectations derived from the break-even rates in the bond market have also increased. This raises the issue of how firmly inflation expectations are anchored and to what extent it is forward-looking as opposed to being backward-looking and thus data-reactive, which may call for stricter monetary policy.

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2021, 31 banking institutions were registered and supervised by the PA of the SARB: 18 banks, and 13 local branches of international banks. South Africa's banking sector is dominated by the five largest banks, which collectively held 89.9% of total banking sector assets as at 31 December 2021. Local branches of international banks contributed 5.8% as at 31 December 2021. The remaining banks operating in South Africa represented 4.3%.

In addition, as at the end of December 2021, four mutual banks and five cooperative banks were registered and supervised by the PA. At that date, there were also 29 authorised representative offices of international banks in South Africa.

Furthermore, the PA has taken over the regulatory oversight of cooperative financial institutions (CFIs) from the CBDA and is currently supervising 24 CFIs.

Banking entities registered in South Africa		
2021		
Banks1	18	
Local branches of foreign banks	13	
Mutual banks	4	
Cooperative banks	5	
Representative offices	29	

1 Includes active banks and banks exempted by the

Registrar of Banks (with effect from 1 July 1996) in terms of the Supervision of Financial Institutions Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 32 of 1996) and Section 1(cc) of the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990).

The insurance industry

As at the end of December 2021, the PA was responsible for the supervision of 148 institutions:

- · 64 life insurers.
- 71 non-life insurers,
- · 8 professional reinsurers and
- · 5 micro insurers.

South Africa's life insurance sector is dominated by the five largest insurers, which collectively held 72% of the total assets while non-life insurance sector is dominated by eight large insurers, which held 55% of gross premiums as at September 2021. All eight professional reinsurers are foreign owned and constitute less than 2% of the total insurance industry assets. During 2021, five micro insurers were registered. In addition, the PA was also regulating the RAF and the South African branch of Lloyd's.

Financial market infrastructures

The PA is also responsible for the prudential supervision of market infrastructures which includes exchanges, central securities depositories, clearings houses, central counterparties and trade repositories. In 2021, licensed PA-regulated market infrastructures included five exchanges, two central securities depositories and two clearing houses.

The Financial Sector Conduct Authority and the Prudential Authority are working together with the National Treasury of South Africa to review the existing Financial Markets Act 19 of 2012. The Financial Markets Act 19 of 2012 is one of the primary legislations governing licensed financial market infrastructures in South Africa (excluding payment systems).

Exchanges	 The Johannesburg Securities Exchange Limited (JSE) ZAR- X (Pty) Ltd Cape Town Stock Exchange (Pty) Limited (CTSE) 4AX previously 4 Africa Exchange (Pty) Limited A2X (Pty) Limited Equities Express Stock Exchange (Pty) Limited.
Central Securities Depositories	Strate (Pty) Limited Granite CSD (Pty) Limited
Associated Clearing Houses	JSE Clear (Pty) Limited – In 2021, JSE Clear (Pty) Limited applied for an independent clearing house licence. This is currently under review by the Authorities. Strate (Pty) Limited

Exchange rates

The South African rand depreciated, on balance, by 4.0% against the US dollar during 2020 and by 8.0% during 2021. While the exchange rate of the rand appreciated by 2.2% in the first half of 2021 as a result of rising international commodity prices, positive investor sentiment towards emerging market currencies and an initial dovish monetary policy stance in the US, the rand exchange rate depreciated by 10.0% in the second half amid concerns over higher global inflation, domestic civil unrest, a more hawkish US monetary policy stance, a decline in international commodity prices, concerns regarding a slowdown in Chinese economic growth and the continuation of scheduled electricity outages.

On a trade-weighted basis, the rand decreased, on balance, by 7.9% in 2020 and by 5.1% in 2021. Despite continued trade surpluses supporting the exchange rate of the rand during 2021, concerns regarding developments in Chinese financial markets increased global risk aversion and weighed on emerging market currencies during the second half of 2021.

The detection of a new COVID-19 variant in South Africa towards the end of 2021, negatively affected investor sentiment towards the rand exchange rate and outweighed the impact of the 25-basis point increase in the repurchase (repo) rate and the positively received 2021 MTBPS.

Foreign debt

South Africa's total external debt decreased from US\$165.0 billion at the end of September 2021 to US\$160.9 billion at the end of December. Foreign currency-denominated external debt increased from US\$81.3 billion at the end of September 2021 to US\$82.0 billion at the end of December, while rand-denominated external debt, in US dollars. decreased from US\$83.8 billion to US\$78.9 billion over the same period. The increase in foreign currency denominated external debt was due to an increase in long-term loans of the private non-banking sector as well as government loan finance obtained from the New Development Bank. The decrease in rand-denominated external debt could mainly be attributed to a decrease in short-term deposits of the banking sector and the repayment of short-term loans by the private non-banking sector. South Africa's total external debt, in rand terms, increased from R2 498 billion at the end of September 2021 to R2 557 billion at the end of December as the exchange value of the rand depreciated against the US dollar.

Exchange controls

Exchange control regulations are administered by the SARB, on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister has delegated to the Financial Surveillance Department of the SARB the responsibility of appointing certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as certain entities to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by

the department. Authorised dealers are not agents for the Financial Surveillance Department, but act on behalf of their customers.

As at the end of February 2022, a total of 27 banks were authorised to act, for the purposes of the regulations, as authorised dealers; three banks as restricted authorised dealers in respect of permissible credit card transactions and 23 entities as authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority. In terms of exchange control policy, there are no limitations as to how much money may be brought into South Africa, but there are certain limitations on the amount of money that may be transferred out of South Africa.

For all non-South Africans, there is no limitation on transferring money out of South Africa that has been previously introduced into the country. Up to R25 000 in cash, per resident (natural person), may be taken when proceeding on visits outside the Common Monetary Area, to meet travellers' immediate needs on return to South Africa. Foreign visitors to South Africa may introduce foreign currency in any amount and in any form (for example, foreign bank notes or travellers' cheques) and may export any funds originating from instruments of foreign currency (including foreign bank notes) imported into South Africa on their arrival. No more than R25 000 may be exported in SARB notes.

The term "emigration" as recognised by the SARB was phased out with effect from 2021-03-01. All emigration applications from this date onwards are processed by the South African Revenue Service based on a dispensation confirming that the taxpayer has ceased to be a resident for tax purposes. The Authorised Dealer must verify the individual's tax compliance status via SARS eFiling through the use of the TCS PIN. In addition, South Africans can transfer up to R1 million abroad for any legal purpose, including investments, without the requirement to obtain a TCS PIN letter. Private individuals may in the same calendar year that they ceased to be resident for tax purposes transfer up to R1 million as travel allowance, without the requirement to obtain a TCS PIN. This is a once-off dispensation and unutilised portions may not be availed of in subsequent years. The withdrawal of retirement funds (lump sum benefits) may only be paid to individual members who have remained non-tax resident for at least three consecutive years. Requests by South African individuals to transfer additional funds are considered by the Financial Surveillance Department. As of 2021-01-01, the full 'loop structure' restriction has been lifted to encourage inward investments into South Africa.

Tax compliant individuals may invest authorised foreign capital in excess of the R10 million foreign capital allowance per calendar year via foreign domiciled and registered trusts.

Private individuals may as part of their single discretionary allowance and/or foreign capital allowance, export multi-listed domestic securities to a foreign securities register in a jurisdiction where such securities are listed, subject to tax compliance and reporting to the Financial Surveillance Department via a Central Securities Depository Participant, in conjunction with an Authorised Dealer.

Private individuals may utilise the investment portion of their single discretionary allowance and/or foreign capital allowance to participate in

online foreign exchange trading activities (e.g. trading global currencies against each other, trading a contract for difference, trading in foreign stock, commodities including crypto currencies and trading foreign indices using the online trading platform of the broker concerned). South African credit, debit and virtual cards may not be utilised to fund international trading accounts.

Resident individuals can receive and retain abroad monetary and other legitimate gifts and donations received from a non-resident source without having to declare it to an Authorised Dealer. Resident individuals may also retain foreign assets inherited from a South African estate, and residents with authorised foreign assets may lend or dispose of such authorised foreign assets to other South African residents, subject to local tax disclosure and compliance.

Private individuals who ceased to be resident for tax purposes may remit abroad, on a once-off basis, remaining cash balances not exceeding R100 000 in total, without reference to SARS.

Non-residents living and working in South Africa may now be granted lending facilities (i.e. mortgage bonds) for residential property, subject to normal lending criteria. South African companies and mandated state-owned companies may transfer up to R5 billion per calendar year for bona fide new outward foreign direct investments into companies. branches and offices outside the CMA, subject to certain administrative requirements. South African entities listed on any South African authorised exchange may register with the Financial Surveillance Department and transfer funds from the parent company to a domestic treasury management company (DTMC) - a South African holding company for African and offshore operations, incorporated in South Africa and with its effective management place in South Africa – up to R5 billion a calendar year in respect of new investments, expansions as well as other transactions of a capital nature. Up to this amount, there is no restriction on transfers in and out of the holding company, provided such transfers are not undertaken to avoid tax.

Additional amounts of up to 25% of the listed company's market capitalisation are considered, on application to the Financial Surveillance Department, provided there are demonstrated benefits to South Africa. Unlisted entities may establish one DTMC for African and foreign operations, subject to certain administrative requirements. Annual transfers up to R3 billion a calendar year into a DTMC may be effected in respect of new investments, expansions as well as other transactions of a capital nature.

In addition, companies operating in the financial sector, such as banks and insurance companies may also apply to the Financial Surveillance Department for the DTMC dispensation, provided they meet certain set criteria.

Transfers from the parent company to the DTMC, up to R5 billion, a calendar year may be effected in respect of new investments, expansions as well as other transactions of a capital nature. Additional amounts may be considered, on application, to the Financial Surveillance Department and the PA. Excess income or profits of offshore branches and offices of South African companies may be retained offshore.

Institutional investors are all retirement funds, long-term insurers and collective investment scheme management companies. Investment managers may elect to register with the Financial Surveillance Department as institutional investors. The limit on foreign portfolio investments by institutional investors is applied to an institutional investor's total retail assets under management.

The prudential limits of 30% and 40%, respectively as well as the African allowance of 10% have been combined as of 2022-02-23 into a single limit of 45% of total retail assets under management applicable to all institutional investors. It should be noted that compliance with the prudential limit does not preclude an institutional investor from also having to comply with any relevant prudential regulations as administered by the Financial Sector Conduct Authority. Institutional investors may open foreign currency accounts with Authorised Dealers for the purpose of obtaining offshore exposure in terms of the prudential limit.

These accounts may be funded by either converting Rand to foreign currency through an Authorised Dealer or by accepting foreign currency deposits emanating from the disinvestment proceeds of foreign assets. Current customer foreign currency accounts held by institutional investors will have to be converted to foreign currency accounts within three months. Since 2014, South African listed companies have been permitted to secondary list on foreign exchanges and/or list depository receipt programmes in the offshore market to facilitate local and offshore foreign direct investment expansions, subject to certain administrative requirements.

Non-resident entities, local authorised dealers and the JSE are allowed to issue inward listed instruments referencing foreign assets on the JSE. Local collective investment scheme management companies registered with the Financial Sector Conduct Authority and regulated under the Collective Investment Scheme Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002), are allowed, with the prior approval of the Financial Surveillance Department, to inward list exchange traded funds referencing foreign assets on a South African exchange.

Approved debt and derivative instruments as well as exchange traded funds referencing foreign assets, that are inward listed on a South African exchange, traded and settled in Rand, are classified as foreign. Inward listed shares remain classified as domestic.

As stated in the Budget Review 2020, a new capital flow management system was expected to be put in place over a period of 12 months. All foreign-currency transactions will be allowed, except for a risk-based list of capital flow measures and/or transactions that pose a high risk in respect of illegitimate cross border financial flows. This change will increase transparency, reduce burdensome and unnecessary administrative approvals and promote certainty.

Some of the main features of the new capital flow management system are:

- a shift from exchange controls to capital flow management measures to regulate cross-border capital flows;
- stronger measures to fight illegitimate financial cross-border flows and tax evasion:

- strengthening cooperation between the FIC, SARB, SARS and other law enforcement agencies; and
- enhanced cross-border reporting requirements.

In the interim, National Treasury continues to modernise South Africa's capital flows management framework through the announcement of exchange control reforms. The Financial Surveillance Department will also develop a new legislative framework based on the Currency and Exchanges Act, 1933 in respect of the new capital flow management framework to be introduced.

Foreign exchange

The Foreign Exchange Operations section within the Financial Markets Department is entrusted with the responsibility of conducting foreign exchange operations of the SARB and monitoring foreign exchange activities of authorised dealers and the broader market participants.

This function also involves engaging with various market participants locally and offshore, including official institutions to gather market information and intelligence to support internal decision-making in the implementation of monetary policy, exchange rate policy and management of the SARB's foreign exchange reserves.

To this end, the Foreign Exchange Section performs the following functions:

- Conducting spot and forward foreign exchange transactions for the purpose of accumulating foreign exchange reserves;
- Conducting foreign exchange swap transactions in the domestic forward market for domestic liquidity management;
- Managing the foreign exchange reserves working capital portfolio by investing funds in term deposit accounts with foreign banks and official institutions:
- Servicing the foreign exchange needs of the SARB and its clients, including government;
- conducting research and analysis into movements and trends across financial markets:
- analysing the impact of the SARB's foreign exchange operations;
- promoting the effective function of the domestic financial markets by monitoring and gathering of market information and market intelligence in developments in the local and international markets;
- providing management information on the foreign exchange markets to the senior management of the department as well as the executive management of the SARB; and
- performing administrative functions of the South African Foreign Exchange Committee, which has been established under the sponsorship and leadership of the SARB.

The microlending industry

The NCA of 2005 allows the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner. The Act replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980). It regulates the granting of consumer credit by all credit providers, including micro lenders, banks and retailers.

The NCR and the National Consumer Tribunal play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act. Out of a population of over 54 million, South Africa has over 18 million credit-active consumers.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. Its mandate includes:

- · carrying out education, research and policy development;
- · registering industry participants;
- · investigating complaints; and
- · ensuring that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act. The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist over-indebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service providers appointed by the regulator.

Other financial institutions Collective investment schemes

These are investment structures where individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers regulated by the FAIS Act of 2002 invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3) (iii) of the FAIS Act of 2002 provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of its powers, in terms of the Act, to anybody recognised by the Act.

Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17 (2) of the Act, were delegated to two recognised representative bodies. As recognised examination bodies, another four bodies are responsible for developing and delivering the regulatory examination.

Advisory Committee on FSPs

The Minister of Finance appointed the Advisory Committee on FSPs, whose function is to investigate and report, or advise on any matter covered by the FAIS Act of 2002.

The advisory committee comprises a chairperson, a representative of the Council for Medical Schemes, established by Section 3 of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), persons representative of product suppliers, FSPs and clients involved in the application of this Act.

The members of the advisory committee, except for the registrar and

deputy registrar, who are ex officio members, hold office for a period determined by the Minister.

Licensing of FSPs

The Registrar of FSPs authorises and renders ongoing supervision of the following FSPs:

- Financial advisers and intermediaries who provide financial services without discretion;
- Those who offer discretionary intermediary services, in terms of financial product choice, but without implementing bulking;
- · Hedge-fund managers;
- Investment administrators specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers); and
- Those who represent assistance business administrators who render intermediary services, in terms of the administration of assistance business (funeral policies), on behalf of an insurer to the extent agreed to in a written mandate between the two parties.

Insurance companies

Insurance is an agreement between a policyholder and an insurance company. Insurers are regulated by the Insurance Act No 18 of 2017, as implemented in South Africa on 1 July 2018. In terms of this Act, all insurance companies must be registered by both the Financial Sector Conduct Authority and SARB's Prudential Authority and must comply with the provisions of this Act. The insurance industry has appointed a short-term and long-term insurance Ombudsman to mediate dispute resolution between insurers and policy holders.

Retirement funds

The purpose is to encourage South Africans to save more. Employer contributions to retirement funds have become an employee fringe benefit for tax purposes. Individuals will be able to receive a tax deduction on employer and employee contributions to a pension fund, provident fund or retirement annuity fund up to 27.5% of the greater of remuneration and taxable income. An annual cap on deductible contributions of R350 000 apply.

In addition, government is exploring ways to increase retirement fund coverage to all workers.

Government bonds

The National Treasury has worked with the JSE, the SARB, STRATE, primary dealer banks and the World Bank to implement an electronic trading platform for government bonds.

Non-resident holdings of government bonds increased significantly until 2020, partly as a result of extremely low interest rates in advanced economies, which prompted global investors to look for better returns in developing countries. South Africa's sophisticated capital markets and strong institutions also support continued investment flows. However, non-resident holdings have come off their highs, as South

Africa was excluded from the World Government Bond Index following downgrades to the country's sovereign rating to below investment grade by Moody's rating agency.

As a category, international investors remain the largest holders of domestic government bonds. Holdings by Non-residents peaked at 43% in March 2019 and thereafter declined sharply to 28.4% in January 2022 largely owing to the perceived increase in emerging market risk associated with the COVID-19 crisis.

Domestic long-term borrowing

Domestic long-term borrowing consists of fixed-rate, inflation-linked and retail savings bonds. Between April 2021 and January 2022, government raised R316 billion by issuing domestic long-term debt. Fixed-rate bonds accounted for 82% of bond issuances, with inflation-linked instruments making up the remainder. Fixed-rate bonds were issued across a range of maturities.

About 70% of bonds issued had maturities of between four and 15 years. In 2021/22, the South African government bond yield curve flattened as short-dated yields discounted prospects for higher domestic policy rate while the longer dated yields reflected a relatively light issuance in that area of the curve. Government was able to issue more bonds in the short to-medium term, minimizing its average borrowing costs. Over the medium term, domestic long-term borrowing will increase by an average of R295 billion annually.

International borrowing

Government issues debt in global capital markets to meet part of its foreign-currency commitments, set benchmarks and diversify funding sources.

The rand equivalent of these loans and interest payments changes with the exchange rate. To manage this risk, portfolio benchmarks limit foreign-currency debt to 15% of the portfolio. In 2021/22, government is expected to raise US\$3 billion in international capital markets to fund its foreign-currency commitments. Over the medium term, government is projected to raise an additional US\$11 billion in global capital markets. As part of the International Monetary Fund general special drawing right (SDR) allocation to member countries, government received about US\$4.2 billion in SDRs in August 2021.

The government started to fully finance its foreign currency commitments in 2017 – by borrowing in global capital markets. This marked a shift from previous practice. The rand value of this international debt fluctuates with exchange rates, which is why the strategic risk portfolio benchmark limits foreign currency debt to 15% of the total portfolio.

Government debt

Government's steadfast commitment to restoring sustainability to the public finances is supported by narrowing deficits and debt stabilisation. Debt-service cost is expected to increase from R268 billion in fiscal 2021/22 to R302 billion (15.3% of total expenditure) in fiscal 2022/23,

and further to R364 billion in fiscal 2024/25. In fiscal 2021/22, government's gross borrowing requirement narrowed from R600 billion (10.8% of GDP) to R404 billion (6.5% of GDP) and is expected to decline further to R342 billion (4.7% of GDP) in fiscal 2024/25.

The smaller borrowing requirement in 2021/22 was the result of improved revenue collections which reflected the recovery in economic activity following the easing of COVID-19 lockdown restrictions as well as the elevated level of most international commodity prices.

The significantly smaller borrowing requirement in 2021/22 was mainly financed through the net issuances of government bonds and, to a lesser extent, Treasury bills. The gross loan debt of national government is now expected to stabilise at 75.1% of GDP in 2024/25. As a share of total gross loan debt, domestic debt continued to account for about 90%.

Government's resilient fiscal and debt management policies have enabled it to continue raising the funds required to meet its spending commitments over the past year. Contingent liabilities are projected to increase from R1.15 trillion in 2021/22 to R1.23 trillion in fiscal 2024/25.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange

The JSE is a licensed exchange for all securities that was established in 1887. It offers secure and efficient primary and secondary capital markets across a diverse range of securities, spanning equities, derivatives and debt markets. In keeping with international practice, the JSE regulates its members and ensures that the markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection. Similarly, issuers of securities must comply with the JSE listings requirements, which ensure sufficient disclosure of all information relevant to investors.

The role of the JSE includes regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations. It also provides the stock exchange news service through which company news, including price-sensitive information, is distributed to the market.

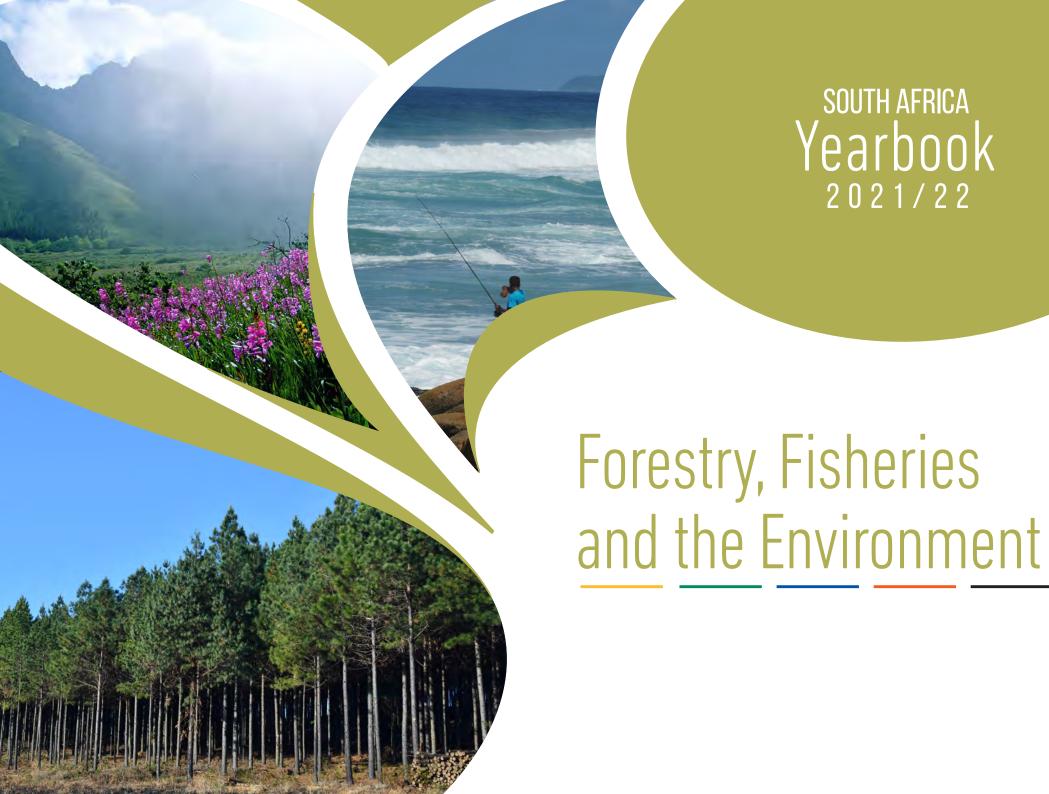
The JSE has reclassified its equity instruments in line with the Financial Times Stock Exchange (FTSE) Russel Industry Classification Benchmark. This has led to the introduction of the FTSE/JSE Africa Index Series that makes the South African indices comparable to similar indices worldwide.

The Financial Sector Conduct Authority has granted four new stock exchange licenses in recent years. ZAR X started trading in February 2017, followed by 4 Africa Exchange in September 2017 and A2X Markets (primarily a secondary listings market) in October 2017. The fourth new exchange, the black economic empowerment-focused Equity Express Securities Exchange, started trading in December 2017.

Together with the JSE, South Africa now has five licensed stock exchanges. The new exchanges were established to increase diversity and economic inclusion for the advancement of economic growth and development. On most of the new stock exchanges only equity type products can be traded.

SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22 Finance and Economy





Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment

In April 2021, the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries changed its name to the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE). The DFFE is mandated to give effect to the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations. To this end, the department provides leadership towards sustainability in environmental management, conservation and protection for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

The National Development Plan (NDP) sets out a vision for promoting environmental sustainability in South Africa by making an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy and transforming human settlements for improved local governance and spatial integration. Broadly, the NDP envisions environmental sustainability and transformation within the context of an integrated and inclusive economy that is supported by a capable and developmental state. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (Economic transformation and job creation), Priority 4 (Spatial integration, human settlements and local government) and Priority 6 (A capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework, with which the work of the DFFE is closely aligned.

Accordingly, the department's ongoing objective is to develop strategies and policies aimed at regulating and promoting the sustainable use of inland and coastal natural resources; and reducing carbon emissions, atmospheric pollutants and the effect of climate change. As part of the national macro organisation of government, the forestry and fisheries functions of the former Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries were shifted to the DFFE.

Government is prioritising the need to protect natural resources while growing a post-COVID-19 economy. Key to the recovery is the Green Stimulus Recovery Programme, which forms part of the post-COVID-19 Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Programme for South Africa. It will contribute to equitable economic growth, provide employment to marginalised communities and grow economic sectors reliant on the environment without destroying it.

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on supporting an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy and a climate-resilient society; creating an enabling environment for South Africa's transition to a circular economy and creating work opportunities and jobs through public employment programmes.

Supporting an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy and a climate-resilient society

The DFFE will prioritise the implementation of the approved lowemissions development and growth strategy over the medium term, and seek to build capacity for the Presidential Climate Change Coordination Commission secretariat. It will also spearhead the development of job resilience plans in the five sectors identified as the most vulnerable to climate change (coal, agriculture, tourism, petrol-based transport and metals). These initiatives feed into the National Climate Change Bill, which, once promulgated, will serve as the overarching legislative framework for the implementation of climate adaptation and mitigation within provinces and municipalities, and ensure the coordination of climate change interventions across the three spheres of government. These activities will be carried out in the Climate Change, Air Quality and Sustainable Development programme, which has a budget of R1.4 billion over the MTEF period. Spending in the programme is set to decrease at an average annual rate of 6.7%, from R612.8 million in 2021/22 to R497.7 million in 2024/25, mainly due to the repurposing of funding to augment the operational budget of public entities.

Improved waste management towards a circular economy

Over the medium term, the DFFE will focus on creating an enabling environment to support the transition to a circular economy, which entails transitioning from the current wasteful economy to a more regenerative, inclusive and equitable one. Accordingly, the department will continue with the implementation of the Recycling Enterprise Support Programme and Operation Phakisa initiatives that contribute to job creation in the waste management sector. In addition, it will implement the national waste management strategy, which is aimed at minimising waste and diverting 40% of waste from landfills over the next five years.

In an effort to reduce plastic waste and encourage plastic recycling, over the period ahead, the levy on plastic bags is expected to be extended to all single-use plastics used for retail consumption – including plastic straws, utensils and packaging – to curb their use, encourage reuse and recycling, and divert waste from landfill. In partnership with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition, the department will work towards implementing a waste management plan for the tyre industry.

The plan includes establishing sustainable markets for recycled tyre products and developing processing capacity to support the recycling of old tyres in environmentally sustainable ways.

Expenditure for these activities is within an allocation of R1.9 billion over the medium term in the Chemicals and Waste Management programme.

Creating jobs and work opportunities through the Expanded Public Works Programme

The departments commitment to job creation is reflected in its medium-term targets of providing 103 659 full-time equivalent jobs and 210 780 work opportunities through the expanded public works programme. These jobs and work opportunities will be made available through projects and initiatives that focus on: restoring and rehabilitating degraded ecosystems (environmental protection and infrastructure programme); expanding the conservation estate (Working for Ecosystems); protecting, restoring and rehabilitating wetlands (Working for Wetlands); protecting water resources (Working for Water); managing sustainable land use (Working for Ecosystems); sustaining

production, growth and transformation in the forestry sector (Working for Forests); and addressing the challenges faced by the fisheries sector (Working for Fisheries). The Environmental Programmes section is allocated 41.9% (R11.6 billion) of the department's total budget to fund these initiatives over the MTEF period.

egislation and policies

The DFFE's mandate is derived from the following legislation:

- National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act 108 of 1998), which provides for specific legislation on biodiversity and heritage resources, oceans and coasts, climate change and air quality management, and waste and chemicals management;
- National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 8 of 2004), which streamlines the process of regulating and administering the Environmental Impact Assessment process;
- National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act 39 of 2004), which reforms the law regulating air quality in order to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for preventing pollution and ecological degradation, and securing ecologically sustainable development; and provides for national norms and standards that regulate the monitoring of air quality;
- National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), which significantly reforms South Africa's laws regulating biodiversity;
- National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008), which promotes the conservation of the coastal environment, and ensures sustainable development practices and the use of natural resources;
- the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008), which reforms the law regulating waste management in order to protect health and the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution;
- the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 15 of 2009), which provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites to South Africa in terms of the World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999);
- National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998), which promotes sustainable management and development of forests for the benefits of all; creates the conditions necessary to restructure forestry in state forests; provides special measures for the protection of certain forests and trees; promotes the sustainable use of forests for environmental, economic, educational, recreational, cultural, health and spiritual purposes; promotes community forestry; promotes greater participation in all aspects of forestry and forest products industry by person disadvantaged by unfair discrimination;
- National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), which provides for the prevention and combating of veld, forest and mountain fires across South Africa; and
- Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 8 of 1998), which deals with the long-term sustainable utilisation of marine living resources.

Budget and funding

The DFFE was allocated R9.1 billion for the 2021/22 financial year.

The department receives allocations amounting to R27.2 billion over the medium term, increasing at an average annual rate of 0.9%, from R9.1 billion in 2021/22 to R9.3 billion in 2024/25. Spending on goods and services accounts for an estimated 53% (R14.5 billion) of the department's total allocation over the MTEF period, with spending on compensation of employees comprising an estimated 21.4% (R5.8 billion).

Forestry

The DFFE is the custodian of South Africa's forest resources, which cover over 38 million hectares (ha) – about 31.1% of the country's land surface area. Forest products contribute about R36.34 billion to the economy. Export value decreased by 5%, from R26 to R24.7 billion.

This is underpinned by 1.2 million ha of well-developed plantation forestry. The forestry sector is responsible for 147 400 direct jobs. A forest sector review conducted in preparation for the Forestry Sector Master Plan revealed that forestry products contribute at least 4.5% to the total manufacturing in the country, putting it among the top five sectors within the manufacturing industry. It also revealed that export earnings had increased almost threefold, providing a positive trade balance of up to R10 billion in less than a decade.

Much of forestry operations are rurally based, making it a significant contributor to rural economies and social wellbeing. Forestry provides livelihood support to 648 000 people in the country's rural areas. The pulp and paper industry provides about 16 000 direct and 10 000 indirect employment opportunities. Some 18 100 direct workers are employed and 6 000 indirect in sawmilling, and 3 600 in the timber-board and 2 000 in the mining timber industries, while a further 7 500 workers are employed in miscellaneous jobs in forestry.

The forest sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 0.6% to the Gross Domestic Product (GDP), a considerable decline from the usual average of 1.2% to the GDP in the previous years. Forestry products contribute at least 4.5% to total manufacturing making it among the top five sectors within manufacturing. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 2.7%; Mpumalanga 3.0%; the Eastern Cape 0.7%; Limpopo 0.5% and the Western Cape about 0.2%.

Mpumalanga has the highest investment in plantations at R21.06 billion (42.2%) followed by KwaZulu-Natal with R18.18 billion (36.4%), the Eastern Cape at R6.8 billion (13.6%), Limpopo R2.3 billion (4.6%) and the Western Cape at R1.6 billion (3.5%).

Forestry is one of the sectors that have huge potential in job creation whilst ensuring the sustainable use of natural resources. Through the Plantation Forestry and the Forestry Stewardship Council, the DFFE will be able to enhance on the existing natural forests and woodlands. Of the 1.2 million ha of plantations, some are leased by government to private companies, and 3.7% of these are owned by small growers.

There are three categories of forests in South Africa, namely

indigenous forests, woodlands and plantation forests. Natural forests cover approximately half a million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers about 1.2 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover between 36 and 38 million ha, depending on the classification used.

Forestry activities in indigenous forests and woodlands are not limited to the protection of the resource as a natural heritage, but include its development, use and management, as well as the management and processing of non-timber forest products. Plantation forestry practices include, among other things, the establishment of vast areas of land with exotic tree species that are harvested and processed into pulp for the paper and packaging industries; sawn timber for the production of structural and industrial timber used in the construction industry; poles for telephone and electricity supply; mining timber for use as underground support structures in primarily the gold and platinum mining sectors. The balance of other timber produced is used for a variety of other products, such as charcoal and match manufacture.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are conducted.

There has been an increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This may be attributed to factors such as the Forest Stewardship Council's (FSC) acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably. The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

The DFFE is working towards a transformed forestry sector in which resources are sustainably managed. This will include the publication of the State of Forests Report in the 2021/22 financial year, as well as the introduction of skills development, legislative and policy development and tree planting programmes. Additional steps are also being taken to ensure that forests are protected against threats such as fires, timber theft, pests and diseases.

Indigenous forests

Only about 0.5% of South Africa's total land area is covered by natural forests. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, are important tourist attractions. The large Afrotemperate forests of the southern Cape, although distributed close to the coast, are aligned with the inland forest types of the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. This is because the southerly temperate latitudes compensate for the altitude of inland forests.

Almost half of all natural forests in South Africa are found on private property or land under communal tenure. A detailed inventory of natural forests helps government to monitor changes in forest areas.

Although the country's low natural forest coverage has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector over the past century, natural forests have continued playing a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities. The use of natural forests as sources of building material, fuel wood, food and medicine is increasing, with an estimated 80% of South Africa's population still using medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

The forest-type classification for natural forests represents 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas. Systematic timber harvesting occurs in certain areas of southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale, in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape.

This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On average, 3 750 cubic metres (m³) of round logs are harvested annually (150 m³ of stinkwood, 750 m³ of yellowwood, 2 500 m³ of Australian blackwood and 350 m³ of other species).

The seven-week fern (Rumohra adiantiformis), harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests, is another valuable product of indigenous forests. The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales have been known to exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

The woodlands, also known as savannahs, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households annually. Natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1.3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover between 29 million and 46 million ha.

The cover includes extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savannah woodland comprising 5 900 plants, 540 bird species and 175 mammals.

These include iconic species such as the Big Five group of mammals that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savannah, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

In the past, this resource was not really recognised as a forestry responsibility, except where woodland occurred on state-forest land in conservation areas. However, the National Forestry Action Programme of 1997 identified woodland management as a key area of operation for forestry.

The National Forests Act of 1998 also includes woodland in its definition of forests and mandates monitoring and reporting on the state of the woodlands. This legislation protects woodlands on private and communal land, as well as in state forests, while promoting sustainable use.

Savannah woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula fruit (Sclerocarya birrea) harvest, for example, is worth some R1.1 billion a year to rural communities.

There are 87 savannah woodland types, and although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private reserves, many underprotected savannah types have been identified.

Another woodland type is the Albany Thicket Biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha.

Commercial forests

Commercial forest plantations predominantly meet South Africa's demand for wood. During the 1930s, the country started extensive commercial plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities.

Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle. South Africa's plantation forests cover about 1% of the combined cultivated (arable) and grazing land.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising sustainable forest management and is a world leader in forest certification. Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities.

The Institute for Commercial Forestry Research completed its role in developing the National Forest Protection Strategy for the department, a project funded by the Food and Agriculture Organisation.

Another development which will assist in enhancing forest protection is the memorandum of understanding, formalising Forestry South Africa's support and funding for these activities at the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnical Institute, which has been entered into with the University of Pretoria.

South Africa's intensively managed commercial forestry plantations are recognised as some of the most productive in the world. Consequently, from a limited geographic footprint of 1.2 million ha, the industry can produce, on a sustainable and annual basis, between 15 and 18 million tons (t) of timber a year.

Community forestry

Community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to benefit local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots and woodland being managed by communities and individuals.

Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory forest management of the DFFE is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the sustainable management of South African forests.

Elements of participatory forest management were initially developed for indigenous state forests.

However, the aim is to use participatory forest management as an approach to managing all forest types, where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Participative forestry

The DFFE supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff. An estimated R2 million has already been spent from the Community Facilitation Fund to support the establishment of projects on the ground. Projects include the establishment of medicinal plant nurseries, in partnership with various stakeholders, and beekeeping, in partnership with the Agriculture Research Council.

In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rand.

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3.2 billion and produces some 2 000 t a year. Government's investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people.

Forestry Master Plar

The Forestry Sector Master Plan is in support of the Reimagined Industrial Strategy for South Africa. Forestry is also one of the sectors that is being prioritised under the Public Private Growth Initiative – a partnership between government and the private sector to stimulate investment.

The primary objective of the master plan process is to develop an agreed-upon set of actions, with time frames, that all stakeholders commit to implementing for the benefit of the sector or value-chain. Its objectives include encouraging sector growth, investment, job creation and competitiveness. It was developed using available research and extensive consultations with industry, specialist entities and relevant government departments and agencies.

The master plan could result in as much as 50% black and community ownership of land available for plantations if the ongoing land reform programme was expedited and effectively implemented.

National Arbor Month

South Africa celebrates Arbor Month in September every year. Arbor Week is commemorated in the first week of September annually.

Historically, South Africa did not have a culture of tree planting, and it was in the 1970s that a real need to promote tree planting was recognised. The concept of National Arbor Day ensued from the 1973 Green Heritage Campaign.

To date, the campaign has graduated to Arbor Month, which is a national campaign initiated to celebrate South Africa's trees and to raise awareness about their importance. The theme for Arbor Month 2021 was; "Forest Restoration: a path to recovery and well-being". The event was used as an opportunity to encourage citizens to protect indigenous forests, help prevent veld and forest fires, plant a tree to green the country and mitigate against climate change, plant indigenous trees that save water, use water conserving methods when planting trees and integrate fruit trees into their food gardens.

National Arbor Month serves to promote awareness for the need to plant and maintain indigenous trees throughout South Africa, especially for the many disadvantaged communities who often live in barren and water stressed areas. It further intends to:

- · raise awareness of South Africa's urban and rural greening initiatives;
- promote better understanding of trees, particularly indigenous trees and fruit trees;
- highlight the important role trees play in sustainable development and the livelihoods of people and their environment; and
- encourage communities to participate in various greening activities within their own surroundings.

To promote greening, especially the planting of indigenous trees that are becoming scarce, the concept of trees of the year was born some years ago. Arbor Month 2021 promoted the planting of three indigenous species that were identified and named as trees of the year – common tree, tree for promotion and tree for appreciation. The common tree for 2021 was Vachellia karoo (Sweet Thorn); the tree for promotion was Portulacaria afra (Pork Bush) and the tree for appreciation was Warburgia salutaris (Pepperbark Tree).

National Arbor City Awards

The National Arbor City Awards are greening competitions that take place in line with the National Greening Strategy. The purpose of the competition is to encourage municipalities to green their areas of jurisdiction and promote environmental conservation and development, thereby securing a healthy living environment for residents in all settlement areas. It provides incentives and rewards to municipalities that are doing their best in terms of greening and landscape management, especially in townships and new settlement areas.

The competition further encourages the municipalities to create awareness around the importance of green landscapes and provide a platform for the diagnosis of challenges facing municipalities in the area of greening.

There are three categories – metropolitan municipalities, local municipalities and rural-based municipalities. For each category the winner receives prize money to promote greening in their area.

Champion Tree Project

The purpose of the Champion Tree Project is to identify and protect trees that are of national importance and worthy of special protection, due to their remarkable size, age, aesthetic, cultural, historic or tourism value.

Since the start of the project in 2003, 86 trees or groups of trees have been declared as champion trees, based on criteria such as size, age and historical value. These trees are all protected under the National Forests Act of 1998. They include the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route, the Post Office Milkwood Tree of Mossel Bay, the Sagole Baobab in Limpopo and camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago.

The Sagole Baobab has the second-biggest trunk in the world, while a stand of saligna gum trees planted in 1906 near Tzaneen in Limpopo are the tallest trees in Africa. In May 2021, the governments of Mexico and South Africa signed a cooperation agreement aimed at sharing technical expertise on the management of the two thickest trees in the world the Tule Tree of Mexico and the Sagole baobab. This is the first twinning of trees agreement in the world.

A few champion trees have died since the launch of the project, including the Platland Baobab in Limpopo, which collapsed in 2017. In Cape Town, the Tokai Arboretum was damaged by fire, and extensive work had to be undertaken by arborists to fell trees and prune or treat others.

The oldest planted tree in South Africa is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Dutch East India Company's gardens in Cape Town more than three centuries ago, supposedly by Jan van Riebeeck. Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees, during the apartheid regime, who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer, the daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founding member of the South African Communist Party.

In 2015, a new record-breaking tree was discovered in an old tree lane in the Boschendal Wine Estate. This Karri Gum Tree of 50.4 metres (m) tall has a massive crown and a trunk circumference of over 8 m and is now officially the largest tree in South Africa.

A group of international and local tree climbers has visited and climbed the champion trees around the country, contributing to more accurate height measurements, and installing nesting boxes for the rare Cape Parrot in some of the large champion trees that occur in natural forests.

All the trees have also been visited by a professional photographer, to create a proper photographic record.

Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees Programme was launched in 2007 as part of a United Nations (UN) greening initiative to encourage countries worldwide to plant more trees. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees, including fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees, are planted every year in various member states of the UN.

In South Africa, the Million Trees Programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector.

It is part of the South African contribution to the UN Environment Programme's Plant for the Planet: Billion Tree Campaign, where communities, industry, civil society organisations and governments are encouraged to plant at least one billion trees worldwide.

Socio-economic reform and growth

The forestry vision states that forests are managed for people and that there is a need to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Strategies to achieve this vision include forestry enterprise development, aimed at creating opportunities for people to use forests, including indigenous forests, woodlands and plantations, and forest-based resources for economic growth, income-generation and job creation.

The forestry enterprise development concept is central to government's pro-poor agenda and also a key component of broad-based black economic empowerment in the forestry sector.

World Soil Day

World Soil Day is observed and celebrated every year on 5 December by all UN member states, organisations of the UN system and other international and regional organisations, civil society, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and individuals to emphasise the importance of soil.

The 2021 theme for World Soil Day was; "Halt soil salinization, boost soil productivity". The theme aimed to raise awareness of the importance of maintaining healthy ecosystems and human well-being by addressing the growing challenges in soil management, fighting soil salinization, increasing soil awareness and encouraging societies to improve soil health.

Role players

National Forest Advisory Council (NFAC)

The function of the NFAC is to advise the Minister of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment on matters related to forestry in South Africa. The Council has two permanent committees – the Committee for Sustainable Forests Management (CSFM) and the Committee on Forest Access (CFA). The CSFM's role includes advising:

- the NFAC, the DFFE and the Minister of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment on all aspects of sustainable forest management in the country;
- the DFFE and the Minister of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment on the administration of criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management; and
- the DFFE on convening forum for interested persons to participate in the formulation of criteria, indicators and standards.
- · The CFA advises the Minister of Forestry, Fisheries and the

Environment on promoting the granting and exercise of access to forests; promoting education on the sustainable management and use of forests, and the use of the National Forest Recreation and Access Trust funds.

South African Forestry Company Limited (SAFCOL)

The SAFCOL conducts timber harvesting, processing and related activities, both domestically and internationally.

It employs about 5 000 people through direct and indirect employment and, by extension, is responsible for about 20 000 lives in communities adjacent to its operations.

It subscribes to the Forest Sector Charter and plays a leading role in transformation within the industry. With the focus on communities adjacent to its plantations and specifically the youth in those communities, it makes a difference in the physical circumstances and networking in communities.

The structured approach of community partnerships was strengthened, with the focus on implementing needs-driven development and making a positive impact in community members' lives.

Of special note was the launch of the SAFCOL-sponsored Forestry Chair at the University of Pretoria, which creates an opportunity for students who wish to further their studies in forestry-related fields.

Forestry South Africa (FSA)

The organisation was formed in 2002 through the amalgamation of the erstwhile Forestry Owners Association and the South African Timber Growers Association. It represents the interests of its members and the promotion and well-being of the South African commercial forestry industry. Although voluntary in its nature, FSA's membership includes all 11 corporate timber companies and their subsidiaries, operating in South Africa, 1 100 commercial timber farmers and over 20 000 small-scale black timber growers. This membership represents over 90% of the industry as a whole and virtually all the private sector involved in the industry. Due to this representivity, FSA is viewed by both government and the private sector as the body which represents the South African forestry industry.

FSA is involved in a host of areas such as research, education and training, water and environmental affairs, forest protection, bio-energy, business development and transport.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global Relief, an international greening organisation. The FTFA's mission is to contribute to healthier living, especially in disadvantaged communities, through environmental awareness and greening programmes. It also addresses sustainable development through greening, climate change action, sustainable natural resource management and food security programmes.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors and civil society. Its goal is to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible, with the help of sponsors

and certificate programmes. It manages the Urban Greening Fund in conjunction with the departments of Water and Sanitation, Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment; and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management.

The fund supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food gardening projects and environmental education. Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The forest research function within the DFFE has been coordinating a number of research projects focusing on sustainable management of forest resources.

These include the monitoring and evaluation of bark-harvesting techniques used for two indigenous tree species in Letaba, forest sustainable harvesting of plants used for medicinal purposes, the sustainable use of monkey rope (Secamonealpini) by local subsistence farmers ex situ and in situ, conservation of the critically endangered Protea roupelliae sbsp. Hamiltonii, and conservation of the co-occurring endangered Leucospermum gerrardii within the Dr amilton Nature Reserve.

Major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute and the CSIR in Pretoria. The SANBI also plays an important role, in terms of species protection.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines.

The Durban University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry offers a diploma in Social Forestry. Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres.

The Fibre Processing and Manufacturing (FPM) Sector Education and Training Authority (SETA), is responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards. The DFFE, together with the FPM SETA, offers study bursaries in forestry-related fields.

Fisheries

The South African fishing sector remains a significant contributor to food security and the economy. Stabilising the sub-sector through the allocation of longer-term fishing rights is critical to attracting investment into the industry. The fisheries sector is worth around R8 billion a year and the commercial sector directly employs approximately 28 000 people with many thousands more depending on fisheries resources to meet basic needs in the small-scale and recreational sectors.

The South African coastline covers more than 3 000 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. These shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals recorded. South Africa is among the global fishing nations that have identified the challenges within their fishing industry. With 22 commercial fisheries sectors and new fisheries being explored and experimented with, South Africa has two fisheries sector components:

- Wild capture fisheries include three distinct components, namely commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries, each of which requires specific research and management interventions.
- The aquaculture (fish farming) sector is considered underdeveloped and as a result, has been prioritised, owing to declining wild stocks.

The productive waters of the West Coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities.

Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry, protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems, and addressing transformation in the sector.

In line with international trends, the DFFE recognises fisheries as an economic activity rather than a purely environmental or biodiversity matter. Government has expanded the mandate for fisheries management by adding fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture, to the department's existing responsibilities.

The fisheries sector contributes roughly 0.1% to the GDP. It is more important for economic development in the Western Cape where 11 of the 13 proclaimed fishing harbours are situated. These contribute more than 5% to provincial GDP.

The total output is estimated at 600 000 t worth about R6 billion, depending on the pelagic catch of pilchards and anchovy, which could be as much as 600 000 t.

It is estimated that direct employment in the industry constitutes approximately 27 000 jobs (16 000 in the primary sector and 11 000 in the secondary and tertiary sectors), while an additional 81 000 people are indirectly (net building and bait preparing, among others) employed in industries that are at least partially dependent on the fishing sector (figures based on industry estimates and the total allowable catch and total allowable effort, calculated as a function of tonnage).

Fisheries output is determined by catch volumes, which in turn depends on the health and management of fish stocks, varying according to ecological changes and subjected to overexploitation through illegal, unreported and unregulated fishing activities.

The DFFE seeks to prevent overexploitation by means of assigning total allowable catch and total allowable effort per species, which are adjusted regularly depending on the estimated state of the resource.

The department has also sought to promote transformation in the sector through inclusion of small-scale fishing communities. The Marine Living Resources Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 5 of 2014), grants small-scale fishing communities better access to fishing rights and resources.

The small-scale fishing sector is designed to address food security needs within the local community and allow fishers to derive maximum benefit through value-adding of products and accessing markets.

The effective management of the existing harbours and proclamation of additional new harbours support resource management.

Although wild catch fisheries appear unlikely to expand beyond their present levels, aquaculture is becoming more important as a substitute for wild capture fisheries. Securing sustainable markets for aquaculture products remains of crucial importance at this time when Asian markets have been disrupted by the COVID-19 pandemic and South African producers face competition from cheap imports. Securing the safety of domestic fish stocks is a central requirement for a sustainable fishing industry. High quality scientific information to inform management decisions is the cornerstone of sound fisheries management.

Under tight resource constraints, the DFFE plans to rebuild this capacity in partnership with other branches, the industry and tertiary institutions

Under the auspices of Phakisa Initiative 5, the DFFE, together with other law enforcement authorities, focused on preventing illegal harvesting of marine resources. To ensure more permanent deployment of security personnel, the department planned to undertake a marine and coastal sectoral threat, risk and opportunity analysis to inform where the country should focus on at a strategic and operational level.

South Africa has acceded to the Indian Ocean Tuna Commission and the Commission for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna, thereby allowing the country greater influence in negotiating for increased tuna quota allocations and access.

Small-scale fisheries sector

The Small-scale Fisheries Policy seeks to address imbalances of the past and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights can be allocated on a group, rather than an individual. The policy further aims to support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.

The sector is aimed at redressing the inequality suffered by coastal fishing communities which, as a result of unintended consequences, have remained marginalised through previous rights allocation systems. Furthermore, the establishment of the small-scale sector seeks to empower small-scale fishers to contribute meaningfully to the national GDP and to play a meaningful role in food security and job creation.

This process is informed by the Marine Living Resources Act of 1998, and the regulations thereof, which was amended to legally recognise small-scale fishers who have been living in coastal communities and depending on fishing and its related activities as a source of livelihood.

The small-scale fisheries regulations, along with the Marine Living Resources Amendment Act of 2014, provide the legal mechanism for the implementation of the small-scale fisheries policy. These reforms give legal recognition to small-scale fishers and will promote the transformation of the subsector to assist fishing communities living along the coastal areas in creating sustainable livelihoods, generating income and creating jobs.

Central to the success of small fishing cooperatives is an increase in the basket of species available to them. In 2021, the DFFE published, for public comment, an apportionment split for the squid, line fish and abalone sectors to enhance the high value species available for allocation to the small-scale sector.

Recreational fishing

While the illegal harvesting of abalone poses the greatest threat to management objectives, the DFFE will continue to work with all stakeholders in the abalone sector and continue to strengthen partnerships with other law enforcement agencies and communities to ensure that the country grows and protects its resources.

South Africa's extensive coastline, spanning two oceans, and its numerous dams, lakes, rivers and streams, make the country a recreational fisher's paradise. However, recreational fishing may only be undertaken with a valid permit and is limited to certain times of the fishing season.

To reduce user conflicts between commercial and recreational fishing and protect stocks during breeding periods, certain areas have been declared closed areas.

Recreational fishers are also subject to bag limits of fish on a per-day basis.

Annual recreational fishing licences in all industries total about 300 000, with income generated from these licences amounting to R18 million. The actual annual catch is about 17 000 t of high-value species.

World Fisheries Day

South Africa celebrates World Fisheries Day every year on 21 November – with fishing communities throughout the world.

World Fisheries Day helps in highlighting the critical importance to human lives, of water and the lives it sustains, both in and out of water. Facts on fisheries:

- Small-scale fisheries (marine and inland) employ about 90% of those involved in fisheries.
- About 65% of the reported catch from inland fisheries is from low-income food-deficit countries.
- Estimates vary, but from around 30 million to over 60 million people in the developing world are involved in inland fisheries; it is thought that about 50% are women.
- · More than 25% of the world's dietary protein is provided by fish.
- The human population consumes over 100 million t of fish annually.
 Over 200 million, of Africa's one billion, people regularly consume fish and nearly half of this comes from inland fisheries.

In August 2021, Cabinet approved the National Freshwater (Inland) Wild Capture Fisheries Policy for implementation. The policy provides an efficient regulatory regime for the inland fisheries sector. It also formalises the currently informal and unrecognised activities of small-scale fisheries.

The policy, amongst others, provides for the setting up of developmental fisheries' governance institutions; support to growing inland fisheries value chains; management of sustainable inland fishing; and addresses the issues of equity and transformation of the sector

National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy

The strategy consists of voluntary and regulated instruments where:

- regulated environmental impact assessments are used only when it is the most appropriate tool;
- environmental impact assessment and management occurs within the strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies;
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials:
- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy;
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned; and
- government, environmental assessment practitioners, developers and the community are equally committed to making it work.

4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-regulation of the Off-road Sector in South Africa is aimed at minimising the impact of off-road driving on the environment, by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

A key outcome of the strategy was the development, drafting and implementation of national norms and/or standards, with a supportive enabling legislative framework, to facilitate environmental compliance, responsible tourism and the long-term sustainability of the off-road industry.

The banning of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again. The number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches has also increased since the ban was enforced.

Coastal managemen

The ocean covers three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of its protection. The DFFE recognises the challenges regarding the

management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department is focusing its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritising developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

The Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which provides information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park, is the first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, which will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System. The DFFE reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters intending to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Environment Nature positive future

Throughout the world, countries and formations as diverse as the European Union, India, Canada, Rwanda, Gabon, China and Japan are recognising that what the World Economic Forum terms a "nature positive future", can unlock enormous potential and investment opportunities for both developed and developing countries.

A nature positive future can enable economies to recover and grow, successfully service their national debts and carry out their governmental responsibilities to citizens. This can be done in a way that sustains both the natural environment and human health and well-being.

For South Africa, embracing a nature positive future as part of the overall economic recovery would have the following advantages – a positive impact on job creation in new industries, which offer potential for the creation of new enterprises using new technologies; dedicated international "green funds", which offer an investment source for these new industries; green bonds, which have been shown to be cheaper than traditional vanilla bonds; and investment in green and sustainable solutions, which offers the country opportunities to promote long term economic competitiveness and climate resilience.

International environment days

South Africa has adopted the entire month of June to heighten awareness of environmental issues through various pertinent activities. It is during the month of June that the country celebrates World Environment Day, World Oceans Day and World Day to Combat Desertification.

World Environment Day

World Environment Day is the biggest, most globally celebrated day for positive environmental action. Every year, participants organise clean-up campaigns, art exhibits, tree-planting drives, concerts, dance recitals, recycling drives, social media campaigns and different contests themed around caring for the planet.

World Environment Day is the UN's principal vehicle for encouraging worldwide awareness and action for the environment. Over the years, it has grown to be a broad, global platform for public outreach that is widely celebrated by stakeholders in over 100 countries. It also serves as the 'people's day' for doing something positive for the environment, galvanising individual actions into a collective power that generates an exponentially positive impact on the planet.

The day is marked annually on 5 June as per the declaration of the UN in 1972. Each World Environment Day is organised around a theme that focuses attention on a particularly pressing environmental concern. The theme for World Environment Day 2021 was; "Reimagine. Recreate. Restore". World Environment Day 2021 marked the beginning of United Nations Decade on Ecosystem Restoration.

Important dates on the world's environmental calendar		
2 February	World Wetlands Day	
20 March	Earth Day	
22 March	World Water Day	
23 March	World Meteorological Day	
27 March	Earth Hour	
22 April	Earth Day	
22 May	International Day for Marine Biological Diversity	
5 June	World Environment Day	
8 June	World Oceans Day	
17 June	World Day to Combat Desertification	
5 – 11 September	World Water Week	
16 September	International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer	
18 September	International Coastal Clean-up Day	
22 September	World Car-Free Day	
5 October	World Habitat Day	
11 December	International Mountain Day	

World Oceans Day

World Oceans Day is aimed at appreciating, protecting, restoring and honouring ecosystem services and resources provided by oceans.

The international theme for World Oceans Day 2021 was; "The Ocean: Life and Livelihoods". The theme shed light on the wonder of the ocean and how it is a life source – supporting humanity and every other organism on Earth.

World Day to Combat Desertification and Drough

World Day to Combat Desertification and Drought is commemorated on

17 June. It aims to promote community and ecosystem resilience while improving the human condition, particularly in dry lands. According to the UN, droughts are among the greatest threats to sustainable development, especially in developing countries, but increasingly so in developed nations too.

Forecasts estimate that by 2050 droughts may affect over threequarters of the world's population. World Day to Combat Desertification and Drought 2021 was held under the theme; "Rising up from drought together", emphasising the need of an early action to avoid disastrous consequences for humanity and the planetary ecosystems.

World Wildlife Day

World Wildlife Day is celebrated annually on 3 March. World Wildlife Day 2022 was held virtually under the theme; "Recovering key species for ecosystem restoration". The event brought together representatives of UN member States, UN System organizations and multilateral environmental agreements, civil society, and the private sector for a series of discussions along the theme.

Marine Week

Each year, the DFFE observes the National Marine Week to highlight the importance of oceans and the role they play in the life of all citizens.

It seeks to promote the appreciation of the role of the oceans, and the importance of science, technology, engineering and mathematics support for ocean and coasts management. South Africa commemorated the 2021 National Marine Week from 7 to 11 October.

National Marine Week is celebrated every year during the second week of October. Its purpose is to create awareness of the marine and coastal environment, the promotion of sustainable use and conservation of these resources, for the benefit of both present and future generations.

Projects, programmes and initiatives Low carbon and climate resilient economy

South Africa is a board member of three significant funding bodies – the Green Climate Fund (GCF), World Bank's Climate Investment Fund and the Global Environment Facility. The memberships enable the country to shape the policies, programming and governance of these respective institutions. The country is also a member of the Partnership for Action on Green Economy.

The SANBI and the Development Bank of Southern Africa are accredited as South African Direct Access Entities of the GCF. The increasing frequency and intensity of extreme weather events around South Africa – from flash flooding in some parts of the country to devastating drought in other parts, has prompted government to sign the Paris Agreement to Combat Climate Change as an acknowledgement that the problem requires a global effort. The country continues to play an active role on the international stage through participation in a number of key multilateral environmental agreements and their associated negotiations.

South Africa's Green Economy Strategy

There is increasing global recognition that today's economic growth and development trajectory is driven by the worldwide shift towards sustainable green economies.

South Africa views green economy as a sustainable development path based on addressing the interdependence between economic growth, social protection and natural ecosystem. The South African approach is to ensure that green economy programmes are to be supported by practical and implementable action plans, emphasising the importance of building on existing best processes, programmes, initiatives and indigenous knowledge, in key sectors, towards a resource-efficient, low-carbon and pro-employment growth path and that government alone cannot manage and fund a just transition to a green economy – the private sector and civil society must play a fundamental role.

Through the DFFE's Green Economy Strategy, the department continues to work towards promoting equitable, inclusive, sustained and environmentally sound economic growth and social development to the benefit of all.

The Green Economy Strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- · green buildings and the built environment;
- sustainable transport and infrastructure;
- · clean energy and energy efficiency;
- · natural resource conservation and management;
- · sustainable waste management;
- · water management;
- · sustainable consumption and production; and
- · agriculture food production and forestry.

As outlined in the Integrated Resource Plan, by 2030 the DFFE aims to have sliced the country's energy demand significantly through technological innovation, good behavioural practice and public commitment to more efficient, sustainable and equitable energy use.

Green Fund

Government set up the Green Fund to support the transition to a low-carbon, resource-efficient and climate-resilient development path, delivering high impact economic, environmental and social benefits. The DFFE appointed the Development Bank of Southern Africa as the implementing agent of the Green Fund.

The Green Fund aims to provide catalytic finance to facilitate investment in green initiatives that will support poverty reduction and job creation. The Green Fund is additional and complementary to existing fiscal allocations supporting the transitioning of the South African economy to a low-carbon, resource-efficient and climate-resilient growth path.

The Green Fund responds to market weaknesses currently hampering South Africa's transition to a green economy by:

- promoting innovative and high impact green programmes and projects;
- reinforcing climate policy objectives through green interventions;
- building an evidence base for the expansion of the green economy;

and

 attracting additional resources to support South Africa's green economy development.

Sustainable development and the green economy

South Africa continues to play an instrumental role within other global coordination mechanisms.

The final adoption of the Paris Agreement to Combat Climate Change in December 2015 represented a major step forward in international cooperation towards sustainable green, low-carbon and climate-resilient economies globally. During the Paris negotiating process, South Africa played a key role as Chair of the Group of 77 plus China, representing 134 developing countries, and as lead negotiator for the Africa group.

In April 2016, South Africa joined 174 other countries in New York as a signatory to the Paris Agreement. The DFFE started domestic ratification processes that would enable the entry into force of the agreement in 2020.

This new legal framework will guide international efforts to limit greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and enable the transition to climate resilient societies and economies, particularly through the commitment by developed countries to provide financial, technology and capacity building support to developing countries in their effort to address the climate change challenge.

In the lead-up to the Paris climate change negotiations, South Africa submitted its Intended Nationally Determined Contribution (INDC) to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC). South Africa's INDC is guided by the National Climate Change Response Policy and outlines national goals for the country's adaptation effort; and it clearly outlines that South Africa will peak and plateau its GHG emissions by 2030.

Good Green Deeds

The programme is led by the DFFE and aims to promote environmental actions that take into consideration sustainable living practices. At the centre of this campaign are principles of environmental justice, an understanding that becoming environmentally conscious starts with one small action, and one small action can go on to inspire global change. South African citizens have to work together to restore and maintain mother nature's majesty.

Climate Change Response Policy

The National Climate Change Response Policy is guided by the vision of the NDP of a transition to an inclusive, equitable, low-carbon and climate-resilient economy and society by 2030. By 2030, South Africa plans to have an efficient, lower-carbon public transport system that makes everyday use of private vehicles an unnecessary extravagance.

The development of the first phase of desired emission reduction objectives and carbon budgets are well underway. The Carbon Budget System is being introduced in five-year phases – an initial phase from

2016 to 2020, and the subsequent phases from 2021 onwards.

Priority focus areas are communities most vulnerable to the impacts of climate change, namely the indigent, rural dwellers and women.

Given its demonstrated capacity, the SANBI has been appointed the national implementing entity of the Global Adaptation Fund.

Pilot projects include the Greater uMngeni Catchment area in KwaZulu-Natal, the Mopani District in Limpopo and the Namaqua District in Northern Cape.

These projects, to the value of US\$10 million, include the enhancement of early warning systems, protecting local communities from extreme weather events, and promoting climate smart agriculture practices.

The SAWS continues to host the Global Atmospheric Watch Station at the Cape Point, which is one of only three in Africa. This network arose from the need to understand and control the increasing influence of human activity on the global atmosphere and provide climate change information and services.

Presidential Climate Change Coordinating Commission

In December 2020, President Cyril Ramaphosa announced the appointment of members of the inaugural Presidential Climate Change Coordinating Commission (PCCCC).

The establishment of the commission emanated from the Presidential Jobs Summit held in October 2018, when social partners agreed that a statutory body be formed to coordinate and oversee the just transition towards a low-carbon, inclusive, climate change resilient economy and society.

The PCCCC is tasked with advising on South Africa's climate change response. This includes mitigation and adaptation to climate change and its associated impacts. It will furthermore provide independent monitoring and review of South Africa's progress in meeting its emissions reduction and adaptation goals.

Under the commission's terms of reference, it will advise on and facilitate a common understanding of a just transition, cognisant of the socio-economic, environmental and technological implications of climate change. This covers adaptation, mitigation as well as means of implementation.

It will also provide a platform for the engagement of key stakeholders on the National Employment Vulnerability Assessment and Sector Job Resilient Plans and ensure reporting of progress towards the implementation of these plans.

Chaired by President Ramaphosa, the PCCCC comprises representatives from government departments and state entities, business organisations, labour, academia, civil society, research institutions and traditional leadership.

People and parks

South Africa is home to more than nine million ha of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites, equating to about 8% of the country's land.

These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving South Africa's ecosystems, protecting high biodiversity value and providing ecosystem services. Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely depended on by these communities.

Wildlife Economy

South Africa is the third most biologically diverse country in the world, and therefore has one of the largest natural capital assets. This biodiversity is not only viable to the economic well-being of the country but can also be used as a vehicle for social upliftment.

The country's biodiversity comes with a number of challenges, ranging from poaching to overexploitation. The Wildlife Economy in South Africa is centred on the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources, including biodiversity-derived products for trade and bioprospecting, the hunting industry, agriculture and agro-processing of indigenous crops, vegetables and livestock breeds, and indigenous marine resources and fisheries.

The focus of the Wildlife Economy is centred on the socio-economic benefits of eco-tourism, co-managed conservation areas and ancillary services to protected areas. Harvesting indigenous biological resources is a significant source of income for communities. In many cases, one harvester supports an entire household, but the overdependence on these have led to the depletion and, at the extreme, the extinction of some of the biodiversity.

For example, the existing commercial market for trade in South African bitter aloe, or aloe ferox is well established, as is the trade in pelargonium sidoides, buchu, rooibos, honeybush, devil's claw and crocodile fat/oil. These indigenous biological resources are predominantly used in the manufacturing of herbal medicines, cosmetics, food flavours and fragrances.

Additional products with commercial potential for industrial or pharmaceutical application are microorganisms, marine organisms, gums and resins, and venoms. Other significant drivers of the biodiversity economy include trophy hunting and the associated industry of taxidermy, sale of live game and sale of game meat. Further opportunities exist in the sale of game meat and skins for leather, bones and horns.

Another example of biodiversity-based industry is in silk production. Other biodiversity-based products include bee-keeping products (honey, wax, propollis and royal jelly), mopane worms, and ostrich eggshells and feathers.

Managing oceans and coastal conservation

The DFFE continues to support annual research voyages to Antarctica, Marion Island and Gough Island.

Servicing the contract with African Marine Solutions for the manning and operation of two research vessels, SA Agulhas II and SA Algoa, is one of the major cost drivers in the Oceans and Coasts programme.

amounting to a projected R557 million over the medium term.

Implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy forms part of Operation Phakisa, a fast results delivery programme launched by government in 2014. An estimated R311.1 million is provided over the MTEF period in the Oceans and Coasts programme for implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy, which includes activities in marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, marine protection services, ocean governance, small harbours, and coastal and marine tourism.

Antarctic and Southern Ocean Strategy

South Africa's Antarctic and Southern Ocean Strategy (ASOS) provides for the coordination and implementation of the Antarctic Treaties Act, 1996 (Act 60 of 1996), relating to research, conservation, sustainable resource use and environmental management in support of the African agenda.

This strategy was approved the day after the world commemorated Antarctica Day, which marked the 61st anniversary of the signing of the Antarctic Treaty. The treaty set aside almost 10% of the Earth forever to be used exclusively for peaceful purposes and in the interests of all humanity. Antarctica Day is not only a celebration of this important event, but also serves to highlight how diverse nations continue to work together peacefully using science as a common language for cooperation and stewardship of this global commons.

The ASOS outlines national interests for the continued participation in the Antarctic Treaty and sets out the vision that Antarctica and the Southern Ocean are understood, valued, and protected in the interest of South Africa, Africa and the world, which is in line with the founding principles of protecting Antarctica as set out by the original signatories to the treaty.

The strategy is the product of extensive engagement with key stakeholders, including the key government departments (and their entities) that are partners in South Africa's National Antarctic Programme – the departments of Science and Innovation, International Relations and Coordination, Public Works and Infrastructure, and Transport. The DFFE also engaged newly identified role players in the space – the Agricultural Research Council, Medical Research Council, Human Science Research Council, and others.

The strategy outlines an extensive implementation plan over the next five-year period (2021 - 2025).

Entities

iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority

The iSimangaliso was established in 2000 in terms of the World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999). Its mandate is to ensure that effective and active measures are taken to protect and conserve the park; promote the empowerment of historically disadvantaged communities living adjacent to the park; promote, manage, oversee, market and facilitate optimal tourism and related development in the park; and encourage sustained investment and job creation. The authority's ongoing aim is to support and maintain biodiversity

conservation, and uphold the park's status as a world heritage site.

Over the MTEF period, the authority will focus on conserving the environment in the park to mitigate the impact of deforestation and illegal developments on flora and animal habitats, especially those of critically endangered and threatened species; monitoring compliance with governing legislation; removing invasive alien plants from a targeted 90 000 ha of protected wetland area; and ensuring that at least 8 000 m³ of earthworks in wetlands is rehabilitated.

To support these activities, expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.6%, from R236.1 million in 2021/22 to R270.1 million in 2024/25.

The authority expects to derive 87.2% (R705.8 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 3.8%, from R219.6 million in 2021/22 to R245.7 million in 2024/25; and the remainder through visitor fees.

The Marine Living Resources Fund

The fund was established in terms of the Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998). Its mandate and core business are to manage the development and sustainable use of South Africa's marine resources and protect the integrity and quality of the marine ecosystem. The fund also ensures fair and equitable access to South Africa's marine resources for the benefit of all citizens.

Over the medium term, the fund will focus on conducting a targeted 16 500 enforcement and compliance operations in prioritised fisheries sectors, enabling the effective protection of South Africa's marine resources, creating a targeted 1 892 jobs in coastal and rural communities, and broadening the scope of the aquaculture sector by increasing the number of locations and species farmed. To fund these activities, expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.4%, from R481.2 million in 2021/22 to R487 million in 2024/25.

The fund expects to receive 66.4% (R976.7 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department and the remainder through levies on fish and fish products; application, licence, permit and harbour fees; and fines and confiscations.

South African National Biodiversity Institute

The SANBI was established in 2004 in terms of the NEMBA of 2004. Its mandate is to monitor and report on the status of South Africa's biodiversity; all listed threatened or protected species, ecosystems and invasive species; and the impact of any genetically modified organism released into the environment.

Over the medium term, the institute will focus on providing biodiversity science and policy advice; maintaining and improving the existing national botanical gardens; and establishing 2 new national botanical gardens – in Kwelera (Eastern Cape) and Thohoyandou (Limpopo). Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 3.4%, from R917.2 million in 2021/22 to R827.3 million in 2024/25.

The institute expects to derive 80.7% (R1.9 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department and the remainder through entry fees charged at botanical and zoological gardens.

South African National Parks

The SANParks' mandate is to conserve, protect, control and manage national parks and other defined protected areas and their biodiversity. The entity plays a significant role in the economy, as the presence of an efficiently managed system of national parks is a key component of the national tourism economy, and acts as a catalyst for local development. Through the implementation of the EPWP, the entity has provided significant support to small, medium and micro enterprises, particularly in rural areas.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on managing more than 4 million hectares of terrestrial and 369 657 hectares of marine protected biodiversity through a system of 21 national parks and 10 marine protected areas. While doing this, it aims to fight poaching, particularly rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park and abalone poaching in Western Cape; develop and upgrade infrastructure within national parks; and acquire 24 000 hectares of land as part of its land inclusion plan.

Other initiatives that are intended to stimulate the development of rural enterprises include Wildlife Economy programmes, which involve the donation and loaning of wildlife, and the provision of technical expertise to communities and emerging game farmers to participate in the wildlife industry value chain. The entity also forms part of the National Wildlife Crime Reaction Unit, a multi-stakeholder operation established to combat poaching crimes in South Africa. Strategies to combat wildlife crime, such as poaching, involve the technological improvement of early warning systems and risk assessments, better coordination with law enforcement agencies and the deployment of additional rangers.

The SANParks is responsible for 21 national parks in seven provinces, with a total area of just over four million ha and comprising 67% of the protected areas under state management. The national parks include:

- · Addo Elephant National Park,
- · Agulhas National Park,
- · Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park,
- · Augrabies Falls National Park,
- Bontebok National Park,
- Camdeboo National Park,
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park,
- · Golden Gate Highlands National Park,
- · Karoo National Park,
- · Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park,
- · Kruger National Park,
- · Mapungubwe National Park,
- · Marakele National Park,
- · Mokala National Park,
- · Mountain Zebra National Park,
- · Namaqua National Park,
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves),
- · Tankwa Karoo National Park, and

· West Coast National Park.

Tourism activities within the parks include self-drive safaris, gameviewing, accommodation tariffs, adventure activities, such as guided walks and hiking, birdwatching, 4x4 trails, sightseeing, cultural and historical experiences, mountain biking, golf, canoeing and swimming.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 19.3%, from R2.1 billion in 2021/22 to R3.5 billion in 2024/25, in line with an expected increase in revenue as national parks welcome more visitors following the easing of COVID-19 restrictions. The entity expects to generate 67.5% (R6.6 billion) of its revenue over the period ahead through tourism activities in national parks and the remainder through transfers from the DFFE.

South African National Parks Week

The 2021 South African National Parks Week was held from 22 to 28 November. It is an annual campaign that gives all South African citizens the opportunity to enter most of the parks, managed by the SANParks, for free, with the exclusion of Namaqua National Park and Boulders section at Table Mountain National Park.

The free access to parks does not include free access to accommodation facilities and other tourist activities. Every year, the SANParks aims to increase the number of citizens that are granted free access to national parks during this time.

South African Weather Service

The SAWS's core mandate is to provide two distinct services: the public good service, funded by government; and commercial services, where the user-pay principle applies.

Key activities include:

- maintaining, extending and improving the quality of meteorological services;
- providing risk management information;
- collecting meteorological data over South Africa and the surrounding southern oceans; and
- fulfilling government's international obligations under the conventions of the World Meteorological Organisation and the International Civil Aviation Organisation.

In an effort to combat climate change, the SAWS has adopted the approach of building a WeatherSMART nation. This is expected to enhance the early warning system to ensure that climate and weather data, products and applications are available to all South Africans. A WeatherSMART nation is Safe, More informed, Alert, Resilient and has Timeous access to relevant information and services. Over the medium term, the entity will focus on providing the following services: timeous and accurate impact-based early warnings, including climate-response initiatives for inclement weather conditions; and alerts and advisories services to safeguard lives and property against the impact of severe weather. The weather service also plans to expand and optimise its infrastructure to increase its capacity to generate new scientific insights in its field. As a result, expenditure is expected increase at an average annual rate of 7.1%, from R482.4 million in 2021/22 to R592.1 million in 2021/25.

The weather service expects to derive 66.5% (R1.1 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department and the remainder through commercial activities and services. These include the regulation of tariffs for aviation information supplied to the aviation industry; the rendering of non-regulated commercial activities such as the provision of lightning data; the sale of products to the water and energy sectors; and the sale of air quality-related products to various municipalities. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Role players

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

In support of the NDP, government is working through the SANBI to spearhead an innovative programme of work on analysing ecological infrastructure and costing natural capital. This body of knowledge will empower the DFFE to make informed development-related decisions.

Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change. The SANBI is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision making.

Its biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions, such as grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo, are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way.

The SANBI is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through the inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. It is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

The institute operates environmental education programmes within its national botanical gardens, while outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

The SANBI is South Africa's official body for facilitating access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UNFCCC to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol.

Environmental resources National botanical gardens

The SANBI manages the 10 national botanical gardens, classified as conservation gardens, in seven provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural vegetation and associated biodiversity within their boundaries.

The national botanical gardens are natural escapes close to some of the country's urban centres, offering visitors a taste of the country's uniquely rich and colourful biodiversity. They feature facilities such as restaurants, function rooms and conference venues and include activities such as hikes, picnics and shopping.

The botanical gardens are:

- · Kirstenbosh, Cape Town,
- · Pretoria, Tshwane,
- · Harold Porter, Betty's Bay,
- · Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort,
- · Hantam, Nieuwoudtville,
- · Free State, Bloemfontein,
- · Karoo Desert, Worcester,
- · KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg,
- · Lowveld, Nelspruit, and
- · Kwelera, East London.

The SANBI is also managing what is scheduled to become South Africa's 11th national botanical garden – the Thohoyandou Botanical Garden, in the far north-eastern corner of Limpopo.

National Herbarium

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, houses over one million scientific plant specimens in southern Africa.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

Protected areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), founded in 1992 at the Rio Summit, is a legally binding agreement on the use and conservation of biological diversity.

The CBD provides the framework for 196 parties to guide efforts to conserve and sustainably use biological diversity and equitably share the benefits from the use of genetic resources. In October 2010, the parties approved the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity for 2011 – 2020, including 20 Aichi Targets. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

South Africa has 528 protected areas, of which 20 are marine, totalling 7.5 million ha or 6.2% of the country's land area. South Africa plans to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country.

The DFFE works closely with landowners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship Programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped. Access is strictly controlled, with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for the long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible. TFCAs facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development.

The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

The seven TFCAs are:

- · Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa),
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe),
- · Greater Mapungubwe,
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe),
- · Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa,
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Eswatini), and
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

Biosphere reserves

A biosphere designation is given by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development. Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management are tested. This helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

 The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to

- 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.

In the north there is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.

The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.

The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is recognised by the

UNESCO in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

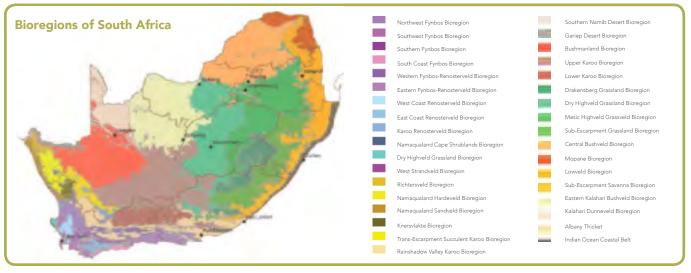
World heritage sites

A UNESCO world heritage site is listed by the organisation as being of special cultural or physical significance. The organisation catalogues, names and conserves sites of outstanding cultural or natural importance to the common heritage of humanity.

While each world heritage site remains part of the legal territory of the province wherein the site is located, the UNESCO considers it in the interest of the international community to preserve each site.

For site to be awarded a world heritage status, it has to be recognised as having global historical or environmental significance, signify a phenomenal achievement of humanity or reveal ancient civilisations. The recognition allows the country to access funds for conservation from the World Heritage Fund. To be accepted onto the list, a country must meet stringent criteria and show how the site will be conserved.

South Africa has 10 world heritage sites proclaimed by the UNESCO:



- Robben Island is situated 11 kilometres (km) offshore from Cape Town the island is most famous as the place where Nelson Mandela was imprisoned. It is now home to the world-renowned Robben Island Museum and has become a popular tourist attraction.
- iSimangaliso was listed as South Africa's first world heritage site in December 1999 in recognition of its natural beauty and unique global values The 332 000-ha park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa's largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000-year-old coastal dunes among the highest in the world. The name iSimangaliso means "miracle" and "wonder". The park also has four Ramsar sites.
- The Cradle of Humankind consists of the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai. The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West province and Mokopane Valley in Limpopo. The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3.5 million years. Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite

- deposited around 2.5 billion years ago. In April 2010, a new species of hominid, Australopithecus sediba, estimated to be two million years old, was discovered in the Cradle of Humankind.
- The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site) is a world heritage site covering 242 813 ha (2 428 square km (km²). The park spans parts of South Africa and Lesotho. The park includes the Royal Natal National Park, a provincial park, and the Drakensberg National Park, which covers part of the Drakensberg, the highest mountain in southern Africa. Under the Ramsar Convention, the park is in the List of Wetlands of International Importance.
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site: In September 2011, the DFFE, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed a historical Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with the NEMA of 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site. According to the MoA, the integrity of the world heritage site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.
- Cape Floral Region: The smallest of the six recognised floral kingdoms of the world, is an area of extraordinarily high diversity and home to more than 9 000 vascular plant species, of which 69% are endemic. Much of this diversity is associated with the fynbos biome. The economical worth of fynbos biodiversity, based on harvests of fynbos products (e.g. wildflowers) and ecotourism, is estimated to be in the region of R77 million a year. In July 2015, the UNESCO approved the extension of the Cape Floral Region Protected Areas World Heritage Site. At the time of inscription, the site was made up of eight protected areas comprising about 553 000 ha. The eight protected areas are located in the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. The extension brings the size of the world heritage site to 1 094 742 ha and increases the number of protected area clusters making up the Cape Floral Region from eight to 13.
- The Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the North West province. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or Iharu oms.
- Vredefort Dome: About 120 km south-west of Johannesburg, is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure, or astrobleme. Dating back more than two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. The Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of

- evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.
- The Khomani Cultural Landscape covers 959 100 ha, forming part
 of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park and including the whole Kalahari
 Gemsbok National Park, associated with the former San huntergatherers. It is a vast desert area associated with Khomani
 San culture since the Stone Age.
- The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains: Situated in Mpumalanga, the site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. These represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3.25 to 3.6 billion years. It features meteor-impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (4.6 to 3.8 billion years ago). It has attracted researchers from all over the world because of its most exposed layers of rock formations. Scientists found fossilised bacteria under thin layers of rock thought to be 3.2 billion years old.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal. Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth. Wetlands make up only 2.4% of South Africa's surface area but they are responsible for a disproportionately high value of ecological infrastructure that provides critical ecosystem services such as water purification and flood regulation, among others.

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in

ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up purification plants/facilities.

South Africa was one of the first six countries to become a signatory to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, called the Ramsar Convention, when it came into force in 1975. It is an intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

The DFFE is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme, which ensures that the country's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

South Africa has 22 Ramsar sites, including:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- · De Hoop Vlei
- · De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- · Makuleke Wetlands
- · Ndumo Game Reserve
- · Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- · Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- · Orange River Mouth Wetland
- · Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- · St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- · Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- · Wilderness Lakes.

World Wetlands Day is celebrated annually on 2 February. World Wetlands Day 2021 was held under the theme; "Wetlands and Water". Wetlands are rich with biodiversity and are a habitat for a dense variety of plant and animal species. Latest estimates show a global decline of biodiversity, while wetlands are disappearing three times faster than forests. The theme is a unique opportunity to highlight wetland biodiversity, its status, why it matters and promote actions to reverse its loss.

South Africa is one of the contracting parties to the Ramsar Convention. One of the obligations of the contracting parties to the convention is to commemorate World Wetlands Day.

South Africa is a water scarce country, and the water in many streams is polluted. Both droughts and floods are common. In this regard, wetlands play a vital role by removing toxic substances and sediment from water, while also improving downstream water quality and the overall health of communities.

Wetlands are able to reduce the severity of droughts and floods by regulating stream flow. They also help to purify water and provide a habitat for many different plants and animals. Besides these indirect benefits to society, wetlands provide many direct benefits in the form of resources, such as fibre for making crafts, as well as recreational opportunities. However, lack of community awareness on the value and benefits of wetlands often leads to their transformation by humans.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with the SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- · Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- · Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- · False Bay, Western Cape
- · Goukamma, Western Cape
- · Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- · iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape
- · Robberg, Western Cape
- · Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- · Stilbaai, Western Cape
- · Table Mountain, Western Cape
- · Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- · Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 in Pretoria, and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it every year.

The 85-ha NZG houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species. It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa.

The species are managed across two facilities stretching into Gauteng (Pretoria) and Limpopo (Mokopane). About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums and the African Association of Zoos and Aquaria, the NZG participates in several endangered species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance. Among the endangered species the NZG

contributes to conserving are the cheetah, rhino, ground hornbill, redbilled oxpecker and several endangered antelope species.

The animal collections of the NZG are the direct responsibility of the Animal Collection and Conservation Department which operates in two facilities: the main facility in Tshwane and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre 200 km north of Tshwane.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It also plays an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals.

The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes involving:

- · wattled crane recovery;
- · amphibian conservation;
- · ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys;
- · vulture conservation; and
- · chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute.

The Endangered Wildlife Trust is a major partner. Mitchell Park in Durban is the country's second-oldest zoo after the NZG. There are about 30 projects on the cards for the zoo, including cheetah and chimpanzee enclosures.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering 1 333 ha.

The centre supplements the NZG's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and its own animal collection. It is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna, such as the lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino. The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre near Pretoria is best known for its captive breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the South African Red Data Book — Terrestrial Mammals in 1986. De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species.

The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation in coat pattern and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs.

It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Limpopo was established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins as well as white-backed, hooded, white-headed and lappet-faced vultures. The centre is also known for its wild dog breeding programme. The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild

cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG), the bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

Aguariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London. The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish.

It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged-tooth sharks. The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, and various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays.

The Two Oceans Aquarium at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, has more than 3 000 specimens representing some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape Coast.

The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water species, and is the fifth-largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises of Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World has a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium, the largest dolphinarium in Africa.

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG houses 80 reptile species from all over the world. The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations. The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle, crocodile and fish ponds; the water monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere has been created – this is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit in Mpumalanga, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Managing environmental resources Wildlife protection

The Convention on the International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) states that big cats, which are among the most widely recognised and admired animals, are facing many and varied threats caused mostly by human activities worldwide.

South Africa adheres to the principle of sustainable utilisation of natural resources, as well as principles set out in the NDP aimed at creating a climate-resilient society while growing the economy and increasing jobs. As such, a range of measures have been introduced to ensure that lion, leopard and cheetah populations are conserved and properly managed. This includes the implementation of a Biodiversity Management Plan for the African Lion.

The Scientific Authority of South Africa conducted a Non-Detriment Finding (NDF) as required by the CITES. The NDF for lions state that there are currently no major threats to the wild and managed lion populations in South Africa, although the management of re-introduced wild lion needs some improvement. Minor, but non-detrimental threats include over-utilisation, disease, poaching and conflict with communities around protected areas.

Wildlife crime not only threatens natural resources, but also the economy through financial burdens and the loss of economic and development opportunities. As a country richly endowed with natural resources, South Africa is not immune to these challenges with criminal syndicates targeting iconic species, such as the cycad, rhino, elephant and lion, as well as species not often considered as being under threat – birds, tortoises, lizards and snakes. In the 2020/21 financial year, the Green Scorpions conducted three and a half thousand inspections, issued 971 administrative enforcement notices, and handed over 203 criminal investigations to the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) for prosecution.

The declaration of wildlife crime as a priority crime in South Africa has resulted in a multidisciplinary, multi-sectoral approach focused on collaboration through the national security structure. This involves border and customs officials, the NPA, the South African Police Service (SAPS) and institutions such as the Airports Company of South Africa, which manages international airports.

The country has also introduced the development of critical skills aimed at increasing its capacity to detect and investigate these crimes. The DFFE is currently working with World Wide Fund for Nature on a project to increase the country's ability to tackle wildlife trafficking. This project, funded by the United States Department of State's Bureau of International & Law Enforcement Affairs, focuses on the development of further training materials to bolster the country's national compliance and enforcement programme, including an e-learning platform for officials, audio visual materials, specific curriculum and manuals.

Traveller awareness material has also been developed to highlight the threat that wildlife crime poses to the rich biodiversity and encouraging people not to support the illegal trade in wildlife.

EMIs in the DFFE check consignments of wildlife for exports from

South Africa to ensure that they meet all legal requirements. About 300 legal wildlife-related consignments are exported/imported on a monthly basis at the OR Tambo International Airport.

The South African Revenue Service (SARS) K9 unit at OR Tambo International Airport uses specialist sniffer dogs to detect attempts to smuggle wildlife into South Africa.

Rhino poachino

Rhino poaching has been declared a National Priority Crime, and government continues to work as a team in the implementation of the Integrated Strategic Management of Rhinoceros.

This is a multi-sectoral, interdisciplinary approach which involves various stakeholders, including the SANParks, the Department of Home Affairs, the Department of Defence, the the SAPS and the Hawks, the State Security Agency, the SARS, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DOJ&CD) and provincial conservation authorities.

South Africa's largest game reserve, the Kruger National Park, houses a court which is expected to combat rhino poaching. The Skukuza Regional Court periodically sits once a week.

While South Africa has recorded a 24% decrease in rhino poaching compared to the pre-COVID period in 2019, there has been an increase in poaching on private properties. A total of 451 rhino were poached in South Africa in 2021, with 327 poached within government reserves, while 124 were poached on private property.

In 2021, a total of 209 rhino were poached for their horns in South African National Parks (SANParks) – all in the Kruger National Park.

This was a decrease in comparison to 2020, when 247 rhino were poached within the national parks. None of SANParks' smaller rhino parks experienced rhino losses from poaching in 2021, in comparison to the two rhinos that were poached in 2020.

The steady decline in rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park is related to an increase in the intensity of anti-poaching activities. A close working relationship between the police's endangered species unit, the SANParks Environmental Crimes Inspectorate has resulted in increased arrests and convictions.

South Africa remains committed to safeguarding the country's rhino populations, and will continue to work with the private sector, committed non-governmental organisations, as well as authorities in transit and destination countries, to combat wildlife crime. In 2021, there were 189 arrests in connection with poaching activities, with 77 of them within the Kruger National Park and 109 outside the park.

In the 38 verdicts handed down by the courts, 37 cases resulted in the conviction of 61 accused rhino poachers/traffickers. In addition, SANParks, provincial nature reserves and private rhino owners are dehorning rhino to deter poachers, while SANParks is investigating the feasibility of additional actions such as anti-poaching initiatives focused on apprehending poachers and establishing additional founder populations outside the Kruger National Park.

Managing rhino populations

The biological management initiative focuses on continued movement of rhinos to expand ranges and support rhino strongholds. In small parks and provincial reserves, the translocation of rhinos seeks to mimic how young animals disperse naturally.

Within the Kruger National Park, the translocation of rhinos from the Kruger as part of South Africa's biological management innovations of expanding ranges and establishing additional rhino strongholds are challenged by the emergence of bovine tuberculosis in both black and white rhino, albeit at low incidence.

South Africa's veterinary regulations require several procedures to ensure that translocated rhinos do not serve as a source of spreading the disease into commercial stock production areas of South Africa. The development of efficient systems to overcome this challenge is in progress.

Even so, innovative biological management have used translocations within the Kruger National Park as a mechanism to direct poaching to focus less on cows. This goes hand-in-hand with initiatives to dehorn rhinos embedded in strategic approaches that target individuals that frequent poaching hotspots, but more importantly, approaches that minimise the losses of cows.

Complimenting these interventions are guarding initiatives that focus on regular individual monitoring of individual rhinos. These combinations of interventions seek to maximise the breeding potential of both black and white rhinos.

The integrated initiatives of the SANParks to manage its rhino population have had varied successes. Within the Kruger National Park, the continued onslaught of poaching resulted in a continued decline of rhinos.

World Ranger Day

World Ranger Day is celebrated annually on 31 July. The 2022 event was held under the theme: "Diversity". In commemoration of the day, the DFFE paid tribute to field rangers for the incredible work they do to keep national parks and the country's iconic species safe.

World Ranger Day, which is supported by the International Rangers Federation, is held annually to commemorate rangers killed or injured in the line of duty, and celebrates the work rangers do to protect the our natural and cultural treasures.

In South Africa, game rangers stand up to poachers almost daily as they battle to end the decimation of wildlife species, ranging from the poaching of rhino and abalone to the illegal removal of plants such as cycads and Proteas.

To support the efforts of rangers, the DFFE, in collaboration with provincial conservation and parks authorities, the private sector and NGOs, continues to implement the decisions of the Rhino Lab (a discussion platform with outcomes aligned with key areas of rhino conservation, including management of rhino populations and law enforcement), with the latest initiative focusing on demarcating specific wildlife zones to ensure that additional resources are directed to high risk areas.

The DFFE's Environmental Enforcement Fusion Centre coordinates

and improves the reactive and proactive response to rhino poaching and other wildlife crime. It has begun to consolidate rhino protection efforts across the country, standardising and boosting tactical level anti-poaching and introducing integrated information-led enforcement.

This strengthens the essential collaboration with the SAPS, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation, the DOJ&CD and other sectors of the security forces to gather, analyse and share intelligence on wildlife trafficking to ensure that the international syndicate-related crimes can be effectively dealt with.

International cooperation

International cooperation remains a critical component of the overall response strategy to halt rhino poaching and related wildlife crime. South Africa continues to engage countries where rhino horn seizures take place in order to request that samples of the rhino horn DNA be sent to the country for analysis in line with the CITES resolutions.

This enables the country to link the seized horns to poaching cases and live rhino or rhino horn stockpiles, thus providing key information to further support investigations and understand transit routes. The Hawks have also received very good co-operation from China, Hong Kong, Malaysia, Singapore, Vietnam and Japan in their efforts to combat wildlife trafficking.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of the world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The DFFE developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the DFFE plans to implement the National Programme of Action for Land-based Sources of Pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The DFFE has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean. The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km2 Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the DFFE boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery control officers and 100 honorary fishery control officers, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery Control Officers Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental protection vessels, as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the Lillian Ngoyi, Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge and Sarah

Baartman. They patrol up to the 200 nautical mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ as well as around the Prince Edward Islands.

The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Community coastal states.

The Phakisa approach

Operation Phakisa enables government to implement its policies and programmes better, faster and more effectively.

The initiative was designed to fast-track the implementation of solutions on critical development issues. This is a unique initiative to address issues highlighted in the NDP Vision 2030 such as poverty, unemployment and inequality.

The DFFE has registered notable progress with regards to Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy; Chemicals and Waste Phakisa and Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economies.

Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy

South Africa is a maritime nation with jurisdiction over one of the largest exclusive economic zones in the world. The country's oceans represent a significant asset for current and future generations, with enormous economic potential, in aquaculture, bioprospecting, marine ecotourism, extractive industries, and less obvious benefits of healthy ecosystem services, such as climate regulation, carbon storage and waste absorption.

By May 2021, the growing Oceans Economy had contributed R41 billion to South Africa's GDP, creating 26 764 jobs in six focus areas, including marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, small harbours development, coastal and marine tourism, marine protection services and ocean governance.

The DFFE continues to unlock the economic potential of South Africa's oceans, growing the GDP and creating more sustainable jobs – while ensuring that the country's oceans and coastal ecosystems are sustainably managed.

Highlights include the development of the National Guideline Towards the Establishment of Coastal Management Lines. This is intended to minimise risks posed by short- and long-term coastal processes such as storm surges, erosion and sea level rise. A national coastal access strategy is also being development to provide guidance around the public's access to closed off beaches.

Marine pollution is another challenge that threatens fragile ecosystems. South Africa has a number of measures in place to tackle this problem, including the National Pollution Laboratory operated by the Walter Sisulu University, which is expected to start working in the near future. The lab will allow for in depth analysis of the samples that could not be done through mobile laboratories.

In addition, South Africa is amongst the countries that have endorsed the UN Environmental Programme's Clean Seas Campaign. The campaign is aimed at stepping up international, regional and national efforts to combat marine litter. As part of the campaign, the DFFE has announced the piloting of its Source-to-Sea Initiative – a strategy to

investigate and combat pollution, in particular plastic pollution which threatens both freshwater and marine ecosystems.

The oceans have the potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the GDP and create over one million jobs by 2033.

Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy MPAs

The gazetting of a network of 20 representative Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy MPAs, has increased South Africa's marine ecosystem area under protection in the country's EEZ, from 0.4% to 5.4%, to provide protection to 90% of habitat types, as well as contribute to global protection in line with South Africa's international commitments.

The network strives to support multiple objectives for biodiversity in alignment with the Oceans Economy goals. The MPAs represent seamounts, submarine canyons, volcanic pinnacles and a variety of ecosystem types on the shelf, continental margin and abyss in both the Indian and Atlantic oceans. It also provides the first protection for several threatened and fragile ecosystem types, including threatened mud, gravel, and shelf edge habitats and sensitive deep water scleractinian, stylasterine and soft coral-dominated ecosystem types.

The 20 MPAs will, among other things, contribute to fisheries sustainability, advance marine ecotourism and help maintain resilience in ecosystems that are under stress from climate change.

Work on these MPAs dates back to 2014, when government endorsed a plan to achieve, as part of Operation Phakisa: Ocean Economy, a viable network of MPAs. South Africa's ocean space, which is one of the most varied in the world, is highly productive with rich biodiversity providing for living and non-living resources that contribute significantly to the country's economy and to job creation. MPAs provide safe spaces in which fish can breed undisturbed.

They are essential to maintain eco-certification of the South African deep-sea trawl fishery. This certification process assesses whether habitat and nursery areas for hake fishery are adequately protected. MPAs also contribute to growing South Africa's marine eco-tourism sector by providing undisturbed natural habitat for whales, sharks, seals, dolphins, turtles and seabirds for international and domestic tourists to experience.

An adequate network of MPAs will also provide the basis for ongoing resilience to the impact of climate change. Oceans are an essential component of the climate system, absorbing and transferring heat, and regulating the exchange of carbon dioxide with the atmosphere. With increasing carbon dioxide levels and rising ocean temperatures, this regulatory capacity is at risk. The network of MPAs will assist in building ecological resilience, and therefore social and economic resilience in the growing Oceans Economy.

Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economy

South Africa has a multi-faceted approach to the management of its rich natural heritage. The approach focuses on an inclusive, value-chain approach to the development of the biodiversity economy, taking into consideration the fact that communities are the primary custodians of the country's biodiversity.

Operation Phakisa: Chemicals and Waste

Waste economy has the potential to address inequality, poverty alleviation and create jobs. The DFFE continues to support waste pickers through various programmes, such as the Recycling Enterprise Support Programme.

The primary objective of the programme is to provide developmental funding for projects in the form of start-up grants. These projects are either start-up or pre-existing enterprises establishing buy-back centres, material recovery facilities, construction and demolishing solutions and plastic palletisation plants in line with the Operation Phakisa initiatives.

With regard to chemicals, Cabinet has recommended that South Africa should ratify the Minamata Convention on Mercury and the Kigali Amendment to the Montreal Protocol on the Protection of the Ozone Layer. The Kigali Amendment will have co-benefits for mitigating climate change and ozone-depletion.

The South African Government is also committed to minimise plastic pollution. The DFFE recently conducted a Plastic Material Study and is in the process of consulting with the cosmetics industry to phase out the use of microbeads in cosmetics. Plans are also underway to review the impact of the implementation of plastic bag policies.

In addition, the DFFE will continue to work with the packaging sector (paper, glass, plastic and metal) to raise the amount of waste diverted from landfill to above 58%.

The department is expected to launch the Keep South Africa Clean Campaign with the aim of mobilising citizens to become environmentally conscious and create a South Africa free of litter and illegal dumping.

Chemicals and waste management

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote the environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste throughout the life cycle, including being a party to a range of multilateral environment agreements and an active member in instruments on chemicals and waste. These include the:

- Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade:
- · Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants;
- Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer;
- Basel Convention on the Control of Trans-boundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes; and
- Strategic Approach to International Chemicals Management, which is governed by the International Conference on Chemicals Management.

South Africa had a significant role in negotiations concerning the Intergovernmental Negotiating Committee to prepare a global legally binding instrument on mercury, including research into coal-dependent power or electric stations and the situational analysis of mercury in the country.

To align fragmented legislation, the DFFE established a National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination.

The 2020 National Waste Management Strategy gives effect to the terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act of 2008. It directs the environmental protection programmes. It also drives a sustainable and environmentally friendly, inclusive economic growth, with three focus pillars – waste minimisation, effective and sustainable services, and waste awareness and compliance.

Waste Management Bureau

The Waste Management Bureau aims to reduce waste through recycling. The bureau monitors recycling plans and provides specialist services to government and recycling companies.

Over the medium term, the bureau plans to introduce tyre recycling initiatives. The bureau also plans to introduce the Recycling Enterprise Support Programme, which will provide support services, training and advice to transporters, storage depot operators and tyre recyclers.

An amount of R155 million over the medium term has been allocated to the plastics programme, which will promote waste minimisation, create awareness in the plastics industry, expand collector networks and support rural collection through building the capacity of small-, medium- and micro-enterprises.

The National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications also receives transfers of R22.5 million over the medium term, to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

Youth Jobs in Waste and Township Greening

These projects are funded by the DFFE through its Environmental Protection and Infrastructure programme and aims to contribute towards poverty alleviation while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream economy.

Youth will benefit from this project, through the formation of self-help groups, which will positively impact on their knowledge of financial literacy and self-empowerment.

The Youth Jobs in Waste initiative is focused on landfill operation and management, planning administration relating to waste collection and planning and undertaking waste awareness campaigns. The people who will be assisting with the activities will be located in the municipalities for a year.

The DFFE aims to create eco-friendly greener open spaces that are safe, attractively designed, well managed for the benefit of all the country's communities as well as promoting maximum use of alternative energy sources and an environment that is clean, green and healthy for all.

The department has funded numerous projects within the Randfontein Municipality, which are being implemented using labour-intensive methods in line with the EPWP, with an aim of 58% women employment, 65% youths and, of those, 2% being people with disabilities.

The waste sector has been identified as a key role player in achieving the goal of economic upliftment through job creation as the DFFE works towards reaching the NDP's goal of creating an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low-carbon economy and just society by 2030.

The Youth Jobs in Waste Programme was designed to address some of the critical areas of assistance, including capacity-building, where youths are placed in municipalities for a period of a year to assist with administration relating to waste collection and planning.

Recycling

The National Recycling Forum is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa.

Members of the forum include representatives of:

- · the formal recycling industry in South Africa;
- · government departments;
- · regional recycling forums;
- · local government-based organisations; and
- local government utilities and co-opted advisory members.
 To promote the interests of its members and the formal recycling industry in South Africa, the National Recycling Forum:
- provides a national communication forum for key players in the field of recycling;
- interacts with central and provincial government to encourage the recycling of glass, paper, plastics, tin plate steel, used oil and electrical and electronic waste;
- facilitates the formation of regional forums that draw their memberships from enthusiastic and interested volunteers as well as small recyclers, in the major centres of South Africa; and
- encourages the establishment of buy-back centres and dropoff points through the activities of its members in the various centres.
- Collect-a-Can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in the country.
 It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

The founders of Collect-a-Can, ArcelorMittal South Africa and Nampak, started the company 23 years ago to proactively address the steel beverage can industry's responsibility to the environment. Their Cash for Cans initiative encourages cans to be collected and sold to Collecta-Can for cash, because recovery and recycling aids job creation in many communities and creates an additional source of income for schools, NGOs, and other community groups.

Collect-a-Can has introduced millions of school children to caring for the environment through its schools' competition.

Recycling has been valued at a contribution of as much as R50 billion to the South African economy. In effect, waste is now a renewable resource and not something to throw away.

Clean-up and Recycle SA Week

The Clean-up and Recycle SA Week is an annual initiative by the local plastics industry, supported and endorsed by various packaging and retail streams and retailers. Each year, close to 120 000 volunteers participate in these clean-up activities that take place along roadsides, rivers, schools, residential and illegal dumping areas. The initiative

is supported by the DFFE, provincial governments, municipalities, environmental organisations, businesses, schools and communities with the intention to promote and unite the world's approach towards clean-up campaigns initiatives.

The DFFE has been celebrating the Clean-up and Recycle Week SA through awareness-raising activations to encourage communities to know the benefits of keeping their environment clean and diverting their waste away from landfill sites through innovative means either through reduction, reuse, repurpose, recycle or upcycle of their waste materials.

The Clean-up and Recycle SA Week's objectives are clearly aligned with those of the Good Green Deeds Programme as it seeks to highlight the importance of active citizenry in the protection and management of natural resources and pollution in the neighbourhoods they live in, rivers, oceans and the role they play in the lives of all South Africans.

Climate change and air-quality management

South Africa is making steady progress in implementing the National Climate Change Response Policy, despite having to balance its economic aspirations and environmental protection.

Government continues to engage actively and meaningfully in international climate change negotiations, specifically with the UNFCCC. The policy implementation actions and activities flowing from this include the analysis of mitigation potential in key economic sectors as the basis for the establishment of desired emission reduction outcomes and defining the optimal mix of measures for achieving those outcomes, with the greatest benefit and least cost to the economy.

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa. Technical and legislative tools have been developed to roll-out and monitor the implementation of national environmental management, including the:

- · National Framework for Air Quality Management:
- · air quality model by-laws;
- · Air-Quality Management Planning Manual; and
- National Ambient Air Quality Standards and Listed Activities and the Minimum Emission Standards.

Several of these tools were under review to accelerate the ongoing implementation of the Air Quality Act of 2004. The South African Air Quality Information System (SAAQIS) contains the latest updated data on locations and can give the status of air quality or pollution for a specific day and time on its website: www.saaqis.org.za. The DFFE and the SAWS have upgraded the SAAQIS. South Africans can now view the state of air live from the government monitoring network on their smart phones and other gadgets.

A number of air quality monitoring stations, mostly in Mpumalanga, eThekwini Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane, report to the SAAQIS. South Africa reached the legally binding climate change agreement at the 21st Conference of the Parties to the UNFCC in Paris, France in December 2015.

The agreement was the culmination of a four-year negotiation process that was initiated in Durban in 2011 at the 17th Conference of

the Parties to the UNFCCC. South Africa is among the countries that have signed the Paris Agreement – committing to ensuring that the country continued to play a positive role in the building of a low-carbon, job-creating and pro-development green economy.

Environmental impact management

The environmental impact assessment is a tool to advance sustainable development. South Africa's environmental impact assessment regulations are:

- · streamlining the environmental impact assessment process;
- introducing an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention; and
- introducing a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.
- The Environmental Assessment Practitioners Association of South Africa (EAPASA) aims to:
- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa;
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field:
- encourage continued professional development for environmental assessment practitioners; and
- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

The DFFE is already fully integrating impact assessments on waste and environmental impact assessment. In order to advance and fast-track environmental authorisations for key infrastructure projects, the department continues to undertake Strategic Environmental Assessments.

The vast scientific information from these assessments have aided in the streamlining of decision making for South Africa's Strategic Infrastructure Projects led by The Presidency.

Aquaculture

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes. It is divided into freshwater culture and mariculture.

Species farmed in the latter include dusky kob, abalone, Pacific oysters, Mediterranean mussels and black mussels, among others.

According to the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the sector is relatively small and government wants to create a climate in which it can grow. Special attention will be paid to freshwater aquaculture, as it has shown growth potential.

Government is also planning to boost investments in research, development technology, transfer and extension, as well as education and training programmes in aquaculture. Abalone fishing is severely restricted in South African waters, however, poaching is rife, as it is a lucrative trade.

Poaching has caused the decline in abalone numbers over the years. The species is highly coveted and fetches high prices, especially in the Far East.

The National Aquaculture Policy Framework was developed against the backdrop of a global aquaculture sector that has seen an increased demand for fishery products.

The policy provides a unified framework for the establishment and development of an industry that contributes towards sustainable job creation and increased investment. In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security, job creation, economic development and rural development; and improve export opportunities.

Aquaculture has been given a boost through its inclusion in the Oceans Economy: Operation Phakisa. While the marine-based mariculture part of aquaculture has been around for some years, focusing on species such as abalone, oysters and mussels, freshwater aquaculture is experiencing a rapid expansion, owing in part to government's multipronged aquaculture promotion campaign.

Globally, wild fish stocks have been dwindling, growing at a modest 1% per annum, while aquaculture has grown by 7% and accounts for 44% of the global fish production. As such, aquaculture is seen as a quick win for growing the Oceans Economy.

Erosion and desertification

The health of the country's soil is of great concern. Community-managed land has a potential to generate billions of rands worth of ecosystem benefits in South Africa through, for example, reduced pollution, clean water and erosion control. It adds that investment in avoiding land degradation and restoring degraded land makes sound economic sense and the benefits generally far exceed the costs.

As such, the country has managed to secure more than US\$3.6 million through the Global Environment Facility's fund for the implementation of a project to address desertification, land degradation and the effects of drought in grazing lands in Limpopo and the Northern Cape.

Globally, negotiations are underway to discuss possible options for addressing drought under the United National Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD). According to the UN Environment Programme, desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries, with 24 million metric tonnes (Mt) of topsoil being lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US\$9 billion every year. Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 Mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of South Africa's total land area is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the UNCCD. Its main objectives include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

South Africa also acts as the coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification. The group consists of Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Chile, New Zealand, South Africa and Uruguay. The aim is, among other things, to foster scientific and technological cooperation.

South Africa has introduced legislation such as the NEMBA of 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5.5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa, the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

South Africa ratified the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the CBD, popularly referred to as the Nagoya Protocol on Access and Benefit Sharing.

The protocol is a legally binding agreement outlining a set of terms prescribing how one country will gain access to another country's genetic resources and how the benefits derived will be shared.

The aim of the National Biodiversity and Business Network is to assist businesses from various sectors to integrate and mainstream biodiversity issues into their strategies and operations.

Government and businesses are realising that the economic and social development of the country depends on healthy ecosystems and biodiversity. The NDP confirms that national economic growth depends on the environmental sustainability of the country's proposed development path.

South Africa is the third most biodiverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively accommodate more than two thirds of global biodiversity.

South Africa is a signatory to several biodiversity-related multilateral agreements such as the:

- CBD Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety;
- Ramsar Convention;
- · CITES:
- · UNCCD; and
- · Convention on Migratory Species.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan 2015 – 2025 is aimed at establishing a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

The National Biodiversity Framework (NBF) provides a framework

to coordinate and align the efforts of the many organisations and individuals involved in conserving and managing South Africa's biodiversity, in support of sustainable development. The NBF is a requirement of the NEMBA of 2004.

The NBF and the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy are important existing policy instruments for protection of species and ecosystems.

Through the release of the National Biodiversity Assessment by the SANBI, the country is able to better target future protected area expansion. The assessment has also assisted with South Africa's national and international reporting obligations, including the state of environment reporting, and the CBD Country Report – reporting against Aichi Targets or the Sustainable Development Goals. The revised NBF has been approved for public comment.

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots are found in South Africa. They are the:

- Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the fynbos biome);
- · Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia); and
- Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, and the eastern side of Eswatini, into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga.
- The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa. There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which are divided into 70 veld types.

National biodiversity biomes Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (acacia erioloba) and the camphor bush (tarchonanthus camphoratus). In Limpopo, the portly baobab (adansonia digitata) and the candelabra tree (euphorbia ingens) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (acacia nigrescens), bushwillow (combretum spp.), monkey thorn (acacia galpinii), mopani (colophospermum mopane) and wild fig (ficus spp.). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (portulacaria afra) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions. The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhino, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck and hippopotamus.

About 8.5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third-largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20.5% of the country or more than 260 000 km2. It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 millimetres (mm) a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (acacia karoo) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa. Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants. Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest. Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the second-largest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km2 and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1.9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved.

The Grassland Biome provides essential ecosystem services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee (rhus lancea), wild currant (rhus pyroides), white stinkwood (celtis africana) and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third-largest number of indigenous plant species in the country. Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome. The area is internationally recognised as having high species endemicity for birds. The black korhaan, blue crane and guinea fowl are among the birds found in the area.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and broken veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family asteraceae), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall).

This is a winter rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (aloe dichotoma) and the human-like elephant's trunk (pachypodium namaquanum) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of the neighbouring Fynbos and Nama-Karoo biomes. The biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms in the world. This region covers only 0.04% of the Earth's land surface. Fynbos, which is found mainly in the Western Cape, is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio. The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, which is South Africa's national flower.

The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others. Protected areas cover 13.6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks. This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, the Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. Baboon, honey badgers, caracal, the buck and several types of eagle and dassies are found in the mountains.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant natural forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively. Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (podocarpus spp.), ironwood (olea capensis) and lemonwood (xymalos monospora) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second-smallest biome in South Africa and is known for its high biodiversity. Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines. It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species found there are endemic to the Thicket Biome.

The Thicket Biome, which is predominantly in the Eastern Cape, supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (geochelone pardalis), angulate tortoise (chersina angulata), tent tortoise (psammobates tentorius) and parrot-beaked tortoise (homopus areolatus).

Desert Biomo

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year-to-year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water from broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos. Some areas in this biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

International cooperation

Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME)

The BCLME is regarded as one of the richest ecosystems on Earth, with ecosystem goods and services estimated to be worth at least US\$54.3 billion a year. Offshore oil and gas production, marine diamond mining, coastal tourism, commercial fishing and shipping are some of the most important industrial activities that take place in the region.

The accord, signed in Angola, is a formal agreement between Angola, Namibia and South Africa that seeks to provide economic, environmental and social benefits for the three countries.

The Benguela Current Commission is a permanent intergovernmental organisation, with a mandate to promote the long-term conservation, protection, rehabilitation, enhancement and sustainable use of the BCLME.

South Africa has signed several international conventions, treaties, protocols and other agreements supporting the principles of sustainable development including the:

- · CBD (ratified in 1995);
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (South Africa became a party in 2003):
- · Kyoto Protocol (signed in 2003);
- UNCCD:
- World Heritage Convention (ratified in 1997):
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (ratified in 1975); and
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species (acceded in 1991).

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The UNFCCC is aimed at:

- implementing urgent action, from 2013 to 2020, including the adoption of a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol and a number of institutional mechanisms such as the GCF:
- acknowledging the inadequate commitments to reduce emissions made thus far; a work programme was agreed upon to increase pre-2020 levels of ambition; and
- action for the future with the negotiation of a legal agreement for the period beyond 2020.

The UNFCCC entered into force in 1994. The COP to the UNFCCC meets annually to assess progress in grappling with climate change. The COP is the supreme body of the convention and is its highest decision-making authority.

With 195 parties, the UNFCCC has near universal membership and is the parent treaty of the 1997 Kyoto Protocol. The Kyoto Protocol has been ratified by 193 of the UNFCCC parties. Under the protocol, 37 states, consisting of highly industrialised countries and those making the transition to a market economy, have legally binding emission limitation and reduction commitments.

The ultimate objective of both treaties is to stabilise GHG concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will prevent dangerous human interference with the climate system.

The launch of negotiations to shape the new global climate change agreement and first discussions on how to raise ambition took place at the UNFCCC in Bonn, Germany, in May 2012, which prepared decisions for adoption at the UNFCCC in Qatar later in 2012.

UN Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The UN CSD was established by the UN General Assembly in December 1992 to ensure effective follow-up of the UN Conference on Environment and Development, also known as the Earth Summit.

From its inception, the CSD was highly participatory in structure and outlook by engaging in its formal proceedings a wide range of official stakeholders and partners through innovative formulae.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora

South Africa was a founding member of the CITES Treaty, which was adopted on 3 March 1973, but only came into force on 1 July 1975.

Signed by 149 countries, the CITES is an international agreement between governments to protect endangered species against over-exploitation through regulations regarding imports and exports and in some cases prohibiting trade.

The CITES was drafted as a result of a resolution adopted in 1963 at a meeting of members of the IUCN. The CITES accords varying degrees of protection to more than 30 000 animals and plant species, whether they are traded as live specimens, fur coats or dried herbs.

The DFFE, SANBI, the Scientific Authority and provincial authorities are working together to ensure full compliance with decisions taken at the 17th Conference of Parties to the CITES

These include identifying and implementing protocols for the registration of over 1 000 facilities for breeding captive bred parrots; strengthening the monitoring of leopard populations to improve science-based decision making; and initiating a research project to understand how trade in lion bone may impact wild lion populations.

Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer

International Ozone Day is an annual event that commemorates the date of the signing the Montreal Protocol in 1987. South Africa, which became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990, has phased out chlorofluorocarbons, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride.

International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer

The ozone layer, a fragile shield of gas, protects the Earth from the harmful portion of the rays of the sun, thus helping preserve life on the planet. The International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer is commemorated annually on 16 September. The 2021 event was held under theme: "Montreal Protocol – keeping us, our food and vaccines cool".

World Summit on Sustainable Development

At the UN World Summit on Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) 2030, held in September 2015, world leaders adopted 17 SDGs of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. Over the next 15 years, with these new goals that universally apply to all, countries would mobilise efforts to end all forms of poverty, fight inequalities and tackle climate change, while ensuring that no one is left behind.

The SDGs build on the success of the Millennium Development Goals and aim to go further to end all forms of poverty. The goals are unique in that they call for action by all countries, poor, rich and middle incom, to promote prosperity while protecting the planet.

UN Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20)

Rio+20 refers to the UN Conference on Sustainable Development that took place in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in June 2012. The meeting took place 20 years after the landmark 1992 Earth Summit in Rio, when more than 108 Heads of State agreed to work together to develop national strategies to reduce carbon emissions, stabilise GHG, protect forests from destruction, and pay for their share of the damage caused to the Earth through pollution. At the Rio+20 talks, 50 of the 193-member states of the UN launched new energy strategies, and private investors pledged more than US\$50 billion to carry out the goal of doubling the share of global renewable energy and the rate of energy efficiency improvement by 2030.

SOUTH AFRICA YEAR DOOK 2021/22 Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Government Systems

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary. The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders. It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance. Government is committed to building a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

The Constitution was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997. It is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

The signing of the Constitution was a commemorative gesture in remembrance of the people who died during a peaceful demonstration against the pass laws on 21 March 1960.

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The year 2021 marked 25 years since South Africa adopted its Constitution on 8 May 1996 - one that is still hailed as being amongst the best in the world. Government approved a year-long national commemorative programme for the 25th Anniversary of the Constitution.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- · heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights;
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person:
- · lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law; and
- · build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign State in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

South Africa is a sovereign and democratic State founded on the following values:

- · Human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom; non-racialism and non-sexism;
- Supremacy of the Constitution and the rule of law: and
- · Universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals. The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the lawmakers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country, in accordance with the Constitution. It consists of the National Assembly (NA) and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public.

The role of Parliament, as the representative of the people, is to promote and oversee adherence to the values of human dignity, equality, non-racialism, non-sexism, and all other rights enshrined in the Bill of Rights, and to oversee the implementation of constitutional imperatives. Through legislative and other measures, Parliament also ensures that the independence, impartiality, accessibility and effectiveness of the Judiciary and other State institutions is upheld.

The mandate of Parliament is based on the provisions of Chapter 4 of the Constitution, which establishes Parliament and sets out the functions it performs. Parliament is elected to represent the people, ensure government by the people under the Constitution, and represent the interests of provinces in the national sphere of government.

Members of Parliament (MPs) elect the President, provide a national forum for the public consideration of issues, pass legislation, and scrutinise and oversee executive action. Parliament's policy priorities set out long-term policy and outcomes. These are aligned with the priorities and outcomes of the National Development Plan (NDP).

To ensure that these outcomes and priorities are met over feasible timeframes, five-year, 10-year and 15-year milestones have been set. Since 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process. The official governmental website, www.parliament. gov.za, encourages comment and feedback from the public.

Legislative and policy framework

The mandate and functions of Parliament are based on the following core pieces of legislation:

- · Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which sets out the composition, powers and functions of Parliament;
- · Powers, Privileges and Immunities of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act, 2004 (Act 4 of 2004), which defines and declares certain powers, privileges and immunities of Parliament, provincial legislatures, members of the NA, delegates to the NCOP and members of provincial legislatures:
- Money Bills Amendment Procedure and Related Matters Act, 2009 (Act 9 of 2009), which provides for a procedure to amend Money Bills before Parliament, and for norms and standards for amending Money Bills before Provincial Legislatures; and
- · Financial Management of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act, 2009 (Act 10 of 2009), as amended by Act 34 of 2014, which regulates the financial management of Parliament in a manner consistent with its status in terms of the Constitution. Its objective is to ensure that all revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of Parliament are managed efficiently.

Other legislation relevant to the work of Parliament are the:

- Permanent Delegates Vacancies Act, 1997 (Act 17 of 1997);
- Determination of Delegates (NCOP) Act, 1998
- (Act 69 of 1998); the Mandating Procedures of Provinces Act. 2008 (Act 52 of 2008); and
- Remuneration of Public Office Bearers Act. 1998 (Act 20 of 1998).

The joint rules of Parliament, rules of the NA and rules of the NCOP augment these Acts, as the Constitution empowers Parliament to make rules and orders concerning its business.

Additional frameworks of relevance to the work of Parliament include the United Nations (UN) Sustainable Development Goals, the African Agenda 2063, The Southern African Development Community (SADC) Regional Indicative Strategic Plan, the NDP 2030 and the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and Ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President, Ministers and Deputy Ministers, assigns their powers and functions, and may

The President may select any number of Ministers from the members of the NA, and may select no more than two Ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the NA.

National Assembly

We, the people of South Africa, Recognise the injustices of our past; Honour those who suffered for justice and freedom in our land; Respect those who have worked to build and develop our country;

Believe that South Africa belongs to all who live in it, united in our

We therefore, through our freely elected representatives, adopt this

lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law;

improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each

build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

May God protect our people. Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika. Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso. God seën Suid-Afrika. God bless South Africa. Mudzimu fhatutshedza Afurika. Hosi katekisa Afrika.

The NA is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation, and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The NA consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation. The NA, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the Speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker.

Office Bearers of the NA

At its first sitting after a general election, the NA elects the Speaker, the principal office bearer of the NA. The Speaker has many responsibilities which include constitutional, statutory (in terms of the law), procedural and administrative powers and functions.

The duties of the Speaker fall broadly into three categories: presiding over sittings of the House, maintaining order and applying its rules; acting as representative and spokesperson for the NA and (with the Chairperson of the Council) for Parliament; and acting as Chief Executive Officer for Parliament, in conjunction with the Chairperson of the Council.

Though the Speaker is a member of a political party, he or she is required to act impartially and protect the rights of all parties. The Speaker is assisted by the Deputy Speaker and three House Chairpersons, each with specific areas of responsibility determined by the Speaker.

The leader of the opposition – a leader of the largest minority party (or largest party that is not in government) – enjoys a special status in Parliament. The post is specified in the Constitution and is accorded a specific salary, though the holder has no specific duties in terms of the rules.

Committees

In accordance with the powers given to it by the Constitution, the NA establishes a range of committees with assigned powers and functions. The committees are required to report regularly on their activities and to make recommendations to the House for debate and decision.

There is a portfolio committee for each corresponding government department. The composition of the committees reflects, as far as is practicable, the numerical strengths of the parties represented in the NA. The committee deliberates on Bills that cover the respective department's area of jurisdiction and scrutinises and reports on its annual budget and strategic plan.

Members of the committees determine whether government departments are delivering on what they promised and whether they are spending the public money they receive in a responsible manner. As part of their oversight work, committees may also do site visits where they find out directly from the people at ground level whether government is delivering on its promises.

If a committee reports on a matter and makes certain recommendations, the report is debated in a full sitting or plenary to give other members of the House an opportunity to engage with the content. Once the report has been debated, the House decides whether to adopt the committee's recommendations. The House may also decide to only note the report or it may refer the report back to the committee with an instruction to do further work.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP is mandated to represent the provinces to ensure that provincial interests are taken into account in the national sphere of government.

The NCOP consists of 90 provincial delegates (10 delegates for each of the nine provinces). A provincial delegation consists of six permanent delegates and four special delegates. The permanent delegates, who are appointed by the nine provincial legislatures, are based at Parliament in Cape Town.

The four special delegates consist of the Premier of the province and three special delegates, assigned by each province from Members of the Provincial Legislature and rotated depending on the subject matter being considered by the NCOP.

The Premier of a province is the head of the province's delegation but he or she can assign any other delegate to lead the delegation in his or her absence.

Organised local government is also represented in the NCOP through the South African Local Government Association (SALGA). The SALGA is entitled to 10 representatives who may participate in the debates and other activities of the NCOP but may not vote.

The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions. Special calculations of the popular vote in elections make sure that minority interests are represented in each province's delegation to the NCOP.

The NCOP Online links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It also provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions. The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

Function of Parliament

The core functions of Parliament include making laws, overseeing the work of the Executive and state institutions, facilitating public participation, international participation and cooperative governance.

Law-making

Section 43(a) of the Constitution vests the legislative authority of the national sphere of government in Parliament. This confers on the NA the power to consider, pass, amend or reject any legislation before the NA and to initiate or prepare legislation, except Money Bills. It also confers on the NCOP the power to consider, pass, amend, propose amendments or reject any legislation before the council and initiate or prepare legislation falling within a functional area listed in Schedule 4 of the Constitution or other legislation referred to in Section 76(3), except Money Bills.

The Constitution distinguishes between four categories of Bills:

- Bills amending the Constitution (Section 74);
- · Ordinary Bills not affecting provinces (Section 75);
- · Ordinary Bills affecting provinces (Section 76); and
- Money Bills (Section 77).

Whilst any of these categories of Bills may be introduced in the NA, only Bills referred to in Section 76(3) of the Constitution may be introduced in the NCOP.

Money Bills, such as the Appropriation Bill and the Division of Revenue Bill, may only be introduced in the NA and not in the NCOP.

The Constitution and the Rules of the NA and NCOP outline the processes that Parliament must follow when passing each category

of Bills. Furthermore, Section 18(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), obliges the Secretary to Parliament to refer any Parliamentary Bill relating to customary law or customs of traditional communities to the National House of Traditional Leaders (NHTL) for comment before it is passed by the House of Parliament in which it was introduced. The NHTL has 30 days to comment on a Bill so referred.

As the representative of the people of South Africa, Parliament realises the importance of processing and/or passing quality legislation aimed at improving the quality of life of the people and involving the public in the processing of legislation. To this end, it plans to develop a legislative model to guide MPs and staff in the processing of legislation.

The main aim of the model is to enhance the law-making processes and procedures of Parliament to enable the institution to pass quality laws that will improve the quality of life of all.

Oversigh

The parliamentary oversight function is one of the cornerstones of democracy. It holds the Executive accountable for its actions and ensures that it implements policies in accordance with the laws and budget passed by Parliament.

The robust monitoring of the Executive by Parliament is an indicator of good governance, as it is through oversight that Parliament can ensure a balance of power and asserts its role as the defender and/ or the legitimate custodian of the people's interests. The Constitution envisages a specific oversight role for the NA and the NCOP, respectively.

To this end, it places an obligation on the NA to provide for mechanisms to ensure that all Executive organs of state in the national sphere of government are accountable to it and to maintain oversight of the exercise of national executive authority, including the implementation of legislation. The Constitution requires the NCOP to exercise oversight over national aspects of provincial and local government.

The Oversight and Accountability Model makes provision for various oversight mechanisms, including exercising oversight through committees, oversight visits, the passing of budget votes, questions for executive reply, members' statements, notices of motion, debates on matters of public importance and constituency work.

One of the significant features provided for in the model is the establishment of a Joint Parliamentary Oversight and Governance Assurance Committee to pursue all assurances, undertakings and commitments given by Ministers on the floor of the Houses and the extent to which these assurances have been fulfilled.

Public participation

Participatory democracy is based on the premise that public participation processes strengthen institutions of representative democracy by actively involving the public in the decision-making processes of government. The Constitution requires the NA and the NCOP, respectively, to facilitate public involvement in the legislative and other processes of the houses and committees by conducting business in an open manner.

Whilst Parliament may take reasonable measures to regulate access, it may only exclude the public from a sitting of a House or committee if it is reasonable and justifiable to do so in an open and democratic society.



Limpopo Mpumalanga Northern Cape North West Western Cape

- and Linguistic Communities
- Commission for Gender Equality
- · Auditor-General of South Africa
- · Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
- Electoral Commission of South Africa (IEC)

Legislative Authority Provincial Legislature

Executive Authority

Executive Council

Premier

Members of the Executive Council

In an effort to streamline public participation processes and make it more effective, the legislative sector has developed a Public Participation Framework to guide the public participation activities of Parliament and provincial legislatures. The framework provides certain minimum norms and standards to ensure alignment in public participation processes and activities. Based on this framework, Parliament has developed the Public Participation Model, which provides the institution with minimum requirements for public involvement and participation.

Specific public participation mechanisms outlined in the model include the People's Assembly, the NCOP's Taking Parliament to the People Programme, oversight visits by parliamentary committees, sectoral engagements such as youth and women's parliaments, petitions and other forms of participation in law making and other processes.

Parliamentary international relations is the continuation of a political process and dialogue among legislatures of the world. At different international meetings, MPs and presiding officers have the opportunity to exchange views with their counterparts from other countries on a range of international challenges.

The Parliament of South Africa participates in several international forums and organisations, including the:

- · Pan-African Parliament:
- · SADC Parliamentary Forum;
- · Commonwealth Parliamentary Association;
- · Inter-Parliamentary Union; and
- · African, Caribbean, Pacific-European Union Forum.

Parliament has identified four guidelines that inform its international relations programme of action:

- Developing and strengthening partnerships in Africa: Parliament, in line with the country's foreign policy, gives special attention to Africa in its overall international relations policy framework. This includes engaging proactively with some of the legislative assemblies of countries where the South African Government has been involved in peace building efforts.
- Advancing multilateralism: evolving international structures have placed a greater responsibility on parliamentarians, in view of their oversight role, to interact with one another on matters such as respect for the rule of law, human rights, and governments'

transparency and accountability. Parliament's participation in international parliamentary bodies is also aimed at making significant progress towards achieving the Millennium Development Goals and getting support for Africa's development agenda.

- Bilateralism through friendship societies and strategic groups: at this stage, Parliament is focusing on building bilateral relations with other legislative bodies through proactively forming "friendship groups" with those bodies rather than establishing formal ties. However, the NA has signed a Memorandum of Understanding with the People's Assembly of the People's Republic of China, the only formal bilateral agreement it has entered to date.
- Providing for public input: Parliament makes provision, through the relevant offices, committees and other mechanisms, to ensure that there is ongoing engagement with the public on important international relations issues, in line with the vision and programmes of Parliament.

Cooperative governance

The Constitution creates three spheres of government at national, provincial and local level as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. It enjoins all spheres of government to observe and adhere to the principles of cooperative governance.

Parliament plays a significant role in facilitating cooperative governance through its work with the other arms and spheres of government. This includes the appointment and dismissal of office bearers of institutions supporting democracy, various commissions, boards and councils. Parliament also ratifies international protocols and conventions, confirms the provisional suspension of magistrates, approves the salaries, allowances and benefits of magistrates and

The NCOP provides a forum for the representation of local government at national level through the SALGA. Specific cooperative governance mechanisms spearheaded by the council include the NCOP Oversight Week. Provincial Week and Lotcal Government Week. The NCOP Oversight Week enables members to follow up on matters arising from the Taking Parliament to the People Programme to verify information received.

The 2022 Provincial Week was held from 28 March to 1 April 2022. It was held under the theme: "Assessing state capacity to respond to the needs of communities".

Unlike in the past provincial weeks where all provinces focused on one theme, the 2022 event took a different approach of having each province focusing on a specific sub theme. In KwaZulu-Natal delegations focused on the State's capacity to fight crime, including the state of police stations in rural areas and townships while Gauteng focused on provision of integrated housing infrastructure, including measures to address the housing backlog and create integrated and sustainable human settlements.

The Free State delegation focused on provision of water and sanitation infrastructure, visiting water and sanitation projects, as well as water reticulation sites and special economic zones. The Northern Cape delegation focused on the provision of safe drinking water and assist communities that are affected by drought, including visiting water provision projects, dams, water reticulation sites and provincial storage weirs, and as well as crime and drivers for crime.

The Provincial Week is one of the flagship oversight programmes

of the NCOP for all spheres of the legislative sector, including provincial legislatures and municipalities, to reconnect with the local communities and identify service delivery challenges, seek solutions, as well as innovative ways to drive effective development for all communities.

The Local Government Week aims to strengthen the relationship between the NCOP and the SALGA by, amongst others, debating matters relating to local government and seeking solutions to challenges facing the local sphere of government within the context of cooperative government and intergovernmental relations.

Government clusters

Government clusters are groupings of government departments with crosscutting programmes. They foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision-making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The main functions of the clusters are to ensure the alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes and to provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters of the Forum of South African Directors-General (FOSAD) mirror the ministerial clusters. The FOSAD clusters provide technical support to the ministerial clusters. The Director-General (DG) in The Presidency is the chairperson of FOSAD. Ministers enter into delivery agreements with the President, having to give progress reports on their departments' set targets.

Economic Sectors, Investment, Employment and Infrastructure Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Mineral Resources and Energy (Chair)
- · Tourism (Chair)
- · Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
- Communications and Digital Technologies
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA)
- · Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
- · Employment and Labour
- Finance
- · Higher Education, Science and Innovation
- · Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation
- International Relations and Cooperation
- The Presidency
- · The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Police
- Public Enterprises
- · Public Works and Infrastructure
- · Small Business Development
- State Security
- Trade, Industry and Competition
- Transport

Co-Chairpersons:

- · Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy
- · Minister of Tourism

Cabinet Ministers and Deputy Ministers, as at October 2022		
Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development	Thoko Didiza	Zoleka Capa Mcebisi Skwatsha
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Regina Mhaule
Communications and Digital Technologies	Khumbudzo Ntshavheni	Mohlopi Philemon Mapulane
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini-Zuma	Thembi Nkadimeng Obed Bapela
Defence and Military Veterans	Thandi Modise	Thabang Makwetla
Employment and Labour	Thulas Nxesi	Boitumelo Moloi
Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment	Barbara Creecy	Maggie Sotyu
Finance	Enoch Godongwana	David Masondo
Health	Joe Phaahla	Sibongiseni Dhlomo
Higher Education, Science and Innovation	Blade Nzimande	Buti Manamela
Home Affairs	Aaron Motsoaledi	Njabulo Nzuza
Human Settlements	Mmamoloko Kubayi	Pam Tshwete
International Relations and Cooperation	Naledi Pandor	Alvin Botes Candith Mashego-Dlamini
Justice and Correctional Services	Ronald Lamola	John Jeffery Inkosi Phathekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources and Energy	Gwede Mantashe	Nobuhle Nkabane
Police	Bheki Cele	Cassel Mathale
The Presidency	Mondli Gungubele	Pinky Kekana Thembi Siweya
The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	-
The Presidency for State Security	-	Zizi Kodwa
Public Enterprises	Pravin Gordhan	Phumulo Masualle
Public Service and Administration	-	Chana Pilane-Majake
Public Works and Infrastructure	Patricia De Lille	Noxolo Kiviet
Small Business Development	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams	Sdumo Dlamini
Social Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sport, Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Nocawe Mafu
Tourism	Lindiwe Sisulu	Fish Mahlalela
Trade, Industry and Competition	Ebrahim Patel	Fikile Majola Nomalungelo Gina
Transport	Fikile Mbalula	Sindisiwe Chikunga
Water and Sanitation	Senzo Mchunu	Dikeledi Magadzi David Mahlobo

Governance, State Capacity and Institutional Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- CoGTA (Chair)
- Public Service and Administration (Chair)
- Finance
- Home Affairs
- · Justice and Correctional Services
- The Presidency
- · The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Public Enterprise

Co-Chairpersons:

- Minister of CoGTA
- · Minister of Public Service and Administration

Social Protection, Community and Human Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Health (Chair)
- Basic Education (Chair)
- · Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
- CoGTA
- · Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
- · Employment and Labour
- · Higher Education, Science and Innovation
- Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- · The Presidency
- · The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- · Public Works and Infrastructure
- Small Business Development
- Social Development
- · Sport, Arts and Culture
- Transport

Co-Chairpersons:

- · Minister of Health
- · Minister of Basic Education

International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Sport, Arts and Culture (Chair)
- Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (Chair)
- Communications and Digital Technologies
- Defence and Military Veterans
- Finance
- International Relations and Cooperation
- · Justice and Correctional Services
- · Mineral Resources and Energy
- The Presidency
- State Security
- Tourism
- · Trade, Industry and Competition

Co-Chairpersons:

- · Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture
- · Minister of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

- The departments in this cluster are:
- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- Police (Chair)
- Finance
- Home Affairs
- · International Relations and Cooperation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- · The Presidency: Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation
- · The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Social Development
- State Security
- · Small Business Development

Co-Chairpersons:

- · Minister of Defence and Military Veterans
- · Minister of Police

The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency comprises eight political principals:

- The President, who is the Head of State and Government:
- The Deputy President, who is the Leader of Government Business (in Parliament):
- · The Minister in The Presidency:
- The Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities:
- The Deputy Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities:
- Two Deputy Ministers in The Presidency: and
- The Deputy Minister in The Presidency for State Security.
 The Presidency has three structures that support governance operations directly. They are:
- The Cabinet Office, which provides administrative support to Cabinet. It implements administrative systems and processes to ensure the overall optimal functioning of the Cabinet and its committees. It also facilitates the management of decisionmaking processes of the Cabinet and its committees.
- Policy Coordination Advisory Services comprises a Deputy DG and five chief directorates, which support policy processes developed by respective clusters of DGs.
- Legal and Executive Services provides legal advice to the President, Deputy President, the Minister, as well as The Presidency as a whole, and is responsible for all litigation involving the political principals.
- The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she
 is elected by the NA from among its members and leads the
 country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the
 Constitution and the law.

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the NA. The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

National Development Plan

The NDP is South Africa's socio-economic policy blueprint that focuses, among other things, on:

- eliminating poverty by reducing the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to zero, and the reduction of inequality;
- increasing employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million by 2030:
- broadening the country's ownership of assets by historically disadvantaged groups;
- ensuring that all children have at least two years of pre-school education and that all children can read and
- · write by Grade 3;
- · providing affordable access to healthcare; and
- ensuring effective public transport.

Monitoring and evaluation

Institutional Performance Monitoring and Evaluation (IPME)

This function monitors the quality of management practices in government departments through the Management Performance Assessment Tool. The Frontline Service Delivery Monitoring programme of IPME is responsible for designing and implementing hands-on service delivery monitoring activities with Offices of the Premier and for setting up and supporting the implementation of citizens-based monitoring systems.

The programme has also been successful in elevating monitoring and evaluation to strategic levels in certain sector departments, several of which have developed their own iterations of the programme. One of the key focuses of the programme is on monitoring the implementation of the National Youth Policy. The Presidential Hotline is also located in this branch.

The programme assesses the following:

- · Transport: driver's licence testing centres.
- · Education: schools.
- · Health: hospitals, clinics, community health centres.
- · Home Affairs.
- · Local Government: municipal customer care centres.
- · The National Youth Development Agency.
- The South African Police Service: police stations.
- South African Social Security Agency: local offices.
- Justice: magistrates' courts.

Government priorities

The NDP sets out a long-term vision for the country and is the programme through which South Africa aims to advance radical economic transformation through development planning. Government's 2019-2024 MTSF outlines the priorities to be implemented in the Sixth Administration and the interventions required across South Africa's national development pillars.

The seven priorities are:

- Economic transformation and job creation;
- Education, skills and health;
- Consolidating the social wage through reliable and quality basic services:
- · Spatial integration, human settlements and local government;
- Social cohesion and safe communities;
- · A capable, ethical and developmental state; and

· A better Africa and World.

Transforming South Africa into a developmental state requires building critical and necessary capabilities to foster an environment, which mobilises government and non-government contributions to realise changes in the socio-economic structure and the culture of society.

Over the medium term, government will prioritise engagement between the leadership of the executive, legislature and judiciary on strengthening governance and accountability. During this period, government further commits to manage the political administrative interface more effectively, reduce the levels of fraud and corruption in the private and public sectors, and rationalise the Public Service Governance System.

Elections

National and provincial elections are held once every five years. All South African citizens aged 18 and over are eligible to vote. The Constitution places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the IEC, established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

The obligations of the IEC are to:

- manage elections of national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies;
- · ensure that the elections are free and fair:
- declare the results of the elections; and
- · compile and maintain a voters' roll.

The duties of the IEC are to:

- · compile and maintain a register of parties;
- undertake and promote research into electoral matters;
- develop and promote the development of electoral expertise and technology in all spheres of government;
- continuously review electoral laws and proposed electoral laws, and make recommendations;
- · promote voter education;
- declare the results of elections for national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies within seven days; and
- appoint appropriate public administrations in any sphere of government to conduct elections when necessary.

The IEC manages an average of approximately 130 by-elections a year. By-elections are held when ward councillors vacate their seats for a variety of reasons, including death, resignation or expulsion from the party or the council. The sixth edition of the Local Government Elections were held on 1 November 2021.

Election process

There are two kinds of electoral systems:

- Constituency-based elections voters in each local area (constituency) elect an individual candidate to represent them in Parliament. The person who wins the majority of votes in each constituency becomes an MP. The party with the majority of MPs forms government. In this kind of elections system, the individual MP holds the seat, not the political party he or she belongs to.
- Proportional representation elections voters in a large area vote for political parties. The political party chooses the people who will become its MPs. Each party is allocated a number of seats proportional to how many votes it got in the election.

Before 1994, South Africa made use of constituency-based elections,

but since then national and provincial elections have used proportional representation and party lists. Local government elections use a mixture of proportional representation and constituency-based elections.

In August 2020, Cabinet approved the Electoral Laws Amendment Bill of 2020, which amends the Electoral Commission Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996); the Electoral Act, 1998 (Act 73 of 1998) and the Local Government Municipal Electoral Act, 2000 (Act 27 of 2000).

Parliament elections

Parliament is elected using proportional representation and party lists. Before the election, each political party submits a list of candidates in a numbered order of preference. The seats of Parliament are allocated in proportion to the number of votes cast in the election. This means a party that won 10% of the votes gets 10% of the seats. If a party wins 20 seats, the first 20 people on its party list become MPs.

Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs

The CoGTA Ministry consists of the Department of Cooperative Governance (DCoG) and the Department of Traditional Affairs (DTA).

Department of Cooperative Governance

The DCoG is mandated to develop and monitor the implementation of national policy and legislation aimed at transforming and strengthening key institutions and mechanisms of governance in national, provincial and local government to fulfil their developmental role; develop, promote and monitor mechanisms, systems and structures to enable integrated service delivery and implementation within government; and promote sustainable development by providing support to and exercising oversight of provincial and local government.

Chapter 13 of the NDP outlines a vision for building a capable and developmental state through interdepartmental coordination and strengthening local government. This vision is expressed specifically through Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019-2024 MTSF, with which the work of the DCoG is closely aligned.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on funding free basic services to poor communities and subsidising the operating costs of poor municipalities to build institutional resilience; increasing access to basic municipal services for poor households; mitigating the effect of disasters and building resilience within communities; and creating work opportunities through the Community Work programme.

Building institutional resilience in municipalities

The local government equitable share is an unconditional transfer that supplements the revenue that municipalities raise to perform the functions allocated to them in the Constitution. It pays for the operations and maintenance of free basic services and subsidises the cost of administration for municipalities with the least potential to cover these costs from their own revenue.

To cover an expected increase in the cost of bulk services, an additional R28.9 billion over the MTEF period is allocated to the local government equitable share to municipalities. As a result, expenditure in the Institutional Development programme is expected to increase from R78.6 billion in 2021/22 to R101.8 billion in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 9%. 99.6% of the programme's spending goes towards the local government equitable share, which constitutes an estimated

78.9% (R362.3 billion) of the department's projected expenditure between 2021/22 and 2024/25.

Expanding access to basic services

To ensure low-income households have access to basic services such as water, sanitation, electricity and solid waste removal, the municipal infrastructure grant and the integrated urban development grant supplement the capital budgets of municipalities.

To ensure these grants are spent efficiently, 52 municipalities per year are expected to implement the district development model, which seeks to leverage integrated and collaborative planning among the three spheres of government to facilitate better service delivery.

Together, these grants account for an estimated R57.9 billion of spending over the period ahead in the Local Government Support and Intervention programme. Expenditure in the programme comprises 16.4% of the department's total budget, increasing at an average annual rate of 4.9%, from R17.4 billion in 2021/22 to R20.1 billion in 2024/25. These allocations will be transferred to municipalities in full.

Mitigating disaster risks

To reduce the risk and mitigate the impact of disasters, and build resilience within communities, the department plans to implement disaster management plans in 30 priority district municipalities considered most at risk for floods, drought and fire. For this purpose, R2.3 billion is allocated to the National Disaster Management Centre programme over the MTEF period.

Supporting work opportunities

The community work programme is aimed at enhancing income security and social infrastructure in areas where there is high unemployment. The department plans to create 750 000 work opportunities through the programme. Allocations to the Community Work Programme programme are set to increase at an average annual rate of 2.6%, from R4.2 billion in 2021/22 to R4.6 billion in 2024/25.

Legislatior

The mandate of the DCoG is derived from the following legislation:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005);
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004);
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002);
- · Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000); and
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998).

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the CoGTA Ministry was allocated R101.3 billion. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8%, from R101.3 billion in 2021/22 to R127.4 billion in 2024/25.

Transfers and subsidies account for 95.5% (R342.5 billion) of the Ministry's total expenditure. Expenditure on compensation of employees accounts for 0.3% (R1.04 billion) of the Ministry's total expenditure and is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.9%, from R358.1 million in 2021/22 to R349 million in 2024/25, in line with an expected decrease in the number of personnel from 510 in 2021/22 to 455 in 2024/25 because of natural attrition.

Entities

Municipal Demarcation Board

The board is an independent authority responsible for determining municipal boundaries. It is also mandated to determine minucipal boundaries, delimit wards for elections, and assess the capacity of municipalities to perform their functions.

Over the medium term, the board plans to focus on finalising amendments to the Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of of 1998), to improve its administrative and legislative functions. It is also in the process of finalising and updating the municipal capacity model, which will assist in determining whether municipalities have the institutional capacity to execute their mandates.

To redress spatial planning while promoting social equity, the board will also develop a centre for spatial data and information that will contribute to the effective demarcation of municipalities.

The Political Party Funding Act, 2018 (Act 6 of 2018), which regulates public and private funding of political parties, came into effect on 1

The Act establishes funds for political parties represented in Parliament and legislatures to undertake their work. It requires that donations be disclosed by parties and donors to the IEC.

The Act prohibits donations, to parties, by foreign governments or agencies, foreign persons or entities, organs of state or state-owned

Parties may, however, receive funding from foreign entities for

Parties may, however, receive funding from foreign entities for training, skills development or policy development.

Through the establishment of the Represented Political Party Fund, which provides public funding to parties, and the Multi-Party Democracy Fund, which funds parties from private sources, the Act seeks to ensure that all represented political parties receive sufficient funds for their work in a fair and equitable manner. The implementation of the Act introduces a new era of transparency within South Africa's electoral democracy, mandating all political parties to disclose donations above R100 000.

An online party funding system was launched for political parties and their sponsors to make disclosures to the IEC.

Municipal Infrastructure Support Agent

The agent is mandated to provide immediate support to municipalities struggling with infrastructure delivery by facilitating the deployment of engineers, scientists and technicians to those municipalities, and providing oversight.

By offering technical advice, the agent supports and strengthens the capacity of municipalities to provide access to basic services, exercise their powers, and perform the functions required to develop, maintain and operate municipal infrastructure. It also aims to improve the municipal management of infrastructure contracts, procurement and construction.

Over the medium term, the agent will continue to train 300 learners, 450 graduates and 1 500 municipal technical officials per year to improve municipal capacity, and assist 118 municipalities in developing spatial development frameworks, in line with the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013).

South African Local Government Association

The SALGA is an association of municipalities. The association's strategic role is to represent the interests of local government

within the overall system of government, assist members to fulfil their developmental obligations, participate actively in intergovernmental relations, voice local government interests and provide solutions to local government challenges.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.8%, from R765.7 million in 2021/22 to R881.6 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 61.7% (R1.6 billion) of the association's total budget over the medium. The association is largely funded through membership fees paid by municipalities, which are expected to amount to R3.1 billion over the period ahead. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members. The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members of the executive council. Premiers are appointed by the President. Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet.

Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

A provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution. According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- · agriculture
- · casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- · education at all levels, excluding university and university of
- technology education
- environment
- · health services
- · human settlements
- language policy
- · nature conservation
- police services
- · provincial public media
- · public transport
- · regional planning and development
- road traffic regulation
- tourism
- · trade and industrial promotion
- · traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- · welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas. includina:

abattoirs

- · ambulance services
- liquor licences
- · museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- · provincial recreational activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005. which brings together the three spheres of government on matters of common interest and national importance, thereby strengthening cooperative governance.

Local government

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), up to 10 part-time representatives may be designated to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The DCoG aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation;
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government; and
- coordinating and supporting policy development, implementing the Local Government Strategic Agenda, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipalities

South Africa has 257 metropolitan, district and local municipalities. This number comprises eight metropolitan, 44 district and 205 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and service.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single-employer bodies.

The eight metropolitan municipalities are:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- · City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- · City of Johannesburg

- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality (Ggeberha)
- · City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, or the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils. District councils are primarily responsible for capacity building and district-wide planning. The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- · prepare, implement and review integrated development plans;
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance
- · management systems;
- · monitor and review municipalities' performances;
- · prepare municipalities' budgets;
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services;
 and
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy

The Local Government Turnaround Strategy was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better service delivery aimed at responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government. Five focus areas aimed at fast-tracking implementation of the strategy have been identified.

These are service delivery, governance, financial management, infrastructure development and fighting corruption.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant

The grant aims to eradicate municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The DCoG is responsible for managing and transferring the Municipal Infrastructure Grant, and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing the grant projects.

Community Work Programme

This is a key government initiative aimed at mobilising communities to provide regular and predictable work opportunities at the local government level.

The purpose of the programme is to provide an employment safety net for those without access to opportunities designed to lift them out of poverty.

The programme recognises that policies to address unemployment and create decent work will take time to reach people living in marginalised areas where few opportunities exist.

Local economic development

LED is an approach towards economic development that allows and

encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life to all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- Developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED;
- Providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local government;
- · Managing the LED Fund;
- Managing and providing technical support to nodal economic development planning;
- · Facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor programmes; and
- Assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised to achieve economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

Department of Traditional Affairs

The department is mandated to oversee issues related to traditional affairs and support the development of stable and cohesive traditional communities. The 2003 White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance sets out a national framework, and the norms and standards that define the role of the institutions of traditional leadership in South Africa.

It seeks to support and transform the institutions in accordance with constitutional imperatives and restore the integrity and legitimacy of traditional leadership in line with the African indigenous law and customs subject to the Constitution. South Africa also has provincial houses of traditional leaders in the Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

National and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government. Local houses of traditional leaders deepen and cement the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on: monitoring partnerships and agreements between government and traditional and Khoi-San leadership, in line with the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act 2019, (Act 3 of 2019); conducting investigations and research on applications for the recognition of Khoi-San leaders and communities; supporting royal families in documenting customary laws and genealogies to mitigate against persistent traditional leadership claims and disputes; and ensuring that customary initiation is practised safely by regulating the environment for initiates.

In an effort to regulate and standardise traditional leadership, the department will monitor the implementation of partnerships and agreements between government and traditional and Khoi-San leadership and communities. in line with the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership

Act of 2019, in eight provinces per year over the medium term. It plans to finalise the Traditional Leadership Handbook by 2024 to establish norms and standards for, and benchmark the costs of, traditional affairs across provinces. The department will also mitigate against traditional leadership disputes and claims by documenting customary laws of succession and genealogies for kingships and queenships in eight provinces.

To carry out these activities, spending in the Institutional Support and Coordination programme is set to increase at an average annual rate of 0.2%, from R93.4 million in 2021/22 to R93.9 million in 2024/25.

To create a safe and regulated environment for initiates, the department plans to monitor the implementation of the Customary Initiation Act, 2021 (Act 2 of 2021) over the MTEF period, and establish a national initiation oversight committee and a database for information on customary initiation activities.

These activities will be carried out in the Research, Policy and Legislation programme, in which spending is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.5%, from R21.7 million in 2021/22 to R29.2 million in 2024/25.

Legislation

The department's mandate is informed by the following legislation:

- · Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019; and
- Commission for the Protection and Promotion of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities Act, 2002 (Act 19 of 2002).

Entity

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities

The commission supports communities in developing and fostering social cohesion, peace and tolerance.

Over the medium term, the commission will continue to advocate for the rights of cultural, religious and linguistic communities by implementing programmes on the promotion and development of tolerance in a diverse society. Accordingly, it plans to hold 185 seminars, dialogues and conferences over the period ahead as part of its Public Education and Community Engagement programme. Spending on Public Education and Community Engagement programme is set to increase at an average annual rate of 5.6%, from R2.9 million in 2021/22 to R3.4 million in 2024/25.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.2%, from R46.3 million in 2021/22 to R49.4 million in 2024/25. Transfers from the department account for an estimated 99.5% (R142.9 million) of the commission's revenue over the medium term. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Traditional leadership

The Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised.

Government acknowledges the critical role of traditional leadership institutions in South Africa's constitutional democracy and in communities, particularly in relation to the Rural Development Strategy. It, therefore, remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership. To this end, numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that

traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society. The department is also working on a range of issues, including policies on unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards, and involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in South Africa.

Parliament extended the term of the Commission of Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims from 2016 to 2020 – to allow the commission time to finalise outstanding disputes and claims, and deal with the 320 traditional leadership disputes and claims per year that were envisaged.

Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy. It states that 40% of members must be elected and that one third of members must be women.

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance. Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

The National Khoisan Council aims to unite the Khoisan communities and create a platform through which they can raise issues affecting them as a group of communities. The most important issue is the statutory recognition and inclusion of the Khoisan people in formal government structures.

National House of Traditional Leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation. The NHTL was established in terms of the then NHTL Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders. The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

It was established to:

- · represent traditional leadership and their communities;
- advance the aspirations of the traditional leadership and their communities at national level;
- advance the plight of provincial houses of traditional leaders, traditional leadership and their communities at national government level;
- participate in international matters that have to do with custom, traditions and matters of common interest; and
- · influence government legislative processes at national level.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, (Act 41 of 2003). It is tasked

with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader, and headmen and headwomen), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003 requires that the commission investigate and make recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

Public Service and Administration

The Department of Public Service and Administration (DPSA) draws its mandate from Section 195 (1) of the Constitution, which sets out basic values and principles to which the Public Service should adhere to; and the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), which gives the Minister of Public Service and Administration the responsibility to establish norms and standards relating to:

- · the functions of the Public Service;
- organisational structures and the establishment of departments,
 and other governance arrangements in the Public Service;
- and other governance arrangements in the Public Service;
- the conditions of service and other employment practices for employees;
- · labour relations in the Public Service:
- · the health and wellness of employees;
- · information management in the Public Service;
- electronic government:
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption in the Public Service; and
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other matter to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its delivery of services to the public.

The DPSA is at the centre of government. It plays a major policy role in establishing norms and standards for Public Service, which ensure that service-delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, human resources, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of citizens.

The NDP articulates a vision of a capable and developmental state built through strengthening delegation, accountability and oversight in the Public Service. This vision is supported by Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the DPSA is closely aligned.

Accordingly, over the medium term, the department intends to address governance and operational challenges in the Public Service sector, which, among others, include a lack of integration and coordination in services provided by departments; dissimilar experiences of the quality and quantity of government services by the public; departments' non-compliance with the Public Service Act of 1994 and regulations; and different conditions of service for employees in the local, provincial and national spheres of government, including public entities.

Responding to these and other challenges in the Public Service, over the medium term, will entail intensifying the fight against corruption; developing measures to reduce government's wage bill; ensuring adherence to Batho Pele Principles; and developing regulations and

reviewing key legislation.

Intensifying the fight against corruption

Over the MTEF period, the DPSA will intensify the fight against corruption in the Public Service by strengthening disciplinary action in cases of corruption, and by promoting a culture of accountability, and ethical and professional behaviour.

Part of combating corruption requires limiting the scope for conflicts of interest through measures such as prohibiting public servants from conducting business with the State, conducting lifestyle audits on certain categories of employees, and monitoring the implementation of the Financial Disclosure Framework by designated employees. Accordingly, guidelines on conducting lifestyle audits to intensify the fight against corruption in the Public Service were adopted in 2021/22. Over the medium term, the department plans to provide support in the public service for the implementation of these guidelines.

The Public Administration Ethics, Integrity and Disciplinary Technical Assistance Unit is responsible for the development of guidelines on lifestyle audits and provides technical assistance and support to institutions in all spheres of government. The unit develops norms and standards on ethics, integrity, conduct and discipline management in public administration, and monitors the adherence of designated employees to the financial disclosure framework.

The department aims to increase awareness of public sector lifestyle audits, especially in terms of the repercussions of committing fraudulent activities and provide support to all government departments over the medium term on the implementation of guidelines for conducting lifestyle audits on public servants.

To carry out all activities related to intensifying the fight against corruption, R64.9 million over the medium term is allocated in the Public Administration Ethics, Integrity and Disciplinary Technical Assistance Unit subprogramme in the Negotiations, Labour Relations and Remuneration Management programme.

Reducing government's wage bill

The DPSA is tasked with ensuring that the public sector wage becomes more affordable. It is in the process of conducting a review of personnel expenditure that will inform the development of a remuneration policy framework for the public service. The terms of reference have been developed and relevant stakeholders have been engaged. A suitably qualified service provider is expected to be appointed in 2022/23 to review and analyse the framework and provide recommendations for improvements or alternative arrangements.

The department is in the process of establishing a project management office that will introduce reforms with a long term view of building a capable, ethical, and developmental state while managing the wage bill. Five workstreams have been identified – the management of the wage bill and consolidation of bargaining councils; human resource planning and development; the professionalisation of the public service; the consolidation of medical aid schemes and public sector pension funds; and productivity measurement.

A total of R107.2 million, over the medium term, is set aside for these activities in the Remuneration, Employment Conditions and Human Resource Systems subprogramme in the Negotiations, Labour Relations and Remuneration Management programme.

While doing this, the DPSA will monitor the implementation of the

Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council resolutions by national and provincial departments with the aim of resolving challenges in implementation before they become disputes. Funding for these activities is within an allocation of R22 million over the medium term in the Negotiations, Labour Relations and Dispute Management subprogramme in the Negotiations, Labour Relations and Remuneration Management programme.

Improving the implementation of Batho Pele principles

Adherence to Batho Pele Principles means putting people first in the delivery of public services. Accordingly, over the medium term, the DPSA will focus on monitoring the quality and implementation of the revised Batho Pele Programme, and the extent to which departments promote and implement the principles.

This entails, among other things, evaluating whether departments consulted and agreed with citizens in developing standards for each principle. These activities are expected to result in expenditure of R43.3 million over the medium term in the Service Delivery Improvement, Citizen Relations and Public Participation subprogramme in the Government Service Access and Improvement programme.

Developing regulations and reviewing key legislation

Over the MTEF period, the department will focus on developing regulations to enable the full implementation of the Public Administration Management Act, 2014 (Act 11 of 2014) and reviewing the Public Service Act (1994) and related policies.

Consultations with internal and external stakeholders on the draft white paper on the transformation and modernisation of public administration will inform the drafting of the Public Administration Management Amendment Bill – which is expected to be tabled in Parliament in 2022/23 – and other legislative provisions to enhance the principles of a unified public administration. To carry out these activities, R33.1 million over themedium term is allocated in the Legal Services subprogramme in the Administration programme.

legislation

Over the medium term, the DPSA will focus on developing regulations to enable the full implementation of the Public Administration Management Act of 2014 and reviewing the Public Service Act of 1994 and related policies, which will be done concurrently with the development of the Public Administration Management Amendment Bill.

The department expects the Public Service Amendment Bill and the Public Administration Management Amendment Bill to be tabled in Parliament in 2022/23. To carry out these activities, R29.4 million has been allocated over the MTEF period to the Legal Services subprogramme in the Administration programme.

Budge

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DPSA was allocated R531.7 million. The department's total budget over the MTEF period is R1.7 billion. An estimated 54% (R888.5 million) of this is allocated to compensation of employees and 8.3% (R137.3 million) is earmarked for transfer payments to the Centre for Public Service Innovation. An additional R5.1 million in 2022/23 is a located to compensation of employees to cover costs arising from the 2021/22 public sector wage agreement.

Entit

Centre for Public Sector Innovation

The responsibility for innovation in the Public Sector is vested in the Minister for Public Service and Administration. The CPSI is tasked to fulfil this mandate, which includes establishing norms and standards relating to transformation, reform and innovation to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

Over the medium term, the centre aims to use innovation to improve service delivery by partnering with other government departments, non-governmental organisations, the private sector, tertiary institutions, academics and international entities to identify or develop innovative solutions to challenges facing the public service.

This could include the creation or implementation of prototypes, approaches, models, services or products for further testing and piloting. In 2022/23, four new research and/or development projects are set to be initiated. These and other related activities are expected to be carried out in the Research and Development and Institutional Support and Replication subprogrammes in the Public Sector Innovation programme. The Public Sector Innovation programme has a budget of R62.6 million over the MTEF period.

As part of its efforts to bring about a culture of innovation in the Public Sector, the CPSI will continue to coordinate nine innovation knowledge platforms that share innovative approaches, solutions and models across all spheres of government. Funding for these activities is within an allocation of R26.7 million over the medium term in the Enabling Environment and Stakeholder Management subprogramme in the Public Sector Innovation programme.

One of these platforms is the annual Public Sector Innovation Awards, through which the centre aims to identify at least two innovative solutions for replication in targeted government sectors to address challenges in service delivery. Replication is carried out in the Institutional Support and Replication subprogramme, which has a total budget of R15.6 million over the medium term.

For the 2021/22 financial year, the CPSI's budget allocation was R41.4 million. The centre's expenditure is set to increase at an average annual rate of 4.6%, from R41.5 million in 2021/22 to R47.4 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees is the largest spending area, accounting for 54.6% (R75.5 million) of the department's total budget, increasing at an average annual rate of 5.4%, from R22.2 million in 2021/22 to R26 million in 2024/25.

National School of Government (NSG)

The Public Service is at the coalface of government. Lack of professionalism does not only impact service delivery, it also dents public confidence. Advancing honesty, ethics and integrity in the Public Service is critical if government is to build a capable state.

Through the NSG, government continues to roll out courses and training programmes for its officials, from entry level to senior management and the Executive.

The NSG responds to its mandate by developing relevant training and development programmes for delivery to public service officials at all levels. Through education and training, the school promotes the progressive realisation of the values and principles governing public administration, and enhances the quality of human resource capacity

in public institutions. The school uses its trading account as a delivery vehicle for its core output.

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on providing education and training to public servants and public representatives in the three spheres of government, state-owned entities and other organs of state by increasing the number of virtual and online learning and training programmes it conducts and implementing ICT projects to support this.

The department plans to increase its online training programmes from 36 in 2021/22 to 44 in 2024/25. To accommodate this, the department has had to increase its investment in ICT and aims to implement 6 ICT projects over the period ahead, including the acquisition of new ICT infrastructure and upgrading the e-learning management system.

This is intended to ensure that the department also increases the number of learners accessing compulsory and demand-led training, education and development programmes. These activities will be carried out in the Administration programme, allocations to which are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.9%, from R110.9 million in 2021/22 to R117.3 million in 2024/25.

For the 2021/22 financial year, the NSG was allocated R214.3. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.2%, from R214.3 million in 2021/22 to R235.6 million in 2024/25. Transfers and subsidies from the Public Sector Organisational and Staff Development programme to the school's training trading account constitute 49.9% (R347.8 million) of the department's budget over the medium term. Compensation of employees comprises an estimated 26.6% (R181.1 million) of total expenditure over the period ahead.

Entity

NSG Training Trading Account

The NSG Training Trading Account carries out its expanded mandate of building capacity in all spheres of government, state-owned entities and organs of state through its training trading account. Over the medium term, the entity will focus on increasing the number of learners educated, trained and developed through compulsory and demand-led courses or programmes; and increasing the number of online education, training and development interventions conducted.

Accordingly, the number of learners educated, trained and developed per year is expected to increase from 40 460 in 2021/22 to 42 460 in 2024/25, while the number of online learning education, training and development interventions per year is expected to increase from 36 in 2021/22 to 46 in 2024/25.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.9%, from R210.4 million in 2021/22 to R229.5 million in 2024/25, with compensation of employees accounting for an estimated 48.8% (R323 million) of this spending. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is an independent institution established in terms of Chapter 10 of the Constitution. The commission derives its mandate from Sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution, which set out the values and principles that govern public administration.

The commission is vested with custodial oversight responsibilities for the Public Service; and monitors, evaluates and investigates public

administration practices. It has the power to issue directives on compliance with personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals. The NDP sets out a vision for building a capable and developmental state and, in doing so, rooting out corruption by building a resilient anti-corruption system. Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF gives expression to this vision.

Over the MTEF period, the commission will focus on promoting professional ethics in the public service; monitoring service delivery sites; managing grievances; and ensuring that alleged incidents of public service misconduct are appropriately investigated. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.3%, from R286.3 million in 2021/22 to R297.7 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees' accounts for 75% (R652.1 million) of the commission's projected expenditure over the medium term.

To promote a high standard of professional ethics in the public service, the commission expects to produce four professional ethics articles per year and continue to conduct research in the field, increase the percentage of investigations finalised within 90 working days from 60% in 2021/22 to 85% in 2024/25, scrutinise compliance with the financial disclosure framework, and refer all anti-corruption hotline cases for investigation within seven days of receipt of a case report. These activities will be carried out in the Integrity and Anti-corruption programme, which has an allocation of R63.3 million over the medium term.

Section 196(4)(f)(ii) of the Constitution obligates the commission to investigate grievances reported by public service employees relating to official acts or omissions of public servants. Over the medium term, the commission will manage these grievances and make recommendations to its executive authority. The commission aims to increase the percentage of grievances finalised within 30 days from 65% in 2021/22 to 85% in 2024/25. These activities will be carried out in the Leadership and Management Practices programme, which has an allocation of R43.8 million over the MTEF period.

The commission will continue to focus on the professionalisation of the public service by promoting ethical conduct in human resource management and leadership. In aiding this, the commission will conduct research, and monitor and develop capacity on key public service issues, such as ethical practices in recruitment processes, effective discipline management, and the effective management of employee development. To carry out these activities, R29.3 million is allocated over the MTEF period in the Leadership and Management Practices programme.

The commission will continue to oversee service delivery by conducting inspections on key departments that are directly involved in providing services, and support Parliament in exercising its oversight role by holding the executive accountable. For these purposes, R27.3 million over the medium term is allocated in the Monitoring and Evaluation programme.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the PSC was allocated R282.3 million. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of1.3%, from R286.3 million in 2021/22 to R297.7 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees' accounts for 75% (R652.1 million) of the commission's projected expenditure over the medium term.

Public Service Month

South Africa commemorates PSM in September each year. It is a regular national event that requires all the national and provincial departments to participate by putting in place activities and campaigns to improve service delivery. PSM is a follow-up to and mirrors the UN and Africa Public Service Day, which takes place on 23 June every year.

The 2021 PSM celebrations took place within the context of the continued fight against the COVID-19 pandemic and on-going efforts to build back stronger and better. It was commemorated under the theme: "The Year of Charlotte Maxeke – building the capacity of the State through a resilient workforce that responds to the coronavirus pandemic".

The theme sought to reinforce government's commitment to continue serving the public despite an ever-changing service delivery environment shaped by the COVID-19 pandemic and other external forces. The Constitution demands that the Public Service, amongst others, maintains and promotes a high standard of professional ethics; promotes efficient, economic and effective use of resources; and is accountable for its actions.

Batho Pele

The Batho Pele initiative is aimed at improving service delivery to the public. Batho Pele is a Sesotho phrase meaning "People First". From this concept, eight principles for transforming Public service delivery were derived. These are:

- · regular consultation with customers;
- · set service standards;
- · increased access to services;
- · higher levels of courtesy;
- more and better information about services;
- increased openness and transparency about services;
- · remedying failures and mistakes; and
- · giving the best possible value for money.

Batho Pele awards

The annual National Batho Pele Excellence Awards recognise public servants who are selfless, dedicated, committed and go the extra mile in servicing citizens. Eligible to public servants across the three spheres of government, the awards seek to entrench transformation and professionalism in the Public Service.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Health

Health

The National Development Plan (NDP) set out nine long-term health goals for South Africa. Five of these goals relate to improving the health and well-being of the population and the other four deal with aspects of strengthening health services.

By 2030, South Africa should have:

- · raised the life expectancy to at least 70 years;
- progressively improved tuberculosis (TB) prevention and cure;
- · reduced maternal, infant and child mortality;
- significantly reduced prevalence of non-communicable diseases (NCDs);
- reduced injury, accidents and violence by 50% from 2010 levels;
- · complete health system reforms;
- primary healthcare teams that provide care to families and communities;
- · universal healthcare coverage; and
- · filled posts with skilled, committed and competent individuals.

National Department of Health (NDoH)

The NDoH derives its mandate from the National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003), which requires that it provides a framework for a structured and uniform health system for South Africa. The Act sets out the responsibilities of the three spheres of government in the provision of health services. Its mission is to improve health by preventing illness and disease and promoting healthy lifestyles. It aims to consistently improve the health care delivery system by focusing on access, equity, efficiency, quality and sustainability.

The department contributes directly to the realisation of Priority 3 (education, skills and health) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

As the custodian of South Africa's national health system, the department contributes to the goals, indicators and actions of Chapter 10 of the NDP, such as reducing the burden of disease and strengthening the provision of healthcare to improve the lives and lifespans of the country's citizens. In terms of the National Health Act of 2003, provincial departments of health are mandated to provide healthcare services, whereas the national department is responsible for policy formulation, coordination and support to provincial departments, as well as the monitoring, evaluation and oversight of the sector.

Additionally, it aims to progressively achieve universal health coverage, and financial risk protection for all citizens seeking health care, through application of the principles of social solidarity, cross-subsidization and equity. These targets are consistent with the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals to which South Africa subscribes, and Vision 2030, described by the NDP. A stronger health system, and improved quality of care will be fundamental to achieve these impacts.

Over the medium term, the department's focus will be on reducing morbidity and mortality resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic, including rolling out government's vaccination strategy and responding to future waves of infection. Ongoing focus areas include implementing the National Health Insurance, preventing and treating communicable and NCDs, investing in health infrastructure, supporting tertiary health care services in provinces, and developing the health workforce.

Responding to the COVID-19 pandemic

By May 2022, South Africa had experienced four waves of COVID-19 infections, placing significant pressure on the country's health system and its budgets. To protect South Africans against the virus, the department aims to have vaccinated 70% of the adult population by March 2023.

An amount of R10.1 billion was allocated for the vaccine rollout in 2020/21 and 2021/22, and R4 billion is allocated for this purpose in 2022/23, of which R2.1 billion is earmarked in the Communicable and NCDs programme for purchasing additional vaccines. A further R1 billion is provisionally allocated for purchasing vaccines and can be allocated during the year. The remaining R1.9 billion, of which R1 billion is an additional allocation, is allocated to the district health component of the District Health Programmes Grant in the Primary Health Care (PHC) programme to support the administration of vaccines in provinces.

South Africa adopted a three-pronged strategy for the acquisition of the vaccines, which included procuring them from COVAX; the African Vaccine Initiative, and directly from manufacturers or developers. The implementation of the National Vaccination Programme took a three-phased approach to the roll-out of the vaccines across the country, commencing with frontline health care providers as the priority group, followed by other essential workers. Early access to COVID vaccination was provided to healthcare workers from 17th February 2021. The vaccine roll-out to the general population began on 17th May 2021. Individuals 60 years and older were initially targeted, with additional age groups being incrementally added.

As of March 2022, South Africa had administered 33 296 217 vaccine doses – 8 126 185 Johnson & Johnson and 25 170 032 Pfizer, with 19 314 839 (48.5%) of the adult population having been vaccinated. The number of adults who were fully vaccinated was at 17 403 325 (43.7%). A total of 2 025 294 had already received their booster doses. Vaccination of young people aged 12 – 17 years old commenced in 2021. By March 2022, 1 894 054 doses had been administered to this age group, with a total of 1 535 105 having had their first dose, whilst a further 358 947 had also received their second doses. COVID-19 vaccination dashboards are available at: https://sacoronavirus.co.za/latest-vaccine-statistics.

Phased implementation of the NHI

Activities related to the NHI are allocated R8.8 billion over the MTEF period, R6.5 billion of which goes through the NHI Indirect Grant. This includes R4.4 billion to the health facility revitalisation component, which funds infrastructure projects in the Hospital Systems programme to improve the public health system's readiness for the NHI; R1.9 billion to the non-personal services component in the NHI programme to fund initiatives to strengthen the health system, such as the dispensing and distribution of chronic medicines, the improvement of patient information systems, and the electronic management of medicine stocks; and R277.2 million to the personal services component in the NHI programme to establish proof of concept contracting units for primary care, through which it will contract PHC providers through capitation arrangements.

An amount of R2.1 billion is allocated to provincial health departments through the Direct NHI Grant for contracting PHC doctors,

and mental health and oncology service providers. A further R174.2 million is earmarked for capacitating the department's NHI unit and building its health technology assessment, which involves economic evaluations of health interventions to inform policy making and priority-setting capacity to ensure that the department is ready to implement the NHI.

Preventing and treating communicable and NCDs

The District Health Programmes Grant (previously called the HIV, TB, Malaria and Community Outreach Grant) is the main vehicle for funding disease-specific programmes in the sector. It previously had eight components, but to give provinces greater flexibility in using funds, these have been merged into two: the comprehensive HIV and AIDS component, with an allocation of R73.1 billion over the MTEF period; and the district health component, with an allocation of R10.9 billion over the MTEF period.

The comprehensive HIV and AIDS component in the Communicable and NCDs programme funds government's antiretroviral treatment programme, which aims to reach 6.7 million people by 2024/25, as well as HIV-prevention and TB prevention and treatment services. The district health component in the PHC programme funds community outreach services, malaria interventions and human papillomavirus vaccinations. In 2022/23, it will also fund provincial costs for the rollout of COVID-19 vaccines. In total, the grant is allocated R84 billion over the medium term.

The mental health component of the grant is for strategic purchasing of services from health professionals to complement the public sector human resource capacity to improve mental health services at PHC and to reduce the backlog of forensic mental observations.

Investing in health infrastructure

Over the MTEF period, R21.3 billion will be transferred to provincial departments of health through the Health Facility Revitalisation Grant and R4.4 billion is managed by the department on behalf of provinces through the health facility revitalisation component of the NHI Indirect Grant.

These grants are aimed at accelerating the construction, maintenance, upgrading and rehabilitation of new and existing health system infrastructure, as well as providing medical equipment required to render health services. Over the medium term, the department aims to construct or revitalise 92 health facilities through the indirect grant and conduct major maintenance work or refurbishment on a further 200 facilities.

This spending is in the Health Facilities Infrastructure Management subprogramme in the Hospital Systems programme. In an endeavour to improve access to mental health services, the department is attaching mental health units to general hospitals and further planning to construct new forensic mental observations units in Gauteng and Limpopo.

Supporting tertiary healthcare services

Tertiary healthcare services are highly specialised referral services provided at central and tertiary hospitals. However, due to their specialised nature, there are only 31 of these hospitals in the country and most of them are in urban areas. This unequal distribution results in patients often being referred from one province to another, which requires strong national coordination and cross-subsidisation to

compensate provinces for providing tertiary services to patients from elsewhere. These services are subsidised through the National Tertiary Services Grant, which is allocated R14.3 billion in 2022/23, R14 billion in 2023/24 and R14.7 billion in 2024/25 in the Hospital Systems programme. To improve equity and reduce the need for interprovincial referrals, a portion of the grant is ringfenced for strengthening tertiary services in provinces in which they are underdeveloped.

Developing the health workforce

To ensure that all eligible students can complete their training through medical internships and subsequently community service, additional allocations of R1.1 billion in 2022/23, R1.2 billion in 2023/24 and R942 million are made to the statutory human resources component of the Human Resources and Training Grant, setting its total allocations to R7.8 billion over the medium term. To provide further development and training for existing health workers, the training component of the grant is allocated R8.5 billion over the same period. This spending is within the Human Resources for Health subprogramme in the Health System Governance and Human Resources programme.

COVID-19 response

On 31 December 2019, the World Health Organization (WHO) reported a cluster of pneumonia cases in Wuhan City, China. Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) was confirmed as the causative agent of what came to be known as COVID-19. Since then, the virus has spread all over the world.

To combat the spread of the virus in South Africa, government put in place various measures, including declaring a national state of disaster which resulted in regulations that limited public gatherings, travel from high-risk countries and the sale of alcohol. In March 2020, government implemented a three-week nationwide lockdown with severe restrictions on travel and movement. People were only allowed to leave their homes to buy food, seek medical help or under other extreme circumstances.

In addition, borders were closed to reduce the rate of infection from those travelling into South Africa from other countries. A quarantine was also enforced on inbound travellers and returning citizens. Government also established five alert levels:

- Level 5: at this level drastic measures were required to contain the spread of the virus to save lives.
- Level 4: some activity could be allowed to resume, subject to extreme precautions required to limit community transmission and outbreaks.
- Level 3: the easing of some restrictions, including on work and social activities, to address a high risk of transmission.
- Level 2: the further easing of restrictions, but the maintenance of physical distancing and restrictions on some leisure and social activities to prevent a resurgence of the virus.
- Level 1: most normal activity could resume, with precautions and health guidelines followed at all times.

Since the first case of COVID-19 was reported in South Africa in March 2020, an evidence-based health response strategy to COVID-19 has been implemented across the country. The National Plan for COVID-19 Health Response has nine strategic priorities:

- Provide effective governance and leadership:
- Strengthen surveillance and strategic information;

- Augment health systems readiness including emergency medical services;
- · Enhance community engagement;
- · Improve laboratory capacity and testing;
- · Clarify care pathways;
- · Scale-up infection prevention and control measures; and
- · Boost capacity at ports of entry;
- Expedite research and introduction of therapeutics, diagnostics and vaccines.

The plan has been updated to include vaccination as part of the response. The COVID-19 pandemic in South Africa continues to evolve. The initial phase of intense community transmission lasted seven weeks from late May to mid-July 2020, and thereafter there was a sustained decline from the end of July to Mid-October. Subsequently, the country plunged into a second wave of increasing infections reaching a peak in January 2021 that was higher than the first wave.

The second wave was driven by varied resurgences occurring in all provinces but more particularly in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng. The magnitude of the second wave was attributed to the high transmissibility of the Beta variant of the COVID-19 virus, while the third wave had a mix of Alpha, Beta, and Delta variants.

Another COVID-19 variant, (B.1.1.529): SARS-CoV-2 (Omicron), was detected in South Africa from specimens collected in November 2021. It was designated by the WHO as a variant of concern. In December 2021, South Africa officially entered the fourth wave of the pandemic.

Main prevention efforts are continuing across the country. In April 2022, government ended the National State of Disaster, with the exception of a few transitional regulations. The COVID-19 non-pharmaceutical interventions – hand washing, social distancing and wearing of masks remained in place even when all other restrictions were eased. In June 2022, government lifted the remaining COVID-19 restrictions, including limitations on gatherings, international travel and wearing of masks in public.

The decision to lift the restrictions was made in the light of a decline in daily cases, hospitalisations and reported deaths. The NDoH continues to strengthen COVID-19 resurgence planning, surveillance and response in all provinces; as well as vigilance, tracking and timely response to emerging hotspots.

COVID Alert SA

COVID Alert SA is an official Bluetooth contact-tracing application (app) to help fight COVID-19. The mobile app is built on the Apple-Google Exposure Notifications app programmable interface. Anyone in South Africa who has a Bluetooth-enabled smartphone can access this app.

The app is under three megabytes, free and does not feature in-app purchases. The data to use the app has been zero-rated by all South Africa's mobile network providers. One of the most critical aspects of combating COVID-19 is the ability to detect people who have tested positive for the virus early, followed by the process of contact tracing.

The app uses Bluetooth contact-tracing technology to let people know if they have been in contact with someone who has COVID-19. It gives everyone the chance to understand their exposure to the virus, so every member of the community is protected, especially those most at risk. It is an important tool to combating the pandemic, which can help

slow the spread of the virus and save lives.

The COVID Alert SA app is an extension of the NDoH's COVIDConnect's platform, which was launched in July 2020. While the COVID Alert SA app can only be downloaded to a smartphone, COVIDConnect works on any mobile phone. It offers news and information, a risk-assessment tool and COVID-19 test results via WhatsApp or SMS.

In the case of positive test results, users are prompted to provide further information to identify close contacts. They are, in turn, immediately alerted of their potential exposure to COVID-19 via SMS, without disclosing the index patient's details. The system can also geolocate the nearest quarantine or healthcare facility. Both the COVID Alert SA app and COVIDConnect platforms function without infringing on users' privacy or data.

South Africa began the first round of its vaccination roll-out programme on 17 February 2021. The country secured the single-dose Johnson & Johnson vaccine for use in the Sisonke Study, which were distributed to up to 500 000 health care workers in 18 public sector hospitals across all nine provinces.

Phase two of the vaccine roll-out programme commenced on 17 May, 2021 – with the vaccination of persons 60 years of age and older, and ran simultaneously with the continuing vaccination of health care workers whose vaccination was affected by the regulatory issues that beset the Johnson & Johnson vaccine in the United States of America and Europe.

By October 2021, all citizens aged 12 years and above were eligible for a COVID-19 vaccine.

COVID-19 research and related activities

The COVID-19 pandemic has motivated South African health institutions to rethink, reorganise and reshape their priorities and agendas. In this context, many of South Africa's leading research institutions and senior researchers have forged new national and global research collaborations aimed at urgently answering critical clinical and public health questions.

When the country went into its first lockdown, surveillance studies for COVID-19 were established to monitor trends in COVID-19 infections among health care workers and pregnant women. In addition, surveillance studies were being planned to investigate trends in infection in households, communities, outbreaks, and in various workplaces such as the mining industry.

Other studies were aimed at evaluating improved diagnostic tests for the detection of recent and past infections. In parallel, the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (SAHPRA) and the National Health Laboratory Services (NHLS) developed a novel strategy to evaluate the quality of serology and molecular tests – both were critical for the country's management and understanding of the evolving outbreak. There are many clinical trials in planning and in progress that aim to identify new technologies for the prevention of COVID-19 infection.

These include vaccine studies, pre-exposure prophylaxis studies, and studies aimed at evaluating new therapies for both early treatment and for later treatment of hospitalised patients. Other studies underway include the establishment of a pregnancy register to evaluate

potential harm to pregnant women and/or their babies caused by COVID-19 infection, and a number of qualitative studies exploring the sociopsychological impacts of COVID-19 infection, and of the pandemic more generally on the social and mental well-being of South African citizens.

Legislation and policies

The legislative mandate of the NDoH is derived from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and several pieces of legislation passed by Parliament. Legislation falling under the NDoH portfolio include the:

- National Health Act of 2003 provides a framework for a structured health system within South Africa, taking into account the obligations imposed by the Constitution and other laws on the national, provincial and local governments regarding health services.
- Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965), provides for the registration of medicines and other medicinal products to ensure their safety, quality and efficacy, and also provides for transparency in the pricing of medicines.
- Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), provides for the control of hazardous substances, in particular those emitting radiation.
- Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973
 (Act 78 of 1973), provides for medical examinations on people
 suspected of having contracted occupational diseases, especially
 in mines, and for compensation in respect of those diseases.
- Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974), provides for the regulation of the pharmacy profession, including community service by pharmacists.
- Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974), provides for the regulation of health professions, in particular medical practitioners, dentists, psychologists and other related health professions, including community service by these professionals.
- Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act 19 of 1979), provides for the regulation of dental technicians and for the establishment of a council to regulate the profession.
- Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), provides for the regulation of health practitioners, such as chiropractors, homeopaths, and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.
- SAMRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), provides for the establishment of a medical research council, which is responsible for health research.
- Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 92 of 1996), provides a legal framework for the termination of pregnancies based on choice under certain circumstances.
- Sterilisation Act, 1998 (Act 44 of 1998), provides a legal framework for sterilisations, including for people with mental health challenges.
- Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), provides for the regulation of the medical schemes industry to ensure consonance with national health objectives.
- Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993), provides for the control of tobacco products, the prohibition of smoking in public places and of advertisements of tobacco products, as well as the sponsoring of events by the tobacco industry.

- NHLS Act, 2000 (Act 37 of 2000), provides for a statutory body that offers laboratory services to the public health sector.
- The Council for Medical Schemes (CMS) Levy Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000), provides a legal framework for the CMS to charge medical schemes certain fees.
- Mental Health Care Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), provides a legal framework for mental health in the country and, in particular, the procedures for admission and discharge for various categoriesof mental health care users in health establishments, with an emphasis on human rights and accessible, comprehensive and integrated mental health care, treatment and rehabilitation services, including forensic mental health services.
- Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005), provides for the regulation of the nursing profession.
- Traditional Health Practitioners Act, 2007 (Act 22 of 2007 provides for the establishment of the Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council, and registration, training and practices of traditional health practitioners in the country.
- Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972), provides for the regulation of foodstuffs, cosmetics and disinfectants, in particular quality standards that must be complied with by manufacturers, as well as the importation and exportation of these items

Other legislation applicable to the NDoH:

- Criminal Law (sexual offences and related matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act. 32 of 2007), provides for the management of victims of crime;
- The Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), sections 212 4(a) and 212 8(a), provides for establishing the cause of non-natural deaths. Sections 77, 78 and 79 provides for forensic mental observations and management of state patients declared by the Courts.
- The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution, to set out principles relating to the care and protection of children, to define parental responsibilities and rights, and to make further provision regarding children's court.
- The Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), as amended; Section 11 provides for criminal capacity assessment of children who are above 10 years but under the age of 14 years;
- The Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), provides for the requirements with which employers must comply to create a safe working environment for employees in the workplace.
- The Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), provides for compensation for disablement caused by occupational injuries or diseases sustained or contracted by employees in the course of their employment, and for death resulting from such injuries or disease.
- The National Roads Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), provides for the testing and analysis of drunk drivers; the Constitution has pertinent sections which provide for the rights of access to healthcare services, including reproductive health and emergency medical treatment.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), provides for the measures that must be put into operation in the workplace to

- eliminate discrimination and promote affirmative action.
- The State Information Technology Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998), provides for the creation and administration of an institution responsible for the State's information technology system.
- The Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), provides for the measures that employers are required to take to improve the levels of skills of employees in workplaces.
- The Public Finance Management Act of 1999 provides for the administration of state funds by functionaries, their responsibilities and incidental matters.
- The Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), amplifies the constitutional provision pertaining to accessing information under the control of various bodies.
- The Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), amplifies the constitutional provisions pertaining to administrative law by codifying it.
- The Promotion of Equality and the Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), provides for the further amplification of the constitutional principles of equality and elimination of unfair discrimination.
- The Division of Revenue Act, 2015 (Act 1 of 2015), provides for the manner in which revenue generated may be disbursed;
- the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), provides for the promotion of black economic empowerment in the manner that the State awards contracts for services to be rendered, and incidental matters.
- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995); establishes a framework to regulate key aspects of relationship between employer and employee at individual and collective level.
- The Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997), prescribes the basic or minimum conditions of employment that an employer must provide for employees covered by the Act.

Rudnet

The NDoH's budget for 2021/22 was R64.8 billion. An estimated 86.7% (R166.6 billion) of the department's budget over the MTEF period will be transferred to provinces through conditional grants. This includes additional allocations amounting to R758.7 million in 2022/23 to fund conditions of service improvements to employees who are funded by these grants. Total expenditure is set to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.7%, from R65.4 billion in 2021/22 to R62.2 billion in 2024/25. This is the result of once-off allocations for the COVID-19 response in 2021/22 and baseline reductions effected over the 2021 MTEF period.

The mental health services and oncology services components of the District Health Programmes' Grant in the Communicable and Non-communicable Diseases programme have shifted to the National Health Insurance Grant. This results in a R299.4 million increase to the baseline over the medium term in the NHI programme. The R9.8 billion reduction to the baseline over the medium term in the Communicable and NCDs programme is linked to an increase of R10.9 billion in the PHC programme.

This results from the shift of the new District Health component (which funds community outreach services, malaria, human papillomavirus and COVID-19 vaccine administration) of the District Health Programmes Grant.

Programmes and projects

National Health Insurance

South Africa is at the brink of effecting significant and much needed reforms to its health system financing mechanisms. The changes are based on the principles of ensuring the right to health for all, entrenching equity, social solidarity, and efficiency and effectiveness in the health system in order to realise universal health coverage. The phased implementation of the NHI is intended to ensure integrated health financing mechanisms that allow the NHI Fund to draw on the capacity of the public and private sectors to the benefit of all South Africans.

The policy objective of the NHI is to ensure that everyone has access to appropriate, efficient, affordable and quality health services.

To achieve universal health coverage, institutional and organisational reforms are required to address structural inefficiencies; ensure accountability for the quality of the health services rendered and ultimately, to improve health outcomes, particularly focusing on the poor, vulnerable and disadvantaged groups.

The NHI is defined as a health financing system that pools funds to provide access to quality health services for all South Africans, based on their health needs and irrespective of their socio-economic status. The goal of the NHI is to ensure that all South African citizens and residents, irrespective of their socio-economic status, have access to good quality health services provided by accredited healthcare providers in both the public and private sectors. The NHI seeks to eradicate financial barriers limiting access to healthcare.

In many countries, effective universal health coverage has been shown to contribute to improvements in key indicators such as life expectancy through reductions in morbidity, premature mortality (especially maternal and child mortality) and disability. An increasing life expectancy is both an indicator and a proxy outcome of any country's progress towards universal health coverage.

The NDoH has augmented, strengthened, and improved the NHI information systems capacity. This will enhance the NHI Fund capability to manage the purchasing of, and accounting for benefits from the entire health system. The department has also established a patient registry through the deployment of the Health Patient Registration System at primary healthcare facilities and hospitals. As of May 2021, 57 million individuals had registered in 3 111 public health facilities.

Primary Healthcare Services

The programme develops and oversees the implementation of legislation, policies, systems, and norms and standards for a uniform district health system, environmental health services, communicable and NCDs, health promotion, and nutrition. It has five budget subprogrammes namely:

- District Health Services: This is the vehicle for the delivery of primary healthcare services. It is central to supporting the health system to be efficient and effective. There is a need for functional district health management offices to manage the primary healthcare facilities such that they meet the standards of the Office of Health Standards Compliance and Ideal Clinic status, as well as achieve set targets for their key population health indicators.
- · Environmental and Port Health Services: Environmental health

is at the heart of public health interventions. The service's mandate is to lead the implementation of public awareness, health promotion and disease prevention, surveillance and inspection of both private and public premises. It is responsible for strengthening, supporting and monitoring the provision of environmental health services by developing relevant legislation, policies, guidelines, norms and standards. These instruments are also used to assess and audit the compliance of municipalities and public health facilities to the relevant prescripts. It is also responsible for strengthening and monitoring the provision of port health services by controlling and preventing cross border movement of goods and people in order to control public health risks, prevent importation of communicable diseases and any events of international concern. In response to the department's focus on environmental health assessments in the first half of the year, compliance assessments of ports of entry were prioritised during the remaining months.

- Health Promotion, Nutrition and Oral Health: Optimal health promotion and disease prevention is essential to the success of primary healthcare. Recognising South Africa's quadruple burden of disease, the subprogramme has identified the need to strengthen the Tobacco Control Programme. To achieve this, the Tobacco Products Control Act of 1993 was reviewed to tighten loopholes and address key issues pertaining to tobacco control in accordance with the WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Control.
- NCDs: The 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development recognises the huge impact of NCDs worldwide, with a target set to reduce premature deaths from NCDs by one-third by 2030. The NCD Countdown 2030, stipulates that women between the ages 30 – 70 show a 21.2% likelihood of death caused by NCDs, whilst men have a 32.3% likelihood of dying from NCDs. Reducing NCDs and premature mortality requires a combination of redressing social and commercial determinants, promotion of good health through improved diet, increased physical activity, stopping tobacco use and reducing alcohol-related harm, increasing early diagnosis and treatment, and improved management and control of NCDs, including greater accessibility to services as well as strengthening referral and follow-up. The department is in the process of approving the National Strategic Plan for the Prevention and Control of NCDs 2022 - 2027.
- The User Guide on the Management of Hypertension in Adults at PHC Level was approved and training will be expanded over the next year. The Department will embark on a national NCD campaign to strengthen community levels services to promote wellness, improve screening for hypertension, diabetes, obesity and specified mental health conditions, early detection, linkages to care and support compliance among patients.
- Mental disorders continue to be a major and growing cause of Disability-Adjusted Life Years (DALYs). Importantly, the DALYs for mental disorders are high during youth and mid-adulthood. There is substantive evidence for both the effectiveness and cost-benefit of mental health

interventions, including large benefits in treating common mental disorders such as depression and anxiety. In order to further improve access to and quality of mental health service, 510 health professionals from all provinces in the country were trained to improve their skills in clinical management of mental disorders during the 2021/22 financial year. Regarding forensic mental health services, the demand for forensic psychiatric evaluations for persons who allegedly committed criminal offences is mounting. This resulted in the backlogs for the service and the resultant accumulation of state patients waiting for hospital admissions in detention centres. While the backlog for State patients is gradually declining. by December 2021, about 94 patients were still waiting for hospital admission and 282 were admitted from January to December 2021. Approximately 1516 awaiting trial detainees were waiting for forensic mental observations.

- The Department is in the process of developing Regulations for Renal Dialysis and Organ Transplantation, in order to regulate and improve these services in the country.
- Communicable Diseases: These are major causes of morbidity and mortality, and life expectancy is expected to increase through effectively addressing these conditions. Communicable diseases are therefore central to obtaining the department's vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans.

Hospital, Tertiary Health Services and Human Resource Development

The programme develops policies, delivery models and clinical protocols for hospitals and emergency medical services (EMS). It also ensures the alignment of academic medical centres with health workforce programmes, training of health professionals and that the planning of health infrastructure meets the health needs of the country. It also assists government to achieve the population health goals of the country through nursing and midwifery, by the provision of expert policy and technical advice and recommendations on the role of nurses in attainment of desired health outputs.

The programme has five subprogrammes:

- The Hospitals and Tertiary Health Services is responsible for tertiary services planning, policies that guides the management of and service standards in hospitals as well as to ensure the production of appropriate numbers, staff mix and appropriately qualified health professionals.
- The Trauma, Violence, EMS and forensic Chemistry Laboratory is responsible for improving the governance, management and functioning of EMS in the country through strengthening the capacity and skills of EMS personnel, identification of needs and service gaps, and provision of appropriate and efficient EMS by providing oversight of provinces. It is also responsible for ensuring the effective and efficient rendering of forensic chemistry services to support the criminal justice system and reduce the burden of disease and unnatural causes of death.
- The Office of Nursing Services is responsible for ensuring that nursing and midwifery practitioners are competent and responsive to the burden of disease and population health needs.
- The Health Facilities Infrastructure Planning focuses on co-ordinating and funding health infrastructure to enable provinces

- to plan, manage, modernise, rationalise and transform infrastructure, health technology and hospital management, and improve the quality of care in line with national policy objectives.
- The Workforce Development, Management and Planning Programme is responsible for effectively articulating human resource needs and optimising the performance of the health workforce to achieve the strategic goals of the national health system in line with the adopted national Human Resources for Health Strategy.

Health Regulation and Compliance Management

The programme promotes accountability and compliance by regulatory bodies and public entities for effective governance and the quality of healthcare. It has two subprogrammes:

- The Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases and Occupational Health, which is responsible for the payment of compensation of active and ex-workers in controlled mines and workers who have been certified to be suffering from cardio-pulmonary related diseases as a result of workplace exposures in the controlled mines or works. Over the medium term, business processes will be re-engineered with regard to revenue collection; reducing the turnaround period in settling claims, amending the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act of 1973; and improving governance, internal controls and relationships with the stakeholders.
- The Public Entities Management, which exercises oversight over the public entities and statutory councils in support of the executive authority's responsibility for public entities and statutory health professional councils falling within the mandate of the health legislation.

HIV. AIDS and TB

HIV, AIDS, TB, other communicable diseases of interest and NCDs remain great threats to overall public health in South Africa. The country's performance against the Joint UN Programme on HIV and AIDS strategy for control of the HIV pandemic is 93-73-88, meaning that as at the end of February 2021 93% of people living with HIV knew their status and 73% of people living with HIV were on ART.

The estimated proportion of patients on ART that are virally suppressed is 88%. Results for each of the sub-populations vary, with adult females at 95-78-89, adult males at 92-65-89, and children at 80-61-63. The public health management of HIV, as with all communicable diseases, focuses on early detection, early initiation of treatment and prevention of onward spread.

As of February 2021, 5 069 398 people were on ART and in the last financial year 93.7% of antenatal HIV positive clients were initiated on ART against the MTSF target of 98%. To achieve 90-90-90 targets, South Africa must increase the number of adult men on ART by 565 349, the number of adult women on ART by 368 020 and the number of children on ART by 74 662.

To improve this indicator towards the 90:90:90 goal, the NDoH is scaling up and promoting same day initiations at every point of care, including mobile clinics; intensifying the use of standard operating procedures for ART in communities (including initiation of preexposure prophylaxis and post-exposure prophylaxis where indicated): supporting data management in provinces; and strengthening the Welcome Back Campaign to improve compliance and client retention.

Government continues to promote the consistent use of condoms to prevent HIV, other STIs and unplanned pregnancies. As of May 2021, 537 330 419 male condoms were distributed, against a target of 850 000 000. The department continues to explore all non-traditional platforms for condom distribution to ensure that anyone can access a condom. The NDoH is committed to finding all persons living with active TB and to meeting the 90-90-90 targets for TB as outlined in the National Strategic Plan for HIV, TB and STIs 2017 – 2022. Achieving this goal is a high priority as the department recorded a 50% reduction in the number of TB tests conducted during the COVID-19 period and a suboptimal TB success rate of 78.3%, against a target of 90%.

TB catch up plans have been developed in line with the recommendations of the National TB Prevalence Survey and are implemented at district level, buttressed by the adoption of eHealth technologies, such as the TB self-screening using the TB Health Check – a WhatsApp and SMS-based system designed to make selfscreening easy and efficient.

It guides users through a series of guestions on TB risk factors and symptoms and then advises them on whether they need a TB test or not. Since its introduction in October 2020, a total of 60 000 screens for TB have been conducted with 14% being repeat screening. By April 2022. 14 504 screened positive. 2058 tested for TB and 231 (12.8%) were diagnosed with TB. The yield from this intervention is higher than that reported nationally from facility screening.

As part of addressing the decline in testing, the department has introduced testing irrespective of TB symptoms for high-risk groups namely - people living with HIV. household contacts and people previously treated for TB, testing for people presenting with a cough of any duration or any other TB symptom. These interventions are based on the local evidence and a TB prevalence survey which showed that the department was missing a lot of sub-clinical TB – people who do not have TB symptoms but have TB disease. The NHLS has sufficient capacity to double the current testing volumes.

Mobile Gene-Xpert testing units will also be utilised for the hard-toreach areas. Bidirectional TB and COVID-19 screening and testing will be implemented in an integrated manner due to overlap of symptoms. Chest x-ray screening has been piloted in six districts supported by the Global Fund. The lessons learnt from the pilot programme will inform the scale up to all districts in the country. This technology will assist in triaging people with no symptoms and would, therefore, have been

Mobile chest x-ray vans will be used to conduct community outreach screening services with referrals of people to clinics. Tracing and screening of household contact of people with TB will be strengthened, this requires high coverage of ward-based outreach teams who will conduct home visits. A rapid test for TB in urine has been rolled out to hospitals, community health centres and clinics for use in the diagnosis of TB in people living with HIV. This is expected to result in early diagnosis and treatment and reduce TB deaths among people living with HIV.

To address the barriers to accessing health care, the NDoH is developing a social and behavioural change communication strategy which aims to mitigate stigmatization and promote proactive health-

seeking behaviour. The differentiated model of TB care will be implemented by integrating into existing systems such as the Central Chronic Medicines Dispensing and Distribution Programme, multimonth dispensing adherence clubs or support groups for people already enrolled in these, to ensure patient centred care.

Digital health solutions for linkage to treatment and adherence will be piloted with a plan to scale solutions that have been found to work. Technical partners, civil society organizations and funding agencies will be mobilised to support some of these initiatives. Infection control remains the most effective strategy for TB prevention but very challenging to implement.

Lessons from COVID-19 have shown that it is possible to implement a mask mandate, a measure that should remain in place, especially in health facilities. In addition, treatment of latent TB infection by providing TB preventative therapy (TPT) reduces the incidence of the disease among people at high risk of developing disease. The NDoH plans to introduce shorter treatment regimens for TPT, including a combination of Rifapentine and Isoniazid as well as a combination of Rifampicin and Isoniazid both taken for three months. In addition, government is considering introducing a shorter (four months) treatment regimen for drug sensitive TB.

Government is using the Universal Test and Treaty Policy, which states that the NDoH should offer treatment to everyone diagnosed with HIV, regardless of their CD4 count, which is the marker for the strength of the immune system. Community health workers play a pivotal role in ensuring access to primary healthcare services in South Africa's most vulnerable communities. In recognition of this, over the medium term, the department intends adding a community outreach services component to the Comprehensive HIV, AIDS and TB Grant.

The new component is expected to enable the sector to improve the efficiencies of the ward-based primary healthcare outreach teams programme by standardising and strengthening the training, service package, and performance monitoring of community health workers.

According to the mid-year population estimates of 2022, an estimated 13,9% of the total population is HIV positive. Almost a fourth of South African women in their reproductive ages (15-49 years) are HIV positive. HIV prevalence among the youth aged 15-24 has remained stable over time.

The total number of persons living with HIV (PLHIV) in South Africa increased from an estimated 3.68 million in 2002 to 8.45 million by 2022. Having the largest number of people enrolled on ART programme in the world, the South African government was indeed concerned about the impact of COVID-19 on PLWHIV as well as impact on testing and treatment programmes.

In March 2022, the NDoH published proposed health regulations to deal with COVID-19 and other notifiable medical conditions post-National State of Disaster for public comment. This was part of government transitional plans as the country moved from the National State of Disaster, which had been for more than two years. This would ensure that the country had specific legal instrument to manage the current and future pandemics. The proposed regulations sought to introduce a number of control measures, including:

surveillance and control of notifiable medical conditions;

- public health measures at points of entry;
- · environmental health measure.

The deadlines for the public consultations was 5 July 2022.

lealth

National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV, TB and STIs 2017 – 2022

The purpose of the strategic plan is to enable the many thousands of organisations and individuals who drive the response to HIV, TB and STIs to work as a concerted force and moving towards the same direction. It is the third strategic plan to be unveiled, following the first one 10 years ago.

The document sets out intensified prevention programmes that combine biomedical prevention methods such as medical male circumcision and the preventative use of ARV drugs and TB medication, with communication designed to educate and encourage safer sexual behaviour in the case of HIV and STIs.

The goals of the NSP for HIV, TB and STIs 2017 – 2022 include:

- accelerating prevention to reduce new HIV and TB infections and new STIs;
- reducing illness and deaths by providing treatment, care and adherence support for all infected;
- addressing social and structural drivers of HIV and TB infections;
- grounding the response to HIV, TB and STIs in human rights principles and approaches;
- · mobilising resources to ensure sustainable responses; and
- strengthening strategic information to drive progress towards achieving the desired outcome.

The plan will draw on the vision of the United Nations (UN) programme of zero new HIV infections, zero preventable deaths associated with HIV and zero discrimination associated with HIV. It is also in line with the WHO's goals for reducing TB incidents and mortality.

The plan serves as the strategic guide for the national response to HIV, TB and STIs in South Africa. One of the objectives of the plan is to intensify focus on geographic areas and populations most severely affected by the epidemics. The slogan of the NSP for HIV, TB and STIs 2017 – 2022 is: "Let our Actions Count".

Child Health

South African paediatrics continues to gain strength as seen in improved key health indicators. However, this specialty was also not spared the impact of COVID-19, as evidenced by decreased overall use of key child health services.

The NDoH is working in partnership with UN agencies, private health sector, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and vaccine manufacturers to implement a catch-up drive for children who missed their vaccination schedule during lockdown and in years preceding lockdown. Demand generation strategies are also in place and implemented at all levels of health care.

To address this the NDoH is implementing various strategies to improve the health of children under five years, including:

- side-by-side radio shows and social media campaigns to intensify communication of child health promotion and encourage demand for immunisation.
- early detection and referral of children with common childhood illnesses through improved use of the standard treatment quidelines and protocols,
- strengthening the implementation of standard inpatient paediatric register to improve data quality for data-based response, and
- collaborating with other departments and non-state players to address the socio-economics determinants that lead to poor health outcomes for children.

According to the Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) *mid-year population estimates of 2022*, the infant mortality rate for 2022 was estimated at 24,3 per 1 000 live births.

Operation Phakisa and the Ideal Clinic Initiative

Operation Phakisa 2 is a government programme aimed at prioritising 3 500 primary healthcare facilities. It aims at turning every public health clinic to a facility that is people-centred and provides comprehensive, quality healthcare services.

The Ideal Clinic Realisation and Maintenance Process started in 2013 to systematically build on the work of the facility improvement teams. An ideal clinic has good infrastructure, adequate staff, adequate medicine and supplies, good administrative processes and adequate bulk supplies that use applicable clinical policies, protocols, guidelines as well as partner and stakeholder support, to ensure the provision of quality health services to the community. An ideal clinic will cooperate with other government departments as well as with the private sector and NGOs to address the social determinants of health.

Facilities must be maintained to function optimally and remain in a condition that can be described as the "ideal clinic". Integrated clinical services management (ICSM) will be a key focus within an Ideal Clinic. ICSM is a health system strengthening model that builds on the strengths of the HIV programme to deliver integrated care to patients with chronic and/or acute diseases or who came for preventative services by taking a patient-centric view that encompasses the full value chain of continuum of care and support.

Access to medicine

The Affordable Medicines Directorate within the NDoH is responsible for developing and implementing networked systems to provide end-to-end visibility of the medicines supply chain with the aim of reducing stock outs. In order to support the modernisation of the pharmaceutical supply chain the NDoH implemented a number of strategic information system reforms, including the implementation of the:

- Stock Visibility System (SVS);
- Rx Solution and other electronic stock management systems; and
- Central Chronic Medicines, and Dispensing and Distribution Programme.

One of the key initiatives to realise the visibility of healthcare commodities in the country is the National Surveillance Centre (NSC) – a web-based platform that visualises medicine availability information from several sources of the value chain into one central point.

The submission of the information to the NSC is made possible through the collective efforts of health establishments, provincial warehouses and supplier stakeholders who submit relevant data to the system at agreed time intervals.

The information comes from various health systems, including SVS, Rx Solution, Medsas, Oracle and gCommerce for warehouses, RSA Pharma Database and other electronic stock management systems as applicable. Using key performance indicators, data is visualised into easy to interpret graphs and tables that allow responsible persons to proactively manage, and make timeous decisions regarding medicine availability, thereby contributing to a more resilient medicine supply chain. The NDoH has created a COVID-19 dashboard on the NSC, where availability information right down to facility level is available. The NSC was expanded to include availability information of PPEs

and vaccines and related commodities. Using data from the NSC and the implementation of centralised demand and supply planning, the consistent availability of medicines in the public sector was ensured. Centralised planning, coupled with supplier performance management ensured national medicine availability of above 85% despite global supply chain disruptions.

At the start of the pandemic, a ministerial advisory committee was established to provide specific patient-focused evidence-based recommendations to support therapeutic and preventative therapies for COVID-19, as well as supportive agents for the management of comorbid diseases, for inclusion in the Clinical Management of Suspected or Confirmed COVID-19 Disease Guideline.

This guideline applies to situations where guidance is lacking from standard management of similar clinical conditions (pneumonia, severe acute respiratory distress) already recommended in the current National Essential Medicines List Committee (NEMLC)-approved Standard Treatment Guidelines and Essential Medicines List.

Recommendations by the subcommittee are provided in a rapid medicine review format, based on the principles of evidence-based medicine and the Health Technology Assessment (HTA) approach used by NEMLC.

Additionally, the Ministerial Advisory Committee on COVID-19 Vaccines (VMAC) was established to support the Minister of Health in the evaluation of the vaccine development and trial phase to ensure valid and credible outcomes of the research and to develop suitable policies and guidelines amongst others to ensure that South Africa is well positioned to become an early joiner in the case of successful outcomes of the vaccine trials. The VMAC has provided a number of advisories in support of the COVID-19 Vaccine Implementation Programme.

Medicine pricing

The Pharmaceutical Economic Evaluations Directorate within the NDoH, in conjunction with the Pricing Committee are responsible for ensuring transparency in medicine prices in the private sector through the implementation of a single exit price, logistics fees and dispensing fees for pharmacists and other licensed persons.

In consultation with the Minister of Health, they ensure the exclusion of certain medicines as prescribed by Section 18 A of the Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965) which prohibits the use of incentive schemes during the sale of medicines and medicinal devices. They work jointly with the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (SAHPRA), and the Council for Medical Schemes (CMS) to regulate medical devices and ensure improved access to costly medicines respectively.

Records Management and Unique Patient Identifier

This is a system whereby patients are registered on a central database, which enables quick and effective dispensing of the right medication to the right client, as well as serving as a deterrent to people visiting multiple clinics or medical centres on one day to collect absurd and, often, illegal amounts of medication. Working with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research as well as the departments of Science and Innovation and Home Affairs, the NDoH has rolled out this system as part of the NHI.

School health: Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP)

The departments of Basic Education and Health jointly implemented the ISHP – a programme that will extend the coverage of school health services to all leaners in primary and secondary schools. The programme offers a comprehensive and integrated package of services, including sexual and reproductive health services for older learners.

The health services package for the ISHP includes a large component of health education for each of the four school phases (such as how to lead a healthy lifestyle, and drug and substance abuse awareness), health screening (such as screening for vision, hearing, oral health and TB) and onsite services (such as deworming and immunisation). The ISHP services contribute to the health and well-being of learners by screening them for health barriers to learning.

Prevent, Avoid, Stop, Overcome and Protect (PASOP) Campaign

The PASOP Campaign was launched in an effort to call on all communities to join hands with government in the fight against HIV and AIDS, and TB. It is aimed at influencing people's behaviour and attitude around these diseases, as the NDoH works tirelessly to ensure that new HIV infections rates are reduced.

The campaign calls on South Africans to:

- · P prevent new infections and transmissions;
- A avoid re-infections, deaths and mother-to-child transmission;
- · S stop risky behaviour and practices;
- · O overcome living with HIV and the stigma; and
- P protect themselves, loved ones and others.

PASOP targets all but with a distinct focus on lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex, men-sleeping-with-men, the youth, commercial sex workers, migrant workers, informal settlements, women and drug users.

The campaign places high emphasis on the responsibility of self and non-stigmatisation.

Public entities and statutory health professional councils Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works

The Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works was established in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act of 1973. The Act gives the commissioner the mandate to collect levies from controlled mines and works; compensate workers, former workers and the dependants of deceased workers in controlled mines and workers that have developed occupational diseases in their cardiorespiratory organs; and reimburse workers for any loss of earnings while being treated for TB.

Over the medium term, the commissioner will focus on increasing the number of benefit payments made from 7 700 in 2021/22 to 9 000 in 2024/25, and the number of certifications finalised from 12 000 to 14 000 over the same period. To enable this, the commissioner's expenditure is expected to increase marginally from R287.8 million in 2021/22 to R288.2 million in 2024/2025. The payment of claims is largely funded through levies collected from controlled mines and works on behalf of their employees. Over the medium term, the commissioner is set to generate 36.9% (R383 million) of its revenue from this and the

remainder from interest received (R648.5 million) and transfers from the department (R5.1 million). Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.6%, from R326.9 million in 2021/22 to R353.3 million in 2024/25.

Council for Medical Schemes

The CMS is a regulatory authority that oversees the medical schemes industry. The functions of the council include protecting the interests of beneficiaries, controlling and coordinating the functions of medical schemes, collecting and distributing information about private health care, and advising the Minister of Health on matters concerning medical schemes. Over the MTEF period, the council will continue to ensure the efficient and effective regulation of the medical scheme industry and support the department in its efforts towards the achievement of universal health coverage through national health insurance.

The council aims to work towards this through measures such as developing the guidance framework for low-cost benefit options and finalising the proposals for the Medical Schemes Amendment Bill, which incorporates relevant aspects of the national health insurance reforms and recommendations from the health market inquiry. To carry out this and other work, total expenditure is expected to increase at average annual rate of 4.8%, from R185.6 million in 2021/22 to R213.4 million in 2024/25. in line with inflationary adjustments.

The council expects to generate 95.6% (R588.2 million) of its revenue over the medium term through the collection of levies from medical schemes and 3.2% (R19.6 million) through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.9%, from R186.6 million in 2021/22 to R215.3 million in 2024/25.

Some of the key challenges facing the industry other than the continued escalating healthcare costs is the ageing profile of members and the burden of diseases. The top three most prevalent chronic conditions in the sector include Hypertension, Hyperlipidaemia and Diabetes Mellitus Type 2. Bipolar Mood Disorder and HIV feature in the top five most prevalent chronic conditions.

The medical schemes industry was not immune to COVID-19, which impacted health systems across the globe. The CMS was at the forefront of some key interventions employed to curb the pandemic. The principal intervention was the inclusion of COVID-19 under the Prescribe Minimum Benefit.

The Council further intervened when it registered a complaint to the Competition Commissioner on the high prices of the COVID-19 test, resulting in price reduction from R850 to R500, including value added tax, reflecting a 40% difference. The CMS continues to resolve complaints from members of schemes, ensure continued good governance of medical schemes, approve or amend schemes rules and review and provide guidance to contribution increased annually.

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS provides cost-effective, high-quality diagnostic laboratory services, primarily to public health facilities. It also monitors communicable and NCDs, and conducts research. It houses the National Institute for Communicable Diseases (NICD), the National Institute for Occupational Health and the South African Vaccine Producers, as its subsidiary.

The service operates 233 laboratories in South Africa and provides pathology services for most of its population; plays a significant role in the diagnosis and monitoring of HIV and TB, which are among the

leading causes of death in the country; and is responsible for the surveillance of communicable diseases. As at 31 December 2021, the entity had conducted an estimated 79 million tests, a 17% increase when compared to the same period in the previous financial year. Of this, an estimated 3.3 million COVD-19 tests (4% contribution) were conducted.

Over the medium term, the service will focus on ensuring that it continues to provide pathology services and improve turnaround times for tests, including CD4 and HIV viral load tests. Spending on laboratory tests accounts for 77.5% (R27.7 billion) of the service's total budget over the MTEF period. As a result of efforts to reduce expenditure by negotiating discounts with suppliers for reagents used in the testing process, including for COVID-19 test kits, spending on laboratory tests is set to increase at an average annual rate of only 2.6%, from R9 billion in 2021/22 to R9.7 billion in 2024/25.

The NICD, housed in the Surveillance Of Communicable Diseases Programme, will continue to play a pivotal role in government's response to the COVID-19 pandemic in addition to providing surveillance and advice on other communicable diseases such as listeriosis and ebola. To support these efforts, as well as mobile testing, community outreach, border testing and hotline services, spending in the programme is set to increase at an average annual rate of 4.7%, from R443.2 million in 2021/22 to R508.7 million in 2024/25.

The entity expects to generate 91.4% (R33.8 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through fees charged predominantly for laboratory tests to the public health sector, and 6.1% (R2.3 billion) through transfers from the department. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5%, from R11 billion in 2021/22 to R12.8 billion in 2024/25. The forensic chemistry laboratory function will shift from the department to the service in 2022/23. Accordingly, this budget has been added to departmental transfers.

Office of Health Standards Compliance

The Office of Health Standard's Compliance (OHSC) is responsible for protecting and promoting the health and safety of users of health services by ensuring that private and public health facilities comply with prescribed norms and standards. This includes inspecting heath facilities for compliance with norms and standards, investigating complaints made by the public, and initiating enforcement actions against facilities where there is persistent noncompliance. It functions under the authority of the OHSC Board, appointed by the Minister of Health.

The entity conducts routine inspections in both public and private health establishments, certifies health establishments that meet the required norms and standards and exercises enforcement powers. Health establishments that fail to meet the norms and standards are issued with compliance notices with timeframes to remedy breaches. Complaints of sub-standard care and breaches of norms and standards by health establishments can also be lodged with the Office of the Health Ombud, accommodated within the OHSC.

Routine inspections for different categories of health establishments can only commence once norms and standards for that category of health establishment have been prescribed and related inspection tools developed in consultation with stakeholders. The process of the development of inspection tools has been incremental as follows:

 By 2019, the OHSC had finalised regulatory processes and began to inspect public sector clinics and community health centres.

- From 2022, public and private hospitals will form part of the OHSC's compliance inspection schedule.
- The development of Inspection tools for district and regional hospitals in the public sector have been completed.
- Inspection tools for private hospitals are at an advanced stage of development and approval.
- The OHSC has been engaging stakeholders on the development of inspection tools for general medical practitioners.
- Emergency medical services tools have been developed and will be the next major category to receive attention.

The OHSC publishes an annual inspection plan on its website in April of every year, and any establishment that is selected for inspection is notified in advance. The draft NHI Bill provides that certification by the OHSC will be a precondition for health service providers seeking to obtain accreditation and ultimately be able to contract with the NHI Fund. Although the OHSC conducts hundreds of routine inspections, unannounced and risk-based inspections each year, it will have to significantly increase its capacity to inspect and consider certification of health establishments in all categories.

Over the MTEF period, the office plans to increase the percentage of public sector health establishments inspected for compliance with norms and standards from 8% in 2021/22 to 22% in 2024/25, and the percentage of private sector facilities inspected from zero to 20% over the same period.

To support this work, allocations to the compliance inspectorate account for an estimated 35.5% (R166.6 million) of the office's budget over the MTEF period. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.7%, from R151.9 million in 2021/22 to R159.6 million in 2024/25.

The office derives all its revenue through transfers from the department. These are expected to amount to R469.8 million over the medium term. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure. The entity's total budget for 2022/23 is R157.5 million.

South African Health Products Regulatory Authority

The SAHPRA is responsible for regulating medicines intended for human and animal use; licensing manufacturers, wholesalers and distributors of medicines, medical devices, radiation-emitting devices and radioactive nuclides; and conducting trials. The authority's main objective is to provide for the monitoring, evaluation, regulation, investigation, inspection, registration and control of medicines, scheduled substances, clinical trials and medical devices, in vitro diagnostics and relate matters in the public interest.

In fulfilling its mandate, SAHPRA has taken the following key policies and strategies into consideration and has ensured that its work is aligned to the:

- · United Nations Sustainable Development Goals,
- NDP.
- the National Drug Policy; and
- Nine-Pillar Presidential Health Summit Compact, 2018.

The authority's key focus over the medium term will be on registering medicines and medical devices to support public health needs; licensing medicine and medical device manufacturers and importers; authorising, monitoring and evaluating clinical trials; and managing the safety, quality, efficacy and performance of health products throughout their life cycles. It will also prioritise clearing its backlog of

product registration applications it inherited from the Medicines Control Council, which was responsible for this function prior to the authority's establishment.

The advent of COVID-19 saw an increasing dependence on the SAHPRA for its science-based regulatory decisions and leadership in ensuring that all health products, including those for the treatment of the virus are safe, efficacious and of high quality so that the health and well-being of South Africans are protected. As thr SAHPRA focuses on the three pillars of safety, quality and efficacy, it managed to achieve some of the following noticeable activities.

- Due to the strong partnership with other regulators, the authority
 was able to reduce the timeframe of vaccine approval from 20
 months to 90 days. Regarding regulatory decisions taken on
 COVID-19 vaccines, approval was granted for the Pfizer
 (Comirnaty) third dose for booster (homologous) and Janssen
 COVID-19 vaccine booster (homologous and heterologous).
- The authority inherited a backlog of over 16 000 medicine applications and as at 31 December 2021, 92% of the backlog applications had been cleared.
- The authority continued regulating the medical cannabis industry
- and also conducting surveillance of substandard and/or falsified (medicines) related to COVID-19 and false advertising and marketing of COVID-19-related products.
- The review of COVID-19 clinical trials were expedited to enhance the country's emergency response to the pandemic and the approval turnaround times were between 7 and 10 working days.
- The SAHPRA is also providing access to ivermectin for the treatment of COVID-19 through the controlled compassionate use programme for approved unregistered ivermectin products and this programme is currently under review, based on the most recent scientific medical data available.
- The MedSafety App was launched to facilitate the reporting of adverse effects, following immunisation and to also act as a platform for collecting adverse drug reactions for other health products
- The SAHPRA is collaborating with other national regulatory authorities in creating and reviewing various guidance document using platform such as the African Medical Device Forum, of which SAHPRA is a co-chair.

The authority is working towards deepening its scientific review base and building globally aligned review methodologies and practices, focusing on:

- applying global standards of good review practices;
- applying reliance on a risk-based approach;
- working towards being a member of the International Council for Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Pharmaceuticals for Human Use: and
- · becoming a WHO listed authority.

To reduce its reliance on external evaluators, the authority aims to create internal capacity over the medium term. As a result, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.5%, from R180.6 million in 2021/22 to R237 million in 2024/25, to fill critical vacancies. Spending on goods and services is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 8.8% because of reduced spending on contractors. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.3%, from R357.6 million

in 2021/22 to R371.3 million in 2024/25. This marginal increase is due to the reduction of expenditure on the backlogs project, which is anticipated to be completed in 2022/23.

The authority expects to derive 42.5% (R462 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department and 50.9% (R565.4 million) through the fees it charges for its services. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

South African Medical Research Council

The SAMRC is mandated to contribute to improved health and quality of life for South Africans through research, development and technology transfer that provides policy-makers with tools to make informed decisions about health care. The council's continued focus is on funding and conducting core research, developing innovation and technology, and contributing towards building South Africa's health research capacity. The scope of research includes laboratory investigations, clinical research and public health studies. The SAMRC addresses South Africa's quadruple burden of disease through their intramural and extramural research units, with the SAMRC intramural units prioritising research into the 10 most common causes of morbidity and mortality and associated risk factors. The work of the SAMRC is to acquire evidence-based information to inform health policy and practice and improve the quality and health status of people in South Africa

Aligned with national health priorities, the SAMRC has been at the forefront of the COVID-19 response with the NDoH. Over R260 million has been raised and allocated to more than 50 COVID-19 research and development projects, including 30 projects that are supported by funds from the Department of Science and Innovation.

Through the Sisonke Implementation Study, the SAMRC has provided the first in the world evidence of the effectiveness of the Johnson & Johnson (J&J) COVID-19 vaccine (Ad26.COV2.S) in health care workers in South Africa. Sisonke, a real-world phase 3B implementation study, provided early access to the COVID-19 vaccine administered to 496 424 health care workers at 122 vaccination sites, before a predicted third wave of COVID-19 infections hit the country. All Sisonke participants who received the J&J vaccine as part of the first Sisonke study were eligible to receive the Sisonke booster vaccination, including those who were pregnant or breastfeeding at the time.

The SAMRC is part of a world-class consortium of the first technology transfer hub for COVID-19 vaccines in Africa. In response to the WHO's call for the sharing of expertise and technology to boost the manufacturing of vaccines, the SAMRC has a traceable national footprint and proven leadership role in supporting technology development which will be valuable in this initiative.

Over the medium term, the council will focus on funding and conducting core health research, developing innovations and technology, building research capacity, and translating new knowledge into policies and practice. It will pay particular attention to risk factors associated with TB, HIV and AIDS, cardiovascular diseases, NCDs, gender, and alcohol and other drug abuse.

The SAMRC has aligned its strategic plan and annual performance plan to six out of seven the key government priorities. The core research function is expected to account for 53.6% (R2.1 billion) of the council's budget over the medium term. This will support the publication of almost 3 505 journal articles, book chapters or books with authors affiliated with and/or funded by the council.

A significant portion of this will be used to support research on the COVID-19 pandemic in South Africa, including vaccine safety and effectiveness, and how the virus affects pregnancy and children.

The council will also continue to collaborate with the United States National Institutes of Health, with each contributing an estimated R90 million for research on various TB biomedical and clinical research topics over the same period. Expenditure on innovation and technology is expected to account for 22.8% (R960 million) of the council's budget over the MTEF period.

This spending will fund an estimated 105 innovation and technology projects aimed at developing, testing and/or implementing new or improved health solutions. To increase the number of young scientists, the council plans to award an estimated 1 281 bursaries, scholarships or fellowships at a project cost of R274 million over the medium term. An estimated 22.8% (R960.3 million) of the council's spending over the MTEF period goes towards sustaining innovation and technology projects aimed at developing, testing and/or implementing new or improved health solutions. A new initiative, the mRNA technology transfer hub, was established in response to the inequities in accessing COVID-19 vaccines by low- and middle-income countries, especially in Africa.

The council will manage the hub to increase access to mRNA vaccines by establishing manufacturing capacity in the region. Spending on innovation and technology is set to increase at an average annual rate of 3.1% over the medium term, from R309.1 million in 2021/22 to R339 million in 2024/25.

Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 2.9%, from R1.5 billion in 2021/22 to R1.4 billion in 2024/25. This is mainly due to a one-off allocation of R150 million in 2021/22 for COVID-19 vaccine research, including the Sisonke project, through which 499 516 health workers received COVID-19 vaccines.

Revenue is expected to amount to R4 billion over the medium term, R2.2 billion of which is set to be derived through transfers from the department and R1.5 billion from research that the council is contracted to do by international donors and other research funders. Revenue is expected to decrease marginally, by R12.4 million, over the medium term.

Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPSCA)

The HPCSA is committed to promoting the health of the population, determining standards of professional education and training, and setting and maintaining excellent standards of ethical and professional practice.

To safeguard the public and indirectly the professions, registration in terms of the Health Professions Act of 1974 is a prerequisite for practising any of the health professions with which the council is concerned.

The council guides and regulates the health professions in the country in aspects pertaining to registration, education and training, professional conduct and ethical behaviour, ensuring continuing professional development, and fostering compliance with healthcare standards. The mission of the HPCSA is quality and equitable healthcare for all.

All individuals who practise any of the healthcare professions incorporated in the scope of the HPCSA are obliged to register with the council. Failure to do so constitutes a criminal offence.

Its mandate includes:

- coordinating the activities of the professional boards:
- · promoting and regulating interprofessional liaison;
- determining strategic policy;
- · consulting and liaising with relevant authorities;
- controlling and exercising authority over the training and practices pursued in connection with the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of physical or mental defects, illnesses or deficiencies in people;
- · promoting liaison in the field of training; and
- communicating to the Minister of Health information that is of public importance.

As part of its recent milestones, the new HPCSA council has developed and approved a strategic plan for the period 2021/22 – 2025/26, covering various issues, including:

- digitally enabling the council;
- encuring that the council undertakes its business in a manner that ensures and maintains its financial viability;
- improving relationships between the counci and its relevant stakeholders;
- the council will improve all processes that are employed to deliver professional conduct functions;
- the council will have fully capacitated members of council and professional boards delivering on their fiduciary responsibilities; and
- the council will achieve organisational performance improvements.

Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA)

The Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), provides for the regulation of complementary health practitioners, such as chiropractors, homeopaths, and other complementary health professions and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.

The AHPCSA is a statutory health body established in terms of the Allied Health Professions Act of 1982 to control all allied health professions, which includes aromatherapy, ayurveda, Chinese medicine and acupuncture, chiropractic treatment, therapeutic reflexology, therapeutic massage therapy, homeopathy, naturopathy, therapeutic aromatherapy, osteopathy, phytotherapy and Unani Tibb:

The AHPCSA is mandated to:

- promote and protect the health of the public;
- manage, administer and set policies relating to the professions registered with the AHPCSA;
- investigate complaints relating to the professional conduct of practitioners, interns and students:
- · administer the registration of people governed by the AHPCSA; and
- set standards for the education and training of intending practitioners.

South African Dental Technicians Council (SADTC)

The SADTC controls all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians or dental technologists and practices in the supply, making, altering or repairing of artificial dentures or other dental appliances.

Its mandate includes:

- promoting dentistry in South Africa;
- controlling all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians, dental technologists and practitioners who supply, make,

alter or repair artificial dentures or other dental appliances; and

 promoting good relationships between dentists, clinical dental technologists, dental technicians and dental technologists.

South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC)

The SAPC is the regulator established in terms of the Pharmacy Act of 1974 to regulate pharmacists, pharmacy support personnel and pharmacy premises in South Africa. Its mandate is to protect, promote and maintain the health, safety and well-being of patients and the public by ensuring quality pharmaceutical service for all South Africans.

The council is tasked with:

the NDP targets for health care.

- · assisting in promoting the health of South Africans;
- advising the Minister of Health or any other person on any matter relating to pharmacy;
- promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care, which complies with universal norms and values;
- upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice;
- establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling universally acceptable standards; and
- maintaining and enhancing the dignity of the pharmacy profession. In response to national goals and health needs, the SAPC has invested in reviewing certain services offered in pharmacies, including primary care drug therapy (PCDT) and family planning services. Both stakeholder and public consultation processes on these services are at an advanced stage, and will culminate in the publication of scopes of practice, competency standards, and qualification criteria. It is envisaged that these would improve the public access to primary

healthcare, especially PCDT and family planning services, in line with

The SAPC is currently managing a register comprising 3 719 community pharmacies, 924 hospital/institutional pharmacies, 261 pharmaceutical manufacturers (manufacturing pharmacies), 187 pharmaceutical wholesalers, nine academic pharmacies, and six consultant pharmacies. By February 2022, 17 834 pharmacists and 18.387 qualified pharmacy support personnel were practising in South Africa

The SANC is the body entrusted to set and maintain standards of nursing education and practice in South Africa. It is an autonomous, financially independent, statutory body, initially established by the Nursing Act, 1944 (Act 45 of 1944), and operating under the Nursing Act of 2005.

The SANC controls and exercises authority, in respect of the education, training and manner of practices pursued by registered nurses, midwives, enrolled nurses and enrolled nursing auxiliaries.

The council's mandate includes:

- inspecting and approving nursing schools and nursing education programmes;
- conducting examinations and issuing qualifications;
- registering and enrolling nurses, midwives and nursing auxiliaries and keeping registers;
- removing or restoring any name in a register;
- · issuing licences to nursing agencies; and
- requiring employers to submit annual returns of registered and enrolled nurses in their employ.

Interim Traditional Health Practitioners Council of South Africa (ITHPCSA)

The ITHPCSA is a professional council responsible for the regulation of the traditional health practitioners in South Africa. It is estimated that South Africa has approximately 300 000 trained traditional health practitioners. This figure excludes trainees who join the sector every year and those who enter the country from the neighbouring countries continually.

Several research studies have estimated that approximately 70% of the country's populations consult traditional health practitioners for their health needs. The growing number of traditional health practitioners, the high number of people depending on them for primary health needs, and the proliferation of bogus practitioners, makes the regulation of the sector a matter of critical significance for government.

In the past five years, the council invested its efforts and focus on internal capacity building and national consultation with stakeholders in the sector. As such, the council was expected to commence with the registration of traditional health practitioners in 2022.

Role players

South African National AIDS Council (SANAC)

The SANAC is a voluntary association of institutions established by Cabinet to build consensus across government, civil society and all other stakeholders to drive an enhanced country response to the scourges of HIV, TB and STIs. Under the direction of the council, government created the SANAC Trust as the legal entity that is charged with achieving its aims.

Non-governmental organisations

Many NGOs at various levels play a crucial role in healthcare, and cooperate with government's priority programmes. They make an essential contribution, in relation to HIV and AIDS, and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of primary healthcare systems.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities.

Resources

Medical practitioners

These include doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector. In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the continuing professional development system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration. The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination and thereafter can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public health facility.

Nurses

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month community service programme, thereafter they may be registered as nurses (general, psychiatric or community) and midwives.

Provincial hospitals

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with or without medical aid cover. Patients are classified as hospital patients, if they can't afford to pay for treatment. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned. Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants. Patients with medical aid are charged a private rate that is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals.

International Nurses Day is celebrated around the world on May 12, the anniversary of Florence Nightingale's birth.

The theme for International Nurses Day 2022 was, "Nurses: A Voice to Lead – Invest in Nursing and Respect Rights to Secure Global Health".

The theme reflected on how nurses are central to addressing a wide range of health challenges, including the COVID-19 pandemic. Government continues to provide a framework for a structured and uniform health system for South Africa.

Health facilities

According to Stats SA's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021, nationally, 71.9% of households said that they would first go to public clinics, hospitals or other public institutions, while 27.0% of households said that they would first consult a private doctor, private clinic or hospital. The use of public health facilities was least common in Western Cape (52.1%), Gauteng (64.2%), and most common in Limpopo (85.4%), Mpumalanga (84.8%) and the Eastern Cape (82.1%).

Medical aid coverage

According to the GHS of 2021, the percentage of individuals who were covered by a medical aid scheme changed very little between 2002 and 2022, increasing only slightly from 15.9% to 16.1%. It is, however, notable that the number of individuals who were covered by a medical aid scheme increased from 7.3 million to just over 9.7 million persons during this period. Medical aid coverage was most common in Gauteng (24.0%) and Western Cape (23.7%), and least common in Limpopo (8.2%) and Mpumalanga (9.1%). About 77.7% of white individuals were members of a medical aid scheme compared to 45.1% of Indian/Asian individuals, 19.9% of coloureds and 9.3% of black Africans.

Teenage pregnancy

According to the GHS of 2021, about 2.7% of females in the age group 14-19 years were at different stages of pregnancy during the 12 months before the survey. The prevalence of pregnancy increased with age,

rising from 1.7% for females aged 15 years, to 6.8% for females aged 19 years.

World AIDS Day

World AIDS Day is commemorated each year on 1 December. This is a global opportunity for communities to unite in the fight against HIV and AIDS, show support for people living with HIV, and remember those who have died. World AIDS Day 2021 was commemorated under the theme: "Working Together to End Inequalities, AIDS, TB and COVID-19", a clarion call to every South African to make the right health choices and ensure that they know their health status. The theme was aligned to the global theme for World Aids Day, "Global Solidarity, Shared Responsibility".

Population estimates

For 2022, Stats SA estimates the mid-year population at 60,60 million people. Approximately 51,1% (approximately 30,98 million) of the population is female. On 5 March 2020, South Africa recorded its first case of COVID-19.

By 11 March 2020, the WHO declared COVID-19 a global pandemic. South Africa's first COVID-19 related death occurred on 27 March 2020. As the spread of the disease occurred over time, there was a rise in the number of direct and indirect deaths in the population due to COVID-19.

In conjunction, there was a rise in innovation in COVID-19 related treatment protocols, prevention measures and vaccination development over this time. Life expectancy at birth for 2022 is estimated at 60,0 years for males and 65,6 years for females. The infant mortality rate for 2022 is estimated at 24,3 per 1 000 live births. The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,9% among the South African population.

The total number of people living with HIV (PLWHIV) is estimated at approximately 8,45 million in 2022. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 19,6% of the population is HIV positive. There is a reduction in international migration, which is indicative of the COVID-19 travel restrictions and subsequent impact on migratory patterns since March 2020. Migration is an important demographic process, as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population (and so the country's population structure).

For the period 2021–2026, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 443 978 and 460 489 respectively. Gauteng still comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 16,10 million people (26,6%) living in this province. KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with an estimated 11,54 million people (19,0%) living in this province.

With a population of approximately 1,31 million people (2,2%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population. About 28,07% of the population is aged younger than 15 years (17,01 million) and approximately 9,2% (5,59 million) is 60 years or older. The provinces reflecting the highest percentage of children younger than 15 within its structure are Limpopo (33,6%) and Eastern Cape (32,7%). The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 years and older in South Africa is increasing over time and as such policies and programmes to care for the needs of this growing population should be prioritised.



Yearbook 2021/22

Home Affairs

Home Affairs

The Department of Home Affairs (DHA) is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates.

This goes beyond merely issuing documents. The department endeavours to stimulate economic growth in the country through a responsive and efficient immigration regime that will maximise benefits and minimise risks to the country. It is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of asylum seekers and refugees.

The Minister of Home Affairs has oversight over three statutory bodies: the Immigration Advisory Board, the Refugee Appeal Authority and the Standing Committee on Refugee Affairs (SCRA). The main responsibility of these bodies is to assist the department in discharging its mandate with regard to the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002) and the Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998).

The DHA also receives funds on behalf of the Electoral Commission of South Africa (IEC) and for the Represented Political Parties Fund. There are two entities that report to the Minister of Home Affairs, namely: the IEC and the Government Printing Works (GPW). A major focus for the DHA is the transformation of the department, so that it can deliver a service that is efficient, accessible and corruption-free. Several closely related strategic drivers are used in this regard.

The mandate of the DHA is derived from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, and various Acts of Parliament and policy documents. The department's services are divided into two broad categories – civic services and immigration services. Accordingly, the department is mandated to manage citizenship and civic status, international migration, refugee protection, and the population register. Executing its mandate allows the department to be a key enabler of national security, citizen empowerment, efficient administration and socio-economic development. These functions must be managed securely and strategically.

In fulfilling its mandate to affirm and register official identities and civic statuses, including citizenship, as well as to regulate international migration, the department contributes to the attainment of the National Development Plan's vision of building a South Africa that is safe and conducive to inclusive development. Accordingly, the department's mandate is fulfilled in terms of Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities), Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on establishing the Border Management Authority (BMA) and securing international migration; modernising its ICT infrastructure to ensure integrated planning and efficient administration, and to red ce fraud; and ensuring the timely issuing of permits and visas to facilitate economic growth and job creation.

Establishing and operationalising the BMA, and securing international migration

The current fragmented approach to border management, where officials from at least five organs of state work at the country's 72 ports of

entry, contributes to a number of inefficiencies and poor outcomes. This is mainly due to them having varied legislative mandates, conditions of service and remuneration, competing priorities and deliverables, and dissimilar tools of trade and equipment. A major benefit of establishing the BMA would be to formalise and streamline the relationships between these relevant organs and coordinate a unified approach.

This is expected to result in enhanced security and the effective management of the border environment, as well as improved customer service. As such, the authority will be responsible for restricting the illegal movement of people and goods within South Africa's border law enforcement areas and at ports of entry.

The authority is expected to be incubated as a branch/division within the DHA until it is listed as a public entity in 2022/23. Other transitional arrangements include filling strategic posts to support the commissioner and deputy commissioner for operations and the deputy commissioner for corporate services; transferring the frontline immigration function and personnel at ports of entry to the authority through a ministerial delegation; seconding personnel to the authority from other organs of state; and finalising all policies, procedures and governance structures required to list the authority as a public entity.

The authority is allocated R67.5 million in 2022/23, R67.4 million in 2023/24 and R71.8 million in 2024/25 in the BMA subprogramme in the Institutional Support and Transfers programme for expenditure on compensation of employees, goods and services and start-up costs. The DHA has also reprioritised an additional R300 million over the period ahead to establish the authority as a public entity.

As part of the iBorders Strategy, which entails adopting a risk-based approach to managing migration, the DHA aims to implement systems to record passenger names and process passengers effectively. These will enable the department to identify unknown threats based on passenger profiles and known suspects such as those on watchlists.

For this purpose, R1 billion is allocated in 2022/23 in the BMA subprogramme in the Institutional Support and Transfers programme. These funds will mainly be used for compensation of employees and goods and services. As the authority is operationalised over the medium term, the DHA plans to redevelop and modernise six priority land ports of entry – Beitbridge, Maseru Bridge, Kopfontein, Lebombo, Oshoek and Ficksburg.

Modernising information communications technology (ICT) infrastructure

The DHA recognises the importance of embracing technological advancements to better fulfil its mandate, function optimally and promote national security. Some of its planned technological improvements over the period ahead include rolling out the automated biometric identification system by 2022/23 and introducing biometric functionality at all ports of entry by 2023/24, designing and developing the national identity system to replace the national population register, and rolling out the e-visa system by 2024/25.

To carry out these activities, R104 million is allocated in the Transversal Information Technology Management subprogramme in the Administration programme in 2022/23. By providing stable and reliable connectivity, mobile offices assist in addressing infrastructure constraints at remote offices — especially in rural and previously marginalised areas — that cannot accommodate the live-capture system.

The department expects to roll out 10 new mobile offices in 2022/23 at a cost of R11 million in the Transversal Information Technology Management subprogramme in the Administration programme.

Issuing documents to facilitate growth

The DHA will continue to support economic growth by issuing strategic visas such as those for critical skills, business and general work. To attract foreign business and international tourism, it will seek to simplify the visa regime through visa waiver agreements and the issuing of long-term, multiple-entry electronic visas.

By allowing prospective visitors to South Africa to apply for their visas online, for approval by a central adjudication hub, the e-visa system is expected to remove administrative bottlenecks, reduce fraud, facilitate secure and easy travel, and help build partnerships with airlines. To set up the system, R10 million is allocated in 2022/23 in the

Transversal Information Technology Management subprogramme in the Administration programme.

Legislation

The mandate of the DHA is derived from a broad legislative framework, including the:

- · Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996;
- Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1992 (Act 51 of 1992), as amended (Act 18 of 2010);
- Marriages Act, 1961 (Act 25 of 1961);
- Recognitions of Customary Marriages Act, 1998 (Act 120 of 1998);
- Civil Union Act, 2006 (Act 17 of 2006);
- Alteration of Sex Description and Sex Status Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003);
- National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996), as amended;
- · Identification Act, 1997 (Act 68 of 1997);
- Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002)
- Refugee Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998)
- South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), as amended (current Act 17 of 2010); and
- South African Passports and Travel Documents Act, 1994 (Act 4 of 1994).

Budget

The DHA received an initial budget allocation of R8.690 billion as voted funds for the 2021/22 financial year. However, during the adjustment estimates of national expenditure, an additional R741 million was allocated to the department – R562 million for self-financing expenditure incurred for the issuing of official documents, R138 million for compensation of employees Adjustment, R40 million for the IEC for the procurement of personal protective equipment (PPE).

The self-financing mechanism was created by National Treasury, whereby the department is allocated part of the revenue it collects during the financial year to pay for certain items of expenditure, such as Smart IDs for first-time applicants and citizens older than 60 years, infrastructure to implement the Who am I online project, fees for cashin-transit and printing costs for enabling documents.

Expenditure decreases at an average annual rate of -1.7%, from R9.3 billion in 2020/21 to R 8.9 billion in 2023/24. Spending on Compensation of Employees accounts for 39.5% (R10.4 billion) of

total expenditure over the MTEF period. Goods and Services is the department's second-largest spending area, accounting for 33.7% (R8.7 billion) of total spending over the period. The DHA baseline has been cut with R3.2 billion over the medium term and R969 million for the 2021/22 financial year.

The reduction in the baseline for compensation of employees (R2.0 billion) and goods and services (R550 million) over the medium term will have a significant impact on the execution of the department's strategic priorities and service delivery in general.

The dramatic reduction in the compensation of employees' baseline will mean that critical areas required for the modernisation and repositioning of the department as well as the rollout of the border management authority will not be capacitated and that posts becoming vacant in the department through natural attrition and other means will not be filled. Frontline service delivery operations will be severely affected.

Entities

Electoral Commission

The IEC is a Chapter 9 institution that reports directly to Parliament. It was established in terms of the Electoral Commission Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996), which sets out its composition, powers, functions and duties. The commission is mandated to manage national and provincial, and local government elections; ensure that those elections are free and fair; and declare results within a prescribed period.

The commission's ongoing focus is on strengthening institutional effectiveness, delivering free and fair elections, informing and engaging citizens and stakeholders in electoral democracy, and contributing to the enhancement of the transparency of elections and party funding. Over the medium term, the commission will focus on preparing for and conducting the 2024 national and provincial elections. To this end, R3.2 billion over the MTEF period is allocated for electoral operations. However, additional costs are likely to be incurred to update the commission's IT systems following the Constitutional Court ruling in 2020/21 that allows adult citizens to be included as independent electoral candidates.

Significant cost drivers include the procurement, printing, distribution and warehousing of registration and election materials; rental and infrastructure payments for about 23 000 voting stations; the appointment and training of an estimated 350 000 electoral and expansion staff; the maintenance of the voters' roll; and technological improvements. In addition to the commission's election activities, its allocation for 2022/23 also includes R500 million for the procurement of a building for its national office.

The commission plans to undertake extensive civic and democracy education and communications campaigns ahead of major electoral events. Through these campaigns, which will be rolled out on various media platforms, particularly social media, the commission aims to keep the electorate informed and improve voter turnout. The commission's expenditure on outreach is expected to amount to R609 million over the medium term.

Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 7.9%, from R3.1 billion in 2021/22 to R2.4 billion in 2024/25, mainly due to a decrease in activities during non-election years, as well as additional funding of R40 million in 2020/21 for the procurement of PPE for the 2021 local government elections. Spending on compensation of

employees is set to increase at an average annual rate of 2.3%, from R977.2 million in 2021/22 to R1 billion in 2024/25, mainly as a result of the appointment of fixed-term staff ahead of the 2024 national and provincial elections.

The commission is set to derive 99.1% (R6.8 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the DHA, and the remainder through interest on investments. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.9%, from R2.3 billion in 2021/22 to R2.3 billion in 2024/25.

Government Printing Works

The GPW is mandated to provide security printing and ancillary services to all organs of state in all spheres of government. It was converted to a full government component in 2009, enabling it to operate on sound business principles. The entity fulfils its mandate, subject to policies as prescribed by the Minister of Home Affairs.

It produces enabling documents such as smart identity documents and passports and facilitates communication by various government institutions through coordinating and distributing the Government Gazette.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on completing the refurbishment of its head offices and completing its master plan project, which involves building a new precinct to accommodate all its machinery. The completion of the master plan project is estimated to cost R1.2 billion over the medium term, while refurbishment of the head offices is estimated to cost R49 million over the same period.

Accordingly, expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.2%, from R1.4 billion in 2021/22 to R1.7 billion in 2024/25. The entity is set to generate 97.1% (R4.8 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through its business operations, i creasing at an average annual rate of 7.2%, from R1.5 billion in 2021/22 to R1.8 billion in 2024/25.

Programmes

Civic Services

The Civic Services Branch within the DHA is responsible for ensuring secure, efficient and accessible services and documents for citizens and lawful residents in the country. It does this through execution of the following core functions:

- · management of the NPR;
- · management of passports and travel documents;
- · determination of the status of citizens:
- management of South African IDs and the Home Affairs National Identification System (HANIS)/Automated Biometric System;
- · management of births, marriages and death records; and
- registration of births, marriages, deaths as well as amendments of personal particulars.

In addition, the branch renders a verification of identity service to all government institutions, banks and other private sector institutions.

Citizenship

South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- · birth or descent;
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen;
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship;
- registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South

African fathers or mothers;

- an application for exemption; and
- the South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010), which, among others, ensures that a child:
- born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth, as long as the child is registered according to South African law;
- born of non-South African parents, but adopted by South African parents is a citizen by descent; and
- born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age
 of 18 years, apply for naturalisation. While they are minors, such
 children will retain the citizenship of their parents with no claim to
 any citizenship.

Dual citizenship

South Africa allows dual citizenship. It occurs when a person is a citizen of more than one country. A South African who wishes to obtain the citizenship of another country must first apply to retain his/her South African citizenship and obtain the exemption before acquiring the foreign citizenship. This will allow him/her to hold dual citizenship.

All South African dual citizens must enter and leave South Africa on their South African passports. Their foreign passports must only be used outside South Africa. There is a penalty of a fine or imprisonment for failure to enter or leave the country using the South African passport.

National Population Register

Early registration of birth is essential to ensure the integrity and credibility of the NPR, which is used to affirm the identity, status and rights of citizens. Furthermore, the optimisation of early birth registration is aligned to the United Nations (UN) Sustainable Development Goal 16, which is aimed at providing access to justice, ending the scandal of invisibility, trafficking of children and providing legal identity for all, including birth registration by 2030.

Various public service institutions depend on the availability of the official birth registration figures for planning execution of their respective mandates. Currently, the DHA is registering approximately 85% of births within 30 calendar days. During the 2021/22 financial year, the department set a target of registering 700 000 births within 30 days. It managed to register 752 000 children within 30 days. The target was reduced as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic and the impact of different lockdown levels.

During the time, the DHA officials had limited access to health facilities due to health protocols and measures to curb the spread of the pandemic. For the 2021/22 financial year, the department plans to optimise birth registrations at 210 health facilities immediately, as births occur, to achieve 90% birth registrations within 30 days by 2024.

The optimisation of birth registration at health facilities will see an increase of 182 additional health facilities in the financial year 2022/23 and 1 012 in the financial year 2023/24, leading to the target of a total of 1 445 health facilities countrywide. In line with this strategy, the DHA has begun with the project of a paperless automation of birth registration to embrace technological advancement with the view of eradicating statelessness and curbing fraudulent birth registrations.

This automation project is currently completing its pilot at 24 offices and will see a staggered roll-out with required updated infrastructure during the 2021/22 financial year.

Immigration Services

The DHA's National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreign nationals for purposes of visitation, work, study, business and residence into South Africa as well as their departure. Management of international migration in South Africa is guided by the 2017 White Paper on International Migration.

The White Paper aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in thecountry;
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa;
- attract scarce skills required by the economy, in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment;
- issue temporary and permanent residence permits issue as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures;
- ensure that security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreign nationals to South Africa;
- ensure that economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour; foreign investment is facilitated; the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the SADC) are facilitated;
- ensure that tourism is promoted;
- ensure that the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers;
- ensure that a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens; and
- ensure that a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

Immigration Services is also responsible for the regulation of migration through designated ports of entry and via foreign missions, as supported through its issuance of a range of visa and permits which prescribe conditions of entry into South Africa based on the category of the application made. The Corporate Accounts Unit assists public and private organisations with applications for the importation of scarce skills and business visas.

It is also responsible for the determination of the status of asylum seekers and refugees, and the issuing of related permits, confirm and provide enabling documents in the form of Section 22 and Section 24 permits to qualifying clients. The Inspectorate section is responsible for enforcing the Immigration Act of 2002, and must ensure that all foreign visitors are legally residing within the country, and in the event of transgressions, enforce immigration legislation through measures which may include detaining them and in the event that their undocumented or illegal status is confirmed, to effect deportations.

The inspectorate also manages a world-class holding facility, the Lindela Repatriation Centre, for persons who may be detained and are awaiting deportation. This facility has been opened to allow for oversight inspection by international bodies, such as the UN High Commissioner for Refugees to confirm that all persons processed through the holding facility are treated with dignity and offered protection in the form of accommodation, meals and medical treatment (where it may be required).

The management of migration is an international phenomenon that provides opportunity for growth, expansion and economic investment

to flourish, but it also poses risk to security of citizens and the sovereign integrity of the State if it is not well managed. Since 2008, immigration has adopted a risk-based approach in the execution of its mandate, applying a model that is based on a concentric elimination of risks through application of systems, country profiling, and analysis through liaison, applied business processes and placement of resources within key international hubs.

The management of immigration must be risk-based and intelligence-led – integrated across international borders and domestic environments. The purpose of adhering to a risk methodology is to ensure that persons travelling to the country can be profiled well in advance, testing the credibility of travel documentation, personal identity and running background checks on the possible listings against national or international stop lists. Systems are powerful tools for development and for socio-economic inclusion, which contributes to social stability and cohesion.

Secure identity systems can enable e-commerce and government, drastically reduce fraud and costs; thus attracting investment and giving the country a competitive edge. Knowing who is in the country, and why, is critical for national security and stability in a globalised world characterised by rapid movements of people, goods, and even spreading epidemics and pandemics (such the COVID-19). A risk-based methodology is thus underpinned by a seamless interface of technology, reporting systems and proactive management by Immigration Services.

Streamlining and securing international migration

The 2017 White Paper on International Migration provides a policy framework giving a comprehensive review of immigration and related legislation. Elements of the White Paper that require only administrative action are already being implemented. However, those elements that require major changes could not be implemented immediately pending the finalisation of new legislation.

Following Cabinet's approval of the White Paper in March 2018, the DHA started a process of drafting legislation which was finalised in the 2019/20 financial year, having followed an extensive round of consultation across inter-departmental and external stakeholders. The legislative amendments, as proposed, were expected to undergo the required parliamentary processes in 2020/21.

However, due to economic challenges caused by the COVID-19 pandemic; the adoption of the UN Global Compact for Safe, Orderly and Regular Migration and the Global Compact for Refugees in 2018; the adoption of the Revised African Union (AU) Migration Policy Framework, the AU Protocol on Free Trade Area; the Free Movement Protocol and superior Courts judgements against the DHA, the 2017 White Paper on International Migration is being reviewed and will be replaced by a new paper – the White Paper on International Migration, Refugee Protection and Citizenship – to strengthen support for national economic development and national security. The new White Paper will be developed between 2020 and 2022, and will be followed by a new immigration and refugee Act in 2023/2024.

International engagements

Policy and cooperative governance: the Immigration Services Branch is involved in numerous international engagements through participation in various bilateral and multilateral forums.

· Bilateral level: this includes regular engagements with all the SADC

countries and other African countries. It also involves bilateral engagements with other countries outside of Africa in line with South Africa's foreign policy, as directed by the Department of International Relations and Cooperation.

- Multilateral level: engagements take place at a number of forums, such as:
 - The AU: AU Summit of Heads of States and Government (presidential invites).
 - The International Organisation for Migration: Migration Dialogue for Southern Africa.
 - The UN: particularly the UN High Level Dialogue on Migration and Development.
 - The SADC: the Ministerial Committee of the Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation.

AU and Agenda 2063

South Africa, working through the SADC, continues to support the implementation of the aspirations espoused in Agenda 2063. In this regard, the DHA will continue to support the implementation of the AU Free Trade Area through the rationalization of ports of entry and introduction of one-stop border posts.

The DHA will also support facilitation of secured movement of persons into South Africa. To this end, South Africa will engage in bilateral engagements with other African countries on visa exemptions to support the AU Protocol on Free Movement of Persons.

Management of asylum seekers and refugees

The Administration of Refugees and Asylum Seekers section within the DHA is managed in line with the Constitution, the Refugees Act of 1998, the 1951 UN Convention on the Status of Refugees and its 1967 Protocol and the 1969 Organisation of African Unity Convention on Refugees. Refugees enjoy all the human rights contemplated in the Bill of Rights except the right to vote.

To this end, Asylum Seeker Management is responsible for the determination of the status of asylum seekers and refugees, and the issuing of related permits, confirm and provide enabling documents in the form of Section 22 and Section 24 permits to qualifying clients.

There are five Refugee Reception Offices (RROs): Musina RRO in Limpopo, Desmond Tutu RRO in Gauteng, Durban RRO in KwaZulu-Natal, Port Elizabeth RRO in the Eastern Cape and Cape Town RRO in the Western Cape.

Key operations at RROs include:

- receiving and capturing new asylum applicants, including biometrics with photo and full set of fingerprints stored in the HANIS; booking clients that cannot be assisted on the same day;
- adjudicating their asylum claims;
- · granting refugee status;
- referring manifestly unfounded, fraudulent and abusive decisions to the SSCRA;
- referring unfounded decisions to the Refugee Appeal Board;
- processing failed asylum seekers through the Immigration Act of 2002;
- extending permits of clients awaiting final decisions;
- preparing and communicating the SCRA and Refugee Appeal Board decisions to asylum seekers;
- · joining declared family members;
- · processing resettlements and voluntary returns of refugees and

asylum seekers;

- receiving applications for and handing over refugee ID and travel documents to persons granted refugee status;
- preparing submissions for the SCRA reviews of refugee status in line with country of origin reports;
- preparing submissions for people applying to be refugees indefinitely;
- · administering transgressions (over-stayers, lost permits).

Refugee Appeal Authority

Following the implementation of the referred amendments to the Refugees Act of 1998, the business unit has observed a drastic decline in the number of new asylum applicants as more efficiencies at RROs, the Refugee Appeal Authority (also known as the Refugee Appeals Authority of South Africa (RAASA)) and the SCRA were starting to make an impact.

In 2020, the DHA, the UN High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR) and the UN Refugee Agency signed an agreement to deal with the backlog of asylum seekers. Asylum seekers who have been waiting for years for a decision on their applications will have their cases heard.

The agreement sets in motion a project to eliminate delays and the backlog in asylum decisions in a bid to revamp the refugee management system by 2024. The purpose of the backlog project is for the RAASA to determine and eradicate all the appeals cases in the backlog inventory, and put mechanisms and processes in place to ensure that backlogs do not occur in future.

Once their claims are processed those who will be recognised as refugees will be free not only to access national services on a par with the South African citizens, but will also to become valuable contributors to South African society and the development of the country.

Management of the inspectorate

The Administration of the Inspectorate section has two directorates within the Immigration Branch – Deportations and Central Law Enforcement at national level. At provincial level there are inspectorate units for each of the local Home Affairs front line offices.

The branch manages the deportation of undocumented or illegal foreign nationals. Besides the coordination of deportations to the country of origin, scope is provided to manage visa and entry stop lists, receive and adjudicate appeals against deportations, prohibitions and to consider applications seeking upliftment of status.

Within the mandate of central law enforcement, officials undertake special investigations and joint operations within the security cluster and participating enforcement arms. This includes investigation of syndicates involved in illegal migration and corruption, civics cases involving acquisition of South African documents illegally and the detection of international fugitives from justice, as well as investigating cases involving terror suspects.

The department also cooperates with international bodies and foreign governments to ensure that potential illegal foreigners or terror suspects are detected. Inspectorate officials are also trained to assist with the detection and fraudulent use of fake passports and IDs. This is specialised, and passports are often made to appear genuine at face value, however a proper investigation can reveal embedded flaws that enable the DHA to timeously react to institute appropriate measures to prevent further distribution and use. Such instances involve criminal

cases that require officials to testify in prosecution cases to ensure conviction of the perpetrators.

The DHA also initiated the first ever community border crossing point between South Africa and Botswana at Tshidilamolomo in North West, with the aim to roll these out to other border crossings with selected neighbouring countries. Government is committed to contributing to regional integration in Africa and efforts to ease the movement of Africans on the continent.

Management of Visas and Permits

The section is responsible for providing policy direction and setting standards with regard to issuing of temporary residence visas and permanent residence permits. Permitting renders a critical function supporting macro-economic investment and attraction of skills. The effective and efficient issuance of critical skills visas is a priority but with attention also being given to the overall improvement of turnaround times for issuance of other categories of permits and visas.

In this way, the DHA is supporting economic stimulus and simplification of the visa regime through attraction of sought-after academics, scientific and engineering skills. It is also an area where the department has made substantial investment to define the regulatory environment and enabling conditions under which priority applications can be processed within a targeted and monitored turnaround period.

The function performed by permitting is critical in respect of supporting the development of the economy and adding to the stimulus of trade, investment and tourism. It also facilitates attraction and retention of critical skills according to risk-based approach to enhance economic growth through skilled labour and investment, tourism, cross-border trades, business in consultation with key government departments and stakeholders. In February 2022, the department published a revised list of critical skills needed for national economic growth.

Permitting supports inter-governmental policy to enhance bilateral and multilateral relations with countries that are of interest to South Africa and encourages contacts between business, representatives of cultural, scientific and educational and research institutions.lt manages the process of visa exemption agreements that promote intra-regional trade; attract investment for development; promote cross-regional infrastructure projects.

To promote investment and economic opportunity, the DHA has established a partnership with the Gauteng Growth and Development Agency (GGDA) and Visa Facilitation Services (VFS) to serve corporate clients at the DHA Premium Visa and Permit Services Centre, at GGDA's Gauteng Investment Centre in Sandton, whilst similar initiatives have also taken place in the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal in partnership with VFS and the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (dtic). As a key deliverable of the Inter-Ministerial Committee on Investment, the department is also a member of the national one-stop-shop that was opened as part of efforts by government to ease the way of doing business in South Africa, and to attract investors.

The DHA contributes to the one-stop-shop centres by offering investors and their families reduced turnaround times for visas by establishing a dedicated centre at its back office to deal with applications received from the centres and offer immigration-related advice. The service is focused on supporting large corporates, businesses, organisations, and employers who make an important contribution to the economy in infrastructure, manufacturing, energy, retail, professional and financial

services, research and development, and knowledge production. The Immigration Act of 2002 requires any foreign national who enters the country and who is not a holder of a visa or a permanent residence permit, to produce a port of entry visa. As such, the DHA processes temporary visa applications in respect of visitor's visa, relative's visa, medical treatment visa and retired person's visas in accordance with published timeframes whilst permanent residence applications are dealt with under sections 26 and 27 of the Act, which makes provision for eleven different categories under which an application for a permanent residence permit can be lodged.

Exemptions and waivers require a client to substantiate his or her case and show exceptional circumstances in a form of a motivation. The circumstances are investigated, verified and forwarded to the Minister of Home Affairs for a decision. The decision on such cases is solely at the discretion of the Minister.

The DHA has also made provision for a person that may be aggrieved by the decision of the department to decline his or her application for a visa or permanent residence permit, to apply for a review of the decision, or submit an appeal application against that decision. Appeals may be submitted twice – first to the Director-General (DG), and if they are rejected on the first appeal, clients may appeal to Minister of Home Affairs.

The Appeals Unit was recently established in response to requirements for the department to demonstrate better efficiency in its management of such appeals and the turnaround times in which they are concluded. A performance target has also been set by the department to monitor achievement against this objective and to satisfy sustainable maintenance of the turnaround.

Special dispensations get considered by the DHA when there are exceptional circumstances that must be considered. Special dispensation applications are handled in accordance with Section 31(2) (b) of the Immigration Act of 2002, in terms of which the Minister of Home Affairs may "grant a foreigner or a category of foreigners the rights of permanent residence for a specified or unspecified period when special circumstances exist which justify such a decision."

The special dispensation does not grant the holder the right to apply for permanent residence. Women, children and persons with disability who are eligible are assisted with applications.

Port Control

The mandate of the Port Control section is to facilitate the legal entry and departure of all persons into and out of South Africa through designated ports of entry and the management of the extended border through pre-clearance of persons travelling by air and sea.

Port Control focuses on facilitating the movement of bona fide visitors and tourists with the highest possible degree of certainty, security and efficiency in support of national security, priorities and interests whilst preventing illegal migration through the ports of entry.

South Africa shares borders with six countries: Lesotho, Eswatini, Mozambique, Zimbabwe, Botswana and Namibia. There are 72 designated ports of entry (eight harbours, 11 airports and 53 land ports) that play a critical role in generating employment within the economy, stimulating international trade, investment and tourism.

The functions performed at a designated port of entry include:

- facilitating travellers' entry and departure through immigration;
- stakeholder management government and industry stakeholders,

including subcommittees of the BMA:

- international relations cross border liaison with counterparts of the neighbouring countries:
- · reporting including statistics and analysis of trends;
- ensuring the issuance of administrative conveyance fines; and
- participating in the modernisation efforts of the DHA to ensure transition to best practice international standards in the management and processing of migration.

Movement of persons and goods is managed efficiently and effectively through the border with the participation of other border management stakeholders who have clear responsibilities at the port of entry and borderline. Being faced with an ever-increasing number of travellers, the balance between efficient and effective traveller facilitation and security considerations becomes critical.

By building risk-assessment profiles and conducting analysis against watch lists, it enables governments to make fast, accurate and informed decisions to secure borders whilst protecting legitimate travel, tourism and trade. Whilst facilitating the legitimate movement of travellers and goods, border management staff are also faced with threats posed by transnational crime, terrorism, illegal migration, corruption, pandemics and environmental hazards. Approximately 42 million traveller movements occur through the country's ports of entry within an annual period.

The management of admissions and departures requires cooperation with several stakeholders on a policy and operational level as well as engagement with international bodies such as ICAO to ensure adherence to international standards and recommended practices.

National Targeting Centre (NTC)

The BMA Commissioner is mandated to establish and maintain the effective functioning of an intelligence-driven NTC. The NTC is envisaged to have the capability to integrate/coordinate border law enforcement intelligence and operations, manage border risks holistically and operate a national risk management tool.

As the NTC is a key component in the establishment of the BMA, a business case for the establishment of the BMA has, therefore, been developed. It is anticipated that the NTC will be launched in six phases. in alignment with the BMA roll-out phases.

Redevelopment of six priority ports of entry

The existing 72 ports of entry were designed in a different era for a different purpose and are not coping with the current volumes of movement of people and goods. The state of these ports has a negative impact on the economy of the country. In order to address this situation, government designated six priority ports to be targeted for infrastructure improvement. These are Beit Bridge, Lebombo, Maseru Bridge, Kopfontein, Oshoek and Ficksburg ports of entry.

There is a drive to develop one-stop border posts in Africa to address delaying factors in major transit corridors. Combining the border control formalities for exiting and entering two countries has the potential to reduce travel and processing time for passenger and freight vehicles, resulting in the reduction of transport costs for traders and the cost of goods to the consumers in the supply value chain. As such the six identified ports of entry will be developed as one-stop border posts.

This will not only include physical infrastructure but also process and system enhancements to ensure seamless movement of people, goods and conveyances through the ports of entry. Cognisant of the

current fiscal constraints and the urgent need to improve efficiency at these strategic ports of entry, the department will pursue this project through a public-private partnership.

This will allow for shared risk between government and the private sector, which is expected to reduce constraint on the national fiscus and allow government to access private sector infrastructure development expertise and financial flexibility. To this end, five bidders were prequalified to submit proposals for the redevelopment of these ports. This process will result in the appointment of private parties that will develop and maintain the ports of entry for a period of 20 years.

Consultations on the bilateral agreements between the countries that share the border posts are ongoing. The agreements will cover key aspects, such as the one-stop border post model to be implemented and the governance structures. The construction of the ports of entry will be undertaken in phases and is expected to be completed by 2025.

Visa requirements

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid machine-readable passports or travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control for bona fide holiday and business visits of a limited duration. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits. which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry.

The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreign nationals at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued. Children from visa exempt countries only need a passport if they are accompanied by an adult. If unaccompanied, a child should carry the following documents:

- · Copy of a birth certificate.
- Parental consent letters.
- Copy of the passport(s)/ID(s) of the parent(s)/legal guardian(s).
- Contact details of the parent(s)/ legal guardian(s).
- · Letter from the person who is to receive the child in South Africa, containing his/her residential address and contact details of where the child will reside.
- · Copy of the ID/valid passport and visa or permanent residence permit of the person who is to receive the child in South Africa. Where applicable:
- · Copy of an adoption order.
- Copy of a death certificate of the deceased parent/ parents or legal quardian.
- Copy of a court order granting full parental responsibilities and rights or legal quardianship in respect of the child.

The requirements for parental consent and birth certificates remain unchanged in the case of South African children travelling - in view of the requirements of the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005). Where the DHA has issued a child passport containing the particulars of the parents, a birth certificate is not required. Foreign children who require visas need to submit the above documents during the visa application process. The requirements for children travelling is aimed at the protection of children.

Outsourced permitting partnership for management of frontline

The DHA has outsourced the frontline client services (receiving permits and visa applications) to VFS Global. The company has 12 offices

in nine provinces and 11 cities within South Africa. Visa and permit applications are accepted across these 12 centres and subsequently assessed by the DHA head offices in Pretoria. Non-South Africans with a legal residency permit can apply for a visa or permit at these centres.

These are found at:

- Bloemfontein, Free State
- Bruma (Bedfordview), Gautena
- Cape Town, Western Cape
- · Durban, KwaZulu-Natal
- George, Western Cape
- · Johannesburg, Gauteng
- · Kimberley, Northern Cape
- Mbombela, Mpumalanga
- Ggeberha, Eastern Cape
- Pretoria, Gautena
- Polokwane, Limpopo
- Rustenburg, North West.

Regulations state that one cannot change from a visitor's visa to another type of visa. Applications, for change of conditions, must be made at a mission abroad - an embassy or consulate, where the applicant is an ordinary resident or holds citizenship. However, exceptional circumstances include if an applicant needs life-saving medical treatment or is an accompanying spouse or child of a business or work visa holder who wishes to apply for a study or work visa.

Life partners looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a life partner visa will need to prove that they have been together for two years; those applying for permanent residency will need to prove that they have been together for five years. Spouses looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a spousal visa will not need to prove that they have been in a previous relationship for a certain number of years. If a partner or spouse was in a previous marriage, it is necessary to provide official documents that prove the dissolution of such marriage either by divorce or the death of the other spouse.

The DHA has officially eradicated the exceptional skills and quota permit categories. Current exceptional skills and guota permit holders will not be able to renew their permits going forward. Those looking to renew their visa while in the country must do so 60 days before the current one expires.

Applications for a general work visa will have to include a certificate from the Department of Employment and Labour confirming the

- Despite a thorough search, the prospective employer could not find a South African employee with the skills and experience equivalent to those of the applicant;
- The applicant has proven skills and experience in line with the job
- The salary and benefits of the applicant are not inferior to those of citizens or permanent residents; and
- The contract signed by both the employer and applicant stipulates conditions that are in line with the labour laws of South Africa.

The applicant will need a document to prove that their qualifications have been approved by the South African Qualifications Authority. This document must be translated into one of the official languages of South Africa by a sworn translator. The work visa will be valid for a maximum of five years. The critical skills work visa is based on a list of occupations that are considered critical (examples include agricultural

engineers, land surveyor and forestry technicians) in South Africa. To apply for a visa in this category, the applicant does not need a job offer, but within one year of being granted a visa, will need to prove that he or she is gainfully employed within their field. This visa replaced the exceptional skills and quota visas.

Holders of visitor's visas who wish to change the terms or status of their visa must submit an application no less than 60 days prior to the current visa's date of expiration. It is a requirement for businesses to get a recommendation letter from the dtic for a business visa. The dtic then conducts a thorough forensic assessment of the feasibility of the business entity as well as the contribution to the national interest of South Africa.

A minimum of R5 million must be invested into South Africa. Any accountant registered with the South African Institute of Professional Accountants or the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants can verify the availability of funds for a business visa. The business owner's workforce must be 60% South Africans or must be permanent residents employed in various positions. Business visas will be granted for no longer than three years at a time. No business visa will be issued to a foreigner who intends to establish or invest in a business that is listed as an undesirable business undertaking.

To obtain an intra-company visa, the employee in question must be employed with the foreign office/business for a minimum of six months before being eligible for transfer to South Africa. This visa is available for four years but is non-renewable. Holders of a study visa may not conduct part-time work exceeding 20 hours of labour a week. Both study and exchange visas are only issued for the duration of the study period or exchange programme, respectively.

An exchange visa (for people under 25 years) will not be granted to conduct work pertaining to what is considered an undesirable work as published by the Minister of Home Affairs in the gazette, after consultation with the Minister of Trade, Industry and Competition. An asylum transit visa issued at a port of entry is valid for a period of five days to enable the holder to report at a nearest refugee reception office.

Fines are no longer charged for overstaying. People who overstay for a prescribed number of times are declared as undesirable. The DHA has implemented biometric capture at OR Tambo, King Shaka, Cape Town and Lanseria international airports, which has enabled it to abolish the transit visa and allow prospective travellers (mainly from China) to apply for visas through accredited tourism operators.

Control of travellers

People arriving or departing from South Africa by air, sea or land are required to report to an immigration officer at a port of entry for examination in terms of the Immigration Act of 2002 and have their entry or departure recorded.

Sojourn

Foreign nationals who are in the country illegally and are, therefore, guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely;
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry; and
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, people who are in South Africa illegally are prosecuted, removed or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the DHA are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The DHA is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration; and
- admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns, or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The DHA is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits. The DHA considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. Regions are responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees, in respect of permanent residence.

They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries, in this regard, may be made to the nearest office of the DHA in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the DG of the DHA for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting, in Pretoria. The department has prioritised temporary residence permits, as this category of foreigners is at risk of being in the country illegally, if their applications are not finalised in time. The DHA will prioritise applications for permanent residence permits from holders of quota work permits and exceptional skills work permits, in line with the country's objective of attracting critical skills.

Temporary residence

The Zimbabwean Special Dispensation Permit (ZSP) replaced the Dispensation for Zimbabwe Project (DZP) which officially closed on 31 December 2014. Under the DZP, Zimbabwean nationals, who were in the country illegally, were granted an opportunity to legalise their stay. The special dispensation was introduced in 2009 to regulate the stay of Zimbabweans working illegally in South Africa because of the political and socio-economic situation in their country.

Approximately 295 000 Zimbabweans applied for the permit. Just over 245 000 permits were issued, with the balance being denied due to lack of passports or non-fulfilment of other requirements. The ZSP was accepted by Cabinet in August 2014. Zimbabwean nationals who were in possession of the DZP permits were eligible to apply for the ZSP if they wished to extend their stay in South Africa. Certain conditions applied, which included a valid Zimbabwean passport; evidence of employment, business, or accredited study, and a clear criminal record.

The ZSP allowed permit-holders to live, work, conduct business and study in South Africa for the duration of the permit, which would be valid until 31 December 2017. In August 2017, Cabinet approved the reopening of the application process for the current ZSP holders, under certain conditions.

The ZSP allows applications from Zimbabweans with a valid Zimbabwean passport, evidence of employment, business or

accredited study and a clear criminal record and if successful, grants them a permit to stay and work, study or run a business in South Africa. VFS Global managed applications for ZSP permits while the DHA adjudicated applications. VFS Global opened four new offices in provinces where it was anticipated that there would be large numbers of applicants. These were Gauteng, the Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga. The offices were in addition to the 11 offices already opened, all of which dealt with ZSP applications.

The ZEP permit expired on 31 December 2021. However, the Minister of Home Affairs granted a 12-month extension to all ZEP permit holders until 31 December 2022. They may apply for a mainstream visa if they qualify and meet the requirements during the 12-month extension given, should they wish to remain in South Africa. In January 2016, the Lesotho Special Permit (LSP) was launched. The purpose of the programme was to regularise the stay of Lesotho nationals residing in South Africa illegally.

It was meant to document Lesotho nationals who are working, studying or running businesses in South Africa, without appropriate documentation. A total of 90 314 permits were issued. The special permits were valid for four years, until 31 December 2019. In November 2019, the DHA introduced the new Lesotho Exemption Permit which replaced the LSP. The new dispensation was only applicable to existing holders of the LSP and is valid for four years. The LEP permit expires on 31 December 2023. In August 2021, the DHA invited qualifying Angolan nationals to apply for the Angolan Exemption Permit. Those who qualified for the permits were:

- Angolans who were issued with the Angolan Cessation Permit butdid not apply for the Angolan Special Permit (ASP);
- Angolans who were issued with the ASP; and
- all Angolan refugees or asylum seekers who were issued with Section 24 or Section 22 permits before 31 August 2013 – the date when the Tripartite Commission Agreement was signed, marking the end of the civil war in Angola.

Spouses and children of the affected Angolan nationals would be allowed to apply for mainstream visas or permits after the main member had obtained his/her exemption permit.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Human Settlements

luman Settlements

Human Settlements

In August 2021, President Cyril Ramaphosa announced the separation of the Ministry of Human Settlements from the Ministry of Water and Sanitation. This is because water is a far broader issue, impacting not only on human settlements, but also on agriculture, industry, mining and environmental management. The separation will enable a dedicated focus on ensuring that all South Africans have access to a secure and sustainable supply of water.

The Department of Human Settlements (DHS) is mandated to establish and facilitate a sustainable process of housing development in collaboration with provinces and municipalities. This mandate is derived from Section 3 of the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997). The department's core responsibilities are to determine national policy and national norms and standards for housing and human settlements development, set broad national housing delivery goals, provide funding resources to provinces and metropolitan municipalities, and monitor the financial and non-financial performance of provinces and municipalities against these goals. In executing these roles and responsibilities, the department also builds capacity for provinces and municipalities, and promotes consultation with all stakeholders in the housing delivery chain.

The DHS's mandate is integral to the effort of government to change the lives of South Africans for the better. This includes redressing the apartheid spatial and development patterns of social and racial exclusion. By building and augmenting the work already done in creating sustainable human settlements and improving the quality of life for all households, government intends to increase the contribution of the human settlement sector towards the achievement of the creation of a better life for all. From 1994 to the end of February 2022, the human settlements sector had delivered over 3.4 million housing units made up of stand-alone houses and units in multiple storey or multiunit buildings

In addition, 375 949 Enhanced Extended Discount Benefit Scheme subsidies were granted and title deeds transferred to qualifying occupants of these pre-1994 government rental houses in order to promote home ownership and create assets for citizens. The National Development Plan (NDP) expresses the need for a systematic response to South Africa's entrenched spatial patterns that exacerbate social inequality and economic inefficiency. Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) is aimed at addressing this need.

The department's focus over the medium term will be on creating integrated and transformed human settlements, upgrading informal settlements, and providing affordable housing. To facilitate the pursuit of these focus areas and ensure its human settlements programmes are sustainable, the department will seek to fast-track its policy and programme review of the 1994 White Paper on Housing, the National Housing Code and the Housing Act of 1997.

Integrated human settlements

The development of integrated human settlements is aimed at transforming spatial housing patterns in South Africa by creating more inclusive, denser, mixed-use urban areas while striving for a more functional housing market that adequately responds to both supply and demand for all levels of affordability and needs. The DHS is reviewing

housing legislation and related policies to transition from a narrow focus on housing alone to a more holistic view of human settlements.

The department plans to finalis 25 integrated plans over the medium term to guide the implementation of housing projects within the 94 nationally declared priority development areas. Over the MTEF period, the department will aim to deliver 180 000 subsidy housing units and issue 388 104 title deeds to beneficiaries from low-income households through an allocation of R44.3 billion to the human settlements development grant.

These projects will deliver a range of housing options and create inclusive communities within an improved spatial landscape to undo the legacies of race-based spatial planning. A further R23 billion over the MTEF period through the Urban Settlements Development Grant is earmarked for metropolitan municipalities to undertake bulk and related infrastructure projects. To fund these grants and similar programmes, allocations to the Integrated Human Settlements Planning and Development programme are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.6%, from R21.2 billion in 2021/22 to R23.6 billion in 2024/25.

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021, which was released in June 2022, slightly more than eight-tenths (83,6%) of South African households lived in formal dwellings in 2021, followed by 11,7% in informal dwellings, and 4,2% in traditional dwellings. Households that lived in formal dwellings were most common in Limpopo (96,3%) and Mpumalanga (89,8%).

Approximately one-fifth of households in Gauteng (17,0%) and Western Cape (17,3%) lived in informal dwellings. Traditional dwellings were most common in Eastern Cape (21,6%) and KwaZulu-Natal (9,3%).

About 83,4% of households in metropolitan areas lived in formal dwellings while 15,0% lived in informal dwellings. Informal dwellings were most common in Buffalo City (19,3%), Johannesburg (17,3%) and Cape Town (16,6%), and least common in Nelson Mandela Bay (5,6%).

According to the GHS, households that lived in rented dwellings were most common in Gauteng (30,6%) and Western Cape (23,9%) and least common in Mpumalanga (7,5%), Limpopo (8,4%) and Eastern Cape (8.5%).

By comparison, the largest percentage of households that lived in dwellings that were either paid off or being occupied rent-free were found in Limpopo (89,5%) and Mpumalanga (89,6%) while the smallest percentages were observed in Gauteng (57,2%) and Western Cape (59,5%).

Informal settlements upgrading

The DHS's plan to upgrade informal settlements is intended to provide security of tenure and basic services to poor and underserviced households, with the prospect of state-assisted housing structures for those who meet the qualifying criteria. The sector will rely on participation from communities and community-based organisations to inform the planning and design of informal settlements as it implements the upgrades.

This will enable households to invest in their communities, especially those that do not qualify for full housing subsidies. An estimated R24.8 billion is allocated for the upgrading of informal settlements over the next three years in the Informal Settlements programme through the new informal settlements upgrading partnership grants.

In response to rapid urban migration and an increase in the number of informal settlements across South Africa, the Informal Settlements Upgrading Partnership Grant was established. The provincial allocation to the grant amounts to R12.3 billion over the MTEF period, and the allocation for metropolitan municipalities amounts to R12.5 billion.

These grants are expected to be used to upgrade and formalise 300 settlements in each year over the medium term; and deliver 180 000 stands with access to municipal services. As a result, spending in the Informal Settlements programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.3%, from R8.3 billion in 2021/22 to R9.1 billion in 2024/25.

The department's National Upgrading Support Programme assists provinces and municipalities with comprehensive planning for the upgrading of informal settlements. Upgrading in this sense entails a systematic improvement to living conditions through secure tenure, safe and reliable water and sanitation and adequate access to social services. A large part of this involves active community participation to enable meaningful engagement.

Through the programme, assistance will be provided to an estimated 900 informal settlements over the MTEF period, and 180 000 stands will be upgraded to have access to municipal services. The upgraded stands will be funded from the informal settlements upgrading partnership grant, which has an allocation of R26 billion over the MTEF period. Funding for these initiatives is within the Informal Settlements programme, in which spending is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.9%, from R8.4 billion in 2021/22 to R9.7 billion in 2024/25.

Affordable housing

The provision of affordable housing is an important aspect of supporting the housing market. As household incomes have increased over time, many have found themselves in a position where they earn too much to qualify for a full housing subsidy, but too little to qualify for a mortgage loan that matches income-related housing supply. The DHS is working to enhance affordable housing finance programmes to assist this growing segment by providing lump-sum deposits to qualifying beneficiaries to lower their monthly repayments.

Affordable housing broadly comprises rental and social housing programmes and affordable housing finance instruments. The department's planned review and update of social housing policy over the medium term is aimed at increasing the supply of rental and social housing stock. To this end, the department aims to deliver 25 000 affordable rental units in strategically located areas and 3 000 community residential units over the MTEF period.

To fund these initiatives, spending in the Rental and Social Housing programme is expected to increase from R936.8 million in 2021/22 to R1 billion in 2024/25 at an average annual rate of 3.6%. Approximately R2.8 billion of this amount over the medium term is earmarked for transfers and subsidies to the Social Housing Regulatory Authority to effect this investment in the social housing market.

The department will continue to assist low and middle income households that earn above the qualifying threshold to receive state-subsidised housing but below the qualifying threshold to secure a home loan. To address this unserved market, a targeted 12 000 finance-linked individual subsidies will be disbursed through the National Housing Finance Corporation in the form of lump-sum deposits that lower

uman Settlements

monthly mortgage repayments for qualifying beneficiaries. To provide access to finance for affordable housing, spending in the Affordable Housing programme is set to increase at an average annual rate of 1.7%, from R588.8 million in 2021/22 to R619.5 million in 2024/25.

Access to housing finance

Access to finance, especially for low and moderate-income households is still a challenge in South Africa. This can be attributed to affordability challenges, impaired credit records indebtedness plus reluctance of financial institutions to extend credit to low-income households. The current figures from the National Credit Regulator indicate that there is a perceptible decrease in banks' lending in the low-income housing market.

This is despite the fact as at the end of September 2021, the banking sector share of total credit granted accounted for a massive 83.6% (R133bn) followed by non-bank lenders at 6.5% (R10.36bn).

The mortgages share of total credit granted increased from R56.59 billion for the quarter ended June 2021 to R66.15 billion for the quarter ended September 2021. This growth of written mortgages is only observable for properties valued above R700 000.

The majority of mortgages granted remained in favour of individuals with a gross monthly income of greater than R15 000 per month for both rand values and number of accounts. Comparatively, the rand value of mortgage agreements granted increased by 16.91 % during the same period and this growth can be attributable to amongst other key factors a low-interest-rate environment.

The subdued economic activity and low business confidence impact the residential property market negatively. This trend suggests a need to channel the effort to the lower end of the market. Therefore, collaboration with finance providers and other stakeholders to find a solution to this problem is imperative.

Empowerment and transformation of designated groups

The construction sector still lacks transformation, which contributes to the inability of the majority of previously disadvantaged individuals to participate meaningfully in the mainstream economy. Cabinet has approved a framework for sector transformation which will enable the planning, budgeting, monitoring, evaluation and auditing of programmes targeting the designated groups.

The DHS through partnerships between provinces and entities has structured skills and enterprise development programmes within their transformation plans. In strengthening the capability of contractors to achieve efficiency and quality housing units, the NHBRC registers, who then undergo empowerment through the Emerging Home Builder Training Programme.

Legislation and policy

The mandate of the DHS is derived from the following legislative framework:

- Housing Act of 1997, which provides for the facilitation of a sustainable housing development process, and further lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of government, including defining the functions of national, provincial and local governments in respect of housing development;
- Estate Agency Affairs Board Act, 1976 (Act 112 of 1976), which provides for the establishment of an Estate Agency Affairs Board and

- an Estate Agents Fidelity Fund, including the control of certain activities of estate agents in the public interest;
- Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), which provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority, as regulator of all social housing institutions, and further defines the functions of national, provincial and local governments in respect of social housing;
- Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998 (Act 19 1998), as amended, which provides for the prohibition of unlawful eviction and further provides procedures for the eviction of unlawful occupiers, including the repeal of the Prevention of Illegal Squatting Act, 1951 (Act 52 of 1951);
- Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998), which makes provision for the protection of housing consumers and also provides for the establishment and functions of the National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC);
- Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999), which provides clear roles and responsibilities of government in respect of rental housing property and also makes a provision for promoting access to adequate housing through creating mechanisms for ensuring the proper functioning of the rental housing market;
- Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended, which secures transparency, accountability, and sound management of the revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the institutions to which it applies.

The Act regulates financial management in the national government and provincial spheres of governments. It also assists in ensuring that all revenue, expenditure, assets as well as liabilities of those two spheres of governments are managed efficiently and effectively. The Act further provides for the responsibilities of persons entrusted with financial management in those two spheres of governments:

- Home Loan and Mortgage Disclosure Act, 2000 (Act 63 of 2000), which promotes the practice of fair lending by requiring disclosure by financial institutions of information regarding the provision of home loans. It also serves to establish an Office of Disclosure. The Act requires lenders to compile and disclose annual data on the demographic makeup and geographic distribution of housing-related loans;
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005), which serves to establish a framework for the three spheres of government to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations among them. The Act also provides for mechanisms and procedures in order to facilitate the settlement of intergovernmental disputes among spheres of government;
- Housing Development Agency Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), which serves to establish the agency and to provide for its functions and powers. It also outlines the roles of the agency, which is to facilitate the acquisition of land and landed property, in a way that complements the capacities of government across all spheres, and to fast-track land acquisition and housing development services for the purpose of creating sustainable human settlements;
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013), which provides a framework for spatial planning and land use management in South Africa. It specifies the relationship between the spatial planning and the land use management system and other kinds of planning. It also ensures that the system of spatial planning

and land use management promoted social and economic inclusion;

- Community Scheme Ombud Service Act, 2011 (Act 9 of 2011), which serves to provide for the establishment of the Community Schemes Ombud Service and to provide for its mandate and functions. The Act also provides for a dispute resolution mechanism in community schemes;
- Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), which establishes a legislative framework for the promotion of black economic empowerment (BEE) and empowers the relevant Minister to issue codes of good practice and to publish transformation charters for key sectors. The Act further establishes the BEE Advisory Council;
- Expropriation Act, 1975 (Act 63 of 1975), which serves to provide for the expropriation of land and other property for public and certain other purposes;
- Development Facilitation Act, 1995 (Act 67 of 1995), which facilitates and speeds up the implementation of the Reconstruction and Development Programme and projects;
- Less Formal Township Establishment Act, 1991 (Act 113 of 1991), as amended, which provides for shortened procedures for the designation, provision and development of land and for the establishment of township for less formal forms of residential settlement;
- National Environment Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), as amended, which protects ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa's biological diversity and its natural landscapes and seascapes in a system of protected areas.
 The Act places a responsibility on the department to adhere to sustainable development and conservation principles;
- Sectional Titles Management Act, 2011 (Act 8 of 2011), which provides for the establishment of body corporates to manage and regulate sections and common property in sectional titles schemes and for that purpose to apply rules applicable to such schemes. It further requires the body corporates to establish a sectional titles schemes management advisory council; and
- Division of Revenue Act, 2018 (Act 14 of 2018), as amended, which provides for the equitable division of revenue raised nationally among the national, provincial and local spheres of government for various financial years. It also makes a determination of each province's equitable share and allocations to provinces, local government and municipalities from national government's equitable share and the responsibilities of all three spheres pursuant to such division and allocations.

Budaet

The DHS's budget allocation for 20201/21 was R31.7 billion. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.9%, from R31.7 billion in 2021/22 to R35.5 billion in 2024/25. The department's expenditure is largely allocated towards funding human settlements programmes across provinces, municipalities and public entities.

To this effect, transfers and subsidies to grants and entities account for an estimated 97.1% (R100.1 billion) of the department's budget over the MTEF period. The department will fill only critical vacant posts over the period ahead and rely on natural attrition and retirement to

luman Settlements

remain within the expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees. As a result, spending on compensation of employees is set to increase at an average annual rate of 0.8%, from R410.9 million in 2021/22 to R421.3 million in 2024/25.

Entities

Community Schemes Ombud Service (CSOS)

The CSOS is mandated to provide dispute resolution services for community schemes; monitor and control the quality of all governance documentation for sectional title schemes; and take custody of, preserve and provide public access to scheme governance documentation.

Over the medium term, the ombud will continue to focus on registering community schemes and assessing scheme governance documentation. It plans to invest R137.2 million over the MTEF period towards the procurement of systems to improve financial management and operational efficiencies.

Although targets for registering community schemes have been revised downwards because of the difficulties in finding schemes that are willing to register voluntarily, the ombud still expects to register 4 500 community schemes over the MTEF period. In carrying out its dispute resolution functions, the ombud will strive to resolve 85% of all disputes through conciliation, which is considerably less expensive than litigation.

The ombud expects to break even in each year over the MTEF period. Expenditure is set to increase at an average annual rate of 2.5%, from R300.8 million in 2021/22 to R323.9 million in 2024/25. Over the MTEF period, the ombud expects to derive 7.3% (R75.7 million) of its revenue through transfers from the department and 78.3% (R824.5 million) through levies from community schemes.

Estate Agency Affairs Board

The board is mandated to regulate, maintain and promote the conduct of estate agents, issue fidelity fund certificates, and prescribe the standard of education and training for estate agents, and prescribe the standard of education for the profession. The board is also responsible for investigating complaints lodged against estate agents, managing the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund, and issuing and renewing Estate Agents Fidelity Fund certificates.

The board's focus over the medium term will be on improving regulatory compliance within the sector, and the quality of the education and training programmes it offers. Over the MTEF period, the board aims to inspect 830 estate agencies to enforce compliance and renew 203 219 fidelity fund certificates. The board will also continue to contribute to the development of a functional and equitable residential property market through its transactional support programme, which provides access to housing finance by reducing transactional costs for buyers and sellers in the affordable housing market.

To carry out these activities, the board's expenditure is expected to increase from R168.7 million in 2021/22 to R181.6 million in 2024/25 at an average annual rate of 2.5%. The board derives its revenue through levies and contributions from estate agents, examination fees, and management fees for the administration of the Estate Agency Fidelity Fund. Revenue is expected to amount to R545.3 million over the MTEF period.

Estate Agents Fidelity Fund

The Estate Agency Affairs Board is responsible for managing the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund. The fund was established to protect the interests of the public from negligence on the part of estate agents in dealing with real estate transactions. The fund generates revenue through administrative fees, interest earned on trust accounts and recovered claims. The fund's budget is set to increase from R94.6 million in 2021/22 to R105.1 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 3.6%.

Housing Development Agency

The agency is a mandate to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state-owned and privately owned land for residential and community purposes. The agency provides project-level technical assistance, and land geospatial and project management expertise in housing development projects.

Over the medium term, the agency's focus will be on providing provinces and municipalities with support and technical assistance in providing a targeted 764 informal settlements with bulk infrastructure connections to basic municipal services. It also plans to acquire and release 1 050 hectares of well-located land for housing and related projects over the MTEF period.

The agency expects to break even in each year over the medium term, with revenue and expenditure set to increase from R539.7 million in 2021/22 to R544.4 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 0.3%. The agency expects to derive 46.2% its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department, and 49.9% through the fees it charges provinces and municipalities for projects, and management and professional fees.

National Home Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC is mandated to represent the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes, and to regulate the home-building industry. It also council provides warranty protection against poor workmanship in newly built homes, ensures that technical standards for the building process are upheld, and offers training to capacitate the home-building industry.

Over the medium term, the council will continue to focus on regulating and enforcing compliance with building industry standards. In its efforts to regulate the industry, the council intends to enrol 151 996 subsidy homes and 127 098 non-subsidy homes over the MTEF period. As the council's compliance monitoring policy requires that multiple inspections be conducted on a home throughout the construction period, it aims to carry out 267 722 subsidy home inspections and 175 150 non-subsidy home inspections over the medium term.

The council's expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R855.1 million in 2021/22 to R954.4 million in 2024/25. It generates revenue through fees charged for enrolment, registration, renewal and technical services. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.2%, from R1.5 billion in 2021/22 to R1.6 billion in 2024/25.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The NHC is mandated is to provide access to affordable housing finance for low-income and middle-income households by leveraging private sector funding to finance housing developments and create affordable

housing stock. To carry out this mandate, it leverages funds from the private sector to finance a range of affordable housing projects.

The corporation's focus over the medium term will be on accelerating the provision of access to affordable housing by disbursing 10 874 finance-linked individual subsidies to first-time home buyers and providing differentiated loan products to retail intermediaries, developers and contractors in the rental housing market.

In line with these objectives, spending is set to increase at an average annual rate of 16.7%, from R687.5 million in 2021/22 to R1.1 billion in 2024/25, mainly driven by disbursements towards strategic projects and finance-linked individual subsidies.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

The authority is mandated to regulate the social housing sector, and subsidise affordable rental housing units for low-income to middle-income households. To achieve this, the authority provides capital grant subsidies to accredited social housing institutions and regulates all social housing institutions and their social housing units.

Over the medium term will be on improving access to affordable housing. To this end, the bulk of its total expenditure over the period ahead is expected to be on providing 25 000 rental units through disbursements from the consolidated capital grant. It will also aim to use disbursements from the institutional investment grant to enhance capacity in the sector by supporting 40 institutions per year to improve efficiencies within social housing institutions. Expenditure is expected to increase from R857.6 million in 2021/22 to R964.1 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 4%. The authority derives all its revenue through transfers from the department, amounting to a projected R2.8 billion over the MTEF period.

Programmes and funding Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme

The Constitution enshrines the right of everyone to have access to adequate housing and makes it incumbent upon government to take reasonable measures to achieve this. Among government's many programmes, the FLISP is specifically intended for the market segment whose income is inadequate to qualify for a home loan but exceeds the maximum limit applicable to access government's Free Basic House Subsidy Scheme.

This market segment, generally known as the "affordable/gap" market, earns between R3 501 and R15 000 per month. Households in this segment, if buying a home for the first time, may apply for a FLISP subsidy. The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by government. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

With effect from 2022/23 financial year, FLISP will also extend to non-mortgage housing finance facilities, and accordingly, the subsidy may be used in combination with one of the following products and situations:

- Housing loans granted or guaranteed by a pension and provident fund.
- Unsecured housing loans from any registered lender.
- Housing loans granted or guaranteed by cooperative- or community based savings scheme.
- · FLISP can be used in combination with individual own resources or

savings.

- · Housing loans supported by employer-based schemes such as Government Employees Housing Scheme or private sector employer assisted housing schemes.
- · Housing loans supported by Permission-to-Occupy issued by government or recognised traditional authority.
- With effect from 1 April 2022, the FLISP quantum range increases by between 7.2% and 10%. This change is expected go a long way in enhancing affordability of home loans as households will be able to put in higher deposits for their home loans or cover other housing acquisition or building costs.

In May 2022, the DHS established a national war room to improve the speed and quality of housing delivery. The National Human Settlement War Room team is tasked to, among other things:

coordinate efforts, monitor and fast-track the implementation of

- diverse projects across provinces;

 coordinate support of various entities and consolidate reporting

- ricelliny strategic partiers that could assist to diblock challenges in project implementation; and
 create an enabling environment for cooperative governance in line with Intergovernmental Relations Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005)

Rental and Social Housing

Social housing provides medium density rental housing to low-income households. The programme promotes the provision of affordable rental housing, monitors the performance of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority and develops capabilities in the rental housing sector through intergovernmental collaboration and evidence-based research.

Over the medium term, work under the programme will include promoting the delivery of affordable rental housing by conducting research, and developing policies and programmes as and when required, strengthening cooperation and collaboration by facilitating intergovernmental forums and stakeholder partnerships on an ongoing basis, and accelerate the provision of affordable rental housing by providing capital and operational funding to the Social Housing Regulatory Authority to deliver 18 000 social housing units and monitoring and evaluating the financial and non-financial performance of affordable rental housing programmes and projects on a monthly and quarterly basis.

Since the last adjustment of the qualification criteria in 2018, tenants have been struggling to pay their rentals due to inflation and substantial increases in utility costs. Government has revised the bands for households earning from R1 850 to R22 000 gross monthly income for people to qualify as opposed to the previous range of R1 500 to R15 000. This is expected to align with the broader definition of affordable housing programmes such as FLISP.

Integrated Human Settlements Planning and Development

The programme manages the development of policy, planning and research in the creation of sustainable and integrated human settlements, oversees the delivery of the Integrated Residential

Development Programme, and coordinates intergovernmental partnerships with stakeholders.

Over the medium term, work under the programme will include accelerating the delivery of spatially integrated housing and human settlements development by transferring and monitoring the Human Settlements Development Grant and Title Deeds Restoration Grant to provinces, the Urban Settlements Development Grant to metropolitan municipalities, and undertaking research and developing housing and human settlements policies and programmes.

It will also promote planning coordination and strengthen intergovernmental cooperation across and within different spheres of government by providing support to provinces and municipalities in the development of 57 integrated implementation plans over the medium term and facilitating intergovernmental forums and stakeholder partnerships on an ongoing basis.

A number of areas around South Africa are affected by natural disasters, such as floods, thunderstorms and fires. In most cases,

financing, provinces and metros are now allowed to utilize available

Informal Settlements

The programme provides policy, planning and capacity support for the upgrading of informal settlements, and oversees the implementation of the Informal Settlements Upgrading Programme. Over the medium term, work under the programme will include accelerating the provision of security of tenure, basic services and related infrastructure by managing the transfer of the Informal Settlements Upgrading Partnership Grant to municipalities and provinces, undertaking evidence-based research and developing responsive policies, and supporting provinces and municipalities through the National Upgrading Support Programme.

Affordable Housing

The programme facilitates the provision of affordable housing finance, monitors market trends and develops research and policy that respond to demand. It also oversees housing finance entities reporting to the Minister of Human Settlements. Over the medium term, work under the programme will include strengthening cooperation and collaboration by facilitating intergovernmental forums and stakeholder partnerships.

It will also accelerate the provision of affordable housing finance by providing capital and operational funding to the National Housing Finance Corporation for the administration of the FLISP, researching and developing policies and programmes that promote the provision of affordable housing finance for households as and when required, and monitor and evaluate the financial and non-financial performance of affordable housing programmes and projects.

Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant given by government to qualifying beneficiaries to be used for housing purposes. The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, it is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the Ministerial Minimum Norms and Standards. The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the DHS's areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor. This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project.

The latter option is only available to beneficiaries with access to housing credit. The subsidy amount of R84 000 comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Housing Development Finance Programme

The grant funds the delivery of housing and human settlements programmes, and manages all matters related to improving access to housing finance and developing partnerships with the financial sector. Its objectives are to:

- manage the performance of provinces and municipalities by monitoring the expenditure and non-financial performance of human settlements development and housing programmes on a monthly and quarterly basis:
- accelerate the delivery of housing and human settlements by providing funding from the Human Settlements Development Grant. the Urban Settlements Development Grant and transfers to public entities on a scheduled ongoing basis:
- improve access to housing finance by collaborating with the private sector and related entities to develop mechanisms to increase market penetration and provide loans to low- and middle-income households on an ongoing basis; and
- ensure equal access to housing finance through monitoring the lending practices of the financial sector by publishing an annual report on mortgage finance.

uman Settlements

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions. The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options.

This is done on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy. Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions, such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab rails in bathrooms and visible doorbells for the deaf.

Enhanced Extended Discount Benefit Scheme

The scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of statefinanced rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites. The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents. Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, building houses or a combination of these.

Farm resident subsidies

The Housing Subsidy Programme for Farm Residents addresses the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context.

In most instances, the programme is applied where farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in town impracticable.

Farm residents play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions regarding the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, as well as the ongoing management of the housing stock.

Human Settlements Development Grant

The grant reflects the conditional allocation transferred to all provinces for the delivery of housing projects, as per the National Housing Code.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The Rural Housing Loan Fund is a wholesale lending institution. It is mandated to facilitate access to housing credit to low-income rural households by providing wholesale finance through a network of retail -intermediaries and community-based organisations.

International relations

South Africa is party to the United Nations (UN) Millennium Development Goals, which provide for the significant improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers by 2020. In addition to these conventions, South Africa adheres to the following declarations under the UN Habitat Programme:

- Vancouver Declaration on Human Settlements of 1976; and
- Istanbul Declaration on Cities and other Human Settlements of 1996 and the Habitat Agenda of 1996, the focus of which is to address the plight of people without adequate housing.

World Urban Forum (WUF)

The WUF was established by the UN to ensure that member states and the world responds to ensure proper and sustainable management of urbanisation in towns and cities across the globe. The matters which receive attention include eradicating the ill effects of urbanisation, such as poverty, unemployment, inequality, and managing the negative consequences of climate change on communities.

It brings together government leaders, Ministers, mayors, diplomats, members of national, regional and local government, non-governmental and community organisations, professionals, academics, grassroots leadership of women and youth, to debate and propose solutions to ensure proper, working, equitable and sustainable livelihoods for households and people living in urban areas.

The forum also advises the Executive Director of the UN-Habitat and the UN-Habitat's Governing Council on key issues that should inform the work of UN Habitat and all key stakeholders in the field of human settlements and urban development.

The 11th session of the WUF was held from 26-30 February 2022 in Katowice, Poland. It was under the theme; "Transforming our Cities for a Better Urban Future", providing greater insights and clarity on the future of cities based on existing trends, challenges and opportunities, as well as suggesting ways cities can be better prepared to address future pandemics and a wide range of other shocks.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

International Relations

International Relations

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, the President is ultimately responsible for the country's foreign policy and international relations. It is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct state-to-state relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements.

International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature only bind the country after being approved by Parliament. Parliament also approves the country's ratification of/ or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament for information purposes. The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. This is achieved by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations abroad;
- · monitoring developments in the international environment;
- · communicating government's policy positions;
- developing and advising government on policy options to create mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives;
- · protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- · promoting South African trade and tourism;
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African businesses;
- · sourcing developmental assistance; and
- · assisting South African citizens abroad.
- · The DIRCO's strategic objectives are to:
- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions;
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives;
- monitor international developments and advise government on foreign policy and related domestic matters;
- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions;
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system;
- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence;
 and
- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service

The National Development Plan (NDP) is the overarching apex policy framework that guides the work of government. In the area of international relations, the NDP states that in order for South Africa to achieve its national goals of eradicating poverty, lowering inequality, creating jobs and making the transition to a resilient carbon economy, foreign relations must be driven by the country's domestic economic, political and social demands, as well as regional, continental and global obligations.

In pursuance of this injunction, the DIRCO has translated the NDP goals into a strategic programme that seeks to:

- sustain political, economic and social relations;
- strengthen political and economic integration and development of the Southern African Development Community (SADC);

- · consolidate the African Agenda;
- · strengthen and consolidate South-South relations;
- leverage relations with the North in the advancement of national and continental priorities and the agenda of the South; and
- advocate for the reform and strengthening of the global system of governance.

South Africa's international diplomatic footprint consists of diplomatic missions in 108 countries in which the country has representation, and through the accreditation of more than 160 countries and international organisations resident in South Africa.

South Africa's diplomatic and consular missions implement the country's foreign policy to enhance its international profile and serve as strategic mechanisms for the achievement of national interest. In addition, training and policy analysis remain of strategic importance for the execution of the DIRCO's mandate. Chapter 7 of the NDP details a vision for facilitating South Africa's broad-based socio-economic development and fostering strong international ties. This articulation is supported by Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on advancing the African Agenda, including curbing the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on the continent; participating actively in the United Nations (UN); and enhancing the management of its infrastructure portfolio in foreign missions.

Advancing the African Agenda

South Africa's foreign policy focuses on building unity, inclusive economic development and shared prosperity for the African continent and its people. Accordingly, the department will continue to play an active role in the structures and processes of the African Union (AU) to advance peace and security, and prevent conflict in Africa.

As the Southern African Development Community (SADC) remains a major vehicle for South Africa's pursuit of regional development and integration, the department intends to spend R461.4 million over the medium term on SADC membership fees. This expenditure is in the Membership Contribution subprogramme in the International Transfers programme. South Africa, as the outgoing chair of the AU, will be at the forefront of efforts to strengthen and capacitate the union to address challenges more effectively such as the COVID-19 pandemic, and harness the opportunities presented to Africa in a constantly shifting geopolitical landscape.

South Africa's position at the G20 enables it to continue advocating for debt relief and developmental assistance for Africa. Spending on South Africa's membership fees to the AU is expected to decrease from R277.9 million in 2021/22 to R274.6 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 0.4%, in the Membership Contribution subprogramme in the International Transfers programme, in line with baseline cuts implemented over the 2021 MTEF period.

The appointment of President Cyril Ramaphosa by the Directo-General of the World Health Organisation as co-chair of the Access to COVID-19 Tools Accelerator has elevated South Africa's role in seeking equal access to COVID-19 vaccines for all African countries. The department's role is to encourage embassies to promote the president's work as co-chair. In addition, as part of responding to the pandemic, the COVID-19 Response Fund was established by the AU to raise additional funds for the African Centres for Disease Control,

and lobby for a comprehensive and robust economic stimulus package for Africa to mitigate the negative economic impact of the pandemic. Funding for these activities is within allocations to the International Relations programme over the medium term.

Active participation in the United Nations

With its near-universal membership and vast agenda, the UN remains the most influential multilateral institution and global governance centre. Accordingly, over the medium term, South Africa will continue its engagements with the UN to advance the country's foreign policy priorities in matters such as climate change, sustainable development, human rights law, terrorism, international criminal law, gender equity, economic relations and the peaceful settlement of disputes. Spending on South Africa's membership contributions to the UN is expected to increase from R193.2 million in 2021/22 to R208 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 2.5%, in the Membership Contribution subprogramme in the International Transfers programme.

Managing infrastructure projects and properties

The department's international property portfolio comprises of 127 state-owned properties and more than 1 000 rented properties. Over the MTEF period, it plans to reduce its rental portfolio and the associated operational costs by developing 1 property in Luanda, Angola, and 1 property in Gaborone, Botswana, on state-owned vacant land.

It also plans to assess the condition of the state-owned properties within its portfolio over the medium term, beginning with those in Africa, to determine the need for maintenance, repairs and renovations to extend their lifespans. To carry out these activities, R838.3 million over the medium term is earmarked in the Foreign Fixed Asset Management subprogramme in the Administration programme, of which R51 million is allocated specifically for assessing the condition of state-owned properties abroad.

Strengthening the African Agenda and regional integration

Africa remains the focal point of South Africa's foreign policy. Accordingly, the DIRCO will continue to play an active role in the structures and processes of the African Union (AU) to advance peace, security and conflict prevention in the continent. In 2020, South Africa assumed the Chair of the AU with the clear purpose of making a difference on the continent by ensuring that linkages exist between development, good governance, peace and stability.

The COVID-19 pandemic forced South Africa, in its capacity as Chair, to take a different approach in ensuring that the threats and challenges posed by the disease are dealt with in a multifaceted way. This included establishing the COVID-19 Response Fund, which is aimed at raising additional funds for the African Centres for Disease Control and Prevention; and lobbying for a comprehensive and robust economic stimulus package for Africa to alleviate the economic impact of the pandemic.

Related activities are carried out in the Africa subprogramme in the International Relations programme, spending in which is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.6%, from R952.3 million in 2020/21 to R1.1 billion in 2023/24.

South Africa continues to be one of the largest contributors to the AU's budget through its membership fees. To this end, over the medium term, the DIRCO intends to spend R779.7 million in the

Membership Contribution subprogramme in the International Transfers programme towards AU membership fees. The country's chairship of the AU also took place against a challenging backdrop characterised by, among others, continental geopolitical dynamics and contestation for influence in regional economic communities and in the AU itself; the growing external influence of major powers; the emergence of new influential role-players; the persistent occurrence of political and civil instability, and violent conflict; and a young continental population requiring economic opportunity.

However, there are also unprecedented positive developments taking place on the continent, most notably the launch of the African Continental Free Trade Agreement (AfCFTA). The start of trade of the AfCFTA will be a seminal moment in the continental integration project. The AfCFTA will make Africa the second-biggest common market in the world. It will boost intra-Africa trade, reignite industrialisation and pave the way for the meaningful integration of Africa into global value chains and the global economy in general.

There is also broad unity of purpose among the members of the southern and eastern regional groupings as well as strategic cooperation with the western and northern regional groupings, which bodes well for gaining broad consensus on priority issues and initiatives. South Africa's broad approach was centred on promoting Pan-African unity and integration. As the Chair, South Africa was determined to take the project of continental unity, integration and development further, guided by its foreign policy priorities and the continent's strategic political and development aspirations as espoused in Agenda 2063.

At the same time, South Africa also assumed the chairships of the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) and the Committee of African Heads of State and Government on Climate Change. The approved theme for South Africa's Chairship of the AU was; "Silencing the Guns: Creating Conducive Conditions for Africa's Development". The theme was presented and adopted by the Ministerial Committee on Agenda 2063 during the 33rd Assembly of the AU Heads of State and Government held in July 2019, in Niamey, Niger, as the AU theme of the year for 2020.

The choice of the theme was primarily based on the fact that South Africa's chairship coincided with the final year of the implementation of the AU Master Roadmap for Silencing the Guns by 2020. Thus, South Africa faced a momentous task to lead the process of reviewing the roadmap, pursuant to the fourth aspiration of Agenda 2063 for "a peaceful and secure Africa", which would be characterised by an entrenched culture of human rights, democracy, gender equality, inclusion, prosperity, peace, safety and security for all citizens, including mechanisms to promote and defend the continent's collective security and interests.

The roadmap's practical steps to silence the guns in Africa by year 2020 were meant to be realistic, practical and time-bound implementable steps to assist the AU to track progress in the realisation of the ideal of a continent free of violent conflict by the year 2020. The roadmap is divided into five key aspects – political, economic, social, environmental and legal. The strategic objective of the AU Master Roadmap for Silencing the Guns by 2020 is to promote the implementation of relevant AU decisions and policies.

South Africa intensified efforts to silencing of the guns by 2020, concomitantly with those aimed at the implementation of the AfCFTA. This is of strategic national importance to South Africa since

government has put emphasis on the objective of expanding trade with the continent. The theme underscored the nexus between development, good governance, peace, stability and good governance. In this regard, three priorities were proposed for South Africa:

Economic development

The socio-economic development of the continent, and the realisation of a prosperous Africa based on inclusive growth and sustainable development (Aspiration 1), remains a central objective of the AU, as espoused in Agenda 2063 and the first Ten-Year Implementation Plan, which may require a review of progress achieved. This will be solidified, in particular, by the operationalisation of the AfCFTA and the implementation of the Single African Air Transport Market.

Peace and security

South Africa's Chairship coincided with the end of the AU's aspiration of Silencing of the Guns by 2020, taking stock of the achievements and challenges was of key importance to intensify efforts towards resolving conflicts. In this regard, President Cyril Ramaphosa hosted the 14th Extraordinary Summit of Heads of State and Government to review the roadmap to silencing the guns and propose the way forward.

The key decision and outcome of the 14th Extraordinary Summit on Silencing the Guns, also called the Johannesburg Declaration, was within the context of AU Agenda 2063, to extend the implementation of the roadmap for a period of 10 years, from 2021 to 2030, with the important addition of periodic reviews every two years.

In addition to extending the AU Master Roadmap for Silencing the Guns by 2020, the assembly also agreed to extend the annual Africa Amnesty Month (each September) for a period of 10 years (2020 – 2030), in order to accomplish the goal of collecting and disposing of arms illegally owned by civilians. All member states are urged to comply with the declaration and report progress on their national plans towards silencing guns.

Furthermore, under South Africa's leadership, the AU Doctrine on Peace Support Operations (PSO) was also adopted. The adoption of the AU Doctrine on PSO is considered a critical phase in concluding the full operationalisation of the African Standby Force. The doctrine will provide strategic guidance for the planning, conduct, management and conclusion of future AU PSOs.

As Chair of the AU, South Africa played a leading role in a number of crisis areas, including with regard to the Great Ethiopian Renaissance Dam dispute between Ethiopia and Libya. Significant progress has been made towards silencing guns, particularly in Libya and South Sudan. In Libya, an all-encompassing cease-fire agreement was signed in October 2020 and an interim Presidential Council was elected in February 2021, while in South Sudan, a successful National Dialogue Conference was held in November 2020 with outcomes which signalled positive progress, also in implementing the Revitalised Agreement on the Resolution of the Conflict in the Republic of South Sudan (R-ARCSS).

However, major challenges remain in other countries, including the Sahel and Central African Republic (CAR), and new challenges emerged in countries such as Mozambique and even Ethiopia.

Good Governance

As Chair of the APRM, South Africa was primarily responsible for the mechanism's good governance agenda. The delivery of good governance through democratic practice and economic growth reduces political tensions in countries with social divisions. In this context, good governance is conflict preventative in impact, and as such, will contribute to a peaceful and secure Africa.

These activities will be carried out in the International Transfers programme, which has a total budget of R2.4 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. South Africa's membership contribution to the AU is expected to decrease from R437.9 million in 2019/20 to R275.4 million in 2022/23.

This is due to the country having contributed an additional R413.3 million in 2019/20 and 2020/21, due to funding shortfalls. The decrease in contributions in 2021/22 and 2022/23 is expected to lead to a decrease in spending in the International Transfers programme, from R855.6 million in 2019/20 to R756.6 million in 2022/23.

Legislation

The DIRCO derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- Foreign States Immunities Act, 1981 (Act 87 of 1981), which regulates the extent of the immunity of foreign states from the jurisdiction of the South African courts and provides for matters connected therewith;
- Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001), which provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, Heads of State, special envoys and certain representatives of the UN and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and certain people;
- African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund (ARF)
 Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001), which establishes cooperation between
 South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries,
 through the promotion of democracy, good governance,
 the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development
 and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource
 development; and
- International agreements (multilateral and bilateral): International agreements concluded by South Africa in terms of sections 231 (2) and 231 (3) of the Constitution.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DIRCO was initially allocated R6.5 billion. Total expenditure is expected to increase from R6.5 billion in 2021/22 to R6.9 billion in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 2%.

The department's work is mainly realised through the 116 diplomatic missions in 102 countries in which South Africa has representation. As such, compensation of employees is the department's main cost driver, accounting for an estimated 43.2% (R8.7 billion) of expenditure over the medium term.

Entity

African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund

The fund enhances cooperation between South Africa and other countries, particularly those in Africa, through the promotion of

democracy and good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, the provision of humanitarian assistance, and the development of human resources.

Over the MTEF period, the fund will focus on promoting democracy and good governance, particularly in Africa; providing training to ensure the transfer of knowledge and practical skills in African countries; and supporting projects that enhance African trade, economic development and integration.

All of the fund's expenditure goes towards transfers and subsidies to projects aligned with these areas of focus. Expenditure is set to increase at an average annual rate of 2.3%, from R50 million in 2021/22 to R53.6 million in 2024/25.

The fund is set to derive 97.1% (R151.7 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 2.4%, fro R48.5 million in 2021/22 to R52.1 million in 2024/25. The remainder is set to be generated through interest.

Programmes

International Cooperation

The purpose of the programme is to participate in initiatives of international organisations and institutions in line with South Africa's national values and foreign policy objectives. The programme's objective, over the medium term, include:

- contributing to a reformed and strengthened multilateral system based on equal rules that will be responsive to the needs of developing countries and Africa, in particular, by participating in the global system of governance;
- strengthening the AU and its structures by providing ongoing financial support for the operations of the Pan-African Parliament in terms of the country's host agreement;
- improving governance and capacity in the SADC secretariat by implementing the secretariat's job evaluation plan and assisting with the recruitment process;
- contributing towards processes of the African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development (AUDA-NEPAD) for socio-economic development in Africa by participating in the APRM and submitting APRM country reports when required;
- strengthening bilateral, trilateral and multilateral interests and relations within the dialogue forum of the Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa (BRICS) group of countries through active participation in forum structures;
- strengthening political solidarity, economic cooperation and socio-cultural relations with Asian countries by participating in structures of the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership; and
- strengthening North-South economic and political relations and cooperation to advance the African Agenda through financing development initiatives and providing support for institutional and governance reforms.

Subprogrammes within the International Cooperation programme include the:

 Global System of Governance, which provides for multilateralism and an international order based on rules. This entails participating in and playing an active role in all forums of the UN system and its specialised agencies, and funding programmes that promote the principles of multilateral activity;

- Continental Cooperation, which provides for the enhancement of the African Agenda and sustainable development;
- South-South Cooperation, which provides for partnerships with countries of the South in advancing South Africa's development needs and the needs of the African Agenda; and creates political, economic and social convergence for the fight against poverty, underdevelopment and the marginalisation of the South; and
- North-South Dialogue, which provides for South Africa's bilateral and multilateral engagements to consolidate and strengthen relations with organisations of the North to advance and support national priorities, the African Agenda and the developmental agenda of the South.

Public Diplomacy and Protocol Services

The purpose of the programme is to communicate South Africa's role and position in international relations to domestic and international arenas and provide state protocol services. It ensures a better understanding of South Africa's foreign policy by providing ongoing strategic public diplomacy direction and state protocol services nationally and internationally.

Its subprogrammes include:

- Public Diplomacy, which promotes a positive projection of South Africa's image; communicates foreign policy positions to domestic and foreign audiences; and markets and brands South Africa by using public diplomacy platforms, strategies, products and services; and
- Protocol Services, which facilitates incoming and outgoing highlevel visits and ceremonial events; coordinates and regulates engagements with the local diplomatic community; provides protocol advice and support to the various spheres of government; facilitates the hosting of international conferences in South Africa; and manages the state protocol lounges and guesthouses.

May is Africa Month. Africa Day is commemorated on 25 May each year. The day is an opportunity to promote African unity, deepen regional integration and recommit Africa to a common destiny.

Africa Day and Africa Month help countries in the continent to better understand each other as Africans, both on the continent and in the diaspora. The 2021 commemorations were held at a time when COVID-19 continued as a threat to all nations on the continent. Africa Day 2021 was held under theme; "Arts, Culture and Heritage: Levers for Building the Africa we Want".

International Transfers

The programme funds membership fees and transfers to international organisations. It promotes multilateral activities that enhance South Africa's economic and diplomatic relations within the continent and with the world by providing for:

- South Africa's annual membership fee contributions to international organisations such as the UN, the AU and the SADC; and
- annual transfers to recapitalise the ARF as a contribution to its operations.

Enhancing economic diplomacy

In anticipation of growth in the African and Asian regions, South Africa took a conscious decision to expand and strengthen its diplomatic missions in the two regions. As South Africa consolidated its political relations on the continent by expanding its diplomatic footprint through 47 embassies, high commissions and consulates general, the country has also rapidly advanced its economic relations in Africa, through the expansion of its trade volumes, investment portfolio and economic relations across the length and breadth of the continent.

This has resulted in Africa becoming a prime destination of South African-originated goods and services, especially value-added goods, which assists in contributing to the R198-billion trade surplus, creating much needed jobs and opportunities in the manufacturing, retail, fast-moving consumer goods, financial services and transport/logistics sectors. It is also worth noting that the SADC accounts for approximately 80% of South Africa's total trade with the continent.

With regard to Asia and the Middle East, South Africa's trade and investment in these regions have grown considerably and continue to do so. In 1994, trade with Asia and the Middle East combined was approximately R45 billion and has increased to approximately R760 billion for Asia and R116 billion with the Middle East.

There is a direct correlation between the growth of South Africa's diplomatic missions and the phenomenal expansion of its trade and investment relations on both the African continent and in Asia and the Middle East. The same applies to the Americas and Europe.

As South Africa explores new markets, it continues to maintain close economic ties with the industrialised economies of the North, which provide, among others, preferential market access to some of South Africa's exports. Enhancing the economic and political dialogue is an important part of South Africa's economic diplomacy strategy as they remain a primary source of foreign direct investment (FDI) and official development assistance flows into South Africa.

The DIRCO also uses international summits such as the BRICS, Group of Twenty (G20), the SADC, the Indian Ocean Rin Association (IORA) as well as state visits and bilateral consultation mechanisms to promote the trade and investment case for South Africa. Government created a significant footprint in Asian markets as part of efforts to return the country to pre-COVID-19 economic growth. In 2021, government intended to identify new opportunities and expand those that have benefit for South Africa.

In 2020, South Africa acceded to the Treaty of Amity and Cooperation (TAC) to take up significant trade and development opportunities available Asia. South Africa will also benefit from the Regional Comprehensive Economic Partnership of these countries. This partnership created the world's biggest trading bloc, estimated to account for about US\$26 trillion or 30% of global gross domestic product (GDP), and 28% of global trade.

In order to intensify efforts to stimulate growth, government is working tirelessly to raise the country's global visibility by promoting South Africa as the best place to be, to do business, to visit, to work, to study and to live. Government is also responding to new opportunities and harnessing the collective capabilities of DIRCO's resources both at home and abroad.

South Africa will leverage engagement with the Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN) to enhance mutually beneficial trade, investment and tourism ties, and to support skills development

and training for South Africans. South Africa secured significant beef export opportunities to the Malaysian market as of November 2020.

Market access was also obtained for fruits to Thailand. Product protocols are being negotiated in the region and are at an advanced stage. These include table grapes to Vietnam and South Korea, avocadoes to India and Japan, and pears to China and India. Many companies from the Asian region have made significant investment pledges during the President's investment summits and State Visits. Companies such as Toyota, Isuzu, Tata Motors, Mahindra and Motherson Sumi have expanded their investments in the country.

China has pledged to invest \$14 billion, and Saudi Arabia and the United Arab Emirates (UAE) \$10 billion each. The DIRCO aims to build on these successes by ensuring growing global trade, which is one of the best ways to fight poverty, inequality and unemployment in South Africa and Africa as a whole.

Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa's policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies. In this regard, the DIRCO continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security.

As a member of the Supplier's Regimes and of the Africa Group and the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), the importance of non-proliferation is promoted, considering that export controls should not become the means whereby developing countries are denied access to advanced technologies required for their development.

In seeking solutions to intractable disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control challenges in the international arena, a bridge-building approach has been followed to seek realistic and achievable solutions. While dealing with challenging issues from a pragmatic perspective, due recognition has been given to the role that civil society can play in partnership with the governments of the world, especially in the context of seeking solutions to the divergent views that often characterise international negotiations.

South Africa is a signatory of the Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons (TPNW) to the UN in New York. The country signed the treaty at a ceremony held on the margins of the 72nd Session of the United Nations General Assembly (UNGA). The historic treaty was adopted by a vote of 122 states in favour at the UN in 2017 and was opened for signatures the same year. It seeks to establish an international norm, de-legitimising and stigmatising the possession of nuclear weapons.

It aims to contribute towards achieving the objective set out in the very first resolution adopted by UNGA in 1946 to eliminate all weapons of mass destruction. The treaty complements other international instruments by contributing towards fulfilling the nuclear disarmament obligations under the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT), the objectives of the Comprehensive Nuclear Test-Ban Treaty and the various nuclear-weapon-free-zone treaties, such as the Pelindaba Treaty that already banned nuclear weapons in Africa.

The year 2020 marked a number of milestones, including the 75th anniversary of the UN, the 50th anniversary of the NPT and the 25th anniversary of its indefinite extension. It also marked 75 years since the first use of nuclear weapons. South Africa views the NPT as the cornerstone of the nuclear disarmament and nuclear non-proliferation

regime. The treaty represents a historical bargain between the nuclearweapon states and non-nuclear-weapon states, in terms of which the former has undertaken to eliminate their nuclear weapons based on the reciprocal undertaking by the latter not to pursue the nuclear weapons option. While non-proliferation measures have been strengthened, similar concrete progress has not yet been realised in the area of nuclear disarmament.

South Africa believes that efforts to prevent the proliferation of nuclear weapons should be matched by a concurrent effort to eliminate all nuclear weapons, in a verifiable and irreversible manner. The TPNW does not spell out all the details of such a process, but rather allows for further negotiations on these arrangements to be agreed upon when states possessing or hosting nuclear weapons are ready to accede to it. While the doors into this treaty have always been open, some chose to abdicate leadership and not participate in it.

On 22 January 2021, South Africa welcomed the entry into force of the UN TPNW. The day marked a turning point in humanity's endeavour to rid the world of nuclear weapons. It is the culmination of that very first UN Generally Assembly resolution in 1946, which sought to deal with the elimination of nuclear weapons and other weapons adaptable to mass destruction.

The TPNW is not the final word on nuclear weapons, but a critical step in the evolution of the regime that would be required to achieve and eventually maintain a world without nuclear weapons. South Africa is of the view that the TPNW represents one of the most important developments in the area of nuclear disarmament since 1945.

The TPNW not only complements the NPT but strengthens it, as the former represents the highest non-proliferation standard that any state can commit to. It also provides an opportunity for states that are not located in nuclear weapon-free zones to join an instrument that expresses their total opposition to nuclear weapons. The denuclearisation of South Africa is symbiotically linked to the country's democratisation.

Global governance and continental agenda

South Africa's foreign policy is formulated and executed in a global environment that is constantly evolving. It, therefore, requires frequent recalibration through comprehensive reviews of various foreign policy levers, tools and instruments to remain relevant and in line with the department's mandate.

Global governance

South Africa participates in a rules-based multilateral system to achieve global political and socio-economic stability and security. Multilateralism, and by implication the commitment to a rules-based, just, and equitable international order, remains a focal point of South Africa's foreign policy. Consequently, South Africa will continue to engage the multilateral system, particularly the UN, through its agencies, funds, programmes and processes, to advance South Africa's foreign policy priorities.

These engagements consider that the multilateral system still does not fully reflect global political and economic realities, and is in need of reform. A key priority for South Africa is to regain lost momentum that would accelerate the reform of the United Nations Security Council (UNSC), as well as to advance the reform of the broader global governance architecture with a view to improving its representivity and focus its responsiveness to the needs of, and challenges faced by, developing states.

The current unpredictable global environment poses a number of risks to the UN and the global governance system, particularly as it relates to, among others, the dynamics within the UNSC on issues of peace and security (including the situation in the Middle East), promotion and protection of human rights, funding for multilateral processes and honouring commitments to enable national implementation of multilateral decisions, such as the 2030 Agenda and Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) as well as the Paris Agreement on Climate Change – which for the first time brings all nations into a common cause to undertake ambitious efforts to combat climate change and adapt to its effects, with enhanced support to assist developing countries to do so.

Ensuring sustainable development in the current global environment will require concerted engagement in the UN system and other multilateral structures, such as the G2O, in promoting access to vaccines, post-COVID-19 economic recovery, debt sustainability and liquidity, economic growth and the improvement of social well-being and infrastructure through increased trade and investment as well as the fair and equitable movement of goods and services.

This will include addressing systemic issues to enhance the coherence and consistency of the international monetary, financial and trading systems in support of development. The follow-up and review to commitments made in the International Financing for Development Conferences, including the Addis Ababa Action Agenda, seeks to mobilise much-needed resources for the implementation of the SDGs.

Ensuring sustainable development in the current global environment will require concerted engagement in the UN system and other multilateral structures such as the G20, on economic growth and the improvement of social well-being and infrastructure through increased trade and investment as well as the fair and equitable movement of goods and services.

Furthermore, in the wake of numerous terror attacks across the world, countering international terrorism remains a priority on the agenda of the UN, particularly with regard to the abuse of cyber platforms for propaganda, recruitment and planning of attacks, radicalising of the youth and inciting extremism leading to terrorist attacks. Development, human rights, security and international law are promoted through international forums such as the UN and its agencies.

Ubuntu magazine

The DIRCO's quarterly magazine, *Ubuntu* – South Africa's Public Diplomacy in Action, is aimed at: communicating with and educating stakeholders on South Africa's foreign policy positions, achievements, objectives and goal; and giving in-depth analysis and information on key departmental issues, ranging from current affairs, bilateral and multilateral milestones, upcoming key events, as well as international work done by other government departments, business and parastatals.

The high-quality glossy magazine spreads South Africa's foreign policy message quarterly around the world. Its footprint extends across the globe. The magazine is also available online on: www. dirco.gov.za.

Ubuntu Radio

Ubuntu Radio is an online, 24-hour radio station aimed at enhancing communication on South Africa's foreign policy. The first of its kind on the African continent, it is accessible on www.ubunturadio.com and on the DStv Audio Bouquet Channel 888. The objective of Ubuntu Radio is to create a platform to exchange views and opinions by various stakeholders.

Ubuntu Awards

The 2020 Ubuntu Awards were held in Cape Town on 15 February under the theme; "Celebrating Excellence in Diplomacy – Working Together to Build a Better Africa and a Better World". The purpose of the awards is to recognise South African citizens for their distinguished service and contribution to promoting South Africa's national interests and values across the world.

The event takes place traditionally after the opening of Parliament and brings together captains of industry, civil-society leaders, members of Cabinet and other eminent persons in addition to ambassadors and high commissioners accredited to South Africa.

The Ubuntu Lifetime Achievement Award went to Dr Brigalia Bam, a prominent gender activist. Dr Bam is the Chancellor of Walter Sisulu University, a former Chairperson of the Independent Electoral Commission of former General Secretary of the South African Council of Churches. She was recently awarded the prestigious Mahatma Gandhi International Award for Peace and Reconciliation.

United Nations

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa was one of the 51 founding members of the UN in 1945. Since then, the UN membership has grown to 193 states. After being suspended in 1974, owing to international opposition to the policy of apartheid, South Africa was readmitted to the UN in 1994, following its transition to democracy.

As a UN member state, South Africa has demonstrated its commitment to multilateralism and the central role of the UN in the system of global governance. South Africa has consistently proposed steps towards a stronger and more effective UN, including enhancing its role, within the limitations of the Charter in the maintenance of international peace and security, promotion of human rights and the emphasis on sustainable development.

In addition, South Africa has been actively involved in the reform processes of the UN, especially the UN Security Council. After 75 years of existence, the UN has made a number of strides in terms of reforms. However, the reform of the security council still remains elusive. South Africa has called for the urgent and comprehensive reform of the security council.

South Africa has also played a leading role in the negotiations (as Chair of the Group of 77 in 2015) and eventual adoption of the 2030 Agenda and its 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) and the Paris Agreement on Climate Change, amongst other key international instruments. Today, the world has changed in fundamental ways. The COVID-19 pandemic is having a devastating impact on the global economy and has once again thrown into sharp contrast the economic disparities existent in the global South. The Secretary-General's "Our Common Agenda" (OCA) places the UN at the centre of multilateral solutions to tackle global challenges.

The report advocates for collective action by all member states to address the world's biggest challenges. South Africa, in line with its firm and consistent belief in collective action and multilateralism, will support the implementation of the thematic areas of the OCA Report, especially those consistent with the objectives of the SDGs and the NDP.

United Nations Security Council

South Africa concluded its non-permanent membership of the UNSC in December 2020, after serving for two years. This was South Africa's third term on the UNSC. Its term was defined by the theme; "Continuing the Legacy: Working for a Just and Peaceful World", drawing on the legacy of former President Nelson Mandela following the centenary of his birth as well as the legacy of South Africa's two previous terms on the council.

Going into the council, South Africa's priorities were on building on advances made in its previous terms on the council and focussed on the implementation thereof, including UN-AU cooperation, the Women Peace and Security, and Youth Peace and Security agendas, and the peaceful settlement of disputes.

South Africa's last year in the council coincided with its chairship of the AU. This presented the country with a unique opportunity to advance the African Agenda in both institutions and harmonise its priorities of promoting UNSC decisions in support of the AU initiative of silencing the guns across Africa.

During its time on the UNSC, South Africa continued to promote a multilateral approach to addressing issues related to international peace and security in order to ensure global sustainable peace. The importance of a proactive approach to the maintenance of international peace and security, particularly in the form of drawing greater attention to preventative diplomacy mechanisms, as well as post-conflict reconstruction and development underpinned much of South Africa's engagement on the council. Further, South Africa strived for consensus and unity of the UNSC in its attempts to play the role of a bridge-builder and to improve proactive actions on issues on the agenda of the council and thus the integrity of the UNSC.

South Africa pursued collaboration with all council members and thus continued to identity opportunities for cooperation with like-minded countries. In this regard, as an elected member, the country forged close links with the other two African countries serving on the council, the so-called A3. South Africa also worked with other developing countries that are part of the NAM and with other elected ten members as well as like-minded countries on issues of mutual interest.

In terms of continental issues on the agenda of the UNSC, South Africa advanced the approach of the AU in addressing the African conflicts on the council's agenda. South Africa continued to advance the partnership between the UN and the AU in the prevention and peaceful settlement of disputes, continuing the legacy of its first two terms on the Security Council. For South Africa, this cooperation is strategic for promoting the principles of comparative advantage, complementarity, subsidiarity and burden-sharing.

Sustainable Development

During the reporting period, the DIRCO engaged with multilateral International Organisations of which South Africa is a member state on sustainable development, with the objective to promote integrated

implementation of the NDP, the UN 2030 Agenda, the African Union's Agenda 2063 and the SADC revised Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan (RISDP).

South Africa participates in the annual High Level Political Forum (HLPF) held under the auspices of the ECOSOC and the five-yearly review held under the auspices of the United Nations General Assembly. The policy approach is to advance all three pillars of sustainable development – economic, social and environmental and to accord priority to all seventeen SDGs.

The DIRCO supports the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment, as the lead department, on South Africa's multilateral engagement on climate change, environmental conservation, safe and sound management of chemicals and terrestrial pollution, as well as marine and antarctic issues in relevant forums under the auspices of the UNEP, the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) and its Paris Agreement and the Multilateral Environmental Agreements (MEAs).

The objective is to promote national interests and the interests of Africa and other developing countries and to ensure improved implementation and multilateral governance in these areas. This includes contributing to negotiations, foreign policy advice and support to line function departments, policy proposals to principals and facilitating South Africa's relations with negotiating and development partners within relevant multilateral processes and bodies.

In partnership with lead departments – the departments of Communications and Digital Technologies, Science and Innovation (DSI) and Trade, Industry and Competition, the DIRCO supports matters related to civil aviation, maritime transport, science, technology and innovation from a socio-economic perspective at a multilateral level. Key international engagements are within the International Civil Aviation Organisation, International Maritime Organisation, International Telecommunication Union, Universal Postal Union, the UN Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer and the Internet Governance Forum. These engagements bolster South Africa's influence in this arena to support the country's economic and social growth to increase employment, gender and youth empowerment.

UN Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)

The council is a premier organ of the UN responsible for the economic and social development matters of the world. South Africa regards sustainable development as a collective opportunity and responsibility that can be achieved through multilateral cooperation, and will continue its active role in the ECOSOC-mandated processes to address the follow-up and review of financing for development outcomes and the means of implementation of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, all of which are crucial to the realisation of the SDGs. South Africa further actively participates in the functional commissions of the ECOSOC such as the Commission for Social Development, and the Commission on the Status of Women.

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)

South Africa joined UNESCO on 12 December 1994 and is an active participant in key UNESCO governance structures such as the General Conference and the World Heritage Committee. The country currently

serves as a member of the organization's Executive Board for the term 2021 – 2025. Through its participation in UNESCO meetings and conferences, including those of the World Heritage Committee (WHC), South Africa utilizes UNESCO to advance its socio-economic development and to contribute towards building peace through international cooperation in the field of education, science (human, natural and social), culture, communication and information.

South Africa also contributes to the organization's programme of work and budget allocations and ensures that Africa and gender equality remain the key priorities for UNESCO. South Africa acceded to the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (December 2003) and the Convention on the Protection of Underwater Cultural Heritage (May 2015).

Since South Africa ratified the World Heritage Convention on 10 July 1997, UNESCO has inscribed several sites in the country as world heritage sites, namely the:

- · Fossil Hominid Sites of South Africa (1999);
- · Robben Island Museum (1999);
- · iSimangaliso Wetland Park (1999);
- Maloti-Drakensberg Park (2000);
- · Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape (2003);
- Cape Floral Region Protected Areas (2004);
- Vredefort Dome (2005);
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape (2007);
- · Khomani Cultural Landscape (2017); and
- · Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains (2018).

After joining the UNESCO in 1994, South Africa established the National Commission for UNESCO in 1998 – a structure through which the country interacts with the UNESCO and coordinates the organization's various areas of work. The NATCOM's secretariat is hosted by the Department of Basic Education. In 2021/22 South Africa participated in the:

- UNESCO 41st General Conference: during the conference, held in November 2021, South Africa was elected to the Executive Board of UNESCO for the period 2021 to 2025, and the Management of Social Transformations (MOST) Programme of UNESCO. South Africa uses its membership on the Executive Board to pursue the country's national interests and that of the continent in the Medium-Term Strategy, in particular Priority Africa and Gender Equality; UNESCO's new MTSF for 2022 to 2029. The emerging deliverables are contained in the programme and budget for 2022 to 2025; amongst other key items the landmark normative instruments namely, Ethics of Artificial Intelligence; and Open Science; the Futures of Education, including the critical role of the International Bureau of Education in curriculum development globally, and in the developing countries in line with the SDGs and the AU Agenda 2063.
- Extended 44th Session of the World Heritage Committee

(WHC): the committee convened virtually from Fuzhou, China from 16 to 31 July 2022. Key agenda items included the examination of the state of conservation reports; establishment of the World Heritage List (WHL) and the List of World Heritage in Danger; global strategy for a representative balanced and credible WHL and the consideration of periodic reports. Major outcomes included the inscription of 34 new properties on the WHC list, including two from Africa. This calls

for more work on the Priority Africa Program and the deliverables of the African World Heritage Fund. South Africa used its membership of the WHC to advocate for the inscription of South African and African sites on the World Heritage List, and to support the effective conservation and protection of natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value in Africa. The session also elected the Bureau for the 45th Session of the WHC, with South Africa nominated as the African representative, mandated from the end of the 44th session until the end of the 45th session of the committee. South Africa will continue to engage key countries to support the African World Heritage Fund and to advance Priority Africa.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body, as well as in its executive board meetings.

South Africa also participates in the WHO's Regional Committee for Africa, which convenes annually after the WHA to reflect on decisions taken at the assembly (particularly those relevant to the continent) and plan for the following year's WHA.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and standards on key issues regarding global and public health such as:

- · the implementation of international health regulations;
- · addressing antimicrobial resistance;
- · the fight against HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria;
- · building resilient healthcare systems in developing states;
- · ensuring access to medicines;
- achieving Universal Health Coverage (National Health Insurance in South Africa); and
- contributing to economic growth through health employment. South Africa's participation in the global arena has been elevated since the appointment of President Ramaphosa as the AU COVID-19 Champion, and as co-chair of the Access to COVID-19 Tools Facilitation Council, a global collaboration to accelerate the development, production and equitable access to COVID-19 tests, treatments and vaccines. The country participated in the following summits and international conferences where he pursued the interests of the continent and all developing countries:
- Global Health Summit in May 2021: the virtual global health summit was convened by the European Commission and Italy, as the G20 President for 2021. The summit provided a timely opportunity for the G20 and other leaders, to share lessons learned from the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic and discuss how to improve global security through enhanced cooperation, coordination, and joint action, accompanied by the spirit of solidarity. It culminated in the endorsement of the "Rome Declaration" of Principles. President Ramaphosa delivered a strong message to caution against vaccine nationalism and called upon developed countries to support developing countries to mitigate the COVID-19 pandemic, as well as funding for the ACT-Accelerator.
- 74th WHA: The event was held in May 2021 under the theme;
 "Ending this pandemic, preventing the next: building together a healthier, safer and fairer world." South Africa advocated for a number of critical issues, including on health conditions in the occupied

Palestinian territory, including east Jerusalem and in the occupied Syrian Golan; and expressed support for a Special Session of the WHA to consider the benefits of developing a WHO convention, agreement or other international instrument on pandemic preparedness and response with a view towards the establishment of an intergovernmental process to draft and negotiate such a convention, agreement or other international instrument on pandemic preparedness and response, as a proponent for the creation of a treaty on pandemics.

- Gavi COVAX Advance Market Commitment (AMC) Summit: Leaders, including President Ramaphosa pledged their support to the Gavi COVAX AMC, securing US\$ 2.4 billion, reaching a total of US\$9.6 billion for COVID-19 vaccine procurement. In addition, donors pledged US\$ 775 million for vaccine delivery. The vent was held in June 2021.
- The Global COVID-19 Summit: The summit was held in September 2021 on the margin of the UNGA's High-level Week under the theme; "Ending the Pandemic and Building Back Better Health Security to prepare for the Next". In his intervention, President Ramaphosa raised concerns about the widening gap between better-resourced nations who are hoarding vaccines and developing countries who are struggling to have access to vaccines, and reiterated the proposal that developing countries should be enabled to manufacture their own vaccines.
- ACT -Accelerator Advocacy Campaign Launch: South Africa
 participated in the launch of the ACT- Accelerator Campaign
 which took place on 9 February 2022. The purpose of the event
 was to raise awareness of ACT-Accelerator achievements and
 build political support for the urgent financial needs of its agencies
 to scale up this important work.
- The High-level Preparatory Meeting for the Global Fund's 7th Replenishment: the meeting was held from 23 to 24 February 2022. President Ramaphosa participated as a co-host along with four other African leaders President of the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) as the AU Chair, Kenya as Chair of the African Leaders Malaria Alliance (ALMA), Rwanda as the NEPAD Chair and Senegal as the incoming AU Chair. The purpose of the meeting was to launch the Seventh Replenishment campaign and spell out the Global Fund's case and ambition for the resources needed over 2023 to 2025 to allow it to execute its mandate, and to demonstrate how 20 years of Global Fund partnership and solidarity have saved and continue to save millions of lives while contributing broadly to global health, including the global COVID-19 response.

Central to this was promoting the South African and Indian proposal to the World Trade Organisation (WTO) for the emergency temporary waiver of some trade-related aspects of intellectual property rights (TRIPS).

The temporary waiver aims to counter the growing vaccine nationalism, and promote universal access not only to vaccines, diagnostics, therapeutics; but also the entire manufacturing, production and distribution value chain for vaccines and other relevant medical products; lower prices and to expedite the process of distribution to everyone, everywhere.

The DIRCO ensured that the TRIPS Waiver proposal was advanced in all multilateral and bilateral engagements. Discussions are ongoing into 2022/23.

International Renewable Energy Agency (IRENA)

The IRENA is an intergovernmental organization mandated to facilitate cooperation, advance knowledge and promote the adoption and sustainable use of renewable energy. The agency was established in 2009, with South Africa as a founding member. Since its inception, the organisation has become the leading actor in facilitating international energy cooperation within the context of driving the global energy transition towards the increased employment of renewable energy.

The NDP identifies energy as a catalyst for economic growth and development and these can be realised through adequate investment in energy infrastructure. South Africa has maintained proactive steps in transitioning to a low carbon economy and participation in the IRENA meetings is integral to this transition.

Organisation of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) and Development Centre

The OECD serves as a catalyst to generate discussions on the global economy, the international financial architecture, financial regulatory reform and global economic governance — with the aim of creating a strong platform for influencing global economic policy.

Although South Africa is not a member of the OECD, it is one of five countries that have "Key Partner" status with the OECD – alongside Brazil, China, Indonesia and India. Engagement with the OECD has the potential to relate directly to three over-arching development objectives – iensuring that inclusive economic growth is a critical condition for addressing South Africa's triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality; sustaining a skilled and capable workforce in order to support the delivery of the NDP targets and advancing the African Agenda.

South Africa's relationship with the OECD is governed by the South Africa-OECD Engagement Framework (2017 - 2021), which was approved in 2017. In 2020, both parties concluded negotiations for a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) for Cooperative Activities which sets out a Joint Work Programme for collaboration, over a period of five years, in:

- · inclusive growth and competitiveness;
- · the development of small, micro and medium enterprises;
- · trade investment;
- · skills development and a capable workforce; and
- stronger institutions, fiscal matters and good governance.

The MoU was expected to be signed in 2022.

South Africa participates in the following OECD committees:

- Working Party on Private Pensions,
- · Regional Development Policy Committee,
- · Working Group on Bribery in International Business Transactions,
- Mutual Acceptance of Data.
- · Base Erosion and Profit Shifting,
- · Development Centre.
- · Competition Committee,
- Steel Committee,
- · Tourism Committee,
- Joint Meeting of the Chemicals Committee and Working Party on Chemicals, Pesticides and Biotechnology,
- Public Governance Committee
- · Committee for Scientific and Technological Policy,
- Committee on Statistics and Statistical Policy;

- · Committee for Agriculture,
- · Committee on Digital Economy Policy, and
- Local Economic and Employment Development

International Labour Organisation (ILO)

South Africa was a member of the ILO from 1919 to 1966 when it was suspended due to the apartheid policy and was readmitted in 1994. South Africa's objective in its engagement with the ILO is geared towards influencing global debates on labour issues as well as to exchange experiences towards resolving its challenges.

In November 2021, South Africa ratified the ILO Convention on Eliminating Violence and Harassment in the World of Work, as it is consistent with the domestic and international objectives of promoting the women's rights. South Africa is the tenth member state of the ILO to have ratified the convention. Convention Number 190 was expected to enter into force for South Africa on 29 November 2022, one year after its ratification.

The Convention was first adopted during the 108th International Labour Conference (ILC), the ILO Centenary Conference, which was held in Geneva in 2019. The convention recognises that violence and harassment in the world of work "can constitute a human rights violation or abuse – a threat to equal opportunities, is unacceptable and incompatible with decent work" and thus aims to encourage member states to come up with measures to protect workers and employees from violence and harassment.

It reminds member states that they have a responsibility to promote a general environment of zero tolerance. The convention covers violence and harassment occurring in the workplace, during work-related trips, work-related communications, in employer-provided accommodation and when commuting to and from work.

World Trade Organisation

South Africa has been a WTO member since 1995 and a member of GATT since June 1948. It participates in the WTO negotiations with the view to carve global trading agreements in the area of agriculture, trade facilitation and fair and equitable trading systems through Special and Differential Treatment for the Least-Developed Countries.

The country pursues diplomatic strategies that seek to project its own trade policy interests – with a key priority being increased market access, particularly in agriculture within the neoliberal agenda. The country stresses the need for an export-led growth strategy and so it has a keen interest in supporting the WTO's trade liberalisation agenda.

Since 2006, the Doha Developmental Round of Negotiations has not made substantial progress in on issues affecting developing countries. After 15 years of talks, members of the WTO have effectively ended these negotiations. The WTO remains a vital international forum for both the projection of South African foreign policy as well as its international status in the post-apartheid era.

It provides a world platform on which South Africa can project and perhaps increase its power at international levels as well as increase its international status by constructing a positive image of good citizenship and responsible leadership to contrast with the pariah-state image of the apartheid era.

The WTO is facing challenges emanating from regional agreements and the move towards plurilateralism which will see like-minded-countries agreeing on the issues of their mutual interest like

e-commerce and renege on traditional issues like halting of subsidies, market access of agricultural commodities and special and differential treatment to assist in levelling the playing fields.

In 2020, South Africa and India submitted a proposal to the WTO for the emergency temporary waiver of some trade-related aspects of intellectual property rights (TRIPS) that would grant medical technology transfers for the duration of the COVID-19 pandemic. The temporary waiver would allow countries and manufacturers to directly access and share technologies to procure vaccines and therapeutics, and to increase the production of COVID-19 health products, lower prices and speed up distribution to developing countries. The waiver proposal has been blocked at the TRIPS Council and the WTO ministerial Council, but the negotiations are still proceeding.

The one pending issue at the WTO is the impasse on the appointment of new Appellate Body Members which has led to the paralysis of the appeals mechanism in the WTO dispute settlement. The WTO 12th Ministerial Conference took place from 12 to 15 June in Geneva.

World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO)

The WIPO is mandated to manage intellectual property services through a global partnership, collaboration and them. Through its various committees, the WIPO advocates for the promotion of intellectual property rights and enforcement in trademarks, industrial designs, patents, trade secrets, copyright and related rights.

The WIPO further provides a forum for its members to forge ahead with its developmental agenda, which is a critical component to assist in a balanced system of intellectual property (IP) enforcement and development. It further assists developing countries with capacity building and technical assistance to assist them to embrace IP for small and medium enterprises prepare for digital economy and international trade. South Africa became a member of the WIPO on 23 March 1975.

The country participates in the WIPO committees to advance issues pertaining to IP and development. South Africa's participation in WIPO is guided by its IP Policy. Government regards IP as an important policy instrument in promoting innovation, technology transfer, research and development, industrial development and, more broadly, economic growth.

South Africa believes that the WIPO's efforts to advance IP, creativity and innovation, serves the country's objective for a people-centred development agenda based on the adopted SDGs and our continental vision through the AU Agenda 2063.

World Economic Forum (WEF)

The WEF is an independent international forum which brings together senior leaders in business, as well as in political and academic spheres for high-level discussions on how to accelerate global growth and development. Ordinarily, the annual meetings are organised in Davos, Switzerland in January as well as a series of regional summits in Africa – WEF on Africa, Latin America, Middle East and North Africa and the Association of South East Asian Nations (ASEAN).

South Africa's objective in dealing with the WEF is to promote the country as an attractive investment destination and to influence discussions pertaining to global and continental issues.

The 2022 WEF Annual Meeting was postponed from January to May due to concerns of the health risks brought about the continued global pandemic COVID-19.

Group of Seven (G7)

The G7 was formally established in 1975, following the financial crisis brought about by the 1973 oil crisis. In an attempt to improve the coordination of global economic and financial policy, the initial meetings were held by the Finance Ministers of the world's five most industrialized and developed countries – France, Germany, Japan, the US, and the UK, who were later joined by Canada and Italy at a presidential level, to form the G7. Russia joined the group in 1998, when it was known as the G8, until its suspension from the group in 2014 due to the situation in the Crimea.

South Africa in not a member of the G7, but some G7 presidencies invite the country as a guest to the outreach part of the Leaders' Summit, as a key voice from Africa and the global south. The country's engagement with the group is aimed at leveraging resources and capacity of the G7 countries to facilitate Africa's socio-economic development.

South Africa has also utilised the forum to advance its economic agenda, and particularly to promote South Africa as a major investment destination; to further the interests of the AU and collaborate with other invited developing countries in order to advance the developmental agenda. In 2021, during the UK presidency of the G7, South Africa, along with India, South Korea and Australia were invited, as the G7 guest countries, to the G7 Leaders' Summit that took place from 11 to 13 June 2021 in Cornwall, South West England, United Kingdom.

At the 2021 Leaders' Summit, President Ramaphosa lobbied for support on three issues of importance to South Africa and the Continent – ending the COVID-19 pandemic and access to vaccines; equitable and inclusive global economic growth; and climate change. Regarding the COVID-19 pandemic, the G7 countries made a commitment to support African efforts to establish a regional manufacturing hub and encouraging new partnerships based on voluntary licensing and technology transfer on mutually agreed terms.

On the issue of equitable and inclusive global economic growth, the G7 leaders made a commitment to invest in and expand education for women and girls as well as on women empowerment. In support of private sector development and sustainable economic recovery and growth in Africa, the group's development finance institutions and multilateral institutions intend to invest an amount of at least \$80 billion over the next five years.

Financial Action Task Force (FATF)

The FATF is an inter-governmental body that was established by the G7 in 1989 to set international norms and standards to promote the effective implementation of measures for combating money laundering, terrorist financing and other related threats to the integrity of the international financial system. It comprises 37 jurisdictions, two regional organisations and nine associate regional groupings. Its recommendations are intended to be of universal application.

South Africa became a member of the FATF in 2003. The country is also a member of a FATF-style regional body – the Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group (ESAAMLG). One of the features of FATF and ESAAMLG is a mutual evaluation exercise. South Africa's evaluation processes started in April 2019. It included an on-site visit by a team of assessors in November 2019.

The processes were affected by the COVID-19 pandemic but continued through online engagements. This culminated in the

assessment team producing a draft report which was presented at the FATF plenary meeting in June 2021. South Africa's mutual evaluation report identified significant shortcomings which might have severe economic consequences if not speedily addressed.

The country received poor ratings assessment, with most ratings assessed to be of moderate or low level of effectiveness. The country will submit a post-observation period report to the FATF for review of the progress made against the identified shortcomings by a relevant joint group of the International Cooperation Review Group. South Africa was expected to submit its report on 14 August 2022 for consideration.

Group of Twenty

South Africa has been a permanent member of the G20 since its inception in 1999, following the Asian financial crises. The G20 was established to increase multilateral cooperation for the recovery of the global economy, to bring stability to the global financial system, to promote long-term sustainable growth and to strengthen global economic governance.

The G20 economies account for 85% of the global GDP, 80% of world trade and two-thirds of the world's population. Since the escalation of the G20 to Leaders' Summit Level in 2008, the agenda has significantly expanded to include issues of geo-political, development and trade significance. South Africa's participation in the G20 has sought to provide strategic foresight in establishing an economic and financial international policy platform that will drive and negotiate the best possible outcomes for South Africa. Africa and the developing world.

South Africa has been the permanent Co-Chair of the Development Working Group since 2010 for the promotion of national and continental priorities. Addressing the scourge of illicit financial flows has the potential to unlock billions of dollars that could be utilised to fund Africa and the developing world's development.

In addition, South Africa has consistently advanced G20 support for industrialisation in Africa and least developed countries, the implementation of the G20 Partnership with Africa and enhanced G20 support to developing countries by providing the means of implementation for achieving the 2030 Sustainable Development Agenda. These initiatives are aimed at positively impacting the development trajectory of Africa and the developing world and contribute positively to achieving the global commitment of leaving no one behind.

The G20 is unique in its composition of countries of the North and South, and therefore, as a collective body, tends to carry significant profile and influence. South Africa, as the only permanent African member of the G20, has used its participation to advance national priorities, the African Agenda of Sustainable Development, inclusive growth, the reduction of inequality and the promotion of a just economic world order.

In the future, the strategic trajectory of the G20 is anticipated to transform from a crisis response mechanism focusing on short-term policies to one of long-term governance that shapes medium- to long-term policies, and will solidify its role as the premier forum for international economic governance.

The 2021 G20 Presidency under Italy centred its programme of work on three pillars – People, Planet And Prosperity. The first pillar, People, recognised that policies will need to be people centred. Given the devastating consequences of the COVID-19 Pandemic, the Italian

Presidency addressed, in particular, the health and the economic fallout and recovery from COVID-19 under the People pillar.

Other areas included tackling poverty and inequality with determination, creating conditions conducive to protecting those who are most vulnerable and promoting women's empowerment. The second Planet pillar called for renewed ambition and commitments to improve energy efficiency, reduced emissions, safeguarding the environment and protecting biodiversity.

A specific objective of the Italian Presidency under this pillar was to secure firm commitments to targets by G20 countries, notably a commitment to net-carbon zero by 2050, as well as the 2030 target of designating 30% of land and 30% of oceans as protected areas. The ambitious agenda set for the G20 of 2021 was slanted towards emission reduction, focus on the green recovery, encouraging trade and climate change commitments outside the relevant multilateral structures, and to exclude the means of implementation support for developing countries.

The Prosperity pillar focused on the challenges posed by the technological revolution, specifically on digitization as a source of wealth, insecurity and inequality. The aim is to transform digitization. In October 2021, the South African Minister of International Relations and Cooperation attended the G20 Rome Leaders' Summit. South Africa's strategy for engagement sought to promote and advance national interest, the interests of Africa and that of the global South.

Key in this regard, was to ensure equitable and affordable access to vaccines, support for special drawing rights reallocation to vulnerable countries, resisting the setting of unilateral climate and environmental targets, ensuring that trade policy measures to achieve environmental and climate goals are WTO consistent and not a prelude to new trade barriers and resisting attempts to negotiate health governance and financing structure outside the WHO. South Africa also fully supported G20 commitments to gender equality and the empowerment of women.

Human rights and humanitarian affairs

South Africa played a leadership role in several intergovernmental processes at the UN pertaining to norms and standard setting in international human rights and humanitarian law, law of international protection for asylum seekers, refugees, including migrants, the empowerment of women and gender equality, the protection of the rights of the child and persons with disabilities, as well as food security and nutrition.

To this end, the South African delegation to this system took leadership roles such as chairing relevant intergovernmental working groups, initiating and negotiating flagship resolutions, influencing as well as impacting the agenda setting in these areas. In the above context, the most important initiative entails the leadership role in the work of the ad-hoc committee on the Elaboration of Complementary Standards to the International Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination, aimed at combating contemporary forms of racism.

Despite gains made since the country gained democracy, there are still critical challenges that threaten the plight of children. Key priorities that remain for South Africa include early childhood development and care; violence against children; health and nutrition; and quality education and life skills programmes. South Africa, therefore, encourages states addressing the rights of the child within multilateral

fora, to remain steadfast in strengthening and enhancing the important gains that have been made for children from developing countries.

This will ensure that children experience the care and protection they deserve and have a voice in the decisions that are made pertaining to them.

The 43rd Session of the United Nations Human Rights Council was held from 24 to 26 February 2020 in Geneva, Switzerland. South Africa's participation at the high-level segment focused on outlining the country's human rights priorities for 2020; giving an update on government's efforts in ensuring the promotion, protection, fulfilment, enjoyment and practical realisation of human rights; initiating the process of lobbying support for the 20th anniversary of the Durban Declaration and Programme of Action (DDPA), in particular the convening of a one-day high-level plenary event to commemorate the 20th anniversary of the adoption of the DDPA on the margins of the high-level segment of the 76th Session of the UNGA in 2021; and delivering messages on advancing gender equality, empowerment of women, and combating violence against women and girls.

South Africa participated in two high-level panel discussions on human rights mainstreaming, whose theme focused on; "Thirty years of the implementation of the Convention on the Rights of the Child: Challenges and Opportunities"; and the 25th anniversary of the Beijing Declaration and Platform for Action adopted at the 4th World Conference on Women.

Continental Agenda African Union

The establishment of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) in 1963 by 32 countries in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia was intended to continue the fight against colonialism and apartheid on the African continent, promote unity and solidarity, safeguard the sovereignty and territorial integrity of member states and coordinate and intensify cooperation for development.

Following the realisation of the objectives that were set during the advent of the OAU, particularly the mission to emancipate the continent from the shackles of colonial and apartheid rule, the AU was formed and brought to force in 2002, wherein 54 countries agreed to chart a new path for the continent, more specifically its economic development.

This new path which was set in 2002 by the AU was underpinned in the determination to tackle and address the multifaceted social, economic and political challenges, through forging an integrated continent that can ultimately realise its full economic potential and play its rightful role in the global economy.

To this end, the AU is making progressive strides and moving towards the right direction in its mission to address the long-standing challenges of underdevelopment, and consequent poverty, unemployment and inequality on the continent.

The AU recognised the need to develop a long-term strategy, resulting in the adoption of Agenda 2063 in 2015 by the Heads of State and Government during the 24th Ordinary Session in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. Agenda 2063 has identified seven cardinal aspirations, which provide an indication of what the continent should achieve by the year 2063:

- a prosperous Africa based on inclusive growth and sustainable development;
- · an integrated continent, politically united based on the ideals of

Pan-Africanism and the vision of Africa's renaissance:

- an Africa of good governance, democracy, respect for human rights, justice and the rule of law;
- · a peaceful and secure Africa;
- an Africa with a strong cultural identity, common heritage, values and ethics;
- an Africa where development is people driven, unleashing the potential of its women and youth; and
- Africa as a strong united and influential global player and partner.
 Appreciating the need that the realisation of the objectives set by Agenda 2063 should be fulfilled, there was a formulation of its first tenyear implementation plan. Thus far, there's has been progress made in this regard, as evidenced by:
- the adoption of the Protocol on the Free Movement of Persons in Africa.
- · member states having committed to the AfCFTA; and
- the Single African Air Transport Market being launched.

These flagship programmes of Agenda 2063 are the catalysts which will ensure the acceleration of integration within the continent and will further enable African countries to maximise economic opportunities, particularly trade amongst them.

The objective of the AfCFTA is to promote intra-African trade and offer an opportunity to create larger economies of scale, a bigger market and improve the prospects of the African continent to attract investment. In addition, the AfCFTA will bring together the 55 member states of the AU, covering a market of more than 1.2 billion people, including a growing middle class and a combined GDP of more than US\$3.4 trillion.

Furthermore, the AU has noted that in order to successfully move the continent forward, it has to transform the manner in which it conducts its business. Currently, the AU is undergoing a rigorous process of reviewing how it has been operating, through engaging the recommendations made during the institutional reform process. The successful implementation of the agreement borne out of this process will ensure that the AU becomes more effective and efficient in carrying out its mandate.

South Africa, as a member of the AU, remains committed to the organisation and it has demonstrated its desire to ensure that the organisation succeeds. Currently, South Africa is hosting the Pan-African Parliament, the APRM and the AUDA-NEPAD, amongst others. Additionally, the country continues to play a steering role in matters related to peace and security on the continent.

South Africa is a member of the AU Committee of five on South Sudan, and through Deputy President David Mabuza, was involved in mediating the agreement that led to the establishment of the Transitional Government of National Unity in South Sudan on 22 February 2020. South Africa is a member of the AU High-Level Committee on Libya. Through these initiatives and its active involvement, South Africa continues to contribute towards the realisation of the aspiration of silencing the guns in Africa.

AU progress on the first ten-year implementation plan for Agenda 2063 and its flagship programmes

As of June 2022, the following progress had been made:

 AU member states have committed to the African Continental Free Trade Area (AfCFTA) with trade resuming on 1 July 2020.

- The implementation plan for the Africa Integrated High Speed Railway Network has been developed. The plan features 14 pilot projects and three accelerated projects which have been identified in collaboration with regional economic communities.
- The Pan-African E-Network Agreement has been signed by 48 out of 55 AU member states. The network had been installed in 48 AU member states.
- The African Commodities Strategy Action Plan was adopted on 3 September 2021 and the recruitment of a coordination team for the implementation is underway.
- Pan-African Virtual and E-University structure and cost implication is being reviewed which will soon be adopted. To date ten online courses, content and curricula have been developed and online information technology equipment has been procured.
- The Grand Inga Dam Project roadmap with key milestones is in place. The Inga Law aimed at facilitating the execution of the project has been enacted and currently awaits ratification.
- The Single African Air Transport Market has been launched with 35 AU member states signing the solemn commitment to support its full operationalisation. About 19 AU member states have fully implemented concrete measures.
- A monitoring and evaluation mechanism for the implementation of the AU Master Roadmap of the Practical Steps to Silence the Guns in Africa by 2030 was adopted in 2021.
- Preparations for the launch of the temporary site of the Great Museum of Africa and the first continental exhibition are underway.
- The Malabo Convention on Cyber Security and Personal Data Protection has been ratified by 11 member states, four more still required for it to come into to force. Meanwhile, data protection guidelines have been developed and launched.
- Negotiations of the African Financial Institutions are still underway.
 The President Nana Addo Dankwa Akufo-Addo of Ghana was appointed as the champion to establish the AU Financial Institutions.
- The Protocol on the Free Movement of Persons in Africa has been adopted with 33 signatures and four ratifications to date.
- The African Economic Platform was last held in Mauritius in 2017.
 The roadmap for the implementation of the platform
 recommendations, and a concept note for the establishment
 of the African Business Council Platform and Trade Observatory
 were developed.
- The Encyclopaedia Africana project has successfully published three volumes.
- The African Space Agency structure and cost implications have been reviewed and will be adopted soon.

The impact of COVID-19 on the implementation of Agenda 2063

COVID-19 which was announced by the World Health Organisation (WHO) in March 2020 as a global pandemic, has spread rapidly around the world since it was first identified in December 2019. By 23 September 2021, there were more than 220 million infections (more than eight million in Africa) and 4.5 million deaths (less than 200 000 in Africa).

The COVID-19 pandemic continues to disrupt the global economy

and threatens to reverse the socio-economic gains achieved by the African Continent Agenda 2063's First Ten-Year Implementation Plan. In 2021, after observing South Africa's resilience during its Chairship that was challenged by the COVID-19 pandemic, the AU Assembly appointed President Ramaphosa to be its COVID-19 Champion. Lessons learned during the pandemic have enabled the continent to embark on a programme of local vaccine manufacturing and demand creation.

The continent's demand for vaccines represents substantial portions of low-middle income countries and global volumes (40% and 30%, respectively); however, only 1% of global volumes are being manufactured on the continent. This does not place the continent in a solid position to independently manage pandemics and other disease threats.

In response to this, the AU and the Africa Centres for Diseases Control set a bold goal that by 2040, African countries should produce at least 60% of the vaccines they use; and to set-up partnerships for African vaccine manufacturing. The pertnership was established in 2021 to deliver on the goal of enabling the African vaccine manufacturing industry to develop, produce, and supply over 60% of the total vaccine doses required on the continent by 2040.

Peace and Security Council

South Africa continues to promote peace and stability on the African continent through preventative diplomacy, peacemaking, peacebuilding and peacekeeping efforts. In this context, the country's approach to peacekeeping resonates strongly with the AU's aspirational goal adopted by the AU Assembly of African Heads of State and Government on 25 May 2013 in Addis Ababa of "Silencing the Guns by the Year 2020".

The AU's flagship project on addressing peace and security issues in the context of the African Peace and Security Architecture (APSA), is built around structures, objectives, principles and values, as well as decision-making processes relating to the prevention, management and resolution of crises and conflicts and post-conflict reconstruction and development on the continent.

Furthermore, the Peace and Security Council of the AU remains the main pillar of the APSA and is supported by various structures, including the AU Commission, the Panel of the Wise, the continental Early Warning System, the African Standby Force and the Peace Fund. The relationship between the AU and the regional economic communities/ regional mechanisms for conflict prevention, management and resolution remains crucial for the success of the APSA. South Africa has actively participated, through both bilateral and multilateral efforts, to resolve some of the continent's pressing conflict areas.

These countries include Lesotho, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Madagascar, Burundi, South Sudan, Somalia, CAR, Mali and Libya. South Africa also remains engaged in the peace and security dynamics of the Horn of Africa, the Sahel, the Great Lakes Region and the Lake Chad Basin. South Africa will continue to play its part in conflict resolution in these countries and respective regions.

In addition, South Africa reaffirms its continued solidarity to assist the people of Western Sahara in pursuit of their inalienable right to self-determination and decolonisation. South Africa remains steadfast in its rejection of all acts of terrorism and extremism that have increasingly affected Africa, contributing to internal instability. In July

2021, government called on security forces in Eswatini to exercise total restraint and protect the lives and property of the people, in keeping with the country's constitutional provisions and laws, following political unrests in that country.

AU regional economic communities

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies. Regional economic communities are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future regional economic communities, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives. Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

South Africa's development is intertwined with that of the southern Africa region and the African continent at large. The country's efforts at ramping up industrialisation should be viewed within the overall framework of the SADC Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap, as approved by the SADC Extra-Ordinary Summit in April 2015. South Africa seeks to industrialise the regional and continental economies in order to develop its own manufacturing capacity.

In addition, the country seeks to radically alter the colonial/ post-colonial pattern where Africa was a supplier of raw materials. It is of the view that Africa should produce value-added goods for exports into the global economy. It is only in this way that Africa can address the paradox of a rich-resource continent inhabited by a poverty-stricken population, and make a decisive break with the past.

African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development

At the 31st Ordinary Session of the Assembly of AU Heads of State and Government in Nouakchott, Mauritania, African heads of state and government received several reports, including the status of the implementation of the AU institutional reforms. During the summit, a decision was officially taken on the transformation of the NEPAD Planning and Coordination Agency into the AUDA.

The Assembly approved the establishment of AUDA as the technical body of the AU with its own legal identity, defined by its own statute. The reforms are an affirmation by member states of their commitment to the NEPAD as the union's own instrument established to champion catalytic support to countries and regional bodies in advancing the implementation of the continent's development vision – as articulated in the seven aspirations and 20 goals of Agenda 2063.

A core aspect of the current reforms is to streamline and improve effectiveness and efficiency in delivery in the implementation of AU decisions, policies and programmes across all its organs and institutions. The AUDA-NEPAD, an AU strategic framework for Pan-African socio-economic development, is both a vision and a policy framework for Africa in the 21st century.

It provides unique opportunities for African countries to take full control of their development agenda, to work more closely together, and to cooperate more effectively with international partners. The

AUDA-NEPAD manages a number of programmes and projects in six theme areas, namely:

- · agriculture and food security;
- · climate change and national resource management;
- · regional integration and infrastructure;
- human development;
- · economic and corporate governance; and
- cross-cutting issues, including gender, capacity development and information and communications technology (ICT).

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of the AUDA-NEPAD and the African APRM, and hosts the AUDA-NEPAD Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand, Gauteng.

The APRM process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of the AUDA-NEPAD.

The AUDA-NEPAD remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the:

- · European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership,
- · Forum on China-Africa Cooperation,
- · G7 Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia,
- Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD),
- New Asian-African Strategic Partnership, and
- · Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

Through the AUDA-NEPAD, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, ICT, science and technology, infrastructure and education have improved the quality of life for millions of Africans.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC developed from the Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC), which was established in 1980. It adopted its current name during a summit held in Windhoek, Namibia, in August 1992.

Before 1992, the aim of the SADCC was to forge close economic cooperation with southern African countries, excluding South Africa, to bolster their economies and reduce their dependence on the South African economy. From 1992, when the organisation became SADC, its mandate changed to:

- · promoting and defending peace and security;
- evolving common values, systems and institutions;
- establishing an open economy based on equality, mutual benefit and balanced development;
- breaking down tariff barriers;
- promoting trade exchanges and mutual investment;
- realising the free movement of goods, personnel and labour services;
- · achieving the unification of tariffs and currencies; and
- establishing a free trade zone.

The initial member states were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Eswatini, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa became a member after 1994.

South Africa has consistently sought to nurture regional integration at three levels: The Southern African Customs Union (SACU), the SADC and the Tripartite Free Trade Agreement (TFTA) between the SADC, the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA) and East African Countries (EAC). In particular, South Africa has championed a "developmental regionalism" approach that combines market integration, cross-border infrastructure development as well as policy coordination to diversify production and boost intra-African trade.

Development partners

One key feature that distinguishes the AU from its predecessor, the OAU is its vision of an integrated, prosperous, equitable, well-governed and peaceful United States of Africa, effectively managed by its own citizens and representing a creative and dynamic force in the international arena.

The last component of this vision establishes the need to cooperate strategically with other regional groupings, international organisations and states to promote Africa's interests, acquire support to enable the attainment of her objectives, increase Africa's international stature and obtain the global leverage that would enable the continent to maximise its impact in the geopolitical arena.

Consequently, South Africa through the AU, has entered a number of structured strategic partnerships around the world in line with the clear vision and development strategy of the AU. The partnerships emphasise the implementation of industrialisation and technology transfer, infrastructure development, trade and investment, development of human capital, social investment, and sustainable and inclusive growth policies, programmes and projects of continental, regional and national dimension.

These relations include continent-continent partnerships such as the Africa-EU partnership, the Africa-South America Summit and partnership between Africa and the Arab World and country-continent partnerships such as Forum on China-Africa Cooperation, TICAD, the Africa-India Forum, the Africa-Turkey partnership and the Africa-Korea partnership.

These partnerships are established and covered or governed by strategic partnership agreements, MoUs, declarations and frameworks of cooperation and various senior officials meetings, ministerial meetings and summits have been held over the years to review these partnerships.

These strategic partnerships enable African partners to take advantage of the continent's anticipated growth, its growing consumer market, demand for industrial products, demand for engineering, procurement and construction services and supply of basic raw materials, natural resources and strategic industrial inputs.

Previously, the partnerships involved commitments to provide assistance in agricultural and technological development, human capital development, industrialisation, infrastructural development as well as military expertise for the peacebuilding and peacemaking efforts of the AU. However, the emerging trend is that partners are aggressively promoting their respective private sectors to the fore and trade, investments and market access is acquiring prominence.

Relations with countries of the South remain strong and the BRICS membership has yielded benefits for the country and is expected to do so for the rest of the continent. Efforts continue within BRICS on common objectives, including addressing challenges in respective

regions and the world at large. BRICS also continues to provide alternative market access as well as strategic political support in pursuit of a just and equitable world.

In the same vein, South Africa continues to support the consolidation of the India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) Dialogue Forum. The forum serves as an intimate platform that coordinates matters of common interest and concern, and promotes development through the IBSA Fund for the alleviation of poverty and hunger.

The Indian Ocean region is of vital importance and of growing geostrategic significance. South Africa views the IORA as the preeminent regional organisation linking Africa, the Middle East and Asia via the Indian Ocean.

The association is growing in stature and prominence. South Africa continues to participate in the Organisation of African, Caribbean and Pacific States (OACPS), previously known as the Africa, Caribbean and Pacific Group (ACP), to promote South-South solidarity and the interests of the South and enhance dialogue and cooperation on political and sustainable development issues between the OACPS and the EU, its main development partner.

Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa

BRICS is an association of five major emerging countries, which together represent about 42% of the global population, 23% of the GDP, 30% of the territory and 18% of the global trade. South Africa's membership of BRICS enables the country to employ additional and powerful tools in its fight to address the triple challenges of unemployment, poverty and inequality through increased trade, investment, tourism, capacity building, skills and technology transfers.

These objectives are further realised through BRICS' financial institutions like the New Development Bank (NDB) and the Africa Regional Centre (ARC). The Johannesburg-based ARC plays a catalytic role in providing financial and project preparation support for infrastructure and sustainable development projects in South Africa and Africa.

At an institutional development level, South Africa derives crucial benefits through Track II institutions, such as the BRICS Business Council and the BRICS Think-Tank Council, as well as the creation of the BRICS Inter-Bank Cooperation Mechanism. Furthermore, the establishment of the BRICS Science, Technology and Innovation Funding Mechanism and Framework Programme, is an example of the vital support for capacity building, as well as skills and technology transfer.

BRICS cooperation in the fields of digitalisation, industrialisation and innovation was further enhanced through the establishment of the BRICS New Partnership for Industrial Revolution. The objective of the partnership is to address challenges and maximise opportunities arising from the Fourth Industrial Revolution (4IR) by strengthening policy coordination, promoting human skills development in cutting-edge technologies, sharing best practices in digitalisation and initiating joint infrastructure projects.

South Africa continues to make concerted efforts to place Africa and the Global South on the agenda of BRICS and to harmonise policies adopted in regional and international fora with those pursued in BRICS – the Africa's Agenda 2063 and the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. The exponential institutional development of BRICS has yielded institutions, including the NDB, ARC and the Contingent

Reserve Arrangement, amongst others, all of which are intended to make tangible and impactful contributions toward the development objectives of South Africa and BRICS.

The 13th BRICS Summit was held virtually on 9 September 2021. The summit was chaired by India's Prime Minister Narendra Modi, as Chair of BRICS for 2021, under the theme; "BRICS@15: Intra-BRICS cooperation for continuity, consolidation and consensus". Leaders focused on strengthening intra-BRICS relations and mutually beneficial cooperation across the group's pillars of cooperation, namely political and security, economic and finance, social, and people-to-people cooperation.

The summit also received reports from the BRICS National Security Advisors, the Chair of the BRICS Business Council, the Chair of the BRICS Women's Business Alliance, and the President of the New Development Bank. The conference also adopted the BRICS 2021 New Delhi Declaration, which emphasises the priorities of the Indian Chairship in 2021, namely reform of the multilateral system, counter-terrorism cooperation, the application of digital and technological solutions for the achievement of the SGDs and enhancing people-to-people exchanges.

For the 2021 summit, the cooperation outcomes included a revised action plan for agricultural cooperation of BRICS countries, the Counter-Terrorism Strategy Action Plan, the Action Plan for Implementing the Strategy on BRICS Economic Partnership and the revised BRICS Action Plan for Innovation Cooperation.

South Africa's membership of BRICS enables the country to employ additional and powerful tools in its fight to address the triple challenges of unemployment, poverty and inequality through increased trade, investment, tourism, capacity building, skills and technology transfers, particularly to address its post-pandemic economic recovery.

The country has made concerted efforts to place Africa and the Global South on the agenda of BRICS and to harmonise policies adopted in regional and international fora, with those pursued in BRICS, particularly Africa's Agenda 2063 and the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development.

IBSA Dialogue Forum

The IBSA Dialogue Forum brings together three large pluralistic, multicultural and multi-racial societies from three continents as a purely South-South grouping of like-minded countries committed to inclusive sustainable development, in pursuit of the well-being of their peoples and those of the developing world. The principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum are participatory democracy, respect for human rights, the rule of law and the strengthening of multilateralism.

The realisation of the trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues and are substantial emerging economies within their sub-regions.

The IBSA Fund is a flagship programme of the dialogue forum that has successfully delivered impact-driven projects in developing and least developed countries. The IBSA Fund has made it possible for South Africa to contribute in a meaningful and substantive manner towards international efforts to alleviate extreme poverty and hunger in developing countries.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on a number of levels, including Summit (Heads of State and Government), the IBSA Trilateral Ministerial Commission meeting (Ministers), and Senior Officials and Technical (through various working groups).

Indian Ocean Rim Association

The IORA is a charter-based regional multilateral organisation of 22 littoral and island states around the Indian Ocean and 10 dialogue partner countries. It seeks to build and expand understanding and mutually beneficial cooperation through a consensus-based, evolutionary and non-intrusive approach.

The IORA was established on 7 March 1997 and it is an initiative that came into existence, through former President Mandela's visionary leadership, during his official visit to India in 1995. The IORA region is a huge market of more than three billion people. South Africa views the IORA as an important platform for the implementation of its economic diplomacy objectives as well as the articulation of its foreign policy, which upholds the importance of multilateralism and global collaboration in resolving the intricate challenges facing the world.

South Africa's membership of the IORA provides an important platform to pursue the country's domestic imperatives as well as other regional and global programmes, such as the AU's Agenda 2063; the 2050 African Integrated Maritime Strategy; the AUDA-NEPAD, Agenda 2030 and the AfCFTA.

The IORA member states vary considerably in terms of their areas, populations and levels of economic development. They can also be divided into a number of sub-regions – Australasia, Southeast Asia, South Asia, West Asia and Eastern and Southern Africa – each with its own regional groupings (such as the ASEAN, the South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation, Gulf Cooperation Council and the SADC). Despite such diversity and differences, these countries are bound together by the Indian Ocean.

South Africa was part of the IORA Troika until the end of 2021. South Africa also remained either in the leading or core cluster country role of various IORA working groups established to implement key regional-wide developmental programmes that emanate from the six IORA priority areas and two cross-cutting thematic areas. It held the position of IORA Secretary-General from 2018 to January 2021.

Organisation of African, Caribbean and Pacific States

South Africa joined the then ACP grouping of 79-member states (48 of which are Sub-Saharan) to promote South-South solidarity and objectives. The ACP recently went through a two-pronged transformation process. Firstly, the Constitutive Act of the ACP, the Georgetown Agreement, was revised to enable the ACP to adapt and meet challenges of the current global environment. The adoption of the revised Georgetown Agreement transformed the ACP into the OACPS in April 2020.

The OACPS aims to assist member states eradicate poverty, achieve sustainable development and fully benefit from the advantages of trade through more effective participation in the world economy. Secondly, the organisation's relations with its main partner, the EU, have also been in the process of renegotiation as the Cotonou Partnership Agreement, which governs these relations, would be replaced by the New Partnership Agreement by November 2021.

The New Partnership Agreement consists of an umbrella agreement

and three region-specific protocols – African, Caribbean and Pacific. The Africa Regional Protocol is modelled on the strategic priorities of the AU Agenda 2063: The Africa we Want. The New Partnership Agreement, like its predecessor, will be the only legally binding document that the EU has with such a large number of countries.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 53 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific. Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth, contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

In March 2022, South Africa joined other member states in celebrating Commonwealth Day. It was held under the theme; "Delivering a Common Future", highlighting how the 54 member countries in the Commonwealth family are innovating, connecting and transforming to help achieve goals like fighting climate change, promoting good governance and boosting trade.

In July 2022, South Africa hosted the Commonwealth Parliamentary Association (CPA) Africa Region Budget Committee Meeting. Delegates for the three-day meeting included Parliamentarians from seven African countries, including Botswana, Bomo State of Nigeria, Kenya, Mozambique, Nigeria and Tanzania. In 2021, the Speaker of the Gauteng Legislature, Ntombi Mekgwe was elected as the Treasurer of CPA Africa Region, a position she will occupy until 2024.

As a member of the Commonwealth, South Africa cooperates with the organisation's family of nations to create better life for its citizens through economic transformation and collaboration in the fields of education and skills development, women and youth empowerment, technology and innovation, the Blue Economy, as well as trade and investment.

South Africa remains an active member of the organisation and attends all high-level meetings, including the Commonwealth Foreign Affairs Ministers Meeting and the biannual Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM). The 2022 CHOGM took place from 20 – 25 June, in Kigali, Rwanda. Commonwealth leaders travelled to Rwanda to reaffirm their common values and agree actions and policies to improve the lives of all their citizens.

Non-Aligned Movement

With its 120-member states, the NAM is the largest grouping of countries outside of the UN, making it an important role player in global and multilateral affairs. Since its inception in 1961, the movement has played a crucial and highly visible political role in representing the interests of developing countries, particularly in the eradication of colonialism, supporting struggles for liberation and self-determination, the pursuit of world peace and the search for a more equitable and just global order.

The NAM remains an important role player in the multilateral system and continues to play an active role on issues pertaining to development, UN reform, disarmament, human rights, peacekeeping and peacebuilding, amongst others. The Azerbaijan took over the Chairship of the NAM at the 18th NAM Summit in Baku. The Chairship of Azerbaijan coincided with the 65th anniversary of Bandung Principles

(2020) and the 60th anniversary of the establishment of NAM (2021).

Both anniversaries provided a momentum for the NAM member states to take stock of the achievements made so far and reflect upon how shared vision and combined strength could respond to the multifaceted and emerging challenges that the world continues to face.

A virtual NAM Mid-term Ministerial Conference was held from 13 – 14 July 2021, to discuss developments and actions taken since the 18th NAM Summit in 2019. It was Africa's turn to chair the NAM in 2022, Uganda Chairing the movement. The 19th Summit of the NAM was expected to take place in Kampala, Uganda in 2022.

Group of 77 (G77)

The G77 was established on 15 June 1964 by 77 developing countries signatories of the Joint Declaration of the Seventy- Seven Developing Countries issued at the end of the first session of the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD), in Geneva, Switzerland.

Beginning with the first Ministerial Meeting of the Group 77 in Algiers (Algeria) from 10 to 25 October 1967, which adopted the Charter of Algiers, a permanent institutional structure gradually developed, which led to the creation of chapters of the G77 with liaison offices in Geneva (Conference on Trade and Development), Nairobi (United Nations Environment Programme), Paris (UNESCO), Rome (Food and Agriculture Organization/International Fund for Agricultural Development), Vienna (United Nations Industrial Development Organization) and the Group of 24 in Washington, DC (International Monetary Fund and World Bank). Although members of the G77 have increased to 134 countries, the original name was retained due to its historic significance.

The G77 is the largest intergovernmental organisation of developing countries in the UN. It provides the means for the countries of the South to articulate and promote their collective economic interests and enhance their joint negotiating capacity on all major international economic issues within the UN system, and promotes South-South cooperation for development.

The functioning and operating modalities of the work of the G77 in the various chapters have certain minimal features in common such as a similarity in membership, decision-making and certain operating methods. A chairperson, who acts as its spokesperson, coordinates the group's action in each chapter. The Chairship, which is the highest political body within the organisational structure of the G77, rotates on a regional basis (between Africa, Asia-Pacific and Latin America and the Caribbean) and is held for one year in all the chapters. Guinea was the Chair of the G77 for 2021.

South Africa chaired the G77 in 2006 and 2015. Significant during South Africa's chairing of the G77 was the adoption of the landmark 2030 Agenda for SDGs, which builds on the Millennium Development Goals and sets the global development trajectory until 2030. As Chair of the G77, South Africa successfully carried out its mandate to ensure that positions of developing countries were advanced.

Additionally, during South Africa's chairing of the group, developing countries were able to influence the outcomes of the Paris Climate Change negotiations, and international outcomes on development financing. The South Summit is the supreme decision-making body of the G77. The first and the second summits were held in Havana, Cuba in April 2000 and in Doha, Qatar in June 2005, respectively.

West Africa

Senegal

Senegal and South Africa are bound by their historic ties of friendship that were established during the Struggle against colonialism and apartheid. Full diplomatic relations were established in May 1994.

Senegal is a bastion of stability in Francophone West Africa. It is a strong constitutional democracy and one of the only African countries that have never experienced a coup d'état or any type of violent transition since its independence from France in 1960.

South Africa and Senegal enjoy cordial bilateral political, economic and social relations underpinned by strong historical ties dating back to the years of the liberation Struggle.

The Dakar Talks are widely considered to have paved the way towards a negotiated settlement between the African National Congress and the then government of South Africa. South Africa and Senegal conduct their bilateral relations through a Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation.

Mali

South Africa and Mali established bilateral relations in May 1994. Bilateral relations between the two countries are conducted through the Joint Commission for Cooperation (JCC) signed in December 2000.

South Africa assisted the government of Mali in the preservation of the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research in Timbuktu through a contribution to the ARF.

Peace, security and stability remain a challenge in Northern and Central Mali. South Africa supports the current peace process in Mali and encourages all parties involved to remain committed to the implementation of the Peace Agreement in an effort to ensure lasting peace.

The Gambia

South Africa and The Gambia established formal diplomatic relations in August 1998. The South African Ambassador in Dakar, Senegal, is accredited to The Gambia on a non-residential basis.

Guinea-Bissau

South Africa and Guinea-Bissau established formal diplomatic relations in October 1994, even though the relations between the two countries date back to the common struggle against apartheid and colonialism.

Cabo Verde

South Africa and Cabo Verde exchanged notes to establish diplomatic relations in 1994, followed by the signing of the Agreement on the Establishment of a Mechanism for Bilateral Consultation during an AU summit in 2015.

Liberia

Formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and Liberia were established in 1997. The Liberian government opened its embassy in Pretoria in October 1997, while South Africa opened a resident diplomatic mission in Monrovia in October 2010.

South Africa and Liberia maintain good diplomatic and political relations since the attainment of freedom and democracy in South Africa. South Africa and Liberia signed an Agreement on Visa Exemption

In May 2021, the DIRCO announced that it had taken a decision to shut down 10 diplomatic missions abroad. This was in response to the country's fiscal constraints, exacerbated by the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic.

The missions, which include embassies, high commissions and consulates, were expected to be closed systematically during the 2021/22 financial year. Missions earmarked for closure included Minsk, Belarus; Port of Spain, Trinidad and Tobago; The Holy See, The Vatican; Helsinki, Finland; Milan, Italy (consulate); Muscat, Oman; Suva, Fiji; Bucharest, Romania; Lima, Peru and Chicago, United States America (USA) (consulate).

Government has assured South African citizens resident abroad, businesses and tourists of a smooth transfer of civic and immigration services to non-resident missions. Stakeholders are advised to check with the affected embassies and consulates-general on the exact dates of termination of services.

Further announcements of the transfer of civic and immigration services would be made on the websites of the DIRCO, the Department of Home Affairs and the affected missions.

for Holders of Diplomatic and Official Passports in May 2018. The two countries have also, since the establishment of diplomatic relations, signed a General Cooperation Agreement and an MoU on Economic and Technical Cooperation.

These agreements allow the two countries to engage on a number of areas of possible cooperation, including agriculture, energy, infrastructure development, capacity, institutional building, trade and the health sector.

Sierra Leone

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Sierra Leone were established in 1998 through the exchange of diplomatic notes.

Nige

Diplomatic relations were established in May 1994. In March 2008 South Africa opened an embassy in Niamey, headed by a Chargé d 'Affaires. Niger opened its embassy in Pretoria during the last quarter of 2012.

An agreement on the establishment of a JCC was concluded on 8 May 2007 and the inaugural session of the commission took pace in October 2013.

Côte d'Ivoire

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Côte d'Ivoire were established in May 1992. The Agreement on the Establishment of a JCC was concluded in December 2015.

At a political level, given South Africa's firm commitment to the African Renaissance and its attendant features of stability and democratisation on the continent, the country previously played an important role in assisting to find a peaceful resolution to the stalemate that followed the disputed Presidential Elections in Côte d'Ivoire.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and Côte d'Ivoire has experienced an upward trend. South African investors are present in the banking, transport and telecommunications sectors.

Nigeria

As the continent's two largest economies, South Africa and Nigeria enjoy good political, economic and social bilateral relations formally established in 1994, immediately after South Africa's first democratic elections.

Formal relations between the two countries have been conducted through the Binational Commission (BNC), established in 1999 as a structured bilateral mechanism to promote political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries.

Through eight successful biennial sessions over the years, the BNC has deepened and solidified the relations between the two countries, and laid the foundation for increased bilateral political and economic cooperation.

There are a number of signed bilateral agreements between the two countries, which cover various areas such as arts and culture, education, agriculture, trade and investment, mining, defence, policing, immigration, taxation, science and technology, health, tourism, environment and energy.

There are over 120 South African companies currently doing business in Nigeria in various sectors, mainly in telecommunications, banking, retail, hospitality, mining, tourism, agriculture and construction. They include MTN, Multichoice, Stanbic Bank, Shoprite Checkers, South African Airways, Sasol and Bon Hotels.

Ghana

South Africa and Ghana established a permanent JCC in May 2007, as a structured bilateral mechanism to provide for political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries. In 2018, the commission was elevated to become a BNC at the Presidential Level.

The permanent JCC essentially oversees the implementation of more than 20 bilateral agreements and memoranda of understanding, which cover various fields, including trade and investment, avoidance of double taxation, information and communication, transport, electricity, oil and gas, tourism, environment, science and technology, and arts and culture.

The majority of the South African investment projects are in the services sector with a total of over 100 projects valued at over US\$780 million. Other sectors that South Africa has invested in include agriculture, building and construction, manufacturing and tourism.

Benin

South Africa and Benin established formal diplomatic relations in May 1994. South Africa opened an embassy in Cotonou in 2007, and Benin opened its embassy in Pretoria in January 1999. The Agreement for the Establishment of a JCC was concluded on 14 June 2015.

Burkina Faso

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Burkina Faso were established in May 1995. South Africa has had an embassy in Ouagadougou since February 2007, and Burkina opened an embassy in Pretoria in June 2007. An agreement to establish a JCC was concluded in April 2007.

South Africa and Burkina Faso work closely through regional bodies, the SADC and the Economic Community of West African States, as well

as the AU, to address all challenges that hinder Africa's development and to ensure that the set objectives in relation to the Agenda 2063 are achieved without fail.

Togo

Relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997. The South African Ambassador in Benin is accredited to Togo on a non-residential basis. South Africa and Togo are currently negotiating a framework agreement for cooperation.

The agreement will establish cooperation in a number of fields, including agro-processing, port management, mining and energy. Nedbank and the Public Investment Corporation are the second- and third-largest shareholders, respectively, in the Lomé head-quartered West African Bank, Ecobank.

East Africa

Burundi

South Africa's relations with Burundi are sound and cordial. South Africa participated as the mediator in the AU-led Burundi Peace Process, which was first led by former President Mandela, followed by former President Thabo Mbeki and by then Deputy President Jacob Zuma. The process led to the Arusha Peace Accords in 2000 – 2005, that brought an end to the long civil war.

South Africa has invested significantly in Burundi's peace and stability and it closely follows developments in Burundi, a small but key role player in the Great Lakes region.

Peace and stability in Burundi are seen as crucial factors to the achievement of peace in the entire region. South Africa is ready to assist and support the mediation process, if and when it is called upon. The country continues to stand by the people of Burundi in their search for sustainable peace, security and development.

Djibouti

South Africa and Djibouti enjoy excellent relations. Current infrastructure development programmes, including free development zones, provide fertile ground for active investment by South African companies.

Eritrea

Eritrea serves as one of the fastest-growing economies in the Horn of Africa with a GDP growth rate of 8.5%. The country is rich in mineral resources, including copper, gold, granite, marble, oil and gas reserves. The promotion of trade and investment between South Africa and Eritrea is important, especially in the fields of tourism and infrastructure development.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia, which were revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa, remain strong.

The two countries have a number of bilateral agreements in place that establish a regulatory framework to facilitate political, economic and social interaction such as an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation. The umbrella agreement provides for the establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission (JMC).

Ethiopian Prime Minister Abiy Ahmed Ali visited South Africa on 11 and 12 January 2020 for bilateral discussions on matters of mutual

national development, regional and continental issues as well as international developments.

The objectives of the visit were to further strengthen and deepen bilateral relations and cooperation between the two nations and to consolidate political, economic and social cooperation. The visit also explored potential areas of trade and investment for the benefit of both countries in industries such as telecommunications, road infrastructure, mining, agro-processing and manufacturing.

Indian Ocean Islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with the Comoros, Madagascar, Mauritius and Seychelles remain strong.

Greater emphasis is being placed, in terms of South Africa's Operation Phakisa, on building partnerships with the islands in respect of the Oceans Economy to enhance trade and investment in areas such as marine manufacturing and transport; aquaculture; offshore oil and gas exploration; and marine protection and governance.

South Africa and Seychelles established formal relations in 1992. The relationship has been progressive, with a display of support for strategic tourism events hosted in each country and a shared vision for regional tourism development and integration.

Madagascar

Madagascar and South Africa have strong bilateral relations and currently have an MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations, covering various areas of cooperation such as political, security, economic and social issues of mutual interest.

Kenya

South Africa and Kenya enjoy strong bilateral relations, with the two countries' Heads of State meeting on the margins of various international and multilateral engagements to discuss matters of mutual interest.

South Africa and Kenya enjoy cordial relations since the signing of a bilateral agreement in 2004, which was implemented by the then Department of Science and Technology and Kenya's Ministry of Education, National Commission for Science, Technology and Innovation.

Rwanda

Since the establishment of diplomatic relations in 1995 between South Africa and Rwanda, the two countries continue to have close interaction at a High Political Level.

Rwanda is an important partner in the advancement and the championing of the African Agenda, by being among the first countries to volunteer for the APRM and actively contributing troops to African peacekeeping missions in Sudan and the CAR.

South Africa and Rwanda have signed over 20 bilateral agreements in various fields and continue to enjoy cordial relations.

Sudan

Relations between South Africa and Sudan remain cordial. South Africa is also playing a key role in the resolution of conflicts and the post-conflict reconstruction efforts in that country. Moreover, Sudan serves among key African countries with the potential for increased trade and investment.

South Sudan

In January 2020, South Sudanese President Gen Salva Kiir Mayardit visited South Africa. The working visit afforded the countries an opportunity to discuss progress made thus far, in relation to the implementation of the R-ARCSS. In this context, Deputy President Mabuza, in his capacity as the Special Envoy of President Ramaphosa to the South Sudan, has been co-facilitating a series of meetings of the parties to the R-ARCSS in conjunction with the Intergovernmental Authority on Development.

The focus of these consultative meetings has largely been on the resolution of the number of states and their boundaries, as one of sticking points towards the formation of the Revitalised Transitional Government of National Unity (RTGoNU). South Africa will continue to support, and remains committed to the South Sudanese Peace Process in its entirety, and stands in solidarity with the people of South Sudan in their quest to ultimately find lasting peace. South Africa will continue to encourage all relevant stakeholders to adhere to all the pre-transitional requirements and fully implement the R-ARCSS. South Africa remains confident that the parties will find common ground to form the RTGoNU.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are conducted under the General Cooperation Agreement of 21 September 2011, which entails the following areas of cooperation: agriculture/agri-business, water, education, infrastructure development, transport, mining, energy, electricity, oil and gas.

Uganda

South Africa and Uganda have enjoyed good political and economic relations since 1994. The relations were cemented when the South Africa-Uganda JCC was inaugurated in Pretoria in November 2012.

The two countries continue to cooperate closely and coordinate their positions on issues in a number of regional and multilateral forums, such as the AU and the UN, and share similar perspectives, particularly on the political and economic integration processes on the African continent.

North and Central Africa

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt have a Joint Bilateral Commission (JBC), convened at Ministerial Level, for enhancing and strengthening bilateral relations.

South Africa is committed to forging closer strategic cooperation with Egypt, focusing in particular on economic and security cooperation, and to continue working together in pursuance of continental integration, peace and security as well as the fight against all forms of terrorism and extremism.

Libva

South Africa is deeply concerned over the prevailing political and security situation in Libya, which has gravely affected peace and security in the region.

At the same time, South Africa has noted, with satisfaction, the positive developments regarding the UN Political Agreement to establish a government of national accord in Libya.

In this regard, South Africa has urged the Libyan people and its

leaders to set aside their differences and unite in the interest of peace, stability and prosperity in Libya. Further, South Africa is ready to assist the Libyan people by sharing her experiences on democratic transition and reconciliation.

Algeria

South Africa enjoys historic and cordial relations with Algeria and regards it as a strategic partner in the region and continent. Since the establishment of the Presidential BNC in 2000, bilateral political trade and economic links have been growing steadily.

Algeria's relations with countries of the Maghreb, the Mediterranean, the Arab Peninsular and the Sahel regions serves as a platform to promote joint Algeria-South Africa partnerships/ventures in the mutual interest of all parties.

Morocco

South Africa and Morocco enjoy cordial diplomatic relations. Morocco recalled its Ambassador to South Africa in 2004, following South Africa's recognition of the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic (SADR). Bilateral relations have since been maintained at the level of a *Chargé d'Affaires en titre* (Morocco) and *Chargé d'Affaires ad interim* (South Africa).

Western Sahara is Africa's longest-running territorial dispute and an issue of continental and international law and diplomatic controversy, having been on the decolonisation agenda of the UN and AU for more than 50 years.

Morocco contends that the Western Sahara, a former Spanish colony, is an integral part of its kingdom. On the other side, the Polisario Front, which is campaigning for the territory's independence, demands a referendum on self-determination.

The SADR is a full member of the AU, while Morocco withdrew from the then OAU, in protest at the SADR's inclusion. Morocco was re-admitted as a member of the AU in 2017. Throughout the years, Pretoria has maintained the same position on the right to self-determination for the Saharawi people, as enshrined in the UN Charter and the AU Constitutive Act.

Western Sahara

Formal diplomatic relations were established at Ambassador Level in 2004. South Africa continues to render political support and humanitarian assistance to the SADR. Through the ARF, South Africa supports projects that aim to benefit the Saharawi population.

South Africa's international solidarity and support for the self-determination of Western Sahara is based on:

- the principles of multilateralism and international legality in seeking a just, lasting and mutually acceptable political solution, which will provide for the self-determination of the people of Western Sahara:
- the centrality of the AU and UN in the resolution of the conflict:
- the Constitutive Act of the AU, in particular the principle of the sanctity
 of inherited colonial borders in Africa and the right of peoples of
 former colonial territories to self-determination and independence;
- respect for international human rights law in the occupied territories, notably the right to freedom of association, assembly, movement and expression;

- respect for international humanitarian law and support for the provision of humanitarian assistance to the Saharawi refugees in a way that is predictable, sustainable and timely:
- an end to the illegal exploration and exploitation of the natural resources of Western Sahara in the illegally occupied territory and the discouragement of the involvement of foreign companies in such activities; and support for the integration and stability of the Maghreb Union as a building block of the AU.

Mauritania

South Africa made a constructive contribution in Mauritania in support of the implementation of the democratic road map undertaken by the military transitional government, following the coup d'état of August 2005.

These efforts contributed to the restoration of constitutional order and stability in Mauritania, leading to South Africa's support for the lifting of the AU suspension of the country in April 2007. In terms of economic relations, progress has been recorded between the two countries in the areas of fisheries and mining.

Tunisia

The South African Embassy in Tunisia was officially opened in 1994. South Africa and Tunisia enjoy a very healthy and mutually beneficial political and economic relationship. Relations between the two countries are based on a JBC launched in 1996.

Chad

South Africa and Chad established diplomatic relations in 1994, but it was only in 2013 that both countries appointed resident ambassadors. Chad is a member of the Economic Community of Central African States, the Community of Sahel-Saharan States (ECCAS), the Group of 5 of the Sahel, the Lake Chad Basin Commission, member and host of the Multi-National Joint Task Force (in the fight against Boko Haram) and is the designated Chair of the ECCAS. In 2017, South Africa signed a Bilateral Air Services Agreement with Chad.

Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Following its independence in 1975, São Tomé and Príncipe expanded its diplomatic relationships. Since the establishment of full diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1994, the relations between the two countries have grown significantly.

Republic of the Congo

Bilateral cooperation between the two countries takes place within the framework of an agreement signed in 2003, which established a JCC. The deepening of bilateral relations between the two countries have seen the signing of a number of agreements. The Joint Trade Committee (JTC) is playing an important role in facilitating trade and investment.

Equatorial Guinea

South Africa and Equatorial Guinea enjoy cordial relations that were formally established in 1993. The two countries have entered into a number of bilateral cooperation agreements, including a General Cooperation Agreement and two agreements on defence cooperation.

The two countries are also formulating draft agreements to enhance cooperation in education and energy.

South Africa and Equatorial Guinea serve as non-permanent members of the UNSC, and have committed themselves to work together to champion Africa's quest for peace and stability in line with the collective vision encapsulated in the AU's Agenda 2063.

Cameroon

South Africa and Cameroon enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Cameroon is the economic hub of the CAR. The seaport of Doualla in Cameroon is used to import goods to landlocked countries in the region, including Chad and the CAR.

Central African Republic

South Africa opened its embassy in Bangui in 2017 and the two countries enjoy cordial relations.

Southern Africa

Angola

South Africa and Angola continue to work together in maintaining peace, stability and regional integration and promoting the SADC Agenda. Angola is one of South Africa's major trading partners in Africa with almost 90% of Angolan exports to South Africa being petroleum-related products.

Namibia

South Africa and Namibia enjoy strong and fraternal relations that are characterised by regular and increasing interaction at all levels. The economies of South Africa and Namibia are interlinked, with South Africa being one of Namibia's major trading partners.

Namibia imports 80% of its consumables from South Africa. South African companies have a large presence in Namibia and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, hotels and leisure, banking and medical services.

South Africa and Namibia have an agreement to work together in various matters within the fisheries space as both countries share a common border. This means that there is transboundary of fishing species in both countries and co-management between the two countries has always been important.

South Africa, Namibia and Angola share one of the most productive Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME). The collaboration of the three countries is historic, where international partners have funded a number of significant projects in the BCLME region. The collaboration was later formalised through the Benguela Current Commission, now ratified into a convention.

Lesotho

South Africa's bilateral relations with Lesotho remain strong and are based on a shared language, history and culture. Lesotho is landlocked in South Africa, creating a unique dependence. South Africa supplies nearly 90% of Lesotho's total imports and is critical to the economic success of the kingdom.

The strong cooperation that exists between the two countries cover a wide range of areas such as the Lesotho Highlands Water Project, the Metolong Dam Project and the revamping and upgrading of the -Mokhotlong road and the Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier.

Eswatini

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Eswatini, reflected in the JBC for Cooperation Agreement, are amiable and informed essentially by historical and cultural affinities, including the geographical proximity between people of the two countries.

Zambia

South Africa and Zambia maintain solid economic cooperation as evidenced by the presence of several South African companies in Zambia.

Improved cooperation in a variety of areas such as air services and infrastructural development present economic opportunities to the South African private sector and parastatals.

South Africa and Zambia continue to work together on the region's common agenda relating to, among others, peace, security and economic integration.

Structured bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Zambia formerly took place under the framework of a JCC that was signed in October 2005

Democratic Republic of Congo

South Africa and the DRC maintain good diplomatic and political relations. The highest expression of the quality and significance of these diplomatic relations is the annual BNC, co-chaired by the Heads of State.

The General Cooperation Agreement, signed by South Africa and the DRC in January 2004, is the principal agreement establishing bilateral cooperation between the two states in the form of a BNC, which provides the basis for political, economic and technical cooperation.

7 imbabwe

South Africa and Zimbabwe enjoy historic political and fraternal relations which also incorporate regional affiliation and cultural ties. Zimbabwe is one of South Africa's main trade partners in Africa and several South African companies operate in Zimbabwe in sectors such as mining, tourism, agriculture, banking, manufacturing and retail.

Relations between South Africa and Zimbabwe are conducted through a BNC that was established in 2015. The two countries are signatories to 45 agreements, which cover a wide-range of fields, including trade and investment, health, labour, migration, defence, taxation, tourism, scientific and technological cooperation, water and the environment.

Malawi

South Africa and Malawi enjoy cordial and fraternal bilateral relations inclusive of political, economic and cultural relations and within the context of regional integration and intra-Africa trade. These bilateral relations are conducted under the framework of a JCC.

Mozambique

In September 2020, South Africa and Mozambique held a two-day virtual Trade and Investment webinar under the theme; "Developing Afrocentric Solutions and Forging Partnership in Response to COVID-19". Trade, Industry and Competition Deputy Minister Nomalungelo Gina and Mozambique Deputy Minister of Commerce and Industry, Ludovina

Bernardo, addressed the virtual seminar. The meeting focused on trade and investment opportunities available in Mozambique and discussed strategic issues regarding Mozambique's investment plans to stimulate the country's economic growth amid the COVID-19 pandemic.

It was a build up on previous Outward Trade and Investment Missions held in Mozambique, which yielded significant results in terms of exposing South African companies to the Mozambican market, creating greater knowledge of South African capabilities, improving awareness of investment and trade opportunities.

The composition of South African exports to Mozambique include, amongst others, mineral products, machinery and mechanical appliances, base metals and articles of base metal, prepared foodstuffs, vehicles, aircraft, vessels and associated transport equipment and vegetable products. The basket of South African exports to Mozambique is made up of value added goods.

In May 2021, Cabinet expressed its continued concern about the situation in Mozambique and continued to monitor developments. It offered full support to efforts of the SADC to bring about lasting peace and security, as well as reconciliation and development in Mozambique. This followed attacks in the country's Cabo Delgado Province, which left dozens murdered and thousands displaced.

Tanzania

Bilateral relations have been characterised by high-level interactions between the two countries aimed at consolidating and strengthening political, economic and social cooperation.

Economic relations between South Africa and Tanzania have, since 1994, grown significantly and continue to expand. The two countries have elevated their bilateral relations by signing a BNC Agreement in 2011, thus increasing the scope of areas of cooperation.

Botswana

South Africa and Botswana cooperate in a wide range of areas, including transport, trade and investment, health, education, environmental affairs, water, science and technology, agriculture, justice, immigration, energy, finance, culture, security and sport.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East The People's Republic of China

South Africa and China first established formal ties in January 1998. Since then, the two countries have achieved a significant number of bilateral cooperation agreements in areas such as trade, investment, tourism, economic and people-to-people relations, oceans and coastal environment, as well as the environment.

South Africa and China share mutual aspirations in promoting economic growth, development and prosperity, and South-South cooperation, as well as a rules-based international order based on the principle of internationalism, and enjoy strong diplomatic and trade relations. China is South Africa's biggest trading partner and the second-biggest economy in the world.

The two countries share membership of, and participate as partners in numerous international bodies, including BRICS, the G77 and the G20. South Africa's bilateral relations with China are guided broadly through mechanisms such as the Beijing Declaration, establishing the Comprehensive Strategic Partnership, the BNC, the Joint Inter-Ministerial

Working Group (JWG) on Cooperation, the Strategic Dialogue Mechanism and the Five to 10-Year Strategic Framework on Cooperation, signed in 2014. The latter was replaced by the 10-Year Strategic Programme for Cooperation (2020 – 2029).

South Africa-China bilateral relations have grown from a partnership to a strategic partnership, and subsequently to a comprehensive strategic partnership, which the 10-Year Strategic Programme of Cooperation will bolster.

South Africa and China have committed to building, developing and strengthening relations based on shared principles of friendship and mutual trust; equality and mutual benefit; coordination; mutual learning; and working together for development. Bilateral relations are managed through structured mechanisms, including the BNC, the JWG on Cooperation and the Strategic Dialogue. These mechanisms are chaired at the level of Deputy President, Minister and Deputy Minister, respectively.

Both countries continue to improve the structure of bilateral trade by encouraging trade in high value-added manufactured goods, especially from South Africa, and increasing China's investment in the country, particularly in infrastructure development, science and technology, health, higher education, and digital communications.

South Africa and China will continue to deepen their cooperation in infrastructure development, including the construction of roads, railways, ports, power plants, airports, and housing, as this has the potential to contribute towards South Africa's economic growth by way of strengthening production and transport capacity. It should be noted that the current bilateral trade volume is skewed in favour of China and, through numerous high-level engagements, the leaders have sought to redress the trade deficit through signing of agreements and MoUs, providing further opportunities for increased exports to China.

South Africa and China co-chaired the Seventh South Africa-China BNC. The objective was to exchange views and assess the state of bilateral relations within the framework of the BNC. It is envisaged that the Eighth Session of the South Africa-China BNC will take place in 2022. Despite the COVID-19 pandemic, South Africa and China's relations have remained strong, reflecting the commitment by the two countries to the partnership.

On the economic front, South Africa and China also enjoy strong relations. South Africa remains China's number one trading partner in Africa. The two countries have implemented various mechanisms aimed at addressing the trade imbalance. Following the successful opening of the Chinese market for exports of South African wine and beef, the market access for various fruit and dairy products are now being negotiated.

As a sign of the strong relations between the two countries, South Africa donated medical supplies to China to assist its citizens in its fight against the COVID-19 pandemic. The donations were warmly accepted. Furthermore, China facilitated the successful repatriation of 114 South African citizens from Wuhan City in Hubei province, the epicentre of the outbreak.

China has also donated medical supplies and pledged financial assistance to South Africa in addressing the challenges posed by the pandemic and has indicated its willingness to cooperate with South Africa in terms of the production of a viable vaccine and to share research in this regard.

Japan

South Africa and Japan enjoy well-established relations, which are particularly strong in the fields of trade and investment; science and technology cooperation; and skills or capacity development assistance. Since 2010, the relations have been upgraded to a Strategic Cooperation Partnership. Japan is a major investor into the South African economy – there are currently over 160 Japanese companies in South Africa, sustaining over 150 000 local job opportunities.

Recent investments by Japan include R4.28 billion by Toyota; R3.2 billion by Nissan and R1.2 billion by Isuzu. Other new investments were made by, among others, Sumitomo Rubber, Komatsu, Kansai Paint, NEC, Lixel, Nomura Investment and Tokyo Marine.

In 2020, exports from South Africa to Japan amounted to R62.1 billion and imports from Japan were R31.2 billion. South Africa's total volume of trade with Japan decreased from R102.6 billion in 2019 to R93.4 billion in 2020, while the trade balance, which remained in South Africa's favour, increased from R21.6 billion to R30.8 billion. In 2020, South Africa exported mainly precious metals, minerals, as well as iron and steel products to Japan, while importing machinery, vehicles, aircraft or vessels and equipment components.

The country benefits from high-quality Japanese training and skills development opportunities, such as the African Business Education initiative at Master's and PhD degree levels (linked to internships at Japanese multinational companies); and a specialised artisans training programme at two local Technical, Vocational Education and Training institutions (Tshwane South in Gauteng and North-link in the Western Cape), focussing on the automotive and energy sectors, respectively.

The Seventh Joint Committee Meeting on Science and Technology Cooperation between South Africa and Japan, which oversees bilateral cooperation, funding and academic exchanges within the framework of the South Africa-Japan University Forum, took place in Pretoria in January 2020, as per the two countries' annual work programme.

Japan's Foreign Minister Toshimitsu Motegi paid a visit to South Africa in December 2020, during which several bilateral and multilateral issues of mutual interest were discussed. The next TICAD Summit – a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan that was launched in 1993 with a view to serve as a consultative forum for the development of Africa, is scheduled to be held in Tunisia in 2022.

Republic of Korea (ROK)

Increasingly, the focus of the bilateral relationship between South Africa and the ROK is on trade and investment links, as the latter houses some of the world's leading companies such as Hyundai, Samsung, KIA, Daewoo and LG, which have been sources of investment into the South African economy.

The ROK is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia. In 2020, exports from South Africa to the ROK amounted to R23.2 billion, while imports from the ROK were R11.1 billion. South Africa's total volume of trade with the ROK thus stood at R34.3 billion, with the trade balance in South Africa's favour by R12.1 billion.

South Africa exported mainly mineral products and vehicles, aircraft or vessels, as well as iron and steel products to the ROK, while importing plastics and rubber, machinery and vehicles, aircrafts or vessels. There are approximately 30 ROK companies in South Africa, with investments in automotive manufacturing, electronics, energy, construction, cosmetics, and shipping sectors, among others.

Formally, South Africa-ROK bilateral relations are conducted within the framework of a JCC, co-chaired at Ministerial Level.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

Due to the imposition of various UNSC sanctions against the DPRK, as a consequence of the country's controversial nuclear weapons and missile programmes, economic relations with South Africa remain limited. South Africa had been encouraged by efforts to promote peace, direct contact and dialogue between the two Koreas and other stakeholders to ensure holistic and durable political solutions to regional security tensions. South Africa will continue to support all such peace initiatives, including efforts to an eventual denuclearised Korean Peninsula.

South Africa has consistently called for the denuclearisation of the Korean Peninsula, as it firmly believes that nuclear weapons and the pursuance of such capabilities do not enhance security, but rather constitute a source of regional and international insecurity.

Mongolia

The Mongolian Embassy in Egypt is accredited to South Africa, while South Africa's Embassy in Beijing is accredited to Mongolia. South Africa and Mongolia held their bilateral political consultation in Pretoria in January 2020, to discuss relations, opportunities for expanding economic cooperation in mining, agriculture, education and culture sectors, as well as regional and international issues of common interest.

Mongolia's mining sector and its vast coal reserves potentially offer an opportunity for collaboration with South Africa, especially in terms of clean coal technologies. Mongolia's remoteness from South Africa as a landlocked country surrounded by China and Russia, probably contributed to exports from South Africa to Mongolia in 2020 only amounting to R28.2 million, while imports from Mongolia stood at R554 686.

South and Central Asia

Central Asia

The South African Ambassador to Kazakhstan is accredited to Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Kyrgyzstan, while the South African Ambassador in Turkey is accredited to Uzbekistan, both on a non-residential basis. Tajikistan's Ambassador to Egypt and Kyrgyzstan's Ambassador in Saudi Arabia are accredited on a non-residential basis to South Africa.

Kazakhstan

Bilateral relations between the two countries are cordial and are conducted under the umbrella of the structured Protocol on Regular Political Consultations, signed in 1997 and co-chaired at the level of Deputy Minister.

The Bilateral Political Consultation serves to explore opportunities to strengthen bilateral relations between South Africa and Kazakhstan focusing on trade and investment, skills exchange and academic cooperation and to build on existing cooperation at various levels in the multilateral fora.

The sixth round of Bilateral Political Consultations reviewed progress made since the previous round and the consultations further explored closer cooperation in the fields of education and skills exchange, science and technology, mining, agriculture and energy to encourage

the expansion of economic cooperation. The seventh round of consultations will be held in Nur-Sultan when travel restrictions are eased.

Bilateral agreements in a variety of fields, including trade and economic cooperation, immigration and justice are currently under consideration and are being finalised.

South Asia

South Africa's economic strategy in South Asia is strongly focused on deepening trade and investment linkages, particularly with countries that offer potential for future growth, and where synergies and complementarities in products and technologies exist.

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Afghanistan and the Maldives.

India

The strategic partnership between South Africa and India is anchored by a deep and shared history of friendship and solidarity. The two countries share a common vision on a range of global issues and closely cooperate in various multilateral fora.

Close cooperation occurs within plurilateral and multilateral groupings such as BRICS, IBSA, IORA and the G20. Formal bilateral relations are structured through a JMC and Foreign Office Consultations (FOC) that are held at Senior Official Level.

In January 2020, South Africa co-chaired the 10th South Africa-India JMC. Progress was recorded in a number of areas, including an agreement to conclude an MoU in the area of water and sanitation, engaging with India on increased market access for South African products and an agreement by India to consider customised training courses for South African civil servants under the Indian Technical and Economic Cooperation Programme.

To ensure continued growth of the bilateral relationship, it was also agreed that there would be regular meetings between representatives of the respective high commissions and foreign ministries. These meetings will serve as a vehicle to exchange views on issues of mutual concern, both bilaterally and multilaterally. The 11th edition of the JMC is expected to be hosted in South Africa in 2022. Due to the COVID-19 pandemic, total trade between the two countries went down from R121 billion in 2019 to R108 billion in 2020.

Pakistan

Relations between South Africa and Pakistan are structured through a Joint Commission (JC), which provides a formal platform for structured bilateral discussions between the two countries. Bilateral trade has shown impressive growth, but slowed down to R14 billion in 2020, compared to 2019 when it reached R15 billion.

The trade balance still remained in South Africa's favour. The potential for strengthening cooperation for both countries spans a number of fields, including trade and industry, energy, health, higher education, justice, transport and mining.

Sri Lanka

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Sri Lanka are cordial and conducted under the umbrella of the structured Partnership Forum.

The major exports to Sri Lanka are minerals, primarily coal.

Bilateral relations have shown a marked strengthening as a result of growing collaboration over a wide spectrum of activities, most notably tourism, investment, trade, educational exchanges. Bilateral trade between South Africa and Sri Lanka has grown significantly since the establishment of diplomatic relations, from R184 million in 1994 to R3 billion in 2020, with a trade balance of R2.2 billion in South Africa's favour.

Bangladesh, Nepal and Maldives

The South African High Commissioner in New Delhi, India is accredited to Bangladesh and Nepal on a non-residential basis.

Bangladesh holds large potential for the expansion of trade and economic relations. Over the recent years, bilateral relations between South Africa and Bangladesh have deepened and grown exponentially, with bilateral trade amounting to almost R5 billion in 2020, with a trade balance of R2.01 billion in South Africa's favour. Bilateral relations with Bangladesh are cordial and conducted under the umbrella of the structured SOM.

Nepal

The South African High Commissioner in New Delhi is accredited non-residentially to Nepal, while Nepal has a resident diplomatic mission in Pretoria. South Africa and Nepal enjoy good bilateral relations, consolidated further through the exchange of high-level bilateral visits. Various visits from Nepal have also focused on learning from the South African model of transitional justice, best practices and good governance.

In an effort to further enhance the strong bilateral relations between the two countries, South Africa and Nepal are near concluding a declaration of intent, which provides for a structured bilateral mechanism at Senior Official Level, through which bilateral relations would be advanced.

Maldives

The South African High Commissioner in Colombo, Sri Lanka, is accredited to the Maldives on a non-residential basis. While bilateral relations between South Africa and the Maldives are cordial, there is currently no bilateral mechanism in place to advance relations between the two countries.

South-East Asia

The ASEAN is a regional organisation comprising Brunei Darussalam, Cambodia, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Thailand, the Philippines, Singapore and Vietnam, aimed at promoting economic growth and regional stability among its member states. Together, the bloc forms the fourth-largest export economy in the world.

South Africa shares full diplomatic bilateral relations with all ASEAN member states. These relations signify and highlight the importance and values of the relationship shared by South Africa and the ASEAN.

Given the ASEAN's expanding economic and geopolitical importance in the 21st century, South Africa has continued to expend major effort into enhancing positive relationships with the association's member nations. In global international relations, the economic and geopolitical profile of Southeast Asia has assumed a remarkable degree of centrality following the success of an increasingly integrated ASEAN

in becoming the hub of the emerging regional security architecture of the Asia-Pacific.

As part of efforts to deepen the country's engagement and cooperation with this region, South Africa acceded to the ASEAN TAC in November 2020. While South Africa has diplomatic and economic relations with individual ASEAN members, accession to the TAC is a historic milestone with the ASEAN (as a bloc) and contributes to foster closer and more beneficial economic opportunities.

Thailand

Thailand is South Africa's largest trading partner in the ASEAN. The structured bilateral mechanism through which the two countries optimise existing cooperation is the South Africa-Thailand Senior Official Meeting (SOM). Massive ongoing infrastructure projects in Thailand provides a base for South African exports of machinery, iron ore and steel as well as mineral products. In 2020, total bilateral trade between South Africa and Thailand stood at R40.9 billion.

Malaysia

South Africa's bilateral relations with Malaysia, marked by traditional friendship and cordiality, have continued to progress supported by an active commercial relationship that promotes two-way trade between the countries. Structured bilateral relations are conducted under the umbrella of the FOC mechanism.

In 2020, total bilateral trade between South Africa and Malaysia stood at R18.2 billion. South Africa and Malaysia aim to promote bilateral trade, investment and tourism with potential cooperation in the food sector.

Singapore

South Africa and Singapore enjoy warm and collaborative relations. Bilateral relations are conducted through FOC, which were established in April 2005 and makes provision for regular consultations on issues of mutual interest between the two countries' Ministries of foreign affairs.

The complementary strengths of the two economies have facilitated bilateral trade in 2020, which amounted to R14 billion, with exports from Singapore valued at R8 billion and imports to Singapore valued at R6 billion

Singapore is world renowned as a centre of excellence and it has been particularly supportive in assisting South Africa with skills development under the Singapore Cooperation Programme of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs. Over 1 500 South African civil servants have participated in training courses in Singapore.

Indonesia

In 2008, South Africa and Indonesia signed the Joint Declaration on a Strategic Partnership for a Peaceful and Prosperous Future, elevating the long-standing relations between the two countries to a strategic level. The bilateral relations between the two countries are managed through a JC and JTC, which were established in 2004 and 2006, respectively.

The total value of bilateral trade for 2020 was R18 billion, with exports to Indonesia valued around R8 billion, while R10 billion worth of goods were imported from Indonesia.

Vietnam

Ties between South Africa and Vietnam have developed and solidified into a multi-faceted relationship with growing cooperation in numerous fields. Bilateral economic relations between the two countries are coordinated through the Partnership Forum for Economic, Trade, Scientific, Technical and Cultural Cooperation, which takes place biennially and is co-chaired at the level of Deputy Ministers.

In 2020, total bilateral trade between South Africa and Vietnam was valued at R23.9 billion, with imports from Vietnam valued at R14.3 billion and exports valued at R9.5 billion.

Philippines

The Philippines is the third-largest economy in the ASEAN after Indonesia and Thailand. As such, South Africa highly values its friendly and robust relations with the Philippines. Bilateral relations between the two countries are coordinated through a Bilateral Consultative Forum, a structured mechanism whereby issues of mutual concern, briefings on domestic and regional developments, as well as exploration of possible fields of cooperation are discussed.

On the economic front, efforts have been undertaken by both countries to enhance bilateral trade, which stood at R3.158 billion in 2020, with exports valued at R923 million and imports at R2.235 billion.

Brunei Darusallam, Cambodia, Laos and Timor-Leste

South Africa's relations with Brunei Darussalam, Cambodia, the Laos and the Timor-Leste are cordial. In 2021, Brunei was chairing the ASEAN with its immediate priority being to drive a cohesive regional response to mitigate the debilitating economic, social and health impacts of the COVID-19 pandemic. The theme of Brunei's ASEAN Chairship was; "We Care, We Prepare, We Prosper," which encapsulates the vision and focus of its term as the ASEAN Chair.

Australasia and the Pacific Islands **Australia**

South Africa and Australia enjoy cordial relations and interact biennially through an SOM. South Africa and Australia cooperate across a range of sectors and issues, including law enforcement, sport, tourism, education, defence relations, and science and technology.

Australia is one of South Africa's largest trading partners. Both countries have large, export-oriented resource sectors and sophisticated agriculture and service sectors. Major imports by South Africa from Australia are chemicals, mineral products and machinery. On the other hand, South Africa's exports to Australia are in the main dominated by high-quality passenger motor vehicles, aircraft, vessels, machinery, iron and steel products. Total trade between South Africa and Australia amounted to R24.7 billion in 2020, with the trade balance slightly in favour of South Africa.

New Zealand

At a bilateral level, South Africa and New Zealand enjoy close cooperation in business, tourism, agriculture, disarmament, fisheries, environmental protection, indigenous people and human rights issues.

A significant feature of the South Africa-New Zealand relationship is its sporting ties in rugby, cricket, netball and in recent years, soccer. Relations are coordinated through a biennial SOM. In recognition of

existing people-to-people relations, New Zealand citizens can currently enter South Africa visa-free for tourism purposes for a period of 90 days.

However, South African citizens still require a visa to enter New Zealand. The two countries work well within the multilateral arena, as evidenced by close cooperation within the UN and the Commonwealth. New Zealand remains a major commercial partner for South Africa in the Oceania region. In 2020, total bilateral trade was R3.2 billion, with South Africa's trade deficit standing at just over R1 billion. Goods traded between South Africa and New Zealand consist of both primary products, as well as finished goods.

The main exports by South Africa are vehicles, aircraft and vessels, chemicals and prepared foodstuff, while the main imports are live animals, machinery, wood, pulp and paper.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa enjoys strong historical relations with countries of the Middle East, anchored by the strategic objective of strengthening South-South relations.

South Africa has a strong focus on the Gulf region from an economic perspective, given its strategic location and vast energy reserves.

Within the political realm, South Africa's engagements have been mainly through diplomatic support for conflict resolution in Syria and Yemen, and contributing towards finding a sustainable resolution to the protracted Israel-Palestine conflict.

Palestine

South Africa and Palestine have enjoyed warm relations since the inception of democracy. Official diplomatic relations between a democratic South Africa and Palestine were established in 1995. Over the last two decades bilateral relations have strengthened with the establishment of a JCC while a Political Consultations Mechanism has further reinforced relations. The overall objectives of these platforms are to monitor and guide the conduct of bilateral relations.

South Africa remains concerned and condemns the continued illegal settlement expansion by Israel, which constitutes a contravention of international law, particularly the Fourth Geneva Convention of 1949. South Africa believes that the only way to bring about lasting peace in the Middle East is to have a two-state solution for Palestine and Israel based on the international recognition and independence of the State of Palestine. This would be based on the 4 June 1967 borders, with East Jerusalem as its capital, functioning within recognised and secure borders and living side-by-side in peace with Israel and its other neighbours, as endorsed in the Quartet Roadmap, the Madrid Principles, the Arab Peace Initiative and the relevant UNSC resolutions.

In May 2021, Cabinet condemned the attacks on Palestinian protesters at Al Aqsa Mosque and the Dome on the Rock and the unlawful evictions of Palestinians from their homes in the Sheikh al Jarrah in the annexed East Jerusalem to make way for Israeli settlements. It noted that Israel's actions were in stark violation of international law, and a total disregard of the UNSC resolutions, including Resolutions 446 (1979) and 2 334 (2016) which explicitly call for an end to Israeli occupation and the fulfilment of the rights of the Palestinian people, including to self-determination and independence.

In August 2021, Cabinet strongly objected the unilateral decision by

the Chairperson of the AU Commission to grant Israel observer status in the AU, pointing out that it remained committed to efforts aimed at reviving a political process that would lead to the establishment of a viable Palestinian state, existing side by side in peace with Israel.

Syria

Since the start of the Syrian civil war in 2011, the two countries have continued to maintain diplomatic relations. South Africa affirmed its support for Syria's territorial integrity and reiterated its support for a political solution to the conflict in Syria.

South Africa also declared its condemnation of all violence and human rights violations and remains concerned about the deteriorating humanitarian and security situation in Syria. South Africa has called on all parties involved to work for a comprehensive and peaceful resolution of the conflict taking into account the legitimate aspirations of the people of Syria, through inclusive national dialogue and a Syrian-led political process.

South Africa remains committed to protecting the fundamental interests of the Syrian people, maintaining peace and stability in the Middle East region and upholding the purposes and principles of the Charter of the UN and basic norms governing international relations.

Irac

Bilateral relations are cordial and collaborative. The level of trade between the two countries has fluctuated. There are a number of bilateral agreements in various fields being negotiated, which will constitute an important framework in advancing the bilateral relations.

South Africa supports all international initiatives and the government of Iraq's efforts to restore stability and build inclusive and effective governance. The country reaffirmed its support for the mandate of the UN Mission in Iraq. It also supports the sovereignty and territorial integrity of Iraq in line with the principles of the UN Charter.

Jordan

Jordan was the first Arab country to establish diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1993. The embassy of South Africa was established in Amman in December 1993, and the embassy of Jordan was opened in Pretoria in June 1994. The two countries enjoy a warm and increasingly diverse relationship, underpinned by strengthening political ties. The relationship would be further strengthened by concluding an MoU on Bilateral Consultations between the two countries.

South Africa wishes to further intensify its relations with Jordan, which has the potential to develop significantly, with particular emphasis in the economic sphere as well as in the areas of cultural interaction, tourism, education and people-to-people relations. The two countries are concluding an MoU on Bilateral Consultations, which recognises the importance of constructive dialogue as well as engaging on regional and international issues of common interest between the two countries.

Lebanon

South Africa has no residential diplomatic presence in Lebanon. The South African Ambassador in Syria is accredited to Lebanon on a non-residential basis. South Africa attaches great importance to the ties that have been built between the two countries.

United Arab Emirates

South Africa has strengthened its diplomatic and economic relations with the UAE in recent years, reflecting its position as South Africa's largest export trading partner in the region. The UAE is also a growing source of investment into the South African economy. Relations were expected to gain momentum during 2021, with the UAE hosting the Dubai World Expo 2020. The event was postponed to 2021 due to the COVID-19 pandemic. South Africa participated in the expo by managing a country pavilion.

The country showcased its industrial and innovative capabilities through the promotion of the creation and development of hi-tech industries in accordance with the respective trends and requirements of economic growth within the realm of the 4IR, promoted infrastructure investment in Africa and contributed to regional integration. The aim was to also provide a platform for connectivity between South African business, government and civil society sectors.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are driven through a Ministerial JC, which reviews relations in the various fields of cooperation, including trade and investment, energy, agriculture, transport and social development. The mechanism also allows for the identification of new projects in a broad field of cooperation.

Iran

The primary mechanism for engagement with Iran is a JC established in 1995 and allows for a high-level review of bilateral relations and considers areas to further strengthen relations. The commission is supported by an inter-sessional mechanism, the Deputy Ministerial Working Group, which further monitors the implementation of decisions and undertakings made during the JC.

South Africa remains committed to support Iran as it currently manages the economic consequences of unilateral and secondary sanctions imposed by the USA, following its withdrawal from the Joint Comprehensive Plan of Action (JCPOA).

South Africa remains committed to diplomacy and the peaceful resolution of conflicts, as a matter of principle, and considers the JCPOA as a significant achievement in this regard. It remains South Africa's belief that the plan of action provides the necessary framework and confidence-building measures for Iran to re-enter the global economy whilst pursuing nuclear activities for peaceful purposes — a fundamental principle of the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty.

The JCPOA was unanimously endorsed by the UNSC Resolution 2231, which provides a binding legal framework to the agreement.

Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised in November 1994. South Africa imports approximately 47% of its oil from the Arab country and regards it as a strategic partner in the Middle East. To grow trade, investment and economic ties, including business-to-business cooperation between South Africa and Saudi Arabia, a number of business interactions have been arranged with Saudi Arabia.

The country is a large investor in the energy sector in South Africa, with ACWA Power being a major role player in South Africa's energy mix through its solar plants in several parts of the country. It is expected that the latest addition,

the 100 megawatts Redstone Project in Postmasburg, will come online soon and be linked to Eskom's electricity grid.

Bilateral relations have, to date, been managed through a Joint Economic Commission (JEC), which is co-chaired by the Ministers of trade of the two countries. South Africa remains committed to solidifying strong bilateral relations in all fields, in line with the aspirations of the leadership of the two countries. This includes increased interaction on regional and international developments.

Qatar

South Africa's political and economic relations with Qatar have diversified and grown significantly over recent years and have become more diverse. Qatar has traditionally enjoyed a healthy trade surplus owing to the high proportion of oil and petrochemical trade to South Africa.

Qatar's investment is focussed on its 20% stake in the recently discovered Brulpradda oil and gas field. The 5th Session of the Bilateral Consultations between the two countries was scheduled to take place in July 2021.

Kuwait

Kuwait remains an important partner for South Africa in the Middle East, particularly in terms of economic relations. Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange. Kuwait is South Africa's largest source of FDI from the Middle East, especially in the hospitality industry, through the Zimbali Resort investment and the automotive component investment by KAPICO.

Recent investments include the export of livestock from developing farmers in the Eastern Cape to Kuwait, through the internationally renowned Kuwaiti company, Al Mawashi. South Africa is currently ranked sixth on the list of top exporters of live sheep to Kuwait, with a market share of 3.02% (US\$1.24 million).

This presents a crucial trade opportunity for South African farmers, given the significant appetite and keenness on the part of Kuwait to import South African live sheep. The two countries aim to work closely together to explore and take full advantage of the opportunities flowing from this cooperation.

Oman

Diplomatic relations were established in 1995 and are managed through the South Africa-Oman Partnership Forum. Both countries are keen to attract further investment. A primary project by Oman is the Port of Sohar Projects, which will facilitate the trade of agro-processed products from South Africa.

Yemen

Relations between South Africa and Yemen are cordial. Both countries are members of the UN, the IORA and the NAM. The continued civil war in Yemen has hindered the development and strengthening of bilateral relations.

North America

Canada

Canada and South Africa share cordial and historic relations based on shared values such as respect for democracy, human rights, multilateralism and diversity. Historic relations are based on Canada's opposition to apartheid in South Africa and contribution to the development of the Constitution. In multilateral fora, Canada and South Africa collaborate on such issues as the promotion of ethical governance, gender empowerment, peace and security and climate change.

The annual consultations are a structured mechanism that provides a platform for foreign policy discussions and sectoral cooperation on various areas, including trade and investment, development cooperation, science and innovation, clean technology, environmental affairs, mining, border management and the cultural industries. About two thirds of South African exports to Canada relate to minerals and mining equipment, with agricultural and chemical products making up the rest.

Canadian investments in South Africa are also largely concentrated in the mining sector, with more than 50% of total investment in this sector. The other 50% is fairly diversified across a number of sectors, including transportation, food processing, hospitality, ICT and instrumentation sectors.

United States of America

Bilateral relationship between South Africa and the USA is broad and deep, covering political, diplomatic, economic, social, scientific, educational, cultural, as well as regional and global cooperation on issues of mutual interest, such as peace and security, climate change and public health.

The USA contributes over US\$700 million in Official Development Assistance per year, which is aligned to South Africa's domestic priorities and contributes to addressing the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment. The US President's Emergency Programme for AIDS Relief continues to be impactful, both in South Africa and the region.

In 2020, the USA government contributed generously towards supporting South Africa's efforts to combat the spread of COVID-19 by donating personal protection equipment (PPE) and ventilators, among others. The USA is also a major economic partner for South Africa, with approximately 600 companies operating in the country, bringing in significant investments, technology and opportunities for skills development. Bilateral trade between the two countries increased from R117 billion in 2014 to over R189 billion in 2020.

In addition, the USA is an important export market for South Africa and a significant source of tourists. The African Growth and Opportunity Act, under which South Africa gains duty-free and quota-free access to the US market for value-added products, forms the bedrock of the economic relationship. There are also an increasing number of South African companies investing in the USA.

Regional organisations

European Union

The EU remains a key strategic region for South Africa and a prominent dialogue partner from the global North. Relations with the

EU are structured in accordance with the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement, whereas trade relations are governed by the SADC-EU EPA. The South Africa-EU Strategic Partnership is the only one of its kind that the EU has with an African country, and one of only 10 globally.

The strategic partnership expanded the scope of the interaction beyond trade issues, to incorporate a much wider scope of cooperation with structured bilateral mechanisms and high-level meetings (summit, ministerial political dialogue, SOM and inter-parliamentary meetings) to support South Africa's national, regional, continental, and global priorities and programmes.

The JCC, co-chaired by the DG of the DIRCO and the EU counterpart, covers over twenty sectoral policy dialogues, including diverse issues such as development cooperation, science and technology, space, migration, health, trade, education and skills development, peace and security, and human rights.

The EU is South Africa's largest trading partner, as a block of 27 member states, and largest foreign investor, representing the majority of total FDI stocks in the country. More than 2 000 EU companies operate in South Africa, creating more than 500 000 direct and indirect jobs. International Relations and Cooperation Minister Naledi Pandor and the EU's High Representative and Vice President, Dr Josep Borrell, held a virtual Ministerial Political Dialogue in July 2020. The Eighth SA-EU Summit was expected to be held in South Africa in 2021.

Western Europe

Austria

South Africa and Austria maintain a good relationship, much of which is focussed on economic relations, renewable energy, science and innovation, vocational training and culture. Relations are managed through bilateral consultations, chaired at the level of Senior Officials.

Bilateral trade reached R7 billion in 2020 – 28% lower than the year before. The number of Austrian nationals that visited South Africa dropped from 30 376 in 2019 to 9 367 in 2020 as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic.

Belaium

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Belgium are managed through a JC, which is chaired at the level of deputy foreign ministers. The Flanders region of Belgium has a regional representation in South Africa. South Africa and Flanders also manage their relationship through a JC. The next meeting, which was provisionally scheduled for the end of 2021 or beginning of 2022, would focus on new areas of potential cooperation, following the end of as the Flanders Development Programme.

Bilateral trade reached R54 million in 2020. Belgium is traditionally an important source of tourism to South Africa, but the number of Belgian tourists visiting South Africa declined from 54 223 in 2019 to 12 726 in 2020 as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic. Belgium was the sixth-largest foreign direct investor in South Africa in 2020, with R185.7 billion in FDI in areas such as mining, green energy, ports, logistics and agriculture.

Germany

Germany is one of South Africa's most important strategic partners. It is the second-largest market for South African exports, the third-

largest source of overseas tourists and a major investor, with about 600 German companies having representative offices in South Africa. Germany also has an extensive development programme in South Africa and has provided COVID-19 support to South Africa in the form of field hospitals, PPE and humanitarian assistance to communities affected by the pandemic.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are managed through a BNC, which is chaired at the level of Foreign Ministers. The 10th meeting of the BNC was held virtually in March 2020.

The commission comprises eight working groups:

- · Foreign and Security Policy,
- · Economy and Energy, Development Cooperation,
- · Environment,
- · Science and Technology,
- · Arts and Culture,
- · Labour and Social Affairs, and
- Vocational Education and Training.

The BNC followed the successful visit to South Africa by Federal Chancellor Angela Merkel in February 2020 during which a Statement of Intent on Skills Development was signed.

Bilateral trade reached R216 billion in 2020 – a 7% decrease on the year before. However, South Africa, unlike previous years, recorded a trade surplus with Germany in 2020. Germany remains one of the largest foreign investors in South Africa. The number of visitors from Germany dropped from 322 720 in 2019 to 106 083 in 2020, as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic.

Luxembourg

South Africa and Luxembourg enjoy active economic relations with a number of South Africa's largest companies having subsidiaries or European head quarters registered in Luxembourg. The largest of these is MINORCO (a company owned by Anglo American, De Beers and the Oppenheimer family).

Since 1994, South Africa and Luxembourg have signed seven bilateral agreements, ranging from economic to development cooperation in the areas of health and agriculture. Luxembourg's significance for South Africa lies mainly in the country being an important centre of the international financial community. Bilateral trade reached R578 million in 2020 – 16% lower than the previous year.

The Netherlands

South Africa and the Netherlands maintain a strong and diversified relationship. Areas of cooperation include trade and investment, culture, science and innovation, education, climate and environment, water management and many others. Bilateral relations are managed through a JC, which is chaired by the foreign ministers of the two countries.

The inaugural meeting of the commission was held in Pretoria in February 2020 and the second meeting was scheduled to be held in The Hague towards the end of 2021. There is also a separate Joint Working Committee on Science and Technology that deliberates on ways in which relations in this field could be advanced.

Bilateral trade reached R70 billion in 2020 – 20% higher than the year before. Much of South Africa's exports to Europe, including about one fifth of all agricultural exports, go through the port of Rotterdam. The Netherlands is also one of the biggest foreign investors in South

Africa. The number of tourists from the Netherlands declined from 144 071 in 2019 to only 35 026 in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic.

Switzerland

Switzerland has always been an important economic partner tor South Africa. In recent years, the political dialogue has expanded as a result of Switzerland's mediation role in Mozambique and elsewhere on the African continent. Bilateral relations are managed through High-Level Consultations, which are chaired by the deputy foreign ministers of the two countries. The 10th Meeting of the High-Level Consultations was scheduled to be held in South Africa during the course of 2021.

Switzerland maintains a development programme in South Africa, which has transitioned from development assistance to economic development. The programme is implemented in consultation with National Treasury.

Bilateral trade reached R30 billion in 2020 – 28% higher than in 2019. Some 200 Swiss companies are represented in South Africa and they employ about 36 000 South Africans. The number of visitors from Switzerland dropped from 55 432 in 2019 to 15 697 in 2020 as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic.

United Kingdom

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK cover a wide spectrum and have a far-reaching impact. Cooperation between the two countries is broad and includes health, education, science and technology, energy, the environment, defence, police, arts and culture, and sport and recreation.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK are managed through a Bilateral Forum at Foreign Ministerial Level, which meets biennially. South Africa and the UK have a strong historic trading relationship, which is also one of South Africa's most important trading relationships.

There is a healthy flow of investment in both directions. The UK is recognised as the foremost source of FDI into South Africa, while South African companies equally have made large investments in the UK. The two countries have identified key sectors for investment to boost economic growth and development.

These sectors include manufacturing, agro-processing, infrastructure development, mining, energy and tourism. South Africa and the UK also have strong relationship in wide-ranging areas of cooperation, including energy, science and technology, education, health, arts and culture.

In May 2021, Cabinet welcomed measures taken by the UK in assisting South Africa in the fight against corruption by acting against individuals who are accused of having committed fraud and corruption in the country. These include the arrest of Michael Lomas in the UK in connection with a fraud case in South Africa and the imposition of sanctions on the Gupta brothers – Ajay, Atul and Rajesh, and their associate Salim Essa for their roles in a persistent pattern of corruption in South Africa, which caused significant damage to the South African economy and its people.

Ireland

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Ireland are cordial. The relations are managed through the biennial South Africa-Ireland

Partnership Forum at Deputy Ministerial Level. After 1994, Ireland strongly supported the reconstruction and development of South Africa with an extensive development cooperation programme.

Ireland's Africa strategy document emphasises South Africa's important role in Africa and globally. Ireland continues to be a valued source of FDI in business services, alternative/renewable energy, software and information technology services, and plastics. The Irish Government also provides assistance to South African students through the Kader Asmal Fellowship Programme, which started in 2013. Ireland is the only visa-free country for South African ordinary passports in the EU.

France

France is a significant technological, trade, investment, tourism and development cooperation partner for South Africa. Bilateral technical cooperation between South Africa and France exist in various sectors, including energy, agriculture, manufacturing, transport, education and science and technology. About 250 French companies have invested in South Africa and employ around 300 000 people.

Following their 8th South Africa-France Forum for Political Dialogue, the two countries agreed to strengthen bilateral relations. They further agreed to reduce global inequality under France's G7 Presidency, and continue to support the Paris Agreement on Climate Change and the common vision on the environment and human rights.

They also agreed to a number of bilateral interactions and cooperation, which include: regular interaction and deliberation on addressing peace, security and development concerns in Africa; deepen the working relationship between the AU, EU and UN to bolster peace keeping, security, governance and promoting democracy in Africa; and increase cooperation in the Indian Ocean and continue discussions about France's role in the IORA.

During the forum, the two countries signed new agreements, namely the:

- Agreement on Cooperation in the Field of Basic Education;
- Declaration of Intent on Establishing a Co-funded Scholarship for master's and doctoral students;
- Framework Agreement between the South African National Space Agency and the Centre National d'Etudes Spatiales in Space Cooperatio;
- Financing Agreement between the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa Limited and Agence Française de développement;
- MoU between La Réunion National Park and the South African National Parks: and
- Cooperation Protocol between the Association pour le Centre de ressources et d'appui sur le risque requin à La Réunion of the French Republic and the KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board of South Africa.

Greece

South Africa and Greece enjoy traditional and close ties of friendship and cooperation as well as a convergence of views and cooperation on various regional and international issues in general. South Africa-Greece relations are, furthermore, underpinned by the presence of a substantial and influential Greek professional and business community in South Africa. Bilateral relations between the two countries continue to grow in a number of strategic and mutually beneficial areas.

Cyprus

South Africa has excellent and long-standing bilateral relations with Cyprus. It has maintained strong ties with that country, partly because of a substantial and influential Cypriot community in South Africa.

Italy

South Africa and Italy maintain excellent relations covering the full range of activities, both on a governmental level as well as in the private sector. In 2003, the ministers of foreign affairs of South Africa and Italy, signed an MoU on Bilateral Consultations, establishing a framework for regular bilateral consultations at Ministerial or Deputy Ministerial Level and regular meetings at Senior Official Level.

The focus remains on sustaining political dialogue and increasing economic cooperation between South Africa and Italy, focussing on the priorities of the NDP. Both countries have signed a number of agreements in various areas of cooperation in fields such as science and technology, defence, police and water, among others, and are in the process of exploring further areas of cooperation in sectors such as environment.

Italy views South Africa as a strategic partner and a leader on the African continent. It is the eighth-largest economy in the world and a member of the G20 and the G7. South Africa's economic relations with Italy are strong and there is a growing interest in the country as an investment destination.

Italy and South Africa have engaged in a strategic partnership as equals based on shared values and converging interests, which include supporting peace, security and development in Africa, strengthening and reforming the multilateral system and promoting a more inclusive, efficient and equitable system of global governance.

Spain

Spain is one of South Africa's major trading partners in the EU. There are 100 Spanish companies that have invested in South Africa and they are estimated to have created over 12 000 jobs largely in renewable energy and metals sectors.

Portugal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Portugal are cordial and cover many areas, underpinned by a High-level Political Consultative Forum, which provides a platform for the two countries to explore the deepening of relations across the spectrum of South Africa's national priorities, political cooperation, the strengthening of trade and investment and development cooperation.

In February 2020, Minister Pandor and the Minister of Foreign Affairs in Portugal, Professor Augusto Santos Silva, held Bilateral Consultations in South Africa. South Africa has the third-largest Portuguese community in the world after those in France and Brazil.

Holy See

South Africa opened a Mission at the Holy See in 2017. The Holy See is of strategic importance politically and in respect of human rights and international humanitarian law.

Central, Eastern Europe, Nordic And Baltic Countries Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic and Baltic countries flowing from the strong grassroots support of these countries for democratisation in South Africa.

Relations have been established in various fields at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government. Although Nordic countries stopped providing development assistance to South Africa in 2009, these countries continue to provide technical support and also partner with South Africa and civil society in addressing development needs in various fields. There is also close cooperation on multilateral issues informed by mutually shared values. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of the AUDA-NEPAD and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa.

This was reinforced by the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

Denmark

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Denmark are predicated on the historic Danish support and solidarity with the liberation struggle against apartheid in the early 1960s, leading to the eventual establishment of formal diplomatic relations at the advent of South Africa's democracy.

Denmark is also an important partner with regard to overseas development cooperation. South Africa's relations with Denmark are coordinated through the South Africa-Denmark Senior Officials Consultations and the main areas of cooperation include water-resource management, science and technology, maritime and environmental affairs. South Africa's bilateral trade with Denmark has seen steady growth and totals more than R36 billion since 2015. Denmark is also a significant investor with 21 new investments since 2003.

Estonia

South Africa formally recognised the independence of Estonia and the other Baltic States on 28 August 1991. Bilateral relations between the two countries have been developing gradually since the establishment of diplomatic relations in 1991. There is no resident Estonian Mission in South Africa, while the South African Embassy in Finland is also accredited to Estonia on a non-residential basis.

South Africa and Estonia have enjoyed excellent cooperation during Estonia's tenure as a non-permanent member of the UNSC (2020 – 2021). Economic relations are still at developmental stages, and trade volumes are relatively small. South African exports consist mainly of vehicles, aircraft and vessels, foodstuffs, iron and steel products, and machinery.

Finland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Finland were re-established in 1994. The bilateral relationship was given more definite structure with the signing of the Declaration of Intent at the Skagen Nordic Summit in 2000. Regular Bilateral Consultations are coordinated at Senior Official Level.

The main areas of cooperation include trade and investment,

science and technology, innovation, education (marine studies), ICT and energy. The Blue Economy is central to both countries and is also emphasised as an area with potential for future partnerships. Finland supports Africa's infrastructure development through its funding of the EU-Africa Infrastructure Trust Fund.

It also supports the implementation of the Joint Africa-EU Strategy by promoting four of the eight thematic partnerships of the joint strategy in Africa, namely peace and security, democratic governance and human rights, climate change, and science, information society and space.

Economic relations are good, with bilateral investments having taken place in the mining and paper/wood industries. Major South African investments have been made by Mondi, Sappi and Anglo American. Between 2003 and 2020, it is estimated that Finnish companies invested approximately R4 billion in South Africa in various sectors, including industrial machinery, equipment and tools, business services, engines and turbines, paper and packaging and communications.

Finland is also a strong international partner in various areas of global concerns such as strengthening multilateralism, international law, the advancement of gender and human rights as well as around issues of climate change, and has recently launched an Africa strategy.

Iceland

Diplomatic relations were established in 1995 on a non-residential basis. Iceland is accredited to South Africa from its Ministry of Foreign Affairs in Reykjavík, and South Africa is accredited to Iceland from its embassy in Oslo, Norway.

Iceland forms part of the Nordic coalition of like-minded states concerning their policies towards South Africa, Africa and international issues, and they play an important role in keeping Africa on the global agenda. Economic relations have not developed significantly and bilateral trade remains below R100 million.

Latvia

South Africa was among the first countries to recognise the independence of Latvia, following the restoration of the independence of the country on 29 August 1991. South Africa established full diplomatic relations with Latvia on 4 November 1991. The two countries have since enjoyed warm and cordial relations but due to a lack of vigorous economic interaction and well-defined bilateral cooperation framework, relations between the two countries have failed to reach full potential.

Latvia does not have an embassy in South Africa but the country has a non-resident ambassador accredited to South Africa stationed in Riga, the capital of Latvia. South Africa has non-resident accreditation through the Ambassador in Sweden.

Lithuania

South Africa and Lithuania entered into diplomatic relations in 2008 and the first Lithuanian Ambassador to South Africa was appointed in 2015. The South African Embassy in Sweden is accredited to Lithuania.

Relations between South Africa and Lithuania are coordinated at Senior Official Level. The main areas of cooperation between South Africa and Lithuania include trade and investment, energy, transport, science and technology, and academic and cultural cooperation.

Norway

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Norway were established in January 1992. Both countries cooperate and support each other in bilateral and multilateral relations. South Africa's relations with Norway are coordinated through the South Africa-Norway High-Level Consultations – a mechanism within the framework of the 1996 MoU on Bilateral Political Consultations, established to deepen relations and expand trade and investment.

Bilateral cooperation has grown to include regional and international issues of mutual interest. South Africa and Norway have worked together on the UNSC in promoting the Women, Peace and Security Agenda, and peace and mediation on the African continent. Norway also supports the NDP priorities through technical cooperation in the areas of oceans management, cooperation in trade and investment, renewable energy, climate change, materials efficiency, waste management and recycling, shipbuilding (boat building), agro-processing and minerals.

Sweden

Relations between Sweden and South Africa date back to the 1930s when a South African legation was opened in Stockholm. Relations were upgraded to Ambassadorial Level in 1994. Bilateral relations between South Africa and Sweden were further cemented by the South Africa-Sweden Partnership Year in 1999.

Since then, a number of events took place, reinforcing and deepening the already close bilateral relations. In recognition of a strategic partnership that exists between the two countries, the South Africa-Sweden BNC was established in 2000 – chaired at the level of Deputy President and Deputy Prime Minister respectively. Areas of cooperation include trade and investment, higher education, science and technology, water-resource management, energy, maritime affairs, culture, ICT, environmental affairs and defence.

Besides the work of the BNC, South Africa and Sweden established a Defence Committee that convenes independently of the BNC. A Memorandum on Defence Cooperation was concluded in 2000. The defence committee discusses and exchanges information within areas of regional security, defence management, bilateral defence agreements, peacekeeping operations, mutual visits, exchange of defence-related information, training and defence-industrial cooperation.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests. The region is well endowed with strategic commodities and minerals that are of vital significance to South Africa's economy.

Azerbaiian

South Africa and Azerbaijan established diplomatic relations in 1991. The South African Embassy in Ankara is also accredited to Azerbaijan on a non-residential basis.

Structured bilateral relations were established by means of an MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations that was concluded in February 2014. The MoU provides for the strengthening and broadening of the scope of bilateral cooperation in the political, economic, scientific, technological, cultural and humanitarian areas. Other areas of potential interests are energy, defence and air services.

Bilateral relations are coordinated at the level of Senior Officials and areas of cooperation include trade and investment, defence, energy and higher education.

Belarus

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Belarus were established in March 1993. Currently, the South African Ambassador to the Russian Federation is the non-residential Ambassador to Belarus. Belarus opened its embassy in South Africa in January 2000 and the first South African Ambassador presented credentials in February 2000.

The two countries enjoy good bilateral relations that have been strengthened by the exchange of high-level visits for political consultations in the past few years. On the economic front, South Africa and Belarus mainly engage through the Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation (ITEC), led by the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition.

The committee is co-chaired at the level of Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs on the Belarusian side and Deputy Minister of Trade, Industry and Competition on the South African side. The primary objective of the cooperation is to strengthen and develop trade and economic cooperation on a long term and stable basis and on the principles of equality and mutual benefit.

Georgia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Georgia were established in 1992. The South African Embassy in Kyiv, Ukraine, is non-residentially accredited to Georgia. The Government of Georgia opened an embassy in South Africa in August 2011.

Structured bilateral engagements between South Africa and Georgia, at the level of Senior Officials, were established in November 1993 by means of a Protocol on Cooperation between the then Department of Foreign Affairs (now the DIRCO) and the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Georgia. Areas of focus include tourism, trade and investment, agriculture, culture and sport.

The two countries have established a wine-makers exchange programme, which has seen student and expert exchanges between Telavi State University, a Georgian University and Stellenbosch University's Wine Sciences Department.

Russian Federation

Diplomatic relations between Russian and South Africa were established on 28 February 1992. The historical links between the two countries remain strong. The former USSR was one of the key supporters of the Struggle for liberation in South Africa. South Africa became the first African state to recognise the independence of Russia, post the dissolution of the USSR.

South Africa regards Russia as an important strategic partner and close bilateral and multilateral ties exist between the two countries. Since the re-establishment of bilateral relations, South Africa's relations with Russia have evolved into a strategic relationship over the past few years through continued high-level political engagements. The Declaration on a Strategic Partnership between South Africa and Russia was signed on the margins of the Fifth BRICS Summit held in Durban in March 2013 by the two countries' Heads of State.

This set principles and a framework for an equitable and mutually

beneficial partnership that will support the two countries' national development priorities, the African Agenda and the establishment of a peaceful, just and democratic global governance system.

One of the primary mechanisms for improving the bilateral relationship and advancing government's development objectives is the ITEC, which was established in 1999. The committee is the most important mechanism underpinning mutually beneficial trade and economic ties between the two countries. It has proven to be an effective instrument for effective engagement on trade and investment issues, as well as critical skills and technology transfers amongst others.

The ITEC has given practical substance to the political commitment on the part of the two countries to work together, as expressed in the Treaty of Friendship and Partnership signed by both countries. Sectors covered within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries, energy, education, mineral resources, science and technology, transport, water and sanitatio, trade and industry. Besides the work of the ITEC, South Africa and Russia established a defence committee that convenes independently. There is also growing inter-regional/provincial cooperation that bodes well for strengthened economic cooperation, tourism and people-to-people contact.

Serbia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Serbia were established in April 2002 when Serbia was still referred to as the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia. Serbia regards South Africa as a strategic partner on the African continent, a regional power and a leading economy that is playing a positive role in promoting peace, security and sustainable development in Africa.

South Africa's contribution to the advancement of multilateralism, the rule of law, human rights and an equitable global governance system is similarly appreciated. Serbia opened its embassy in Pretoria in June 1996. The South African Ambassador in Athens, Greece, is accredited to Serbia on a non-resident basis. Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations, which are coordinated at the level of Senior Officials. Areas of cooperation include trade and investment, education and agriculture.

Turkey

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Turkey were established in 1995 and have resident embassies in Pretoria and Ankara respectively. The two countries enjoy good bilateral relations, which have been strengthened by a number of bilateral agreements on different areas of cooperation. An agreement to elevate the relations to a BNC at Deputy President and Prime Minister levels, respectively, was signed in Turkey on 7 June 2012 and ratified by the Turkish Parliament in July 2015.

The South Africa-Turkey Strategic Partnership is informed by the two countries' growing political and economic profile and their geostrategic location in Africa and Euro-Asia; Turkey's rapidly growing political and economic footprint in Africa, including the Africa-Turkey Strategic Partnership; the two countries' capacity to project their foreign policies regionally and globally; and active participation and membership in various organisations such as the G20 and the UN.

On the economic front, relations between South Africa and Turkey are coordinated through the South Africa-Turkey JEC, led by the Minister of Trade, Industry and Competition on the South African side. The primary objective of the JEC, which was established in 2005, is to

promote and deepen bilateral trade and economic relations between the two countries. Priority sectors for the JEC include agriculture and agri-business; automotives; infrastructure, energy and construction services; minerals resources; textile and clothing; and tourism.

Ukraine

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Ukraine are cordial. Diplomatic relations between the two countries were established in March 1992 and their embassies were established in Kiev and Pretoria in 1992 and 1995 respectively. The South African Embassy in Ukraine is accredited on a non-residential basis to Georgia, Moldova and Armenia. The two countries regularly engage through political consultations at Senior Official Level. These political consultations are guided by both the MoU between Ministries of Foreign Affairs of South Africa and Ukraine (1994) and the Joint Declaration on Relations and Cooperation between South Africa and Ukraine (November 1996) that provide for regular bilateral political consultations between the foreign ministries.

The main areas of cooperation between the two countries are science and technology; defence; and cooperation between the South African Council for Geoscience and the Ministry of Environmental and Natural Resources of Ukraine, with more possible areas of cooperation currently being explored. There are growing trade relations between South Africa and Ukraine.

Central Europe

Central Europe has seen substantial improvement in relations with South Africa. A number of bilateral mechanisms with these countries were established at various levels.

The areas of cooperation have been considerable in, inter alia, the fields of education, arts and culture, science and technology, agriculture, water affairs, trade and tourism. South Africa works very closely with Central European countries on multilateral forums.

Bulgaria

South Africa and Bulgaria have maintained cordial and warm relations dating back to the liberation Struggle as Bulgaria hosted a number of anti-apartheid activists. Diplomatic relations at the level of Ambassador were established through the exchange of notes in February 1992 and the South African Embassy in Sofia started functioning in 1992, while the Bulgarian Embassy in Pretoria was opened in February 1993.

With the intention of expanding relations, several bilateral agreements have been concluded in the areas of air services, defence, tourism, security, arts and culture, healthcare and medical sciences, and education, while several others are under consideration. Bilateral trade and investments remain at a low level.

Croatia

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Croatia have developed steadily since diplomatic relations were established in 1992. The South African Embassy in Hungary is accredited to Croatia whilst Croatia opened its embassy in Pretoria in November 1995.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are coordinated at the level of Senior Officials with emphasis in various areas such as marine

technology, higher education and training, science and technology, and tourism.

Czech Republic

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Czech Republic were established in 1991 and resident embassies in each other's capitals were established soon after. Bilateral relations have evolved to a level of maturity, underpinned by increasing commercial and business-to-business activities, as well as people-to-people exchanges. Political consultations are coordinated at Deputy Ministerial level. Areas of cooperation between the two countries include tourism, defence, medical equipment, pharmaceuticals and agro-processing.

Trade and economic relations between South Africa and Czech Republic are governed by the South Africa-Czech Republic Joint Committee for Economic Cooperation (JCEC), which aims to promote and deepen bilateral trade and economic cooperation.

Hungary

Hungary was the first, among the Central European countries, to establish diplomatic ties with South Africa. Full diplomatic relations between the two countries were established in July 1991.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Political consultations are coordinated at Deputy Ministerial Level. Areas of cooperation between the two countries include higher education, science and technology, water-resources management, defence and agroprocessing.

The two countries also established a JCC, which aims to promote and deepen bilateral trade and economic cooperation.

Poland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Poland were concluded in December 1991 and embassies were opened in each capital. Political consultations between the two countries are coordinated at the Deputy Ministerial Level.

Areas of cooperation between Poland and South Africa include aeronautics, automotive, defence and agriculture. Poland, with a population of 38 million people, is the largest single market among the "new" EU states. South Africa is Poland's top trade partner in Africa

The two countries have agreed to establish a JEC, which will promote and deepen trade and economic cooperation.

Romania

South Africa and Romania established diplomatic relations in November 1991. The formal mechanism, legalising bilateral political consultations on an institutionalised basis between South Africa and Romania, was signed in September 2016.

The protocol is crucial in strengthening bilateral relations as well as providing a political framework for other agreements and commitments. South Africa and Romania signed an agreement in the field of science and technology in September 2004.

The partnership has successfully contributed to scientific advancement in both countries. Other areas of cooperation between South Africa and Romania include energy, mining, agriculture, and marine technology.

Slovakia

Full diplomatic relations between the former Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia and South Africa were established in October 1991. The dissolution of the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia brought about the Slovak Republic as a separate sovereign state in 1993.

The bilateral diplomatic relations entered into with the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia continued uninterrupted with the Slovak Republic. South Africa's bilateral relations with Slovakia are sound. Whilst South Africa does not have an embassy in Bratislava, the country's relations with Slovakia are managed on a non-resident basis by the South African embassy in Vienna.

Areas of cooperation between South Africa and Slovakia are in the fields of automotive (including automotive components), agroprocessing, medical equipment and pharmaceuticals. Economic relations between South Africa and Slovakia are governed by a JCEC.

Slovenia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Slovenia were established in 1992. While South Africa does not have an embassy in Slovenia, the country's relations with Slovenia are managed on a non-resident basis by the South African Embassy in Vienna. The Ambassador of Slovenia to Egypt is accredited on a non-residential basis to South Africa.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Bilateral relations between the two countries exist at the level of Senior Officials, with meetings taking place alternatively every two years.

Latin America and the Caribbean

South Africa's bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean continue to advance the developmental agenda of the South, and strengthen cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, inter-regional and multilateral levels.

In this regard, the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American and the Caribbean countries is of particular importance. South Africa has observer status in the Caribbean Community and Common Market and acts as the region's voice in the G20.

Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

Mexico is an export-orientated economy, with 90% of its trade being practised through FTAs. Mexico has more FTAs than any other country and relies on FDI and tourism to boost its economy.

South Africa-Mexico relations are well established with existing cooperation in, among others, agribusiness, automotive industry, mining, science and technology, tourism, diplomatic training and skills development. Progress has also been made in recent years in the area of trade and investment with various South African companies, such as Old Mutual, Aspen, Blue Label Telecoms, Standard Bank, Naspers, Sappi, Mondi and Dimension Data, operating in Mexico.

Mexico also has a significant presence in South Africa with mobile

phone products, automobile components and food products. Mexico was recently elected to the UNSC for the fifth time, for the biennium 2021 – 2022.

Mexico and South Africa have agreed to strengthen cooperation on UNSC issues of mutual interest such as conflict prevention, the peaceful resolution of conflict, mainstreaming of gender in peace missions through UNSC Resolution 1325 on Women, Peace and Security, as well as UN reform. The two countries are active members of the G20 and have agreed to cooperate to advocate for a coordinated global health and socio-economic response to COVID-19.

Guatemala

South Africa and Guatemala enjoy cordial relations. The South African Embassy in Mexico is responsible for South Africa's relations with Guatemala on a non-residential basis. The South African Ambassador to Mexico has received Agrément for non-official representation in Guatemala, but the formal presentation ceremony of credentials has yet to take place.

Panama

Panama was the first Central and South American country that went into total lockdown of all points of entry: ports, airports and in particular the Panama Canal, as the COVID-19 pandemic started to roll across the world in 2020.

Panama's Embassy in South Africa is focussed on business relations and the recruitment of South African expertise to contribute to its development and competitiveness, especially in mining, agriculture, logistics, construction and engineering. There are over 3 000 South Africans living and working in Panama. South Africa's Ambassador in Mexico City is also accredited as South Africa's non-residential Ambassador to Panama

Brazil

South Africa continues to enjoy cordial relations with Brazil, premised on the principles of solidarity and development cooperation. South Africa's approach to Brazil is driven largely by similarity of the challenges faced by both countries. The two countries also enjoy strategic partner status and close cooperation in terms of the BIRCS and the IBSA formations. They share common interests in maintaining peace and security in the South Atlantic, as well as playing a leading role in their respective regions.

South Africa and Brazil's bilateral relations are managed by a JCC at Ministerial Level. The last JCC was held in 2013 in Brazil. The countries agreed to reactivate the JCC in 2021. South Africa and Brazil have maintained and deepened strategic relations, guided by solid political dialogue, relevant economic-commercial exchange and cooperation on areas of mutual interest, which encompass fields such as the defence industry, agribusiness and the aerospace sector.

In 2020, South Africa and Brazil commemorated the 10th anniversary of the Declaration on the Establishment of a Strategic Partnership between the two countries. The Presidents of South Africa and Brazil meet regularly to discuss issues of mutual interest. South Africa maintains the view that the Rio+20 Conference, which took place in Brazil in June 2012, helped to ensure that the issue of sustainable development remained a top priority on the agenda of the UN and the international community.

Argentina

Argentina is South Africa's third-largest trading partner in Latin America and the Caribbean region after Brazil and Mexico. Continued engagement through a structured BNC at Ministerial Level ensures regular bilateral interaction and trade opportunities between the two countries, especially in the field of agriculture.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The majority of inhabitants of the Caribbean are of African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent.

South Africa's endeavour, in conjunction with the AU and the Caribbean Community, to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations. South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda and protection of small island states.

The Caribbean Community

The Caribbean Community was established in 1973. The organisation comprises 15 Caribbean nations and dependencies. The community's main purposes are to promote economic integration and cooperation among its members to ensure that the benefits of integration are equitably shared and to coordinate foreign policy.

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean Community and recognises that the majority of inhabitants in this region are of African descent with historical and cultural links to the African continent. In this regard, South Africa is committed to strengthen relations with the African Diaspora in line with a similar commitment by the AU that is guided by Pan-African solidarity and South-South cooperation.

South Africa was granted formal Observer Status to the Caribbean Community in February 2014. South Africa and the Caribbean Community continue to work together in multilateral fora as recently demonstrated by the overwhelming support South Africa received in the voting for the non-permanent seat at the UNSC for 2019 – 2020 and other international institutions inside and outside of the UN system.

Uruquav

South African and Uruguayan relations are conducted through political consultations that were signed in 2015. Uruguay is commitment to expand its presence on the African continent and is actively contributing to the MONUSCO Peacekeeping Mission in the DRC.

Chile

South Africa and Chile enjoy sound bilateral relations, which are conducted through a Joint Consultative Mechanism at Deputy Ministerial Level. The Joint Consultative Mechanism continues to serve a constructive purpose in the ongoing political dialogue between the two countries at bilateral, regional and multilateral levels.

South Africa is Chile's largest trading partner in Africa and the biggest investor in the country's mining sector. The biggest area of trade between South Africa and Chile is capital goods for mining.

Colombia

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Colombia are cordial and growing. South Africa has affirmed its commitment to assist Colombia in achieving lasting peace after years of conflict.

Central America and the Andean region

The Andean Community

The Andean Community is an FTA with the objective of creating a customs union comprising the South American countries of Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador and Peru. The region is considered a potential economic growth point with Peru being one of the fastest-growing economies in the region prior to the COVID-19 pandemic.

Cooperation with the Latin American countries is in line with South Africa's foreign policy objective of South-South cooperation to strengthen social and economic relations and technical cooperation to advance mutual development priorities.

With regard to South Africa's Industrial Policy Action Plan, the Latin American region is rich in mineral resources and countries such as Chile, Peru, Ecuador and Bolivia have expressed a strong interest to work with South Africa to strengthen trade, investment and technical cooperation in mining.

Ecuador

The bilateral relationship between South Africa and Ecuador remains sound and cordial, and is conducted through a Political Consultation Mechanism.

The main area of focus is on higher education, through academic exchange programmes by institutions from the two countries.

Paraguay

South Africa and Paraguay countries are working on finalising a MoU on political consultations, which will provide further impetus on the conduct of bilateral relations between the two countries in various areas.

Peru

Despite the challenges experienced by the Central America and the Andean Region, especially against the background of the current COVID-19 situation, Peru remains a regional hub for economic growth and was one of the fastest-growing economies in Latin America prior to the pandemic. Peru is, for example, the world's second-largest copper producer.

South African exports to Peru include chemicals, food products, seeds, beverages, car parts, scaffolding, spare parts for large machinery and condiments, while South Africa imports explosives, seafood, cotton clothing, alpaca clothing and wool, coffee, frozen foods, asparagus and cacao from Peru.South Africa is also a large investor in Peru, with companies such as Anglo American, Gold Fields and Cochrane International operating in the mining sector.

In the field of agro-processing, aquaculture is an important potential area for cooperation given Peru's strong capabilities in the sector. South Africa is one of the largest investors in Peru, with the then SABMiller, now AB InBev, and Anglo American operating in that country.

The main South African exports to Peru are mining equipment, paper and carton, metal sheeting and specialised structural steel.

Venezuela

South Africa-Venezuela relations are underpinned by historic ties of solidarity. South Africa continues to pursue strong relations with Venezuela. Venezuela remain a strategic partner of South Africa in Latin America, especially in the context of South-South cooperation as well as the potential for a future economic partnership due to its abundant oil and gas reserves.

Since 2016, The Presidency and foreign ministries have, on several occasions, held bilateral meetings. In 2020, President Ramaphosa and President Nicolás Maduro and ministerial authorities held telephonic meetings to advance the strengthening of bilateral cooperation, and economic and social relations for the mutual benefit of the two countries and exchange views on the development agenda of the South and the establishment of an equitable global governance system.

Colombia

The Colombian economy is one of the fastest-growing economies in Latin America. This compels South Africa to look positively towards Colombia. The country has been identified as an important high-growth market for South African products.

There are a number of large South African corporations operating in Colombia, INBEV, Old Mutual and Anglo Ashanti. Moreover, South Africa's Bus Rapid Transport System is based on the system operational in Medellin. Colombia.

Since 2015, there has been lack of high-level interactions between the two countries. South Africa remains committed to strengthening relations with Colombia through the convening of political consultations in the near future. Furthermore, South Africa considers Colombia as an important partner in South-South cooperation.

Cuba

Cuba is South Africa's historical and strategic partner in Latin America and the Caribbean. South Africa-Cuba relations are characterised by high-level political engagements, shared values and close bilateral and multilateral cooperation. Both countries are strong proponents for South-South cooperation and solidarity, progressive internationalism and the establishment of an equitable global governance system in international fora such as the NAM, G77 and the UN.

Currently, just under 600 South African medical students are studying in Cuba at various levels and 732 South Africans, who received their first five years of medical training in Cuba, have qualified as doctors since the inception of the Nelson Mandela-Fidel Castro Training Programme in 1997 and are rendering services to communities across South Africa.

In April 2020, a Henry Reeve Cuban Medical Brigade was deployed to South Africa at the request of the South African Government for a period of 12 months. The 217 medical practitioners were deployed throughout the country to assist with South Africa's COVID-19 response. South Africa has nominated the Cuban Medical Brigade for the Nobel Peace Prize for 2021.

South Africa and Cuba's bilateral cooperation is actively pursued through the implementation of government-to-government agreements between the two countries, covering numerous areas of common interest. The most active areas of implementation include health cooperation, human settlements technical exchange, public works technical assistance, cooperation on water-resource management and water supply, agreement on professional services in the field of basic

education and the Agreement on Cooperation in ICT, and Science and Technology.

The deployment of Cuban doctors, engineers and technical experts in all the provinces of South Africa, rendering important services, is a demonstration of the strategic partnership and solidarity between South Africa and Cuba and a good example of South-South cooperation.

Dominican Republic

South Africa and the Dominican Republic enjoy cordial diplomatic relations established in May 2002. The Dominican Republic has a free-market economy and benefits from strong trade links with the Caribbean region as well as the USA.

The country has high levels of disposable income and a modern banking system. The main economic drivers are construction, manufacturing and tourism. With a consumer society, the Dominican Republic provides many potential benefits for South African business and also as a source market for tourism.

South African exports to the Dominican Republic are value-added products which support the country's industrial strategy and national development imperatives of job creation and poverty reduction. South African wines and other food products as well as manufactured and finished goods such as vehicles, textiles and jewellery are potential export areas for South Africa.

Guyana

Prior to the dawn of freedom and democracy in 1994, Guyana was one of the strong supporters of South Africa's freedom Struggle. South Africa and Guyana enjoy cordial bilateral relations established on 4 November 1994. One of the largest offshore oil discoveries in Guyana recently, present possible opportunities for South African trade, investments and technical cooperation in the Guyanese oil industry.

South Africa views Guyana as an important bilateral partner and a principal member of the African Diaspora, which the AU embraced as a sixth region.

Jamaica

South Africa and Jamaica have strong historical and political ties, the latter having played an important role in supporting South Africa in the Struggle against apartheid.

The flagship bilateral cooperation project between South Africa and Jamaica is the Agreement on Scientific and Technological Cooperation, which was signed in 2012. The agreement is implemented through a Joint Committee on Science and Technology, which brings together the countries' departments of science and technology on an annual basis

The two countries have also been working together in the following areas:

- Bio-economy (nutraceuticals; best practice in growing nutraceuticals plants, for example, marijuana, lemon grass, eucalyptu, commercialisation of nutraceuticals, phyto-medicines, and indigenous knowledge systems, natural products development;
- Popularisation of science and technology (sharing of experiences and best practices);
- · Ocean science; and
- Science technology and innovation policy development (sharing of information and best practices).

Cooperation in sport, arts and culture is an important area of mutual interest between the two countries as well South and multilateral cooperation.

Trinidad and Tobago

South Africa and Trinidad and Tobago enjoy cordial bilateral relations and the country is viewed as an important bilateral partner in the Caribbean region. The large African Diaspora in Trinidad and Tobago forms a strong link with Africa, and serves as a further catalyst for ongoing cooperation between the respective regions.

Trinidad and Tobago is one of the strongest economies in the region with a well-developed hydrocarbons sector that presents opportunities for trade, investment and technical cooperation in the oil sector.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook

Justice and Correctional Services

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD), and the Department of Correctional Services (DCS) report to the Ministry of Justice and Correctional Services.

Justice and Constitutional Development

The DoJ&CD derives its mandate from a number of Acts, in addition to the mandate it derives from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

These Acts, and the Constitutional Framework, assign functions to the department, such as the establishment of magistrates' courts. and the appointment of magistrates and other judicial officers; the establishment and functioning of the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), including the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU): the conducting of criminal proceedings: the prosecution of organised crime and corruption, and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means; the provision of witness protection to vulnerable and intimidated witnesses and their related persons in judicial proceedings; the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rulemaking; the appointment of masters of the high courts; the management of third-party funds; the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates; the regulation and provision of legal advisory services to government departments; the promotion, protection and enforcement of human rights; the protection of vulnerable groups; and the provision of support to Chapter 9 institutions.

The National Development Plan (NDP) sets out a vision for building and maintaining safe communities in South Africa through, among other things, strengthening the criminal justice system. This vision is expressed in terms of Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF). The work of the DoJ&CD is directly aligned with this priority in that a well-functioning criminal justice system provides relief to victims of crime, protects vulnerable groups and swiftly acts against perpetrators of corrupt activities.

As part of its overarching goal of ensuring South Africans feel safe and are able to live without fear, the department plans to invest in ensuring that it serves everyone in South Africa in the most efficient possible manner. Accordingly, over the medium term, it will focus on increasing access to its services, and on strengthening the fight against maladministration and corruption.

Sexual offences courts play a critical role in the fight against gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF). A total of 100 sexual offences courts will be dedicated to improve the adjudication of sexual offences matters during the 2021/22 financial year.

Broadening access to justice

In its efforts to afford greater protection, particularly to the more vulnerable among us, the department plans to move towards a more gender-focused criminal justice system by implementing the national strategic plan on gender-based violence and femicide. This includes designating 115 additional courts as sexual offences courts and improving the management of the national register for sex offenders to ensure that all people who work with children and people with disabilities are properly vetted. A national action plan to fight racism, racial discrimination, xenophobia and related intolerance, including

promoting constitutional awareness and education on the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex people, is also expected to be implemented. To carry out these activities, R30 million is allocated over the MTEF period in the Lower Courts subprogramme in the Court Services programme.

Additionally, there are plans to upgrade all justice buildings to be accessible to people with disabilities at a cost of R49 million over the medium term; construct and refurbish 38 courts through an allocation of R463.9 million per year over the MTEF period in the Court Services programme; and convert six periodical and/or branch courts into full-service courts in partnership with the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure.

To complement these activities, the department plans to implement programmes to modernise and digitise its services. This is expected to broaden access to justice even further by introducing interventions such as enabling deceased estates and trusts to be registered remotely. To this end, R24.2 million is allocated over the medium term in the Justice Modernisation subprogramme in the Auxiliary and Associated Services programme.

Rooting out fraud and corruption

Initiatives are under way to strengthen the fight against fraud and corruption, and will continue over the MTEF period. These include: reviewing the extradition regime and the mutual legal assistance framework to improve cases of international criminal cooperation; appointing 15 legal practitioners in specialised commercial crimes courts through a transfer of R34.3 million over the medium term to Legal Aid South Africa; and hiring an estimated 90 additional permanent staff with specialised skills and experience, and training and developing existing employees, through an allocation of R426 million over the medium term in the Investigating Directorate subprogramme in the NPA programme. As such, the number of state capture fraud or corruption and related matters enrolled is expected to increase from 9 in 2022/23 to 27 in 2024/25.

In line with the priorities set out for the peace and security function in government's 2019-2024 medium-term strategic framework, R611.6 million is allocated over the MTEF period to the NPA in order to strengthen the state's capacity to prosecute allegations of crime and corruption. This allocation will be used to recruit aspirant prosecutors and rebuild critical capacity in units such as asset forfeiture, sexual offences and priority crimes litigation, among other things. Accordingly, the number of personnel in the NPA programme is set to increase from 5 707 in 2021/22 to 6 139 in 2024/25.

Commemorating the 25th anniversary of the Constitution

The year 2021 presented a significant landmark in the creation of constitutional democracy in South Africa. It marks the 25th anniversary of the signing of the Constitution into law. The commemoration of the 25th anniversary of the Constitution will extend beyond 2021 into 2022, as the Constitution's legal entry into force will be marked on 4 February 2022

The DoJ&CD, as custodian of constitutionalism in the country, in collaboration with key identified stakeholders, is embarking on leading and coordinating a focused national dialogue with the aim of reviewing and assessing the impact of 25 years of constitutional democracy in South Africa. This process aims to create a conversation about

whether the intention of the Constitution to build a nation based on constitutionalism and human rights is being realised.

The project will be research and policy focused. It will culminate into a symposium to celebrate of 25 years of the Constitution. This will be an opportunity for national and continental (and international) constitutional and human rights scholars to present their research focused on the implementation of the South African Constitution over the past 25 years.

This research will be generated internally within constitutional development, as well as by researchers, universities, students and South African citizens. This research will be used to guide policy making within government. In the next five years, efforts will be made to increase and deepen the constitutional and human rights awareness of the citizenry.

National Anti-Corruption Strategy

The National Anti-Corruption Strategy, adopted by Cabinet in November 2020, has signalled the resolve of the Anti-Corruption Task Team (ACTT) to deliver on its work. Building on the key tenets of the Constitution, the Anti-Corruption Legal Framework, the NDP and other instruments, such as international treaties, the strategy uses research and stakeholder inputs to outline actions needed to achieve a society free of corruption.

The strategy is a whole-of-society effort that envisions an ethical and accountable state, business and society, characterised by high levels of integrity and respect for the rule of law. It promotes active citizenry that is empowered to hold leaders and organisations accountable. It foresees a state where all members of society have zero tolerance for corruption.

This National Anti-Corruption Strategy provides a framework and action plan for the country as a whole and seeks to create a society in which:

- government's administrative and procurement processes are reinforced to allow for greater monitoring, accountability and transparency;
- the public is educated about what constitutes corruption and empowered to respond when or where it is noted;
- the public and whistle-blowers are encouraged to report corruption, are supported and adequately protected when doing so;
- public officials are held accountable for service delivery or the lack thereof:
- the business sector and civil society organisations operate in a values-driven manner and are held accountable for corrupt practices; and
- there is a culture of zero tolerance towards corruption in any sector and full accountability for those involved in corruption.

The ACTT case management committee has been revived and serious corruption cases are being addressed in various projects. By May 2021, a total of 128 cases were registered, with 91 of them under investigation, 19 closed and 18 before court, with 35 accused persons. A total of 25 new cases were included on the list of the ACTT's priority corruption case.

Corruption Perception Index

The Corruption Perception Index measures the perception levels of public sector corruption in 180 countries and territories around

the world. According to the 2019 Corrupt Perceptions Index Report published in January 2020 by Transparency International, South Africa scored 44 out of 100 and ranked 70 out of 180 participating countries. The Corruption Perception Index report published in 2019 indicated that South Africa's ranking improved from 73 to 70, out of 180 participating countries.

The DoJ&CD continues to establish specialised courts that will deal with corruption and complex economic crime cases in order to restore public and investor confidence in South Africa's justice system.

Anti-corruption compact:

We champion a new spirit of business, government, labour and civil society leadership that upholds professionalism, ethics and anti-corruption practices at all times.

We will enforce good governance principles in all spheres and ensure consequences for corrupt individuals and organisations. Our citizens will always act with integrity and will not be hindered to act against corrupt individuals through whistle-blowing and other measures that promote transparency and accountability.

State and business procurement systems will be run with high levels of integrity, efficiency and effectiveness. State law enforcement and anti-corruption bodies will be capacitated, integrated and their independence and authority respected by all.

We will build resilient institutions and go out of our way to protect vulnerable sectors and individuals in society who are at a high risk of experiencing corrupt practices and unethical conduct.

Legislation and policies

The following instruments of legislation are relevant to the successful functioning of the DoJ&CD:

- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of superior courts, magistrates' courts and special courts:
 The Constitutional Court Complementary Act, 1995 (Act 13 of 1995); the Supreme Court Act, 1959 (Act 59 of 1959); the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944); and the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of judges and other
 judicial officers, the conditions of service, discipline and training:
 The Judges Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act,
 2001 (Act 47 of 2001); the Judicial Service Commission (JSC)
 Act, 1994 (Act 9 of 1994), as amended; the South African Judicial
 Education Institute (SAJEI) Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008); and the
 Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the NPA, the SIU and the AFU; the conduct of criminal proceedings; the investigation of organised crime and corruption; and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means: the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998); the Criminal Procedure Act (CPA), 1977 (Act 51 of 1977); the Prevention of Organised Crime Act (POCA), 1998 (Act 121 of 1998); the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996); and the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making: The Legal Aid Act, 1969 (Act 22 of 1969); the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973); and

the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985).

- Legislation providing for the appointment of masters of the High Court and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates: The Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), and the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936).
- Legislation regulating the provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments: The State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957).
- Legislation relating to the promotion, protection and enforcement
 of certain human rights: The Promotion of Administrative Justice
 Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), the Promotion of Access to Information
 Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), and the Promotion of Equality and
 Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000),
 better known as the Equality Act of 2000.
- Legislation pertaining to the protection of vulnerable groups: The Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), and the Domestic Violence Act. 1998 (Act 116 of 1998).
- Legislation providing support to Chapter 9 institutions: The Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), and the Public Protector Act, 1994 (Act 23 of 1994).
- Legislation regulating the management and control of public expenditure: The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).
- Legislation regulating operations in the Public Service:
 The Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended.
- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 6 of 2012).
- Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 9 of 2012).
- · Judicial Matters Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 11 of 2012).
- Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012).
- Sheriffs Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 14 of 2012).
- The Criminal Law SIU (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill 2013 paves the way to regulate and promote the use of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) in combating crime, taking into account constitutional requirements. The use of DNA evidence holds the potential to alleviate bottlenecks in the criminal justice system. Maximising the use of DNA evidence promotes fairness, confidence and certainty in the administration of South Africa's laws.
- The Constitution 17th Amendment Act of 2013 is implemented with the Superior Courts Act, 2013 (Act 10 of 2013), which repeals the Supreme Court Act of 1959.
- The Legal Practice Act, 2014 (Act 28 of 2014), establishes a new regulatory framework for the profession, enhances opportunities to enhance access to services of attorneys and advocates, and creates mechanisms to address the spiralling cost of litigation.

Budae

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DoJ&CD was allocated R21.9 billion. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.9%, from R21.9 billion in 2021/22 to R23.2 billion in 2024/25, with

spending on compensation of employees accounting for 56.8% (R12.7 billion) of this, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.4%.

This low increase is reflective of the expectation that the number of personnel in the department will decrease from 23 515 in 2021/22 to 23 401 in 2024/25 through early retirement, natural attrition and contract termination in order to remain within the expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees. The department will ensure that the decrease in personnel does not affect service delivery as it will fill critical vacant posts and share services where possible.

Entities

Legal Aid South Africa

Legal Aid South Africa was established in terms of Section 2 of the Legal Aid South Africa Act, 2014 (Act 39 of 2014), to provide legal aid and legal advice to eligible people at the State's expense. The entity is mandated to ensure access to justice and the realisation of people's right to legal representation, as envisaged in the Constitution.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.7%, from R2.1 billion in 2021/22 to R2.2 billion in 2024/25, with compensation of employees accounting for 81.6% (R1.7 billion) of this spending, increasing at an average annual rate of 2.5%. Included in this are additional allocations of R11.2 million in 2022/23, R11.3 million in 2023/24 and R11.8 million in 2024/25 to fund the costs of 15 legal practitioners appointed in 2021/22 to service newly established courts for specialised commercial crimes in Limpopo, Mpumalanga, North West and Northern Cape.

The entity expects to derive 99% (R6.4 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department, increasing at an annual average rate of 2.8%, from R2 billion in 2021/22 to R2.2 billion in 2024/25.

Public Protector of South Africa

The Public Protector of South Africa is mandated to strengthen the country's constitutional democracy by investigating any conduct in state affairs, or in the public administration in any sphere of government, that is alleged or suspected to be improper or to result in any impropriety or prejudice; to report on that conduct; and to take appropriate remedial action.

Section 182 of the Constitution also states that the public protector must be accessible to all persons and communities.

Over the medium term, the entity will continue to focus on investigations to root out improper conduct and maladministration in state affairs. Accordingly, it plans to finalise 80% of: service delivery cases within six months, good governance within 12 months, integrity cases within 24 months, and complex cases within 36 months. This focus is expected to enable the entity to increase the number of finalised investigation reports from 50 in 2021/22 to 100 in 2024/25.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.3%, from R362.7 million in 2021/22 to R377.3 million in 2024/25. The entitys work requires skilled personnel and sophisticated investigative techniques to strengthen the anti-corruption system, thus spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 74.7% (on average R273 million per annum) of total spending, increasing at an average annual rate of 3.4%.

The entity expects to derive 99.2% (R1.4 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department, in reasing at

an average annual rate of 1.3%, from R359.9 million in 2021/22 to R374 million in 2024/25.

South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC)

The SAHRC is mandated to promote respect for and a culture of human rights; promote the protection, development and attainment of human rights; and monitor and assess the observance of human rights in South Africa. The powers and functions of the commission are further detailed in the Human Rights Commission Act of 1994.

Over the medium term, through strategic interventions with stakeholders, the commission will aim to promote, protect and monitor human rights by advocating for and seeking to incorporate pro-human rights principles and positions in policy and legislation, as enshrined in the Bill of Rights. This will include advocating for targeted service delivery improvements by implementing public and private entities.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.5%, from R198 million in 2021/22 to R219.5 million in 2024/25. This increase is mainly driven by a one-off allocation of R5 million in 2022/23 for ICT infrastructure and additional allocations amounting to R12 million to fulfil the commission's commitments to the United Nations (UN) Optional Protocol to the Convention Against Torture. Compensation of employees is set to account for 66.8% (R558.1 million) of total spending, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.1%, from R138.7 million in 2021/22 to R143.2 million in 2024/25.

The commission expects to derive 99.3% (R830.3 million) of its revenue between 2021/22 and 2024/25 through tra sfers from the department. These are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.9%.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU investigates and litigates on serious malpractice, maladministration and corruption, in connection with the administration of state institutions and take or assist in instituting appropriate and effective action against wrongdoers.

A special tribunal was re-established in 2019/20 to act as a dedicated court for civil proceedings. The tribunal improves perceptions of how justice is served through timely litigation to recover funds and assets that have been wrongfully acquired. To this end, the number of cases enrolled at the tribunal is set to increase from 25 in 2021/22 to 55 in 2024/25.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 17.9%, from R751.6 million in 2021/22 to R1.2 billion in 2024/25, driven by an increase in spending on compensation of employees from R531.2 million in 2021/22 to R927.9 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 20.4%. This increase reflects the planned increase in the number of personnel from 612 in 2021/22 to 816 in 2024/25, in line with the objective of increasing the number of investigations finalised in order to root out maladministration and corruption at all levels of the state.

As a result, the number of investigations closed per year is expected to increase from 1 400 in 2021/22 to 1 600 in 2024/25, and the number of investigative reports submitted to the Presidency is set to increase from 18 to 30 over the same period.

The unit expects to derive 52.2% (R1.4 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department and 44.5% (R1.2 billion) through charging client departments and state institutions

for services rendered. Non-tax revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.6%, from R363 million in 2021/22 to R478.6 million in 2024/25, mainly as a result of the projected increase in the number of billable hours dedicated to investigations.

Role players

National Prosecuting Authority

The NPA was established in 1998 and comprises the National Directors of Public Prosecutions, Deputy National Directors of Public Prosecutions, Directors and Special Directors of Public Prosecutions and other members of the prosecuting authority appointed at or assigned to the NPA, and members of the administrative staff.

It provides a coordinated prosecuting service that ensures that justice is delivered to victims of crime through general and specialised prosecutions. It also removes profit from crime and protects certain witnesses.

The NPA has the power to: institute and conduct criminal proceedings on behalf of the State, carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting and conducting such criminal proceedings), and discontinue criminal proceedings.

The Deputy National Directors of Public Prosecutions are responsible for the following divisions:

- the National Prosecutions Service (NPS).
- · AFU and International Relations.
- · Legal Affairs.
- · Administration.

The Special Directors of Public Prosecutions head the following specialised units:

- · Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit.
- · Priority Crimes Litigation Unit.
- · Office for Witness Protection (OWP).

Over the medium term, the authority will focus on:

- · increased feelings of safety and security,
- · improved investor confidence in South Africa through
- · high-impact prosecution, and
- · improved access to NPA services for all.

To achieve these outcomes, the NPA plans to address key challenges in its operating environment, including stabilising the organisation, ensuring that sufficient financial and human resources are available to enable effective operations, improving public perceptions of the NPA and repairing its reputation, and enhancing collaboration and cooperation between all criminal justice agencies.

National Prosecutions Service

The NPS is a core division of the NPA, responsible for general and specialised criminal prosecutions. The Directors of Public Prosecutions are the heads of their respective areas of jurisdiction, which are established according to provincial demarcations in each of the seats of the high courts.

All the public prosecutors and state advocates working in the district, regional and high courts fall under the responsibility and direction of the Directors of Public Prosecutions. The Special Directors of Public Prosecutions are appointed to carry out certain functions and responsibilities related to a particular crime type, as assigned by the President by proclamation in the *Government Gazette*.

Office for Witness Protection

The OWP is established in terms of the Witness Protection Act of 1998, and is headed by a director, appointed by and operating under the direction and authority of the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services, for the purpose of administering the Act.

The OWP is responsible for the protection (including temporary protection) of witnesses and related persons, in accordance with the Act. All OWP functions and duties are classified secret in terms of the Witness Protection Act of 1998.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was established in May 1999 as a division of the NPA to focus on the implementation of Chapter 5 and Chapter 6 of the POCA of 1998. The unit was created to ensure that the powers in the Act to seize criminal assets would be used to their maximum effect in the fight against crime, in particular, organised crime. Criminal assets seized by the AFU are paid into the Criminal Assets Recovery Account.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU)

A division of the NPS, the SCCU's mandate is to prosecute complex commercial crime and corruption cases. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

Specialised commercial crime courts (SCCC)

The DoJ&CD will continue to play a crucial role in the fight against corruption through the implementation of the Anti- Corruption Strategy. Part of the department's responsibility in combatting corruption is ensuring the effective and optimal functioning of the SCCCs, which are expected to be extended to all provinces that do not have these courts – over the medium term.

Much success has been derived from the existing SCCC model which allows for a close integration of the work between prosecutors and investigators, and dedicated courts, ensuring that matters are quickly and effectively processed instead of having to await space on an open court roll.

Whilst it was initially envisaged that these courts would be set up in three years, the DoJ&CD was able to expedite this by establishing six courts in the 2020/21 financial year. In the 2021/22 and 2022/23 financial years, the department will ensure that the capacity and efficacy of the SCCCs is enhanced and optimised.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The unit is mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. It was created by a presidential proclamation. The primary function of the unit is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological).

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs

The SOCA unit's mandate is to act against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance

offences and children in conflict with the law.

The unit aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children;
- · protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence;
- · ensure access to maintenance support; and
- · reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the entity's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and GBV is the establishment of Thuthuzela Care Centres – one-stop facilities located at public hospitals in communities where sexual assault is particularly high. The facilities are aimed at reducing secondary victimisation, improving conviction rates and reducing the cycle time for the finalisation of rape cases.

Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, the department will focus on addressing the scourge of GBVF and against women and children. Dedicated courts to deal with GBV-related matters will be designated in terms of Sexual Offences Courts Regulations developed in terms of Section 55A of the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007. Legal and policy framework will be enhanced and tightened by amending the provisions regulating the National Register for Sex Offenders (the NRSO) in the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007.

Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court serves the public in respect of: deceased estates;

- · liquidations (insolvent estates); and
- registration of trusts, tutors and curators' administration of the Guardian's Fund (minors and people with mental disabilities)

The Master's Office has five main divisions, which are all aimed at protecting the financial interests of people whose assets or interests are, for various reasons, managed by others.

As part of the turnaround strategy in the Master's Office, there has been a special focus on training frontline officials. The Master's Office is also investigating methods to deliver a more efficient and effective service to the public through the Internet.

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

This is achieved by monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing in court during the hearing of the application or trial, and providing mediation services in respect of disputes over the parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. Furthermore, litigants are obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation. Unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation.

Children's rights to participate in, and consult on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched; the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC)

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the *Government Gazette*. The TRC made recommendations to government regarding reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses experienced during the apartheid years.

Government approved categories of recommendations in June 2003 for implementation, including:

- · final reparations;
- · TRC-identified victims;
- · symbols and monuments;
- · medical benefits and other forms of social assistance; and
- · community rehabilitation.

The DoJ&CD offers education to TRC-identified victims of apartheid. Calls for applications are opened annually for those who were declared victims by the TRC and their dependants to apply for assistance with tuition fees for basic and higher education and training.

Dependants include any person to whom the TRC-identified victim has or had a legal or customary duty to support, including children, grandchildren and spouses of the identified victim. Applications close on 30 September each year.

Areas of legislation

Sexual offences

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007 provides a legal framework to support an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such crimes.

National Register for Sexual Offenders

The DoJ&CD has developed the NRSO, which was deployed in 195 courts. The register was established by an Act of Parliament in 2007.

It is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and people with mental disabilities. The NRSO gives employers in the public or private sectors, such as schools, crèches and hospitals, the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people.

Information on whether a person is on the list is available on request, along with the relevant motivation, before any confirmation or information is released.

Maintenance

The main objective of the Maintenance Act of 1998 is to facilitate the securing of maintenance money from parents and/or other persons able to maintain maintenance beneficiaries, mainly children, who have a right to maintenance.

Parents and/or guardians must maintain children in the proportion in which they can afford. Therefore, both parents and/or sets of families need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the child or children concerned.

The Maintenance Amendment Act, 2015 (Act 9 of 2015), further ensures that maintenance systems are effective, putting the following measures in place, among others:

 A beneficiary will be able to claim maintenance where they work and not only where they live. This will make it easier for beneficiaries to go to the maintenance court during working hours.

- If the person from whom maintenance is sought cannot be located, despite all reasonable efforts, the court can grant an order directing electronic communication service providers to provide the court with contact information.
- Maintenance courts must complete their enquiries as speedily as possible. The views of the person who is obliged to pay maintenance must be sought.
- If a person has defaulted on paying maintenance, their personal details will be submitted to all credit bureaus. This will prevent maintenance defaulters from continuing to receive credit while owing maintenance. They will effectively be blacklisted.

From the 369 maintenance courts nationwide, the DoJ&CD registers about 200 000 new maintenance complaints a year. To reduce the maintenance queues at courts, the department has installed technology to process payments through electronic financial transfers to replace the card-based manual system. The courts are also increasingly making orders for payments to be deposited directly into the accounts of beneficiaries.

Guardian's Fund was created to hold and administer funds which are paid to the Master of the High Court on behalf of various persons known or unknown, for example, minors, persons incapable of managing their own affairs, unborn heirs, missing or absent persons or persons having an interest in the moneys of a usufructuary, fiduciary or fideicommissary nature. Each Master of the High Court has its own Guardian's Fund. Through the fund, the DoJ&CD contributes substantially to poverty alleviation.

Domestic violence

Rigorous steps being taken by the Justice Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster to root out GBV include the adoption of zero tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex people, and other forms of violence towards women and children.

The Ndabezitha Project trains traditional leaders and clerks of the court in domestic violence matters in rural areas. This includes the development of a safety tool and intersectoral statistical tool by the NPA and the DoJ&CD.

The Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011), is the first specific legislation to address sexual harassment in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The essence of the Act is to provide a quick, easy and affordable civil remedy in the form of a protection order for incidences of stalking. The legislation arose out of a SALRC investigation into the legal framework governing stalking and domestic violence.

A key component of the Act is that it seeks to cover all forms of stalking, not just that involving people engaged in a relationship. A protection order can be issued instructing the harasser to cease harassment.

The Act sets out how a complainant is to apply for a protection order and the procedure to be followed in granting one. The legislation also provides for the issuing of an interim protection order without the knowledge of the respondent, given certain conditions.

A victim of cyberstalking can apply to a court for an interim protection order even when the identity of the alleged stalker is unknown. The law will also empower the police to investigate a stalker to identify the perpetrator even before a victim launches an application for a protection order.

Child maintenance money can be deposited directly into the bank accounts of beneficiaries. Equally, the introduction of the Paperless Estates Administration System in the Master's Office has enhanced the efficacy in the management of deceased estates.

The DoJ&CD uses a system called MojaPay, which has ensured that 80% of payments are made within four working days, as opposed to the previous manual

Human trafficking

The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act 7 of 2013), defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation. The Act addresses the scourge of trafficking in persons holistically and comprehensively.

Besides creating the main offence of trafficking in persons, the legislation creates offences such as debt bondage; the possession and destruction of, and tampering with, travel documents; and using the services of victims of trafficking, all of which facilitate innocent persons becoming victims of this modern-day form of slavery.

The legislation gives effect to South Africa's international obligations in terms of the UN Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children.

South Africa fully recognises the existence of human trafficking and smuggling activities. These crimes are mostly perpetuated by transnational syndicates, hence the call from many states for regional and international cooperation, as well as the introduction of aligned legislation and immigration procedures.

To address these challenges, UN member states require fair, responsible, ethical and efficient criminal justice systems and crime prevention strategies that contribute to sustainable economic and social development. It also imposes a responsibility on states to work together. These scourges have also had a negative impact on the people of South Africa. Government therefore fully supports the UN's promotion of objectives relating to the continued and focused national and international prevention, and combating of these crimes.

In South Africa, migration and human trafficking are a result of a complex set of interrelated push-and-pull factors. On the push side, factors such as poverty, lack of opportunities, dislocations from family and community, gender, racial and ethnic inequalities and the break-up of families are all relevant. The pull factors include the promise of a better life, consumer aspirations and lack of information on the risks involved, established patterns of migration, porous borders and fewer constraints on travel.

As a result of these factors, South Africa has become a source, transit and destination country for trafficked and smuggled men, women and children. South African girls are trafficked or smuggled for the purposes of commercial sexual exploitation and domestic servitude, while boys are trafficked or smuggled for use in street vending, food service and agriculture.

The Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act of 2013 deals comprehensively with human trafficking in all its forms and, in particular, provides for the protection of and assistance to victims of trafficking.

Persons engaged with trafficking will be liable on conviction to a severe fine or imprisonment, including imprisonment for life or such imprisonment without the option of a fine or both.

Other existing laws being used to prosecute traffickers include the Children's Act of 2005, which provides for the criminalisation of the trafficking of children, while the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007 contains provisions that criminalise trafficking in persons for sexual purposes.

South Africa has also been successful in using the racketeering offences in the POCA of 1998 to deal with criminal organisations involved in trafficking. Under common law, depending on the circumstances of each case, persons suspected of trafficking could be charged with kidnapping, common assault, assault with intent to do grievous bodily harm, extortion, attempted murder and murder.

Those involved in acts of trafficking in persons may be prosecuted using the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002); the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997 (Act 75 of 1997); the Intimidation Act, 1982 (Act 72 of 1982); the Domestic Violence Act of 1998, and the Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996).

Programmes and projects

Court Services

The purpose of the programme is to facilitate the resolution of criminal and civil cases and family law disputes by providing accessible, efficient and quality administrative support to the lower courts, and managing court facilities.

Over the medium term, the programme's objective is to deliver modern, accessible and people-centric services for all by:

- reducing the number of criminal cases on the backlog roll in lower courts, from 48 223 in 2019/20 to 45 388 in 2022/23;
- increasing the percentage of child justice preliminary inquiries finalised within 90 days after the date of first appearance, from 85% in 2019/20 to 90% in 2022/23;
- increasing the percentage of maintenance matters finalised within 90 days from the date of proper service of process, from 72% in 2019/20 to 79% in 2022/23:
- increasing the number of clearance certificates for the NRSO, in respect of particulars issued to applicants, from 3 000 in 2019/20 to 18 000 in 2022/23;
- expediting the implementation of Femicide Watch, established as required by Article 15 of the 2019 Presidential Summit Declaration against GBVF, from phase 2 in 2019/20 to phase 5 in 2022/23:
- increasing the number of regional courts upgraded to sexual offences courts, as required by the 2019 Presidential Summit Declaration against GBVF, from 90 in 2018/19 to 148 in 2022/23; and
- upgrading 72 magisterial district courts in terms of the Victim-Centric Justice Strategy by March 2023.

State Legal Services

The purpose of this programme is to provide legal and legislative services to government, supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund, prepare and promote legislation and undertake research in support of this.

The objectives of the programme over the medium term include:

- delivering modern, accessible and people-centric justice services for all, by maintaining the percentage of letters of appointment issued in deceased estates within 15 days of receipt of all required documents at 93%:
- ensuring a regulated and transformed legal profession by increasing the percentage of briefs allocated to historically disadvantaged individuals, from 80% in 2020/21 to 85% in 2022/23;
- ensuring effective and efficient state legal advisory and litigation services by increasing the percentage of legal opinions finalised within 40 days of receipt of instruction, from 82% in 2019/20 to 86% in 2022/23:
- increasing the percentage of international agreements and accompanying legal opinions finalised within 40 days of receipt of instruction, from 85% in 2019/20 to 86% in 2022/23;
- increasing the percentage of draft Bills approved by Cabinet for introduction within 40 days of receipt of instruction, from 82% in 2019/20 to 85% in 2022/23;
- maintaining the number of research papers submitted to the SALRC for consideration and approval at 11 from 2020/21 onwards;
- enhancing the protection and promotion of fundamental human rights and freedoms by maintaining sustained and visible anti-xenophobia campaigns conducted in collaboration with other departments and role players at six from 2020/21 onwards;
- maintaining the number of awareness sessions on lesbian, gay, bisexual, trans and intersex issues conducted with organisations, as well as traditional and faith-based leaders' communities at 13 from 2020/21 onwards; and
- improving reparations accessed by qualifying beneficiaries of Parliament-approved TRC recommendations, by maintaining the number of community projects launched at five from 2020/21 onwards.

Auxiliary and Associated Services

The purpose of the programme is to provide a variety of auxiliary services associated with the DoJ&CD's purpose. It also funds the Interdepartmental Justice Modernisation Programme and the President's Fund, and transfers payments to public entities and constitutional institutions.

It's objective is to deliver modern, accessible and people-centric justice services for all, by maintaining the number of government departments and entities exchanging information electronically at nine from 2020/21 to 2022/23, and increasing the number of branches, sites or service centres of government departments and entities where person verification services are deployed, from 280 in 2019/20 to 560 in 2021/22.

Child justice Children's Act of 2005

The Department of Social Development leads the implementation of the Children's Act of 2005. The DoJ&CD's main responsibility is towards the Children's Court operations relating to the Act.

Embracing information and communication technology has allowed the DoJ&CD to extend its reach on modern-day platforms that are more accessible to children, thereby increasing access and engagement

with potentially vulnerable or threatened children who would otherwise not have access to the department and, consequently, support and assistance.

The DoJ&CD has developed a child-friendly Frequently Asked Questions link on its website. In addition, the department created an email address, children@justice.gov.za, which the public may use to report issues relating to children.

The Children's Court is the DoJ&CD's principal legal mechanism to intervene and assist children who need care and protection. To gather statistics from the Children's Courts, the department developed the Children's Court Monitoring Tool. Data about matters coming to court relating to children in need of care is gathered monthly.

Section 14 of the Children's Act of 2005 states that every child has the right to bring a matter to the Children's Court.

This means that Children's Courts can serve as direct entry points for a child to seek help and protection. Children's Courts have been rendered highly accessible through the Act.

Child Justice

The Child Justice Act of 2008 promotes and protects the constitutional rights of children in conflict with the law. The Act provides special measures, designed to break the cycle of crime and restore in these children a lifestyle that is law-abiding and productive.

The DoJ&CD established governance structures to ensure the effective intersectoral implementation of the Act. Nine provincial child justice forums are coordinating and monitoring the implementation of the Act at provincial level.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice responds to crime in a way that focuses on the losses suffered by victims, by both holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused and building peace in communities.

Restorative justice strategies, programmes and processes in the criminal justice system are in place to try and heal the harm caused by crime, from a holistic point of view, for the victim, the offender and the community concerned – with the aim of rebuilding broken relationships and encouraging social justice and social dialogue.

Restorative justice options are always voluntary for victims involved. Alternative dispute resolution is defined as the disposal of disputes outside formal court proceedings. The processes and mechanisms may or may not include the restorative-justice approach.

Integrated Case-Flow Management Framework

The DoJ&CD, in partnership with stakeholders from other partner organisations, is developing an enhanced version of case-flow management in the court environment.

To eradicate case-flow blockages, workable solutions were adopted. These include:

- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain case-flow management at all courts;
- establishing judicial leadership and case-flow management buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of case-flow management forums:
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of case-flow management governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts'environment;

and

· maintaining case-flow management.

Systems that support case-flow management in the courts include the Integrated Case Management System (ICMS). This system spans all disciplines of cases administered in the justice environment.

The ICMS draws on several core modules to perform basic functions such as information warehousing, case numbering and document scanning. The specific functionality for each court and office are then built on these foundations. The further development of the ICMS Masters System aims to create a Paperless Estate Administration System for the Master's Office.

This system will computerise the administration process in deceased estates, as all documentation will be scanned and stored electronically.

Audio-Visual Remand (AVR) System

The system links magistrates' courts to correctional detention centres via closed-circuit television. The development in this area of support to case-flow management for the courts has brought about a significant improvement in the movement of cases through the use of technology.

One of the directives issued by the Chief Justice to address, prevent and curb the spread of COVID-19 in court precincts, was that AVR centres in correctional centres linked to magistrates' courts should be used for purposes of the postponement of cases where accused persons were in custody.

Case-Reduction Backlog Project

The JCPS Cluster departments have introduced a case backlog intervention to reduce the number of backlog cases in regional and district courts, and provide additional capacity to the backlog priority sites. The intervention ensures that the inflow of the number of new cases is balanced by the number of matters concluded. The project deliverables have been integrated into the outputs of the JCPS Cluster Delivery Agreement.

The DoJ&CD has provided resources in the form of infrastructure, court personnel, the judiciary, magistrates and budget, in support of the prosecution and judiciary to remove these cases from the backlog roll.

Integrated Justice System

This aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice system by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and, ultimately, rehabilitation of offenders. Further issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate the duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The benefits of proper alignment include:

less duplication of services:

the effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills; and joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of being reactive.

The JCPS Cluster has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility – operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

International Legal Relations

South Africa has, over the past 25 years, become a signatory to many international and regional human rights instruments and has complied with obligations emanating from instruments. Over the next five years, the DoJ&CD plans to table country reports in compliance with its international obligations arising out of core human rights treaties such as the Universal Periodic Review, the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights; the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights; and the International Convention against Torture and Other Cruel or Degrading Treatment or Punishment.

The department will work towards the finalisation of accession to outstanding international instruments, including the Convention on the Suppression and Punishment of the Crime of Apartheid, International Convention for the Protection of All Persons from Enforced Disappearance and many relevant others.

The department will also review, modernise and improve the Extradition Regime and the Mutual Legal Assistance Framework to ensure effectiveness and enhance collaboration with other states in the fight against crime in general. The conclusion of extradition and mutual legal assistance treaties will focus on countries in Latin America and South East Asia.

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations, in the DoJ&CD, is to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other countries, as well as international bodies and institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical levels with foreign countries to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements. It also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African countries, especially within the SADC.

The chief directorate coordinates human rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union. Its functions are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison on international legal matters with the SADC;
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice;
- interacting with the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law;
- interacting with foreign countries outside the SADC region;
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human rights treaties, including report writing; and
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions, as well as requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

Owing to the number of departments and/or institutions involved in the execution of extradition and mutual legal assistance, requests and taking into consideration that diplomatic channels are followed to transmit documents, delays are experienced from time to time.

Provisions are included in extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements to provide for direct communication between central authorities.

The drastic reduction in the turnaround time for the processing of these requests should be a clear indication to the rest of the world that

South Africa will neither be a safe haven for fugitives nor a breeding ground for transnational organised crime.

International Criminal Court (ICC)

South Africa remains committed to the global promotion of the rule of law and will continue cooperating with the UN system to ensure the success of the international human rights architecture.

South Africa views the ICC as an important element in a new system of international law and governance.

Office of the Chief Justice (OCJ)

The OCJ derives its mandate of providing support to the Chief Justice as the head of the Judiciary from Section 165 (6) of the Constitution, read together with the Superior Courts Act of 2013.

It provides support to the judiciary to ensure that it remains independent, accessible and effective in promoting accountability and fighting corruption. This is in line with the NDP's vision of promoting accountability and the rule of law, and Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

The OCJ is also required to provide and coordinate legal and administrative support to the Chief Justice; provide communication and relationship management services; provide internal and intergovernmental coordination; develop administration policies, and norms and standards for courts; support the development of judicial policy, and norms and standards; support the judicial function of the Constitutional Court; and support the Judicial Service Commission and SAJEI in the execution of their mandates.

Over the period ahead, the department will focus on strengthening access to justice and superior court services, and ensuring measures are adopted to mitigate against COVID-9. Expenditure on compensation of employees is the department's largest cost driver, accounting for an estimated 74.3% (R7.1 billion) of its total budget over the medium term.

To strengthen access to its services, the department plans to employ five researchers and 19 registrars over the period ahead. This additional capacity will enable it to increase the percentage of default judgments finalised within 14 days and ensure that all warrants of release are delivered within 1 one day of being issued. Funding for these initiatives is with the Superior Court Services programme's allocation of R2.8 billion over the MTEF period.

Activities in the South African Judicial Education Institute subprogramme in the Judicial Education and Support programme will continue to centre on providing education and training through virtual platforms, with the number of courses provided set to increase from 105 in 2021/22 to 120 in 2024/25. As a result of this shift away from physical venues, expenditure in this subprogramme is set to decrease at an average annual rate of 3.8%, from R34.7 million in 2021/22 to R30.9 million in 2024/25, although related ICT infrastructure upgrades are expected to cost R22.4 million over the same period. Similarly, with the increasing demand for virtual meetings and other event streaming services, estimated spending in the Corporate Services subprogramme in the Administration programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.6%, from R151.9 million in 2021/22 to R173.9 million in 2024/25.

Capacitation of the SAJEI

The SAJEI provides judicial education and training for Judicial Officers. Some of the training courses that have been provided in the past included areas on court annexed mediation and case management, children's court skills, criminal court skills, family court skills, civil court skills, competition law and maritime law, judicial management, judicial ethics as well as environmental law.

These courses contribute towards enhanced service delivery and the transformation of the judiciary as informed by the SAJEI Act of 2008. The capacitation of the SAJEI remains one of the key priorities for the OCJ. An adequately capacitated SAJEI is important for the training of serving and aspirant judicial officers and, ultimately, the delivery of quality justice. During the period of the COVID-19 pandemic, the SAJEI leveraged virtual platforms to continue providing training to judicial officers.

Court digitisation

Court digitisation is crucial in ensuring accessible and quality justice. Efficiencies in the court system require modernised technologies. It is important that the OCJ leverages on the advent of the Fourth Industrial Revolution, through prompt digitisation of the court system, focusing on prioritised information and communications technology (ICT) projects that include e-filling and digitisation of court records. In addition, ICT infrastructure will be refreshed to be responsive to digital transformation initiatives and improved service delivery.

The court online system will provide a platform for law firms/litigants to file documents to the courts electronically over the Internet, amongst other uses and benefits. The court online system is meant to fully exploit the ICT advancement to minimise not just the physical movement of people and paper-based court documents from parties to the courts, but also to leverage the benefits of electronic storage within the courts (faster document filing and retrieval, eradication of the misplacement of case files, concurrent access to view the same case filed by different parties).

The COVID-19 pandemic has compelled the country to move with greater urgency to leverage digital platforms and make digital transformation a reality in the courts.

Legislation and policies

In discharging its mandate, the OCJ is guided by the Constitution, other legislation and policies that constitute the legal framework for the establishment of the office. The Superior Courts Act of 2013 reaffirms the Chief Justice as the head of the Judiciary, responsible for the establishment and monitoring of norms and standards for the judicial functions of all courts.

The Act further empowers the Chief Justice to issue written protocols or directives, or give guidance or advice, to judicial officers – in respect of norms and standards for the performance of the judicial functions; and regarding any matter affecting the dignity, accessibility, effectiveness, efficiency or functioning of the courts.

Constitutional mandates

The Constitution provides for the independence of the Judiciary and protects judicial independence by prohibiting any interference with the functioning of the courts. It further imposes a duty on organs of state

to assist and protect the courts to ensure, amongst other things, their independence, impartiality and efficiency.

Furthermore, the Constitution as amended in 2013, formalises the Chief Justice as the head of the Judiciary and entrusts him with the responsibility for the establishment and monitoring of norms and standards for the judicial functions of all courts. It also designates the Constitutional Court as the highest court in all matters. In order to advance the transformation imperatives of the Constitution, Schedule 6 of the Constitution provides for the rationalisation of all courts and all relevant legislation with the view to establishing a judicial system suited to the requirements of the Constitution. The Constitution furthermore provides that, after a national election, the Chief Justice is required to convene the first sitting of the National Assembly, and to preside over the election of the Speaker of Parliament.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the OCJ was allocated R2.4 billion.

Department of Correctional Services (DCS)

The DCS is mandated to place offenders in a secure, safe and humane environment, and ensure that rehabilitation and successful reintegration programmes are implemented. This mandate is derived from the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998), the CPA of 1977, the 2005 White Paper on Corrections in South Africa, and the 2014 White Paper on Remand Detention Management in South Africa. This legislation allows the DCS to contribute to the preservation and promotion of a just, peaceful and safe society by ensuring that the corrections environment is secure, safe and humane, and that offenders are optimally rehabilitated to reduce their likelihood of reoffending.

The NDP articulates a vision for a safer South Africa by 2030, and this vision is supported by Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF.

The department's overarching objectives are to detain inmates in safe, secure and humane conditions in correctional centres and remand detention facilities; provide sentenced offenders with needs-based rehabilitation programmes and interventions; and reintegrate offenders into communities as law-abiding citizens by effectively managing noncustodial sentences and parole. To achieve these objectives, over the period ahead, the department will focus on implementing its self-sufficiency and strategic framework, providing

adequate security at correctional facilities, and facilitating restorative justice.

In response to budget constraints, over the period ahead, the department plans to become more self-sufficient. This will entail running production workshops and agricultural farms aimed at upskilling and rehabilitating offenders by training them to produce items – such as furniture, uniforms, shoes, baked goods and agricultural products that can be sold or used within the department. The department plans to supplement these potential income streams by hiring out offender labour. To implement the self-sufficiency and strategic framework, R54.1 million is allocated over the MTEF period in the Rehabilitation programme. The programme's total allocation over the period ahead is R9.3 billion.

The COVID-19 pandemic has placed increased pressure on the department to provide adequate security for staff and inmates, as infected and exposed inmates need to be isolated and guarantined.

which poses difficulties as most of the centres are overcrowded. Accordingly, the department has budgeted R244.7 million over the MTEF period in the Incarceration programme to respond to such challenges arising from the pandemic. Spending in the Incarceration programme accounts for an estimated 58.7% (R61.3 billion) of the department's overall spending over the MTEF period.

This funding is expected to enable the department to reduce the rate of escape from prisons from 0.032% in 2021/22 to 0.029 in 2024/25 and employ adequate equipment and security techniques to reduce threats at correctional facilities.

The department plans to facilitate restorative justice by increasing the number of victims participating in restorative justice programmes from 4 100 in 2022/23 to 5 300 in 2024/25. To this end, the Community Reintegration subprogramme in the Social Reintegration programme is allocated R273.3 million over the MTEF period.

Providing detention that is humane, safe and secure

The DCŠ aims to ensure that conditions of detention are safe and secure, and to maintain the human dignity of inmates, the department's personnel and members of the public. These considerations give effect to the core functions and bulk of the department's work. Funding for security operations, facilities, remand detention, offender management, the proper administration and profiling of inmates, and the consideration of offenders for release or placement into the system of community corrections is in the Incarceration programme.

Prison escapes can be largely attributed to overcrowding, the failure of personnel to adhere to basic security policies and dilapidated infrastructure. To improve adherence to security procedures, meetings are frequently held in all correctional centres, and security awareness is provided during morning parades. The DCS provides personnel with appropriate security equipment, such as body armour, ammunition, leg irons, handcuffs, metal detectors, tonfas, gas or fire filters, pepper spray, neutralisers and movable parcel scanners.

To complement this focus on security, R1.6 billion over the medium term is earmarked for the upgrading, rehabilitation, repair and refurbishment of dilapidated correctional and other remand facilities. The completion of these renovations is expected to ease overcrowding, as many offenders have been moved to other centres while facilities are in the process of being upgraded.

Providing needs-based rehabilitation

Although the NDP envisages that offenders should be released and successfully reintegrated into society, the effectiveness of this process largely depends on the quality of programmes offenders receive while incarcerated. Recognising this contingency, the department plays a vital role in rehabilitating offenders and reducing the likelihood of them reoffending by conducting proper assessments and informing them about the programmes and interventions available within their facilities.

These include correctional and skills development programmes, and psychological, social and spiritual care services. Through the improved marketing of skills development programmes, and the appointment of external service providers to provide more training opportunities for offenders, the percentage of offenders participating in skills development programmes is expected to be maintained at 80% over the MTEF period.

Reintegrating offenders into communities

Most offenders find it difficult to adapt when they are released back into society. They are often stigmatised and ostracised by their families and communities, and their ability to find jobs or housing, return to formal education, or build or rebuild individual and social capital is severely hampered. Unless offenders receive help, they risk getting caught up in a cycle of failed social integration, reoffending, reconviction and social rejection. To ensure the successful reintegration of offenders into communities, all parole considerations should include victim participation to provide a platform for dialofgue between offenders and victims, and thereby contribute to healing and restoration.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DCS was allocated R25.9 billion. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1%, from R25.9 billion in 2021/22 to R26.7 billion in 2024/25, mainly driven by an increase in payments for capital assets (mostly IT equipment and vehicles) from R626.7 million in 2021/22 to R763.2 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 67.5% (R70.4 billion) of total expenditure over the period ahead.

Role players

National Council for Correctional Services (NCCS)

The NCCS is a statutory body that guides the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services in developing policy relating to the correctional system and the sentence-management process.

Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services (JICS)

The JICS was established in 1998 with the statutory objective to facilitate the inspection of correctional centres so that the inspecting judge may report on the treatment of inmates and on conditions in correctional centres. The JICS is an independent office.

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 5 of 2011), provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision. The Medical Parole Advisory Board was appointed in February 2012 to look into all seriously and terminally ill inmates who have submitted reports requesting to be released on medical grounds.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

Correctional supervision and parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision.

The boards have decision-making competency except for:

- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of the CPA of 1977:
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section 276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1977 into correctional supervision; and
- · decisions with regard to those sentenced to life imprisonment.
- In such cases, recommendations are submitted to courts that, in turn, make decisions in respect of conditional placement.

There are 53 correctional supervision and parole boards in South Africa. These boards are chaired by community members who are regarded

as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities by virtue of occupation, standing or cultural reverence. The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.

In addition, two members of the community are appointed as members of the board. Trained staff members of the DCS fill the positions of vice-chairperson and secretary. A board can also co-opt a representative of the South African Police Service (SAPS) and a representative of the DoJ&CD. However, if the representatives of the SAPS and of DoJ&CD are not co-opted to participate in a board hearing, the chairperson of the board may request the departments to provide written inputs in respect of specific serious crimes.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Mineral Resources and Energy

Mineral Resources and Energy

The minerals and energy industry is a catalyst for economic growth and development. Reliable supply of energy drives economic activity and growth and as such, it should meet industrial, commercial and household needs. Challenges faced in the sector require all stakeholders to collaborate and work together for the sector to continue being sustainable, competitive and, ultimately, to improve the lives of all South Africans.

The Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE) is mandated to ensure the transparent and efficient regulation of South Africa's mineral resources and industry, and the secure and sustainable provision of energy in support of socio-economic development. The strategic objective derives from the National Development Plan (NDP), which envisages that, by 2030, South Africa will have a mineral resources and energy sector that promotes economic growth and development, social equity and environmental sustainability.

The NDP envisages that, by 2030, South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to maintain economic activity and prevent economic disruptions, and a mining sector that prioritises the welfare of its human resources and the environment. To give effect to this vision, over the medium term, the DMRE will focus on transforming mining and energy resources, rehabilitating mines and the environment, extending access to electricity, enhancing energy efficiency, and managing nuclear energy in accordance with international commitments.

These focus areas contribute to Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework.

Transforming mining and energy resources

As the DMRE seeks to accelerate transformation within the mining and energy sectors over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, it will aim to monitor and enforce compliance with the Mining Charter. This is expected to be done by conducting 636 social and labour plan verification inspections and economic verification audits on 1 275 mines.

The department's objective of inspecting 4 500 petroleum retail sites and issuing mining rights or permits to a targeted 360 historically disadvantaged South Africans over the period ahead is intended to enforce compliance with regulatory standards and transformation imperatives in the petroleum sector. These and other related activities are expected to result in expenditure of R1.5 billion over the medium term in the Minerals and Petroleum Regulation programme.

To address backlogs in the processing of mining licence applications and to improve efficiency, the department plans to invest in a new IT system through additional allocations of R84.4 million in 2022/23 and R44.5 million in 2023/24. As a result, spending in the Administration programme is set to increase from R625.9 million in 2021/22 to R729.5 million in 2022/23, then decrease to R687.2 million in 2024/25 as the additional funding comes to an end.

Rehabilitating mines and the environment

To promote the health and safety of mine employees and people in surrounding communities, the DMRE will continue to rehabilitate dangerous, derelict and ownerless mining sites. Over the medium term, it aims to to rehabilitate 9 mines and seal 120 shafts/holings,

and conduct 3 825 environmental verification inspections. As a result, spending in the Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.6%, from R235.5 million in 2021/22 to R247.3 million in 2024/25.

Extending access to electricity

Ensuring that all South Africans have access to electricity is a key government priority. The Integrated National Electrification Programme subprogramme in the Mineral and Energy Resources Programmes and Projects programme oversees and manages the financing and implementation of the integrated national electrification programme, manages and coordinates technical audits, and manages annual planning processes such as electrification infrastructure plans. Spending in the Integrated National Electrification Programme subprogramme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.3%, from R5.2 billion in 2021/22 to R6.6 billion in 2024/25.

Transfers to Eskom are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 12.2%, from R2.8 billion in 2021/22 to R4 billion in 2024/25, and transfers to municipalities are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.9%, from R2 billion in 2021/22 to R2.3 billion in 2024/25. Although transfers for non-grid connections are expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.6%, from R265 million in 2021/22 to R260.2 million in 2024/25, they are expected to enable 45 000 households to be connected through non-grid technology. This decrease is attributed to a high baseline in 2021/22 from a rollover of R32.7 million in that year. A targeted 640 000 households are expected to be connected to the grid over the same period.

The department will review procurement programmes for independent power producers in 2022/23 at a projected cost of R114 million. This is to ensure that additional electricity capacity is procured in line with the integrated resource plan. As a result, spending in the Electricity Infrastructure and Industry Transformation subprogramme in the Mineral and Energy Resources Programmes and Projects programme is set to increase to R120.2 million in 2022/23, before decreasing to R6.5 million in 2024/25.

In August 2021, Eskom announced the completion of Medupi Power Station with all six generation units fully on the grid. This will go a long way in alleviating the pressure on the grid and government remains focussed on ensuring energy security.

Enhancing energy efficiency

The energy efficiency and demand-side management grant enables municipalities to upgrade municipal infrastructure that is not energy efficient, such as replacing street and traffic lights with greener technology. To save a targeted 1.5 terawatt hours of energy over the medium term, allocations to the grant are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.2%, from R220.9 million in 2021/22 to R242.5 million in 2024/25.

Managing nuclear energy

The Nuclear Energy Regulation and Management programme accounts for an estimated 11.1% (R3.5 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term, mainly comprising transfers to entities. The South African Nuclear Energy Corporation is allocated R3 billion of this amount, of which R2.3 billion is for operational costs and R644.5 million for the decontamination and decommissioning of old nuclear facilities.

An additional R40 million in 2022/23 is earmarked for preparatory work to procure a multipurpose reactor to replace the 55-year-old SAFARI-1 research reactor, which is approaching the end of its useful life. The reactor is used for research and development, and to manufacture medical isotopes.

The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute is expected to receive R153.5 million over the period ahead for its operationalisation while it awaits approval for a radioactive waste disposal licence from the National Nuclear Regulator. It will, in the meantime, begin plans for establishing a centralised interim storage facility, which is planned to be operational by 2030.

The recovery plan for mining and energy sectors

The Mining and Energy Recovery Plan intends to restore and restructure the industry within the context of a renewed, sustainable minerals and energy complex pivotal in the reindustrialisation of the country, while transforming the mining and energy industry. The plan aims to restore business confidence, stimulate investment as well as safeguard and create jobs.

COVID-19 has had an impact on the petroleum sector as a whole. The destruction in the demand of jet fuel is making the operations of refineries very challenging. The retailers have had to maintain operations when demand was below 60% of normal demand. The department continues to engage and seek ways of mitigating challenges caused by COVID-19.

The Small-scale Mining Support Programme, as part of the Mining Sector Economic Recovery Plan, will focus on the implementation of the Small Scale Mining Framework; forming partnerships with aligned departments and entities to leverage on their resources and experiences for maximum impact; widen reach by providing technical, social regulatory support for community-based projects; as well as develop an artisanal and small scale mining policy.

Interventions to drive import substitution industrialisation within the ferrochrome sector are underway – the DMRE has already drafted a paper on a set of interventions to revive and increase the competitiveness and sustainability of the ferrochrome sector. The paper will be presented to Cabinet for approval. The interventions will ensure maximum benefit from the country's mineral wealth, save jobs and place the sector on a new growth path.

The Council for Geoscience (CGS) has intensified the identification and drilling of selected mineral target areas for quantification of priority minerals deemed critical for development, including input to pharmaceutical applications, food security, industrialisation and energy security.

A reconnaissance assessment of the Molteno-Indwe coalfield in the Eastern Cape and the Ga-Ramokoka Carbonatite Complex in the North West Provinces, respectively, has been concluded. Preliminary results in the Molteno-Indwe coalfields show an estimated economically exploitable coal tonnage of 320 million tonnes (t), with a value beneath the ground of R122 billion, using a conservative estimate of R350 per t.

The Ga-Ramokoka Carbonatite Complex hosts numerous minerals that span an estimated tonnage of Rare Earth Elements at 470 000 t, phosphates at 300 000 t and copper 30 000 t. The potential value of a suite of minerals in the carbonatite is estimated at R1.4 billion.

Mintek is working with industry and international researchers to develop a world-class smelter complex to exploit the Bushveld Complex

deposits, which constitute the world's largest unexploited repository of iron, titanium and vanadium. This will entrench South Africa's position as the leading supplier of vanadium and titanium, and funding of nearly R120 million has been secured for this initiative.

The South African iron and steel sector has been struggling with uncompetitive costs. One of the drivers is that up to 50% of the iron ore that is mined is discarded as fine and waste material. Mintek has developed technology to beneficiate this low grade and fine material and is working with industry players to implement the solution and significantly impact the current uncompetitive cost structure. It has also developed fuel-cell catalysts and membranes are currently being commercialised with the aim of supplying the global market.

As part of gas industrialisation, government has embarked on the Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) Expansion Initiative. LPG is the most efficient form of energy for cooking, space heating as well as water heating. Plans are under way to double consumption of LPG in South Africa over the next five years. This will alleviate pressure on the Eskom power supply. To ensure orderly development, all role players in the value chain will have to be registered with the DMRE. The DMRE will work with the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition to localise the manufacturing of gas cylinders and appliances.

A resolution has been taken to appoint the CGS as the implementing state agency of the Carbon Capture Utilisation Storage (CCUS) project, previously implemented by the South African National Energy Development Institute (SANEDI), a project co-funded by the South African Government and the World Bank. Concerns around climate change and the just transition have necessitated a deliberate investment in research for clean coal technology that considers carbon capture, sequestration and utilisation in order to reduce the nation's carbon footprint, in accordance with South Africa's ratification of international climate change protocols.

In June 2020, Cabinet approved the request to merge three subsidiaries of the Central Energy Fund (CEF). The decision paves the way for the formation of the National Petroleum Company (NPC), comprising of iGas, Strategic Fuel Fund and Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA). The CEF Board was mandated to manage the process and ensure the establishment of the NPC within six months. The CEF has appointed a professional restructuring company specialising in mergers to investigate the most viable model for the establishment of the NPC.

Growth supported by secure and affordable energy supply

South Africa continues to pursue an energy mix as espoused in the country's energy blueprint, the Integrated Resource Plan. Even though the country and the rest of the world are increasingly under pressure to mitigate against climate change, South Africa's energy capacity is largely dependent on fossil fuels. Government is committed to a just transition and has begun investing in clean technologies to ensure transition from high to low carbon economy, while ensuring security of energy supply.

In 2020, government committed to interventions that would address electricity supply shortages. As of July 2021, government had managed to advance the following:

 Connecting 1 200 megawatts (MW) to the grid from projects signed under Bid Window 4 of the Independent Power Producers (IPP) Programme, with the remaining 1 000 MW planned to connect by

- not later than December 2021.
- Approving eight preferred bidders with three recommended for appointment subject to them meeting specific value for money conditions. This initiative will deliver 1 995 MW of power into the grid within the next 12 to 18 months.
- Eskom has procured 200 MW from IPP under the Short-Term Power Purchase Programme.
- Issuing a request for proposals for 2 600 MW from wind and solar energy technologies, as part of Bid Window 5.
- Amending electricity regulations on new generation capacity and clarifying the requirements for municipalities when undertaking the process to develop or buy power from IPPs.
- Amending and gazetting Schedule 2 of the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006) – increasing the threshold for registering embedded generation from one to 10 MW.
- National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA) has to date registered 200 projects under one MW, totalling 94 MW and licensed five projects above one MW. The mining industry is also taking steps towards self-generation – Goldfields will soon commence with construction of its licenced 40 MW.

The DMRE planned to issue additional requests for proposals as follows:

- 2 600 MW from renewable energy around August 2021.
- 513 MW from storage around August 2021.
- 1 500 MW from coal around December 2021.
- 3 000 MW from gas around December 2021.
- 1 600 MW from renewable energy around January 2022.

In line with Sustainable Development Goal 7 of achieving universal access to affordable, reliable, sustainable, and modern energy by 2030, government plans to connect 180 000 additional households in 2021/22, following 166 886 households connected in 2020/21.

Creating an enabling environment through investor-friendly legislation

South Africa is centered around a legislative framework that captures, among others, the country's transformative agenda, environmental commitment to society, as well as setting both the minerals and energy sectors on a growth path. To ensure this, government has:

Finalised the amendment of the Gas Amendment Bill which was introduced to parliament on 30 April 2021. This Bill aims to unlock investment into the gas sector and facilitate the development of gas infrastructure.

Amended the blending requirements on biofuels and expanded the definition to include second and third generation biofuels.

Finalised amendments of the Clean Fuels Regulations, which aim to ensure a reduction of the sulphur content in standard grade diesel from 50 to 10 parts per million.

Gazetted the LPG Strategy, which seeks to address a suite of challenges prohibiting access and affordability of this energy source.

Approved the Upstream Petroleum Resources Development Bill.

Approved the NNR Amendment Bill, which is expected to be tabled in Parliament during the 2020/22 financial year.

Work is at an advanced stage with the drafting of the Radioactive Waste Management Fund Bill, which aims to enforce the polluter pays principle for all nuclear waste generators.

Legislation

The Acts that regulate the mining, minerals and energy sectors include the:

- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002), which provides the regulatory framework for equitable access to, and the sustainable development of mineral resources and related matters;
- Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), which governs mine health and safety;
- National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008), which empower the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy to plan for, and ensure the security of supply for the energy sector;
- Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977), which regulates the petroleum industry at manufacturing, wholesale and retail levels; and
- Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006), which establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry, including registration and licensing.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DMRE was allocated R9.2 billion. Transfers and subsidies to public entities and municipalities account for an estimated 80.7% (R26.2 billion) of the department's planned spending over the MTEF period. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.6%, from R9.2 billion in 2021/22 to R11.2 billion in 2024/25. This is mainly due to increased spending through the integrated national electrification programme grant as previous reductions imposed on the grant come to an end in 2022/23.

The department's regulatory and oversight work is labour intensive. It requires inspections to be conducted to ensure that mining companies and petroleum licence holders comply with legislative requirements, and that electricity connections are verified through the integrated national electrification programme. Expenditure on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 10.1% (R3.2 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term. To remain within government's expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees, the number of personnel in the department is expected to increase to 1 663 in 2024/25.

Entities

Central Energy Fund

The CEF's mandate is to research, finance, develop and exploit appropriate energy solutions to contribute to South Africa's security of energy supply.

Through its subsidiaries, the CEF is also mandated to finance and promote the acquisition of coal; exploit coal deposits; manufacture liquid fuel, oil and other products from coal; market these products; and acquire, generate, manufacture, market, distribute or research any other form of energy. The fund's subsidiaries are the Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA), the South African Gas Development Company (iGas), Petroleum Agency South Africa, Oil Pollution Control South Africa, the Strategic Fuel Fund, African

Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation, Eta Energy Solutions and CCE Solutions. Over the medium term, the entity will continue to implement its long-term strategic vision, which extends to 2040.

This involves rolling out long-term projects such as the extension of the Vlakfontein coal mine and restoring the Mossel Bay gas-to-liquid refinery to full capacity, accelerating research and development, and investing in infrastructure in exploration activities, pipelines and tanks. It will also seek to finalise the acquisition of a 30% stake in the Republic of Mozambique Pipeline Company's pipeline, and rationalise PetroSA, iGas and the Strategic Fuel Fund to establish the National Petroleum Company of South Africa.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 17%, from R23.4 billion in 2021/22 to R37.4 billion in 2024/25. This relatively high increase is mostly due to increased oil and gas production. Spending on goods and services accounts for an estimated 95.9% (R103.8 billion) of total expenditure over the medium term, mostly for costs related to oil and gas production.

The fund expects to generate 95.2% (R102.7 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through commercial activities and the balance through other sources such as dividends and interest revenue. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 17.3%, from R23.3 billion in 2021/22 to R37.7 bi lion in 2024/25, also as a result of the projected increase in production and sales in the oil and gas sectors.

Council for Geoscience

The CGS was established in terms of the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), to promote the search for and exploitation of any mineral in South Africa. It is mandated to generate, compile, curate and publish world-class geoscience knowledge products, provide geoscience-related services to the South African public and industry, and render advisory services related to geohazards and geo-environmental pollution.

Over the medium term, the council will continue to implement the geoscience national mapping programme, which entails conducting research and analyses, migrating and digitising data, and procuring key geoscientific equipment and infrastructure. Research that the council plans to conduct over the MTEF period includes: assessing geochemical anomalies in the Giyani, Orange River pegmatite belt and Kenhardt areas for precious and base metals; assessing alternative energy sources such as geothermal energy and battery minerals; investigating carbon capture, use and storage; assessing groundwater potential; determining environmental vulnerability in various areas; monitoring legacy mines for asbestos, dust and ground stability; and evaluating the impact of environmental effluence and determining suitable mitigation measures. The procurement of highly specialised equipment - such as 2 multipurpose drill rigs at an estimated combined cost of R50 million and critical expert resources is expected to enhance and accelerate the council's ability to conduct this research over the medium term.

Total expenditure is expected to be R2 billion over the medium term, with compensation of employees accounting for an estimated 58.8% (R1.2 billion) of this amount as the entity requires highly specialised skills to fulfil its mandate. Spending on goods and services, mostly for project costs, accounts for a projected 37.3% (R739.4 million) of expenditure over the MTEF period.

The council is set to derive 82.6% (R1.6 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department and the balance through fees charged for the provision of geoscientific mapping and research services.

Mine Health and Safety Council

The Mine Health and Safety Council is mandated to advise the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy on occupational health and safety at mines, develop legislation, conduct research and liaise with other statutory bodies.

Over the medium term, the council's key strategic focus will be on enhancing mineworker safety by disseminating research through materials such as handbooks, e-books, brochures and videos. As such, over the MTEF period, it aims to bolster these efforts by offering 18 programmes to promote safety awareness and promote 15 council programmes to improve workplace safety. To expand its research capabilities in fires and explosives risk, the council plans to finalise the transfer and upgrade of the Kloppersbos research facility over the medium term from the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research.

Total expenditure is expected to amount to R376.7 million over the MTEF period. Spending on compensation of employees accounts for 54.9% (R205.7 million) of this amount, while spending on goods and services, mainly for research activities, accounts for 37.5% (R141.2 million).

The council is set to derive 94.3% (R360.7 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through levies from mining companies, in accordance with the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996). Transfers from the department account for an estimated 3.9% (

Mintek

Mintek's mandate is to maximise the value derived from South Africa's mineral resources through, among other things, research and development, technology transfer and the creation of an enabling environment for the establishment and expansion of mineral industries. To this end, Mintek develops appropriate, innovative technology for transfer to industry, and provides the industry with test work, consultancy, analytical and mineralogical services.

Over the medium term, the entity will focus on implementing its new operational model and furthering its research in key strategic programmes. These include establishing a local rare earth element mining and manufacturing industry, developing rapid diagnostic medical test kits, expanding fuel cell manufacturing infrastructure across the fuel cell value chain, and recycling e-waste. Another major project over the medium term is the procurement, design and construction of a manufacturing facility to conduct ferro alloy research. Over the MTEF period, the entity plans to register 3 intellectual property licences and 12 patents, and publish 103 journal papers and 115 conference papers.

As Mintek relies on personnel with scarce and highly specialised skills to fulfil its mandate, an estimated 45.9% (R898.1 million) of its budget over the medium term is allocated to compensation of employees. To complement this expenditure, the entity will continue to invest in furthering the academic qualifications of its researchers and providing the necessary platforms to gain valuable experience. Spending on goods and services is expected to amount to R708.2 million over the MTEF period, which includes specialised service fees to produce research.

Expenditure on the rehabilitation of ownerless and derelict asbestos mines and holings is expected to amount to R326 million over the MTEF period, although the number of mine rehabilitation projects the entity plans to undertake may change, which will affect the final cost. Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of

4.5%, from R724.6 million in 2021/22 to R632.1 million in 2024/25. The entity expects to derive 49.8% (R985.2 million) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department and 47.2% (R860 million) through commercial activities. Revenue from commercial activities is expected to decrease over the medium term due to the decrease in commodity demand and prices, which is expected to lead to a slowdown in project activity.

To mitigate the impact of this expected decrease, the entity plans to develop and implement a model to expand its commercial revenue generation streams to augment and strengthen commercial activities or partnerships while sustaining its contribution to national developmental imperatives.

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

The NERSA is mandated to regulate the electricity industry, the piped gas industry and the petroleum pipelines industry. In line with its mandate, the regulator's focus over the medium term will continue to be on ensuring the security, accessibility and affordability of energy supply, and fair competition and regulatory certainty in the energy sector. It will do this by setting and approving energy tariffs, licensing and registering energy service providers, and monitoring and enforcing compliance with regulations. To support these activities, total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.7%, from R384.5 million in 2021/22 to R429.1 million in 2024/25.

As the regulator's work requires personnel with scarce and specialised skills, compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 72.6% (R907.4 million) of total spending over the medium term. Spending on goods and services accounts for 27.4% (R327.2 million), mainly on activities required to fulfil the regulator's mandate, such as advisory services and travel and subsistence.

The regulator generates its revenue mainly through the prescribed licence fees and levies it imposes on the electricity, piped gas and petroleum pipeline industries to recover the costs involved in administering and regulating them, and through interest earned on investments. Total revenue over the medium term is expected to amount to R1.2 billion, increasing at an average annual rate of 8.7%.

National Nuclear Regulator

The NNR regulates safety standards for nuclear activities in South Africa. This includes establishing safety standards and regulatory practices, ensuring nuclear installations are safe by enforcing regulatory control, granting nuclear authorisations, conducting compliance inspections, and ensuring that provisions are in place for nuclear emergency planning.

Over the medium term, the regulator will focus on evaluating the application for the life extension of Koeberg nuclear power station, as well as its ongoing regulatory activities such as inspections, investigations, surveillance, environmental monitoring and sampling at nuclear technology facilities. In this regard, it plans to undertake 105 nuclear power plant inspections over the medium term. The regulator will continue to advance regulatory research and development, and teaching and learning, and provide technical support to the industry through state-of-the-art irradiation and analysis equipment for researchers and students to use, including analytical and inspection laboratories and computer modelling facilities.

Because the regulator relies on personnel with highly specialised

skills to fulfil its mandate, compensation of employees is expected to account for 67.5% (R741.7 million) of total spending over the medium term. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.1%, from R307.1 million in 2021/22 to R377.5 million in 2024/25.

The regulator expects to generate 71.3% (R784.3 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period from the payment of authorisation fees by licenced operators, and derive 13.6% (R143.3 million) through transfers from the department.

National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute

The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute manages the disposal of radioactive waste at national level. The institute is responsible for the long-term care and disposal of radioactive waste in a safe, technically sound, socially acceptable, environmentally responsible and economically feasible manner.

Over the medium term, the institute will focus on developing security upgrade plans to store and dispose of radioactive waste, drafting a national waste inventory report, conducting inspections to ensure that all disposal waste packages meet the waste acceptance criteria, and developing an environmental impact assessment report for the long-term storage of spent nuclear fuel at the centralised interim storage facility. It plans to finalise the transfer of the Vaalputs low-level waste disposal function from the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation over the medium term, as well as the allocation of the nuclear installation licence from the National Nuclear Regulator. This will allow it to become the licence holder and generate its own revenue by providing waste-disposal and related services to waste generators.

An estimated 81% (R128.1 million) of the institute's spending over the medium term is set to go towards compensation of employees and 16.9% (R26.4 million) towards goods and services, mostly for the Vaalputs function shift and nuclear installation licence, research and development activities, and the provision of radioactive waste management education to the public. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.2%, from R50.9 million in 2021/22 to R54.3 million in 2024/25.

The institute expects to derive 96.9% (R153.5 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department.

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR)

The SADPMR 's core functions include facilitating the buying, selling, exporting and importing of diamonds through its Diamond Exchange and Export Centre, and regulating the acquisition, possession, smelting, refining, beneficiation, use and disposal of precious metals.

Over the medium term, the regulator will focus on implementing its mandate, which involves issuing licences and permits, conducting diamond valuations, conducting compliance inspections, and facilitating tenders for rough and polished diamonds. These activities will ensure competitiveness, sustainable development and job creation in the diamond and precious metals industry while ensuring that all compliance and legislative requirements are met.

The work of the regulator is labour intensive as personnel are required to perform compliance inspections and audits. As such, compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 75.5% (R266.8

million) of spending over the medium term. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.4%, from R111.7 million in 2021/22 to R123.5 million in 2024/25.

Transfers from the department are expected to account for 54.2% (R192 million) of total revenue over the medium term, while fees – mostly for various licences and permits – are expected to generate 43.5% (R159.7 million) of total revenue. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.3%, from R110.5 million in 2021/22 to R125.2 million in 2024/25.

South African National Energy Development Institute

The SANEDI's mandate is to direct, monitor and conduct applied energy research and development, and demonstrate and deploy specific measures to promote the uptake of green energy and energy efficiency in South Africa.

Over the medium term, the institute will continue to focus on projects that support sustainable energy, renewable energy technologies and smart grid projects. This focus will be applied to three main areas: climate change and decarbonisation, service delivery within the municipal environment, and knowledge and technological convergence. Through an increased focus on commercialisation, the institute will seek to scale the impact of its innovations.

Total expenditure is expected to amount to R307.8 million over the medium term, with goods and services accounting for a projected 49.1% (R154.3 million) of this amount, mostly for project-specific funding. Expenditure on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.3%, from R43.1 million in 2021/22 to R49 million in 2024/25. The institute expects to derive 94.8% (R288.1 million) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department and other sources, such as donor funding and funding from the Department of Science and Innovation for energy research.

South African Nuclear Energy Corporation

The NECSA derives its mandate from the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), the Nuclear Energy Policy (2008), and directives conferred on it by the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy. The corporation's subsidiaries include international fluoro-chemical producer Pelchem; radiopharmaceutical and radioisotope producer NTP Radioisotopes; and Pelindaba Enterprises, which specialises in the manufacturing of power-generation components.

It also operates the South Africa Fundamental Atomic Research Installation-1 nuclear reactor for research, technology development and the production of radioisotopes. The corporation is responsible for the decommissioning and decontamination of nuclear facilities and contributes to South Africa's obligations in terms of international nuclear treaties and agreements.

Over the medium term, the corporation will continue to focus on increasing medical radioisotope production and radiation applications used locally and internationally to diagnose and treat cancer and produce fluorochemical products. It will work on the replacement for the SAFARI-1 nuclear reactor, which is expected to reach the end of its useful lifespan in 2030. It will also continue to provide support for nuclear power generation, and the decommissioning and decontamination of disused nuclear facilities.

Total expenditure is expected to amount to R7.4 billion over the MTEF period. Spending on goods and services accounts for an

estimated 49.1% (R3.6 billion) of this amount, mainly for the production of medical radioisotopes. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 45.6% (R3.5 billion), increasing at an average annual rate of 6.3%, from R1.1 billion in 2021/22 to R1.3 billion in 2024/25.

The sale of nuclear technology products, chemical products and nuclear engineering services is expected to account for 56.4% (R4.3 billion) of the corporation's revenue over the medium term, with transfers from the department accounting for an estimated 40.3% (R3 billion). Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.2% as the entity recovers from lower sales due to the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic, from R2.4 billion in 2021/22 to R2.6 billion in 2024/25.

State Diamond Trader

The State Diamond Trader promotes equitable access to and local beneficiation for the country's diamonds. The trader is mandated to conduct research, develop a client base, contribute to the growth of the local diamond beneficiation industry, and develop efficient means of marketing diamonds not suitable for local beneficiation.

Over the medium term, the trader will focus on growing the local diamond beneficiation industry and increasing the sale of rough diamonds to historically disadvantaged South Africans. It plans to do this by acquiring up to 10% raw or unprocessed diamonds from all legitimate producers in South Africa for sale to registered customers – in an equitable manner – through an application and approval process. This includes Alexkor, which sets aside 10% of its rough diamond production to be procured by the State Diamond Trader.

Total expenditure is expected to amount to R1.4 billion over the medium term, with 93.1% (R1.4 billion) earmarked for goods and services, mostly for the procurement of diamonds. Compensation of employees is expected to account for 6.6% (R51.9 million) of total spending over the period ahead.

The trader generates revenue through the sale of rough diamonds. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.1%, from R723.6 million in 2021/22 to R769.4 million in 2024/25.

Resources

Mining Qualifications Authority

The future of mining in the country depends largely on the successful implementation of skills development initiatives. Particular focus is placed on artisan and artisan aid, as well as other technical skills. The authority was established as a sector education and training authority. It facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors.

Shale gas

Shale gas is a natural gas that is occurring and can be extracted from shale. The natural gas, which is imbedded in the Karoo Basin, can be used for energy production. The CGS and PetroSA are undertaking shale gas research that unlocks the unknowns and assumptions about shale gas occurrence in the country. The project will build scientific skills in shale gas exploration and exploitation as this resource has not been exploited in the country.

The programme is funded by the DMRE and will assist government in making well informed decisions about the future of shale gas in South Africa.

The programme aims to collect and review new geological information to define an environmental baseline, to assess the amount of recoverable gas mainly from the Whitehill and Prince Albert Formations, to cover various geo-environmental impacts like ground water dynamics with possible contamination, and monitor potential seismic interferences.

The Shale Gas Project will serve as a baseline study for future shale gas research work and play a vital role in review of petroleum exploration and exploitation regulations.

Reserves

Gold

The large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa include the record-setting TauTona Gold Mine, which extends 3.9 km underground. TauTona means "great lion" in Setswana. South Africa accounts for 10.5% of the world's gold reserves. The Witwatersrand Basin remains the world's largest gold resource.

Coal

Government has emphasised the importance of ensuring a sustainable local coal supply for the country's energy requirements. This commodity currently plays a vital role in meeting South Africa's primary energy needs, as well as in the economy in general. It is recognised that coal contributes to the economy, not only to supply energy, but through the generation of export revenue, contributing to the GDP and employment.

Platinum group metals (PGMs)

Platinum, palladium, rhodium, osmium, ruthenium and iridium occur together in nature alongside nickel and copper. Platinum, palladium and rhodium, the most economically significant of the PGMs, are found in the largest quantities.

South Africa is the world's leading platinum and rhodium producer, and the second-largest palladium producer after Russia. South Africa's production is sourced entirely from the Bushveld Complex, the largest known PGM resource in the world.

Platinum

South Africa accounts for over 80% of known global reserves of the PGMs. The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa, playing host to companies such as Rustenburg Platinum Mines and Bafokeng Rasimone Platinum Mines.

Palladium

South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer. All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs. Palladium, together with platinum, is more abundant than any of the other PGMs.

Ferrous minerals

These are the largest new investments in the manganese industry in the country, and support government's drive to increase the beneficiation in South Africa.

Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company in Limpopo, is South Africa's only producer of refined copper

Useful by-product metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite, nickel sulphate and small quantities of gold, silver and platinum.

Manganese

South Africa has significant proven manganese reserves, but the exploitation of the mineral has not reflected its development potential.

Industrial minerals

Of the hundreds of producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector. There are producers of clays (brickmaking), limestone and dolomite, dimension stone, salt and silica in South Africa. Bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history. The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts being preserved.

Mining production

South Africa has long been considered a regional and global mining powerhouse, with more than 90% of the platinum group metals. South Africa has been engulfed by a series of political shocks and economic underperformance that have taken a significant toll on its position as Southern Africa's leader in the extractives industry.

Amid a backdrop of recession and allegations of corruption, South Africa faces the challenges associated with an aging mining sector. Some concerns exist around the pace of transformation in the mining and minerals industry. Government has published a new Mining Charter aimed at strengthening its effectiveness, while considering the realities facing the industry.

Energy

Guided by the National Energy Act of 2008, government's responsibility is to ensure that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and affordable prices to support economic growth.

Government is committed to extending access to electricity and enhancing energy efficiency, managing nuclear energy in terms of international commitments and diversifying the energy generation mix.

The NDP proposes that gas and other renewable resources like wind, solar and hydroelectricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 MW of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030. Other recommendations in the NDP include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12-largest electricity distributors.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 MW

of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydroelectricity. South Africa has committed to attain substantial reductions in carbon dioxide emissions by 2025.

The country supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy sets out the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It aims to ensure uninterrupted supply of petroleum products throughout South Africa by providing adequate strategic stocks and infrastructure such as storage facilities and pipeline capacity.

Strategic stocks are to be used during declared emergencies. The Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy will have the power to decide when a shortage of fuel and oil is at such a level to warrant an emergency.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas Strategy

The strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications. LPG is considered one of the safest, cleanest and most sustainable energy sources.

Gas Utilisation Master Plan (GUMP)

The GUMP scope includes the development of gas pipeline infrastructure for the country's needs and to connect South Africa with African countries endowed with vast natural gas resources.

The GUMP is a roadmap which analyses the potential and opportunity for the development of South Africa's gas economy and sets out a plan of how this could be achieved. A key objective of the GUMP is to enable the development of indigenous gas resources and stimulate the introduction of a portfolio of gas supply options. The Gas to Power Programme will provide a market for a potential supply of gas. It also provides long-term gas demand sinks for future indigenous gas supplies.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency. The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable energy water-heating systems, such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP was created with the primary aim to provide reliable and economical electricity supply to the consumers of each of the SAPP members, consistent with the reasonable use of natural resources and the effect on the environment.

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between the Southern African Development Community (SADC) member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the Congo River (Inga Falls).

Electricity

As part of the Integrated National Electrification Programme, which aims to extend access to electricity to all households across South Africa, about 590 000 households are expected to be connected to the electricity grid over the medium term.

A further 20 000 households per year over the same period would be provided with non-grid (mainly solar) electrification systems. Government planned to develop an electrification master plan to inform the roll-out of electrification connections for universal access.

Integrated National Electrification Programme

Through the Integrated National Electrification Programme, the DMRE is responsible for assisting municipalities with funding for implementation of electrification projects so that universal access to electricity is reached by 2025. Beyond reaching universal access to energy for all and addressing the electrification backlog, it is vital that policy guidelines are adhered to when implementing electrification projects through the INEP.

Biofuel

The biofuels industry in South Africa, the continent's biggest agricultural producer, has been held back by an inadequate regulatory regime and concerns that biofuels would hurt food security and affect food prices.

Canola, sunflower and soya are feedstock for biodiesel, while sugarcane and sugar beet are feedstock for ethanol.

Maize, South Africa's staple food, will not be used in the production of biofuels to ensure food security and control high prices. The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution, and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular.

In addition, second generation biofuel technology can also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

In May 2021, Saudi-based ACWA Power announced that it had secured R11.6 billion funding for the Redstone Concentrated Solar Power Plant in the Northern Cape.

The plant is part of South Africa's major infrastructure projects and the largest renewable energy investment in the country. Redstone plant is set to produce 100 MW of renewal energy that is expected to be delivered at the end of 2023, which will reliably deliver a stable electricity supply to more than 200 000 households.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers, and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

South Africa has entered a treaty for the development of the Grand Inga Project in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), with some of the power intended for transmission to South Africa across the DRC, Zambia, Zimbabwe and Botswana. The regional development drivers are compelling, since there is very little energy trade between these countries, due to the lack of infrastructure. The potential for intra-SADC trade is huge as it could open economic trade.

Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4.5 kilowatt-hours per square metre (kWh/m2) and 6.5 kWh/m2 in one day.

The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, has sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m2 for South Africa.

Wind Power

Wind energy, like solar energy, is a free and sustainable renewable energy source that is being used to generate electricity.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

Nuclear

The Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 highlights the vision of government to become self-sufficient in all aspects of the nuclear value chain for peaceful use. Amongst government policy objectives is the promotion of nuclear energy as an important electricity supply option through the establishment of a national industrial capability for the design, manufacture and construction of nuclear energy systems.

Government has committed, through the Nuclear Energy Policy and Integrated Resource Plan (IRP), to an energy mix consisting of coal, gas, hydro, nuclear, solar and wind. The Nuclear New Build Programme will enable the country to create jobs, develop skills, create industries and catapult the country into a knowledge economy.

The IRP 2010 – 2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand. Eskom operates the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station near Cape Town, the only nuclear power station in South Africa and the entire African continent, which supplies power to the national grid.

The extension of life of Koeberg Power Station is critical for continued energy security in the period beyond 2024, when it reaches the end of its 40-year life. In accordance with IRP2019, the Koeberg Power Plant design life must be extended by another 20 years to ensure that the necessary technical and regulatory work can be completed.

To this end, the DMRE will commence with preparations for a nuclear build programme towards an additional 2 500 MW at a scale and pace that the country can afford, to ensure security of energy supply.

Integrated Resource Plan

The IRP is a legal instrument for South Africa's energy generation planning. The IRP is designed to help meet forecast annual peak and energy demand, as well as some established reserve margin. This will be achieved through a combination of supply-side and demand-side resources over a specified future period and driven by a set of predetermined objectives, which include ensuring the security of South Africa's energy supply, reducing the cost of South Africa's energy supply, minimising water usage related to energy supply and reducing carbon dioxide.

The plan is the leading policy framework for addressing the short- to long-term challenges that the country faces with regard to its energy needs. It formulates specific interventions to address electricity infrastructure development based on least-cost electricity supply and demand balance, considering security of supply and the environment (minimising negative emissions and water usage). The plan identifies the preferred generation technology required to meet expected demand growth up to 2030.

The available options include:

- Coal: Beyond Medupi and Kusile, coal will continue to play a significant role in electricity generation in South Africa in the foreseeable future as it is the largest base of installed generation capacity and makes up the largest share of energy generated. Due to the design life of the existing coal fleet and the abundance of coal resources, new investments must be made into more efficient coal technologies (High-Efficiency, Low-Emissions (HELE) technology, including supercritical and ultra-supercritical power plants with CCUS to comply with climate and environmental requirements. The stance adopted by the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development and financial institutions regarding financing coal power plants, is to consider the support of HELE technology. This ensures that South African coal still plays an integral part in the energy mix. Given the significant investments required for carbon capture and storage (CCS) and CCUS technology. South Africa could benefit from establishing strategic partnerships with international organisations and countries that have made advancements in the development of CCS, CCUS and other HELE technologies.
- Nuclear: Koeberg Power Station will reach its end of design life in 2024. To avoid the demise of nuclear power in the energy mix, South Africa has granted an extension on the design life and the expansion of the nuclear power programme into the future. In line with power system requirements, additional capacity from any technology deployed should be done at a scale and pace that flexibly responds to the economy and associated electricity demand, in a manner that avoids tariff shocks in particular; it is the user of electricity that ultimately pays. To this end, as is the case with coal, small nuclear units will be a manageable investment when compared to a fleet approach. The development of such plants globally is therefore particularly interesting for South Africa, and upfront planning with regard to additional nuclear capacity is a requisite, given the less than 10-year lead time, for timely decision making and implementation.
- Natural gas: Gas-to-power technologies provide the flexibility required to complement renewable energy. While in the short term

the opportunity is to pursue gas import options, local and regional gas resources will allow for scaling up within manageable risk levels. Exploration to assess the magnitude of local recoverable shale and coastal gas are being pursued. There is enormous potential and opportunity in this respect and the Brulpadda gas resource discovery in the Outeniqua Basin of South Africa, piped natural gas from Mozambique (Rovuma Basin), and indigenous gas like coal-bed methane and ultimately shale gas, could form a central part of the strategy for regional economic integration within SADC. Cooperation with neighbouring countries is being pursued and partnerships are being developed for joint exploitation and beneficiation of natural gas within the SADC region.

- · Renewable energy: Solar photovoltaic (PV), wind and concentrated solar power with storage present an opportunity to diversify the electricity mix, to produce distributed generation and to provide off-grid electricity. Renewable technologies also present ample potential for the creation of new industries, job creation and localisation across the value chain. The Wind Atlas, developed for South Africa, provides a basis for the quantification of the potential that wind holds for power generation elsewhere in the country, over and above the prevalence of wind resources around the coastal areas. Most wind projects have been developed in the Western Cape and Eastern Cape thus far. The generation of electricity and heat (to be supplied for industrial processes), through biomass and biogas holds huge potential in South Africa, recognising that such projects range from small (kW) to larger (MW) scale and could be distributed across the industrial centres. Biomass from the waste, paper and pulp, and sugar industries can be utilised in co-generation plants and deliver electricity at a price-competitive level with minimal transmission and distribution infrastructure requirements. When deployed together, the nexus between the biomass and government-backed biofuels programmes could improve the economics of the initiatives and create job opportunities in rural and urban centers.
- Energy storage: There is a harmonising relationship between smart grid systems, energy storage and non-dispatchable renewable energy technologies based on wind and solar PV. The traditional power delivery model is being disrupted by technological developments related to energy storage, and more renewable energy can be harnessed despite the reality that the timing of its production might be during low-demand periods. Storage technologies, including battery systems, compressed air energy storage, flywheel energy storage and hydrogen fuel cells are developments that can address this issue, especially in the South African context where over 6 GW of renewable energy has been introduced, yet the power system does not have the requisite storage capacity or flexibility.

Integrated Energy Plan (IEP)

The development of a national IEP was envisaged in the White Paper on the Energy Policy of the Republic of South Africa of 1998 and, in terms of the National Energy Act of 2008. The IEP provides a roadmap of the future energy landscape for South Africa which guides future energy infrastructure investments and policy development. The IEP examines current energy consumption trends within different sectors

of the economy and uses this to project future energy requirements, based on different scenarios.

While the IEP focuses on demand for all energy forms across all the economic sectors at a high level, more detailed analysis of different demand growth profiles and supply-side options for the two main energy sub-sectors, namely electricity generation and liquid fuels supply, will be detailed in supporting sector plans. For the gas sub-sector, a draft framework which explores future possible options for the development of a gas market in South Africa is being developed. This has been undertaken to analyse the differences in each of the sectors, considering the complexities and level of maturity of each sub-sector.

Natural gas

There is enormous potential and opportunity through the Brulpadda gas resource discovery in the Outeniqua Basin of South Africa and piped natural gas from Mozambique (Rovuma Basin). Indigenous gas, like coal-bed methane and shale gas, form a central part of the country's strategy for regional economic integration within SADC.

Cooperation with neighbouring countries is being explored and partnerships are developed for joint exploitation and beneficiation of natural gas within the SADC region. The SADC Gas Master Plan will identify the short- and long-term infrastructure requirements to enable the uptake of a natural gas market.

South Africa continues to run diesel plants at Ankerlig (Saldanha Bay), Gourikwa (Mossel Bay), Avon (Outside Durban) and Dedisa (Coega Industrial Development Zone), because of the unavailability of natural gas, which is cheaper than diesel. The gas to power nexus has not yet been exploited to the extent that gas plants at Avon and Dedisa could be converted to combined cycle plants, provided that natural gas, either pipeline or LNG infrastructure, is developed.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (REIPPPP)

The REIPPPP has become one of the world's most progressive and successful alternative energy programmes. Ever since the introduction of these renewable energy technology programmes (solar, wind, biomass, small hydro and landfill gas power), plants have been going up across the country, feeding additional, clean energy into the national grid.

The REIPPPP represents the country's most comprehensive strategy to date, in achieving the transition to a greener economy. The programme has been designed to contribute to the development of a local green industry and the creation of green jobs.

The programme seeks to procure energy from small-scale IPPs with projects that generate between one MW and five MW of energy from solar, wind, biomass and landfill gas projects.

International cooperatio

South Africa is a member of the International Energy Forum (IEF), which aims to foster greater mutual understanding and awareness of common energy interests among its members.

The 74-member countries of the forum are signatories to the IEF Charter, which outlines the framework of the global energy dialogue through this intergovernmental arrangement. South Africa is a member state of the International Renewable Energy Agency (IRENA)

which seeks to make an impact in the world of renewable energy by maintaining a clear and independent position, providing a range of reliable and well-understood services that complement those already offered by the renewable energy community and gather existing, but scattered, activities around a central hub.

The country has been a member of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) for decades and has been both a recipient and provider of services emanating from the agency.

As a member state of the IAEA, permanent member of the board of directors and actively participating in nuclear energy, safety, technology, security and disarmament, South Africa has contributed to efforts of ensuring that nuclear energy is used for peaceful purposes like power generation, as well as medical, industrial and agricultural initiatives.

Sustainable development in Africa

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project is a flagship programme for the African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development. It intends to pilot the use of hydro-electric energy obtained from the Inga rapids site in the DRC to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River, will be the first of these projects.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale. Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Joint Meeting of SADC Ministers of Energy and Water

The SADC Ministers responsible for energy and water met on 30 October 2020 through video conferencing. The meeting was hosted by Mozambique. The Ministers deliberated on programmes of regional dimensions in support of the implementation of the SADC Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan (RISDP) 2020 – 30 and the SADC Vision 2050, particularly programmes of infrastructure development.

The meeting reviewed progress made towards the delivery of the programmes in the energy and water sectors, and implementation of previous Ministerial decisions from the meeting held in Windhoek, Namibia, in 2019. The meeting also considered a report on the impact

of the COVID-19 pandemic and how it has affected investments in the energy and water sectors in the region, and proposed mitigation measures that could be applied at regional and national level. Ministers reviewed strategic instruments for guiding adherence to COVID-19 and similar pandemics in the energy sector at regional and national level, and called for continuous assessment and monitoring of the impacts.

Fifth Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) Meeting of Energy Ministers

The Ministers of energy and heads of delegation of the BRICS countries held the fifth BRICS Ministers of Energy Meeting on

14 October 2020 via videoconference. It was chaired by Russian Energy Minister Alexander Novak. The Ministers discussed the coordination of international efforts to overcome the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on the energy sector, promotion of the energy dialogue between the BRICS countries, expansion of technological cooperation, as well as the results of the BRICS Energy Research Platform's activities and plans for further development.

Cross-border gas trade agreements

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, South Africa has signed cross-border gas trade agreements with Mozambique and Namibia.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.In 2017, Eskom signed a five-year electricity sales agreement with Namibia's national electricity utility, NamPower.

Eskom will supplement generation capacity for South Africa's neighbour with its surplus electricity, providing Namibia with energy security and allowing for economic development and growth.

NamPower has also concluded a number of projects to establish renewable energy projects in Namibia and to enhance its local production.

The same year, Eskom and Botswana Power Corporation signed a three-year firm power supply agreement – in line with Eskom's plan to increase its electricity exports to South Africa's neighbouring states.

Import and export of fuel products

The import of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, due to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Eswatini.

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its greenhouse gas emissions. South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of

GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 megatonnes of carbon dioxide per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption, and is subsequently a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa is proactively moving the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the DMRE playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the clean development mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol. It developed the White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development, together with an energy efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

The South African Renewables Initiative secures international financing partnerships in investment in deploying renewable energy and develops renewable supply chains through securing a critical mass of renewable energy, without imposing undue burden on the fiscus or the South African consumer.

In line with this objective, the DMRE has signed a declaration of intent with Germany, the United Kingdom, Denmark, Norway and the European Investment Bank. The agreement will lead to the establishment of a fund to assist in the deployment of renewable energy.

Further, the DMRE participates in structures such as the:

- the IRENA,
- the IEF.
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation.
- United Nations (UN) Industrial Development Organisation,
- · Clean Energy Ministerial, and
- African Union-European Union Energy Partnership.

Programmes

Minerals and Petroleum Regulation

The programme regulates the mining, minerals and petroleum sectors to promote economic growth, employment, transformation and sustainable development. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

- Improving the participation of historically disadvantaged South Africans in the mining sector and contributing to its transformation by issuing mining rights and permits to 360 historically disadvantaged South Africans over the medium term, and monitoring and enforcing compliance with procurement requirements that relate to historically disadvantaged South Africans, as prescribed by the mining charter, on an ongoing basis.
- Monitoring and enforcing compliance with the statutory obligations
 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002,
 and the Mining Charter by conducting 636 social and labour plan
 verification inspections, 1 275 mine economic verification audits and 3
 825 environmental verification inspections over the medium term.
- Ensuring the development and transformation of the liquid fuels

industry, and the security of supply of petroleum and petroleum products by monitoring and enforcing technical and economic compliance with legislation, specifications, standards and licence conditions.

- Facilitating the orderly operation of the petroleum sector through an analysis of fuel supply and the efficient adjudication of licences for manufacturing, wholesaling and retailing activities on an ongoing basis.
- Strengthening the regulatory framework in the liquid fuels
 petroleum industry by implementing the regulatory accounting
 system to introduce a transparent fuel pricing mechanism that
 will provide appropriate returns to investors in the liquid fuels
 sector across the value chain on an ongoing basis.
- Strengthening the regulatory framework in the liquid fuels
 petroleum industry by implementing the regulatory accounting
 system to introduce a transparent fuel pricing mechanism that
 will provide appropriate returns to investors in the liquid fuels
 sector across the value chain on an ongoing basis.

Mining, Minerals and Energy Policy Development

The programme formulates, maintains and implements integrated minerals and energy policies to promote and encourage investment in the mining and energy industry.

The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

- Promoting investment in the mining, minerals and upstream petroleum sectors over the medium term, by hosting 138 promotional and awareness activities or events for local and foreign investors, participating in local and international mining and petroleum conferences and events, engaging with stakeholders in various forums, and leading the implementation of key government priorities, ensuring the full implementation of plans for developing the Oceans Economy for oil and gas exploration through Operation Phakisa, and ensuring the full implementation of the Shale Gas Action Plan through consultations, advocacy, research and promotional activities for shale gas exploration.
- Managing diplomatic imperatives and relations with foreign countries to benefit South Africa by establishing and implementing bilateral and multilateral partnerships for mining and upstream petroleum development on an ongoing basis.
- Promoting the sustainable use and management of mineral resources over the medium term, by participating in technical and strategic partnerships such as the intergovernmental forum on mining, minerals, metals and sustainable development; the Benguela Current Commission; and UN programmes.
- Improving energy security over the medium term by amending the Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 28 of 2007), the NERSA Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004) and the NNR Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999).

Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate

The inspectorate ensures the health and safety of employees in the mining sector. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

 Promoting health and safety by reducing occupational fatalities by 20%, occupational injuries by 20% and occupational disease by

SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22 Mineral Resources and Energy

- 10%; implementing the Occupational Health and Safety Strategy; and enforcing guidelines and conducting investigations, inspections and audits on an ongoing basis.
- Contributing to skills development in the mining sector by implementing, monitoring and evaluating the certificate of competency model on an ongoing basis.
- Improving health care in the mining sector on an ongoing basis by ensuring 80% adherence to prescribed time frames for resolving medical appeals, 100% adherence to timelines for appeals to the chief inspector of mines, and 100% adherence to timelines for applications in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002.

Mineral Resources and Energy Projects

The programme manages, coordinates and monitors projects focused on access to mineral and energy resources. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

- Increasing access to electricity by managing funding and monitoring of the implementation of the INEP on an ongoing basis.
- Increasing public awareness on energy issues, while empowering disadvantaged and vulnerable groups by identifying, implementing, managing and coordinating upliftment programmes and projects on an ongoing basis.
- Ensuring the efficient management of electricity supply on an ongoing basis, by enhancing the application of business principles for project management to assist programme and project managers, coordinating, monitoring and reporting on the implementation of programmes and projects focused on the development, improvement and transformation of the energy generation, refinement, transmission and distribution industry and its infrastructure.
- Promoting the sustainable use and management of mineral and energy resources by rehabilitating 129 derelict and ownerless mines, providing marginal mines with subsidies for water management solutions, and managing the funding and monitoring of the Energy Efficiency and Demand-side Management Grant to municipalities.

Nuclear Energy Regulation and Management

The programme manages the South African nuclear energy industry and controls nuclear materials in terms of international obligations, nuclear legislation and policies to ensure the peaceful use of nuclear energy. The programme's objectives over the medium term include:

Ensuring compliance with international nuclear obligations by applying the relevant statutory frameworks and following the guidelines of the IAEA for best international practices on an ongoing basis.

Regulating the security of nuclear material, related equipment and facilities by developing and publishing appropriate regulations on an ongoing basis.

Conducting awareness workshops and training courses, and participating in regional and international forums to enhance compliance with legislation and international obligations on an ongoing basis.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Police, Defence and Military Veterans

Police, Defence and Military Veterans

The National Development Plan (NDP) 2030 envisions a South Africa where people feel safe and enjoy a community life free of crime. Achieving this requires a well-functioning criminal justice system, in which the police, the judiciary and correctional services work together to ensure that suspects are caught, prosecuted, convicted if guilty, and securely incarcerated and rehabilitated.

In recognition of the multitude of challenges confronting the country, especially women, youth and people with disabilities, the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) 2019-2024 emphasises these crosscutting focus areas for the country's developmental vision. A safe and secure country encourages economic growth and transformation and is, therefore, an important contributor to addressing the challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment.

Increased feelings of safety in communities features as an apex priority of government and is a key element of the MTSF. The SAPS approaches this priority from both an outcome and an output point of view, as several outcome-based measures that relate to trust in the SAPS, safety levels in communities and the professionalism of the SAPS will be measured within the context of the SAPS's 2020-2025 Strategic Plan.

In recognition of the multitude of challenges confronting the country, especially women, youth and people with disabilities, the MTSF 2019-2024 emphasises these cross-cutting focus areas for the country's developmental vision. A safe and secure country encourages economic growth and transformation and is, therefore, an important contributor to addressing the challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment.

Department of Police

Chapter 12 of the NDP outlines a vision to build safer communities through demilitarising and professionalising the police service and adopting an integrated and holistic approach to safety and security in South Africa. This vision is given expression to Priority 5 (Social Cohesion and Safe Communities) of the MTSF, with which the work of the South African Police Service (SAPS) is aligned. The priority focuses on ensuring safety and security, as the primary contributor to addressing the triple challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment.

The SAPS – South Africa's principal law-enforcement body – derives its powers and functions from Section 205 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, and from the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995). This legislation regulates the SAPS, in terms of its core functions, which are to prevent, investigate and combat crime; maintain public order; protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property; and uphold and enforce the law. The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa.

The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat crime that may threaten the safety and security of any community;
- investigate any crimes threatening the safety and security of any community;
- · ensure that offenders are brought to justice; and
- participate in efforts to address the causes of crime.

The National Commissioner is the Accounting Officer of the SAPS. Deputy national commissioners and provincial commissioners report to the National Commissioner. The MTSF plays a central role in all government planning. The outcomes, interventions and associated

performance measures that are relevant to the SAPS are integrated into either the Strategic Plan or the department's Annual Performance Plan (APP).

These MTSF-related priorities are cascaded down into the planning and performance management mechanisms of the department, so as to ensure implementation. Increased feelings of safety in communities features as an apex priority of government and is a key element of the MTSF. The SAPS approaches this priority from both an outcome and an output point of view, as several outcome-based measures that relate to trust in the SAPS, safety levels in communities and the professionalism of the SAPS will be measured within the context of the SAPS's 2020 to 2025 Strategic Plan.

Over the medium-term, the SAPS will focus on improving community safety, reducing violence against women and children, combating organised crime, employing the stabilisation and normalisation approaches to fighting crime; and improving capacity for specialised investigations.

Enhancing of police visibility, improving of basic standards of service delivery at frontline service points and thorough and responsive investigation of crime are key in reducing levels of violent crime, including crimes against women and children and improving perceptions of safety and security. The NASP has also prioritised cybercrime and the neutralisation of drug syndicates, in an effort to reduce organised crime.

The SAPS's approach to cybercrime will address the value chain associated with the crime, including the reporting and recording of incidents of cybercrime; ensuring an effective first responder capability to and the investigation and prosecution of cybercrime; establishing an integrated approach to stakeholder management; ensuring cybercrime intelligence and situational awareness; and the provisioning of cybercrime investigative support.

The Revised MTSF (2019 – 2024) also highlights the urgent need for the mainstreaming of the rights of women, youth and persons with disabilities across the Public Service. In addition, the country has declared Gender-Based Violence (GBV) and sexual offences to be a national disaster and government has prioritised it accordingly.

The SAPS plays a crucial role in addressing GBV as a first line of defence within the criminal justice system value chain and it is, therefore, imperative that the SAPS has a coordinated approach to respond to GBVF through a national action plan and a high-level governance structure, which regulates the implementation

Improving community safety

Safety within communities is dependent on mobilising all sectors of society, to ensure coordinated crime prevention interventions and the strategic deployment of resources. To this end, over the medium term, the SAPS will continue to implement initiatives, such as the Community-in-Blue Concept and the Safer Cities Framework, which are key elements in the Community Policing Strategy.

The implementation of the District Development Model (DDM) is also key in promoting integrated planning across all spheres of government and improving community safety. Expenditure for these activities is within the Visible Policing Programme's allocation of R156.2 billion over the medium-term. The SAPS' role, in respect of the DDM, will be required to have a two-pronged approach. The first element of this approach will focus on the establishment of safe and secure

communities, while the second will ensure the SAPS's collaboration with all spheres of government but particularly local government, in establishing an integrated planning, budgeting, implementation, reporting and monitoring process. In establishing safe and secure communities, the SAPS will lead the implementation of the following initiatives, in collaboration with identified stakeholders in the public and private sectors:

- Ensuring a multidisciplinary approach to the significant reduction in the incidence of contact crime at the 30 police stations in the country, at which the majority of the incidents of contact crime are reported. The top 30 high contact crime weight stations are identified annually, based on the analysis of reported contact crime during the preceding financial year.
- The initiation of the Safer Cities Framework in identified cities, which will ensure a collaborative approach by all relevant stakeholders, to making these cities safer, using a technologically driven approach to integrating all efforts related to safety and security and service delivery.
- The GBVF hotspot stations, that have been identified, in consultation with the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disability,based on the consideration of a number of variables, including, inter alia the reported incidence of crimes against women, domestic violence and GBV-related calls received via the GBVF National Command Centre, reported incidence of cases reported to health facilities and reported cases received by Kgomotso, Khuseleka and Thuthuzela care centres.
- Participate in the establishment of Community Safety Forums (CSFs) in all districts and metropolitan areas, including cooperation with CSFs in the development, implementation and monitoring of these forums, guided by the Local Crime Prevention Framework and Traditional Policing Concept, which comprises community mobilisation against crime; road safety; school safety; GBV; substance abuse interventions; rural safety; victim profiling and victim empowerment; and improved visibility of the SAPS.

Furthermore, the SAPS is to ensure that Community Policing Forums (CPFs) are functioning and are effective, to enhance cooperation between communities and the police at local level.

Reducing contact crimes and violence against women and children

The GBV and Sexual Offences Action Plan remains central to the department's efforts to reduce violence and reported contact crimes against women and children. In implementing the plan over the medium term, the SAPS will prioritise providing capacity to the family violence, child protection and sexual offences units to ensure that they have enough personnel to respond to cases effectively.

To ensure that there are appropriate interventions in place, including prevention and awareness programmes, that personnel are adequately trained, and that police stations have GBV, the department will also aim to develop an action plan that focuses on the 30 police stations with the highest number of reported crimes against women and children. These activities will be also carried out in the Visible Policing programme

Unacceptably high levels of crime in South Africa, especially serious and violent crime, result in people living in fear and feeling unsafe, particularly vulnerable groups, such as women and children. The call for a 50% reduction in violent crime in a decade is directly associated with the need for improved feelings of safety in communities.

Therefore, ongoing emphasis is placed on the reduction of contact crime. In some instances, these crimes, particularly if related to domestic violence, are committed within the confines of residences. High-crime weight stations are associated with, but very distinct in nature from, hotspot areas, which may emerge during the course of a year, depending on a range of factors that contribute to substantially elevated levels of socio-economic disruption and crime and dramatically reduced perceptions of safety and security.

The SAPS continues to promote and protect the rights of women, children and vulnerable groups and particular attention is paid to the violence and abuse, which is perpetrated against them. The functioning and resourcing of various specialised units, such as the Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences Units, have been enhanced, to address crimes against women and children.

The implementation of the GBV Strategy will also assist to intensify and accelerate efforts to prevent the crime, by creating multisectoral and long-term strategic interventions. The SAPS also acknowledges the rights of people with disabilities and will continue to protect and ensure their full and equal enjoyment of all human rights and fundamental freedom.

Combating organised crime

Over the period ahead, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation, supported by the detective services and crime intelligence units, will continue to focus on the implementation of an integrated approach to ensure the effective prevention and investigation of fraud, corruption, and organised and economic crimes.

With the National Prosecuting Authority, these units will work to improve, by 2024/25, the quality of investigations to increase the percentage of trial-ready case dockets for serious corruption per year in the public and private sectors to 70%.

The promulgation of the Cybercrimes Act, 2020 (Act 19 of 2020) places an obligation on the department to ensure its implementation, in consultation with relevant role players and stakeholders in the public and private sectors. Over the medium term, the department will develop an implementation plan for the act that outlines its phased implementation. These activities will be carried out in the Detective Services programme, which has an allocation of R62.8 billion over the medium term.

Mitigating the impact of baseline reductions

In an effort to mitigate the impact of budget reductions on service delivery, the SAPS will explore alternatives to how it renders services in communities. In doing so, it will focus on increasing the capacity of police stations, particularly the 30 stations with the highest contact crimes reported; redirecting resources towards increasing police visibility; improving access to policing services; and enhancing frontline service delivery.

This will involve recruiting entry-level officers and redeploying senior officers to stabilise areas with high levels of crime or those that have been identified as hotspots due to the prevalence of specific crime-related threats. In addition, spending on departmental events is expected to be reduced along with spending on catering and hiring.

Accordingly, the SAPS will continue to conduct virtual meetings through video conferences, as necessitated by COVID-19 lockdown restrictions, thereby limiting costly interprovincial travel. Over the

medium term, these cost-containment measures are anticipated to ensure that the SAPS's budget is sufficient to carry out its planned activities.

Citizenry actively supporting in the fight against crime

The implementation of community policing concepts, such as CPFs and sector crime forums, continues to serve as platforms of engagement between the SAPS and the community, in an effort to encourage a shared responsibility, in matters relating to the prevention of crime and community safety.

The implementation of the Community Policing Strategy and the Community-in-Blue Concept will further enhance community-police partnerships in the fight against crime, through a multidisciplinary collaboration focusing on public education, building community resilience to crime, enabling the SAPS to promote cooperation between the service and the community, improve and fulfil the service delivery needs of the community and strengthen partnerships to prevent crime or reduce the fear of crime, by jointly identifying the root causes of crime.

The Safer Cities Concept, which is sometimes referred to as the Smart City or Urban Safety, is a multidisciplinary and collaborative approach, involving a range of stakeholders from various sectors of government, civil society and business. The ultimate goal is to have a crime-free city or district, in order to enhance the economic status of the identified precinct.

In furthering a community-centred approach to policing, specific attention is paid to the establishment and maintenance of sustainable partnerships with key local, national (including the public and private sectors) and international stakeholders. These partnerships seek to harness innovative solutions to common challenges impacting on safety, security and economic prosperity, by focusing efforts to align and integrate the application of resources, in addressing crime-related issues that undermine socio-economic development in the country.

Community outreach campaigns are also conducted with the ultimate aim to achieve long-term lasting behavioural changes, regarding crime and crime-related matters. Awareness raising, addresses the knowledge of individuals and aims to ensure that communities understand the impact of crime and take action to respond to crime. The main purpose is to inform the community about a current problem by highlighting and drawing attention to it in such a way that the information and education provided can solicit action to make changes.

Reducing illegal mining

The Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan (ERRP), seeks to restore economic growth and employment and has been factored into the Revised MTSF. The SAPS will contribute directly to ERRP through the implementation of the Anti-corruption Strategy and various initiatives to fight illicit economic activities, including the targeting of illegal mining operations, which pose a threat to the economy and undermine the authority of the State.

The impact of COVID-19 on police operations

The COVID-19 pandemic has impacted negatively on the SAPS's resources and in particular, its human and financial resources. The impact of COVID-19 has been both direct, in that SAPS members have been affected by the virus and indirect, as their ability to perform their

mandated functions has been adversely affected. SAPS members have contracted and unfortunately succumbed to the virus and as at 30 March 2022, approximately 8 725 287 screenings of and 171 202 tests on SAPS members have been conducted.

The impact of COVID-19 on the SAPS' members and their ability to perform their functions became particularly evident when considering that, as at 23 February 2022, there were approximately 47 461 confirmed cases involving SAPS members and 884 fatalities, as a result of COVID-19.

The SAPS has spent approximately R1.75 billion, in is efforts to contain and manage COVID-19 within its ranks, but also in terms of the operational requirements associated with enforcing the Disaster Management Act Regulations.

The department's response to COVID-19

The SAPS established national and provincial COVID-19 steering committees. The SAPS also participated in the National Joint Operational and Intelligence Structure, as well as the National Joint Operational Centre, at both national and provincial level, functioning as a multi-disciplinary approach in providing inputs on a continuous basis by various departments on the containment and management of COVID-19.

A number of departmental (SAPS) protocols, directives and/or communication plans were developed and disseminated, to raise awareness and sensitise SAPS members on exercising preventative measures on the spread and containment of the virus. Furthermore, the SAPS ensured the procurement of Personal Protective Equipment (PPE), through the assistance of National Treasury with regard to compliance to set procurement regulations.

Interventions implemented by the SAPS, in 2021/22, in response to COVID-19 include, the procurement and provisioning of PPE and sanitisers to SAPS personnel and awaiting trial prisoners; random inspections, to assess compliance with the directives and the protocols that were put in place to prevent the spread of COVID-19; travel and subsistence expenditure for SAPS employees deployed outside their normal place of work, to enforce regulations relating to COVID-19; the procurement of items for services, such as waste removal, resources for roadblocks, etc.; and the provisioning of air transportation to senior managers within the SAPS, the Minister and deputy Minister of Police, as well as passengers from BIOCAIR for the transportation of vaccines.

Legislation

The Minister of Police is responsible for determining national policing policies and the overall execution of the department's mandate, in relation to the following key pieces of legislation:

- · Civilian Secretariat for Police Service Act, 2011 (Act 2 of 2011);
- Control of Access to Public Premises and Vehicles Act, 1985 (Act 53 of 1985);
- Critical Infrastructure Protection Act, 2013 (Act 8 of 2019);
- Dangerous Weapons Act, 2013 (Act 15 of 2013);
- Explosives Act, 1956 (Act 26 of 1956);
- · Firearms Control Act, 2000 (Act 60 of 2000);
- Game Theft Act, 1991 (Act 105 of 1991);
- Intimidation Act, 1982 (Act 72 of 1982);
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID) Act, 2011 (Act 1 of 2011);

Police, Defence and Military Veterans

- National Key Points (NKPs) Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980);
- Private Security Industry Regulation Act, 2001 (Act 56 of 2001);
- Protection of Constitutional Democracy against Terrorist and Related Activities Act, 2004 (Act 33 of 2004);
- · Regulation of Gatherings Act, 1993 (Act 205 of 1993);
- · Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009 (Act 6 of 2009);
- SAPS Act of 1995; the Stock Theft Act, 1959 (Act 57 of 1959);
- · Tear Gas Act, 1964 (Act 16 of 1964).

In the execution of its Constitutional mandate, the SAPS derives its powers and functions from the following key legislation:

- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007);
- Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008);
- · Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005);
- · Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977);
- · Counterfeit Goods Act, 1997 (Act 37 of 1997);
- Customs and Excise Act, 1966 (Act 91 of 1966);
- · Diamonds Act, 1986 (Act 56 of 1986);
- Disaster Management Act of 2002);
- Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998);
- · Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act, 1992 (Act 140 of 1992);
- Exchange Control Regulations, 1961;
- · Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996);
- Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001);
- Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002);
- Inquest Act, 1959 (Act 58 of 1959);
- Implementation of the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002);
- International Cooperation in Criminal Matters Act, 1996 (Act 75 of 1996);
- Liguor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003);
- · Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998);
- Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002);
- National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002);
- National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998);
- National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996);
- National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994);
- Non-Proliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction Act, 1993 (Act 87 of 1993);
- Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006);
- Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005);
- Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004);
- Prevention and Combating of Torture of Persons Act, 2013 (Act 13 of 2013);
- Prevention and Combating of Trafficking in Persons Act, 2013 (Act 7 of 2013);
- Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011);
- · Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998);
- Regulation of Interception of Communication and Provision of Communication-Related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002);
- Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act, 2010 (Act 2 of 2010):
- · Sexual Offences Act, 1957 (Act 23 of 1957); and
- State of Emergency Act, 1997 (Act 64 of 1997).

Code of Conduct

Employees of the SAPS are bound by the prescripts contained in Section 205 (3) of the Constitution to prevent, combat and investigate crime, to maintain public order, to protect and secure the inhabitants of the country and their property, and to uphold and enforce the law. Employees are also bound to uphold and abide by the prescripts contained in the SAPS Act of 1995 and other legislation, the SAPS Employment Regulations, 2018 and National Instruction 18 of 2019 (Integrity Management in the SAPS), to adhere to the SAPS Code of Conduct.

The code of conduct serves as a guideline for SAPS members to know and understand their responsibilities and obligations towards the general public. Each member of the SAPS is obliged to give a written undertaking to adhere to the principles of the Code of Conduct, to ensure a safe and secure environment for all people of South Africa and to protect the life and property of the citizens of South Africa and all its inhabitants, including foreigners.

This ensures that all members are faithful to South Africa, honour the Constitution and abide by it in the performance of their duties and their daily tasks. Posters of the code of conduct and information about ethical behaviour in the SAPS are displayed at all police stations and units.

Budget

In 2021/22, the SAPS was allocated a budget R100.5 billion.

Entity

Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority (PSiRA)

The PSiRA is mandated to regulate the private security industry, and exercise control over the practice of the occupation of security service providers in the public and national interest, as well as in the interest of the private security industry itself.

Over the medium term, the authority will continue to focus on implementing its digital transformation strategy, which entails migrating from a manual system of registration and training to an online platform. This is expected to result in a reduction of the turnaround time for the processing of registrations by security businesses and security officers from 5 days for security businesses and 12 days for security officers in 2021/22 to 3 days for both in 2024/25.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.1%, from R354 million in 2021/22 to R485.9 million in 2024/25, mainly driven by spending on compensation of employees, which accounts for an estimated 52.6% (R889.4 million) of the authority's expenditure over the period ahead. This is expected to allow for critical vacant posts to be filled, resulting in an increase in the number of personnel from 372 in 2021/22 to 413 in 2024/25.

Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure. This is mainly due to an anticipated increase in the number of registrations from security officers, from 120 000 in 2021/22 to 144 000 in 2024/25, as a result of the migration to the online platform.

More than 60% (R926.9 million) of the authority's revenue over the MTEF period is generated by the collection of annual and registration fees from private security businesses and security officers. The remaining revenue is generated from the sale of renewal certificates, the training of security officers, and training accreditation fees collected from training providers.

Staff establishment of the SAPS

The SAPS staff establishment has been declining steadily over the past 10 years. Measured against the peak of 2011/12, where the department had a total staff compliment of 199 345, the decrease in the establishment represents 8.8% (from 199 345 to 182 126), at the end of 2020/21.

Considering the establishment projections incorporated within the Estimates of National Expenditure (ENE) the staff establishment will stabilise at 178 708, in the 2022/23 financial year. This figure will be maintained over the medium-term, as the SAPS has been allocated additional funding of R8.7 billion to accommodate the appointment of 12 000 entry-level members, of which 10 000 will replace personnel losses due to natural attrition and 2 000 will result in increases to the establishment. As such, the number of personnel is expected to increase, by 2 000 from 176 708 in 2021/22 to 178 708 in 2022/23, which will be maintained over the medium-term.

The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998) provides the foundation for sustainable and transformative progress on gender equity in the workforce and the employment of people with disabilities. The current overall gender representation in the SAPS is at 61.38% (109 134) male and 38.62% (68 660) females, against the target of 54.94% males and 45.06% females. During 2022/23, the SAPS has set a target of 60.89% males to 38.29% females, while striving towards the achievement of the 50/50 target by 2030.

The current representation of people with disability in the SAPS is 1.74% (312 of the total workforce of 177 794). The target set by government is a minimum of 2% of the workforce. As a result of the inherent requirement of functional policing, the SAPS finds it difficult to achieve the 2% target. The constitutional mandate, which informs the existence of the SAPS, requires that one must be physically and mentally fit to be a police officer, which is a barrier for people with disability to be recruited for the operational environment of the SAPS, which constitutes 70% of the workforce.

The SAPS has, however, resolved that 5% of the entry level intake for Public Service Act of 1994 vacant posts, will be ring-fenced for persons with disability. Functional personnel that become disabled while still employed by the SAPS, will be retrained to be redeployed to support environments, where the skill and knowledge on functional experience is required.

The SAPS has developed and refined a model to calculate the human resource need of each police station. This formula takes into consideration the minimum number of police officers needed to render an effective police service and considers the population density of the policing area of each police station.

The formula, for instance, also respects the dynamics of each police station, in respect of its geography, level of urbanisation and infrastructure and industries. The SAPS currently utilises a police to citizen ratio per capita (1:450) and it has the same meaning when converted and expressed as the police density per 100 000 citizens (222/100 000). Research is currently underway to benchmark police to population calculation practices. Another factor to be considered in calculating the police to citizen ratio, is the distinction that needs to be made between those Police Service Act of 1995 members performing operational functions, those performing operational support functions and those performing generic support functions.

Police safety

Attacks and unnatural deaths of employees of the SAPS, both on and off duty, are regarded as a threat to the stability of the country. Attacks and murder of police employees have a potential to create a negative perception among the citizens of the country, as to whether the SAPS is able to fulfil its constitutional mandate to prevent, combat and investigate crime, maintain public order, uphold and enforce the law. It further creates the perception that criminals are willing and able to act with impunity by disregarding the law and negating the impact of the SAPS in furthering their criminal activities.

A police safety committee is in place as a tool to coordinate all activities, in support of enhancing the safety of all SAPS members, including the implementation of employee health and wellness programmes, the enhancement of tactical training programmes, the analysis of incidents which informed the development of proactive measures to reduce the number of police attacks and killing of police members, as well as enhanced safety awareness, internally and externally.

Programmes

Administration

The purpose of the programme is to provide strategic leadership, management and support services to the department. In 2021/22, priority areas within the this programme focused primarily on:

- a professional and capable SAPS focusing on the loss and theft
 of SAPS firearms, as these firearms are invariably used in the
 perpetration of crimes that undermine communities' feelings of safety,
 due to increased levels of violent crime and the valid perceptions that
 the SAPS is not able to completely control this critical resource;
- ensuring an adequately resourced policing capability, in response to the demand that is determined by the operational policing capabilities;
- increasing access to policing services, to enhance the SAPS's geographical footprint;
- improving of SAPS members' capabilities or skills levels, focusing on areas prioritised through the correlation of the assessment of the training demand and the priorities of government;
- modernising the SAPS's network and prioritised sites, to ensure an adequately resourced policing capability, from a technological perspective, including the radio communication infrastructure and the wide area networks, which will improve access to the SAPS's corporate systems, primarily at local level; t
- enhancing levels of ethics and integrity within the SAPS, comprising obligatory financial disclosures for various categories of employees, the management of remunerative work performed outside of the SAPS, by SAPS members and the conducting of ethics and integrity advocacy and awareness programmes;
- · managing cases referred to the SAPS by IPID;
- nstitutionalising sound corporate governance at all levels within the SAPS, guided by national and internal standards;
- · eradicating fruitless and wasteful expenditure;
- a tailored-made corporate governance framework for the organisation, informed by King IV and the internal dynamics of the organisation; and assurance provisioning associated with the SAPS' internal audit function and inspection capabilities, as the SAPS' primary internal assurance providers.

Improved access to policing

The increasing of access to the policing services provided to communities will enhance the SAPS' geographical footprint. Mobile contact points are to improve police presence, to ensure accessibility, to enhance service delivery in crime hotspots and to enhance and strengthen the relationship between communities and the police. The SAPS, guided by the need to take the policing services to the community or improve on the accessibility to access to policing services, identified a need to establish additional service points (satellite stations and contact points).

The SAPS conducts annual accessibility assessments by conducting feasibility/work study investigations, in order to respond to the growing policing demands, as a result of the growth and distribution of the population. The aforementioned investigations resulted in the SAPS establishing an additional 205 service points since 1994 to date, in order to improve accessibility to policing services by the population.

In 2009 the SAPS had 1 116 police stations which has since grown to 1 158 police stations. In order to manage the services rendered at these 1 158 police stations, the SAPS organisational structure provides for three additional organisational, or hierarchical levels. Police stations are currently grouped into districts, managed by a district commander with only an essential support capacity to coordinate and monitor the functions of police stations.

The recent spate of attacks at police stations has necessitated security upgrades at all police stations, which have not previously formed part of the capital budget. The SAPS prioritised 90 police stations for each financial year, which is estimated at R132 000 000, per financial year, including the additional Top 30 High Contact Crime Police Stations, thereby exerting an additional burden on the current budget.

In addition, the security risk posed by SAPS detention facilities that are closed, due to their poor condition, poses a significant security risk to the public and to SAPS members and has necessitated the execution of projects for the upgrading of detention facilities to Project Five Star specifications. The SAPS has identified the need for detention facilities at 45 police stations to be upgraded, in order to eliminate the current risk.

Improved capability of SAPS members

The Department's Training Provisioning Plan, is aimed to capacitate operational personnel with the knowledge and skills, in order to execute their operational mandate. Over and above the capacitation of operational personnel, managers, supervisors, technical and support personnel are capacitated with relevant development programmes, in order to perform their support functions to provide required support to operational personnel.

The focus that has been adopted by the SAPS' training capability is to support the areas that have been prioritised by the operational environment, including, inter alia, crime prevention, public order policing, the investigation of crime, crime intelligence, forensic science and crime committed against women and children. The SAPS will also enhance the application of ethics and integrity within its ranks, as a key contributor to the establishment of a professional and capable SAPS.

Visible policing

The purpose of the programme is to enable police stations to institute and preserve safety and security and provide for specialised interventions and the policing of South Africa's borders. The objectives are to provide a proactive and responsive policing service to discourage and prevent violent crime, by reducing the number of reported contact crimes and crimes against women and children over the medium-term, through the implementation of priorities and interventions aligned with the integrated criminal justice strategy and to strengthen safety and security in urban and rural communities across the country.

Priority areas within the Visible Policing Programme, in 2021/22, focused primarily on:

- upholding and enforcong the law, in support of the stamping of the authority of the State and a collaborative, consultative approach to policing, by focusing on the improvement of the regulation of firearms, to reduce the number of illegal firearms in circulation as one of the key drivers of violent crime and improve feelings of safety in communities, including the management of the firearm licencing process, within the context of the Firearms Control Act, 2000 (Act 60 of 2000);
- the active closure of identified illegal liquor outlets, to improve socioeconomic conditions, for those who are most vulnerable to crime, particularly women and children and improve feelings of safety in communities:
- the proactive recovery of stolen/lost and illegal firearms, including SAPS-owned firearms, to enhance feeling of safety in communities; the reduction of levels of contact crime, targeting the 30 police station precincts countrywide with the highest reported incidence of contact crime;
- reducing the incidence of escapes form police custody;
- increasing recoveries of stolen and robbed vehicles, due to their association with violent crime;
- the reduction of the incidence of GBVF, specifically with regard to the manner in which GBVF is policed, including ensuring that police stations are in a position to provide victim-friendly services to victims of GBVF and to actually reduce the incidence of contact crime against women and children;
- the strengthening of community partnerships and increasing police visibility, including functional community police forums, to enhance cooperation between communities and the police at local level, the establishment of strategic partnerships, to mobilise key stakeholders in various sectors, to ensure a partnership approach to addressing crime in the country and intensifying the roll-out of the Community-in-Blue and Traditional Policing Concepts and facilitate the implementation of the Safer Cities Framework in identified cities;
- ensuring internal stability, through the policing of incidents of peaceful and violent public protest actions;
- responding to identified illegal mining, which pose a threat to the economy and undermine the authority of the State; and
- operations at land ports, sea ports and airports, to prioritise the searching of vehicles, containers and cargo consignments for illicit drugs, firearms, stolen/robbed vehicles, consignment, smuggled persons and counterfeit goods/contraband.

Reduced availability of illegal liquor

The SAPS plays a pivotal role in enforcing compliance to national and provincial liquor legislation. The existing partnership between the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition, the National Liquor Authority and the SAPS to address enforcement of compliance to the Liquor Act of 2003, was strengthened through the review and signing of a Memorandum of Agreement to appoint the SAPS members as liquor inspectors, thereby assisting in the enhanced enforcement of compliance to the Act.

The active closure of identified illegal liquor outlets improves socioeconomic conditions, particularly for those who are most vulnerable to crime, particularly women and children. Liquor abuse is viewed as a contributor to violent, serious and contact crime in South Africa and a concerted effort by the SAPS, is therefore necessary, to enhance enforcement of compliance to national and provincial liquor legislation.

Increased feelings of safety in communities

Unacceptably high levels of crime in South Africa, especially serious and violent crime, result in people living in fear and feeling unsafe, particularly vulnerable groups, such as women and children. The call for a 50% reduction in violent crime in a decade is directly associated with the need for improved feelings of safety in communities and has been prioritised in the MTSF 2019 – 2024.

Therefore, ongoing emphasis is placed on the reduction of contact crime. In some instances, these crimes, particularly if related to domestic violence, are committed within the confines of residences. The SAPS has identified 30 police stations, in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and the Free State, referred to as the "high-crime weight stations", for focused attention over the short and medium term, which translates into the implementation of specific proactive and reactive interventions, on an annual basis.

The intention is to monitor the application of these interventions, which relate to core policing functions, including the prevention and investigation of crime. The supposition underlying the identification of these stations is that, through the implementation of the aforementioned interventions, the reported incidence of the 17 community-reported serious crimes, will be sustainably reduced.

The high-crime weight stations are associated with, but very distinct in nature from, hotspot areas, which may emerge during the course of a year, depending on a range of factors that contribute to substantially elevated levels of socio-economic disruption and crime and dramatically reduced perceptions of safety and security. The addressing of these hotspots requires a unique policing methodology, which includes two fundamental approaches — the stabilisation approach and the normalisation approach.

The purpose of stabilisation is to mobilise specialised, mobile policing capabilities, such as POP, tactical response teams and NIUs to rapidly address the factors contributing to destabilisation, so as to restore the rule of law. Normalisation interventions are characterised by a community- and stakeholder-centred approach to policing, to ensure a holistic, multifaceted response, which is sustainable, going forward. These operational approaches were informed by the SAPS Turnaround Vision, which identifies six critical focus areas, amongst others, stamping the authority of the State and community-centred policing.

Strengthened community partnerships

Despite the gains that have been made towards the overall reduction in levels of serious crime over the medium term, public trust and confidence in the SAPS are not at the desired levels. This necessitates a concerted effort by the SAPS to involve the public and relevant stakeholders in the prevention, combating and investigation of crime.

The implementation of community policing concepts, such as CPFs, Sector Crime Forums and Rural Safety Priority Committees, continue to serve as platforms of engagement between the SAPS and the community, in an effort to encourage a shared responsibility, in matters relating to the prevention of crime and community safety.

At the end of March 2020, a total of 1 149 of the 1 154 police stations had functional CPFs, 852 of the 875 identified police stations implemented sector policing and 887 rural and rural/urban mixed police stations implemented the set criteria of the four pillars of the Rural Safety Strategy.

In furthering the SAPS's stated intention of ingraining a community-centred approach to policing, specific attention is paid to the establishment and maintenance of sustainable partnerships with key local, national (including the public and private sectors) and international stakeholders.

These partnerships include international policing organisations, such as the International Criminal Police Organisation (INTERPOL) and the Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation (SARPCCO), seeking to harness innovative solutions to common challenges impacting on safety, security and economic prosperity, by focussing efforts to align and integrate the application of resources, in addressing crime-related issues that constrain or undermine socioeconomic development in the country.

The implementation of the Community Policing Strategy and the Community-in-Blue Concept will further enhance community-police partnerships in the fight against crime, through a multidisciplinary collaboration which focuses on public education, building community resilience to crime and will enable the SAPS to promote cooperation with the community, to improve and fulfil the service delivery needs of the community and to strengthen partnerships to prevent crime or reduce the fear of crime, by jointly identifying the root causes of crime.

Increased police visibility

The MTSF (2019 – 2024) includes the need for the SAPS to enhance its visibility, despite COVID-19's prohibitive impact on the medium-term fiscal position in the country. The launch of the Royal Police Reserve, in December 2020, sounded a clear indication of the SAPS' commitment to extending its visible policing reach in communities, through key initiatives, such as the Traditional Policing Concept and the pervasive Community-in-Blue Concept.

These concepts, together with the Safer Cities Framework and the already established sector policing approach, will significantly increase the visibility of the SAPS at local level.

Given the current financial constraints, increased visibility will not be achieved by simply increasing the number of SAPS members in uniform or by building additional police stations. The Community-in-Blue and Traditional Policing Concepts and the Safer Cities Framework will be implemented over the medium-term and will require active engagement from the relevant stakeholders in the public and private sectors, rather

than a significant increase to the budget allocation of the department.

The three key projects are addressed, with the express purpose of increasing police visibility and increasing feelings of safety in individual communities.

Stabilisation of crime

Continued efforts are made to address serious crime and the need to combat gangsterism and substance abuse, as well as the enhanced protection of vulnerable sectors of society. The SAPS continues to provide direct intervention, in support of communities plagued by gangsterism, as part of the overarching Community Policing Strategy.

The establishment of the Anti-Gang Unit will provide the muchneeded capacity in affected provinces. The strategy has taken into consideration intelligence gathering analysis and coordination, a proactive and high visibility approach, a combat and reactive approach through detection, including an organised crime approach, community policing concept, as well as communication and liaison.

Operational Response Services

The responsibility to respond to and stabilise medium- to high-risk incidents to ensure that normal policing continues falls under the broader tactical environment of the NIUs, the Special Task Force (STF) and POP units, and Mobile Operations under the Operational Response Services.

This division is also responsible for:

- maintaining public order and crowd management;
- conducting medium- to high-risk operations to enable normal policing;
- safeguarding and securing of all ports of entry;
- providing operational support to all divisions within the SAPS, including the rendering of airborne support and support to all operational-related and national coordinated operations, as well as the deployment of members to neighbouring countries in peacekeeping missions;
- coordinating, planning, implementation and monitoring all integrated police specific and interdepartmental (all-of-government) operations, to address priorities for the SAPS and the JCPS cluster:
- ensuring safety and security during major events: and
- safeguarding valuable and dangerous government cargo.

Public disorder

The country has, in the past few years, experienced an upsurge in violent incidents of public disorder, which requires urgent, additional interventions from the SAPS. It is anticipated that this upsurge against state authority will not decline in the foreseeable future, due to the current climate of service delivery-related protest actions and land invasions.

Political, economic, socio-economic and/or domestic instability is a serious challenge that, if left unaddressed, will undermine our democracy, rule of law and development trajectory of the country. Issues that contribute to instability are violent industrial and service delivery-related protest actions, as well as disrespect for authority. It is, therefore, imperative to prevent and combat the violent crime that accompanies violent protest action.

Labour strikes and protests occur frequently and can be violent

and disruptive. The civil unrest in the Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal Provinces, in July 2021 did not only have a profound impact on the country's economy, but also on internal and external perceptions of the effectiveness of government's safety and security capabilities. The SAPS deployed thousands of officials in reaction to the widespread unrest/protests, which ended August, for stabilisation purposes. The unrests also had an impact on the SAPS, as the total expenditure with regard to the July/August civil unrest, was in excess of R920 million.

The importance of protest in a democracy is entrenched and recognised in the Constitution as a right. The main challenge for the SAPS is to respond to protest action within the Bill of Rights.

This requires a realistic balance between acknowledging the rights of citizens to demonstrate versus the police's need to ensure peace and stability. Political and/or domestic instability is a serious challenge that, if left unabated, can undermine democracy, rule of law and development trajectory. Issues that contribute to instability are violent industrial and service delivery-related protest actions, as well as disrespect for authority and for one another.

It is, therefore, imperative to prevent and combat the violent crime that accompanies legitimate industrial protest action. The measurement of peaceful crowd management relates to incidents that have been policed, which refers to the policing approach that is applied, namely maintenance, resulting in no damage to property, no injuries, no loss of life and affording all people an opportunity to exercise their democratic right to protest.

Border security

Ports of entry and exit are used for the conveyance of goods and persons entering or departing South Africa. Controlling borders and ports of entry is vital in the prevention of the flow of contraband, illegal drugs, undocumented persons, stolen/ robbed vehicles, stolen firearms, wanted persons, stock theft and human trafficking.

The main focus is to prevent and combat transnational organised crime and illegal border crossing and migration; to enhance national security, to optimise territorial integrity; and to prevent terrorist and related activities, as well as a balance between trade and security. The port of entry environment monitors the movement of wanted persons and circulated stolen/robbed vehicles and reacts to hits, as a result of screening and the profiling of vehicles (land ports), containers (seaports) and cargo (airports) that are identified as high risk, focusing on suspicious persons and vehicles, goods from identified risk countries and the commission of serious crime, including illicit drugs, illegal firearms, stolen vehicles, consignment, smuggled persons, counterfeit goods and contraband.

Participation in peace support

The SAPS renders specialised policing services to neighbouring countries, including the deployment of members on peacekeeping missions and other interventions, in accordance with the United Nations Security Council (UNSC) Resolutions, the African Union (AU) Constitutive Act and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) agreements.

These refer to the reporting of deployment in peace missions (peacemaking, peacekeeping, peacebuilding, preventative diplomacy, peace enforcement) of the SAPS, sanctioned by Cabinet, as requested

by the multilateral organisations – the UN through the UNSC Resolution, the AU through the Peace and Security Council Resolution and the SADC Organ Politics, Defence and Security Council Summit. The terms of reference for such a deployment are outlined on the respective resolutions.

International intervention deployments refer to all deployments of SAPS members outside the borders of South Africa, sanctioned either by the National Commissioner, as delegated by the Minister of Police, by the SAPS Act of 1995, as requested through a country-to-country bilateral agreement or by regional arrangement (SADC). The activities include cross border operations and election observer missions.

Detective Services

The service enables the investigative work of the SAPS, including providing support to officials, in terms of forensic evidence and criminal records. The objectives are to contribute to the successful prosecution of offenders by increasing the detection rate for contact crimes and crimes against women and children, and generating original previous conviction reports for formally charged individuals.

Priority areas within the Detective Services Programme, in 2021/22 focused primarily on:

- · the detection rates for prioritised categories of crime;
- the targeted reduction in the number of outstanding case dockets related to contact crimes, older than three years and in outstanding wanted persons for contact crimes, in support of the improvement of the overall detection rate for contact crimes and crimes against women and children:
- reduced organised crime, specifically drug syndicates and organised criminal groups;
- to address the comprehensive utilisation of forensic investigative leads, to support the successful investigation of crime;
- the preparation of trial-ready case dockets for serious corruption in the private and public sectors;
- serious commercial crime; the successful closure of registered serious organised crime project investigations;
- · the dismantling of clandestine illicit drug laboratories;
- the successful investigation of cyber-related crime investigative support case files;
- · the generation of previous conviction reports;
- the updating of the SAPS' Criminal Record System; and
- the processing (analysis) of evidence gathered at the scene of crime and the provisioning of expert evidence, in this regard, to investigating officers and courts alike.

The responsive investigation of crime

The thorough and responsive investigation of crime are aligned with the categories of crime that are addressed within the Visible Policing Programme, namely contact crime and crimes against women and children, by focusing on the detection rates for the aforementioned categories of crime, as the detection rate is an indication of successful investigations and withdrawals before trial, in relation to the active investigative workload.

The priorities that have been identified by the SAPS's general and specialised investigation of crime capabilities are aligned with those of government, including serious corruption, organised crime, commercial

crime and the activities of drug syndicates, including dealing in drugs and organised criminal groups. The SAPS has embarked on a process of ensuring that the investigation of crime capability is adequately resourced, to ensure the through and responsive investigation of every crime and will extend this process into the coming financial year.

The Criminal Record Centre and Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL) play a crucial role in supporting the investigation of crime process and significant advances have been made during 2021/22, in turning the performance of the FSL around. These advances will continue to be monitored, to ensure that the FSL achieves its full potential in supporting the investigation of crime.

Reduced organised crime

Reduced organised crime, which has been identified as a key outcome in the MTSF, has guided the prioritisation of drug syndicates and organised criminal groups, namely the neutralisation of identified drug syndicates and organised criminal groups, as well as arrests for dealing in illicit drugs. The neutralisation of identified drug syndicates and organised criminal groups relates to the arrest of syndicate/organised criminal group members.

These syndicates/groups are identified through the gathering, analysis and dissemination of crime intelligence and refers to a criminal gang. Arrests for dealing in drugs has more impact on the overall drug value chain than arrests for possession, as role players who transport, import, cultivate, collect, manufacture and supply individuals, including drug runners, are removed from society and large quantities of illegal drugs are seized.

Crime statistics

According to the 2021/22 fourth quarter crime statistics, the first three months of 2022 were violent, brutal and unsafe for many South Africans. In those months, a 22.2% increase in murder was recorded – 1 107 more people were killed compared to the same period in 2021. Out of the 6 083 people killed in the country, 898 of them were women and 306 where children under the age of 17 years. The murder of children recorded a 37.2% increase in the period. Contact crimes increased by 15.0%.

Sexual offences recorded a 13.7% increase, with contact sexual offences recording the only decrease in this crime category. A total of 10 818 people were raped in South Africa in the in the first three months of 2022. Almost half of the cases (4 653 rapes) took place at the home of the victim or the home of the rapist. The Eastern Cape's Lusikisiki Police Station, Inanda Police Station in KwaZulu-Natal and Delft Police Station in the Western Cape recorded the highest incidents of rape for this quarter

Property-related crimes increased by 0.1% and burglary at nonresidential premises declined by 6.4%. Assault with intent to do grievous bodily harm (GBH) figures have shown drastic increases, with over 6.575 more cases reported. A total of 42.992 cases of assault GBH and 45.746 cases of common assault were opened with the police in the three months of reporting. Out of the 42.992 cases of assault GBH, 1.937 where children under 17 years.

A total of 3 306 kidnaping cases were opened with the police. This crime trend has shown a sharp increase with over 1 700 more cases reported to the police compared to the same period in 2021. Most of the

kidnapping cases were high jacking, robbery and rape-related. The top three police stations with the highest reported kidnapping cases were Kempton Park and Heidelberg police stations in Gauteng and Delmas Police Station in Mpumalanga. Gauteng accounted for the bulk of the kidnapping cases, recording over a thousand more cases in the period of reporting.

Utilisation of forensic investigative aids

The utilisation of investigative aids is directly associated with the thorough and responsive investigation of crime. The taking of buccal samples for prioritised Scheduled 8 offences by detectives from persons arrested and charged, is conducted under the DNA Act, 2013 (Act 37 of 2013). These offences include murder, attempted murder, sexual offences, robbery, burglary, theft (excluding stock theft) and illegal possession of firearms and ammunition.

Apart from legislative compliance, the taking of buccal samples increases the size of the National Forensic DNA Database, thereby increasing the likelihood of the linking of an arrested suspect to another case. Person-to-crime investigative leads indicate that a known suspect has been linked to a crime scene by comparing the DNA that was traced at a crime scene with the National Forensic DNA Database.

Crime-to-crime investigative leads indicate that a suspect has been linked to different crime scenes by comparing the DNA that was traced at crime scenes with the National Forensic DNA Database. Fingerprint investigative leads indicate that a suspect has been linked to different crime scenes by comparing the fingerprints that were traced at crime scenes with the Fingerprint Database and Integrated Ballistics Identification System.

Investigative leads indicate that a suspect has been linked to different crime scenes by comparing the ballistic evidence that was traced at crime scenes with the Integrated Ballistics Identification System Database. The National Forensic DNA Database consists of a number of indices containing forensic DNA profiles from samples collected from different categories of persons and crime samples.

Crime Detection

The division is responsible for managing Detective Services in accordance with the mission and priorities of the SAPS, and to actively implement and exercise effective control over these activities. It enables the investigative work of the SAPS, including providing support to investigators, in terms of forensic evidence and criminal records.

The objective of the division is the successful prosecution of offenders by investigating, gathering and analysing evidence. It comprises the Crime Investigation Service, Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Investigation Service, Specific Crime Investigations, Organised and Commercial Crime Investigation and Anti-Corruption outside the mandate of the DPCI.

Firearms control

The Central Firearms Register is mandated to administer firearm applications, in accordance with the prescripts of the Firearms Control Act of 2000. Its primary objective is to prevent the proliferation of illegally possessed firearms, providing for the removal of those firearms from society, improving control over legally possessed firearms and promoting responsible firearm ownership in South Africa.

The circulation of lost, stolen and found firearms plays an essential role in the investigation of firearm-related crime, in the efficient control of firearms and ultimately, in the reduction of the proliferation of firearms. Firearm licences, competency certificates, permits and authorisations are issued by the SAPS to individuals and businesses, in terms of the provisions and subject to compliance with the prerequisites of firearm control legislation, after comprehensive assessment of the content of applications and supporting documentation.

The processes within Central Firearms Register, which has a key role to play in the reduction of the availability of illegal firearms, have been improved by the introduction of short- and medium-term interventions, including the transitioning of the firearm licence applications to process from a tedious manual process, to an on-line process.

Liquor control

The SAPS plays a pivotal role in enforcing compliance to national and provincial liquor legislation. The existing partnership between the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition (dtic), the National Liquor Authority and the SAPS to address enforcement of compliance to the Liquor Act of 2003, was strengthened through the review and signing of a Memorandum of Agreement to appoint the SAPS members as liquor inspectors, thereby assisting in the enhanced enforcement of compliance to the Act.

Police reaction time

The SAPS's reaction time to complaints remains an important factor in the services that are rendered by police stations. The reaction time is defined as the time it takes to respond to a complaint. It is measured from the time that a specific complaint is registered on the Crime Administration System/Global Emergency Mobile Communication Command and Control System, to the time that the response vehicle arrives at the scene. Response times are based on the severity of the crime and are classified according to the Alpha, Bravo and Charlie system.

Alpha complaints are crimes in progress, which require immediate police response or action. Bravo complaints are crimes that have already taken place, with no immediate threat to the complainant or property, such as a report of a housebreaking that has already occurred. Charlie complaints are crimes of a less serious nature, such as loitering and trespassing.

Police safety

Attacks and unnatural deaths of employees of the SAPS, both on and off duty, are regarded as a threat to the stability of the country. Attacks and murder of police employees have a potential to create a negative perception among the citizens of the country, as to whether the SAPS is able to fulfil its Constitutional mandate to prevent, combat and investigate crime, maintain public order, uphold and enforce the law. It further creates the perception that criminals are willing and able to act with impunity by disregarding the law and negating the impact of the SAPS in furthering their criminal activities.

A police safety committee is in place as a tool to coordinate all activities, in support of enhancing the safety of all SAPS members, including the implementation of employee health and wellness programmes, the enhancement of tactical training programmes, the

analysis of incidents which informed the development of proactive measures to reduce the number of police attacks and killing of police members, as well as enhanced safety awareness, internally and externally.

Specialised interventions

The policing and stabilising of public disorder, and the responsibility to respond to medium- to high-risk incidents, as well as to ensure that normal policing continues, falls under the POP unit and the broader tactical environment of the NIUs, the STF units, the Tactical Response Team and Mobile Operations. The National Operational Coordination section is responsible for the developing, implementing and monitoring of an integrated all-of-government and police specific operations, to address the SAPS and the JCPS Cluster priorities and managing major events.

Missing persons

The Bureau for Missing Persons provides investigative support to the SAPS members tasked with investigating the disappearance of persons, including missing and wanted persons, as well as unidentified bodies. This support includes the circulation of information and photographs, both internally to the SAPS members, as well as nationally and internationally, through printed and electronic media and mediums to the general public.

In 2020, the SAPS and Facebook joined hands to strengthen the tracing of missing children through the use of the Child Abduction Emergency Alert platform, commonly known as the Amber Alert. The service is aimed at activating and sending details and photographs of a missing child on Facebook, to alert users to be on the lookout for a reported missing child.

South Africa is the first country in Africa to receive this programme and the 23rd in the world. Immediately after a case docket has been opened, it is sent to the Bureau of Missing Persons, which sends the information to Facebook, and within a few seconds, the missing child appears with full details, such as names, clothes worn on the day and other descriptive details to enable users to alert the police on time. If a child goes missing in a particular area, the Amber Alert is mostly sent to people in that area.

National priority offences

The Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation (DPCI/Directorate/ Hawks), as established in terms of Section 17C of the SAPS Act 1995, (Act 68 of 1995), is mandated to investigate national priority offences, as provided for in terms of Section 17D of the SAPS Act. The Directorate focuses on enhancing the investigation of serious corruption, serious organised crime and serious commercial crime.

As in the previous financial year, the investigation of serious corruption cases linked to crimes against the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF), the special dispensation for unemployment, tender processes for PPE and the plundering State resources intended to assist the most vulnerable will receive the highest priority. Investigating serious corruption, serious organised crime and serious commercial crime remain the focus of the DPCI.

The DPCI has capacitated and will continue to capacitate these investigative functions by filling prioritised vacant posts within its

approved structure. This capacitation extended to physical resources and the vehicle fleet of the DPCI will be increased to accommodate the expanded fixed establishment. The procurement of specialised technological aids, software licenses for specialised investigative tools and specialised technology equipment, remains a challenge that shall receive attention to ensure the effectiveness of the investigation of all serious crime, especially those crimes being committed in the cyber space.

The limitations identified on suitable accommodation for the DPCI, shall still receive heightened attention. The DPCI shall continue to participate in the processes for the implementation of Chapter 6A of the SAPS Act of 1995, including section 17G, thereof.

Over and above, the DPCI shall prioritise the investigations and recommendations by the State Capture Commission under the chairpersonship of the Acting Chief Justice RMM Zondo. The integrity of personnel attached to the DPCI remains an integral part of the work they do and the manner in which they conduct themselves.

The DPCI are guided by Section 195(1) of the integrity of personnel attached to the DPCI remains an integral part of the work they do and the manner in which they conduct themselves. The DPCI are guided by Section 195(1) of the Constitution, Section 17B (b) and Section 17E of the SAPS Act, to ensure that the integrity of members is beyond reproach.

This includes all newly appointed members of the DPCI who must be beyond reproach and must execute their duties without fear, favour or prejudice. The DPCI will continue to work closely with the NPA in targeting national priority offences, including disruption against organised criminal groups. The DPCI shall endeavour to have perpetrators prosecuted in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act 121 of 1998 (POCA).

The directorate will continue our focused investigations on corruption levelled against State-Owned Enterprises and municipalities, serious violent crimes, such as cash-in-transit robberies, the murder of police officials, crime committed by organised criminal groups who tamper, steal or damage essential infrastructure and will continue to execute its mandate to the highest standards by using its resources in an effective and responsible manner whilst not only bringing those who have committed national priority offences to book, but also ensuring that the perpetrators do not benefit from the proceeds of crime.

Forensic Services

The Forensic Services division is responsible for:

- conducting fingerprint searches:
- identifing and confirming previous convictions of suspects in crimes being investigated;
- · managing crime scenes and evidence;
- · issuing police clearance certificates;
- rendering an effective ballistic service, by examining firearm and tool marks;
- rendering an effective forensic analysis service, by applying the principles of physics, in terms of organic and inorganic matter or substances;
- rendering an effective question document examination service;
- rendering an effective biology service, by examining evidentiary material of biological origin;
- · rendering an effective chemistry service, for example, DNA;

- · assisting in the investigation of fire and explosions; and
- presenting forensic evidence in court.

The Criminal Record Centre and the FSL focuses on areas that are critical to the thorough and responsive investigation of crime and that are directly associated with the key functions performed by the Criminal Record Centre and the FSL.

The updating of the SAPS Criminal Record System with the results of trails that have been adjudicated on, in courts of law, is essential to ensure that the adjudication, either guilty or not guilty, is properly recorded on the system.

The outputs reflected, in respect of the FSL, include the processing of routine and non-routine forensic exhibits, case exhibits that relate to ballistics or to DNA evidence that is located at crime scenes, within the specified time frames.

Investigation of crime supported by criminal records and forensic evidence

Criminal fingerprint searches are done for the generation of previous conviction reports for formally charged persons and the SAPS' Criminal Record System are updated with the results of trials that have been adjudicated on in courts of law were prioritised, in 2021/22.

The updating of the results of trials are to ensure that the adjudication is up-to-date and do not impact negatively on those who have been acquitted of crimes that they were accused of committing, but support the investigation process, by allowing for an individual's criminal record history to be available to investigating officers and courts.

Forensic Services deals with the application of the knowledge and methodology of various disciplines of science to legal matters. It involves the use of multiple disciplines, such as physics, chemistry, biology and engineering for evidence analysis.

Without the application of forensic science, criminals cannot be convicted, unless an eyewitness is present, thus, forensic services involves the collection, preservation and analysis of evidence, which is suitable for prosecuting an offender in a court of law.

The purpose of an FSL is to process evidence gathered at the scenes of crimes and to provide expert evidence, in this regard, to investigating officers and courts alike. The performance of the SAPS's FSL has been dramatically improved through interventions, aimed at ensuring that the FSL is appropriately capacitated; that the contractual arrangements related to its specialised equipment and the consumables that this equipment requires are addressed and that system developments are fast-tracked to accommodate the forensic analysis process.

- The following initiatives will be implemented to improve the management of DNA exhibits and the down-management of the DNA backlog: the facilitating of the optimal use of forensic services and products by clients;
- the optimising of the financial and supply chain management processes, supporting the provisioning of forensic services;
- the capacitation of the FSL with adequate staff to meet the demand for forensic products;
- the modernisation and maintenance of specialised forensic equipment and methods;
- the establishment of specialised forensic process optimisation and development capacity, to support the need for forensic products;
- · the enhancement of the management of forensic items, exhibit

and record storage;

- the maintenance of forensic facilities, in accordance with the standards of the International Organisation for Standardisation and the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), to ensure value for money; and
- the modernisation of Information Technology systems, to support the optimal processing of forensic exhibit material and records.

Improved perceptions of serious corruption

The country is currently grappling with effects of serious corruption. Serious corruption includes, the misuse of a public or private office or position or resources with corrupt intent and may include an act of bribery, nepotism, extortion, fraud and theft. This includes, but is not limited to, offences under the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities (PRECCA) Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004).

The reviewed DPCI organisational structure provides for the continued, thorough and responsive investigation of serious corruption in the public and private sectors, and particularly within the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster, which is at the frontline of the fight against crime in the country.

The SAPS has, within the context of the JCPS Cluster input into the MTSF, prioritised interventions relevant to the reduction of serious corruption in the private and public sectors, to guide planning and implementation within key JCPS Cluster departments over the medium-term. Serious Corruption Investigation is guided by the Anti-Corruption Inter-Ministerial Committee, which established a multi-agency Anti-Corruption Task Team, aimed at reducing levels of serious corruption.

Reduced organised crime

The DPCI, together with Crime Intelligence have developed a comprehensive approach to address the full spectrum of the drug supply chain, ranging from the illicit cultivation, production, trafficking, drug couriers and drug outlets and emerging threats through the National Drug Master Plan.

The dismantling of clandestine drug laboratories has been designed to address serious organised crime, linked to organised criminal groups that are manufacturing illicit drugs that are in high demand, at national and international levels. The identification of a clandestine drug laboratory can be done through crime intelligence or by means of an enquiry docket or through day-to-day investigation.

An identified clandestine drug laboratory is dismantled when the precursor chemicals, equipment and natural products utilised for the illegal production of drugs has been disassembled and confiscated and can no longer be used for the production of drugs.

An arrest related to an identified clandestine drug laboratory, refers to the arrest and charging of a suspect that is linked to a specific identified clandestine laboratory/s, before the dismantling operation, either during the operation or because of further investigation after the dismantling operation.

Reduced levels of serious commercial crime

Serious commercial crime refers to those cases investigated by the DPCI and is determined by the mandate of the DPCI. Commercial crime refers to fraud, forgery, uttering and theft (such as the theft of trust funds).

It further includes statutes relating to, among others, companies,

trusts and close corporations, long- and short-term insurance, the counterfeiting of currency, the counterfeiting and illicit trade in counterfeit products and goods, intellectual property rights, banks and the banking industry, exchange control, estate agents and computer-related or cyber-related crime, which include an element of corruption.

Effective response to cybercrime

The Fourth Industrial Revolution implies significant technological advancements for the country, but also involves substantial risk. The threat to the South African economy and population posed by the malicious and criminal targeting of cyberspace is significant and must be countered, through the appropriate development and implementation of legislative, policy, strategic and operational responses. These responses require a collaborative, preventive effort from all sectors.

The SAPS' approach to cybercrime will address the value chain associated with this complex crime, including the reporting and recording of incidents of cybercrime; ensuring an effective first responder capability to and the investigation and prosecution of cybercrime; establishing an integrated approach to stakeholder management; ensuring cybercrime intelligence and situational awareness; and the provisioning of cybercrime investigative support. Certain sections of the Cybercrimes Act, 2020 (Act No 19 of 2020) has been proclaimed by the President of South Africa, on 1 December 2021.

The recently enacted Cybercrimes Act of 2020 aims to criminalise, codify and penalise cybercrimes. The Act has cybercrime offences, including unlawful access to a computer or data storage device, illegal acquisition or interception of date, the unlawful acquisition, receipt, or possession of a password, as well as online forgery, extortion or fraud and theft of incorporeal property and is the overarching legal authority on the regulation, investigation and criminalisation of cybercrimes. The Act criminalises three types of data messages, which incite damage to property or violence, threaten people with damage to property or violence and unlawfully contain an intimate image.

Crime Intelligence

The Crime Intelligence division manages and analyses crime information, and provides technical support for investigations. The objective is to contribute to combating crime on an ongoing basis by ensuring the successful termination of network operations, in support of crime prevention, investigation and prosecution.

Priority areas within the Crime Intelligence Programme, in 2021/22 focused primarily on intelligence-led policing, by focusing on network operations, a key element of the SAPS's Crime Intelligence functions and are designed to gather intelligence/information so that a situation can be better understood or to generate intelligence/information on criminal organisations, groups or individuals that could be turned into evidence for use in a court of law: the generation of intelligence reports relevant to all organisational levels that precedes the perpetration of a crime, the crime and those who are responsible for its perpetration; the application of counter-intelligence measures, which include security assessments that are related to prioritised SAPS members, security assessments of the ICT hardware and software that is used by the SAPS and physical security assessments, which provide an indication of the status of the physical security of the SAPS' infrastructural facilities; the facilitation of cross-border operations and the arrest of identified transnational crime suspects, in response to requests that are received from INTERPOL member countries.

Proactive and reactive crime intelligence

Effective proactive and reactive crime intelligence, driven by the corporate renewal of the SAPS's crime intelligence capability, supports basic policing functions provided from police stations and is critical to the stabilisation and normalisation of areas identified as being problematic. The capability also contributes to the management of the integrity of the SAPS through the introduction of a revitalised approach to the vetting of members in key areas.

Over the medium term, the SAPS will focus on the effective use of crime intelligence to support policing initiatives. This approach includes optimising the collection of intelligence, enhancing its analysis and coordination, ensuring effective counterintelligence, establishing security intelligence to uphold the authority of the State and establishing a culture of performance management within the crime intelligence environment. In support of this, the department aims to ensure that network operations are successfully terminated.

The Crime Intelligence division within the SAPS is responsible for the gathering, collation, evaluation, analysis and coordination of intelligence. Legislative prescriptions require the SAPS to confine its intelligence activities to crime, criminal activities and security-related matters. The core function of the division is to provide intelligence to operational units for use in the prevention of crime or to conduct criminal investigations and to prepare evidence for the purpose of law enforcement and the prosecution of offenders. Crime intelligence is, therefore, a key enabler, in support of both proactive and reactive policing.

The division also provides intelligence-related services, such as lifestyle audits, security screening and vetting to the SAPS. Functioning within strict legal and regulatory parameters, the division conducts its intelligence-gathering, analysis and supplementary activities with due regard to the constitutionally protected rights of individuals. Through its national and provincial components, the division has established coverage throughout the country which extends down to cluster level.

Proactive intelligence reports include threat and risk assessments and early warning reports, in support of proactive operations. Reactive intelligence reports include profiles and intelligence analysis reports such as communication analysis reports and association or network analysis reports.

Protection and Security Services

The purpose of the programme is to provide protection and security services to all identified dignitaries and government interests. The objectives are to minimise security violations by protecting all identified local and foreign dignitaries while in transit; protecting the locations in which dignitaries are present; auditing strategic installations and evaluating NKPs.

The programme comprises the VIP Protection Services, the Static and Mobile Security and the Government Security Regulator subprogrammes managed by the Protection and Security Services division and the Presidential Protection Service component. The Protection and Security Services division is a national competency with nine provincial offices located throughout South Africa.

The division provides in-transit and static protection to all identified VIPs, including the Speaker or Deputy Speaker of the National Assembly, Ministers or Deputy Ministers, Premiers, Members of the Executive Council, the Chief Justice, Judge Presidents and ad hoc

VIPs, in terms of the Risk Information Management Support System Policy and NKPs, and identified strategic installations (national and provincial government departments).

The Presidential Protection Service component is a national competency with provincial offices in Gauteng, the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. The component provides in-transit and static protection to the President, the Deputy President, former presidents, former deputy presidents, their spouses, identified VIPs, including foreign Heads of State/ Government, former Heads of State/Government and their spouses at identified government installations.

Priority areas within the Protection and Security Services Programme, in 2021/22 focused primarily on the law upheld and enforced, to support the stamping (asserting) of the authority of the State, by focusing on identified dignitaries and government interests, protected and secured, in-transit and at identified government installations and identified VIP residences; and the SAPS' compliance obligations, in respect of the National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980). The authority of the State would be significantly undermined in the event of a security breach impacting on either an identified dignitary, a NKP, or a strategic installation.

SAPS Commemoration Day

The 2020 SAPS Commemoration Day took place on 6 September 2021 at the SAPS Memorial site in Pretoria. Hosted annually by the Department of Police, the day is commemorated in remembrance of police officers and reservists who lose their lives in the line of duty. The event also presents an opportunity for the nation to celebrate the courage and dedication of officers who laid down their lives in execution of their Constitutional mandate to protect all within South Africa's borders.

The proceedings were officiated by the President Cyril Ramaphosa. A total of 34 names of police officers were added to the National Memorial Wall at the Union Buildings. During the event, the President called for visible and tangible working relations between the police and communities. The President also urged the public to report wrongdoing and criminality within communities.

As part of the commemoration activities, the President, together with the Minister of Police and the National Commissioner of the SAPS and the next of kin of the fallen officers, laid wreaths in honour of the departed police personnel. Their names were engraved on the National Memorial Wall to signify the gratitude of the nation for their bravery, loyalty and sacrifices made to serve and protect the people of South Africa.

Through the SAPS Employee Health and Wellness Component, the organisation continues to render psychological and spiritual support to the families, friends and colleagues of the deceased member.

Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service

The Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service was established in terms of the Civilian Secretariat for Police Service Act of 2011 and Section 208 of the Constitution, which provides for the establishment of a civilian secretariat for the police service to function under the direction of the Minister of Police.

The secretariat's mandate is to conduct civilian oversight of the police service and provide policy and strategic support to the Minister

of Police, including administrative support in relation to his international obligations. The Act also mandates responsibility on the secretariat to monitor the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998 by the SAPS.

Chapter 12 of the NDP sets out a vision for building safer communities by adopting a holistic approach to safety and security. This vision is expressed in terms of Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service is closely aligned.

Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on encouraging community participation in the fight against crime through facilitating events such as imbizos and public participation programmes; developing policies and legislation for the police sector; and assessing and monitoring the performance of the police service, for example, its implementation of recommendations from the Independent Police Investigative Directorate and monitoring its compliance with the legal prescripts affecting its work.

The department plans to facilitate 8 imbizos and 24 public participation programmes in municipalities over the medium term. These events form part of its efforts to strengthen community participation in the fight against crime, and improve relations between the police and communities by encouraging open dialogue and communication about crime and safety. It also plans to conduct three anti-crime campaigns per year during this period to enhance communities' awareness of crime-prevention and other interventions. Spending for these activities is allocated in the Intersectoral Coordination and Strategic Partnerships programme, which has an allocation of R80.8 million over the medium term.

The department plans to develop or finalise 6 bills over the medium term, including the SAPS Amendment Bill, the Independent Police Investigative Directorate Amendment Bill, the Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill, and the Firearms Control Amendment Bill. Expenditure for this is within the Legislation and Policy Development programme's allocation of R70.8 million, constituting an estimated 15.4% of the department's budget of R611 million between 2021/22 and 2024/25.

Assessing the conduct and performance of the police service is central to the department's work. The department does this by monitoring the police service's management of public complaints and the implementation of recommendations from the Independent Police Investigative Directorate. As part of its efforts to transform and improve the performance of the police service's management of gender-based crimes, the department will aim to compile and ensure that the Secretary for the Police Service approves two reports per year over the medium term on the compliance and implementation of the Domestic Violence Act (1998) and provide recommendations.

Spending for these activities is within the Civilian Oversight, Monitoring and Evaluations programme, which is set to receive R134.4 million (22%) of the department's budget between 2021/22 and 2024/25.

Budget

The Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service was allocated R151 million for the 2021/22 financial year. Expenditure is set to increase at an average annual rate of 1.4%, from R151 million in 2021/22 to R157.2 million in 2024/25. This is mainly due to an increase in spending on

compensation of employees, accounting for a projected 70.1% (R428.1 million) of the department's expenditure between 2021/22 and 2024/25.

Additional funding of R2.1 million in 2022/23 is expected to cover costs arising from the 2021/22 public sector wage agreement. To provide for the appointment of 3 IT personnel to perform services previously outsourced to the State Information Technology Agency, R4.4 million over the medium term is reprioritised from computer services to compensation of employees.

Despite these appointments, the department's number of personnel is expected to decrease from 155 in 2021/22 to 145 in 2024/25, mainly due to the freezing of some vacant posts for support services and interns to enable the department to remain within its expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees.

Independent Police Investigative Directorate

The IPID exercises its functions in accordance with the IPID Act of 2011 which gives effect to the provisions of Section 206 (6) of the Constitution, which provides for the establishment of an independent police complaints body that must investigate any alleged misconduct of, or offence committed by, a member of the police service. The thrust of the directorate's work is to investigate serious and priority crimes allegedly committed by members of the SAPS and the Municipal Police Services

The Act grants the IPID an extended mandate and changes the focus of the directorate's work from a complaints-driven organisation to one that prioritises the investigative function. The Act also places stringent obligations on the SAPS and the Municipal Police Services to report matters that must be investigated by the directorate, and ensures the implementation of disciplinary recommendations made by the IPID.

The NDP outlines a vision for building safer communities in South Africa. This vision is expressed specifically in terms of Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF, with which the work of the IPID is aligned. Over the medium term, the directorate will focus on improving the quality of its investigations and increasing access to its services. It will prioritise investigations into violence against women and people from other vulnerable groups. As the directorate pursues this focus, it will place greater emphasis on efficiently managing its number of personnel in line with its budget allocation.

As part of the focus on cases involving police brutality towards vulnerable groups and expanding its national footprint to facilitate access to services, the directorate plans to partner with provincial departments of community safety in Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and Western Cape to establish regional and district offices. These partnerships will mainly involve sharing office space, data and information; collaborating on investigations; and monitoring police performance. Expenditure for this is within the Investigation and Information Management programme, which receives an estimated 65% (R938.1 million) of the directorate's budget over the period ahead.

The directorate plans to recruit 9 investigation quality assurers (three permanent and six on fixed-term contracts) at a total cost of R3.4 million over the medium term in the Investigation and Information Management programme. These posts will be filled in line with the directorate's assessment of its organisational structure in 2021/22, which was conducted to gauge its overall responsiveness to the execution of its mandate. In line with the assessment, only core vacant

posts such as investigators and quality assurers are prioritised to be filled. Accordingly, to remain with the directorate's expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees, its number of personnel is expected to decrease from 414 in 2021/22 to 413 in 2024/25.

Budget

The IPID was allocated R353.8 million for the 2021/22 financial year. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 67.1% (R968.7 million) of the directorate's budget between 2021/22 and 2024/25, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.5%, from R239.2 million to R250.4 million.

This is mainly due to an additional allocation of R5.4 million in 2022/23 to cover costs arising from the 2021 public sector wage agreement; and the reprioritisation of R10.8 million over the MTE period tobalign investigators' conditions of service with those of detectives in the SAPS.

Department of Defence

The purpose of the DoD is to defend and protect South Africa, its territorial integrity and its people, in accordance with the Constitution and the principles of international law regulating the use of force, and provide for military veterans' benefits.

The DoD derives its mandate from Section 200 of the Constitution, the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), as amended by the Defence Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 22 of 2010), the 1996 White Paper on Defence and the 2015 South African Defence Review. The DoD is required to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities that are commensurate with the needs of South Africa.

The NDP calls for an integrated, holistic approach to safety and security that tackles the root causes of crime and ensures South Africa's long-term stability, as well as peace and stability in Africa. This vision is supported by Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019 - 2024 MTSF.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on sustaining South Africa's defence capabilities, safeguarding the country's borders and territorial integrity, supporting peace on the continent, and providing support to the SAPS when required to ensure national security and internal stability.

To sustain South Africa's defence capabilities and rejuvenate the South African National Defence Force into one that is young and deployable, the department will implement various human resource reforms over the medium term. These include reducing the number of personnel in the department from 73 153 in 2021/22 to 72 597 in 2024/25, as older personnel exit, and reducing the number of reserve force person days from 2.6 million in 2021/22 to 2 million in 2024/25; recruiting military skills development system personnel only every alternate year; and capping all discretionary allowances.

These reforms are expected to lead to a decrease of R4.5 billion in spending on compensation of employees over the medium term. However, an additional R1.8 billion is allocated over the same period to offer employee-initiated severance packages and early retirement without penalising pension benefits.

This is expected to yield savings for the department, which will enable it to address other cost pressures such as investments in technology to assist with border safeguarding and mid-life upgrades of navy vessels over the period ahead.

South Africa's national security hinges on the stability, unity and prosperity of the African continent, particularly the SADC region. As such, the department will continue to participate in operations to support peace in the Democratic Republic of the Congo and northern Mozambique as part of the SADC standby force. These deployments will also assist the department in achieving 100% compliance with its SADC standby force pledge and external operations. To maintain these deployment activities, R2.7 billion is allocated over the medium term in the Force Employment programme.

South Africa has a duty to safeguard its borders against the possibility of transnational crime, international crime syndicates and cartels, the illegal flow of undocumented migrants, and illicit economic activities. In fulfilling these duties over the MTEF period, the department will continue to deploy 15 landward subunits along South Africa's borders with Zimbabwe, Eswatini, Mozambique, Lesotho, Botswana and Namibia. For this purpose, R3.7 billion is allocated over the medium term in the Force Employment programme.

The public unrest in July 2021 highlighted the need to strengthen law enforcement agencies, including the SANDF to ensure they are equipped to respond quickly to such incidents. To this end, the department plans to set up a rapid response capability unit, which will support the SAPS, when needed, with a brigade of between 2 000 and 5 000 soldiers, comprising paratroopers and members of the South African Air Force and South African Military Health Service. The unit will be set up at a projected cost of R50 million in 2022/23 in the Force Employment programme.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The Constitutional and primary legislative mandates governing the DoD are the:

- · Defence Act of 2002;
- · Defence Amendment Act, 2020 (Act 6 of 2020);
- Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994);
- Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999);
- National Conventional Arms Control Act of 2002;
- · National Strategic Intelligence Act of 1994;
- Defence Special Account Act, 1974 (Act 6 of 1974);
- Military Ombud Act, 2012 (Act 4 of 2012);
- · Castle Management Act, 1993 (Act 207 of 1993);
- Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor) Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003);
- · Non-Proliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction Act of 1993;
- Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000 (Act 2 of 2000)
- Hydrographic Act, 2019 (Act 35 of 2019)
- · Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Border Management Authority Act, 2020 (Act 2 of 2020).

Section 231 of the Constitution of the Republic , 1996, prescribes International

agreements, inclusive of International Humanitarian Law, to which the DoD must adhere. Applicable International Agreements include the:

- · United Nations Charter;
- Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges, 1961.
- International Convention on Maritime Search and Rescue, 1979:
- · SADC Mutual Defence Pact:

- · AU Non-aggression and Common Defenc e Pact; and
- Chicago Convention (also known as the Convention on International Civil Aviation), 1947.

Budget

The DoD was allocated R48.8 billion for the 2021/22 financial year. As per the Second Special Appropriation Bill (2021), an additional R700 million is allocated to the Force Employment programme for the internal deployment of SANDF personnel to support the SAPS in executing Operation Prosper in response to the public unrest in July 2021, and to deal with terrorism in Cabo Delgado, Mozambique, through Operation Vikela.

As the department's work is labour intensive, an estimated 62.7% (R91.3 billion) of its total budget of R146.3 billion over the medium term is allocated to compensation of employees. This includes an additional allocation of R1.3 billion in 2022/23 to provide for cost-of-living adjustments arising from the 2021 public sector wage agreement.

SADC Maritime Security

The focus of the South African Navy (SAN) remains on preparing naval forces for operations in support of the SADC Maritime Security Strategy. Conducting naval operations that involves patrols in the Mozambique Channel to prevent piracy-related activities remains a national and departmental priority.

The SADC Maritime Security Strategy will require continued capacity building in (regional) Maritime Domain Awareness to ensure a safe and secured SADC maritime environment. The latter will be achieved through joint international military exercises and other forms of military cooperation with strategic partners, such as the Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa countries and the SADC defence forces among others.

The focus of the SADC Maritime Security Strategy will remain on maritime crime prevention close to the East Coast shores, and highlights the requirement for the littoral states to be able to exercise control over their territorial waters, and the role of the DoD in protecting the maritime resources as part of Operation Phakisa.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), the South African Air Force (SAAF), the SAN and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing combat-ready defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and operational requirements.

Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Group formations established by the different services include the:

- SA Army infantry, artillery or armour formations;
- SAAF air capabilities within the air command;
- · SAN fleet command; and
- · SAMHS military health formations.

Organisational structure

The DoD and the Department of Military Veterans (DMV) adhere to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence

and Military Veterans, various parliamentary committees, such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence and the Defence Secretariat.

While the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the Joint Standing Committee on Defence ensures that the Minister remains accountable to Parliament. However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the DoD.

Force Employment

The purpose of the programme is to provide and employ defence capabilities, including an operational capability, to successfully conduct all operations, as well as joint, interdepartmental, interagency and multinational military exercises.

The output of this programme is to ensure successful joint force employment over the medium term by:

- providing and employing a special operations capability in accordance with national requirements;
- ensuring full participation in the number of peace missions as instructed by the President; and
- conducting four operations per year, protecting the territorial integrity and sovereignty of South Africa, supporting other government departments and complying with international obligations.

The mandate for employment of joint forces is drawn from the Constitution, the Defence Act of 2002 and the Defence Review 2015. In terms of these documents, the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is mandated to provide:

- service in defence of South Africa for the protection of its sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- service in fulfilment of South Africa's international obligations to international bodies and other states;
- service in the preservation of life, health or property;
- · service in the provision or maintenance of essential services;
- uphold law and order in South Africa in cooperation with the SAPS, under circumstances set out in legislation, where the SAPS is unable to independently maintain law and order; and
- service in support of any department or state, for the purpose of socio-economic upliftment.

In 2021/22 the DoD continued to support government imperatives, including conducting various diplomatic activities through virtual participation in the Special Committee on Peacekeeping Operations meeting and bilateral meetings with the Zimbabwean Defence Force and Mozambican Defence Force as well as hosting of foreign courtesy visits.

To advance and support social cohesion and create safer communities, the SANDF continued to execute border safeguarding operations by deploying 15 sub-units to execute operations along the borders in Limpopo, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, the Eastern Cape, the Northern Cape and North West.

During this period, the SANDF members recovered 30 illegal weapons, apprehended 21 310 illegal foreign nationals, arrested 891 criminals; recovered 484 stolen vehicles, confiscated 13 222 kg, recovered 1 716 Livestock and confiscated contraband goods to the value of R80.57 million. The SANDF also deployed 1 102 members in one UN Mandated Peace Support Operation in the DRC, Op MISTRAL.

Landward Defence

The Landward Defence programme provides prepared and supported landward defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa. The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its territory over the medium term by:

- providing infantry capability, including the SANDF Reaction Force, for external deployment and internal safety and security, including border safeguarding;
- exercising tank and armoured car capabilities and providing squadron for internal deployment;
- exercising air defence artillery capabilities and providing a battery for internal deployment;
- providing a sustained composite engineer capability for external deployment, as well as for internal safety and security and exercising a field engineer capability;
- providing a signal capability for external deployment and internal signal support and exercising a composite signal capability;
- providing strategic direction by orchestrating and controlling the SA Army to achieve its mission to prepare and provide supported landward capabilities;
- providing an operational intelligence capability for external deployment, internal operational intelligence support and exercising one composite intelligence troop;
- providing combat-ready tactical command and control capabilities for integrated forces during force preparation exercises and force employment;
- providing a support capability for external and internal deployment through first-, second- and fourth-line support by two first- and second-line maintenance units and two field workshops and fourth-line depots; and
- providing general training capabilities through basic military training, junior leader training, common landward training, command and management training, force preparation exercises and training courses.

Air Defence

The purpose of the programme is to provide prepared and supported air defence capabilities. The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its airspace over the medium term by providing:

- four helicopter squadrons and one combat-support squadron per year;
- three medium transport squadrons, including one VIP squadron, one maritime and transport squadron, one light transport squadron and nine reserve squadrons per year;
- · one air combat squadron per year; and
- · 24-hour air command and control capability.

Maritime Defence

The Maritime Defence programme provides prepared and supported maritime defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa.

The output of this programme is to defend and protect South Africa and its maritime zones over the medium term by providing:

· a surface combat and patrol capability of three frigates, one

- combat support vessel, two offshore patrol vessels and three inshore patrol vessels in each annual operational cycle;
- a sub-surface combat capability of two submarines in each annual operational cycle;
- a mine warfare capability of two vessels in each annual operational cycle to ensure safe access to South Africa's harbours and mine clearance, where required;
- a maritime reaction squadron capability, comprising an operational boat division, an operational diving division and a naval reaction division in each annual operational cycle; and
- a hydrographic survey capability to ensure safe navigation by charting areas and to meet international obligations.

Office of the Military Ombud

The Office of the Military Ombud was established to investigate and ensure that complaints against the official conduct of a member or a person acting on behalf of a member with regard to their conditions of service are resolved in a fair, economical and expeditious manner.

Reserve Force Council

The council is a statutory body under the Defence Act of 2002. It is a consultative and advisory body and represents the Reserve Force to promote and maintain it as an integral part of the Defence Force and must be consulted on any legislation, policy or administrative measures affecting the Reserve Force.

Employing the youth

The unemployment rate amongst the youth in Africa is not only a social issue with dire consequences should it not be addressed, but also a security issue with the potential to destabilise countries, regions and the continent. The UN defines the youth as persons between the ages of 15 and 24, while the African Youth Charter defines youth as those between the ages of 15 and 35.

From a security perspective, the issue continuously creates a future challenge as the unemployed youth have the potential to become the targets of political demagogues who may use these youths as a means to achieve their political aspirations.

Government has introduced measures to increase the employment of young people. The DoD continues to provide employment opportunities to the youth through the DoD Military Skills Development System and internship programmes.

The DoD in support of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development, through the National Youth System programme, will continue to train members through existing departmental infrastructure and resource arrangements. The department will pursue the implementation of its Internship Policy, directing utilisation and management of interns.

Entities

Armaments Corporation of South Africa

The Armscor is mandated to meet the acquisition, maintenance and disposal needs of the DoD and other clients in terms of defence matériel and related products and services. The corporation maintains strategic capabilities and technologies, and promotes the local defence-related industry, ensuring that the SANDF receives quality equipment to

carry out its mandate. Over the medium term, in an effort to achieve its strategic goals, the corporation will aim to improve its financial sustainability by reducing its number of personnel – from 1 627 in 2021/22 to 1 462 in 2024/25 – through offering voluntary severance packages, natural attrition and the non-renewal of expired contracts. This is expected to result in a decrease of R161 million over the MTEF period in spending on compensation of employees. Overall spending on compensation of employees is expected to stabilise at R1.1 billion over the medium term.

The corporation expects to derive 75% (R4.5 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.7%. It also expects to generate R179.8 million over the medium term through interest to cover operational costs, and R38.8 million through other revenue streams such as commercialising intellectual property, income from hiring out strategic facilities, and positioning the corporation as the primary procurement agency for government's security cluster.

Castle Control Board

The board's mandate requires it to preserve and protect the military and cultural heritage of the Castle of Good Hope, and to optimise its tourism potential and public accessibility. As part of its revenue optimisation strategy, over the medium term, the board aims to unlock the heritage tourism potential of the Castle of Good Hope and increase its accessibility to the broader public.

To this end, over the medium term, the board plans to provide a comprehensive range of visitor services, and ensure improved security within the castle precinct. At a projected cost of R500 000 over the period ahead, these interventions are expected to result in the increase of visitors from 60 000 in 2021/22 to 130 000 in 2024/25.

Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 1.2%, from R9.4 million in 2021/22 to R9.1 million in 2024/25. All of the board's revenue is self-generated. Although revenue from operating activities is expected to increase by 32.5% over the medium term, from R3.7 million in 2021/22 to R8.6 million in 2024/25, due to the implementation of the revenue optimisation strategy, this revenue is still well below projected expenditure.

Restrictions due to the COVID-19 pandemic have negatively affected the castle's revenue-generating capacity. As such, the entity receives an additional allocation of R12 million over the medium term from the Department of Defence.

Role players

National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC)

The NCACC is a committee of Ministers. The Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member of the NCACC. The committee oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade. It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices. Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, thereafter the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications.

Each application is sent for scrutiny to relevant government departments, such as the Department of International Relations and Cooperation or the dtic. The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, after which the NCACC

makes the final decision. An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC. The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the Joint Standing Committee on Defence.

Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association of South Africa (AMD)

The AMD's primary objective is to represent the South African industry in matters of mutual interest in pursuit of profitability, sustainability and responsible corporate citizenship. The association is acknowledged as the only trade association of the South African Defence Industries (SADI), and is mandated by its members to promote and champion the collective interests of the industry.

It comprises a cluster of leading companies in the South African private and public sector that supply defence materiel, products and services. The AMD member companies supply products and services to the DoD, government organisations and other contractors, locally and internationally, in the defence and security marketplace.

As the SADI is one of the cornerstones of a stable and growing the South African economy, the AMD is responsible for ensuring that a world-class, indigenous defence industry capability is maintained in a sustainable manner. Within an emerging defence industry support framework, the DoD, in collaboration with the Armscor and the AMD, will continue providing effective support to enable SADI to exploit export opportunities within the South African political and legal context.

The services range from information-sharing on possible opportunities to facilitating the provision of defence personnel, facilities and equipment for use by the SADI in demonstrations for export purposes. The AMD, through its membership, is strategically well positioned and capable of supporting government in achieving its African Union Development Agency-New Partnership for Africa's Development objectives.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel is a state-owned commercially driven company and strategic partner for innovative defence, security and related technology solutions. It groups together several defence and aerospace divisions and associated companies.

It provides turnkey solutions of defence equipment to its clients by designing, developing, integrating and supporting artillery, munitions, missiles, aerostructures, aircraft maintenance, unmanned aerial vehicle systems and optical payloads based on high-end technology.

The Defence Review 2014 calls for Denel to be the custodian of critical strategic and sovereign capabilities, especially in command and control and the maritime environment. The recent establishment of the Denel Integrated Systems and Maritime Division enables it to move rapidly into areas that are of strategic importance for South Africa's future security.

This division has given Denel a strong initial foothold in the naval defence environment and the company is confident that it will become a catalyst in a number of maritime defence acquisition programmes that are currently in the pipeline. Denel is in the process of acquiring a stake in a defence command-and-control business in line with its strategic intent.

Military Veterans

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act, 2011 (Act 18 of 2011), which requires the department to provide national policy and standards on socio-economic support to military veterans and their dependants, including benefits and entitlements to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and self-sufficient community of military veterans.

In acknowledging the role military veterans played in the creation of a democratic South Africa, the DMV contributes to the realisation of the NDP's vision of a capable and ethical developmental state that treats its citizens with dignity. Acknowledging the contribution of military veterans in the creation of a democratic South Africa has the potential to deepen social cohesion and national unity, and provide some redress for the inequities of the past.

The department expects to deliver 1 315 newly built houses to eligible beneficiaries over the MTEF period and increase the number of veterans with access to health care services from 19 700 to 20 700. The bulk of spending for these activities is in the Socioeconomic Support programme, which has a budget of R1.1 billion over the medium term, accounting for 55.2% of the department's total budget.

The department plans to continue to ensure that the number of bursaries provided to military veterans and their dependants remains at 3 500 in each year of the medium term. If necessary, it will refer students previously funded by the department to the National Student Financial Aid Scheme as part of state-subsidised higher education. Allocations for this are within the Socioeconomic Support programme, which has a budget of R1.1 billion over the MTEF period.

Over the medium term, the department plans to reposition its empowerment and skills development programme. This will be achieved by focusing on developing the skills of military veterans in areas such as road maintenance, plumbing and farming. To this end, the department will enter into memorandums of understanding with various institutions such as the South African National Roads Agency, the Department of Defence and various sector education and training authorities.

The department will also ensure that military veterans and their dependants participate in government programmes that create jobs, business opportunities and encourage entrepreneurship. As such, over the MTEF period, the department plans to provide 3 000 military veterans with access to relevant training and skills development. To achieve this, R46 .9 million is allocated to the Empowerment and Stakeholder Management programme over the medium term.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DMV was allocated R607.4 million.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Social Development

Social Development

Social development ensures protection against vulnerability by creating an enabling environment for the provision of a comprehensive, integrated and sustainable social development service. The Department of Social Development (DSD) provides social development services and leads government's efforts to forge partnerships through which vulnerable individuals, groups and communities become capable and active participants in their own development as well as society's.

The National Development Plan (NDP) acknowledges the need to address the critical challenges of poverty, unemployment and inequality to improve short-term and long-term prospects of current and future generations. In its efforts to give expression to this guiding policy, the DSD aims to improve quality of life for poor and vulnerable people and, in so doing, contributes to Priority 3 (consolidating the social wage through reliable and quality basic services) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Over the MTEF period, the department will focus on: providing income support to the poor and vulnerable; providing developmental social welfare services and increased access to services; supporting and monitoring the implementation of policies, legislation, norms and standards for the provision of social welfare services to children; addressing gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), HIV and AIDS and other social ills; and building sustainable communities.

Income support to the poor and vulnerable

The Social Assistance Programme is an important element in government's strategy to tackle poverty and inequality This programme has proved vital in mitigating the severe effects of the COVID-19 lockdown restrictions, which led to many job losses. As the elderly populationpeo – people older than 60 – is expected to increase by 3% per year over the medium term, the number of beneficiaries who receive old age grants is expected to increase from 3.9 million in 2021/22 to 4 million in 2024/25. Similarly, as the child population is expected to increase from 20.9 million in 2021/22 to 21.3 million in 2024/25, the number of beneficiaries who receive the Child Support Grant (CSG) is set to increase from 13.3 million in 2021/22 to 13.9 million in 2024/25.

The Social Security Policy and Administration programme is responsible for developing policy and administrating social assistance fairly. Through the programme's Social Security Policy Development subprogramme, the department plans to coordinate consultations on social security reforms over the period ahead. These include a review of proposals on extending social assistance coverage; mandatory contributions for retirement, death and disability; the participation of informal-sector workers in a contributory social security system; and the institutional architecture and governance of a coherent, efficient and sustainable social security system. To carry out these activities, R69 million per year over the medium term is allocated to the subprogramme.

In an effort to limit fraud in relation to social grants and conduct investigations into instances of it, R219.8 million over the MTEF period is allocated to the Social Grants Fraud Investigations subprogramme.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey of 2021, the percentage of individuals that benefited from social grants steadily increased from 12,8% in 2003 to approximately 31% between 2017 and 2019 before increasing sharply to 35,7% in 2021.

This growth was tracked closely by that of households that received at least one social grant (growing 30,8% in 2003 to 45,5% in 2019, and 50,6% in 2021). Grant beneficiaries were most common in Eastern Cape (47,8%) and Limpopo (46,5%) and least widespread in Gauteng (23,6%) and Western Cape (26,2%).

Households that received at least one type of social grant were most common in Mpumalanga (65,8%), Limpopo (65,1%), and Eastern Cape (63,3%), and least common in Gauteng (38,4%) and Western Cape (38,7%)

The Special COVID-19 Social Relief of Distress (SRD) grant of R350 per month was introduced in 2020 in an attempt to offset the impact of COVID-19. Nationally, 5,8% of respondents received the grant in 2021 compared to 5,3% in 2020. The highest uptake in 2021 was noted in Mpumalanga and Limpopo (both 9,5%), while the grants were least common in Western Cape (2,8%) and Gauteng (4,0%).

About 25,2% of all individuals, and 38,9% of all households in metropolitan areas received some kind of social grant (compared to 35,7% of individuals and 50,6% of households nationally). Individual grant receipt was highest in Buffalo City (35,3%) and Mangaung (32,6%) and least common in Johannesburg (24,0%) and Tshwane (25,8%).

Developmental social welfare services and increased access to services

Although the shift of the early childhood development function to the Department of Basic Education has resulted in an 80% (R3.8 billion) budget reduction in the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme, it has created capacity for the department to prioritise other aspects of social welfare. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department will focus on developing and coordinating overarching policies, legislative frameworks, norms and standards that promote integrated, quality-driven, professional and accountable service delivery.

This includes finalising the draft White Paper for Social Development, amending the Older Persons Act of 2006, training social workers to render adoption services in line with the Children's Amendment Act of 2016, and strengthening the department's monitoring of how the Social Service Professions Act of 1978 is implemented by institutionalising the oversight role of the South African Council for Social Service Professions.

Expenditure for these activities is within the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme's allocation of R939.6 million over the MTEF period. Of this allocation, R238.4 million is for the Children subprogramme, R58 million is for the Older Persons subprogramme, R41.2 million is for the People with Disabilities subprogramme and R32 million is for the Families subprogramme.

Addressing GBV, HIV and AIDS and other social ills

The provision of psychosocial services by social service practitioners is a key contribution of the sector in the fight against gender-based violence and HIV and AIDS. Activities in the Social Crime Prevention and Victim Empowerment subprogramme in the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme are focused on implementing policies related to psychosocial services. The subprogramme has an allocation of R230.8 million over the period ahead.

Through the HIV and AIDS subprogramme in the Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support programme, the department aims to address the social and structural drivers of HIV and AIDS. The subprogramme has an allocation of R130.2 million over the medium term, R49 million of which is set to be transferred to the South African National AIDS Council to fund its operations.

According to Stats SA's mid-year population estimates of 2022, the estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,9% among the South African population. The total number of people living with HIV was estimated at approximately 8,45 million in 2022. For adults aged 15-49 years, an estimated 19,6% of the population was HIV positive.

The estimated number of AIDS-related deaths has generally declined since 2007 from 278 741 to 85 796 AIDS related deaths in 2022. Access to antiretroviral treatment has changed significantly over time, altering the pattern of mortality over time. Access to ART has extended the lifespan of many in South Africa, who would have otherwise died at an earlier age, as evidenced in the decline of AIDS deaths post-2006.

The presence of the COVID-19 pandemic has hampered the ability of the health sector to extend life expectancy in South Africa in the year 2021. A slight increase in AIDS related deaths is apparent in the year 2021, despite efforts to ensure ART rollout and better regiments of treatment.

Sustainable communities to reduce poverty

Activities carried out through the Social Policy and Integrated Service Delivery programme include profiling vulnerable households and communities to determine their socio-economic needs and creating structures and enhancing capacity in communities to reduce social ills. To fund these activities, R90.4 million over the period ahead is allocated in the Community Development subprogramme. The department will also support civil society organisations that focus on initiatives that aim to improve livelihoods through an allocation of R669.4 million over the same period in the National Development Agency subprogramme.

As a result of the COVID-19 pandemic, the DSD had to continue providing food parcels to impoverished and vulnerable persons and households. The DSD Food and Nutrition Programme provided food to a total of 10 006 423 vulnerable individuals and 2 348 848 vulnerable households by the end of March 2021.

The Programme helps to achieve the goal of increasing access to a wide range of nutritious foods at reasonable prices. The department will continue to strengthen its participation in the District Development Model (DDM), including a DSD plan. It will coordinate participation in the DDM in 18 districts. Furthermore, a total of 18 districts will be capacitated on Community Mobilisation and Empowerment Framework towards the implementation of the DDM.

Legislation and frameworks

Several pieces of legislation determine the mandate of the DSD:

- Children's Act of 2005, as amended, which gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution, and sets out principles and processes relating to their care and protection;
- NPOs Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997), which establishes an administrative and regulatory framework within which NPOs can conduct their affairs, and provides for their registration by the DSD;
- Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006), is aimed at maintaining and promoting the rights, status, wellbeing, safety and

security of older people. It provides for older people to enjoy quality services while staying with their families and in their communities for as long as possible, and to live in residential care facilities;

- Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act, 2008 (Act 70 of 2008) associated regulations provide a legal framework for the establishment, registration and monitoring of in-patient treatment centres and halfway houses;
- Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004), which provides a legislative framework for providing social assistance. The Act sets out the different types of grants payable, as well as their qualifying criteria;
- Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978), which provides for the regulation of social service professionals;
- the 1997 White Paper for Social Welfare sets out the principles, guidelines, policies and programmes for developmental social welfare in South Africa. A new white paper for social development is currently under review;
- 1998 White Paper on Population Policy for South Africa is aimed at promoting the sustainable development of all South Africans by integrating population issues with development planning in all spheres of government and all sectors of society;
- 2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities
 focuses on putting in place measures to reduce the exclusion
 and inequality experienced by persons with disabilities. This
 includes contributing towards fighting poverty among people
 with disabilities and their families, and providing policy
 guidelines on building capacity in the public sector to deliver
 equitable and accessible services to them.

Budae

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DSD was allocated R232.1 billion. An estimated 96.6% (R684.4 billion) of the department's budget over the MTEF period goes towards the payment of social grants, which is administered by the South African Social Security Agency (SASSA). The department expects the agency to pay social grants to 18.6 million beneficiaries, excluding recipients of the special COVID-19 Social relief of distress grant. in 2022/23.

Expenditure is expected to decrease by an average of 0.1% over the MTEF period, from R233.7 billion in 2021/22 to R233 billion in 2024/25, mainly as a result of the special COVID-19 social relief of distress grant being discontinued.

New allocations in this budget include R44 billion to extend the Special COVID-19 SRD grant until March 2023, R13.1 billion for inflation-related increases in social grants, and R1.6 billion to introduce an extended CSG for double orphans in the care of relatives.

South Africa hosted the 5th International Conference on the Eradication of Child Labour from 2 to 4 May 2022. The conference is convened every three years under the leadership of the International Labour Organisation. Owing to the COVID-19 pandemic, it was postponed from 2021 to 2022.

The conference was expected to deliberate on the global efforts to eradicate child labour. Member states would get an opportunity to reflect on their respective interventions to stop child labour in their countries. South Africa has a child labour programme of action which provides the country's roadmap towards eliminating child labour.

Entities

National Development Agency

The primary focus of the agency is to contribute towards the eradication of poverty and its causes by granting funds to civil society organisations to implement development projects in poor communities.

To inform government's response to alleviating poverty and facilitating development, over the MTEF period, the agency will partner with research and academic institutions to produce a targeted 11 research publications and host dialogues to debate the findings, which will eventually inform policy.

To carry out these activities, R33.3 million is allocated over the period ahead. A further R12.8 million is allocated for supporting a targeted 8 000 civil society organisations to meet their registration and reporting requirements, and to build their capacity in areas such as financial and general management.

Expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 2.2%, from R247.9 million in 2021/22 to R232.1 million in 2024/25, mainly as a result of one-off allocation of R30 million in 2021/22 to extend the agency's volunteer programme. The agency expects to derive 99.1% of its revenue through transfers from the department, also decreasing at an annual average rate of 2.2%, from R246 million in 2021/22 to R230 million in 2024/25.

South African Social Security Agency

The SASSA Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004) provides for the establishment of the SASSA, the objectives of which are to ensure the effective and efficient administration, management and payment of social assistance. The agency's core business is to administer and pay social assistance transfers. It has a large network of centres where citizens can apply for social grants and manages a large system of payment services.

The agency is currently able to process applications online only for the CSG, old age grant and foster care grant. To increase efficiencies in the distribution of social grants, the agency will focus on modernising its disbursement system to extend to all grant applications. The new, automated system is expected to be complete by 2024/25 at an estimated cost of R128 million over the medium term. It will also entail upgrading and automating core business applications, and ensuring compliance with changing regulations related to beneficiary maintenance, such as enabling real-time interface with other databases.

The agency's business process reengineering project, which began in 2021, is still under way. The project mainly involves mapping the agency's current operating model, developing a blueprint for staff organisational structures and capacity, and developing norms and standards for future operating procedures. The aim of the project, which is expected to be completed by the end of 2022/23 at a projected cost of R23.9 million, is to ensure that the agency is fit for purpose and has systems in place to improve its efficiency.

To become more customer-centric, the agency plans to consolidate its existing communications channels into a single platform. This entails the introduction of an integrated call centre to serve as a single point of contact for all incoming and outgoing communications, and provide a single view of beneficiaries and real-time access to their information. The agency plans to complete the project by 2023/24 at an estimated cost of R113 million. The agency expects to derive 99.9% (R23 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the

department. Revenue is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.2%, from R8 billion in 2021/22 to R7.9 billion in 2024/25. This is mostly as a result of a high baseline in 2021/22 due to allocations for the special COVID-19 social relief of distress grant.

Over the medium term, the agency's total expenditure is expected to amount to R23 billion.

Programmes and projects

Social Assistance

Over the medium term, the DSD will continue to transfer funds to the SASSA for the provision of social grants to the elderly, children, war veterans and persons with disabilities. Social grants account for an estimated 94.3% (R175.3 billion per year on average) of the department's total budget over the MTEF period.

Spending on grants is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.5% over the medium term. Mostly due to inflationary adjustments to the value of the grants and growth in the number of beneficiaries. The elderly population – people older than 60, is growing by 3% per year. As such, the number of beneficiaries who receive the old age grant is expected to increase.

As the child population grows, the number of beneficiaries who receive the CSG is also expected to increase. The high level of unemployment and poverty level in the country, combined with high wage inequality and low labour market participation, are contributory factors to the growth of the social grants to children. Furthermore, the continuing trend of generally low wages paid to those who are working means that a high proportion of working parents do not earn sufficient wages to adequately provide for their children.

For the foreseeable future, the Social Assistance programme will continue to be an important lever in government's arsenal to tackle poverty and inequality. In the immediate future as the country battles the COVID-19 pandemic, the social assistance system has become even more important as a key response to mitigate the severe impact on incomes and livelihoods of vulnerable workers and their households.

The economic fallout of the pandemic continues to reverberate across the economy, necessitating urgent intervention including the increased allocation of R40 billion to augment the social grants budget. This has been applied to provide a R250 increase for the Older Person's Grant, Disability Grant, Foster Child Grant and the Care Dependency Grant, together with a R300 once off increase to the CSG and R500 per month to the caregiver for five months. In addition, a temporary R350 per month COVID-19 Social Relief of Distress Grant was introduced to mitigate income losses among the 18 – 59 age group who ordinarily do not receive social grants.

Social Security Policy and Administration

The programme aims to amend the Social Assistance Act of 2004 and the Fund Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978), to address existing gaps and inconsistencies in the legislation. Specifically, the Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2020 (Act 16 of 2020) introduced a provision to empower the Minister of Social Development, with the concurrence of the Minister of Finance, to augment the CSG benefit provided to orphaned children residing with relatives. This is intended to reduce the demand on the foster child system, by reducing the number of children entering the foster care system purely to access the Foster

Child Grant due to the large differential in value between this grant and the CSG.

The Act will also enhance access to administrative justice, by reducing the time it takes for appeals to be adjudicated from 180 days to 90 days. The DSD expects the workload of the tribunal to increase once the Act is passed, since all the complainants will be able to come directly to the tribunal without first approaching the SASSA. When proclaimed, the Act will also pave the way for the establishment of an inspectorate for social assistance appeals, which will be tasked with ensuring and promoting the integrity of the social assistance framework.

The programme further aims to complete the extensive policy proposals on social security reform, ranging from extending social assistance coverage to all, introducing mandatory contributions for retirement, death and disability, creating a platform for informal sector workers to participate in social security coverage and developing an appropriate institutional architecture for a coherent, efficient and sustainable social security system in the long term.

The severe impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on the economy and its ability to create jobs has raised new questions about the reliance on economic growth to address unemployment and poverty, and revived interest in the prospect of a basic income grant as another lever to tackle poverty and inequality, and engender a more inclusive growth path. Ongoing policy development will continue, particularly to address very specific social security coverage gaps in relation to pregnant and lactating women, and institutional mechanisms and the cost thereof, to crowd in all government interventions to address the social protection needs of children, using the social grants as an entry point.

The department will also table the Fundraising Amendment Bill to Parliament, in order to streamline the administration of the various funds established before the democratic dispensation to provide humanitarian relief in times of disaster.

In 2020, Parliament enacted the Social Assistance Amendment Bill, which was signed by the President in the same year. The Bill prepares the stage for the introduction of a CSG Top-up Programme, which will provide a greater CSG to orphans living with family members. This policy is intended to help approximately 540 000 orphans at a cost of R1.5 billion per year. In addition, the DSD has finalised the *Green Paper on Comprehensive Social Security Reforms*, which had been discussed at NEDLAC for the previous four years.

The study provides major and far-reaching recommendations for overhauling the current social security system. The reforms are expected to create a social security system that covers everyone in the country, ensuring that those who are unable to support themselves receive social grants, and that those in both formal and informal employment have an institutional platform to make mandatory and voluntary contributions to cover themselves and their families in the event of retirement, death or disability.

Welfare Services Policy Development and Implementation Support

The purpose of the programme is to create an enabling environment for the delivery of equitable developmental welfare services through the formulation of policies, norms, standards and best practices; and the provision of support to implementing agencies.

This programme consists of the following subprogramme:

- Service Standards, which ensures the transformation and standardisation of social welfare services through the development and coordination of overarching policies and legislation that promote integrated, quality-driven, professional and accountable service delivery;
- Social Work Scholarship, which provides full scholarships for social work students;
- Substance Abuse, which develops, supports and monitors the implementation of policies, legislation, and norms and standards for combating substance abuse;
- Older Persons, which develops, supports and monitors the implementation of policies, legislation, and norms and standards for social welfare services to older people;
- Disability Rights, which promotes the empowerment and rights of persons with disabilities through accelerated mainstreaming of disability considerations and the strengthening of disability specific services;
- Children, which develops, supports and monitors the implementation of policies, legislation and norms and standards for social welfare services to children;
- Families, which develops, supports and monitors the implementation of policies, legislation and programmes for services aimed at strengthening families;
- Social Crime Prevention and Victim Empowerment, which develops, supports and monitors the implementation of policies, legislation and programmes aimed at protecting, empowering and supporting victims of crime and violence; and
- HIV and AIDS, which develops, supports and monitors the implementation of policies, programmes and guidelines aimed at preventing and mitigating the impact of HIV and AIDS in line with the 2017 – 2022 National Strategic Plan for HIV, sexually transmitted infections and TB.

The psycho-social support programmes are meant to build competencies and capacities for these groups to cope with life demands and stresses and manage relationships well. Some of the interventions entail building capacity of Social Service Practitioners to enable mainstreaming of counselling, testing, treatment and adherence support for children and adolescents in particular. Similarly, some of the HIV prevention programmes ensure building the capacity of adolescent girls and young women and boys to be able to resist temptations to engage in risky sexual behaviour and be able to make informed choices.

Ultimately, this will result in a society where individuals, families and communities are empowered and made resilient to deal with the HIV epidemic and women, children and people with disabilities form part of the key and vulnerable populations outlined in the National Strategic Plan for HIV, TB and STIs (2017 – 2022).

The DSD continues to make significant efforts to improve access to substance misuse treatment services, as seen by the construction of public treatment centers in the Eastern Cape, Northern Cape, Free State, and North West in 2020/21. In addition, the department received €9 million in financing to build 17 community care centres in North West, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo.

These centres work to improve service delivery in all beneficiary communities by ensuring that multiple partners provide integrated and comprehensive services in a safe and well-equipped location. Through a collaboration with the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure.

the DSD was able to secure a state-owned facility to use as the GBV Command Centre.

Social Policy and Integrated Service Delivery

The purpose of the programme is to support community development and promote evidence-based policy making in the DSD and the social development sector. Community development programme implementation is geared towards empowering communities through capacity enhancement and creation of structures.

Poverty and inequality continue to ravage communities as they are experienced through multi deprivation and vulnerabilities, which include poor nutrition, unemployment, poor education and poor health outcomes. The department plans to intensify its effort to ensure that vulnerable households and communities are profiled to determine their socio-economic needs. It will conduct community capacity enhancement in all nine provinces to bolster social cohesion.

Functional community structures will be created as part of prevention and addressing social ills of communities. Out of 19.1 grant recipients, the department intends to target 2% to link the beneficiaries as a means to alleviate poverty and build sustainable communities. Through the programme, the department will facilitate the implementation of the NPO Funding Policy and Partnership Model thereby ensuring uniformity in the sector. The programme will also ensure the formulation of the overarching Community Development Policy that will harness implementation of community development in the country.

Through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), the DSD will continue to create meaningful work opportunities as a social protection safety net for vulnerable individuals over the MTSF period. This is in line with government's commitment to job creation as contained in the Phase 4 EPWP Business Plan. The department also administers the NPO Act of 1997 and has identified the following outputs: NPO Policy Famework, turnaround time on NPO registration, NPO compliance monitoring and NPO education and awareness programmes as pillars that will ensure that the outcome – reduced levels of poverty – is achieved.

This is hoped to be achieved by increasing public trust and confidence through effective yet fair regulation of NPOs. Reducing poverty levels require contributions from NPOs in delivering programmes that support the achievement of set outcomes. This requires that NPOs understand legislation and compliance thereof in order to be credible and accountable entities that can deliver on their respective mandates. The planned outputs on provision of education and awareness programmes to NPOs will lead to an empowered and strengthened sector that is able to deliver quality services to vulnerable and poor communities, thus improving the quality of life.

The DSD will, in the next MTSF, implement the National Food and Nutrition Security Plan for South Africa. The plan seeks to ensure implementation of food and nutrition security initiatives targeting vulnerable individuals and households. This will be accomplished through the coordination of the DSD food and nutrition interventions which include all centre-based feeding programmes providing nutritious food to the poor and vulnerable in partnership with civil society organisations, social partners and agencies. Community development will seek to ensure development of the National Community Development Policy Framework, with an emphasis on the creation of vibrant and sustainable communities. The department will also

prioritise the linking of recipients below 60 years of age to sustainable livelihoods opportunities. The Community Development branch will continue with the development of policy framework, guidelines and tools to enhance community development within the country.

Ten-Point Plan

The strategic plan of the DSD is informed by the 10-Point Plan, which represents the priorities to be addressed by the social development sector. These are:

- Rebuilding of family, community and social relations: restoring the ethics of care and human development in all welfare programmes.
 This requires an urgent rebuilding of family, community and social relations in order to promote social integration.
- Integrated poverty eradication strategy: designing an integrated poverty eradication strategy that provides direct benefits to those in greatest need, especially women, youth and children in rural areas and informal settlements.
- Comprehensive social security system: developing a comprehensive social security system that builds on existing contributory and non-contributory schemes and prioritises the most vulnerable households.
- Violence against women and children, older persons and other vulnerable groups: responding to brutal effects of all forms of violence against women, children, older persons and other vulnerable groups, as well as designing effective strategies to deal with perpetrators.
- HIV and AIDS: programmes include a range of services to support community-based care and assistance for the people living with HIV and AIDS. Particular attention will be given to orphans and children infected and affected by HIV and AIDS.
- Youth development: developing a national strategy to reduce the number of youth in conflict with the law and promoting youth development within the framework of the National Crime Prevention Strategy and in partnership with the National Youth Commission.
- Accessibility of social welfare services: making social welfar services accessible and available to people in rural, peri-urban and informal settlements, and ensuring equity in service provision.
- Services to people with disabilities: redesigning services to people
 with disabilities in ways that promote their human rights and economic
 development and working with people with disabilities to ensure that
 their needs are met without further marginalising them.
- Commitment to cooperative governance: work must be based on a commitment to cooperative governance that includes working with different spheres of government and civil society.
- Train, educate, re-deploy and employ a new category of workers in social development: this includes the re-orientation of social servic workers to meet the challenges of South Africa and link these to regional and global demands.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP is a nationwide programme under the auspices of government and state-owned enterprises. The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households in the short to medium term. It is also a deliberate attempt by public sector bodies to use expenditure on goods and services to create job opportunities for the unemployed. The EPWP projects

employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis either by government, contractors or NGOs under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

The Vuk'uphile Learnership Programme is an EPWP Contractor Development Programme. It is a subprogramme of the EPWP infrastructure sector which is aimed at training and developing emerging contractors within the construction industry. The programme develops the administrative, technical, contractual, managerial and entrepreneurial skills of the learners within a learner-contracting entity. The Vuk'uphile Learnership Programme uses labour-intensive methods of construction.

The EPWP Knowledge Management Committee is composed of various national government departments such as Social Development, Environmental Affairs, and Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, with the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure (DPWI) leading the committee. Whilst the DPWI must continue with its role of coordinating the EPWP nationally, the DSD drives the implementation of the projects in the social sector space.

War on Poverty campaign

The Cooperative Shop Project is aimed at combating poverty by linking social grant beneficiaries (particularly the caregivers of children receiving CSG and other vulnerable groups to meaningful socio-economic opportunities. The DSD and its entities identify cooperatives that need support, with the intention of developing skills of the members of the cooperative to ensure they are able to produce goods of quality.

The project is in line with government's developmental agenda and could be seen as an addition to the grants that are provided. The primary intention is not to take people out of the grant system but to provide opportunities for grant beneficiaries to supplement their income.

Food for All Programme

The DSD is tasked with facilitating and monitoring the implementation of the Food for All Programme. To this end, distressed households were being provided with food through the DSD and the FoodForward SA programme. While this provides short-term relief for poor households, government recognises that longer-term solutions are needed.

Government is committed to improving its efforts at ensuring food security for all in the country, starting with vulnerable households and communities. To this end, households have been assisted in establishing food gardens to produce their own food, thus participating in their own development.

National Family Policy

The DSD is tasked with implementing the National Family Policy, and provides training in family-preservation services, marriage preparation and enrichment, parenting/primary care-giving and families in crisis to service providers in the area of family services.

The 2013 White Paper on Families emphasises the need for all to build strong families that protect the most vulnerable members of society. The purpose of the White Paper is to provide a platform for all South Africans to engage and exchange views on how to build stable families. It also addresses some of the challenges faced by individuals in families, including the abuse of women, children, the elderly and people with disabilities.

National Minimum Wage (NMW)

The NMW came into effect in January 2019. In March 2022, the NMW for each ordinary hour worked was increased from R21.69 to R23.19. The adjustment provides exceptions for several worker groups, including:

- farmworkers are entitled to a minimum wage of R23.19 per hour;
- domestic workers are entitled to a minimum wage of R23.19 per hour;
- workers employed on the Expanded Public Works Programme are entitled to a minimum wage of R12.75 per hour; and
- Workers who have concluded learnership agreements contemplated in section 17 of the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998) are entitled to allowances contained in Schedule 2.

The minimum wage is a tool to ensure that vulnerable workers do not fall below the poverty line and it is designed to reduce inequality and huge disparities in income in the national labour market.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

Isibindi is a programme which deploys child and youth care workers in communities to assist children in vulnerable homes. Isibindi has a special focus on Grade 12 learners. The assistance by Isibindi child and youth care workers ensures that children remain in school and attend classes. The child and youth care workers support these children and make sure that they are relieved from household responsibilities, including being parents to their siblings while they are trying to pass Grade 12.

Almost 300 Isibindi projects have been replicated across South African provinces, serving over 100 000 children who would otherwise have fallen outside of the care and protection matrix. Including quality assurance mechanisms, and a community development approach, the Isibindi model has received public acclaim, and is currently being scaled up through a South African government initiative.

Additional components of the model include a young women's empowerment programme, a young men's empowerment programme, a non-centre based ECD model and a disability model – all of which enable progressive realisation of a wide range of children's rights and protection needs, through effective deployment of community-based child and youth care workers.

HIV and AIDS Advocacy, Awareness and Outreach Programme

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual

self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection.

The awareness programme has four main pillars – disclosure, communication, rights and facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS. It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS;
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments; and
- discrimination against the infected and affected.

The programme aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

Victim Empowerment Programme

South Africa's Victim Empowerment Policy is based upon the concept of restorative justice. Victim empowerment is a means of facilitating access to a range of services for all people who have individually or collectively suffered harm, trauma and/or material loss through violence, crime, natural disaster, human accident and/or through socioeconomic conditions.

It is the process of promoting the resourcefulness of victims of crime and violence by providing opportunities to access services available to them, as well as to use and build their own capacity and support networks and to act on their own choices.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial Victim Empowerment Policy managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

Sobriety Week is a national campaign aimed at creating awareness among the general South African public, particularly the youth, women and pregnant women about the adverse effects of liquor abuse.

Sobriety Week incorporates International Foetal Alcohol Syndrome Day, which is observed internationally on 9 September every year to highlight the irreversible damage caused to unborn babies when their mothers consume alcohol during pregnancy. Government recognises challenges such as unemployment, which result in people using and abusing alcohol.

Children and vouth

The Home Community-Based Care Programme is the centrepiece of government's interventions to build a protective and caring environment for vulnerable children.

Most services to orphans and vulnerable children are rendered through home community-based care and include early identification of vulnerable children and their families, referrals, training of community caregivers and psychosocial support and material assistance.

This approach is geared towards keeping children within their families and communities. It is aimed at providing comprehensive care and support, which is complemented by proactive action at community level. This includes linking families with poverty alleviation projects and other services in the community, such as food security initiatives and ECD services.

Child Labour Programme of Action

The Child Labour Programme of Action is a national partnership initiated by government and civil-society partners comprising organised business, organised labour and NGOs. It is led by the Department of Labour. It is South Africa's roadmap towards the prevention, reduction and eventual elimination of child labour. The programe was first adopted in 2003, after extensive consultation within government, with a wide range of organisations outside government and with groups of teenage children involved in different forms of child labour. The programme sets

out specific actions to be taken and assigned responsibility for these actions.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a 24-hour toll-free crisis line (116) to children and families across South Africa. It provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information. Childline is an NPO that works to protect children from all forms of violence and creates a culture of respect for children's rights.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- · a crisis line,
- · child rights and education,
- · training and education of volunteers,
- training of other professionals who work with child protection services and children,
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families,
- · court preparation of child witnesses,
- · networking and coordination,
- lobbying and advocacy, and
- · analysis of law and policy.

National Child Protection Week

National Child Protection Week 2022 was commemorated from 29 May to 5 June. It was held under the theme; "Let us all Protect Children during COVID-19 and Beyond". National Child Protection Week is commemorated in the country annually to raise awareness of the rights of children as articulated in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and Children's Act of 2005.

The campaign is led by the DSD in partnership with key government departments and civil society organisations rendering child protection services. The Constitution has the highest regard for children, their protection and non-violation of their rights. Protecting children from violence, exploitation and abuse is not only a basic value but also an obligation set out in Article 28 of the Constitution.

Government has put in place various early intervention programmes that focus on sexual and reproductive health, and rights, such as an Integrated Programme of Action that responds to teenage pregnancy by coordinating the work of all stakeholders. It ensures that resources are directed to the hardest hit areas with a focus on prevention and early intervention.

The National Integrated School Health Programme strengthens key interventions towards dealing with teenage pregnancy. The policy on the Prevention and Management of Learner Pregnancy in Schools is grounded in supporting learners who fall pregnant and is aimed at reducing the increasing number of learner pregnancies at schools.

The DSD's Sinovuyo Parenting Programme helps build the capacity of teenage parents to care for their children, and life skills programmes such as Yolo, Chommy, Boys and Men Championing Change and Ezabasha are helping develop young people.

The DSD has a 24-hour call centre dedicated to provide support and counselling to victims of GBV:

- The toll-free number to call is 0800 428 428 (0800 GBV GBV) to speak to a social worker for assistance and counselling.
- Callers can also request a social worker from the Command Centre to contact them by dialling *120*7867# (free) from any cell phone.

Other numbers to call are Childline South Africa on 0800 055 555 and Child Welfare South Africa on 0861 4 CHILD (24453)/

COVID-19 Rapid Needs Assessment Report

In October 2020, the DSD and the United Nations Development Programme officially launched the COVID-19 Rapid Needs Assessment Report after the department commissioned the agency to conduct a rapid assessment of the COVID-19 situation, with a specific focus on vulnerable groups.

The results have further revealed the deeply ingrained socioeconomic challenges such as poverty, unemployment and inequality. The human impact of the pandemic has been devastating with income loss estimated at between R41 and R53 million for 9.5 million affected formal sector employees, and 2.5 million informal workers and owners of small, micro and medium enterprises.

The report also revealed that 740 616 informal workers were at risk of falling below the upper poverty line during the extended lockdown due to COVID-19, while 900 000 households had severely inadequate access to food. The report recommended that the country needs to prepare for the long haul. The key recommendation includes raising the COVID-19 Relief Grant from R350 to at least R560 per month.

Role players

Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities is situated in The Presidency. The department derives its mandate from Section 9(3) of the Constitution. It is required to champion socioeconomic transformation and the empowerment and participation of women, youth and people with disabilities through mainstreaming, advocacy, and monitoring and evaluation.

The NDP envisages economic participation, education and skills development for women and other vulnerable groups, and the elimination of violence against women and children. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019 – 2024 MTSF. The work of this department is directly aligned with these priorities through facilitating the planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation, and auditing processes responsive to gender, youth and disability rights across the State.

Accordingly, over the medium term, the department intends to focus on reducing GBVF, and strengthening the national gender machinery; making interventions for economic empowerment; engaging in responsive government-wide planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation; ensuring compliance with international commitments; promoting the rights of people with disabilities, and supporting the development of young people.

People with disabilities

The 2016 DSD White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities (WPRPD) takes its cue from the Constitution and a number of international instruments, including the Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and its Optional Protocol, the Vienna

Declaration and Programme of Action, the Copenhagen Declaration and Programme of Action, and the sustainable development goals, which reaffirm the human rights of people with disabilities. The White Paper is a crucial step along the journey of improving the lives of people with disabilities and moves the country closer to a fully inclusive society.

The White Paper:

- updates South Africa's 1997 White Paper on an Integrated National Disability Strategy;
- integrates obligations of the United Nations (UN) Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, and in the Continental Plan of Action for the African Decade of Persons with Disabilities (both of which South Africa has signed), with South Africa's legislation, policy frameworks and the NDP:
- endorses a mainstreaming trajectory for realising the rights of persons with disabilities;
- provides clarity on and guides the development of standard operating procedures for mainstreaming disability;
- guides the review of all existing, and the development of new, sectoral policies, programmes, budgets and reporting systems, to bring these in line with both Constitutional and international treaty obligations;
- stipulates norms and standards for the removal of discriminatory barriers that perpetuate the exclusion and segregation of persons with disabilities; and
- outlines the responsibilities and accountabilities of the various stakeholders involved in providing barrier-free, appropriate, effective, efficient and coordinated service delivery to persons with disabilities, and guides self-representation of persons with disabilities.
 It is intended to accelerate transformation and redress with regard to full inclusion, integration and equality for people with disabilities.
 South Africa had to collectively contribute to the empowerment of people with disabilities through accessible disability information services, inclusive ECD opportunities and accessible rehabilitation services.

This would enable people with disabilities to take up the opportunities created in much larger numbers, improving performance in achieving equity targets. People with disabilities represent the voice of the sector in institutions such as the South African Human Rights Commission, the Commission on Gender Equality, the Board of the South African Broadcasting Corporation, the National Youth Development Agency and many transformation and developmental entities.

The South African experience has also helped to shape the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and the Continental Plan for the African Decade of Persons with Disabilities. South Africa has been celebrating the International Day for People with Disabilities annually since 1997.

The vision of the WPRPD is the creation of a free and just society inclusive of all persons with disabilities as equal citizens. It commits duty bearers to realising the rights of persons with disabilities by:

- accelerating implementation of existing legislation that advocates equality for persons with disabilities;
- taking calculated action to ensure that their rights as equal persons are upheld;
- removing discriminatory barriers to access and participation;
- · ensuring that universal design informs access and participation in

- the planning, budgeting and service delivery value chain of all programmes:
- · recognising the right to self-representation;
- acknowledging that not all persons with disabilities are alike, and that personal circumstances, gender, age, sexuality, religious and cultural backgrounds, and geographical location, requires different responses: and
- embedding the obligations contained in the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities in legislation, policy and service delivery.

The WPRPD is built on nine strategic pillars:

- Removing barriers to access and participation.
- Protecting the rights of persons at risk of compounded marginalisation.
- · Supporting sustainable integrated community life.
- Promoting and supporting the empowerment of children, women, youth and persons with disabilities.
- · Reducing economic vulnerability and releasing human capital.
- · Strengthening the representative voice of persons with disabilities.
- Building a disability equitable state machinery.
- Promoting international cooperation.
- · Monitoring and evaluation.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind, and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa. Blind SA's main focus is to improve the quality of life of all South Africa's visually impaired people by empowering them through education.

Its objectives are to protect and promote the interests of people with visual impairment and enable all visually impaired people to achieve their optimal potential through independence; and by providing development care for and protecting the rights of those who, owing to circumstances beyond their control, are unable to do so themselves.

Orientation, mobility and skills development to blind and newly blinded people is an important aspect of the work undertaken by Blind SA. The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all South African official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

The purpose of Blind SA is to end the cycle of poverty for blind South Africans, empowering them with knowledge and information through education, Braille and developmental services. It aims to break down barriers, provide opportunities and create answers that improve the quality of life for the blind community so that they can live the life they choose. Recent initiatives include Mali-Bhala – a money counter and signature guide.

This locally created device comes in two standard sizes that are designed to fit either in a person's wallet or pocket. It is used as an indicator to differentiate between the five South African 'Mandela' bank notes and as a signature guide.

South African Braille Authority (SABA)

The SABA promotes and advocates for Braille and Braille-related matters in South Africa. Its purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa. These standards relate to the development and maintenance of Braille codes; production

of quality Braille; the teaching of, access to and promotion of Braille; Braille examinations; and many other Braille-related matters.

Members of the SABA include schools for the blind, consumer organisations of the blind, student disability units, Braille producers and the South African Library for the Blind. Through the SABA, South Africa is a member of the International Council on English Braille. The membership enables the country to stay abreast of and participate in international Braille-related matters.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is the coordinating body for over 100-member organisations that span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted people throughout the country. The SANCB comprises four core business areas, namely social development, the bureau for the prevention of blindness, education and fundraising and public relations.

To combat as much as 80% of avoidable blindness, the council regularly undertakes tours with its mobile eye care clinics to rural areas for eye screening, referrals and to perform cataract removal operations. The SANCB provides entrepreneurial training, adult basic education and training, and facilitates skills training such as computer literacy and call centre programmes through its Optima College. It is also affiliated to international organisations, including the African Union of the Blind and the World Blind Union.

Support for the deaf

South Africa's national organisation for the deaf is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA). It acts as the national research, information and community action organisation on behalf of South Africans that are culturally and linguistically deaf, hard of hearing and deafblind.

DeafŚA, formerly known as the South African National Council for the Deaf (SANCD), was founded in 1929. In 1995, the SANCD was transformed to a new democratically elected organisation, the DeafSA. This resulted in a paradigm shift from an organisation for the deaf to one of the deaf.

The changes in the constitution and attitudes also meant that decisions about the services and affairs of deaf people were no longer taken by hearing people on behalf of deaf people – but by deaf people. The organisation has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa. An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use the South African Sign Language (SASL). As sign language has grown in South Africa – particularly baby sign language – an NPO, Sign Language Education and Development, has been formed to promote the language. Signing with hearing babies and children is being promoted through the Signsational Kids website. South Africa has a long-established deaf education system.

The Institute for the Deaf in Worcester operates Deaf College South Africa, which trains deaf people for jobs. In addition, the Bible College for the Deaf in Gauteng trains people to work in deaf ministry.

The University of the Witwatersrand in Johannesburg has a Centre for Deaf Studies. The centre offers programmes in deaf education and focuses on teaching, research and community service. Among other services, the National Institute for the Deaf provides services for the multiple disabled deaf, runs two deaf churches and provides audiological and mental health services.

A Deaf Child Centre at the Department of Paediatrics and Child

Health at the University of Cape Town, provides pre-school education and community services. This centre also focuses on deafness research. The Carel du Toit Centre, based in Cape Town, provides early childhood auditory-oral education. In addition, the centre engages in community outreaches, helping families with hearing-related needs and more practical needs, such as food.

A similar centre is the Eduplex in Pretoria. It provides auditory-oral pre-school and primary school educational services, teaching hearing and deaf children together and provides training to prospective teachers, audiologists and therapists. In 2018, sign language was administered as a new subject for the first time during the National Senior Certificate examinations

SASL Charter

In 2020, the Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB) launched the SASL Charter. With September being Deaf Awareness Month, the launch of the SASL Charter kickstarted various activities that were undertaken by the PanSALB in various parts of the country to raise awareness about this initiative.

The charter was conceptualised to address issues that relate to communication, access to information, facilities and social justice for the deaf community, including the type of service provided by the SASL Charter interpreters in general.

The charter articulates the linguistic rights of deaf persons in South Africa and is aimed at creating conditions for the development of the SASL. It compels all government departments, and other organs of state, as well as the private sector to make provisions for SASL interpreting. It also guarantees access to services by deaf persons through ensuring that essential service staff, such as social workers and police officers, receive advanced level training in SASL.

Older people

The DSD promotes a holistic approach to active ageing and well-being among the country's senior citizens. A number of initiatives have been rolled out by the departments of Social Development, Health, Tourism, Sport, Arts and Culture, and other stakeholders to promote general health among older persons, especially through sports to promote general well-being. In 2008, government implemented a national active ageing programme in line with the Madrid International Plan of Action on Ageing of 2002.

The Madrid Plan of Action offers a bold agenda for handling the issue of ageing in the 21st century. It focuses on three priority areas – older persons and development, advancing health and well-being into old age and ensuring enabling and supportive environments.

The Older Persons Act of 2006 aims to enhance the quality of life and improve the health of older persons by engaging them in programmes that promote social, physical, mental and emotional well-being, to prevent or delay the onset of ageing challenges and keep illnesses related to old age at bay. The Older Persons' Parliament takes place annually in October. It gives elders the opportunity to engage with the executive on critical issues affecting their lives.

Training and skills development

Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The Unemployed Social Workers Database informs the DSD about the number of unemployed social workers who have studied outside the DSD scholarship programme. This aims to address the issue of qualified social workers who are unemployed.

Government has mandated the development of strategies to facilitate the recruitment and retention of such scarce skills. The DSD has been the main driver in the implementation of this social policy. In addition, the NDP indicates that 60 000 social workers will be needed by 2030 to serve the population.

Professionalising community development

The Council for Social Service Professions was established in terms of the Social Service Professions Act of 1978.

The key functions are:

- protecting and promoting the interests of the professions, in respect of which professional boards have been or are to be established, and to deal with any matter relating to such interests;
- advising the Minister of Social Development on matters affecting the professions in respect of which professional boards have been established; and
- controlling and exercising authority regarding all financial matters relating to the council and the professional boards; and assisting in the promotion of social services.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Sport, Arts and Culture

Sport, Arts and Culture

Sport, Arts and Culture

The Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (DSAC) is mandated to provide leadership to the sport, arts and culture sector to accelerate its transformation; oversee the development and management of the sector; legislate on sports participation, sports infrastructure and safety; improve South Africa's international ranking in selected sports through a partnership with the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (SASCOC); preserve, develop, protect and promote the cultural, heritage, linguistic diversity and legacy of South Africa; lead nation-building and social cohesion; enhance archives and records management structures and systems; and promote access to information. In its efforts to enable transformed, capable and professional sport, arts and culture sectors, over the medium term, the department will focus on promoting and protecting heritage; creating job opportunties in the culturaland creative sector; and providing integrated and accessible sport infrastructure and events.

Promoting and protecting heritage

In order to expand access to knowledge and information, the department plans to build 96 new libraries, upgrade 135 community libraries and procure 310 000 library materials over the medium term through the community library services grant. An estimated 43% (R8 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term is set to go to the Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme, of which, R4.9 billion is earmarked for the Public Library Services subprogramme and R1.9 billion for the Heritage Institutions subprogramme, to be transferred to museums for operations.

To increase the pool of heritage professionals, over the medium term, 135 students will be awarded with bursaries for heritage studies. The Infrastructure Support subprogramme in the Recreation Promotion and Sport Development programme receives R1.5 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period to build, repair and renovate buildings belonging to public entities and other institutions in the arts, culture and heritage sector.

Igniting economic growth through the cultural and creative industries

As part of the department's efforts to realise the potential of cultural and creative industries to stimulate growth and contribute to South Africa's economy, over the medium term, a targeted 900 artists will be placed in schools to teach art and 750 language bursaries will be awarded to develop qualified language practitioners.

Funding for this is within the Mzansi Golden Economy subprogramme's allocation of R1.8 billion over the MTEF period, accounting for 34.4% of the Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programme's budget of R4.9 billion. The allocation to the Mzansi Golden Economy subprogramme will also enable the arts and youth development programme to create a targeted 3 600 job opportunities over the medium term.

A further 45 heritage bursary graduates are expected to be placed in jobs over the period ahead through an allocation of R5.8 million in the Heritage Promotion subprogramme in the Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme. The department is allocated an additional R440 million in 2022/23 and R462 million in 2023/24 for the creative industry as part of the presidential employment initiative, which targets the creation of 24 405 job opportunities in each year. Sectors to be considered as part of the intervention include performance and

celebrations (including the areas of theatre, dance and opera), audiovisual and interactive media, visual arts and craft (including public art), design and creative services, books and publishing (including indigenous language development and promotion), cultural and natural heritage, and human language technologies.

Promoting and developing sport and recreation

Sport has the potential to bring together diverse groups and create a socially cohesive society with a common national identity. In recognition of this, the department has allocated a total of R4.5 billion to the Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme over the MTEF period, of which the mass participation and sport development grant receives R1.8 billion.

This is inclusive of an allocation of R60 million to Netball South Africa to host the Netball World Cup in 2023. The mass participation and sport development grant aims to increase citizens' access to sport and recreation activities. To encourage the development of young people through sport and enable them to showcase their skills at events such as the national school sport championship, an estimated 49.2%(R2.2 billion) of the programme's budget is allocated to the Active Nation subprogramme over the MTEF period.

Legislation

The DSAC derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- National Sport and Recreation Act, 1998 (Act 110 of 1998);
- National Heritage Resources Act (NHRA), 1999 (Act 25 of 1999);
- National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS) Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001);
- Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act, 2010 (Act 2 of 2010);
- Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012);
- Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962);
- · Culture Promotion Act, 1983 (Act 35 of 1983);
- National Film and Video Foundation Act (NFVF), 1997 (Act 73 of 1997).
- National Archives and Record Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996);
- Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997);
- South African Geographical Names Council Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998); and
- · Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998).

Rudae

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.3%, from R5.7 billion in 2021/22 to R6.1 billion in 2024/25. Transfers and subsidies account for an estimated 80.7% (R15.1 billion) of the department's spending over the medium term.

The department's total budget over the medium term is R18.8 billion after a baseline increase of R7.8 million for salary adjustments in 2022/23, and a total of R902 million in the first two years of the MTEF period for the presidential employment initiative for the creative industry.

Entitie

Boxing South Africa (BSA)

BSA was established in terms of the Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001), which requires the entity to: administer professional boxing; recognise amateur boxing; create and ensure synergy between professional and

amateur boxing; and promote engagement and interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters and trainers. Over the medium term, the entity will focus on contributing to nation-building, healthy lifestyles and social cohesion by promoting participation in boxing, especially among youth and women; strengthening the boxing regulatory environment; and ensuring the effective administration of the sport.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.6%, from R22.7 million in 2021/22 to R23.9 million in 2024/25. Over the medium term, the entity is set to receive 86.7% (R60.4 million) of its revenue through transfers from the department, increasing from R19.2 million in 2021/22 to R20.8 million in 2024/25. The remainder is generated mainly from fees for sanctioning boxing tournaments.

Heritage institutions

The following heritage institutions were established in terms of the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998, and derive their mandates from this Act and the 1996 White Paper on Arts, Culture and Heritage, Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum en -monument, Ditsong Museums of South Africa, Iziko Museums of South Africa, KwaZulu-Natal Museum, uMsunduzi Museum (incorporating the Voortrekker Museum), National Museum, Amazwi South African Museum of Literature, the Robben Island Museum, War Museum of the Boer Republics, William Humphreys Art Gallery, Luthuli Museum, Nelson Mandela Museum, Freedom Park, and Engelenburg House art collection.

Over the medium term, heritage institutions will focus on collecting and preserving South Africa's national heritage, and providing and promoting access to and awareness of it by collecting, protecting and conserving heritage materials; conducting exhibitions; and contributing knowledge through research and publications.

They plan to host a collective 472 exhibitions as means of encouraging educational and public outreach programmes and celebrating the diversity of the country's cultural and natural heritage. The institutions also plan to celebrate the diversity of the country's cultural and natural heritage by making the services offered by museums accessible to everyone in South Africa.

This will be achieved by increasing awareness of museum services through 190 101 educational interactions with schools at a cost of R242.7 million over the MTEF period in the public engagement programme. To further achieve these objectives, an estimated R813.6 million (25.4%of the institutions' budget) over the medium term will be spent on business development, which includes the acquisition of 349 107 heritage assets or artefacts and publishing or producing 470 new articles over the medium term.

Over the period ahead, heritage institutions are set to receive 87.4%(R2.8 billion) of their revenue from the department and the remainder through entrance fees, donor assistance and sponsorships. Transfers from the department are expected to increase at average annual rate of 7.2%, from R840.1 million in 2021/22 to R1 billion in 2024/25, which includes the reprioritisation of R21 million in 2022/23 to address the going concern status and operational funding shortfalls at the Amazwi South African Museum of Literature, Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum en -monument, the Luthuli Museum, the KwaZulu-Natal Museum, the War Museum of the Boer Republics, the William Humphreys Art Gallery and the uMsunduzi Museum.

Libraries

The National Library of South Africa was established in terms of the National Library of South Africa Act (1998), which requires it to contribute to socioeconomic, cultural, educational, scientific and innovation development by collecting, recording, preserving and making available the national documentary heritage, and promoting an awareness and appreciation for it, by fostering information literacy and facilitating access to the world's information resources. The South African Library for the Blind was established in terms of the South African Library and information service to blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

The National Library of South Africa provides services to community libraries in partnership with provincial library services. These include ICT support; training in preservation and resource development; the promotion of legal deposit by book publishers in terms of the Legal Deposit Act (1997); and marketing and exhibition services. This work is funded through the community library services grant, amounting to R77.6 million over the medium term. The library also plans to digitise 168 000 heritage items and preserve and conserve 50 708 documentary heritage items over this period, spending on which is within the allocation of R82.3 million to the business development programme.

The South African Library for the Blind is funded through operational transfers from the department amounting to R74.3 million over the medium term. This is expected to enable it to produce 720 Braille book titles and 90 tactile books for visually impaired people in alternative formats such as audio and Braille. These items will also be circulated for lending to the public.

The libraries' total expenditure and revenue over the medium term are set to increase at an average annual rate of 0.5%, from R236.4 million in 2021/22 to R240.2 million in 2024/25, due to a one-off allocation to the National Library of South Africa in 2021/22 for the presidential employment initiative.

National Arts Council (NAC)

The National Arts Council derives its mandate from the National Arts Council Act (1997), which requires it to provide and encourage the provision of opportunities for people to practise the arts; foster the expression of a national identity and consciousness through the arts; provide historically disadvantaged artists with additional help and resources to give them greater access to the arts; address historical imbalances in the provision of infrastructure for the promotion of the arts; develop and promote the arts; and encourage artistic excellence.

As redressing past imbalances is pivotal to the council's work, it needs to ensure that funding is allocated equitably across different provinces and groups of people. Over the medium term, the council will continue to prioritise applications from historically disadvantaged provinces; marginalised groups such as women, young people and people living with disabilities; and rural and peri-urban areas.

An estimated 98.6%(R376.7 million) of the council's revenue over the period ahead is set to be derived through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 5.2%, from R155.2 million in 2021/22 to R132.1 million in 2024/25. The decrease is due to a once-off allocation to the council in 2021/22 for the Presidential Employment Initiative. Total expenditure is

expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.4%R121.9 million in 2021/22 to R130.8 million in 2024/25.

National Film and Video Foundation

The NFVF develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa. The foundation promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry, and addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure, skills and resources in the industry.

It is mandated to develop and promote the film and video industry in South Africa through the programmes it funds, and carry out other enabling activities such as providing training to industry players, supporting and developing historically disadvantaged people in the audio-visual industry in line with South Africa's transformation agenda, increasing the number of people trained in scarce skills, and creating job opportunities in the film and video industry.

Over the medium term, the foundation will focus on increasing the number of South African film productions made by historically disadvantaged communities; promoting the South African film industry locally and internationally; and increasing the number of people trained in production, directing and scriptwriting. It plans to effect this mainly by awarding grant funding to 140 individuals and 180 companies for the production of 70 local content films and the development of 110 local content scripts. In addition, the foundation plans to award 140 bursaries and identify and place 105 interns in relevant industry institutions to gain workplace experience at a cost of R244 million over the medium term.

The foundation is set to receive 97.4% (R467.6 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department and the balance through partnerships and interest on investments. Expenditure and revenue are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.9%, from R157.6 million in 2021/22 to R161.9 million in 2024/25.

National Heritage Council

The National Heritage Council is a schedule 3A public entity established in terms of the National Heritage Council Act (1999) to preserve South African heritage as a priority for nation building and national identity. Over the medium term, the council plans to focus on building awareness about heritage, and developing, promoting and protecting South Africa's national heritage for current and future generations.

It aims to achieve this through efforts such as developing the resistance and liberation heritage route through funding feasibility studies for provincial infrastructure projects; and supporting the evaluation process of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) world heritage nomination dossier for recognising the resistance and liberation heritage route as a world heritage site.

Support for the evaluation process entails availing further information as required and/or accompanying evaluators to the different sites that have been nominated, as well as providing any other support that may be required by UNESCO. The roll-out of the resistance and liberation heritage route project will place more emphasis on the unsung heroes and heroines of the liberation struggle.

The council plans to support 27 projects and 9 events linked to the liberation heritage route sites in all provinces and the African liberation heritage programme over the medium term, as well as effecting 12 repatriation of heritage objects and/or human remains from outside the

country, at an estimated cost of R30 million. The council will continue to contribute to preserving South Africa's living heritage and creating awareness about tangible and intangible cultural heritage and practices by funding community heritage projects through the annual call for funding, adjudicated by an independent panel.

About R25.5 million over the medium term has been set aside to fund 90 heritage projects through public calls for proposals. The council will also establish a national inventory to protect endangered living heritage. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.1%, from R82.2 million in 2021/22 to R104 million in 2024/25. The council expects to receive all of its revenue, amounting to R279.9 million over the medium term, through transfers from the department.

Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB)

The PanSALB is mandated by the PanSALB Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995) to promote an awareness of multilingualism as a national resource; support and develop all official South African languages, including the Khoi, Nama and San languages, and South African Sign Language; and investigate complaints about language rights and violations from any individual, organisation or institution.

The board encourages South Africans to continue making daily use of languages other than English in an effort to preserve indigenous languages. It is important that these languages, which are used in family and social networks, grow and flourish, as their use reflects diversity and social cohesion.

In its efforts to promote equal opportunities, inclusion and redress, as well as the transformation of marginalised languages, over the medium term, the board plans to conduct language research, address language complaints, promote language awareness, authenticate all terminology submitted, develop and produce 27 dictionaries, and improve its financial management.

Revenue and expenditure are both expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.2%, from R120.9 million in 2021/22 to R129.1 million in 2024/25, with compensation of employees accounting for an estimated 50.9%(R189.2 million) of the board's expenditure over the medium term. The board is set to derive all (R375.8 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department.

Performing arts institutions

Performing arts institutions are schedule 3A public entities established in terms of the Cultural Institutions Act (1998). They are mandated to advance, promote and preserve the performing arts in South Africa; enhance the contribution of arts and culture to the economy; create job opportunities; and create initiatives that enhance nation building.

The following arts institutions receive annual transfers from the department: Artscape, Cape Town; the Playhouse Company, Durban; the Market Theatre, Johannesburg; the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein; the South African State Theatre, Pretoria; and the Mandela Bay Theatre Complex, Gqeberha.

In making the performing arts more accessible to the general public, over the medium term, the institutions will focus on staging 1 130 productions and 57 festivals, and conducting 216 skills programmes that are representative of South Africa's cultural diversity. In support of these targets, an estimated R216.5 million over the medium term is allocated to the business development programme and R80.5 million to the public engagement programme. Expenditure by these institutions is

Sport, Arts and Culture

expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.7%, from R416.9 million in 2021/22 to R492.5 million in 2024/25. The institutions are set to receive 87.6% (R1.2 billion) of their revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department, increasing at an average annual rate of 2.2%, from R363.3 million in 2021/22 to R388.1 million in 2024/25. The remaining 12.4% (R176.7 million) of revenue is expected to be derived mainly from ticket sales, venue hire and investment income.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS)

The SAIDS was established in terms of the South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport Act (1997). The institute is mandated to promote participation in sport free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance.

It is the custodian of anti-doping and ethics in South African sport, and actively collaborates with colleagues in the rest of Africa in an effort to keep sport clean. Over the period ahead, the institute will focus on ensuring compliance in global sport on matters of anti-doping, anti-corruption, governance reforms, institutional independence, child safeguarding and data protection.

This includes implementing projects to ensure compliance with the world anti-doping code and the UNESCO International Convention against Doping. As part of this will entail meeting national sports federations' demands for testing services, over the medium term, the institute plans to conduct 4 800 drug tests and 750 blood tests on athletes.

Spending on goods and services accounts for an estimated 66.7% (R60.8 million) of the institute's expenditure over the medium term. Revenue and expenditure are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.3%, from R29.6 million in 2021/22 to R31.7 million in 2024/25. The institute is set to receive 98.3%(R90.1 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through transfers from the department.

South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA)

The SAHRA is a schedule 3A public entity established in terms of the NHRA of 1999. It is mandated to formulate national principles, standards and policy for the identification, recording and management of the national estate in terms of which heritage resource authorities and other relevant bodies must function in relation to South African heritage resources.

Over the medium term, the agency will focus on promoting and preserving the national estate – which comprises resources of cultural significance for present and future generations including places, buildings, structures and equipment of cultural significance – and monitoring and inspecting specific objects and collections. It will continue to assess and approve permits for the development of heritage sites, and review heritage impact assessment reports submitted by property developers.

Over the medium term, the SAHRA plans to rehabilitate and erect 12 memorial sites and declare 12 heritage resources. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 51.9% (R140.3 million) of the agency's planned spending over the MTEF period. Total revenue and expenditure are set to decrease at an average annual rate of 15%, from R132.6 million in 2021/22 to R81.3 million in 2024/25 because of a once-off allocation in 2021/22 for the presidential employment initiative. The agency expects to derive 93.4% (R229.4 million) of its revenue

over the period ahead through transfers from the department, and the balance through interest and rental income.

Arts and Culture

To increase the levels of participation in the Arts and Culture sector and to develop new audiences, the DSAC plans to provide financial support to activate provincial arts programmes for community centres. This will ensure that they remain the nerve centres for community participation and development in the area of arts and culture, and encourage young people to engage in positive activities. The DSAC has received business plans from community arts centres in all nine provinces, focusing on building capacity in arts administration, arts programming and financial management.

Through the MGE programme, the DSAC has made an open call to financially support arts initiatives from the various arts disciplines throughout the country. In excess of R64 million has been ring-fenced to support both national and provincial flagship projects such as the Mapungubwe Arts Festival; the Cape Town International Jazz Festival; Buyelekaya; Abantu Book Fair and the Cape Town Carnival. To capacitate the sector, the DSAC will support incubator programmes in playhouses.

The DSAC will continue with the renaming of geographical features to reflect the demographics and history of the country. The National Archives of South Africa, an important repository of the collective memory of the country, have been experiencing challenges in terms of the availability of storage space. A study to investigate the feasibility of upgrading the old archives building or constructing a new one, will be conducted. This will also assist with the process of digitisation and responding to emerging technologies.

National symbols Animal: Springbok

(Antidorcas marsupialis)

The springbok's common name is derived from its characteristic jumping display. It is the only southern African gazelle and is fairly widespread in open, dry bush, grasslands or riverbeds near water. It is also the emblem of South Africa's national rugby team, which bears its name.



Bird: Blue crane

(Anthropoides paradisia)

This elegant crane with its silvery blue plumage is endemic to southern Africa, with more than 99% of the population within South Africa's borders.



Fish: Galjoen (Coracinus capensis)

The galjoen is found only along the South African coast and is a familiar sight to every angler. It keeps to mostly shallow water and is often found in rough surf and sometimes right next to the shore.



Flower: King protea (Protea cynaroides)

This striking protea is found in the south-western and southern areas of the Western Cape. It derives its scientific name cynaroides, which means "like cynara" (artichoke), from the artichoke-like appearance of its flower head.



Tree: Real yellowwood (Podocarpus latifolius)

The yellowwood family is primeval and has been present in South Africa for more than 100 million years. The species is widespread, from Table Mountain, along the southern and eastern Cape coast, in the ravines of the Drakensberg up to the Soutpansberg and the Blouberg in Limpopo.



National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history. It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.



National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika and The Call of South Africa (Die Stem van Suid- Afrika).

Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika was composed by Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897. The words of The Call of South Africa were written by Cornelis Jacobus Langenhoven in May 1918, and the music was composed by Reverend Marthinus Lourens de Villiers in 1921.

The National Anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo, Yizwa imithandazo yethu, Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso, O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho, O se boloke, O se boloke setjhaba sa heso, Setjhaba sa South Afrika – South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel, Uit die diepte van ons see, Oor ons ewige gebergtes, Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together, And united we shall stand, Let us live and strive for freedom, In South Africa our land.

National Coat of Arms

South Africa's Coat of Arms, the highest visual symbol of the State, was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

Its central image is a secretary bird with uplifted wings and a sun rising above it. Below the bird is the protea, an indigenous South African flower, representing the aesthetic harmony of all cultures and the country flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat are emblems of the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant symbolise wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

At the centre stands a shield signifying the protection of South Africans, above which are a spear and knobkierie. These assert the defence of peace rather than a posture of war.

Within the shield are images of the Khoisan people, the first inhabitants of the land.

The figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art.

The motto of the Coat of Arms – !ke e:/xarra//ke – is in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, and means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".



National Orders

National Orders are the highest awards that the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement. The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation, and community service.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.

The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the Struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.

The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

President Cyril Ramaphosa hosted the National Orders Awards Ceremony in November 2021, after a two-year hiatus due to COVID-19. The event was held in Pretoria.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery

The Order was bestowed in Gold on:

- Gcinisizwe Khwezi Sylvester Kondile (Posthumous): For his
 ultimate sacrifice to the liberation of South Africa. He endured
 unspeakable torture and cruelty, refusing to betray his comrades
 right to the victorious end of his life; and
- Reverend Isaac William Dyobha Wauchope (Posthumous): For providing morale through poignant words and support in the darkest hour of soldiers who died in the sinking of the SS Mendi.

The Order was bestowed in Silver on:

- Chand Basson (Posthumous): For his ultimate sacrifice of saving lives from certain death and taking a stray bullet shielding a stranger from a gang; and
- Roydon Olckers (Posthumous): For courageously saving the lives of two learners and sacrificing his own.



The Order of the Baobah

The Order in Gold was bestowed on:

 Justice Edwin Cameron: For his contribution to the judicial system and tireless campaigning against the stigma of HIV and AIDS, and the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, queer, intersex and asexual communities.

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

 Professor Lynette Denny: For her contribution to the field of obstetrics, an age-old honourable tradition of ushering new life into earth and ensuring the safety of both mother and child;

- David Ingpen: For his contribution to the education of young people about maritime life, leading to many recognising him as the 'father' of secondary school-based maritime education in South Africa; and
- Nolwandle Mboweni: For her contribution to education and business through which she continuously strives to uplift communities.

The Order in Bronzer was bestowed on:

 Dr Hlamalani Judith Ngwenya: For her contribution to capacitybuilding, sustainable agriculture and the empowerment of communities.



Order of Ikhamanga

The Order was bestowed in Gold on:

- Dr Raymond Louw (Posthumous): For his enormous contribution to the field of journalism, and using the pen as his weapon to expose lies and shine the light on the atrocities of apartheid;
- Dr David Maphalla: For his tireless contribution to the Sesotho language's body of literary works and cultural storytelling;
- Prof Sibusiso Cyril Nyembezi (Posthumous): For his
 renowned contribution to the scholarship and lexicon of isiZulu.
 His skilful turn of phrase in storytelling poses a towering challenge
 to many who try to translate his works; and
- Dr Bhekizizwe Joseph Shabalala (Posthumous): For his exceptional contribution to the promotion of African Isicathamiya music, which showcased in world stages and brought honour and unity to South Africa.

The Order was bestowed in Silver on:

- Fee Halsted-Berning: For her contribution to visual art and generous transferring of skills to others;
- Dr Rebecca Malope: For her distinguished contribution to South African music. Her unique voice brings joy and comfort to many through meaningful gospel music; and
- Arthur Mayisela (Posthumous): For his skilful and entertaining boxing acumen. He delighted many and left a mark as the 'Fighting Prince'.



Order of Luthuli

The Order was bestowed in Gold on:

- Thomas Manthata (Posthumous): For his active participation in human rights matters, ranging from the rights of the elderly and land issues to traditional leadership; and
- Bertha Mkhize (Posthumous): For her brave contribution to the liberation of South Africa. In addition to her legendary activism, she also participated in the 1925 Defiance Campaign.

The Order was bestowed in Silve on:

- Dr Abubaker Asvat (Posthumous): For his enormous contribution to the lives of freedom fighters and the poor by generously providing medical care, which was desperately needed.
 He was 'The People's Doctor';
- Audrey Coleman: For her contribution to the fight for liberation and the promotion of human rights through active involvement in lobbying, using both civic organisations and later, government institutions;
- Max Coleman: For his contribution to the fight for liberation and promotion of human rights through active involvement in lobbying, using both civic organisations and government institutions;
- Zazi Kuzwayo (Posthumous): For his contribution to the development of black business and the fight against apartheid;
- Cikizwa Constance Maqungu: For her brave stand against injustice; she withstood torture and refused to turn state witness;
- Nikiwe Debs Matshoba (Posthumous): For her courageous contribution to the liberation Struggle during repressive times that could lead to torture, imprisonment or death;
- Hilda Mally Mokoena: For her contribution to the fight for the liberation of South Africa; and
- Laura Mphahlwa (Posthumous): For her contribution to the liberation movement, black business development and the nursing profession.



The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- Anthony Dykes (United Kingdom(UK)): For his lifelong commitment to the development of South Africa and Southern Africa at large;
- Dr Gail Gerhart (United States of America (USA): For her enormous contribution to the Struggle for liberation with her writing and keeping records of the heroic acts of freedom fighters;
- Juergen Leihos (Germany): For his commitment and determination to be on the side of the oppressed and fighting for their cause as an anti-apartheid activist; and
- Malin Sellman (Sweden): For using the arts to raise awareness of human rights violations during the repressive period in South Africa.
 She continues to be an active friend of South Africa and its artists.



Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for the country's diverse people and their cultures. These are English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu.

South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages. In line with the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012, the DSAC developed its Official Language Policy in 2014. The policy provides for the use of all 11 official languages, taking into account factors such as usage, practicality, expense, regional circumstances and the balance of the needs and preferences of the public it serves, and sets out how these languages will be used for the department's purposes.

The DSAC's language policy is implemented through the National Language Service, which is composed of four sections namely Translation and Editing, Terminology Coordination, Human Language Technologies and Language Planning and Development.

Programmes, projects and initiatives Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy

The MGE is a strategy to reposition cultural industries in South Africa. The department announced a call for proposals for MGE on 1 June 2021. The department concluded the MGE adjudication on 31 October 2021 with grant letters issued to Cultural Events category of beneficiaries on 12 November 2021 following a standard due diligence process.

This is in addition to the Public Art and Touring Ventures results that were also released in the month of October. In this category of proposals, 689 applications were received for Public Art with 422 for Touring Ventures. Successful applicants for Public Art totalled 45 and 49 for Touring Ventures.

For Cultural Events proposals, a total of 2 583 proposals were received of which it was only possible to support and approve 264. The department received a record number of applications compared to the previous years. In 2021/22 the department received a total of 3 694 applications. This, in comparison to proposals received in 2019/20 that totalled 1 298 and 1 060 in 2018/19. The 2020/21 open call for proposals was cancelled due to Covid-19 restrictions.

The release of the results also takes place in the context of a creative sector's stakeholder engagement meeting convened by the department on 5 November 2021. While using this occasion to update the sector on numerous issues of interest and preferred working relations, the department made strong appeals for more collaborative relationships across the creative sector as well as with government.

In particular, tendencies of slandering to the point of using misinformation was highlighted as a practice which needed to be halted and for energies to rather be invested in frank, robust, constructive, and forward-looking engagements that will propel the growth of the sector. Other issues emanating from this stakeholder consultation include:

 As in other sectors and is practice across the State, government prefers to engage with a structure that enjoys the creative sector's support as opposed to individuals

- While appreciative of the funding allocated thus far, resources availed are insufficient to provide for the needs of the sector and needs to be revisited
- There was a need for capacity building programmes that will assist artists to draft business proposals, develop entrepreneurship skills as well as digital skills.
- The department should work with the sector to conduct workshops that will assist with how to submit appropriate proposals.
- There must be improved communication and there is a need for more regular direct interaction between the department and the sector.
- Different sector organisations must improve ways of collaboration and working relations. There must be reconciliation of differences in the sector to ensure when engaging the department there is a legitimate single voice and collectivism instead of representations based on individual preferences.

Public Art Development Programme (PADP)

The PADP is a work stream of the MGE. It is implemented to strengthen and grow the arts, culture and heritage sector, with particular emphasis on giving the youth, women, children and persons with disabilities the opportunity to participate and benefit from the PADP. Its objectives include:

- Creating a nationally driven approach which is focused on building community ownership and pride in public and shared spaces through public art projects. It is structured to engage these communities at all stages of the development process, with the express objectives of creating work for artists, designers, researchers, storytellers, crafters and performance artists to name a few.
- Attracting investment and economic activity to particular locations, including the 'far-flung' areas of South Africa.
- Catalysing work creation and economic activity in a range of associated sectors such as tourism, hospitality and property development.

To upscale existing public art projects and create public interest in the role of art in their communities towards creating real jobs, stimulating local economy, enhancing quality of life, raising awareness of local history/heritage and allowing increased diversity of cultural offerings. Those who participate in the PADP gain numerous skills and employment opportunities, including interpersonal, negotiating, conflict management, communication, visual arts, performance art, storytelling, design, research, entrepreneurship, business management, presenting, problem-solving, creative solutions, community participation, community liaison and appraisal skills.

Art Bank of South Africa

The purpose of the Art Bank of South Africa is to identify and purchase contemporary visual artworks from emerging and established South African artists. The objectives of the Art Bank of South Africa are to:

- be a national rental agency for contemporary South African art (artworks will be leased out for a minimum period of two years);
- procure and curate artworks in all public buildings, including government institutions and South African embassies around the world, on a biannual basis, to ensure that good-quality contemporary artworks are displayed; and

 give artists exposure in marketing their work to ensure that they grow their audiences and the consumption of South African art.

Theatre

South Africa has a prolific theatre scene, with more than 100 active spaces around the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to West End and Broadway hits, classical opera and ballet. South African theatre is very interactive, with actors sometimes directly addressing audiences.

The country has a long and rich history of storytelling, from the oral narratives and shamanistic dances of the San, to the fables told around the fire by South Africa's indigenous people, to the modern and youthful productions.

South African theatre came into its own during the apartheid years, partly due to the cultural boycott of the country by British and American actors. Without any external influences, South African theatre flourished with its own unique and local feel, particularly the protest theatre of the 1970s and 1980s.

The formal South African theatre tradition dates back as far back as the 1830s, when Andrew Geddes Bains's Kaatje Kekkelbek, or Life Among the Hottentots, was performed in 1838 by the Grahamstown Amateur Company.

Over the years, playwrights such as Athol Fugard and Gibson Kente would form the backbone of South African theatre. And through their plays, actors such as John Kani and Winston Ntshona became a few of the early participants of a form of theatre that sought to challenge the apartheid system and question racial attitudes of the time.

With mainstream venues like the National Theatre barring black people from creative participation, the Market Theatre in Johannesburg and The Space in Cape Town were just two of many theatres established to give black artists a stage and multiracial audience. Theatre venues were desegregated in 1978.

Some of the more well-known venues include the Market Theatre, Jo'burg Theatre and Soweto Theatre in Johannesburg; the Baxter and Artscape theatres in Cape Town; and the Playhouse in Durban. Many of the casinos and malls in South Africa are also home to theatres. The Pieter Toerien's Theatre & Studio at Montecasino in Johannesburg has hosted major productions such as Dream Girls and Phantom of the Opera.

There are also multitudes of festivals that take place across the country. The most well known is the Grahamstown National Arts Festival – the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent. Over the years, the festival has showcased some of South Africa's best-performing arts talent, including up-and-coming artists. It has also spawned a multitude of similar festivals such as the Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees in Oudtshoorn.

The 46th edition of the National Arts Festival went digital for the full 11 days, from 25 June to 5 July 2020, due to COVID- 19. Moving to the Virtual National Arts Festival 2020 was largely motivated by a desire to support artists to earn income and gain exposure. Organisers created the vFringe – a digital platform for artists to share their work with home-based audiences.

The vFringe accommodates a visual arts directory, a ticketed videoon-demand platform, and an advertising space for live events held on third-party platforms. There was no fee for artists to participate in vFringe 2020. Going virtual meant that the festival could continue to support artists and the arts in 2020, by presenting work within a digital space.

Festivals

Arts and cultural festivals in South Africa offer something for every taste. Many of these have become annual events, growing in popularity and attendance numbers:

- Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.
- Arts Alive International Festival in Newtown, Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, known as the KKNK, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival (MACUFE), in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. The 10-day festival showcases the cream of African and international talent.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Makhanda in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- Oppikoppi Bushveld Bash near Northam in North West offers live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.
- The Mandela International Film Festival aims to celebrate and stimulate a brave new world of film-making, and is dedicated to improving both the craft and business of film.
- Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international levels are Innibos in Mbombela, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and the Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal.

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the 1940s and 1950s are being redefined. The country also has a rich choral

tradition. Pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

The Taking South African Music to the World initiative is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The DSAC funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The DSAC hosts the annual Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition; a key music event on the African continent that promotes collaboration among interested parties.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

The 2020 Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition took place from 4-7 November at the Joburg Theatre in Braamfontein, Johannesburg.

Mangaung African Cultural Festival

The MACUFE is one of the most popular cultural festivals on the African continent and beyond. The festival has, from humble beginnings, grown from strength to strength and has undoubtedly reached international stature. The event features the best international, continental and national musicians.

In 2020, the MACUFE was among festivals that were cancelled by the Free State Provincial Government due to COVID-19.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory. Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life. An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The University of the Witwatersrand Theatre is another popular dance venue.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from prehistoric, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in

the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works. Educational institutions also play an important role in acquiring works of national interest.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rockart sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space.

Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoi fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world can also be found on sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone, some 10 200 years, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn. Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The DSAC supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape. Millions of pieces of tools made by humankind's ancestors (possibly the Homo heidelbergensis species) were uncovered at Kathu in the Northern Cape in 2014. The site is between 700 000 and a million years old and used to be a huge workshop to produce tools.

The findings were published in the technical magazine, PLoS One, by the universities of Cape Town and Toronto (Canada) and the McGregor Museum in Kimberley. The hominid species produced tools and equipment at the site for 20 000 to 30 000 years, generation after generation.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise. Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee table books, documentaries, local and international exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Famous South African photographers include Kevin Carter, Ernest Cole, Alf Kumalo, Peter Magubane, Jürgen Schadeberg, Austin Stevens, Greg Marinovich, Andrew Tshabangu, Sam Nzima and James Oatway.

In June 2016, Peter Magubane launched a book titled June 16: 40th Anniversary Edition in Johannesburg – a pictorial account of the events that took place on 16 June 1976 – a fateful day that marked a significant change in the discourse of South Africa's push for liberation.

The foreword of the book was written by Struggle Veteran Winnie Madikizela Mandela.

A number of photographers from the state of emergency era partnered with the Mcgregor Museum and the Nelson Mandela Foundation to honour fellow photographers who played a fundamental role in South Africa's liberation.

This museum is home to an exhibition which tells forgotten stories and highlights South Africa's heritage.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-ofthe-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities, including the universities of Pretoria, Cape Town, the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, the Witwatersrand and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

Crafts

A high level of skill is brought to the production of work that has long been a part of African society, and has found new commercial outlets.

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything such as bottles and matchboxes, to the reproduction of the red AIDS ribbon using Zulu beadwork known as Zulu love letters.

With workplaces ranging from pavements and markets of big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

There are also several important collections of African art in South Africa, such as the Standard Bank collection at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits University, in Johannesburg. The Durban Art Gallery houses works of historical and anthropological significance.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to standard materials, such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used.

These include telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and food tin labels to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Fugitive's Drift in KwaZulu-Natal, offers a large variety of skilfully crafted basketry; the Northern Cape Schmidtsdrift community of displaced San people produces paintings influenced by ancient rock art; and the Madi a Thavha Art Gallery in the Soutpansberg region of Limpopo produces and sells a range of arts and crafts created by the local Venda and Tsonga communities. Products include beadwork, sculptures, ceramics and jewellery. South African folk art is also making inroads into Western-style "high art".

The Ndebele tradition of house-painting, part of the widespread African practice of painting or decorating the exteriors of homes,

burgeoned amazingly with the advent of commercial paints. It also gave rise to artists such as Dr Esther Mahlangu, who has put her adaptations of the distinctive, highly coloured geometric Ndebele designs on everything, from cars to aeroplanes.

Design

The annual Design Indaba Conference is held in Cape Town. It is also broadcast via live simulcast to multiple cities at a lower price point to broaden the access to the event.

Independently curated with a focus on case studies and ingenious problem solving, rather than simply eye-catching portfolios, conference alumni are contemporary industry pacesetters. Despite its name, the conference's scope has broadened over the years to include all the creative sectors; in recent years it has been dubbed by some as "The Conference on Creativity".

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, with realism, until relatively recently, dominating works of fiction. Fiction has been written in all of South Africa's 11 official languages — with a large body of work in Afrikaans and English. The local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

Well-known South African writers include Nobel Prize winners John Maxwell Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer, Gcina Mhlope, Phaswane Mpe, Es'kia Mphahlele, Wally Serote, Athol Fugard,

Herman Charles Bosman, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Breyten Breytenbach, Dalene Matthee, Alan Paton, Olive Schreiner, André Philippus Brink and Niabulo Ndebele.

The current generation of writers are also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late Kabelo K Sello Duiker, who have had their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish; and Deon Meyer, whose work has attracted worldwide critical acclaim and a growing international fan base. Originally written in Afrikaans, Meyer's books have been translated into 25 languages, including English, French, German, Dutch, Italian, Spanish, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Russian, Finnish, Czech, Romanian, Slovakian, Bulgarian, Japanese and Polish.

Well-known poets include the late Professor Keorapetse William Kgositsile, Joseph Mbuyiseni Mtshali, Roy Campbell, Sheila Cussons, Jakob Daniël du Toit (better known as Totius), Elisabeth Eybers, Ingrid Jonker, Antjie Krog, Thomas Pringle, Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw and Eugène Marais.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms in the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. Regular platforms have been created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The Publishing Association of South Africa is committed to creativity, literacy, the free flow of ideas and encouraging a culture of reading. The 2020 National Book Week (NBW) ran from 2 – 8 September 2020. This annual campaign is aimed at uncovering the thrill and magic of reading books. It is guided by the idea that when the nation learns to share the joy of reading books, the country benefits by developing

empowered, self-reliant communities. The programme reaches a diverse audience during its annual visits across the country, including pre-schoolers, learners from Grade R – 12.

During the NBW, the South African Book Development Council (SABDC) also draws attention to various programmes to ensure that books reach as many South African households as possible. The lack of leisure books in households is a key motivator for the #BUYABOOK Strategy under the NBW campaign.

This campaign is supported by the SABDC, in association with the DSAC, with broadcast media support from the South African Broadcasting Corporation Foundation. The department supports the Baobab Literary Journal with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the diaspora.

The DSAC continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals, held annually in Durban. These festivals also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WordFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages. Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans Museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

South African Literary Awards (SALA)

The aim of the SALA is to pay tribute to South African writers who have distinguished themselves as ground-breaking producers and creators of literature. It also celebrates literary excellence in the depiction and sharing of South Africa's history, value systems and philosophies, and art as inscribed and preserved in all the languages of South Africa — particularly the official languages.

Film

The first-ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years. Film production began in 1916, when Isidore Williem Schlesinger Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg.

The studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922. Access to international markets became limited in the 1920s, and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans filmmakers developed an interest in the industry. In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

The South African film industry contributes R3.5 billion annually to the country's GDP, while employing more than 25 000 people. Government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry. They comprise the Foreign Film and Television Production Incentive to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and

Co-production Incentive, which aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

South Africa's first co-production treaty was signed with Canada in 1997, followed by Germany, Italy, the UK, France, Australia and New Zealand. The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West;

the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

South African Film and Television Awards (SAFTAs)

The 2020 vitual SAFTAs were held on 19 April 2020, to celebrate and honour the South African film and television industry during the nationwide lockdown. The biggest winners were Tshedza Pictures, scooping 17 awards. Second in place was Mzansi's official Oscars entry for 2019, *Knuckle City*, who bagged six wins. The Most Popular TV Soap was awarded to *Imbewu* and Best TV Presenter went to *Hectic on 3's* Enhle Bizana.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the "museum country of Africa", with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

There are more than 300 museums in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food. New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died for the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the DSAC. They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following officially declared heritage institutions depend on annual transfers from the DSAC:

- Northern Flagship Institutions. Pretoria:
- Freedom Park, Pretoria:
- · Iziko Museum. Cape Town:
- · Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg;
- Bloemfontein National Museum;
- · Afrikaans Language Museum, Paarl;
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown;
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum. Pietermaritzburg:
- · War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein;
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town.
- · William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley;
- · Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza; and
- · Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

- The following museums report to the Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture:
- · Ditsong Museums of South Africa;
- · Iziko Museums, Cape Town;
- · Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg;
- · National Museum, Bloemfontein;
- · Language Museum, Paarl;
- · National English Literary Museum, Makhanda:
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg;
- · War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein;
- · Robben Island Museum, Cape Town;
- · William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley;
- · Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria;
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha: and
- · Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong Museums of South Africa comprise the National Cultural History Museum, Kruger House Museum, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum, the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko Museums of Cape Town comprise the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, government declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998. The // hapo Museum at the historic Freedom Park was officially unveiled in 2013. The museum, which is situated at the top of Salvokop in Pretoria, also serves as a monument to the mighty legacy of South Africa's first democratically elected President Mandela. //hapo is a Khoi word which means "a dream".

The museum is helping the country define its history, in holistic terms, from the early wars of dispossession such as the Khoikhoi-Dutch War in the 1500s; the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in the Cape in 1652; the Third War of Dispossession between the Khoisan and colonial authorities in the 1800s; and the South African War, previously known as the Anglo-Boer War, to the anti-apartheid Struggle – all of which form part of the freedom history and define the freedom South Africans enjoy today.

The museum is the result of nationwide consultative processes that solicited advice from youth, intellectuals, academics, artistic communities, women's groups, traditional leaders and healers and faith-based organisations.

It is a product of South Africans from all walks of life, and is in every shape and form a community's dream. Other elements include a vast wall commemorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom, an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines, a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity, a symbolic resting place for those who have died and the story of southern Africa's 3.6 billion years of history. Other museums administered by central government departments or research councils are the:

Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria).

- Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria).
- South African Air Force Museum at Swartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town and Gqeberha.
- · Museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).
- The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko Museums, the Ditsong Museums of South Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.
- The following natural history museums do not fall under the DSAC, but work closely with the national heritage institutions:
- · McGregor Museum, Kimberley;
- · East London Museum;
- · South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown;
- · Gqeberha Museum; and
- · Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko Museums and the Ditsong Museums of South Africa, as well as the Durban Local History Museum and Museum Africa in Johannesburg.

The South African National Gallery in Cape Town and the William Humphreys Art Gallery in Kimberley report to the DSAC.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country. The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, and relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent.

The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it. The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2.5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings. It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative. The National Cultural History Museum in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans. It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel. It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored. Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplasie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspruit, in Gauteng.

This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on its extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals. The Absa Museum and Archives in Johannesburg preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. The museum also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years. Exhibitions in the museum include audio visual footage recorded during the apartheid era. The Red Location Museum in Gqeberha highlights the Struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

A common type of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks; the Kruger House Museum, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek; and Melrose House, where the Peace Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the Second Anglo-Boer/South African War (1899 to 1902) was signed, around the massive dining table, on 31 May 1902, in Pretoria. Simpler variations include the Pioneer Museum and 1848 House in Silverton, Pretoria; and the Diepkloof Farm Museum, featuring a farmhouse dating back to the 1850s, at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg, in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example, Tsonga Kraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War, in particular. The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

International Museum Day is commemorated on 18 May. It is coordinated by the International Council of Museums and its objective is to raise awareness of the fact that museums are an important means of cultural exchange, enrichment of cultures and development of mutual understanding, cooperation and peace among people.

The event highlights a specific theme that changes every year and that is at the heart of the international museum community's preoccupations.

The 2020 event was held under the theme; "Museums for Equality: Diversity and Inclusion". The aim of the theme was to become a rallying point to both celebrate the diversity of perspectives that make up the communities and personnel of museums, and champion tools for identifying and overcoming bias in what they display and the stories they tell.

Participation in International Museum Day is growing all over the world. The main mission of museums is to oversee the sa fekeeping and protection of the heritage that lies both within and beyond their walls.

Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin. The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives (NFVSA). Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria. The country's nine provinces run their archiving services independently from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System, which can be found at www. national.archives.gov.za. It includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audio-visual material.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance. It also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration. In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions. Archives are taken to the people through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and Archives of the Multi-Party Negotiating Process, 1993 were submitted and recommended for inclusion in the UNESCO Memory of the World International Register in 2013. This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the people of the world.

The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme. The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

Library and Information Services (LIS)

The DSAC oversees various libraries, including the NLSA, a statutory body; the SALB; and Blind South Africa. South Africa's growing LIS sector also includes public/community libraries, special libraries, government libraries, and higher education libraries.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town. The NLSA in Pretoria has seating capacity for 1 300 library users and offers free Internet access to users.

The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa. The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide.

Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

The library's functions include:

- building a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa;
- · maintaining and preserving these collections;
- providing access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services; and
- · promoting information awareness and literacy.
- In terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic. The Bookkeeper Mass Deacidification has been installed at the NLSA in Pretoria to treat

books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections.

The NLSA is able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums. It is also a link between the LIS sector and heritage sector. It influences a social cohesive nation by providing free and equitable access to knowledge and information resources, with the theme; "A reading nation is a thriving nation".

Library and Information Association of South Africa (LIASA)

The LÍASA is a professional association that represents libraries and information institutions; all library and information workers; and millions of users and potential users of libraries in South Africa. It aims to unite, develop and empower all people in the library and information field. It represents the interests of, and promotes the development and image of LIS in South Africa.

Libraries have always played a role in education, whether school, academic, public or special libraries. Where there are not enough school libraries, public libraries are largely bridging the gap. The concept of lifelong learning is one embodied in all libraries, especially public and community libraries.

That any person, young, old, rich, poor, employed or unemployed, can walk into a library and find information (in both electronic and traditional formats) to educate and enrich themselves, is one of the major benefits of libraries.

The 2021 South African Library Week was held from 15 – 21 March under the theme; "Libraries Matter". The event was launched virually on 15 March 2021.

The LIASA remains aligned with South Africa's National Development Plan (NDP) vision that will shape communities through among others, skill development in a focused attempt to reduce unemployment, especially amongst the youth.

National Council for Library and Information Services

The NCLIS is a council that advises Ministers of Arts and Culture, Basic Education, and Higher Education, Science and Innovation on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The council is broadly representative and councillors are appointed for their expertise and experience in the field of LIS.

Members serve on the council for a renewable term of three years. Some important policy matters include the development of the LIS Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government; the training of librarians; and the funding of the sector.

Legal Deposit Committee

The committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, which is administered by the DSAC. Members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years. The mandate of the Act includes: providing for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents; ensuring the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa; and providing for access to government information.

The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee include:

- advising the Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture on any matter dealt with in this Act:
- making recommendations concerning any regulations which the Minister of Sport, Arts and Culture may make under this Act;
- coordinating the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit;
 and
- advising any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act.

The places of legal deposit include the NLSA, the Library of Parliament in Cape Town, the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein, the Msunduzi/Voortrekker Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg and the NFVSA in Pretoria.

The Act also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories, namely the Constitutional Court Library in Johannesburg, the Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State, the North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service, and the Mpumalanga Library Services.

South African Library for the Blind

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

The SALB has five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute towards:

- · helping to build a nation of readers;
- assisting the organised blind community;
- · improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting
- · their information needs:
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate, and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people;
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind people and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of about 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of more than 25 600 books, and an annual circulation of 133 222 books in Braille or audio format.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB has partnered with 82 public libraries, providing accessible reading material and assisting devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg It provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. The organisation equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society. This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising.

All this is made possible through the organisation's advocacy,

education committee, Braille services, orientation and mobility services and employment programme.

It is through this, and the support of its donors, that Blind SA connects South Africans who are blind or visually impaired with the world they live in.

Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students;
- · interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment);
- information (including free Braille magazines);
- assistance in finding sustainable employment;
- · advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights);
- · Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages;
- free Braille training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people); and
- free orientation and mobility training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people).

International relations

The DSAC's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting its African heritage. The DSAC ensures that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and uses arts and culture as a tool for economic self-liberation. Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the UK, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so. In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the DSAC is committed to promoting the African Agenda. It continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

Cultural diplomacy

Government continues to expand its international cultural diplomacy programme led by the DSAC, in order to create opportunities for artists and showcase South African talent.

Cultural diplomacy and seasons programmes build relations between individuals, communities, states and institutions, in order to foster a better understanding of each other's cultures and heritage and to use this power to promote peaceful relations.

Cultural diplomacy supports and enhances political dialogue and economic cooperation. It uses the power of culture as a driver and facilitator of economic development, and contributes to poverty reduction, whilst fostering positive, socially cohesive nations. The cultural seasons initiative is one of the tools used for the implementation of cultural diplomacy.

It is a concentrated focus of cultural activities and exchanges over a specific period of time, agreed to between two countries and is based on reciprocity. It seeks to profile and strengthen cultural relations between two countries and showcase the best talent while providing growth opportunities for emerging and up-and-coming young artists. It creates international platforms and opportunities for artists and cultural practitioners of all genres to showcase their work, and to engage with

their counterparts and audiences, growing and further developing the arts and culture sector.

The initiative creates reciprocal cultural, arts and heritage collaboration and exchanges between involved countries, creating institutional ties, increasing the level of awareness of each other's culture and heritage, and unlocking opportunities in other spin-off areas, including cultural tourism.

Africa cultural seasons

The African cultural seasons are aimed at showcasing South Africa's artistic and cultural talent and promote regional integration. In line with the NDP and South Africa's foreign policy imperative on regional integration, South Africa's national interests include the development and upliftment of its people, growth and development of the economy, growth and development of southern Africa, and a stable and prosperous African continent.

Africa Month

Africa Day is celebrated annually on 25 May to mark the formation of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) on 25 May 1963 and the AU in 2002, which was created to promote unity in Africa. The day, which is celebrated across the continent, is used to acknowledge progress that Africans have made, while reflecting upon common challenges faced in a global environment.

South Africa-Russia Seasons

The initiative has become an excellent and innovative way to showcase different cultures, discover new talent and connect new generations of creative professionals and audiences in South Africa and Russia. It is about the sustainability and growth of the arts and culture sector. The South Africa-Russia Seasons initiative, at its core, is about common and shared heritage, the need to positively influence each other, shared thinking on the arts, culture and creative industry, institutional collaboration, nurturing of leadership in the arts and promoting innovation.

South Africa-China: People-to-People Exchange Mechanism

Among others, the initiative aims to create new opportunities for developing and enriching the current bilateral cooperation and exchange mechanisms between China and South Africa in the fields of arts and culture, health, youth, science and technology, education and tourism.

Indigenous music and oral history

The International Library of African Music attached to the Music Department at Rhodes University, is the largest repository of African music in the world. Founded in 1954 by ethnomusicologist Hugh Tracy, the library is devoted to the study of music and oral arts in Africa. It preserves thousands of historical recordings, going back to 1929, and supports contemporary fieldwork.

The DSAC has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, as well as identifying and collecting all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces. The DSAC and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions.

African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF provides financial and technical support for the conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value.

The fund was established as a result of work undertaken by African member states of the UNESCO, with the objective of developing an ongoing strategy to deal with the challenges that most African countries have in implementing the World Heritage Convention. The AWHF is the first regional funding initiative within the framework of the UNESCO World Heritage Convention.

The fund strives towards the effective conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage. It is aimed at AU member states that signed the 1972 UNESCO World Heritage Convention in support of these goals.

Sport and Recreation South Africa

Aligned with the DSAC's vision of an active and winning nation, this aspect of the department focuses on providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; manages the regulatory framework; and provides funding for different sporting codes.

The right to participate in sport has been embodied in the United Nations instruments such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women. It is recognised as a right which all governments should make available to people. The DSAC aims to maximise access, development and excellence at all levels of participation in sport and recreation to improve the quality of life for all South Africans.

The start of the Sixth Administration saw the merger of the former departments of Arts and Culture, and Sport and Recreation, to form the DSAC. The merger will add impetus in terms of the efficiency of the country's programmatic content, in particular, for more social integration and inclusion.

It is an indisputable fact that sport, arts and culture, if harnessed optimally, can be a lever for societal integration. Sporting events bring South Africans together and rally them in support of sport teams. Events such as the Big Walk and National Recreation Day, as well as various school sport events, not only contribute towards an active nation that may win the war against various social ills; but also bring together people in the name of "choosing to be active". National days educate communities about the meaning and importance of each day, and through these days, the DSAC promotes national symbols, particularly the flag, which is one of the primary symbols of the country.

The provision of appropriate sport, arts and culture infrastructure is important to encourage participation by communities. To this end, the DSAC will use earmarked funds in the MIG to provide sport and recreation facilities, especially in distressed districts.

Plans are in place to construct the National Training Centre, which will provide world-class training facilities for elite athletes to assist them in preparing for participation on international platforms. Over the medium term, the DSAC will support school sports and integrate the 16 priority sporting codes and indigenous games into the school sport system. Furthermore, collaboration with loveLife will be strengthened to offer youth empowerment programmes at sport and recreation activities.

The DSAC's Recreation Development and Sport Promotion programme supports the provision of mass participation opportunities, the development of elite athletes, and the regulation and maintenance of facilities.

The programme's objectives, over the medium term, include: Inspiring lifelong physical activity by providing mass sport participation opportunities.

Increasing learners' access to sport at schools by supporting the National School Sport Championship and providing equipment and attire for 2 500 schools each year.

Increasing the provision of opportunities for mass participation in sport and recreation in all provinces by providing management and financial support through the Mass Participation and Sport Development Grant annually.

Improving the delivery of sport and recreation by providing financial and non-financial support to 60 sport and recreation bodies annually. Fostering transformation within the sport and recreation sector by monitoring statuses of 19 sport federations and broadly assisting them towards reaching their respective transformation targets by March 2023

Providing accessible infrastructure to communities by constructing gyms, play parks and multipurpose sports courts.

Assisting 35 municipalities per year in complying with facility norms and standards by providing technical and management support during the construction phases of sport and recreation facilities.

Preserving and promoting South African heritage, a national memory, and an informed reading nation by constructing, upgrading, maintaining, repairing and renovating its buildings, public entities and related institutions.

Transformation in sport

There has been significant progress since the introduction of the Sports Transformation Charter. Federation commitment to the process, quality, and reliability of data submitted has consistently improved. Cricket, football, netball, rugby, and tennis are leading the pack in this regard. Change in demographics at administration level is reflected in that more than half of the boards of federations audited are black and have black presidents.

On the field of play, a substantial number of senior male and underage national representative teams, including athletics, cricket, football, volleyball, boxing, and table tennis have achieved the charter targets. However, senior women and underage national team demographic profiles are lagging behind that of male representative entities, in that charter targets were achieved by only three codes, namely gymnastics, football and boxing, reflecting the magnitude of the task to improve women's position in sport.

Coaching, referee or umpire, and medical and scientific support structures were found to be more challenging from a demographic change perspective for both men and women. These areas have thus become increasingly under the magnifying glass. The purpose of the Sports Transformation Charter is to level the playing fields that enable the majority of South Africans to have equitable access and opportunity to participate and achieve in all areas and at all levels of sport.

it also:

outlines the principles and the basis for designing and implementing a transformation strategy on the basis of broad-based empowerment; lays the basis for setting transformation-related goals, the achievement of which will become an important barometer in the allocation of funds; intends to assist the South African sport sector to develop and implement broad-based transformation action plans; and intends

that the achievement of selected transformation goals will become important criteria for considering applications for lotto funding.

Role players

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

The DSAC and the SASCOC cooperate closely on issues of mutual importance, and the department provides funding to the SASCOC for initiatives such as the preparation of elite athletes for international events. The SASCOC is the national controlling body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa and consults with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

It prepares and delivers Team South Africa to all international multi-coded sporting events, such as the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games, African Games, Olympic Youth Games, Commonwealth Youth Games and AU Sports Council (AUSC) Region 5 Games.

The committee is also responsible for the awarding of National Protea Colours to athletes/officials who have met the criteria to represent South Africa in different sporting codes and arenas and, in addition, endorse the applications for bidding and hosting of international events, providing the criteria are all met.

Its different strategies, such as the Operation Excellence Programme were designed to offer support to athletes who have the potential to qualify for participation and returning medals at a higher level in multi-coded events under the organisation's umbrella of sports. It is the premier programme for prospective Olympic and Paralympic medallists. The programme comprises three different tiers that provide varying degrees of funding and support.

The Olympic Committee also collaborates with various stakeholders, including other national Olympic committees to ensure that its main mandate is fulfilled.

AUSC Region 5

The AUSC Region 5 is one of the five regions entrusted with the responsibility to develop sport under the AU. This follows the dissolution of the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa, under which Region 5 was known as the Supreme Council for Sport in Africa Zone VI.

World Anti-Doping Agency

The World Anti-Doping Agency aims to bring consistency to anti-doping policies and regulations within sport organisations and governments across the world. The World Anti-Doping Agency's NO! to Doping campaign, which has been running since 2010, has become the leading awareness campaign for most sporting codes around the globe.

National Sport Federations

The various sporting codes in South Africa are governed by their own federations and associations. These include:

- · Aero Club of South Africa.
- · AFL South Africa.
- Amateur Fencing Association of Southern Africa.
- · Anglers and Casting Federation of Southern Africa.
- · Archery South Africa.
- · Athletics South Africa.
- · Badminton South Africa.

- · Baseball Union of Southern Africa.
- Basketball South Africa.
- · Bowls South Africa.
- · BSA.
- Bridge Federation of Southern Africa.
- · Canoeing South Africa.
- Chess South Africa.
- · Clay Target Shooting Association of South Africa.
- Confederation of Cue Sport South Africa.
- · Cricket South Africa (CSA).
- · Cycling South Africa.
- · Dance Sport Federation of Sport South Africa.
- · Darts South Africa.
- · Deaf Sports Federation of Southern Africa.
- · Federation Bocce.
- · Fitness Sport Aerobics Federation of Southern Africa.
- Handball Federation of Southern Africa.
- · Judo South Africa.
- · Jukskei South Africa.
- · Karate South Africa.
- · Korfball Federation of South Africa.
- · Lifesaving South Africa.
- · Majorette and Cheerleading Association South Africa.
- Martial Arts and Games Committee of South Africa.
- Masters Sports Association of Southern Africa Mind Sports South Africa.
- Modern Pentathlon Association of South Africa Motorsport South Africa.
- National Amateur Bodybuilding Association of South Africa.
- · National Horseracing Authority.
- National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa.
- · National Boxing Organisation of Southern Africa.
- · Netball South Africa.
- · Orienteering Federation of Southern Africa.
- · Parachute Association of South Africa.
- Physically Disabled Association.
- Powerlifting Federation of South Africa.
- · Powerboat South Africa.
- · Ringball South Africa.
- Roller Sport South Africa.
- Rowing South Africa.
- SASCOC.
- Scrabble South Africa.
- · Sheep Shearing Federation of Southern Africa.
- Shooting Sport Federation of South Africa.
- · Snooker and Billiards South Africa.
- · Snow Sports South Africa.
- Squash South Africa.
- · Soaring Society of South Africa.
- · Softball South Africa.
- · South African Amateur Fencing Association.
- South African Bodyboarding Association.
- · South African Deep Sea Angling Association.
- South African Figure Skating Association.
 South African Fly Fishing Association.
- South African Football Association.

- South African Gold Panning Association.
- · South African Golf Association.
- · South African Gymnastics Federation.
- · South African Hang Gliding and Paragliding Association
- · South African Hockey.
- · South African Ice Hockey Association.
- · South African National Archery Association.
- · South African National Equestrian Federation.
- · South African Polo Association.
- · South African Practical Shooting Association.
- · South African Rugby Union.
- · South African Sailing.
- · South African Shore Angling Association.
- · South African Sports Association for the Intellectually Impaired.
- · South African Tennis Association.
- · South African Underwater Sports Federation.
- · Surfing South Africa.
- · Swimming South Africa.
- · Table Tennis Board of Southern Africa.
- · Taekwondo Federation of South Africa.
- · Tenniquoits Board of South Africa.
- · Tenpin Bowling Association of South Africa.
- · Transplant Sports Association of South Africa.
- · Triathlon South Africa.
- · Tug of War Federation of South Africa.
- · University Sport South Africa.
- · Volleyball South Africa.
- · Water Ski Federation of Southern Africa.
- · Weightlifting Federation of Southern Africa.
- · Wrestling South Africa.
- · Wushu Federation of Southern Africa.

South African Sport Awards

The last Annual South African Sport Awards took place in November 2019 at the Playhouse, in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

The event recognised the massive feat that the sports fraternity achieved for this period and how it continues to inspire the nation.

The DSAC acknowledged the sportsmen and women who represented the country in competitive tournaments and stood out as ambassadors on global stages.

Momentum gsport Awards

The year 2021 marked the 16th edition of the Momentum gsport Awards. History maker and record breaker Kgothatso Montjane became the most celebrated athlete on the awards stage following her double victory at an event held in August 2021. The winners were:

- · Volunteer of the Year Sandile Lukhele.
- Supporter of the Year Andries Kruger.
- · Hall of Fame Jane Bramley.
- · Mail & Guardian Woman in Print Xolile Junia Mpisane
- · Woman in PR and Sponsorship Sipokazi Sokanyile.
- · Woman in Radio Cato Louw.
- · Woman in Social Media Lesego Pooe.
- · SuperSport Woman in Television Julia Stuart.
- · Nielsen Sports SA Sponsor of the Year Hollywoodbets.

- gsport Emerging Athlete of the Year Naveen Daries.
- SuperSport School Sports Star of the Year Miyanda Maseti.
- · Coach of the Year Delaine Mentoor.
- · Telkom Woman of the Year Anne Vermaak.
- Team of the Year SA Water Polo.
- · Federation of the Year Gymnastics SA.
- Estee Lauder Style Star of the Year Akhona Makalima.
- · Charlotte Maxeke Special Recognition Susie Pather.
- · Brand SA Para Sport Star Kgothatso Montjane.
- · Imperial African Woman in Sport Juliet Bawuah.
- · Sasol Global Woman in Sport Kgothatso Montjane.
- · Public Choice Mbali Sigidi.
- · Momentum Athlete of the Year Shabnim Ismail.
- · Minister's Recognition of Excellence Bianca Buitendag.
- · Minister's Recognition of Excellence Boipelo Awuah.
- Minister's Recognition of Excellence Patience Shikwambana.
- · Minister's Recognition of Excellence Phumelela Mbande.
- · Minister's Recognition of Excellence Tatjana Schoenmaker.

Major events

Transnet National Soccer Tournament

Established in QwaQwa in 2002, the Transnet Rural and Farm Schools Development Programme is one of the flagship projects within the Transnet Foundation's sports portfolio.

The programme focuses on sports development and the South African Football Association Transnet Football School of Excellence. It targets communities around Transnet's key expansion areas. It also notes that although South Africa is rich in sporting talent, much of it goes undiscovered because it is hidden in underdeveloped and rural communities.

There are many opportunities for young sportsmen and women to develop and showcase their abilities, but most of the infrastructure for this is centred in urban and developed areas.

Through the programme, the Transnet Foundation gives real opportunities to youth who fall outside the target areas of traditional sporting bodies. It aims to identify and develop young sports talent in rural areas and nurture it towards excellence.

The Transnet National Soccer Tournament enables the DBE to deliver on its strategic objective of increasing participation of sport and recreation from grassroots to national level through a structured pathway for sport and development of South African youth.

Commonwealth Games

South Africa won 27 medals, seven of them gold, at the 2022 Commonwealth Games in Birmingham. Swimmers Lara van Niekerk - twice - Pieter Coetze and Tatjana Schoenmaker all won gold medals. Judoka Michaela Whitebooi and sprinter Ndodomzi Ntutu - who has a visual impairment - won South Africa's other gold medals.

National Aquatic Championships

The 2022 South African National Swimming Championships was held from 6 to 11 April 2022 in Gqeberha at the Newton Park Swimming Pool. Events were competed in a long course swimming pool. It served as a selection platform for swimmers to represent South Africa at the 2022 World Aquatics Championships and 2022 Commonwealth Games.

It was held concurrently with the 2022 SA National Junior Swimming Championships as part of the multi-sport 2022 Telkom SA National Aquatic Championships. The meet was open to international competition and included multi-class para swimming events.

Biking, mountain biking, cycling

Mpumalanga Cycling hosted the 2022 South African National Road and Time Trial Championships in Graskop in February 2022. With courses favouring climbers, it was always set to be a tough and hotly contested championships showcasing South Africa's cycling talent. The Elite men's race saw a select quintet arrive at the finish together, after four-and-a-half hours of aggressive racing.

Reinhardt Janse van Rensburg prevailed in the sprint to win his second championship, beating Willie Smit into his second consecutive bridesmaid finish. Defending champ Mark Pritzen finished third. Callum Ormiston took the U23 title. In the women's road race, surprise 2021 champion Hayley Preen came within a whisker of repeating, outsprinted by rising U23 star and 2021 bronze medallist Frances Janse van Rensburg, with '21 second-placed finisher Carla Oberholzer in third. The earlier time trials were won by Byron Munton and Oberholzer.

Boxing

Boxing South Africa in partnership with the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture hosted a women in boxing breakfast session with the Deputy Minister Nocawe Mafu in Umhlanga, Durban on 27 August 2022 where women in the boxing fraternity had the opportunity to engage with the Minister and other dignitaries. The breakfast session with the Deputy Minister took place following a series of activities that took place during the women in boxing week which was launched on 22 August 2022.

Canoeing and rowing

Andy Birkett and Bridgitte Hartley were crowned SAK1 River champions after wrapping up victories in the men's and women's races at the 40th Fish River Canoe Marathon in October 2022. A week after he won the world marathon title, Birkett showed his class and form as he added another four minutes to his overnight lead as he posted a flawless final stage to claim the title.

Cricket

The 2021 CSA Awards were held on 30 May. Fast bowler Anrich Nortje was named the Men's Cricketer of the Year. Nortje beat fellow nominees Aiden Markram, Temba Bavuma and Rassie van der Dussen to the award. He also won the Men's Test Cricketer of the year trophy. Van der Dussen and spinner Tabraiz Shamsi claimed the Men's ODI Cricketer of the Year and Men's T20 International Cricketer of the Year award, respectively.All-rounder George Linde clinched the International Newcomer of the Year prize.

CSA Awards winners:

- · Men's Cricketer of the Year: Anrich Nortje.
- · Men's Test Cricketer of the Year: Anrich Nortie.
- Men's One-Day International Cricketer of the Year: Rassie van der

 Dussen
- · Men's T20 International Cricketer of the Year: Tabraiz Shamsi.

- Men's Players' Player of the Year: Anrich Nortje and Aiden Markram.
- · International Newcomer of the Year: George Linde.
- · Fans' Player of the Year: Anrich Nortje.
- · CSA Delivery of the Year: Wiaan Mulder.
- · Women's Cricketer of the Year: Shabnim Ismail.
- · Women's One-Day International Cricketer of the Year: Lizelle Lee.
- · Women's T20 International Cricketer of the Year: Shabnim Ismail.
- · Women's Players' Player of the Year: Shabnim Ismail.
- 4-Day Domestic Series Cricketer of the Season: Aiden Markram (Titans).
- · One-Day Cup Cricketer of the Season: Robbie Frylinck (Dolphins).
- T20 Challenge Cricketer of the Season: Sisanda Magala (Lions)
- Coach of the Season: Imraan Khan (Dolphins)...
- · Domestic Players' Player of the Season: Keshav Maharaj (Dolphins).
- · Domestic Newcomer of the Season: Neil Brand (Titans).
- · Umpires' Umpire of the Year: Lubabalo Gcuma
- Umpire of the Year: Adrian Holdstock..
- · Fairplay Award: Warriors.
- SACA Most Valuable Player Award: Keshav Maharaj (Dolphins).
- Makhaya Ntini Power of Cricket Award: Ottniel Baartman (Dolphins).
- SA Forces Administrator Recognition Award: Lieutenant Colonel Randall M Williams.

Golf

Western Province golfer Greg Woodbridge produced the round of his life on the final day of the South African Senior Amateur Championship to claim his first national title on the GolfRSA Senior circuit in October 2022. He pulled away from the chasing pack at East London Golf Club to seal a four-shot victory on two-under-par 217.

Lyall McNeill carded the low round of the day to win the 2021 South African Senior Amateur Championship on debut at Glendower Golf Club in October 2022. He posted a closing two-under-par 70 to finish at level for the tournament.

Ice hockey

The South African Women's team has exceeded expectations by staying up in the IIHF Division II B in july 2022. They triumphed over Croatia, beating the hosts 3-2 to secure the teams' spot in next year's competition. The Western Province Laides team made history at this years Inter Provincial tournament. Winning all of their games and becoming the national champs for the very first time.

Netball

Cape Winelands were crowned the 2021 SPAR National Netball Champions. They beat Nelson Mandela Bay (NMB) 66-54 in the final at Hoërskool DF Malan in December 2021 to bring the title back to the Cape for the first time since 2016.

The Proteas netball side reigned supreme at the Diamond Challenge at the Tuks Sports Centre when they defeated a spirited Scotland 54-36 in November 2022 final.

The Proteas and the Scottish Thistles exchanged goal for goal in the first quarter, with the Proteas winning the first quarter 10-8.

Rugb

In August 2022, South Africa ground down an out-of-form New Zealand to win 26-10 in the Rugby Championship opener and piled the pressure on the All Blacks with their fifth loss in six games. The Springboks scored two tries at Mbombela Stadium, one at the start by wing Kurt-Lee Arendse and one right at the end by replacement back Willie le Roux as the All Blacks launched a desperate late attack from their own 22 in an attempt to salvage some pride.

In September 2022, South Africa brushed aside a series of scandals during the week to storm to the top of the Rugby Championship with a bonus point 36-20 win over Argentina. Tries from scrum-half Jaden Hendrikse, centre Damian De Allende, a brace from hooker Malcolm Marx and a penalty try proved enough to take the Boks above New Zealand on head-to-head record with one round of matches left.

Soccer

South Africa's female national team, Banyana Banyana, clinched the Women's Africa Cup of Nations champions title in July 2022. The 2 – 1 win over hosts Morocco made South Africa the third nation to lay its hands on African women's football's Holy Grail. A double strike by Hildah Magaia in the space of 10 minutes midway into the second half stunned the capacity crowd at Prince Moulay Abdellah Stadium in the capital Rabat.

Swimming

Chad le Clos claimed a long-awaited gold medal in the 200m butterfly at the World Short Course Championships in Melbourne in December 2022. He returned to top spot on world short course podium16th FINA World Short Course Championships 2022.

The former Olympic champion raced like he did at the start of his international career, hanging back as American Trenton Julian burnt himself out swimming at world-record pace and then pouncing in the final 50m to win in a new lifetime best – and African record time of 1:48.27.





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

The Presidency

The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town. The mandate of The Presidency is to ensure that the presidents of South Africa can execute their constitutional responsibilities in leading and galvanising government and society to implement the electoral mandate. Broadly, The Presidency oversees the implementation of the electoral mandate, the National Development Plan (NDP) and government's medium term strategic frameworks (MTSFs).

The Presidency's key role in the executive management and coordination of government lies in its responsibility to organise governance. In this regard, a key aim is the facilitation of an integrated and coordinated approach to governance. This is being achieved through creative, cross-sectoral thinking on policy issues and the enhancement of the alignment of sectoral priorities with the National Strategic Policy Framework and other government priorities. Its purpose is to facilitate a common programme towards the achievement of the electoral mandate and the enhanced integrity of the State through considered planning, coordination, oversight, mobilisation and support.

The Presidency comprises eight political principals:

- · President, who is the Head of State and Government;
- Deputy President, who is the Leader of Government Business (in Parliament);
- · Minister in The Presidency:
- Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities;
- Deputy Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities:
- · Deputy Ministers in The Presidency; and
- Deputy Minister in The Presidency Responsible for State Security. The three structures in The Presidency that support governance operations directly. They are:
- Cabinet Office, which provides administrative support to Cabinet.
 It implements administrative systems and processes to ensure the overall optimal functioning of the Cabinet and its committees. It also facilitates the management of decision-making processes of the Cabinet and its committees.
- Policy Coordination Advisory Services comprises a Deputy Director-General and five chief directorates, which support policy processes developed by respective clusters of Director-Generals (DGs).
- Legal and Executive Services provides legal advice to the President, Deputy President, the Minister and The Presidency as a whole, and is responsible for all litigation involving the political principals.

The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly (NA) from among its members and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and the law. The President appoints the Deputy President from among members of the NA. The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

The mandate of The Presidency is to ensure that the President is able to execute his constitutional responsibilities in leading and galvanising the whole of government and society to implement the electoral mandate. Chapter 1 of the NDP sets out a vision for increased government integration towards developing policy in a complex

domestic and international environment. Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) and Priority 7 (a better Africa and world) of government's 2019-2024 MTSF, with which the work of The Presidency is closely aligned, support this vision.

Over the medium term, The Presidency will continue to provide support to the President and Deputy President of South Africa in the execution of their responsibilities as outlined in Chapter 5 of the Constitution. Accordingly, over the MTEF period, the department will focus on leading and supporting the implementation of the South African economic reconstruction and recovery plan, coordinating the National Coronavirus Command Council, and operationalising the e-Cabinet system.

Leading South Africa's economic reconstruction and recovery

The Presidency sees creating employment and retaining jobs as paramount to rebuilding and growing South Africa's economy. To advance government's efforts in this regard, the department will support other government departments in developing programmes that provide young people especially with management, mentoring and business skills, and access to market and network opportunities.

To this end, a key focus over the medium term will be on coordinating and facilitating the implementation of the second phase of the presidential employment initiative. This work will be carried out in the Support Services to the President subprogramme in the Administration programme. Spending in the subprogramme comprises an estimated 15.3% (R243.7 million) of the Administration programme's budget over the medium term.

Coordinating government's response to the COVID-19 pandemic

The National Coronavirus Command Council has been at the centre of decision-making in government's efforts to curb the spread of COVID-19 and limit the impact of the pandemic. Over the medium term, the department will continue to ensure the coordination of government's responses to curb the spread of the virus.

In addition, the department will support the Deputy President of South Africa as chair of the COVID-19 interministerial committee, which facilitates the rollout of government's vaccination programme, to ensure that the country's vision of saving lives is realised and that any challenges encountered during implementation are addressed.

This work will be funded through allocations of R243.7 million over the MTEF period in the Support Services to the President subprogramme and R179.4 million in the Support Services to the Deputy President subprogramme, both in the Administration programme.

Operationalising the e-Cabinet system

To ensure greater coordination between national departments, the department plans to continue to implement the e-Cabinet system – a collaborative platform for members of the executive, heads of department and executive support staff to share, manage and store information securely. Over the medium term, the department will ensure that the system is in full use.

This will be done by ensuring that training is provided to all users, including the executives and limited support staff managing, capturing and distributing classified information for the overall optimal functioning of Cabinet and its committees. An allocation of R83.9 million over the MTEF period is provided for the software licensing, training, security and

maintenance of the system in the Cabinet Services subprogramme in the Executive Support programme. Expenditure in the subprogramme increases at an average annual rate of 2.1%, from R53 million in 2021/22 to R56.3 million in 2024/25.

Legislative mandates

A number of Acts further expand the specific roles and functions of The Presidency and inform its approach to the implementation of its constitutional mandate. They include the:

- Independent Commission for the Remuneration of Public Officebearers Act, 1997 (Act 92 of 1997);
- Remuneration of Public Office-bearers Act, 1998 (Act 20 of 1998), as amended, provides a framework for determining the salaries, benefits and allowances of public office bearers, and the secretariat to the Independent Commission located within The Presidency;
- Executive Members Ethics Act, 1998 (Act 82 of 1998), including the Executive Ethics Code; and
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005), which establishes a framework for national, provincial and local governments to promote and facilitate intergovernmental relations, and to provide for mechanisms and procedures to facilitate the settlement of intergovernmental disputes. The Act further seeks to promote cooperative governance as espoused by Chapter 3 of the Constitution, and has informed the formation of the President's Coordinating Council, the Cabinet Cluster System, the Forum of South African DGs and the formation of inter-ministerial committees.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, The Presidency was allocated R612.1 million. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.4%, from R612.1 million in 2021/22 to R637.9 million in 2024/25. Compensation of employees' accounts for an estimated 61.8% (R1.1 billion) of the department's total allocation over the medium term. An estimated 85.8% (R1.6 billion) of the department's total allocations within the Administration programme, which provides technical and administrative support to the President, Deputy President of South Africa, and management.

Programmes

Executive Support

The purpose of the programme is to provide strategic and administrative support to enable Cabinet to foster accountability and policy coherence through integrated planning, policy coordination, and the implementation of the strategic agenda of government. Its objectives, over the medium term, are to:

- provide policy advisory support to political principals to ensure policy coherence by implementing Cabinet programmes; and
- strengthen technical support provided to the President and other political principals in the department by participating in Cabinet structures on an ongoing basis, and implementing the recommendations of the evaluation of coordinating structures to improve systems of governance and compliance for Cabinet and the forum of South African DGs

Policy and Research Service

The purpose of the programme is to provide policy and research support to the President and Deputy President in exercising their constitutional mandate within the context of government priorities.

Its objective, over the medium term, is to enhance governance, state capacity and service delivery defined in the 2020-2025 Programme of Action by:

- producing quarterly progress reports on content support provided by the programme to the structures chaired by the President and Deputy President:
- producing quarterly progress reports on intergovernmental mechanisms to unblock issues impeding service delivery in priority areas:
- reporting on the biannual socio-economic impact assessments conducted over the medium term.

Its subprogrammes include:

- Economy, Trade and Investment, which promotes coherence between economic, trade and investment policies and programmes; oversees the work of the Infrastructure Fund, which is intended to pool government's infrastructure budget.
- Security and International Relations, which facilitates and promotes policy coherence in the security and international relations sector.
- Infrastructure and Budget Support, which promotes policy coherence and budget support in government's strategic infrastructure programme.
- Social Protection and Human Capital Development, which promotes
 policy coherence in the social protection and human capital
 development sectors by identifying critical social transformation
 policies and programmes, such as the national health and education
 systems, social cohesion, and comprehensive social security.
- Intervention and Rapid Response, which provides support to government interventions in areas experiencing crisis and distress, such as service delivery protests.
- Governance and Institutional Development, which promotes policy coherence within governance and institutional development by facilitating the strengthening of institutions responsible for service delivery.
- Socio-economic Impact Assessment System, which provides support on policy initiatives, legislation and regulations. The subprogramme conducts socio-economic impact assessments and facilitates the strengthening of the assessment system.

Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities (DWYPD) derives its mandate from Section 9(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The department is required to further the participation of women, youth and people with disabilities in interventions that enable their empowerment and socioeconomic upliftment.

The NDP envisages economic participation, education and skills development for women and other vulnerable groups, and the elimination of violence against women and children. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation), Priority 5 (social cohesion and safe communities) and Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019-2024 MTSF.

The work of the DWYPD is directly aligned with these priorities through facilitating the planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation, and auditing processes responsive to gender, youth and disability rights across the State.

Over the MTEF period, the department will continue to focus on strengthening the coordination of the national response to gender-based violence; promoting more responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation in government; protecting the rights of people with disabilities; and supporting the participation of young people in the mainstream economy. The budget structure of the department has been amended from five to four programmes, to align better with the department's mandate.

Addressing GBV and supporting empowerment

In its efforts to mitigate and prevent violence against women and children, the department plans to launch the National Council on Gender-Based Violence and Femicide (GBVF) in 2022 – to lead and guide the national response. The council will be launched at a projected cost of R15 million over the medium term in the Social Empowerment of Women subprogramme in the Mainstreaming Women's Rights and Advocacy programme.

With support from this advisory forum, the department will facilitate public awareness and advocacy events, and support and monitor the implementation of frameworks such as the National Strategic Plan (NSP) on GBVF. A further R15.2 million over the medium term is allocated for related activities in the Economic Empowerment of Women subprogramme in the Mainstreaming Women's Rights and Advocacy programme.

Promoting gender-responsive planning, budgeting, and monitoring and evaluation across government

The department will continue to coordinate and monitor the implementation of responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation mechanisms across government on issues pertaining to gender, young people and people with disabilities.

This will entail assessing other departments' strategic and annual performance plans, and guiding responses to policy priorities pertaining to the department's core constituents. An allocation of R23.2 million over the MTEF period is made available for these activities in the Research and Knowledge Management subprogramme in the Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and Coordination programme.

To realise equal and entrenched rights for women, young people and people with disabilities, the department will actively seek to identify gaps in government's gender policy and advise on how best to respond to citizens' concerns. As such, it plans to conduct 12 meetings with members of the public and four community mobilisation events in each year over the MTEF period. Expenditure for these activities is within an allocation of R60.7 million over the MTEF period in the International Relations, Stakeholder Management and Capacity Building subprogramme in the Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and Coordination programme.

Protecting the rights of people with disabilities

As part of its advocacy role for the rights of people with disabilities, the department has developed frameworks that serve as guidelines on how

departments can best advance the inclusion of people with disabilities in all government processes and programmes. Over the MTEF period, in partnership with the South African Law Reform Commission, the department aims to develop disability rights legislation and policies in areas such as self-advocacy for people with disabilities; and develop a matrix and monitoring and evaluation frameworks for the 2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities in order to guide departments on implementation priorities. These initiatives are expected to result in expenditure of R49.3 million over the medium term in the Advocacy and Mainstreaming for the Rights of Persons with Disabilities subprogramme in the Mainstreaming Youth and Persons with Disabilities Rights and Advocacy programme.

Supporting the empowerment of young people

To advance the socioe-conomic empowerment of young people, the department will review polices such as the national youth policy and legislation such as the National Youth Development Agency (NYDA) Amendment Bill, and report on their implementation. The NYDA will continue to prioritise interventions that support skills development and create employment.

These include the provision of support for young entrepreneurs, learnership programmes facilitated in collaboration with other entities and technical service providers, and the implementation of the national youth service programme, which is part of the presidential employment initiative. An dditional allocation of R450 million has been made to extend the national youth service for another two years, enabling approximately 35 000 job opportunities per year. Transfers to the agency amount to an estimated R1.9 billion over the MTEF period.

Impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on women, youth and persons with disabilities

The COVID-19 pandemic and government's response to it has placed additional demands on the DWYPD, particularly in relation to forming an integral component of the development of government's overall response and interventions to mitigate the negative impacts of the pandemic on women, youth and persons with disabilities. The pandemic has prevented and constrained certain activities, including the provision of services that are vital in the ongoing empowerment and promotion of the rights of women, youth and persons with disabilities.

The pandemic has, on the other hand, provided potential new vantage points and opened up opportunities for innovative approaches in the way the department operates. The pandemic resulted in many women losing jobs during the lockdown period, and those in informal businesses facing increasing poverty and hunger. Temporary increases in child support and disability grants, and the creation of the Special Relief of Distress Grant had an enormous impact on the lives of mainly poor and unemployed women, youth and persons with disabilities.

The distribution of food parcels also helped in reducing the growing hunger and food scarcity in households. There was also the issue of the lack of access to free sanitary products for poor and indigent women, and girls during this period, which was, to a limited extent, addressed through adding the products into food parcels.

Domestic workers, who are mainly women, either lost their jobs or their monthly incomes. The challenge was that some of them were not registered with the Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF). To help this group, government created the UIF-Temporary Employer-Employee

Relief Scheme (TERS) to assist registered domestic workers but a High Court ruling ensured that all domestic workers who were facing lack of income were assisted through the UIF-TERS.

GBV, and in particular the issue of femicide, was exacerbated by the lockdown. While the South African Police reported a decrease in cases during this period, reports across society decried increased incidences of GBV. In addition, there were reports of women not being able to access services as victims and survivors of such violence. This was as a consequence of limited transportation; victims being confined in close proximity with abusive partners and spouses or family members and not being able to access police stations because of curfews, among others.

During this period, GBV was declared a second pandemic in South Africa. The country launched a strategic plan to address the issue and there were efforts to put in place GBVF referral pathways and safety plans; inclusion of GBV prevention, response, treatment and care as a permitted essential service in the lockdown regulations; and increased awareness-raising measures. However, as the lockdown eased to Alert Level 3, the brutal murders of women by partners came to the fore in the country. This resulted in more concerted efforts towards raising awareness, particularly addressing men and boys, and the fast-tracking of three pieces of legislation into Parliament – aimed at putting in place greater measures to address the scourge.

In February 2021, government, in partnership with the private sector, launched the GBVF Response Fund. The country is also embarking on drawing up legislation that will pave way for the establishment of a national council of GBVF in the near future. There were some positive efforts in ensuring the accommodation of people with disabilities when creating regulations during this period. There was a concerted effort in ensuring that all media briefings by government included sign language interpretation.

Given the global nature of the COVID-19 pandemic, there were efforts by international partners such as the UN and the AU to bring women together through virtual forums to engage on issues around the pandemic and those affecting women, youth and persons with disabilities, and how to mitigate, as much as possible, the detrimental impacts being felt by these sectors.

There were several dialogues on how to ensure that livelihoods of women and persons with disabilities can be brought into the COVID-19 response and post-COVID recovery and economic measures. In addition, international donor partners provided financial aid and technical assistance on issues of GBV and women's economic empowerment.

The department, donor partners and other government departments undertook comprehensive research studies on the impact of COVID-19 on women, youth and persons with disabilities. This is expected to provide a body of evidence that will be used to assess, not only the impact of COVID-19, but also assist in future pandemics and other humanitarian situations, especially on the lives and livelihoods of women, youth and persons with disabilities.

The studies found that persons with disabilities experienced various barriers, including accessing basic protection measures, such as washing hands and maintaining physical distancing. These barriers were exacerbated for those living in informal settlements. Access to disability grants and online education for children with disabilities were also highlighted as key challenges.

Recommendations included the fact that reasonable accommodation and universal design are the central pillars for meaningful access and participation. The reports recommended that disability inclusion would result in a COVID-19 response and recovery plan that better served everyone.

Budget

The DWYPD was allocated R1.2 billion for the 2021/22 financial year. Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 11.9%, from R1.2 billion in 2021/22 to R817 million in 2024/25, mainly as a result of additional allocations amounting to R450 million for the NYDA to extend the national youth service programme coming to an end in 2023/24. An estimated 79.5% (R2.2 billion) of the department's budget over the medium term is earmarked for transfers and subsidies to the agency and the Commission for Gender Equality.

Entities

Commission for Gender Equality (CGE)

The CGE was established in terms of Section 181 of the Constitution. It is mandated to strengthen and deepen constitutional democracy, with a focus on attaining gender equality. Its powers and functions are prescribed further in the CGE Act, 1996 (Act 39 of 1996), as amended, which requires the commission to promote the protection, development and attainment of gender equality, and respect for it.

Over the medium term, the commission will continue to advance legislation, policies and advocacy that contribute to gender equality and the empowerment of women. It plans to do this by: influencing government laws and policies through written submissions to Parliament; producing research, and monitoring and evaluation reports; investigating issues that undermine the attainment of gender equality and the empowerment of women; increasing education and awareness through outreach and stakeholder engagements; and handling gender-related complaints.

As research comprises the bulk of the commission's work, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 68.3% (R198.8 million) of its budget over the medium term. The commission derives all its revenue through transfers from the department, which are set to amount to R293.2 million over the MTEF period.

National Youth Development Agency

The NYDA's role is to initiate, implement, facilitate and monitor development interventions aimed at facilitating the participation of young people in the economy, empowering them, and promoting social cohesion.

Over the MTEF period, the agency will focus on providing comprehensive interventions to support decent employment, skills development and entrepreneurship for young people. These interventions will take the form of financial and non-financial support to enable young people to access skills and jobs, establish and sustain enterprises, and gain access to markets. Financial support is provided through grants to township and rural enterprises run by young people, whereas non-financial support includes accounting, website development, business plan writing and marketing.

Over the MTEF period, R789.5 million is allocated for developing entrepreneurial skills among young people through business

management training and mentorships, and R286.7 million is allocated for helping them find employment through jobs programmes. The national youth service programme is part of the presidential employment initiative, which seeks to provide social assistance through public employment. The programme has an allocation of R498.5 million over the medium term to ensure that young people stay engaged in service to their communities and build the spirit of patriotism, solidarity, social cohesion and unity in diversity. This funding will also provide for stipends for young people participating in the programme, as well as project management costs and some training.

Spending on goods and services accounts for an estimated 48% (R992.7 million) of the agency's total expenditure over the MTEF period. This includes grant and vouche disbursements, and payments for training services providers, consultants, communications and sponsorships. Revenue is expected to decrease at an annual average of 18.9%, from R1 billion in 2021/22 to R543.5 million in 2024/25, as a result of additional allocations for the presidential employment initiative coming to an end in 2023/24.

Programmes

Social Transformation and Economic Empowerment

The purpose of the programme is to manage policies that mainstream women's social transformation and economic empowerment. The objective of the programme, over the medium term, is to advance the socio-economic empowerment of women by:

- promoting their social empowerment and participation through national dialogues on violence against women and children, and social upliftment programmes;
- proposing and developing interventions for their socio-economic empowerment and participation; and
- developing interventions to advance gender equality and establishing a just and safe society.

Stakeholder Coordination and Knowledge Management

The purpose of the programme is to ensure policy and stakeholder coordination and knowledge management for the social transformation of women in South Africa.

The programme's objective, over the medium term include:

- Informing decision-making, policy development and the mplementation of socio-economic empowerment initiatives for women, in line with national, regional, continental and global development goals.
- Ensuring that government departments improve their contribution to the socio-economic empowerment of women by improving the mainstreaming of gender equality within government's planning, monitoring and evaluation systems.
- Improving gender-sensitive planning, monitoring and evaluation systems by analysing other departments' plans and performance against priority indicators and targets for gender development, facilitating the evaluation of key gender policies and programmes and making recommendations for improvement.
- Positioning the department as an effective information and knowledge hub on the socio-economic empowerment of women and gender equality by developing a central national gender information system to enable stakeholders to contribute and access relevant information.

 Enabling effective participation in international multilateral forums on women empowerment and gender equality by instituting timely reporting and convening consultative workshops with relevant stakeholders.

Rights of Persons with Disabilities

The purpose of the programme is to oversee the implementation of initiatives pertaining to the rights of persons with disabilities. Its objective, over the medium term, is to support and monitor the implementation of policies, and coordinate government's implementation of the 2015 White Paper on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities.

National Youth Development

The purpose of the programme is to oversee the implementation of national youth development initiatives. Its objective, over the medium term, is to promote the development and empowerment of young people by reviewing the legislative framework and other interventions to advance youth rights.

16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children

The 16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children is a UN campaign, which takes place annually from 25 November (International Day of No Violence against Women) to 10 December (International Human Rights Day).

While the internationally determined time frame of the annual campaign is 16 days until 10 December, the time frame of 365 days was chosen by the South African Government to ensure a programmatic approach to the management of violence against women and children. The 2021 campaign was hosted under the theme; "The Year of Charlotte Mannya Maxeke – 16 Days of Activism – moving from awareness to accountability".

NSP on GBVF

In March 2020, Cabinet approved the NSP on GBVF. The plan aims to provide a multi-sectoral, coherent strategic policy and programming framework to strengthen a coordinated national response to the GBVF crisis by government and the country as a whole.

The plan outlines interventions to provide support to survivors and their families and broaden access to justice, drive societal change through awareness-raising and prevention campaigns, strengthen existing programmes to fight GBVF, and broaden access to economic opportunities for women.

As part of institutionalising the implementation of the NSP, a number of processes have been employed by the DWYPD to enforce accountability, provide leadership and coordinate implementation.

The plan is supported by the following pillars:

- Accountability, leadership and coordination;
- · Prevention and restoration of social fabric;
- · Protection, safety and justice;
- · Response, care, support and healing;
- · Economic empowerment; and
- · Research and information systems.

Government has allocated nearly R21 billion, over the medium term, to support these pillars. South Africa is in the process of ratifying the

International Labour Organisation, Convention 190, which establishes a global standard for the protection of women in the world of work. The aim is to ensure safe workplaces that are free of violence against women. This work also aims to seek support for gender equality and address GBVF in the workplace at the highest levels of decision-making.

GBVF Response Fund

The fund is aimed at supporting the implementation of the NSP on GBVF and the wider response in the country. The fund is a fulfilment of a resolution of the GBVF Declaration, which followed the GBVF Summit held in 2018.

Through the fund, stakeholders are expected to:

- · spearhead private sector contributions;
- acquire resources for the implementation of the National Strategic Plan on GBVF;
- provide necessary programming and financial infrastructure;
- ensure accountability and governance for private sector funds;
- facilitate operational and strategic cohesion between donors and government; and
- provide technical support for efficient and effective delivery of the plan

During the launch, various donations were made, including R30 million from Anglo American, R20 million from ABSA Bank, and R20 million from the Ford Foundation.

National Women's Month

South Africa commemorates Women's Month in August. National Women's Day is marked on 9 August annually. It marks the anniversary of the great women's march of 1956. On 9 August 1956, about 20 000 women marched to the Union Buildings in Pretoria to protest against legislation aimed at tightening the apartheid government's control over the movement of black women in urban areas.

The women were led by Lilian Ngoyi – a trade unionist and political activist, Helen Joseph, Albertina Sisulu, and Sophia Williams-De Bruyn. The 2021 Women Month was celebrated under the theme; "Generation Equality: Realizing Women's Rights for an Equal Future". The concept of generation equality is a global campaign and links South Africa to global efforts to achieve gender equality by 2030.

International Women's Day (IWD)

Every year, South Africa joins the rest of world in commemorating IWD. The 2022 event was held under the theme; "Gender equality today for a sustainable tomorrow". This is a global event celebrating social, economic, cultural and political achievements of women.

The day also marks a call to action for accelerating gender parity. Marked annually on 8 March, IWD is one of the most important days of the year to:

- · celebrate women's achievements:
- · raise awareness about women's equality;
- lobby for accelerated gender parity; and
- · fundraise for female-focused charities.
- IWD has been observed since the early 1900s, with the first gathering held in 1911.

Disability Rights Awareness Month

Disability Rights Awareness Month is commemorated annually from 3 November to 3 December – the National Day of Persons with Disabilities. The 2021 Disability Rights Awareness Month was held under the theme; "The Year of Charlotte Mannya Maxeke – Create and Realise an Inclusive Society Upholding Rights of Persons with Disabilities".

Disability is one of the seven focus areas identified by the South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC) to promote, protect, and monitor the realisation of human rights. The DWYPD works with a number of membership-based organisations, often referred to as disabled people organisations that are run and managed by persons with disabilities.

These organisations constitute the representative voice of persons with disabilities and are based on the respective membership demographics. They support the development of persons with disabilities by providing them with a common platform to exchange and share experiences and provide information on existing services, as well as facilitate and provide such services.

Government Communications

The Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) was officially launched in May 1998. It was established in terms of Section 7 (Subsection 2 and 3) of the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended. It was transferred from the then Department of Communications to The Presidency with effect from 1 April 2020.

The mandate of the GCIS is derived from Section 195(g) of the Constitution, which stipulates that South African citizens should be provided with information that is timely, accurate and accessible. This is in support of the constitutional principles of freedom of expression, transparency and openness of government.

The GCIS is responsible for providing strategic leadership and coordinating government communication to ensure that the people of South Africa are informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them. It facilitates the involvement of South Africans in governance, reconstruction and development, nation building, and reconciliation.

The NDP emphasises the need to unite all South Africans around a common goal, ensure citizens are active in their own development, and build a capable and developmental state. This is given expression by Priority 6 (building a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019-2024 MTSF, with which the work of the GCIS is aligned.

The GCIS:

- provides professional services;
- sets and influences adherence to standards for an effective government communication system;
- · drives coherent government messaging; and
- proactively communicates with the public about government policies, plans programmes and achievements.

The DG of the GCIS is also the official spokesperson for government. He/she chairs the GCIS Executive Committee – a strategising body that integrates, coordinates and rationalises the work of the department and government communication.

To expand its reach to more South Africans, the GCIS aims to harness and coordinate various communication structures across the

government communication system over the medium term. Essential to doing this economically is joint planning, the sharing of resources and the integration of efforts among government departments. *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper, which is distributed digitally and physically countrywide, is the only national publication that is focused on government's key priorities, with an emphasis on service delivery programmes and opportunities created by government. Over the medium term, the GCIS plans to produce 30.6 million copies of *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper at an estimated cost of R75 million – R50.4 million per year for printing in the Products and Platforms subprogramme and R24.6 million per year for distribution in the Communication Service Agency subprogramme, both in the Content Processing and Dissemination programme.

The department also engages with the public through campaigns and outreach programmes. These include community radio talk shows, activations at taxi ranks and malls, information blitzes on commuter trains, and social media campaigns. It plans to hold 1 140 community and stakeholder engagements per year over the medium term in the form of dialogues, meetings, webinars and community radio talk shows with sector departments, civil society, youth formations, faith-based organisations and business forums.

In addition to these initiatives, the department plans to conduct

1 140 development communication projects over the period ahead to enhance service delivery and keep citizens informed and empowered on government's progress and projects. Expenditure for these activities is within the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme, which has a budget of R392.7 million over the MTEF period.

Communication during the COVID-19 pandemic

The COVID-19 pandemic has necessitated the need for the GCIS to be technologically well-resourced to operate virtually in order to fulfil its communication mandate. In adapting to the 'new normal' after COVID-19, the department will continue using technology to make it easy and convenient for media and the public to access information remotely. The lockdowns, aimed at slowing the spread of the pandemic, created significant shifts in the way government communications reached – and reached out to – different constituencies and communities.

Restrictions on the movement of people other than essential workers presented huge challenges in terms of how government would replace physical interaction with citizens, with alternative means of communications that would comply with COVID-19 health protocols. Large public gatherings, including izimbizo, distribution of pamphlets, face-to-face interaction with media and visits by members of the public to Thusong Service Centres were among the communication modes that came under pressure or became almost impossible to undertake during the most severe lockdown conditions.

However, the GCIS responded to these unprecedented conditions rapidly by adopting technological platforms such as Zoom, Skype and Microsoft Teams to enable remote meetings. The department also upscaled online publishing of traditionally print products, including *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper.

The adoption of new technologies was particularly crucial in the support that the GCIS provided to President Cyril Ramaphosa who, in March 2020, had a 12-month term as Chairperson of the AU. As the pandemic progressed, so did South Africa's – and especially the President's – prominence on platforms of the World Health

Organisation, the broader UN, BRICS, and other international bodies, which considered South Africa a strategic partner in the global management of the pandemic.

The growth in new communication channels and greater consumer use of social platforms enabled dissemination of public health and other relevant information that could assist vulnerable individuals and groups to survive the devastating economic impact of the pandemic.

The growth of online media, however, also presented peddlers of misinformation and disinformation with the easily accessible and cost-effective means of communication to undermine scientific and official messages. As a global phenomenon, fake news did not leave South Africa unscathed and in this event, the GCIS had to implement human and technological mechanisms to combat distortion, lies and contestation around various dimensions of the pandemic.

Budge

For the 2021/22 financial year, the GCIS was allocated R757.430 million. Compensation of the department's 2020/21: 541 employees – March 2022: 532 is its largest expenditure item, comprising an estimated 38.3% (R844.9 million) of the total budget over the MTEF period. Transfer payments to entities account for an estimated 34.9% (R779.6 million) of total expenditure.

Entities

Brand South Africa

Brand SA works to improve South Africa's global competitiveness index ranking, boost business confidence in the country, and improve the country's reputation in the region and the world. Over the medium term, the entity will focus on making the South African brand more attractive, and thereby more competitive, both domestically and internationally. The implementation of such nation brand projects typically relies on expenditure on goods and services, which accounts for an estimated 64% (R448.6 million) of total expenditure over the medium term.

In its efforts to promote the South African brand domestically over the MTEF period, the entity will conduct 4 research studies per year to get a better idea of domestic perceptions, conduct 27 campaigns aimed at promoting active citizenship, and 30 campaigns aimed at promoting constitutional awareness. As a result, expenditure towards these activities is expected to increase from R12 million in 2022/23 to R14 million in 2024/25.

In its efforts to promote the South African brand internationally, the entity will focus on promoting South Africa as an investment destination of choice. Specific activities in this regard include deploying brand envoys, who, for example, are commissioned to write opinion pieces in reputable publications; and conducting marketing campaigns that illustrate South Africa's attractiveness to international audiences.

As a result, expenditure on international branding is expected to increase from R25 million in 2022/23 to R30 million in 2024/25. The entity is set to receive 96.1% (R667 million) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department and the remainder through other avenues such as grant funding.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA provides financial and non-financial support to community broadcast and small commercial media projects, with an emphasis

on promoting indigenous languages and contributing to community development and the alleviation of poverty and inequality.

Over the medium term, it plans to intensify its focus on communities—such as people with disabilities—who are underserved by mainstream media, and on issues associated with gender and young people. Underscoring the agency's commitment to this, an estimated 50% (R152.9 million) of its budget over the period ahead will be directed towards grant funding for 60 community broadcast projects, and 18 community and small commercial media print and digital projects. Community broadcast grants assist with the initiation of new projects and the strengthening of existing projects, and account for an estimated 33% (R100.9 million) of the agency's total budget over the MTEF period.

The agency plans to ensure the sustainability of the community media sector over the medium term by investing in initiatives that support skills development. A targeted 24 projects will receive training in areas such as governance at a total projected cost of R4.3 million per year over the MTEF period, of which 58% (R2.5 million) is allocated to community media training. However, overall expenditure on community and small commercial print and digital projects and community broadcast projects is expected to decrease from R5.8 million in 2021/22 to R4.3 million in 2022/23 due to a decrease in funding from mainstream print media.

As part of the agency's emphasis on research and capacity development innovation, it plans to launch and implement the community media sustainability model and conduct research at a projected cost of R2.6 million over the medium term to ensure the sector becomes more sustainable.

The agency is set to derive 36.8% (R112.6 million) of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department, and 55.5% (R169.7 million) through the mai stream community broadcast sector as donations deductible from the Universal Service and Access Fund levy.

Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation

The purpose of the DPME is to improve government service delivery through integrated planning, monitoring and evaluation. The mandate of the DPME is derived from Section 85(2) (b-c) of the Constitution, which states that the President exercises executive authority, together with the other members of the Cabinet by developing and implementing national policy and coordinating the functions of state departments and administrations.

It is mandated to:

- support the National Planning Commission;
- facilitate the implementation of the NDP through the development of sector- and outcome-specific medium-term plans and delivery agreements, and monitor and evaluate the implementation of these plans;
- ensure the alignment of departmental strategic and annual plans and budget allocations with government's MTSF;
- monitor the performance of individual national and provincial government departments and municipalities, and facilitate targeted intervention programmes;
- monitor frontline service delivery and manage the presidential hotline:
- develop and implement the annual national evaluations plan and support the national evaluations system; and

 promote good planning, monitoring and evaluation practices in government.

Chapter 13 of the NDP sets out a vision for building a capable and developmental state, which is expressed in terms of Priority 6 (a capable, ethical and developmental state) of government's 2019-2024 MTSF. The work of the DPME is directly aligned with this priority. Over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on contributing to improved development outcomes for the country through the coordination and institutionalisation of an integrated government planning system; monitoring government's progress on its achievement of the goals set out in the NDP; providing appropriate support for the implementation of the MTSF; and advancing evidence-based planning, monitoring and evaluation.

As this work relies largely on human capital, compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 66.8% (R952 million) of the department's total budget over the medium term. The department will address the country's development priorities through the coordination and institutionalisation of an integrated government planning system.

To this end, over the period ahead, the department will support the development of a government strategy for alleviating poverty, unemployment and inequality, and assist in facilitating a conversation among key stakeholders to lead a social compact on issues of development.

To complement this work, the department expects to finalise the Integrated Planning Framework Bill in 2022/23, which is intended to act as founding legislation for the department and lead to the establishment of an institutional framework for predictable planning across all spheres of government. These activities will be carried out within an allocation of R119.7 million over the MTEF period in the Planning Coordination subprogramme in the National Planning Coordination programme.

To monitor government's progress on the realisation of the NDP's vision, the department plans to conduct integrated reviews to monitor the implementation of the MTSF. Over the period ahead, 2 reports per year on the implementation of MTSF priorities will be produced and submitted to Cabinet. Funding for these activities is within an allocation of R176.2 million over the medium term in the Outcomes Monitoring and Support subprogramme in the Sector Monitoring Services programme

The department plans to provide support for the implementation of the MTSF by conducting training in collaboration with the National School of Government; and producing mid-year and annual public service performance and capability monitoring reports that indicate corrective action to be implemented by national and provincial departments, and state-owned entities.

Funding for these activities is within an allocation of R243.8 million over the period ahead in the Public Sector Monitoring and Capacity Development subprogramme in the Public Sector Monitoring and Capacity Development programme. In its efforts to advance evidence-based planning, monitoring and evaluation over the medium term, the department plans to compile reports on all its research projects.

Emphasis will be placed on GBVF, the national youth policy, and the 16 Days of Activism campaign. Funding for this reporting and research is within an allocation of R122.5 million over the MTEF period in the Evaluation, Research, Knowledge and Data Systems subprogramme in the Evidence and Knowledge Systems programme.

Reviewing the NDP

The NDP was adopted as a guide to achieving South Africa's goals, broadly in terms of socio-economic development, and specifically in terms of eliminating poverty, creating jobs and reducing inequality by 2030. The National Planning Commission was tasked with reviewing some aspects of the NDP to address certain implementation challenges. Over the medium term, this review is expected to assess the capacity and capability of the State in measuring the implementation of the NDP. Related activities are set to be carried out in the Management: National Planning Coordination subprogramme. Allocations in the subprogramme amount to R157.7 million over the MTEF period.

Improving and strengthening government planning and coordination

The DPME is mandated to improve and strengthen government's planning and coordination. This involves ensuring the implementation of the MTSF, which is implemented in five-year cycles to allow for revisions, and serves as a roadmap for achieving goals linked to NDP outcomes; and conducting assessments of national departments' draft strategic and annual performance plans (APPs) to ensure alignment with the MTSF and the NDP.

In this regard, in each year over the medium term, the DPME expects to produce 47 assessment reports. Based on the outcomes of these assessments, the DPME will, in consultation with National Treasury, identify delivery priorities for the funding of national departments. Related activities are carried out in the Planning Coordination programme. Allocations to the subprogramme amount to R101.8 million over the medium term.

Supporting implementation of short-term and medium-term goals

Tracking the performance of the short-term and medium-term goals of government's MTSF 2019-2024 is a core function of the DPME. Accordingly, over the MTEF period, the department will engage national and provincial departments, government agencies and key state-owned entities (SOEs) to assess their implementation of the priorities and indicators of the framework, and identify performance gaps and interventions to address underperformance. In this regard, the DPME plans to produce two reports per year over the, medium term, for submission to Cabinet.

These activities are budgeted for in the Outcomes Monitoring and Support, and Intervention Support subprogrammes, which together account for 94.9% (R246.8 million) of allocations to the Sector Monitoring Services programme over the medium term.

Developing intervention programmes to support service delivery

The DPME plans to produce two reports per year over the MTEF period to monitor the impact of policy priorities in relation to actual service delivery through various frontline monitoring programmes, including targeted site visits, citizen-based monitoring and the Presidential Hotline. To enhance capacity over the medium term, the DPME plans to assess the performance of government departments, agencies, SOEs and local government.

This will include the development of a new monitoring model to replace the Management Performance Assessment Tool, and support the annual development and assessment of performance agreements of heads of departments. These activities will be carried out in the

Public Service Monitoring and Capacity Development subprogramme. Allocations in the subprogramme amount to R266.2 million over the MTEF period.

Conducting research and evaluations

The DPME's ongoing focus is on maximising the use of its evaluations and research capabilities to generate rapid and relevant evidence that will inform planning and monitoring, and appropriate interventions. As such, over the medium term, the department plans to work towards improving research and knowledge, and maintain evidence-based policy development, planning, implementation and monitoring by providing support for data management.

This will be achieved by developing and monitoring the implementation of a national evaluation plan, and conducting evaluations and research to support the planning and monitoring activities of the National Planning Coordination and Sector Monitoring Services programmes.

Accordingly, in each year over the medium term, the DPME plans to produce 10 evidence reports on indicators related to evaluations, and research and development. These activities will be carried out in the Evaluation, Research, Knowledge and Data Systems subprogramme, which accounts for R156.4 million of the total budget.

The impact of COVID-19 on MTSF 2019-2024

Government's swift response to the COVID-19 pandemic has resulted in the reprioritisation of programmes and resources towards tackling the pandemic. To this end, National Treasury presented a supplementary budget in June 2020 – providing fiscal measures to address the socioeconomic impact of the pandemic.

The resultant effect was that some commitments outlined in the MTSF 2019-2024, tabled strategic plans and APPs for provincial and national departments, and municipalities were impacted negatively. Some departments had to revise their strategic plans and APPs for 2020. In addition, government revised the MTSF. The revised MTSF will account for measures being put in place to deal with the pandemic, the impact of revised interventions and targets, and the need to support recovery efforts.

Priority focus areas include:

- defeating the COVID-19 pandemic;
- accelerating economic recovery;
- · implementing required economic reforms; and
- · fighting corruption and strengthening the State.

The Revised MTSF

The MTSF 2019-2024 was revised to account for the impact of COVID-19 and the budget reprioritisation. The Revised MTSF considered policy and planning instruments that were not yet complete in 2019. These include the review reports of the NDP, the Strategic Implementation Plan on the Fourth Industrial Revolution, the DDM and the ERRP. The revised framework will guide government's focus over the remaining three years of the Sixth Administration.

The 2021/22 financial year also had a special focus on commitments outlined in the State of the Nation Address (SoNA) 2021, which are included in the revised framework. Supporting planning instruments for the revised framework, such as the MTSF institutionalisation guidelines, the Budget Prioritisation Framework, the analysis of APPs and geospatial referencing will account for this focus.

The revised framework will also be supported by an integrated MTSF monitoring and reporting system. The National Evaluation System will support the impact and outcome evaluations of the Revised MTSF to ensure that government achieves its desired developmental goals. A new national evaluation plan that proposes an evaluation of the DDM is underway. The plan will establish an observatory that will serve as an evidence center to continuously inform policy and planning decisions around the DDM.

Localisation of the revised framework should take place, inter alia, through the submission by national and provincial departments, of details on the geospatial location of their projects and interventions.

This will be phased in over the MTSF period, and will build on existing systems, in particular the Infrastructure Delivery Management System and related instruments. The DDM will help fast-track infrastructure and general socio-economic development. Additionally, the DPME will pilot the geospatial referencing of government projects with three provincial departments.

This will enable the collection and collation of disaggregated, geospatially referenced data at the provincial sphere and, where possible, correlate to the SoNA priorities, including the ERRP and the response to the COVID-19 pandemic.

SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

The Presidency





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Tourism

Tourism

Tourism, with its extensive value chain and labor absorption capacity, remains an important contributor to the South African economy. It is a significant earner of foreign exchange and provides employment to people of varying skills levels. It promotes geographic spread of benefits such as employment and economic opportunities. It has the ability to expand economic activity to rural areas.

With more than 54% of the tourism workforce being women, including those from rural areas, the sector can play a critical role in promoting financial and economic inclusion of women. In addition, through its significant forward and backward linkages with other economic sectors, tourism has a major impact on the wider economy. As a truly aspirational destination, combining powerful social justice history, breath-taking natural beauty, and warm, welcoming and diverse people, South Africa's tourism potential is immeasurable.

The Department of Tourism seeks to contribute towards placing South Africa's tourism sector on a growth trajectory that fully realises the country's vast and diverse tourism potential. Tourism has the potential to make a significant contribution to the South African economy and it is targeted by government as one of the industries for future economic growth in the country. Tourism therefore is regarded as a potential sector where large-scale employment opportunities can be created.

The mandate of the Department of Tourism, as outlined in the Tourism Act, 2014 (Act 3 of 2014), is to promote the growth and development of the tourism sector; promote quality tourism products and services; provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination; enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism; and promote responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors.

In recognition of tourism as a national priority with the potential to contribute significantly to economic development, the 1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism. The National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS) provides a blueprint for the sector to meet the growth targets contained in the National Development Plan (NDP). The NDP identifies tourism as a labour-intensive sector with the potential to stimulate economic growth and transformation. This vision is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework, with which the work of the Department of Tourism is directly aligned.

The department considers it vital to protect and reignite the demand for tourism to ensure that the sector live up to its potential for contributing to South Africa's economic growth. Over the medium term, this will entail focus on strengthening capabilities within the department to ensure the long-term sustainability of the sector; enhancing and maintaining core tourism assets and infrastructure, and in so doing creating work opportunities; supporting historically disadvantaged tourism enterprises; implementing norms and standards for safe operations across the tourism value chain; and enhancing tourism safety in collaboration with the South African Police Service (SAPS).

The department has a total allocation of R7.6 billion over the medium term. Transfers to the department's entity, South African Tourism, account for an estimated 53.3% (R4.1 billion) of this amount. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 0.8%,

from R2.5 billion in 2021/22 to R2.6 billion in 2024/25. To strengthen capacity within the department, an additional R92.2 million is reprioritised across goods and services to raise the expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees. This is expected to enable a targeted 37 critical posts to be filled over the MTEF period in corporate services and critical areas of service delivery that entail facilitating the recovery of the industry.

To enhance tourism assets and infrastructure projects – such as national and provincial parks, botanical and zoological gardens and heritage sites – the department has reprioritised R240 million over the medium term from the Tourism Incentive Programme (TIP) subprogramme in the Tourism Sector Support Services programme towards the Destination Development programme.

Spending in this programme accounts for an estimated 16.1% (R1.2 billion) of the department's total allocation for the MTEF period. This expenditure is expected to give rise to the creation of an estimated 12 370 work opportunities over the period ahead through expenditure of R856.5 million through the expanded public works programme.

A total of R87.1 million over the medium term is set aside to promote small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs), women and young people in the tourism sector, with an estimated 225 of these enterprises expected to receive training on the norms and standards for safe operations within the tourism sector in the context of the COVID-19 pandemic and beyond. To achieve these targets, expenditure in the TIP subprogramme is expected to amount to R741.7 million over the medium term.

In support of the objectives of enterprise development and transformation, the department will aim to fast-track the piloting of the Tourism Equity Fund, which offers for capital investment in the form of grant funding to commercially viable black-owned tourism enterprises. An amount of R360 million over the medium term is allocated to the fund to support an estimated 31 qualifying tourism enterprises.

The fund will also seek to develop skills and ensure that the sector is sufficiently equipped to meet increased demand and expectations by implementing capacity-building programmes such as the wine service training programme, the hospitality youth programme, and food and beverage programmes. In collaboration with the SAPS, the department has set aside R300 million for enhancing tourism safety. To this end, the department plans to roll out phase 1 of the tourism safety monitors programme. By mid-2021, the department had 700 monitors stationed in various national parks, botanical gardens and zoological gardens.

Legislation and policies

The Department of Tourism operates under the following legislation and policies:

- The Tourism Act of 2014 aims to promote the practise
 of responsible tourism for the benefit of the country and for the
 enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors; provide for the
 effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a
 tourist destination; promote quality tourism products and services;
 promote growth in and development of the tourism sector, and
 enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of
 government in developing and managing tourism.
- The 1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa provides a framework and guidelines for tourism development and promotion in South.

- The NDP is the 2030 vision for the country. It envisions rising employment, productivity and incomes as a way to ensure a long-term solution to achieve a reduction in inequality, an improvement in living standards and ensuring a dignified existence for all South Africans. The NDP recognises tourism as one of the main drivers of employment and economic growth.
- The Re-imagined Industrial Strategy identifies tourism as one of the seven national priority sectors.
- The NTSS guides the strategic development and growth on the tourism sector in pursuit of the NDP targets.
- The Tourism Sector Recovery Plan (TSRP) sets out interventions to ignite the recovery of the tourism sector, and to place it on path to long-term sustainability whilst contributing to the implementation of the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan (ERRP).

Budget

The Department of Tourism's 2021/22 budget allocation was R2.5 billion.

COVID-19 impact on the South African tourism industry

The COVID-19 pandemic has plunged the tourism sector into an unprecedented crisis, globally. Tourism was one of the first economic activities to be deeply impacted by the pandemic, as well as measures to contain its spread. The sector is facing profound and simultaneous demand and supply shocks. Historically, the sector has been resilient and quick to lift itself out of tough economic times, including global financial meltdowns and health pandemic.

However, the sheer scale and depth of the disruptions to the sector caused by the pandemic suggest that the road to recovery will be long and highly uncertain. The World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO) Panel of Experts Survey expects the sector to only return to pre-pandemic levels in 2023. Until then, the sector is expected to stay in survival mode.

South Africa faces persistent challenges of inequality, unemployment and poverty. These challenges have overtime been worsened by sustained low levels of investment and growth. The outbreak of the COVID-19 pandemic found a vulnerable South African economy. At the time the pandemic reached South Africa, the country's economy had experienced two consecutive quarters of negative growth. As a result, the pandemic deepened the economic crisis.

Many people lost their jobs and income as a result, for extended periods, leading to hunger. Inequality is expected to widen and poverty to deepen. The stagnation of the economy for a long period, coupled with the COVID-19 crisis has also led to low levels of capacity utilization in the various sectors of the South African economy. This trend is projected to continue – painting a dire picture for gross fixed capital formation.

A significant reduction in the gross fixed capital formation variable is a troubling development; given that this variable is critical in sustaining and growing the productive base of the economy. As the Tourism sector begins to recover from the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic, government will undertake major actions to position the South African brand, and reignite the international demand in the face of challenges emanating from the pandemic.

Government will continue sending out the message that South Africa is a brand that provides a safe tourist experience, and is ready

to deliver on expected quality for international and domestic tourists, through implementation of the norms and standards for safe tourism operations.

Tourism Sector Recovery Plan

The TSRP seeks not only to return the tourism sector's performance to levels it reached before the outbreak of COVID-19, but also to place it on a long-term sustainable growth trajectory, leveraging on South Africa's vast and diverse tourism potential. It is anchored on three interlinked pillars – protect and rejuvenate supply, reignite demand and strengthen capability for long-term sustainability.

It outlines specific interventions under each strategic theme, with timeframes and lines of accountability. These interventions will be implemented simultaneously, taking into account the effects of the stop and start cycles that the sector will be expected to deal with in the short-to-medium term as the virus evolves bringing with it possible new waves and strains.

Simultaneous implementation of the interventions in the TSRP means that efforts to rejuvenate and protect the supply side will be undertaken jointly with efforts to ignite demand; locally, regionally and across the globe. Furthermore, interventions undertaken in the current period will also be deliberately targeted towards ensuring the long-term sustainability of the sector.

While international travel will remain subdued for some time, work will begin, in line with recommendations in the ERRP, to build a bidding pipeline for the hosting of future conferences and mega events. The reignition of demand has to be met with sufficient supply. In this regard, a correct product pricing mix is a key to addressing both international and domestic demand. This includes the costs and availability of the transport enabler that allows tourists to get to and move within destinations.

While South Africa has no shortage of tourism products, both public and private sector owners will have to consider how these products are packaged and priced for the domestic and regional consumer.

In this regard, the Department of Tourism established a pilot on the budget resort concept and brand – an initiative to meet the anticipated changes in domestic and regional demand. This initiative is the incorporation of prioritised initiatives – from tourism masterplans to the District Development Model plans for various districts. The key risks related to this initiative pertain to the lack of stakeholder buy-in, resourcing and institutional arrangements.

The department will implement the publication of norms and standards for safe operations in the sector across the value chain, to enable safe travel and rebuild traveller confidence. In addition, the department will encourage the adoption of and monitor the implementation of these norms and standards by businesses across the value chain.

Tourism Equity Fund

In January 2021, government launched the R1.2 billion TEF aimed at creating an inclusive and growing tourism sector by supporting entrepreneurship and investment on the supply side of the tourism sector.

The fund is aligned with the NTSS 2016-2026, which places significant emphasis on a transformative and inclusive tourism economy. It is informed by the recognition that the capital-intensive nature of the industry prevents many black-owned tourism enterprises

from growing and developing. By providing access to finance for black-owned, commercially viable tourism projects, the fund intends to address this challenge.

As a combination of grant funding, concessionary loans and debt finance, the fund will cater to the specific needs of black-owned businesses to acquire equity, invest in new developments or expand existing developments. The fund was established by the Department of Tourism in partnership with the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (SEFA) as a new financial support mechanism to stimulate investment and transformation in the tourism sector. The fund will offer a combination of debt finance and grant funding for large capital investment projects in the tourism sector.

The Department of Tourism intended to launch the TEF in partnership with the SEFA for an initial pilot phase period of three years, with a view to promote the participation of black enterprises within the tourism industry. The TEF will be capitalised by the Department of Tourism to the value of R540 million over three years. This will be used as a capital injection by means of a grant contribution towards funding acquisitions and development and expansion projects by black tourism industrialists up to a maximum of R20 million per enterprise. This capital injection will be used to leverage at least 50% additional funding per transaction.

The fund will focus on the majority black-owned (51%) and black management-controlled tourism enterprises.

The implementation of the TEF should be done in a manner that addresses the reconstruction of the sector, as well as advancement of transformation through enabling expanded participation of black people, women, youth and people with disabilities in the sector. This initiative brings together government, development finance institutions and commercial banks to pull resources together for ease of access to capital and operational funding. Its success will see a relative degree of inclusivity in the sector, which will emerge after full recovery. The TEF will be implemented, as part of ensuring that the sector that emerges after recovery is moving towards inclusivity in its form.

Entity

South African Tourism

The Tourism Act of 2014 mandates the South African tourism industry to market South Africa, internationally and domestically, as a preferred tourism and business events destination; ensure that tourist facilities and services are of the highest standard; and monitor and evaluate the performance of the sector.

As part of the National Tourism Recovery Strategy, over the period ahead, the entity will continue to focus on interventions that promote the recovery of the tourism sector. These include increasing international and domestic demand for tourism within South Africa; diversifying and ensuring the supply of quality tourism products and services; leveraging data and technology to enhance operational and marketing efficiencies; and optimising the tourism portfolio by focusing on partnerships and collaboration in the tourism value chain.

Over the medium term, the entity will seek to revitalise South Africa as a premier tourist and business destination. Accordingly, the number of international business events hosted in South Africa is expected to increase from 8 in 2021/22 to 39 in 2024/25 at a projected cost of R289.3 million over the MTEF period. The entity also plans to support bids to host 339 international and regional business events over this

period. Part of the entity's revitalisation plan also entails assuring that tourism establishments are of a high standard. As such, it plans to increase the number of graded establishments from 4 707 in 2021/22 to 5 625 in 2024/25 at a projected cost of R161.1 million over the medium term.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 2.8%, from R1.4 billion in 2021/22 to R1.5 billion in 2024/25. The entity expects to derive 91.3% (R4.1 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department, and the rest from tourism marketing levies, grading income, interest on investments and sundry income from events such as exhibitions.

Role players

Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP)

The TEP is a non-profit company that facilitates the growth, development and sustainability of small tourism businesses. This is achieved through a number of products and services that provide hands-on, step-by-step support and guidance, ultimately leading to improved product quality, operational efficiency and market reach.

Funding for the TEP's small tourism business development interventions is provided by the Department of Tourism as well as the Business Trust, the Tourism Micro-Enterprises Support Fund (a sister company that provides funding specifically for the support of micro-enterprises), global financial services company Credit Suisse, and the Eastern Cape Development Corporation.

Africa's Travel Indaba

Africa's Travel Indaba is one of the largest tourism marketing events on the continent's calendar and one of the top three "must visit" events of its kind on the global calendar.

It showcases the widest variety of southern Africa's best tourism products and attracts international buyers and media from across the world. Africa's Travel Indaba is owned by the SAT and organised by Synergy Business Events. It has won various awards for Africa's best travel and tourism show, presented by the Association of World Travel Awards. Africa's Travel Indaba 2020 was postponed due to COVID-19 regulations which prohibited gatherings.

Meetings Africa

Meetings Africa is the continent's largest trade show for the business events industry. Meetings Africa has been lauded as the premier business event in this industry, showcasing the continent's diverse offering of services and products.

Positioned as "Advancing Africa Together", the sole ambition of the trade show is to contribute to the growth of Africa's potential as the world's fastest-growing and most sought-after business events destination.

Culture, Art, Tourism, Hospitality, and Sport Sector Education and Training Authority (CATHSSETA)

The CATHSSETA is one of the 21 sector education and training authorities established in 2001 under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998). It was formally known as the Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority.

Its mandate is to facilitate skills development within its subsectors through the disbursement of grants for learning programmes and monitoring of education and training as outlined in the National Skills Development Strategy.

The CATHSSETA operates in the following subsectors:

- · Arts, culture and heritage;
- · Conservation:
- · Gaming and lotteries; and
- Hospitality.

Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA)

The TGCSA is South Africa's only officially recognised and globally credible quality assurance body for national tourism products. It uses a star grading system for the evaluation of the quality of accommodation establishments.

Of the 11 categories of establishments from which travellers can choose (hotels, lodges, bed and breakfasts, country houses, guest houses, self-catering units, caravan and camping parks, backpackers and hosteling facilities as well as meetings, exhibitions and special events venues), establishments that have been graded by one of the TGCSA's accredited grading assessors will clearly display the TGCSA star insignia. The TGCSA star plaque and certificate guarantees quality and service excellence in line with internationally benchmarked standards.

Tourism B-BBEE Charter Council

The Tourism B-BBEE Charter Council's roles include:

- providing guidance on sector-specific matters effecting B-BBEE in entities within the sector;
- compiling reports on the status of B-BBEE within the sector for the Minister of Tourism and the BEE Advisory Council; and
- sharing information with sector members, approved accreditation agencies and the Minister of Tourism pertaining to B-BBEE in the sector.

Programmes and projects

Tourism Incentive Programme

The TIP received a budget of R552.9 million over the medium term and will focus on supporting tourism attractions to enhance destination competitiveness. Underused and unused public recreational facilities and resorts will be redeveloped as tourism destination sites.

Besides its job creation and economic growth outcomes, the TIP is aimed at the following:

- · Enhancing infrastructure facilities to maximise tourism benefits;
- Promoting greater participation in tourism and leisure activities, particularly among low-income people and families:
- Attracting private sector investment in those facilities:
- Sector transformation: and
- Addressing the challenges of uneven geographical spread of tourism products and seasonality.

The programme will further support SMMEs by assisting them to participate in local and international trade exhibitions, thus creating direct linkages with international tourism companies.

The programme will start by focusing on creating better access to new markets and customers, encouraging greater participation in the grading system, and providing key tourist attractions with clean and renewable energy sources.

The TIP comprises the following:

- A subsidy towards the costs incurred by tourism establishments to participate in trade exhibitions and marketing roadshows. This will include a capped reimbursement towards predetermined expenses such as airfare, accommodation and exhibition fees for participation in marketing platforms supported by the SAT.
- Support for owners of establishments who want to be graded by the TGCSA in the form of a structured system of retroactive discounts or rebates on the assessment fee for grading. This aims to make grading more affordable for smaller businesses and encourage more establishments to become graded.
- A pilot project to retrofit facilities at state-owned destinations and attractions such as world heritage sites and national botanical gardens with renewable energy technology. This will guide the design of a programme to help make establishments, including those in the private sector, more environmentally sustainable.
- The TIP supports the objectives of South Africa's overall industrial policy, which includes creating jobs, building the local industrial base and transforming to a green economy.

Green Tourism Incentive Programme (GTIP)

The ongoing electricity supply challenges, combined with persistent drought conditions in many parts of South Africa, poses a threat to sustainable tourism operations. Added to this, a greater awareness amongst tourists around the impact of climate change has led to growing market demand for responsible tourism experiences that supports environmental sustainability. In line with its responsible tourism development objectives, the Department of Tourism introduced the GTIP grant funding to assist private sector tourism enterprises to retrofit their facilities with efficiency solutions for energy and water usage.

This initiative will not only alleviate pressure on the electricity and water resources of the country and ensure an uninterrupted visitor experience for tourists, but will also reduce input costs and facilitate increased competitiveness and operational sustainability for tourism enterprises. The GTIP is managed by the Industrial Development Corporation on behalf of the Department of Tourism. In order to strengthen the programme, the partnership has also been widened to include the National Cleaner Production Centre (NCPC) and the SEFA. Under the GTIP, qualifying applicants are eliqible for the following:

- 90% of the cost for a new resource-efficiency (energy and water) audit or the full cost for reviewing an existing resource-efficiency audit conducted by the NCPC; and
- Grant funding to qualifying small and micro enterprises on a sliding scale, from 30% to 90% (capped at R1 million per applicant) towards the installation of recommended water and energy efficiency measures.

Tourism Transformation Fund (TTF)

Transformation and more inclusive growth of the tourism sector remains a key priority for the Department of Tourism, in line with broader government objectives and legislation for B-BBEE. As part of its efforts to support sector transformation, the department partnered

with the NEF to establish a dedicated capital investment funding mechanism to encourage capital investment by majority black-owned investors in the tourism sector. The TTF aims to use grant funding to stimulate accelerated sector transformation and more inclusive growth and is expected to give rise to a new generation of black-owned youth, women and community-based tourism enterprises that will take the sector to new heights.

The fund offers a combination of debt finance from the NEF and grant funding from the department for new and expansionary tourism development projects with majority black shareholding.

The TTF is managed by the National Empowerment Forum (NEF) and is capitalised by the Department of Tourism to the tune R77 million. The grant component will be capped at a maximum of R5 million per successful applicant to unlock investment. In May 2021, government announced that the department would restructure the TTF to make it more responsive and accessible to entrepreneurs.

Market Access Support Programme (MASP)

The cost and difficulty of accessing and engaging international travel buyers serves as a major barrier to unlocking growth potential of small tourism product owners and inbound operators. The aim of the MASP is to reduce the cost burden for small tourism enterprises to participate in selected international trade platforms and thereby improving their access to buyers in new and growth markets to unlock demand growth and allow market penetration.

The programme offers financial support to qualifying small tourism enterprises to participate in, and exhibit at selected international trade platforms. Relevant trade platforms (exhibitions and marketing roadshows) included in the programme are identified in consultation with the SAT.

The support offered under the MASP typically includes contributions towards the cost of participation, accommodation and economy class return airfare for applicants approved for support. The cost of participation, including exhibition fees at a particular trade platform is paid upfront to the event organiser by the department on behalf of approved applicants.

Tourism Grading Support Programme

The Tourism Grading Support Programme was introduced to encourage wider participation in the tourism grading system and to reduce the cost burden of grading on small tourism enterprises. The programme also aims to stimulate an increase in conformity to quality standards in tourism that will enhance the overall visitor experience and improve South Africa's competitiveness as a tourism destination. The programme offers discounts of between 80% and 90% on the cost of star grading assessment fees for accommodation establishments and meeting venues. The programme is administered by the TGCSA.

National Tourism Sector Strategy

The vision of the NTSS is to position South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations globally. The overall goal of the strategy is to drive the tourism economy, enhance visitor experiences, position South Africa as a destination of choice and sustain good governance in the industry.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are arrivals, GDP and job creation. To achieve its objectives, the NTSS focuses on domestic tourism with

the intention to increase the number of domestic trips. Regional tourism is also being targeted with South Africa looking to take advantage of hitherto untapped markets such as outbound tourists. This strategy represents government's commitment to intelligent planning and policy formulation. It was developed over two years in close collaboration with local and provincial governments, an advisory panel of top industry minds, representatives of various professional bodies, academia, tourism marketing agencies, civil society and the broader public.

The NTSS is a document that the entire sector is committed to and includes coordinated and credible targets. The strategy rests on three pillars – driving the tourism economy, enhancing visitor experiences and ensuring sustainability and good governance in the industry.

Tourism Month

Tourism Month is celebrated annually in September and provides a heightened month-long focus on the importance of the sector to the South African economy. Tourism Month features themed activities that are aligned to the UNWTO's World Tourism Day celebrations that take place annually on 27 September.

The theme for the 2021 Tourism Month was, "Tourism for inclusive growth". In South Africa, it was the theme; "Tourism for inclusive growth – COVID-19 recovery – building back better."

These nation-wide festivities took place against the backdrop of the COVID-19 pandemic, which has had a crippling impact on business. However, the sector implemented health and safety protocols in line with global guidelines, to minimise the risk of transmission as well as a robust recovery plan to chart the way forward.

World Tourism Day 2021 was also a unique occasion to amplify he conversation about the sector's role in recovery and growth. Tourism Month, therefore, lended impetus to the Tourism Sector Recovery Plan, which contains a set of interventions to protect and rejuvenate supply, reignite demand and strengthen enabling capability to support the sector's recovery.

Women in Tourism Programme

The Women in Tourism Programme is an initiative that propels and supports the development and empowerment of women in the tourism sector. Premised on the principles of respect; recognition; representation and reward, the programme integrates women from diverse backgrounds to converge on a set of common goals and interests that will ensure their success in the sector.

The programme serves as a mechanism to elevate the status of women in tourism by providing training, empowerment and networking opportunities that facilitate their competitiveness as entrepreneurs, professionals and leaders.

National tourism service excellence requirements

The national tourism service excellence requirements are aimed at improving and maintaining service levels at all service touch points in the tourism value chain as well as guiding the sector to achieve the NTSS objective of positioning South Africa as one of the top 20 global tourism destinations.

Previously, the tourism value chain in South Africa did not have integrated standards and norms, and this contributed to

The Blue Flag is one of the world's most recognised voluntary eco-labels awarded to beaches, marinas, and sustainable boating tourism operators. To qualify for the status, a series of stringent environmental, educational, safety, and accessibility criteria must be met and maintained. To achieve Blue Flag status, 33 main criteria covering four aspects of coastal management have to be met. These four aspects are water quality, environmental education and information, environmental management, and safety and services.

The Blue Flag Programme is a recognised international accreditation initiative that acknowledges excellence in maintaining the highest standards of environmental management, safety, services and amenities. South Africa was the first country, outside of Europe, to introduce the Blue Flag Programme, in November 2001 in Cape Town.

The Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa announced that in total, 51 beaches achieved the Blue Flag status for 2022/23 and Western Cape leads with 33 beaches followed by the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, with nine beaches each.

Beaches with Blue Flag status for 2020/21 are:

Western Cape:

- · Bikini Beach, Cape Town.
- · Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town.
- · Castle Beach, Overstrand.
- · Clifton 4th Beach, Cape Town.
- · De Bakke Beach, Mossel Bay.
- · Fish Hoek Beach, Cape Town.
- · Glentana Beach, Mossel Bay.
- · Gouritzmond Beach, Hessequa.
- Grotto Beach, Overstrand.
- Hartenbos Beach, Mossel Bay.
- Hawston Beach, Overstrand.Herold's Bay Beach, George.
- Jongensfontein Beach, Hessegua.
- · Kleinbrak Beach, Mossel Bav.
- · Kleinmond Beach, Overstrand,
- · Llandudno Beach, Cape Town.
- Lappiesbaai Beach, Hessegua.
- · Lookout Beach, Bitou.
- · Melkbosstrand Beach, Cape Town.
- Mnandi Beach, Cape Town.
- · Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
- · Nature's Valley Beach, Bitou.
- Onrus Beach, Overstrand.
- · Preekstoel Beach, Hessequa.
- · Robberg 5th Beach, Bitou.
- · Santos Beach, Mossel Bay.
- · Silwerstroomstrand Beach, Cape Town.
- Singing Kettle Beach, Bitou.
- · Stilbaai Wes Beach, Hessequa.
- Struisbaai Beach, Cape Agulhas.
- The Dunes Beach, Bitou.
- · Wilderness Beach, George.
- Witsand Beach, Hessequa.

KwaZulu-Natal

- Blythdale Beach, KwaDukuza.
- Hibberdene Beach, Ray Nkonyeni.
- Marina Beach, Ray Nkonyeni.Ramsgate Beach, Ray Nkonyeni.
- Carthaut Basak Basak Basak
- · Southport Beach, Ray Nkonyeni.
- · Thompson's Bay Beach, KwaDukuza.
- Trafalgar Beach, Ray Nkonyeni.
- · Umzumbe Beach, Ray Nkonyeni.
- · Willard Beach, KwaDukuza.

Eastern Cape

- · Cape St Frances Beach, Kouga.
- · Dolphin Beach, Kouga.
- · Hobie Beach, Nelson Mandela Bay.
- · Humewood Beach, Nelson Mandela Bay.
- Marina Martinique Beach, Marina Martinique.
- · Middle Kenton On Sea. Ndlambe.
- · Kariega Beach, Ndlambe,
- Kelly's Beach, Ndlambe.
- · Kings Beach, Nelson Mandela Bay.

inconsistencies in service levels. The service excellence requirements provides a yardstick to be used by all tourism service providers to deliver quality service and experiences that equal or surpass world standards.

The South African Bureau of Standards developed the standards on behalf of the tourism sector and benchmarked them against international requirements. The requirements have four key focus areas, namely marketing, products, delivery of service, and monitoring and evaluation.

National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism (NMSRT)

Responsible tourism is a management strategy in which the tourism sector and tourists take responsibility for protecting and conserving the natural environment, respecting and conserving local cultures and ways of life, and contributing to stronger local economies and a better quality of life for local people.

It includes providing better holiday experiences for guests and good business opportunities for tourism enterprises. The concept of responsible tourism is gaining ground as a newly emerging trend worldwide.

The Department of Tourism, in partnership with tourism stakeholders and the private sector, particularly accreditation agencies, developed the NMSRT. In doing so, South Africa has taken the lead on the continent by publishing a set of national minimum standards that are aligned with the International Organisation for Standardisation/International Electrotechnical Commission 17011.

The NMSRT comprises 39 criteria divided into four categories, namely sustainable operations and management, economic criteria, social and cultural criteria and environmental criteria.

Other projects

Tourism Enterprise Development Programme

The programme is part of the greater objective of the revised NTSS 2016-2026 that seeks to ensure sustainable development and growth of tourism enterprises in a manner that facilitates inclusive participation, job creation and contributes to the competitiveness of tourism destinations. The programme provides training and support for emerging and existing tourism businesses to ensure their sustainability in the sector. The programme includes an incubator programme in Pilanesberg with 50 incubatees.

The incubator services are designed to address the identified needs of SMMEs It will also ensure constant monitoring to be conducted by the Department of Tourism's Monitoring and Evaluation, and Enterprise Development units respectively.

The objective is to create a programme that is aligned to government's focus on SMMEs and facilitate the transformation of the tourism sector to make it inclusive and accessible to new entrants, especially businesses owned and managed by women and the youth.

Lilizela Tourism Awards

The Lilizela Tourism Awards recognises industry players within four focus areas reflecting eight categories, with the ninth category being the Minister's Award. The awards acknowledge and applaud the efforts of people whose work sets global benchmarks in excellence.

Guidelines for international tourists

Every international traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa. The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued. If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied. Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas are issued free of charge.

Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas. Passport holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements. Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow fever belt in Africa and America, and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease. Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded. VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit. South Africa's transport infrastructure — airlines, railroads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor vehicles — is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

The South African Airways, as well as a number of international airlines, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa. Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country.

The tourist accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and bed-and-breakfast establishments.

Tourist guiding

The Department of Tourism entered into an agreement with the CATHSSETA, seeking to prioritise tourist-guide training and development throughout South Africa.

The agreement also addresses areas of transformation within the tourist guide sector, as well as the maintenance of standards through quality training and effective skills development programmes aimed at existing tourist guides.

The department engaged the Road Traffic Management Corporation to educate traffic officials, throughout South Africa, on how to enforce legislation pertaining to tourist guides. It works closely with the Department of Transport with a view to ensuring enforcement of tourist guiding issues relating to tour operators and related regulations in the National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009).

The Department of Tourism wants industry bodies that are committed to growing the tourist-guiding sector and elevating the profession to enter into formal agreements with stakeholder bodies that share the department's vision. It undertook a process to review regulations in respect of tourist guiding. This included wide consultations with tourist guides and key stakeholders throughout the country to improve processes and systems to register tourist guides and ensure compliance within the sector.

The department is working with provinces to establish a centralised database of tourist guides. Once a viable database is in place, the department will be able to engage other relevant authorities and government departments to ensure that the information received from the provinces is subjected to a vetting process as prescribed in the Tourism Act of 2014.

Training programmes for tourist guides taking place in provinces focus on skills development for existing tourist guides to make them more marketable and employable within the sector.

Tourism niche markets

Domestic tourism (Sho't Left)

The Sho't Left Campaign aims to promote a culture of local holiday travel, targeting ordinary South Africans and their families who have a desire to see more of the country but do not know where to go.

The Sho't Left Campaign was relaunched in 2007, challenging South Africans to "see your world differently", even when only visiting family or friends. The campaign is aimed at young upcoming individuals, couples and families.

Adventure tourism

The country's diverse terrain, together with an ideal climate for outdoor activities, makes it perfect for the adventure tourism niche market. Activities such as climbing, surfing, diving, hiking, horseback safaris, mountain-biking, river-rafting and just about any other extreme activity are supported by dedicated operators.

South Africa offers some of the best rock climbing and abseiling opportunities in the world. Those who prefer rivers have a choice

of trips ranging from mostly scenic to Grade 5 white-water rafting. Opportunities for escorted or self-guided trips are also available. For those who want to take to the skies, there are more than 100 listed paragliding or hang-gliding launch sites as well as numerous lesser known sites.

There are also many opportunities for helicopter rides, balloon and microlight flights, aerobatics and skydiving. Thousands of kilometres (km) of hiking trails wind through the country in desert, forest, mountain or coastal terrains, many with adjacent mountain-biking trails.

In addition, South Africa offers a wide variety of horse trails through vineyards, on beaches and in the mountains. For the more adventurous there are also horseback safaris in game reserves. The 216-metre (m) Bloukrans Bridge, on the border of the Eastern and Western Cape, offers the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Business tourism

South Africa remains among the top long-haul business events destinations in the world and is the premier business events destination in Africa.

Government recognises business events tourism as an area with significant growth potential and has therefore established the South Africa National Convention Bureau (SANCB) to further promote growth in the conferencing industry. The SANCB is tasked with coordinating national bidding, undertaking research and collaborating with city and provincial convention bureaus and the business events industry to present a united front for destination South Africa.

Cruise tourism

The Department of Tourism works closely with the cruise line industry to ensure that packages and excursions are developed and that passengers are encouraged to visit the country's shores, enjoy what it has to offer and inspire other travellers to visit South Africa.

Cultural tourism

Heritage and cultural tourism is the fastest-emerging competitive niche within domestic and international tourism markets. The National Heritage and Cultural Strategy is aimed at guiding the integration of heritage and cultural resources with mainstream tourism. It is set to stimulate sustainable livelihoods through heritage and cultural tourism products, as well as to diversify the sector and raise awareness of heritage and cultural resources.

South Africa's diversity is reflected in its cultural tourism, with many destinations commemorating the past. These range from the ancient nomadic San culture to European settlement, apartheid rule and the Struggle for political freedom.

Cultural tourist destinations include the following:

- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park in KwaZulu-Natal, a home to the ancient rock art of the San.
- Cradle of Humankind near Johannesburg, the richest hominid fossil site in the world.
- Mapungubwe in Limpopo, one of the richest archaeological sites in Africa, where an advanced South African culture prospered between 1 200 AD and 1 270 AD.
- Soweto's Heritage Trail, a reminder of the events that characterised South Africa's liberation Struggle, such as the student uprising on

16 June 1976.

 Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Medical tourism

South Africa has emerged as a medical tourism destination of choice for travellers from other African countries as well as further afield; and the industry is proving to have extensive growth potential. Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also perform organ transplants, cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery, and dentistry.

Nature-based tourism

South Africa's fauna and flora, and varied landscapes have enormous recreational value and attract several million tourists each year. Protected natural areas serve not only to maintain biodiversity, but sustainable visitor access to these areas adds economic, recreational and aesthetic value to that which is being conserved within their borders. It also helps to preserve a wealth of traditional indigenous knowledge related to biodiversity, which is in itself a tourism resource.

South Africa has 20 national parks as well as numerous private game farms and nature reserves. Four of the country's United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) world heritage sites are natural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are the Cape Floral Region, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, the Vredefort Dome, Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains and the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park.

South Africa's popularity as an avitourism destination is due to the large number of birds, endemic species and major bird habitats. Birdlife South Africa, the country's national birding organisation, has more than 5 000 members and in more than 40 bird clubs nationwide.

Rural tourism

The National Rural Strategy is aimed at creating community-driven bed-and-breakfast operations, catering for international and domestic tourists. In supporting the geographic spread of tourism and in particular tourism growth in rural areas and enhancing the supply of rural tourism products, the Department of Tourism is focusing on rural communities.

Culture and heritage products are the fastest emerging competitive niche offerings in the domestic and international markets. Sustainable development will be achieved if the people, whose land, culture and natural resources are used for tourism, benefit from such use in a meaningful way.

Sports tourism

More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sports events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals. The world-class sporting events on South Africa's annual calendar include the:

- annual Cape Argus Cycle Race, which caters for 35 000 people riding and pushing their bikes over a 10-km course;
- Midmar Mile in KwaZulu-Natal, which attracts 18 000 open-water swimmers annually; and
- · Comrades Marathon.

 Sports and Events Tourism Exchange, the only event of its kind in Southern Africa and provides a platform that brings together businesses from the sports, events and tourism industries.

Township tourism

Township tours have the potential to present South Africa's culture and heritage, and the Department of Tourism plans to develop packages to achieve that goal. Government wants to capitalise on job creation opportunities in this sector.

Wine tourism

Wine tourism is growing fast worldwide and plays an especially important role in South Africa with its centuries-old reputation for making high-quality wine. South African's wine tourism has been rated among the best developed in the world.

The country's vineyards are mostly situated in the Western Cape near the coast. All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme. Stylistically, South African wines fit somewhere between Old World and New World.

Regional tourism

Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province's unmatched natural beauty, famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and rich cuisine make it one of the world's greatest tourist attractions. The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other province.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town, which lies at the foot of the magnificent Table Mountain, centres on the V&A Waterfront. A working harbour, the V&A Waterfront offers everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, and a variety of restaurants to theatres, live music and museums.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the New Seven Wonders of Nature. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views. Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the Houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by AngloGold Ashanti, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts. Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour. There are also trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant. Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891. The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch on the slopes of Table Mountain was built from granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, Prime Minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896. The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100 hectares (ha) reserve of indigenous flora and fauna. Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailors' friend Able Seaman Just Nuisance stands at Jubilee Square.

Hout Bay is renowned for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and seabird sanctuary. The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds of 400 different species.

Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfers' paradise and hosts an international windsurfing event. Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos. Canal Walk in the suburb of Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes. The Monkey Town Primate Centre is home to over 200 individual primates and is located east of Somerset West on the N2. Strawberry-picking in Cape Town on the Mooiberge Strawberry Farm is available in season, which begins in November.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62 – the world's longest wine route. The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours. Stellenbosch is the oldest town in South Africa. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country.

The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the mid-19th centuries. The Stellenbosch Toy and Miniature Museum houses a collection of 1:12 scale miniatures such as room boxes, miniature houses, antique dolls, cars and cuddly toys.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. Supervised pony and cart rides for children are available on the lawns of the Spier Estate. There is also a horse-carriage tour and equestrian centre for older children.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843. Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate the arrival in 1688 of the Huguenots who were predominantly French.

In April each year, the region hosts the South African Cheese Festival. Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the Vignerons de Franschhoek Wine Route. There is also an annual book/literary festival in Franschhoek. Butterfly World, one of the more unique attractions of the Western Cape winelands, consists of a tropical garden in a 1 000 m2 greenhouse. The Giraffe House Wildlife Awareness Centre comprises 15 ha and focuses mainly on African wildlife. Giraffe House provides a place for people to enjoy a picnic in the fresh air, while experiencing and learning about animals and conservation.

The Drakenstein Lion Park was established as a sanctuary for lions born in captivity. The Jonkershoek Nature Reserve, which includes the smaller Assegaaibosch Nature Reserve, is near Stellenbosch, comprising the Jonkershoek Mountains and portions of the upper Jonkershoek Valley. The reserve stretches over 9 800 ha and its rugged terrain is ideal for hiking. Assegaaibosch is much smaller and is suitable for shorter walks and picnics.

At Le Bonheur Estate, visitors can experience guided croc-pond tours, which lead across open dams via rampways. Over 1 000 crocodiles are housed in these dams. Visitors can touch a baby crocodile and, during summer months, witness them being fed. Paarl is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos supports many south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and orange-breasted sunbird. The Afrikaans Language Monument is on the slopes of Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum (Language Museum) is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa Mountains on its eastern border. Wellington is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry. Experience life as the pioneers did in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the ochre San rock art trail is a must for nature lovers. De Doorns lies in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Bonnievale, on the Breede River, features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, as well as birdwatching and riverboating.

Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, and roses, Robertson is known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses". It is known for its connoisseurquality wines and its thoroughbred horses. Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Little Karoo. Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon Springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by well-known cartoonist Thomas Ochse Honiball. The picturesque village of Gouda is known for the Parrotts Den pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a variety of charming thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous fruit farming area. Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies Rawsonville, known for its award-winning wines.

Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the beautiful Slanghoek Valley with its lush vineyards and panoramic views or relax in the mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

Garden Route

The Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of the southern coast, incorporating a stretch of coastline that includes Mossel Bay, George, Wilderness, Sedgefield, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay and Nature's Valley – each with its own charm and attractions. Famed for its lush greenery and the vast Tsitsikamma Forest, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the Pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-biking trails. Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas.

Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum. At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour. At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skincare products. Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The Saint Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern coastline of the Western Cape. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex. Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale watching and dolphin watching along the extensive coast.

The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811, when George was laid out. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the southern hemisphere. George is popular among golfers and is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Visitors can board the Power Van at the Outeniqua Transport Museum and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus. The Big Tree at Woodville, an Outeniqua yellowwood, is estimated to be around 850 years old. It is located about 40 km outside of George in the direction of Knysna.

The George Airport, Outeniqua Pass, railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo.

Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests.

The Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species, is popular among birdwatchers. Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse riding, hiking, angling and birdwatching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches. This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird.

The abundant fynbos and forest settings host over 200 species. Knysna is also famous for its delectable homegrown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival, a celebration of the good life, has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape.

An eclectic mix of art galleries presents the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer. Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boatbased whale watching, blackwater tubing, hiking, as well as forest and cycling trails. The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town.

The annual Klein-Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in the town. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the Cango Caves, a series of subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the cave features magnificent dripstone formations.

Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers. Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public.

The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra. Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with its gravel roads is also worth a visit.

De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69-m waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladysmith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Little Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves. Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest water wheel in the country, the Old Water Mill.

Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley. At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land is five times the size of Great Britain. Here, visitors will find the Earth's largest variety of succulents. Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, Professor Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. The Karoo National Park, on the town's doorstep, is home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit. Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour.

The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum. Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise. Laingsburg, a tiny village that was devastated by floods about a century after it was established, was rebuilt afterwards. It is the best place to study the geology of the region. Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg Mountains.

It is the ideal place to sample Karoo cuisine, see examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s and enjoy several scenic drives. The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (literally white lightning, also known as "firewater" in the local parlance). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg Mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of outstanding beauty and contrast. The coast's scenic beauty is matched only by culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela Current's cold waters.

In April every year, Lambert's Bay has the Crayfish and Cultural Festival. The area is not only a birder's paradise, but every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July. Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide. Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a popular tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other seabirds.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant display of colour. The Swartland region is known for its wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities. Further north, visitors encounter the Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with its wealth of indigenous succulent plants. The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine

cellars. The entertainment venue "Evita se Perron" is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top performances by South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walkabout. The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars. Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Birdwatching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-biking trails, canoeing and waterskiing at the Misverstand Dam are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces. Langebaan, a popular holiday destination, is home to the West Coast National Park. An internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, the park attracts thousands of visitors each year. The oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were also discovered here.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September. Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse build on the South African coast.

The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to a variety of seabird species. Saldanha is a water sport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Visitors can enjoy fishing (snoek in season), hiking as well as whale watching and birdwatching. Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation. The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town. Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February).

The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second highest in the Western Cape. The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders. At Velddrif/ Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bokkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Cooperative is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. World-renowned Rooibos tea is also produced here.

The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites and an arts and crafts market. Annually, scores of skydiving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days. The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveldhuisie is an example of a typical Sandveld dwelling. The

Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the Rooibos and Velskoen factories as well as the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt. Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among water sport enthusiasts. Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

The town, which is well-known for its Rooibos and Buchu production, has added one more attraction to its tourism offerings – the Cederberg Donkey Cart Route. The project entails a three-day tour through the Cederberg Mountain area and Heuningvlei, with accommodation facilities for overnight visitors.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit cooperative. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest cooperative wine cellar under one roof in the southern hemisphere. The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a panoramic view of the ocean. Klawer was named after the wild clover that grows in the area. During the flower season, the area is a symphony of colour. The Doring River features hiking trails and opportunities for river-rafting. Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-tonne deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. The Troe Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for history enthusiasts.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa east of Cape Town, lies the Overberg. The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooi Els. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin off Africa. South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by the UNESCO in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg Mountains near Grabouw. Hermanus is a popular holiday resort and famous for the best land-based whale watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been

proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area. Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale watching. The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach. Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services. The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument. Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum.

The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also has the Audrey Blignault Museum.De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the Damara tern and giant tern. The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. The Agulhas National Park is a ruggedly beautiful coastal plain of 20 959 ha.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters cleave into the Indian and Atlantic oceans. The wrecks of some 130-seafaring craft yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, and even modern-day fishing trawlers, have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the southern hemisphere. Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several oxwagons. For outsiders, it was named after the Arniston, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the Southern Right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape Griffon Vulture Colony. The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well-known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture. The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species. Known for its world class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance. Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wildflower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the southern hemisphere. Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738.

The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa. Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845 and was declared a monument in

1994. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

The Theewaterskloof Dam, outside Villiersdorp, is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library. The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas. The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, warm sunny climate, friendly people and hospitality, the Northern Cape is a province with a rich culture heritage.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.

The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum. Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective. Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment. The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works.

The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Pioneers of Aviation Museum near Kimberley Airport houses a replica of the Compton-Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein. A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley.

A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people. Barkley West attracts many water sports enthusiasts and anglers. Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park.

The park is not only home to large raptors, but also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors can view a worked-out manganese mine. Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural

sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water per day.

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman features the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built as well as several other historic buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible. The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. Explorer David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment. The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.

The Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The Roaring Sands site on the farm Doornaar, near Groblershoop, is a popular tourist attraction. Its high sand dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas 11 waterwheels are still used. Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River. At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest.

The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town.

Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

The Kalahari Desert SpeedWeek is an annual eight-day speed festival held in a far north-western corner of South Africa. It is a motorsport event where anybody is welcome to enter, and anything with an engine is eligible. Over the years, the event has also become a meeting place for all sorts of eccentric machinery and people.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m2 of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-ha sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

Namaqualand

The Namas are the indigenous people of Namaqualand. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf. Namaqualand is famous for an annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert.

The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they appeared. The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy this show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg. Since diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay has become known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade. Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season. Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve is open only during the flower season. The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises more than 15 000 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4 trail, as well as several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ai-Ais Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and the South African National Parks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns. The town features one of the country's last working horse mills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norval's Pont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery.

Colesberg has bred many of the country's top Merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses. De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. Author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather. The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai, near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill. Vanderkloof, built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam, was turned into a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom hydro-electric power station within the dam's wall. The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near Brandvlei lies Verneukpan where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929. Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood. The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few km outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein palaeo-surface. Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old. Sutherland, birthplace of Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw, well-known Afrikaans author and poet, is also known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope, are in Sutherland. The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland. The Tankwa Karoo National Park, on the southern border of the Northern Cape, 70 km west of Sutherland, encompasses the Succulent Karoo Biome, the world's only arid hotspot, stretches 116 000 km² from the south-western Cape into southern Namibia.

The landscape offers seasonal contrasts of coloured wild flowers and stark desert, set against the backdrop of the Roggeveld Escarpment to the east, Klein Roggeveld to the south and the Cederberg to the west. Its extensive desert plateaus are ideal for viewing game such as gemsbok, Cape mountain zebra, springbuck and bustards.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Bloemfontein

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the provincial legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad Skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring. The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36.5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research

library contains an extensive collection of Africana. The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and is a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events. The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's Game Reserve is a unique attraction. Naval Hill is the biggest game reserve completely surrounded by a city. Bloemfontein hosts the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known the MACUFE, in September every year. The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis are also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand. The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of the area. There is an Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100 km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa. Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry. The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State.

Afountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite resting place for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

Snowcapped mountains and beautiful scenery provide a backdrop to this pristine area. Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area. Clarens is often described as the "Jewel of the Free State", owing to its exceptionally beautiful scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area. Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti Mountains and follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south.

The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork. Ficksburg is known for its asparagus and cherry farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho. Rosendal, surrounded by the Witte Mountains, celebrated its centenary in 2011.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its impressive sandstone cliffs and rock formations, is a popular holiday destination.

The birdwatching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel

constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem, which lies on the banks of the Jordaan River, was founded by the Voortrekkers in the 1840s. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve. This is a sanctuary for birds and small game. The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m "flat mountain", is the town's landmark. The Harrismith Mountain Race, well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain. Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing. An open-water swimming race takes place there annually.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region. The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal. Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights. The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface. Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route.

The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings. Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated nearby.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer. Parys, situated on the banks of the Vaal River, offers tourists a tranquil river retreat. The nearby Vrederfort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It is the only world heritage site in the Free State. It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 bird types and a variety of small mammals.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game that has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline with its open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Mountain region

The Amatola Mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort. Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart where trout fishing, hiking, riding and birdwatching are among the attractions. The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth) is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. It also hosts the annual Buoy open-water swim and the Isuzu National Sailing Week held annually in April in Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle, in New Brighton, was designed to be a monument to South Africa's Struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

Bay World has an oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens. These include: St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Gqeberha Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of the Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba, birdwatching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-biking and horseriding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships. Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore. 3

The entire region is the home of a major section of the isiXhosaspeaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of former President Nelson Mandela. In Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure through a display reflecting

the life and times of Mandela. Mandela received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors. To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa people call this place Izi Khaleni ("Place of Thunder"). During high tide, the waves break through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

East Grigualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele Mountains. The original town hall, built in 1910, is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library, built in 1907, is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds. The southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges lie in East Griqualand.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history. The Owl House in Nieu-Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urguhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, which is of major scientific importance. To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley. The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion. The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and their population stands at about 300. Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art. Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Smithfield, Barkly East, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp, Queenstown and Rhodes.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of beaches. Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Makhanda (previously Grahamstown) is sometimes referred to as the "City of Saints" due to the more than 40 churches in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually.

During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and crafts people fuse in a celebration of creative energy. Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest post box in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Makhanda, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve has abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland. There are several historic forts and remains from the frontier wars located in the area. East London, which forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality, is South Africa's only river port city. It was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William's Town. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles. There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word "tsitsikamma" is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tsetsesa" meaning "clear", and "gami" meaning "water". South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests crisscrossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few

may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, after which the Otter Trail is named. Another popular adventure is a blackwater tubing experience on the Storms River.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed. Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve has one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves. The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection. The Makapansgat Caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in the country. The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. Bela Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of The Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures. Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Northern Sotho Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, as well as preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. Polokwane offers a variety of museums and art galleries, including the Bakone Malapa Museum, the Polokwane Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic Museum. Zion City at Moria, near Polokwane, is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe archaeological site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site.

Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros. The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and

depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852. Also, worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Lekgameetse Nature Reserve in the northern foothills of the Drakensberg is part of the Cloud Mountain Biosphere. This 18 000 ha nature reserve is well known for its abundant butterflies.

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Makobo Constance Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species Encephalartos transvenosus, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, yielded the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain-climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve, enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknog and the Injaka Dam at Bushbuckridge.

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors. A number of game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, situated in the transition zone between the Kalahari and the Lowveld.

Home to the Big Five, the park offers a wide variety of accommodation and is close to popular attractions such as Sun City and only a two/three-hour drive from Johannesburg. The park has an area of approximately 550 km², making it the fourth largest park in South Africa supporting more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

Central district

The historic route of Mahikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mahikeng Museum. The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails. Ottosdal is in the centre of North West. It was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Korannafontein in 1913 and named after its owner, Gerhardus Petrus Otto. It is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone", or pyrophyllite, is found

and mined. The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province. Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuil. In the Garden of Remembrance are graves of soldiers killed during the war.

The Old Farmhouse built in 1910 houses a unique African collection. The Old Watermill built around 1860 is a national monument. The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42.2-km, 21.1-km and 10-km races and a 5-km fun run.

San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

Eastern district

Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting. The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is on the banks of the dam. Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre (formerly the De Wildt Cheetah Breeding and Research Centre) specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species. Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. The Taung Skull Fossil Site is an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site. This region is popular with adventure seekers – especially those who enjoy 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. Hot-air balloon trips, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available.

The reserve has the second-largest elephant population in South Africa and guests are assured of sighting not only the Big Five but also the elusive cheetah and endangered wild dog.

Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, water sports and an artificial beach. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River. The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp, where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – "The Place Where the Sun Rises" – epitomises every traveller's dream of the true African experience. Located in the northeastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Eswatini to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the Middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Attractions range from game viewing and birdwatching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences. Historical sites and cultural villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

Ndebele bead work and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld. The different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history and cultures.

Mbombela

Mbombela is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld. The Mbombela Historical Trail is an hour-long walking route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Mbombela Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region. Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala Caves and the PR Owen Dinosaur Park.

The tranquil town of White River to the north of Mbombela is well known as an artist's haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park. Rottcher Wineries have taken advantage of the area's prime production of oranges to make a truly unique wine, which has been a hallmark of the area for over 50 years.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of floodwater.

The Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.

The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region. Kaapsehoop is a historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age. The Lydenburg Heads, human-like masks dating back to 500 AD, were discovered in this area. Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular mountain-biking destination.

The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit. The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February. Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities.

This area was the setting for Jock of the Bushveld, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold-mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago. Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly fishers. It is in the pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major drawcard.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom, one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes. The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers gamewatching, boating and fishing. Many hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork. This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology. The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossom in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the San paintings embossed in some rocks. The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument

of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Grass and wetlands

Grass and wetlands are a paradise with their variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface. There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20 km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the commercial powerhouse of the country, but its offerings are not limited to commerce and industry. Anchored by the cities of Johannesburg and Pretoria, Gauteng provides plenty in the way of entertainment through its network of upmarket shopping malls, casinos, street markets, theatres, restaurants, museums and parks.

Gauteng is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets. Although Gauteng is the most populated, built-up and industrialised province, it still has natural areas offering a variety of leisure activities such as day hikes, picnic spots and sports activities.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km2 and is a popular venue for water sports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species. Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation.

The broader 47 000-ha Cradle of Humankind site has many caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves. In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a world heritage site. About 40% of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils.

A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area during ongoing work. The famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2.5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3.3 million years old, were discovered at the Sterkfontein Caves near Krugersdorp.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds. The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70-m high waterfall and a breeding pair of black eagles.

Some 40 km north of Pretoria is a ring of hills 1 km in diameter and 100-m high. These are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater, left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. There is a museum adjacent to this site. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan has developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg. Here, visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and other places of historic interest.

The Absa Money Museum lies in downtown Johannesburg. Historical records stretch all the way back to the beginnings of Johannesburg, and displays ranges from fairly early money forms, like cowrie shells and Venetian glass beads, through to gold coins recovered from sunken ships. The scientific study of money and its history, or Numismatics, is the essence of the museum's displays.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa. Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs. A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre. Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid. Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, which offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant. The James Hall Museum of Transport was founded in 1964 and houses an historical collection of various modes of land transport used in South Africa, dating back 400 years.

The South African Museum of Military History holds an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars. The two-bedroom house where Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown, Soweto, is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955. The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Pieterson Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Soweto Uprising of 16 June 1976. The Nelson Mandela Foundation's Centre of Memory is open to the public as a place of memory-sharing and reflection on the life and times of former President Mandela.

At the Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg, visitors can families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice. The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings is found in the city, such as the Union Buildings, which celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It is the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day. In December 2013, a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.

Church Square is built around a statue of the former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, Paul Kruger, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history. The 35-ha site comprises a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who contributed to the country's freedom and development. The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger. Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer War/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include milking, butter- and candle-making, bread-baking and coffee-bean grinding. Other museums include the South African Air Force Museum, Police Museum, Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed. Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silverware and porcelain. Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises. The General Smuts House Museum in Irene in the southeast of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family home.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, large number of game, including rhino, hippo and many bird species. The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents. Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show. The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, which is the largest in the southern hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

The garden province of South Africa, KwaZulu-Natal, is a subtropical region of lush and well-watered valleys, washed by the warm Indian Ocean. One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of

Eswatini and Mozambique to the north. History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and game viewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts.

Durban and surroundings

The city of Durban, overlooking Africa's busiest seaport, is warm and inviting. It is not only South Africa's domestic tourism leader, but is also popular among visitors from throughout Africa and the rest of the world who seek a unique blend of vibrancy, sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement in a beautiful setting.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains. The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings. Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbour.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument. The Juma Musjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the southern hemisphere. Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile and Dolphin Mile open-water swimming events, the July Handicap horserace and the Amashova-shova cycle tour. Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April.

The KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and has rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Walk-in aviaries hold many varieties of indigenous and exotic birds.

The maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa, are in the Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff.

North Coast

Throughout the year, frolicking dolphins and impressive seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast". The rarely seen larger humpback dolphins are also found here.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's

markets, mosques and temples give it an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples. Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, KwaDukuza, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Zululand's north-east quadrant, between Mozambique, Eswatini and the warm Indian Ocean, has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th-century king who established dominion here some 200 years before King Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south.

The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant. The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of South Africa's largest game parks. Visitors should look out for the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is known as "The Valley of Zulu Kings". A joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that supports the Big Five of the animal kingdom. At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and was reconstructed. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced. Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and birdwatching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. St Lucia is the only town in the world that is surrounded by a natural world heritage area.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system. uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo Mountains before serving as a natural boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Eswatini, now also has an interpretation centre. Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km2. Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba divers throughout the year, and in summer, power boaters arrive for some of the best marlin fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and a variety of fun activities and attractions for the whole family.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Birdlife, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, is prolific. There is also a variety of mammals and a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward offers safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, birdlife and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Nature's annual extravaganza, the unforgettable sardine run, strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers await the arrival of the game fish following the sardines.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

Pietermaritzburg has various museums, including the Msunduzi Museum that depicts the heritage of different cultural groups of KwaZulu-Natal, a replica Hindu Shiva temple and a beautiful herb garden, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Birdwatching, horse riding and hiking are also popular activities. The Howick Falls are in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers. Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and powerboating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabited by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile attracted 18 000 swimmers in 2013.

Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahlamba- Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered bearded vulture. The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal KwaZulu-Natal National Park in the north. Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. There are trout hatcheries in the Kamberg Reserve area and at Cathedral Peak.

Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout-fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum. The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The nearby Swamp Nature Reserve attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane. The Ndedema Gorge in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak has examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. The top section is only passable in 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup Hiking Trail, starting at the

250

foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest.

Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is worth a visit. Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela Falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa. The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe. Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and water sports can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Powerboating and carp fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok, Maiuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage are other interesting places to visit.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve. Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including the Ncome-Blood River. Isandlwana. Rorke's Drift and Talana.

The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, and local Zulu, Boer and British history. Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum

Top 10 reasons to visit South Africa:

- Affordable In South Africa, you can afford luxury and still have spending money for shopping and other treats.
- Natural beauty South Africa's scenic wonders are legendary. From Table Mountain to God's Window, the mountains, forests, coasts and deserts will sooth your soul and delight you.
- · World-class facilities You will find it easy to get around, find a comfortable place to stay and have a great meal.
- Adventure With over 130 adventures, there is something for everyone from mountain walks to shark-cage diving.
- · Good weather In sunny South Africa, with great weather, you can enjoy the outdoors, play golf year-round and take advantage of the nearly 3 000 km of coastline.
- Rainbow Nation The Rainbow Nation celebrates all its African and immigrant cultures. South Africans are known for their friendliness and hospitality.
- Diverse experiences Go almost anywhere in South Africa and experience the ultimate combination of nature, wildlife, culture, adventure, heritage and good vibe.
- · Wildlife The abundant and diverse wildlife include the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).
- Freedom Struggle Discover a nation's Struggle for freedom whilst following the footsteps of Nelson Mandela, Hector Pieterson





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Transport

Fransport

Transport

Transport is an essential part of the development of any country. The primary role of transport is to provide and improve access to different locations for businesses and individuals, for both freight and people movements. For the business sector, this involves connections between businesses and their suppliers, between businesses and other businesses, and between businesses and their markets. For the household sector, transport provides people with access to work, schools and shops. It connects them to social, recreational, community and medical facilities for personal and leisure activities.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 identifies the legislative responsibilities of different spheres of government with regard to all modes of transport and its associated infrastructure. The Department of Transport (DoT) is responsible for the legislation and policies for rail, pipelines, roads, airports, ports and the intermodal operations of public transport and freight. The department conducts sector research, formulates legislation and policy to set the strategic direction of subsectors, assigns responsibilities to public entities, regulates through setting norms and standards, and monitors implementation.

The work of the DoT contributes to the realisation of the vision of improved social and economic development articulated in the National Development Plan (NDP), Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

Over the medium term, the department will focus on intensifying its efforts to improve mobility and access to social and economic activities by cultivating an enabling environment for the maintenance of national and provincial road networks, the improvement and integration of road-based public transport services, and the modernisation of passenger rail infrastructure. Total transfers and subsidies account for an estimated 97.8% (R222.8 billion) of the epartment's planned expenditure over the period ahead, increasing at an average annual rate of 7.7%.

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey of 2021, about 33,6% of South African households had at least one household member who used a minibus taxi/sedan taxi/bakkie taxi during the week preceding the survey.

The use of minibus taxi was most common in Gauteng (41,3%) and KwaZulu-Natal (38,3%). By comparison, 3,7% of South African households used a bus during the preceding week. It is notable that 10,5% of households in Mpumalanga used the bus. Only 0,2% of households used trains.

Maintaining South Africa's roads

The Road Transport programme facilitates activities related to the maintenance of the country's national and provincial road network. The national road maintenance backlog has grown over the years, partly due to the shifting of funds from non-toll roads to more economically viable toll roads. R76.4 billion goes to the South African National Roads Agency to upgrade, strengthen and maintain the national road network.

Over the MTEF period, 59.3% (R45.3 billion) of allocations to the agency to upgrade, strengthen and refurbish the national non-toll roads network, R2.8 billion is allocated for the R573 (Moloto Road) development corridor, R3.7 billion for the N2 Wild Coast project, and

R2.1 billion is allocated to fund reduced tariffs for the Gauteng freeway improvement project. Transfers to the agency account for 33.5% the department's budget over the medium term and 65.5% of the budget of the Road Transport programme.

The maintenance of provincial roads is largely funded through the provincial roads maintenance grant: road maintenance component, which is allocated R37.4 billion over the MTEF period. Provinces are expected to use the grants to rehabilitate 8 277 lane kilometres, reseal 11 217 lane kilometres, regravel 16 605 kilometres and blacktop-patch 5.4 million square kilometres.

Factors such as the condition of roads, weather patterns and traffic volume determine grant allocations for the maintenance of provincial roads. To ensure that investment in and maintenance of the provincial road network is appropriately prioritised, R65 million is reprioritised over the medium term from the grant to finance the preparation and acquisition of a central roads data repository that will provide a comprehensive and uniform overview of the state of South Africa's provincial roads.

Facilitating integrated road-based public transport networks

This will cover issues relating to an inclusive funding model for buses and taxis, roll out of integrated public transport networks (IPTNs), integrated ticketing solutions for road and rail-based subsidised public transport, and scholar transport.

Some of the key elements for engagement include demographic, geographic, economic and technological trends that affect travel demand across all modes, and how those impact on the ability of our people to access economic opportunities and essential social amenities.

The desired outcome is to achieve seamless integration of all modal public transport operations that will ultimately ensure that the system is efficient, affordable, safe and reliable. Public transport should, thus play a critical role as a driver of economic activity and an enabler of economic output.

Another aspect is to remove the duplication of services and focus on integration, so that there are sufficient, universally accessible services to all locations. This means that where the private sector or a state-sponsored service is running, all passengers must be able to use the service, and not duplicate, particularly in Gauteng. Province, municipalities, state-owned entities and the private sector must coordinate their transport response to achieve an integrated system.

The Public Transport Network Grant funds the infrastructure and indirect costs of bus rapid transit services in Johannesburg, Tshwane, Cape Town, George, Nelson Mandela Bay, Ekurhuleni and Limpopo. In these cities and regions, funding from the grant is expected to lead to a combined increase in the number of weekday passenger trips on bus rapid transit services from 216 214 in 2021/22 to 331 275 in 2024/25.

To facilitate this increase, transfers to the grant are set to increase at an average annual rate of 14.3%, from R5.2 billion in 2021/22 to R7.7 billion in 2024/25.

The public transport operations grant, which subsidises the operations of bus services in provinces, is expected to increase from R7.1 billion in 2021/22 to R7.7 billion in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 2.8%. Together, these grants represent an estimated 18.7% (R42.7 billion) of the department's planned spending over the MTEF period

Addressing passenger rail challenges

Inefficient investments in, and the deferred maintenance and insufficient safeguarding of South Africa's rail infrastructure has resulted in the rapid deterioration of the passenger rail network and its services. As part of recognising that their recovery is key to providing affordable, safe and reliable public transport services, transfers to the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa in the Rail Transport programme account for an estimated 27.1% (R61.7 billion) of the department's budget over the period ahead.

These funds will be used to focus on repairs and maintenance as part of the agency's rolling stock fleet renewal programme, and improved security. As a result, capital transfers to the agency are expected to increase at an average annual rate 11.5%, from R9.7 billion in 2021/22 to R13.5 billion 2024/25. Operational transfers are expected to increase more moderately at an average annual rate of 4.3%, from R6.9 billion in 2021/22 to R7.9 billion in 2024/25, as more commuter lines come online.

Safety as an enabler of service delivery

Safety and security remain the DoT's top strategic and organisational goal. Each mode has its own safety posture, but common themes cross all modes. These include the need to work effectively with all spheres of government, address human behaviours, employ lifesaving infrastructure counter-measures, improve safety data analysis, ensure innovative measures that bring safety benefits, and pursue performance-based rather than prescriptive regulations.

Multiple factors contribute to transport-related fatalities and serious injuries. Successfully addressing such complex, multi-faceted safety challenges requires a comprehensive and system-wide approach to deploy safety counter-measures, programmes, and activities in a coordinated manner with multiple stakeholders. This approach must be informed by verifiable transport systems data that document transport incidences and accidents, serious injuries, and fatalities.

This area will cover all safety issues across the four modes of transport (road, rail, civil aviation and maritime), including safety of public transport; and applicable interventions that will be designed and employed to address such. The DoT's desired outcome will be to reduce all transport-related incidences and accidents, which will ultimately lead to a significant reduction in injuries and fatalities.

Infrastructure build that stimulates economic growth and job creation

The declining condition of infrastructure reduces the country's economic competitiveness and the citizen's quality of life. The situation is particularly severe in our roads, as shown by worsening traffic congestions in urban and peri-urban areas.

Repairing and modernising transport infrastructure must be a national priority to ensure continued economic growth, and to preserve freedom of movement and quality of life.

Targeted investments are needed to preserve mobility and accessibility of the traveling public and freight movements. Investment in maintaining, rehabilitating, upgrading and expanding infrastructure has not kept pace with growing needs.

As a result, the country's highways, ports and waterways, airport and air traffic facilities, and passenger rail facilities face growing maintenance and modernisation needs.

Fransport

The DoT intends to improve the durability and lifespan of key strategic transport infrastructure, as well as maintain existing infrastructure to ensure that it is in a state of good repair.

Development and implementation of an integrated public transport network (IPTN) model in rural provinces

The National Guideline Framework for the development of integrated public transport plans provides a set of planning steps for district municipalities to use in formulating the rural district IPTNs. A process of formulating operational plans and designing of an integrated public transport system has been outlined to provide technical assistance in this regard.

The Rural Transport Strategy promotes the IPTN approach in districts that have higher densities of population. The system links rural settlements and district towns that have a concentration of economic activities and resulting in higher level of transport demand. The IPTN is aligned with the Municipal Spatial Development Framework because there is a spatial relationship between residential areas and economic activities.

Over the MTSF, the DoT plans to develop ten IPTN plans in line with the District Development Model (DDM). The purpose of District Municipality IPTN plans is to intensify the provision of integrated transport infrastructure and public transport services, and also to promote modal integration. IPTNs also strive to balance the public transport supply and demand, with the added outcome of reduced congestion on the road.

The Rural Transport Implementation Framework, which is also linked to the DDM, embodies the principles of the differentiated approach that guides targeted infrastructure investment to areas with proven potential for economic development. As a result, areas that do not qualify for the development and implementation of the IPTNs will benefit from the implementation of the ITPs with basic infrastructure provision. The provision of public transport services will be strengthened through better coordination, planning and management of public transport operations.

Sustainable solution on e-tolls

World-class road infrastructure is essential to the implementation of the NDP and other key government programmes. It is, therefore, critical to create policy and legal certainty about the future of the toll road system and the user-pay principle to ensure that the SANRAL continues to meet its infrastructure mandate, its ability to raise capital on the bond market, improve its credit ratings and meet its debt obligations.

With the decision on the Gauteng Freeway Improvement Project still outstanding by mid-2021, a number of options have already been considered. The DoT will continue to engage with National Treasury to ensure that the final decision made is sustainable and in the best interest of South Africans.

In relation to this, the DoT will, in the medium term, embark on the process of developing the Road Infrastructure Funding Policy to ensure that South Africa has a lasting solution to continued divergent stances around the toll road system and the user-pay principle.

Taxi industry formalisation and professionalisation

The mandate of the Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP) dealt solely with the scrapping of old minibus taxi vehicles across the country with the overarching objective being the improvement of road safety by removing unroadworthy minibus taxis from the roads of South Africa.

The process involved the scrapping process and facilitation of an upgrade in the fleet of new TRP-compliant vehicles through a scrapping allowance paid directly to taxi operators. By 2021, a total of 77 971 of the initial target of 135 894 minibus taxis had been successfully scrapped.

A review of the TRP was conducted towards the end of the term resulting in the launch of the Revised TRP in 2019. The Revised TRP thus introduced key value-add elements to encourage sustainable continuity to the programme. As part of the Revised TRP, the scrapping allowance was increased from R91 000 to R124 000 per scrapped old taxi. Over the medium, and as part of the extended scope of the Revised TRP, the following will be prioritised:

- Commercialisation: the development of sustainable commercially viable Revised TRP management solutions leveraging and exploiting opportunities available in the minibus taxi industry's value chain. These will include affordable supply of new taxi vehicles, finance, short-term insurance, spare parts, repairs, fuel, lubricants, electronic fare collection and property management.
- Illegal operations and verification process: a national survey on the extent of illegal taxi operations across the country will be conducted and a comprehensive database of minibus taxi industry operators will be developed.
- Change management and unity: the Revised TRP will be used as a catalyst for change to the taxi industry's operating model, through the introduction of collaborative ownership, cooperatives and corporatisation.

Road transport safety and security

Motor vehicle accidents have proven to have a negative effect on socio-economic development in the country. South Africa has one of the highest vehicle accident mortality rates in the world. A comparative analysis of road deaths per 100 000 population indicates a rate of 25.2 for South Africa, which is above the world average of 17.4. Overall, over the past few years, the number of accidents reported has been increasing, while the number of vehicles on the road has also been increasing, although not as much.

South Africa is a participant to the second United Nations Decade of Action (UNDA) for Road Safety 2020 – 2030 and has endorsed the global undertaking seeking to build on the gains of first Decade of Action for Road Safety 2011 – 2020 to promote a coordinated effort towards sustaining the attainment of the road safety goals to save up to five million lives, and to contribute to the prevention of up to 50 million serious injuries by 2030 using 2020 as a baseline.

The high number of road traffic crashes and its associated consequences have a significant impact on South Africans. It hampers socio-economic development and impacts on the well-being of all South Africans. This impact is measured in terms of human lives lost, pain, grief and suffering, as well as an increasing cost to the economy. The extent of the problem is exacerbated when road fatalities and serious injuries are seen in the context of contributing to a significant economic loss for South Africa. People injured or killed on South African roads

are often the breadwinners of their families and thus vital contributors to the economy at large. Cognisant of these facts, South Africa needs to strengthen its resolve to continue working to improve safety on roads by enhancing cooperation and coordination with the spheres of government, and improving stakeholder participation in road safety programmes. The economic and financial analysis emphasise the need to improve road safety in the country to ensure that South Africans can live long, productive lives and that fiscal resources may be made available to aid the country's further development.

The National Road Safety Strategy (NRSS) sets a new path for creating a safe and secure road environment in South Africa. The primary strategic target of the strategy is to ultimately reduce fatal crashes by 50% by 2030. The strategy is based on a safe system approach that looks at a holistic view of the road transport system and interactions among roads, and roadsides, travel speed, vehicles and the road user. In accordance with the UNDA, the pillars of the strategy that will remain consistent in the NRSS are road safety management, safer roads and mobility, safer vehicles, safer road users and post-crash response.

The strategy has also taken into consideration previous efforts made towards addressing road safety problems in South Africa, by carefully reviewing previous road safety strategies. Key findings of these strategies highlight a lack of effective implementation, insufficient resourcing, misaligned prioritisation, and lack of broader stakeholder participation among the key issues previously experienced. As such, the NRSS focuses on sequencing of proposed interventions in a manner that is realistic and implementable.

Recognising that the battle to improve road safety cannot be won unless all stakeholders played their role and took responsibility for their own safety, community-based structures have also been established in all provinces to improve civil society participation in road safety. Also noting that road crashes affect young people between the ages of 18 and 35 in large numbers, engagements continue to be held with the youth to empower them to be advocates for their own cause and to re-shape the South African road safety landscape.

Over the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), greater focus will be put on road safety education, engineering and law enforcement. Effective evaluation mechanisms will also be put in place to ensure the effectiveness, efficiency and impact of government programmes. The target set is to reduce road fatalities by 25% during the medium term.

Maritime Safety and Security

Maritime safety and security assist the industry to operate in a safe environment and provide a conducive environment to do business. Merchant ships operate in a hostile environment and certainty in terms of policy direction is important. The Comprehensive Maritime Transport Policy (CMTP) encourages stakeholders to support its initiatives as they assist with promoting shipping.

The attack against ships and other forms of criminal activities are a concern for the industry. These challenges must be addressed hence the National Maritime Security Strategy. South Africa must jealously guard against any form of pollution to its waters. It is important to have initiatives that will ensure that South African waters remain safe and secure from all forms of pollution.

To this effect, the development and application of risk assessment and management techniques to maritime safety and security must

consider the complex regulatory and operational context in which the maritime industry operates. The DoT will thus strive to create a fit-for-conditions safety and security platform that will outline current concerns, provide 'fit-for-purpose' tools and management mechanisms, and enable focused operational programmes aimed at building capacity and critical mass.

Over the medium term, the DoT will focus on ensuring 100% compliance with the International Ship and Port Facility Security (ISPS) Code. The code, developed in response to the perceived threat to ships and ports after the 9/11 attacks, encompasses a set of measures to enhance security of ships and port facilities. It is part of the Safety of Life at Sea Convention and compliance is mandatory for South Africa as part of the contracting parties to the convention.

As part of ensuring compliance to the ISPS Code, the department will focus mainly on addressing the 'stowaway' problem, which seems to be an ever-present phenomenon for the shipping industry. Stringent measures will be put in place to ensure that no unauthorised personnel are able to gain access to vessels, and that all those who have been authorised to board disembark before sailing.

The DoT will aim to reduce stowaways by addressing inadequacies in security and watch keeping. Stringent measures will be put in place to ensure that no unauthorised personnel are able to gain access to vessels, and that all those who have been authorised to board disembark before sailing.

In line with the implementation of the national strategic plan to end gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF) in the country, the development of a monitoring system for GBVF in the maritime sector will enable support and the protection of women at sea. There is ample evidence which suggests that investing in women is the most effective way to lift communities, companies and even countries. It is reported that countries with more gender equality have better economic growth and the evidence is clear that equality for women means progress for all.

Legislation

For cross-modal functions of public transport and freight, the DoT is guided by the following legislation and policies:

- The Transport Laws and Related Matters Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 3 of 2013), aims, among other things, to amend the Cross-Border Road Transport Agency to collect toll on behalf of the SANRAL.
- The National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009), clarifies
 the concurrent roles and responsibilities of the different spheres
 of government in relation to public transport. It also consolidates
 public transport planning, service delivery, regulation and
 monitoring in the municipal sphere, establishes the national and
 provincial public transport regulators, and enhances overall
 transport regulatory functions.
- The incorporation of the Shosholoza Meyl train service and the Autopax long-distance bus services into the PRASA was finalised in the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 38 of 2008).
- The National Road Traffic Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 64 of 2008) and the Cross-Border Transport Amendment
- Act, 2008 (Act 12 of 2008), allow for better road-traffic enforcement and improved cross-border regulation.

- The Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1998).
- The Civil Aviation Act, 2009 (Act 13 of 2009), was promulgated to harmonise and rationalise safety and security legislation for aviation to ensure compliance with the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) standards.
- The Air Service Licensing Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 21 of 2008), addresses corporate governance issues relating to the Air Services Licensing Council. The DoT plans to implement the airlift strategy and improve aviation safety and compliance with the standards set by the United States of America Federal Aviation Administration's International Aviation Safety Assessment Programme, and by the ICAO, an organ of the United Nations (UN).
- The Road Accident Fund (RAF) Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 19 of 2005), creates an equitable, affordable and sustainable system for victims of road accidents and their families.
- The RAF (Transitional Provisions) Act, 2012 (Act 15 of 2012), provides for transitional measures regarding certain categories of third parties whose claims were limited to R25 000 under the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996) prior to 1 August 2008.

The DoT has published a revised version of the Road Accident Benefit Scheme (RABS). The Bill proposed that the RABS Administrator replace the RAF. The new regulations, rules and forms were drafted to enable a better understanding of how the proposed scheme would operate in practice.

The RABS Bill provides for a new, no fault benefit scheme and a new administrator. The RABS Bill forms part of an initiative to replace the third-party compensation system currently administered by the RAF with a new scheme that is reasonable, equitable, affordable and sustainable.

Budget

For the 2021/22 financial year, the DoT was allocated R65.4 billion. The department will aim to remain within its ceiling for compensation of employees by managing the number of personnel, which is expected to decrease from 818 in 2021/22 to 750 in 2024/25 through natural attrition and retirement.

Accordingly, expenditure on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of only 0.7%, from R542.6 million in 2021/22 to R555.3 million in 2024/25. This takes into account an allocation of R11.2 million in 2022/23 to augment the shortfall arising from salary adjustments as part of the public sector wage agreement. Spending on goods and services is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.4%, from R851.4 million in 2021/22 to R1.2 billion in 2024/25.

Entities

Air Traffic and Navigation Service (ATNS)

The company is mandated to provide safe, orderly and efficient air traffic navigational and associated services to the air traffic management community, and in accordance with the standards set out by the ICAO. Over the medium term, the company will continue to focus on ensuring air traffic safety and service quality. Air traffic communication is expected to account for 50% (R2.4 billion) of the company's total expenditure over the medium term.

The company offered voluntary severance and early retirement packages in 2021/22 as part of a process to ensure its financial sustainability by rationalising its organisational structure in areas considered to have the least impact on core performance.

As a result, the number of personnel is projected to remain constant at 1 157 over the medium term and spending on compensation of employees is expected to decrease at average annual rate of 2.1%, from R1 billion in 2021/22 to R941.1 million in 2024/25. As a result, total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of just 1.2%, from R1.6 billion in 2021/22 to R1.7 billion in 2024/25.

The company is set to generate 83.6% (R3.8 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through aerodrome, en-route and approach fees. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 12%, from R1.3 billion in 2021/22 to R1.8 billion in 2024/25, as air traffic recovers to pre-pandemic levels.

Airports Company South Africa

The ACSA owns and operates nine of South Africa's principal airports, including OR Tambo International Airport, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport.

The company has not been exempted from the severe effects of the COVID-19 pandemic on the global aviation industry. Major capital programmes have been deferred because of lower than anticipated traffic volumes and availability of funds. To ensure its operational sustainability, the company will focus on reducing capital expenditure in the short term by restricting it to R1 billion per year, and on reviewing its investment strategy to identify ways of monetising non-core investments such as its investment property portfolio and international airport concessions.

The company plans to access banking credit facilities to meet short-term liquidity requirements by borrowing R542 million in 2021/22 and R204 million in 2022/23. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.3%, from R5.8 billion in 2021/22 to R6.4 billion in 2024/25, as the uptake of the voluntary severance packages offered at the onset of the COVID- 19 pandemic continues to contain spending on compensation of employees.

The bulk of expenditure is earmarked for airport infrastructure and asset management, and airport management. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.7%, from R4.8 billion in 2021/22 to R6.7 billion in 2024/25, driven by the expected increase in passenger numbers as air travel recovers from the impact of the pandemic.

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The agency is mandated to advise the Minister of Transport on crossborder road transport policy, regulate access to the market by the freight and passenger industry in respect of cross-border road transport by issuing permits, undertake road transport law enforcement, and play a facilitative role in contributing to the economic prosperity of the region.

Over the medium term, the agency aims to continue to ensure the unimpeded flow of freight and passenger road transport in the region; liberalise market access for cross-border freight road transport; introduce regulated competition for cross-border passenger road transport; reduce operational constraints for the cross-border road transport industry; and empower the cross-border road transport industry to maximise business opportunities and regulate itself to

Fransport

improve safety, security, reliability, quality and the efficiency of services. It plans to conduct 245 843 inspections per year over the MTEF period to enforce cross-border road traffic law.

The agency's total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.6%, from R258.4 million in 2021/22 to R295.5 million in 2024/25, mainly driven by spending on administration, law enforcement, and research and development. These activities account for an estimated 81.8% (R692.1 million) of total expenditure over the medium term.

The agency is self-funded. Its primary source of revenue is permit issue fees, which account for an estimated 67.5% of total revenue over the period ahead, increasing from R175 million in 2020/21 to R200 million in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 4.5%. Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.5%, from R259.3 million in 2021/22 to R296.2 million in 2024/25, as cross-border road transport operator activities recover to pre-pandemic levels.

Driving Licence Card Account

The Driving Licence Card Account is responsible for manufacturing driving licence cards based on orders received from driving licence testing centres across South Africa.

Over the MTEF period, the entity will focus on improving data collection, and design and introduce a new format for driving licence cards. It will also invest in new production machinery to continue to ensure optimal manufacturing productivity. As a result, spending on production and infrastructure is expected to account for 64.3% (R381.2 million) of total expenditure over the medium term.

Total expenditure is expected to decrease from R224.1 million in 2021/22 to R187.4 million in 2024/25 at an average annual rate of 5.8%. This is mainly the result of a sharp increase in demand for driving licence cards in 2021/22 following the expiry of the extended validity of expired cards in response to the COVID-19 pandemic and lockdown.

Production and expenditure are expected to return to pre-pandemic levels over the medium term. Revenue, which the entity generates through the sale of licence cards, is expected to follow a similar trend, decreasing from R271.3 million in 2021/22 to R245.5 million in 2024/25 at an average annual rate of 3.3%.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

The PRASA's primary mandate is to provide rail commuter services within, to and from South Africa in the public interest. The agency also provides long-haul passenger rail and bus services within, to and from South Africa.

Over the medium term, the agency will focus on ensuring the recovery of commuter rail services and modernising its core infrastructure, which includes the replacement of old rolling stock and investment in signalling infrastructure. Accordingly, total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.8%, from R14 billion in 2021/22 to R17.6 billion in 2024/25, with 69.9% (R35 billion) of this spending earmarked for the Metrorail and Mainline Passenger Services programmes. Compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 38.9% (R18.7 billion) of spending over the medium term.

Transfers from the department account for an estimated 86.9% (R66.4 billion) of the agency's total revenue over the medium term. Other sources include the sale of train and bus tickets, rental income

from the leasing of properties, on-board sales and interest earned.

Total revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 22.7%, from R15.5 billion in 2021/22 to R28.7 billion in 2024/25, driven largely by a projected recovery in ticket sales as more commuter lines come back online following the modernisation of core infrastructure.

Ports Regulator of South Africa

The Ports Regulator of South Africa sets tariff increases for the National Ports Authority and regulates the provision of adequate, affordable and efficient port services at South Africa's commercial ports. It also provides dispute resolution, including hearing complaints and appeals under the tribunal programme, which is aimed at ensuring fairness, transparency and competitive practices in the ports sector to ensure equity of access to port facilities and services.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3%, from R42.1 million in 2021/22 to R46 million in 2024/25. Transfers from the department comprise an estimated 97% (R130 million) of projected revenue over the MTEF period. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Railway Safety Regulator

The RSR oversees and promotes safe railway operations by providing an enabling national regulatory framework, while monitoring and enforcing compliance in the rail sector. Its legislative mandate covers all railway operators in South Africa and those of neighbouring countries whose rail operations enter South Africa.

Over the medium term, the regulator will continue to issue safety permits to railway operators based on an established safety management system and conduct annual reviews to assess its own safety improvement plans and safety management reports submitted by operators.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.8%, from R250.2 million in 2021/22 to R279.7 million in 2024/25. The regulator expects to generate 69.8% (R562.2 million) of its revenue over the period ahead through issuing permit fees and the remainder through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Road Accident Fund

The RAF is mandated to compensate South African road users for losses or damages caused by motor vehicle accidents within the borders of the country. The fund receives its revenue from the RAF Fuel Levy, in terms of the Customs and Excise Act, 1964 (Act 91 of 1964).

Due to the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic and associate lockdown on road traffic volumes, less fuel was sold and fuel levy collection decreased. As a result, the value of claims paid by the fund decreased from R96.4 billion in 2018/19 to R49.2 billion in 2021/22, at an average annual rate of 20.1%.

Over the medium term, a change in the settlement policy of loss-of-income claims from lump sum to annuity will see a moderation in the payment of claims to match the fund's pay-as-you-go principle. Accordingly, the value of claims paid out over the MTEF period is expected to increase from R49.2 billion in 2021/22 to R49.3 billion in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 0.8%.

The fund receives its revenue from the road accident fund levy in terms of the Customs and Excise Act (1964). Revenue from transfers received through the fuel levy is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 1.3%, from R44.7 billion in 2021/22 to R46.5 billion in 2024/25, in line with expected growth in fuel sale volumes.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The agency facilitates the adjudication of infringement notices dispensed by various issuing authorities to alleged infringers on South African roads. The act envisages the agency as an independent adjudicator to provide for an administratively fair and just system for road traffic law infringements while also upholding the rights of the alleged infringer.

A high court order in 2021/22 on the constitutionality of the legislation and this entity is yet to be confirmed by the Constitutional Court. Until this happens, the entity must continue to perform its statutory obligations. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.3%, from R453.6 million in 2021/22 to R500.6 million in 2024/25.

The below-inflationary increase is mainly due to the one-off start-up costs in 2021/22 to roll out the AARTO system nationally. As a result, spending on the AARTO rollout programme is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 6.2%, from R205 million in 2021/22 to R168.9 million in 2024/25.

The agency is set to derive 66.3% (R978.8 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period from administrative penalties and 33.7% (R487.8 million) through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC)

The RTMC provides national road traffic strategic planning and law enforcement, and pools public sector resources for the provision of road traffic management.

Over the medium term, the corporation will continue to promote road traffic safety through education and awareness campaigns; improve and manage road traffic data and information through the automation of processes in driving licence testing centres and the maintenance of the electronic national traffic information system; and improve and coordinate road traffic law enforcement.

Accordingly, spending on operations, strategic services, and law enforcement is expected to account for 60.4% (R3 billion) of expenditure over the medium term. Total expenditure is expected to increase from R1.3 billion in 2021/22 to R1.6 billion in 2024/25 at an average annual rate of 7.3%, mainly driven by spending on compensation of employees, which is expected to increase from R620.1 million in 2021/22 to R838.5 million in 2024/25 at an average annual rate of 10.6%. This increase will accommodate the planned hiring of 300 road traffic trainees on 12-month contracts in each year over the medium term.

The corporation is set to derive 64.5% (R3.1 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through transaction fees and 14.7% (R674.3 million) through transfers from the department. Although transfers from the department are expected to increase at an average annual rate of only 1.9%, from R217.3 million in 2021/22 to R230 million in 2024/25, total revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure over the same period.

This is driven mainly by increased transaction fees and new revenue streams as transactions on the electronic national traffic information system (eNATIS) recover to pre-pandemic levels and new online service offerings are introduced such as crash reports and driving licence card deliveries.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The authority promotes, regulates and enforces civil aviation safety and security standards across the aviation industry. Over the medium term, the authority will continue to focus on improving compliance and adherence to the standards and recommended practices of the ICAO.

The authority planned to conduct 229 air safety infrastructure investigations and 1 374 air safety operations inspections per year over the MTEF period. The authority's total expenditure is expected to increase at average annual rate of 10.4%, from R710 million in 2021/22 to R956 million in 2024/25, mainly driven by the implementation of safety and security programmes in line with the standards and recommended practices issued by the International Civil Aviation Organisation.

The authority forecasts capital expenditure of R75 million in 2022/23 for an electronic records and document management system and cybersecurity software; and R195 million over the remainder of the MTEF period to replace flight inspection aircraft and flight calibration equipment.

The authority is set to generate 73% (R2 billion) of its revenue over the medium term through passenger safety charges, user fees and the aviation fuel levy, and 20.8% (R363.4 million) through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

South African Maritime Safety Authority (SAMSA)

The SAMSA promotes South Africa's maritime interests, ensures the safety of life and property at sea, and prevents and combats the pollution of the marine environment. Functions of the authority are also defined as per international maritime conventions to which South Africa is a signatory.

The authority will continue to focus on efforts to ensure maritime safety and prevent pollution over the medium term, with spending on these activities set to account for 69.2% (R1.1 billion) of expenditure over this period. Total expenditure is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.6%, from R541 million in 2021/22 to R531.9 million in 2024/25, mainly because of cost-containment measures, including a planned reduction in the authority's number of personnel from 389 in 2021/22 to 384 in 2024/25.

These measures are intended to mitigate the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on the authority's potential to generate revenue, particularly from safety levies, which are derived from ships operating in South Africa's waters.

The authority generates its revenue from levies, fees and user charges. Total revenue is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.4%, from R542.5 million in 2021/22 to R536.4 million in 2024/25, due to a projected decrease in the number of ships operating in South Africa's waters in line with demand forecasts as the shipping industry continues to deal with delays and congestion at South African ports.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

The SANRAL is responsible for the management of South Africa's national road network, including finance, development, planning, control, operating, design and construction, maintenance and rehabilitation of national roads within the framework of government policy. The agency is responsible for the planning, design, construction, operation, management, control, maintenance and rehabilitation of the South African national road network, including the financing of these functions. This includes toll and non-toll roads.

South Africa has 750 000 km of roads, of which of which 618 081 km are proclaimed. This is the the 10th-longest road network in the world and by far the longest in Africa. The responsibility for administration, planning, funding, construction, maintenance and operations of the road network is a concurrent function between national, provincial and municipal road authorities.

The SANRAL is responsible for managing the national road network, and along with the DoT, plays a key role in influencing policy and setting standards. The agency is currently managing about 22 262 km of the 618 081 km proclaimed network, which represents only 3.6% of the road network and this network carries 34.5% of the annual vehicle km driven in South Africa. More than 70% of the long distance road freight in South Africa is transported on the SANRAL road network.

The Draft National Roads Plan 2030 has been developed for consultation. It provides an overview of SANRAL's planning over the next decade, supporting all four of its business pillars – the agency's medium term contribution to the Economic Recovery and Construction Plan; is based on current needs and forecasts, including national and provincial development planning; is aligned with SANRAL's Horizon 2030 document; was developed in accordance with the National Transport Master Plan (NATMAP); will be aligned to the National Infrastructure Plan 2045 being developed by Infrastructure South Africa

These roads are the country's single biggest public asset and critical to South Africa's future economic and social trajectory. These roads facilitate development, commerce, mobility and access. Over the medium term, the agency will continue to focus on the construction, maintenance and overall preservation of the national road network, particularly the road maintenance backlog that has accumulated in recent years. These activities account for an estimated 86.7% (R71 billion) of the agency's total expenditure over the MTEF period.

Total expenditure is expected to increase from R21.4 billion in 2021/22 to R26.1 billion in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 6.8%. Expenditure in 2022/23 is expected to reach R27.5 million and peak at R27.9 billion in 2023/24 as the agency accelerates road maintenance projects to deal with the backlog. Accordingly, the agency plans to increase the length of the network in active strengthening, improvement or construction contracts from 1 000 kilometres in 2021/22 to 2 400 kilometres in 2024/25. As a result, planned capital expenditure is expected to increase from R10.3 billion in 2021/22 to R33 billion in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 47.6%.

Although the number of personnel in the agency is expected to remain unchanged at 695 over the MTEF period, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.9%, from R633.7 million in 2021/22 to R841.2 million in 2024/25. This increase is driven by an expected increase in higher paid professionals and specialists, specifically project managers and procurement

specialists, in the agency's staff complement from 2021/22 to improve procurement processes and reduce the road maintenance backlog.

The agency is set to derive 75.4% (R66.1 billion) of its revenue over the MTEF period through transfers from the department, and 18.5% (R17 billion) through toll fees, concession income and rental income from investment property. Total revenue is expected to increase from R29.1 billion in 2021/22 to R31.7 billion in 2024/25, at an average annual rate of 2.9%. This is mainly due to an acceleration in line with the agency's plan to deal with the road maintenance backlog.

Rail Transport Safety and Security

In recent years, the rail environment became a target of theft and vandalism of infrastructure, senseless attacks on employees and private security while on duty, sabotage and general disregard for the rule of law. The DoT plays a key role in ensuring safe rail operations in the country through the development of policies, strategies and legislative regulatory framework. This role is augmented by the RSR, which is an independent entity of the department tasked with overseeing and promoting safe railway operations through appropriate support, monitoring and enforcement.

Rail networks

The purpose of the Rail Transport programme within the DoT is to facilitate and coordinate the development of sustainable rail transport policies, rail economic and safety regulations, and infrastructure development strategies; systems that reduce system costs and improve customer service; to monitor and oversee the RSR and the PRASA; and the implementation of integrated rail services planned through the lowest competent sphere of government.

The South African rail network is the 11th-largest in the world at 22 298 route km, and total track distance of 30 400 km. Public sector railways comprise three distinct vertically integrated entities, namely the Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) division of Transnet, the PRASA, and the Gautrain Management Agency. They fulfil distinctly different roles and responsibilities, and have different objectives and service delivery requirements.

The TFR owns 20 953 route km of the cape gauge track, of which 12 801 route km comprises the core network. The remaining track comprises 68 branch lines totaling 6 708 km in length. The PRASA operates metropolitan commuter services through its Metrorail division, and long distance commuter services through its Main Line Passenger Services division, Shosholoza Meyl.

The PRASA owns 746 route km of cape gauge network whilst Shosholoza Meyl trains run almost exclusively on the TFR track. The access relationship that PRASA has with TFR is heavily influenced by the history of the asset split criteria used to allocate infrastructure and rolling stock. The criterion used was that the main user of the network received ownership control of the asset.

In practice, this should have decreased the requirement to access each other's network as much as possible but over time, the pattern of asset usage has changed, and currently, in a number of cases Metrorail is operating on a network owned by TFR, but where PRASA trains comprise the majority of activity on the track. The Gautrain network is approximately 80 km-long and does not interconnect with any other network on basis of its standard gauge track.

The NDP provides a strategic framework to guide actions on the maintenance and expansion of economic infrastructure such as transport and, more especially, rail transport to support economic growth and social development goals.

The NDP states that given government's limited finances, private funding will need to be sourced for some of these investments. In addition to issuing licenses and setting tariffs, the NDP requires regulations to place emphasis on stimulating market competition and promoting affordable access to quality services.

The DoT has established an interim rail economic regulatory capacity, which prioritizes developing guidelines and frameworks to ensure fair and transparent access to the rail network, which will create a conducive environment for private sector participation.

To function optimally, South Africa needs reliable, economical, integrated smooth-flowing rail corridors linking the various modes of public transport. Investing in the rail network should increase access to an integrated rail network and create a conducive environment for private sector participation and investment in rail infrastructure.

Passenger rail is a critical function that creates enormous positive externalities for the economy and justifies significant subsidisation from government. The consequences of any move by passengers to alternative modes of transport include the new costs that are imposed on the rest of the economy; low-income households relying on more expensive and less safe modes of transport; traffic congestion increases; and people in outlying areas become even more marginalised.

Government's infrastructure delivery plan prioritises network industries to support a long-term increase in the productive capacity of the economy with the potential to crowd-in additional private sector investment. As part of prioritising infrastructure development for network industries, the modernization of the rail freight and passenger transport will receive immediate attention.

The adoption of the Private Sector Participation (PSP) Framework for the railway industry is an important step in securing private sector interest. The next step to encourage private sector investment should be a clear procurement framework and rail economic regulation. Areas identified for PSP included main line freight, terminal-to-terminal freight, terminal operations in the service areas, private line freight and private sidings in the services and asset upgrade areas, municipal rail infrastructure, rail infrastructure upgrade and maintenance concessions and the leasing of rolling stock in the asset areas.

In addition, there are other areas in the services provision and asset upgrade category, which include branch line freight services, commuter services, rapid rail intercity and marshalling yards. Over the MTSF, the DoT and PRASA will intensify implementation of its capital expenditure programme with focus on three programmes – rolling stock fleet renewal, repair and modernisation of station and rail signalling Improvement.

Rail infrastructure

While South Africa has a relatively good core network of national economic infrastructure, the challenge is to maintain and expand it to address the demands of inclusive economic growth. The economy has already been constrained by inadequate investment and ineffective operation and maintenance of existing infrastructure, while productive investment in historically black communities continues to face constraints.

South Africa needs to make large investments to propel economic activity. These need to be made in a structured, considered manner to prevent inappropriate initiatives, protect South Africa's resources and ensure that prioritised investments are efficiently implemented.

Given government's limited finances, private funding will need to be sourced for some of these investments, and policy planning and decision-making will require trade-offs between competing national goals.

Government needs not only to better coordinate collaborative investment by businesses and provincial and local government into key infrastructure projects, but to shape its institutional, policy and regulatory environment in order to enable investment, realise the desired efficiencies, improve infrastructure delivery, and contribute to economic growth and employment creation.

Rail-based public transport

The DoT, in its pursuit for a safe, affordable and reliable public transport system, has adopted an integrated policy approach that is based on peak intermodality. Besides its value proposition, intermodality is an integral part of sustainable mobility and its enhancement is vitally important for the provision of door-to-door transport services because of its advantages of economies of scale for both commuter and freight transport.

With this policy approach, the sector has set itself, amongst others, a medium-term target of realising the modal shift from road dominance to rail, not only to reduce the impact on our road infrastructure but also to reduce roadside emissions and to improve efficiencies in the broader transport value chain.

South Africa's passenger rail system has suffered years of underinvestment and deferred maintenance, creating fertile ground for the decline of the passenger rail system and hemorrhage market share over time. As part of positioning rail as a backbone of the public transport system, the Priority Corridor Strategy was introduced to ensure focused implementation. This included looking at corridors with high ridership to maximise impact.

It is thus important that rail is improved to compete with other modes to achieve proper share of passenger transport in order to reduce congestion on the road and further improve road safety. To achieve an optimum performance level, a number of interventions will be implemented over the medium term. These include maintenance, recovery and renewal of rolling stock fleet, modernisation of rail infrastructure, rolling out new train sets to priority corridors and to increase rail passenger trips.

Also targeted in the medium term is the revitalisation of branch lines to make rural economies more competitive by enabling provision of transport to some of the far-flung communities will be considered. These branch lines will not only benefit commuters but will also contribute to the proposed modal shift to rail for freight, thus alleviating pressure on the road network.

Transnet SOC Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by the South African Government. Its divisions include, the TFR, Transnet Rail Engineering, Transnet Port Terminals, Transnet Pipelines and Transnet National Ports Authority.

The Transnet Port Terminals operates 45 cranes in seven ports

across the country and plans to buy 39 new ship-to-shore cranes. Container capacity is also being created in other terminals, such as the Durban Ro-Ro and Maydon Wharf Terminal, through the acquisition of new equipment, including mobile cranes and various infrastructure upgrades.

The port is said to be the deepest container terminal in sub-Saharan Africa and will accommodate the new generation of giant container ships that regularly visit the country's shores. Given its positioning and size, the Ngqura Trade Port will go a long way in boosting South Africa's trade with other countries in the region and is expected to support the country's new growth path.

The planning of the Ngqura Trade Port has been integrated with that of the Coega Industrial Development Zone. The bulk handling capacity at Ngqura, Richards Bay in KwaZulu-Natal and Saldanha in the Western Cape will also come in for major expansion. The TFR is the largest division of Transnet.

It is a world-class heavy haul freight rail company that specialises in the transportation of freight. Its technological leadership goes beyond Africa as well as within Africa, where it is active in some 17 countries. The TFR has positioned itself to become a profitable and sustainable freight railway business, assisting in driving the competitiveness of the South African economy.

The company is made up of the following business units:

- · Agriculture and Bulk Liquids,
- Coal.
- Container and Automotive,
- · Iron Ore and Manganese,
- Steel and Cement, and
- Mineral Mining and Chrome.
- Forming an integral part of the southern African economy, Transnet:
- moves 17% of the nation's freight annually,
- · exports 100% of the country's coal,
- exports 100% of the country's iron ore,
- has annual revenues of over R14 billion.
- will invest R35 billion in capital over the next five years, and
- has 38 000 employees countrywide.

The company maintains an extensive rail network across South Africa that connects with other rail networks in the sub-

Saharan region, with its rail infrastructure representing about 80% of Africa's total.

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80-km long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and the OR Tambo International Airport. It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

The Gauteng 25-Year Integrated Transport Master Plan will ensure integration of transport with spatial patterns, as well as the integration between various transport modes to transport people effectively.

The Gautrain ferries more than 60 000 people a day (including weekends) or 1.2 million people a year. The Gautrain Management Agency is planning to extend the rail route by 150 km over the next 20 years, including routes through Randburg, Fourways and Soweto. This expansion is expected to create 211 000 jobs.

A feasibility study that included demand modelling to determine transport needs for Gauteng in 2025 and 2037, indicated that the "cost of doing nothing" in the province will lead to major road congestion in 2037, at which stage cars will travel at an average of 15 km/h due to the doubling of car growth.

The feasibility study identified the following main links and stations of the Gautrain rail network extensions: On the link between Jabulani via Cosmo City and Samrand to Mamelodi, stations include Roodepoort, Little Falls, Fourways, Sunninghill, Olievenhoutsbosch, Irene, Tshwane East and Hazeldean.

The link between Sandton and Cosmo City has a station at Randburg. On the link between Rhodesfield and Boksburg there will be a station at East Rand Mall and possible link-up with the OR Tambo International Airport Midfield terminal development. A future link from Cosmo City to Lanseria Airport.

Passenger rail safety

The National RSR Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for setting up the independent RSR, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport.

The mandate of the RSR is to:

- oversee safety in railway transport, while operators remain responsible for managing the safety of their operations;
- develop an appropriate regulatory framework through the development of regulations and standards for safe railway operations:
- monitor and ensure safety compliance by conducting audits, inspections, safety assessments and occurrence investigations;
- collect and disseminate information relating to safe railway operations;
- promote the harmonisation of the railway safety regime of South Africa with the Southern African Development Community (SADC) railway operations; and
- promote improved safety performance to support the use of rail.
 In pursuance of this mandate, the RSR has, in collaboration with the railway industry and the South African Bureau of Standards, developed a series of standards to ensure a common and consistent approach to railway safety in areas such as safety management, technical and operational requirements, and the management of human factors.

A key to the successful regeneration of the railway system in South Africa, and the subregion, is the interoperability of the railways. This implies consistent standards and common usage of technology where railway infrastructure is used by more than one operator.

The RSR and the railway industry continue to collaborate in developing the overarching broad technical and operating standards. The need for harmonisation of safety standards within the SADC region is of strategic importance. The RSR is facilitating efforts to adopt and align the current railway safety standards by regional railway operators through the Southern African Railways Association (SARA).

Since the RSR's creation, there has been increased awareness of safety in railways, improvements in safety management and accountability, and standardisation of safety management systems among railway operators in South Africa and regional railways operating into South Africa. The permit system employed by the RSR ensures the standardisation of safety management systems.

Through its SARA membership, the RSR plays a leading role in regional safety issues. The RSR played a central part in developing the Regional Safety Policy Framework and safety standards and in updating the *Handbook on the Transportation of Hazardous Materials by Rail*. Since the reintroduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and at train stations.

Civil aviation

Civil aviation is vital to international trade, investment, and tourism, as well as contributing to domestic transport, sports and recreation. Air transport connects South Africa to cities around the world and generates benefits to consumers and the wider economy by providing speedy connections between cities.

The DoT's Civil Avialtion programme exists to facilitate the development of an economically viable air transport industry that is safe, secure, efficient, environmentally friendly and compliant with international standards through regulations and investigations; and to oversee aviation public entities. Plans are underway to develop a business case for a government-owned national aviation academy.

Civil aviation safety and security

Accidents and fatalities continue to increase in general aviation, with a record of 11 fatal accidents recorded in the period between April and December 2021, indicating an increase of three when compared to the same period in the previous financial year. The contributing factor to the spike in incidents and accidents statistics can be traced back to the time when domestic aviation was inactive during hard lockdown.

This is coupled with the fact that a good number of aviators, in particular pilots, got laid off when some organizations folded. These aviators are now plying their trade in general aviation. Some of them do so without having underwent recency testing, which is strictly observed in scheduled commercial aviation.

However, General Aviation cannot continue to operate in an unregulated manner as it is currently happening. The Civil Aviation Policy Review, underway, unearthed some important aspects one of which is General Aviation sector. The latter has been strongly advocated for its economic potential whose role is critical especially small airports in promoting tourism access.

This is based on the benchmarking exercise done in India and Tunisia on how small airports promote tourism access. Such is critical for South Africa during the road to economic recovery. One of the important policy recommendations that has been advanced to counteract this issue is through amending or strengthening the current regulations that governs general aviation.

The Draft Comprehensive Civil Aviation Policy calls for SACAA to develop a strategy on how to reduce accident and incident high rate for general aviation and a clear strategy regarding the effective regulation of the sector. This is premised on the thinking that if general aviation is promoted, it must be monitored and regulated as well as made to adhere to operational guidance and principles.

Oversight is necessary to ensure operators adhere to the principles and processes of an effective safety management systems to ensure safety. With accident prevention as a priority among aviation participants, alignment with the SACAA brand promise of "keeping you safe in the sky" has to be maintained.

The SACAA has put in place a five-year general Aviation safety

whose essence is to reduce incidents and accidents. It has also established the Civil Aviation Safety Plan Implementation Committee, which is complemented by working groups that look into specific areas – Airspace Safety Flight Data Analysis, Rotocraft (Helicopter), Safety, and Human Factor in the System.

Aviation infrastructure

The National Civil Aviation Policy acknowledges that airports are currently not integrated into a meaningful network that contributes to the socio-economic development of the country. The National Airports Development Plan has been initiated to guide present and future airport development; and the development of individual airports integrated within their broader spatial and transport contexts; and furthermore, to facilitate and promote development of aerotropolis and airport cities, in consultation with relevant stakeholders.

An integrated airport network system has the potential to support the NDP's objective by contributing to growing the economy and ensure that potential investments are utilised effectively and efficiently through economic initiatives such as the aerotropolis, airport cities, special economic zones linked to international airports to promote economic growth, trade and tourism and job creation. It could further facilitate the expansion of tourism, including sport and adventure tourism.

There are approximately 128 licensed airports, of which 10 are designated as international airports and 68 voluntarily registered airports. Of these, nine are owned by ACSA, nine owned by provincial governments, 38 military airports and around 100 municipal (local and district) airports.

There are also numerous privately-owned licensed airports with the vast majority of the remainder of the airports being private (business, non-profit, and individual). South Africa's nine major airports are:

- OR Tambo International Airport in Gauteng;
- · Cape Town International Airport in the Western Cape:
- · King Shaka International Airport in KwaZulu-Natal;
- · Bram Fischer International Airport in the Free State;
- Chief Dawid Stuurman International Airport in the Eastern Cape;
- · Upington International Airport in the Northern Cape;
- King Phalo Airport Airport in the Eastern Cape;
- · George Airport in the Western Cape, and
- · Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape.

The ACSA has facilitated over 21.1 million annual departing passengers though its airport network; and has an annual departing and arrival throughput passenger capacity of 54.5 million across its entire airport network.

It is projected that the aviation sector will begin to return to the pre-COVID 19 passenger traffic and air traffic movements around 2023 - 2025. It is expected that the entity will increase CAPEX in response to the increasing air traffic volumes.

ATNS as a state-owned company and national provider of air traffic management services plays a significant role in contributing to South Africa's sustainability agenda through airspace infrastructure provision.

Air traffic management ensures orderly, expeditious, safe and secure aircraft movements in South Africa's airspace through the deployment of communication, navigation and surveillance infrastructure (terrestrial as well as space-based) in accordance with the strategies defined in the National Airspace Master Plan.

To enhance the ATNS Air traffic services provided at the nine statutory

ACSA airports and at 11 regional airports, it is planned to consolidate approach control services for various airports terminal control areas and to deploy remote tower technology for aerodrome control services without being stationed at the respective airports. Airspace, route and flight procedure designs are continually reviewed to allow for optimal performance by introducing continuous climb operations and continuous decent operations into airports.

In terms of airspace and airport congestion, a formal slot allocation system is applicable at the three fully coordinated airports in South Africa – OR Tambo International, King Shaka International and Cape Town International Airports. The purpose of slot coordination is to facilitate the optimal utilization of scarce resources at coordinated airports.

It also aims to facilitate stability of scheduled air services network serving South Africa; and orderly and safe operations at coordinated airports. Congestion is primarily experienced in the vicinity of the Johannesburg Terminal Area. There are also some airspace pressures at airports, which serve high volumes of non-scheduled traffic, flight training, general air services, and non-commercial aviation activity.

Airlift Strategy

The Airlift Strategy introduced structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth in South Africa. In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the county's growth by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry;
- · prioritising tourism and trade markets; and
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework, within which both suppliers and consumers of air-transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

The strategy enhances the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronises the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities. The strategy also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets, with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply side of air-transport services.

The DoT also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met.

Airlines

Several domestic airlines, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies, operate in South Africa.

The SAA, British Airways (BA)/Comair, SA Express, Airlink and Interair operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands. In addition to serving Africa, the SAA also operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East.

Other airlines operating in the country are Kulula and Mango. Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Eswatini Airlink, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al Israel Airlines, Egyptair,

Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

South African Airways (SAA)

The SAA operates a full-service network in the international, regional and domestic markets. The airline is responsible for promoting air links with South Africa's key business, trading and tourism markets across the world, and contributing to key domestic air linkages.

The SAA was placed under business rescue in 2019 to create a value proposition within the restructured SAA which would make it an attractive proposition for a potential partner. In August 2020, the business rescue practitioners published an approved business rescue plan.

To implement the plan, R10.5 billion was allocated in the 2020 second adjustments budget. The restructured airline resumed operations in September 2021, operating domestically and regionally. However, the fourth wave of the COVID-19 pandemic negatively affected its restart and ramp-up plan as some destinations closed borders to South African carriers. Because the airline was in business rescue between December 2019 and April 2021, it did not generate any revenue from scheduled flights during this period, only a few charter flights.

The airline's total guaranteed debt was R16.4 billion. To settle it, government paid R10.2 billion in 2020/21, R4.3 billion in 2021/22, and is expected to pay the remaining R1.8 billion in the second quarter of 2022/23. The airline is in the process of disposing of some non-core assets as required by the appropriation conditions.

Government is in the process of concluding the sale of its majority shareholding in the airline to a strategic equity partner that is expected to bring in the funding and skills required to strengthen its balance sheet and improve operations. This partnership is expected to be finalised by the beginning of 2022/23. Over the medium term, the airline will focus on improving its operations as international flights resume.

SA Express

South African Express Airways has experienced severe operational and financial challenges for several years, and despite financial support from government, has been unable to recover. The airline was placed under business rescue in February 2020 but was unable to restructure, leading to it being placed under provisional liquidation in April 2020. By October 2020, the process of receiving expressions of interest had commenced. It was expected that the airline would be sold in the fourth quarter of 2021/22.

Resources

Roads

South Africa's road network, including unproclaimed roads, is approximately 750 000 km, making it the 10th-longest road network in the world. Roads in South Africa fall under the jurisdiction of the three spheres of government (national, provincial and municipal), and responsibility for the entire road network is split between the three

spheres' road authorities. Travel on South Africa's paved roads runs to about 32 billion vehicle-kms per year and this includes travel on national, provincial and local roads. While national roads are mostly paved, the majority of the provincial network (more than 80%) consist of low-volume gravel roads, particularly in rural and peri-urban regions; and mainly provide isolated communities with access to public services, economic centres and other key facilities.

National roads

Government is responsible for overall policy, while the the SANRAL is the implementing agent of the national roads network, and along with the DoT, plays a key role in influencing policy and setting standards. The DoT continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under the SANRAL or local governments. The DoT helps provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns is the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

The toll road network comprises about 19% (3 120 km) of the national road grid. The SANRAL manages some 1 832 km of these toll roads.

In its endeavour to continue the expansion and maintenance of the comprehensive national road network, the SANRAL will continue the selective expansion of toll roads. About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of national roads have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

Freight transport

Africa's road access rate is only 34% compared with 50% in other geographical zones. However, roads remain the dominant mode of transportation, accounting for more than 90% of passenger and freight transport in the continent, compared with around 50% of freight in Europe.

Pipelines

South Africa consumes about 25 billion litres of petroleum products a year. Transnet Pipelines transports almost 50% of all refined petroleum products in the country for the emerging and major oil companies of South Africa. The Tarlton storage and distribution depot is a vital conduit in the supply of fuel to Botswana. The company plans to enhance this service.

Transnet Pipelines transports all the crude requirements for the inland refinery at the National Petroleum Refiners of South Africa, from where almost 70% of their refined products, and 80% at Secunda, are transported through the pipeline network to the final markets.

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines. Investment in the

pipeline sector is ongoing. Construction on a R5.8 billion fuel pipeline between the Mozambican Port of Matola in Maputo and Kendal in South Africa started in 2009. The 450-km pipeline transports up to 3.5 millilitres (ml) a year and is expected to prevent potential fuel shortages in South Africa.

The pipeline facilitates the importation of petrol and diesel from Mozambique, which has extensive natural gas and coal reserves, but no oil reserves. Of the pipeline's total capacity of 3.5 ml of fuel and diesel, a maximum of 1.5 ml is diverted to Mbombela. The remainder is transported to Kendal.

More than 60% of South Africa's liquid-fuels demand lies within the Durban-Johannesburg corridor. The Durban-Johannesburg pipeline was no longer adequate for the transportation of the required volumes of petroleum products from the coast to the inland regions.

Maritime transport

South Africa is bordered by the ocean on three sides. Studies suggest that the ocean has the potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the GDP and between 800 000 and one million direct jobs. It is a catalyst to facilitate international trade thereby providing necessary maritime/ marine infrastructure and services, for goods to be seamlessly transferred from the manufacturing centres to the ports as imports and exports.

Maritime Industry Development manages the promotion of the maritime industry locally, regionally and globally. Current projects will assist in in developing programmes to improve the South African ship register and the inclusion of South Africans who are from historically disadvantaged backgrounds to participate in the maritime economic activities by supporting the establishment of a maritime broad-based black economic empowerment council.

The Oceans Economy Masterplan under Operations Phakisa is intended to use empirical evidence to galvanise stakeholders around a common understanding of challenges and opportunities, followed by the defining of a vision and the development of an action plan to address these challenges.

As part of its contribution to unlock the economic potential of the ocean, the DoT will look at a number of key area, including regional coastal shipping agreement within the Southern African Development Community (SADC), establishment of a national shipping carrier and corporatisation of the Transnet National Ports Authority.

The DoT's Marine Transport programme exists to implement the CMTP to ensure promotion and coordination; as well as infrastructure and industry development and achieve compliance through monitoring, evaluation and oversight, and collaboration with maritime-related public entities, including the Ports Regulator; National Ports Authority; the SAMSA industry and international bodies.

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It serves a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context, offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

- The accelerated implementation of the CMTP towards the goal of South Africa becoming an International Maritime Centre by 2030 is expected to achieve the following:
- Create enhanced maritime awareness by participating in international maritime platforms such as the Rio Competition in 2023.
- Establish the Maritime Development Fund (MDF).

- Create a shift from road to rail open new markets for cargo movements.
- Create and maintain port capacity to support trade in ports through an effective port tariff methodology and strategy.
 - Secure about 6% government cargo and use that to develop coastal shipping.

As a build-up and focused coordination, the following annual maritime thematic priorities have been agreed upon:

- · 2022: Benefiting from the Maritime Value Chain;
- 2023: National Shipping Company;
- · 2024: SADC Coastal Shipping;
- · 2025: Maritime Infrastructure and Services;
- 2026: Revitalised South African Merchant Shipping;
- · 2027: South Africa: Moving our Strategic Cargo;
- 2028: A vibrant South African Maritime Brand;
- 2029: Africa: a Thriving Maritime Market; and
- · 2030: An International Maritime Centre in Africa.

The theme for 2021 was; "South Africa: A Sailing and Leisure Boat Nation". During the year, the DoT planned to deepen the South African sailing and boating culture. The department will further progress work towards an operational framework for the national shipping company and take strides to finalise the coastal shipping negotiation text in support of the Africa Free Trade Area Agreement.

Great progress will be made in developing the ground-breaking work of the MDF legislation. The fund will unlock key opportunities that must result in the implementation of the CMTP, including maritime infrastructure and services development, and positioning the country to attract international shipping.

In the coming years, the CMTP is expected to help achieve a revitalised South African Merchant Shipping to allow the country to move strategic cargo under the banner of a vibrant South African maritime brand: Maritime South Africa by increasing the:

- tonnage of identified commodities to be shipped by South African Shipping Companies;
- tonnage of identified commodities to be shipped by broad-based black economic empowerment companies;
- percentage strategic cargo moved by the national company using chartered vessels:
- number of ships, rigs and boats repaired in South African ship repair vards:
- number of ships ordering and taking offshore bunkers in South
- number of direct jobs supported by maritime transport economy;
- number of ship candling services offered by South African businesses;
- number of agreements entered into in terms of Section 56 of the National Ports Act of 2005, including number of licenses issued in terms of Section 75 of the Act;
- export of South African goods and services to other countries in the continent carried by local ships;
- number of vessels carrying the South African Flag as primary register; and
- redesigning ports and small harbours infrastructure to support coastal shipping.

The SAMSA, acting on behalf of the DoT, is South Africa's maritime

safety enforcement agency as mandated by the SAMSA Act, 1998 (Act 5 of 1998). The broad aim of the SAMSA is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships.

The Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment is responsible for combating pollution and uses Kuswag coastwatch vessels to perform this function. The SAMSA is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in London, United Kindom, with respect to:

- · ship construction;
- · maritime training and training curriculums;
- · watch-keeping;
- certification of seafarers;
- · manning and operation of local and foreign ships;
- · maritime search-and-rescue;
- · marine communications and radio navigation aids; and
- pollution prevention.

The SAMSA has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, human resources and information technology issues. Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

The SAMSA is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. Numerous ships calling at South Africa's major ports are inspected, and those not complying with internationanal safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The DoT maintains a single emergency towing vessel that is available to respond to emergency incidents, which is mainly deployed in the Western Seaboard. This exposes certain areas of the coastline, especially of the Indian Ocean, to risks from ships oil pollution in the event of accidents or incidents. The DoT is working on a long-term strategy to enhance capacity and capability for oil pollution surveillance and response.

Comprehensive Maritime Transport Policy

South African's length of the coastline is estimated to be approximately 3 000 km. In South Africa, the greatest challenge has been the absence of a maritime transport policy that is required to provide guidance to the industry. The much-awaited Maritime Transport Policy will create certainty in the transport sector and the logistics market.

There are over 89 464 merchant ships trading internationally, transporting different types of cargoes and registered, in 150 nations, thus growing marine international trade by 4% per annum. South Africa currently has four ships on its ship register and there is commitment to grow the register through the creation of a conducive environment and providing incentives to ship owners as an encouragement to set up offices and possibly register under the South African flag.

The CMTP serves as the embodiment of government's commitment to the growth, development and transformation of South Africa's maritime transport sector. It represents South Africa's long-term vision, the underpinning philosophy and principles that inform its development and the direction that government has committed to take the sector to reach its full potential.

One of the key strategic objectives of the CMTP is to develop South

Africa to be an International Maritime Centre in Africa. In considering this bold objective, it is important to note that the CMTP Implementation Plan 2030 envisages that this status may be achieved by 2030. In the second year of the Maritime Decade, the focus is highlighting the sailing and luxury boat building subsector as being part of what the country offers to the world. South Africa's maritime sector must develop beyond its ability to serve national interest and provide efficient services to the global industry.

With the onset of the Fourth Industrial Revolution, South Africa should promote maritime analytical skills and tools. There is a need to learn from the bit of excellence in the ship and boat building industry, where South Africa is already highly recognised in the world and ranking number two, after France, as leader in the manufacture and distribution of catamarans and other sophisticated luxury yachts.

One of the areas requiring a better marine footprint is shipping and the CMTP Implementation Plan 2030 identifies coastal shipping as a key instrument, laying a firm foundation to build and grow the maritime sector. South Africa is expected to take steps to promote the development of a national shipping company in the light of the renewed impetus brought about by the CMTP.

Maritime Training

The South African Maritime Training Academy, at Simon's Town in the Western Cape, provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy.

The South African Merchant Navy Academy, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology (CPUT), with a similar training facility at the Durban University of Technology (DUT).

Deck and engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the CPUT and DUT, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Northlink College, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

The SAMSA is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the DoT, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Gqeberha.

As part of an initiative to reduce the vacancy rate of at least 45 000 jobs in the maritime industry, 12 further education and training (FET) colleges across the country offer courses aimed at equipping young people for a career in the industry.

The FET colleges will meet at least 80% of the industry's skills demands, producing artisans such as riggers, welders and boiler makers. Annually, between 1 200 and 1 600 students enter the maritime industry after completing their studies.

Ports

Along its 3 000 km-long coastline, South Africa has eight commercial seaports: Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Ngqura, Gqeberha, Mossel Bay, Cape Town and Saldanha. South Africa is situated on a

major sea route, which facilitates the safe and secure movement of about 500 megatonnes (Mt) of crude petrochemical sea trade. This represents over 30% of the world's petrochemical production, on board over 5 000 tanker voyages of very large crude carriers per year.

The commercial ports are crucial to South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea. The Port of Durban is the busiest container terminal in Africa and the second busiest in the southern hemisphere, following Melbourne, Australia. The Ports Authority alone employs 6 200 people at the Durban Port, with an estimated 30 000 people employed indirectly.

Richard's Bay is the busiest port in South Africa by tonnage and is one of the top two coal-handling ports in the world. The port focuses on bulk cargo handling while the Durban Port focuses on general cargo. It has also been earmarked for expansion projects with R3.7 billion set aside for mobile and quayside equipment, as well as weighbridges. Safety-critical, environmental and legal compliance projects will also be carried out.

Cape Town, located at the southern-most point of Africa, is ideally positioned as a hub terminal for cargo to South America and the Far East. West/East Africa cargo has grown substantially, making the Cape Town Container Terminal the terminal of choice for trans-shipment cargo. The terminal handles 3 161 vessels per year for a gross tonnage of 44 501 297.

The Gqeberha Container Terminal is one of the three specialised container-handling facilities along the South African coastline. The terminal currently handles 1 271 ships with a total gross tonnage of 25 756 823.

Operation Phakisa

Operation Phakisa was modelled upon the Malaysia "Big Fast Results" methodology, where government and the private sector converged to address binding constraints which where obstructing growth and job creation.

The Oceans Economy Lab was launched in 2014. South Africa is endowed with ocean space on three sides, representing a vast untapped market to grow the gross domestic product (GDP) and create jobs, thereby addressing poverty, unemployment and inequality.

The Oceans Economy has the potential to grow the GDP by R177 billion and create one million new jobs by 2033. A key assumption driving the above targets was a GDP growth rate of 5% per annum and an annual job growth rate of 6%.

The binding constraints were analysed by a cross section of public and private sector participants on a six-week Operation Phakisa Lab process, which resulted in 18 marine transport and manufacturing initiatives being crafted into a detailed three-foot plan for implementation. These initiatives addressed policy and regulation, infrastructure, skills and market development.

Safety of travellers Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive Road Safety Campaign has become an important part of the DoT's road safety projects and awareness efforts, especially during critical periods for road traffic management, such as the Easter long weekend and the December holidays.

At the end of 2015, it was announced that the RTMC could not

use the Arrive Alive campaign anymore, as it had been registered as a brand. The safety campaign remains in place, operating under the name 365 Days of Road Safety Programme, which focuses on creating awareness all year round.

The goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year;
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws; and
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

The campaign emphasised that the reduction in road deaths was urgent and non-negotiable. The RAF pays out about R15 billion to victims of road accidents every year. The DoT intends to harmonise road traffic law enforcement and establish a single traffic police unit.

As part of efforts to alleviate the scourge of road accidents and incidents, the department continues to work tirelessly to ensure that law enforcement is declared an essential service to guarantee availability of traffic officers 24/7 on the roads. Anti-fraud and corruption operations will continue to be intensified at all public and private driver learning testing centres and driving schools around the country.

Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 Mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based Maritime Rescue Coordination Centre (MRCC).

Piracy constitutes a serious challenge to the development and stability of the SADC member states, given the importance of the region's international seaborne trade and its vital contribution to regional food stocks and economic development.

Threats of piracy are of particular concern to the SADC, whose coastline and shipping lanes are extremely vulnerable to maritime crime. As the SADC's coastal area does not fall within patrol areas of the international anti-pirate forces, the SADC will have to take responsibility for its own maritime security. The threat around the Horn of Africa and SADC waters detrimentally affects the SADC's trade and economy.

The SADC's Maritime Strategy entails a regional partnership with all member states contributing within their means. Not all members necessarily have the essential maritime and military capabilities, but they still contribute in other ways by providing land-based equipment such as radar and soldiers to patrol coastlines and islands.

The SADC has established robust rules of engagement for antipiracy, which are largely consistent with those of other regions and task forces. Regarding the legal framework, SADC member states are expected to:

- ratify or accede to international maritime conventions/treaties/ regimes and the incorporation of these into their national law;
- put in place comprehensive legal regimes at national level, consistent with international law, to prosecute pirates;
- stop the practice of "catch-and-release" of pirates since it allows experienced pirates to execute more sophisticated acts of piracy;
- strengthen and harmonise regional and domestic legal frameworks for arrest, awaiting trial detention, prosecution and imprisonment or

repatriation of pirates; and

 take responsibility for its own maritime security in cooperation with other regions, task forces, navies and role players.

The MRCC enables South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services.

South Africa has a well-established pollution prevention strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threats to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk. The country acts in terms of the Indian Ocean Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of West Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Search and rescue services

The Southern African Search and Rescue Organisation (Sasar) has been in existence since 1957. It was formalised through the enactment of the South African Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue (SAR) Act, 2002 (Act 44 of 2002). The Act gave the organisation a statutory mandate to coordinate all SAR activities within South Africa's area of responsibility.

Its mandate is to ensure a coordinated and effective maritime and aeronautical search and rescue service within the South African search and rescue regions.

The SAR service is provided in terms of the obligations accepted by South Africa after signing and ratification of relevant IMO and ICAO Conventions inter alia, the International Convention on Maritime Search and Rescue, 1979 and the Convention on International Civil Aviation, 1944.

Other objectives include:

- minimising the loss of life and personal injury to aviators and mariners;
- minimising time spent searching for persons in distress by using top-of-the-range technology, research and development, education, regulation and enforcement;
- promoting and enhancing regional search and rescue capacity or capability and ensuring optimal use of SAR scarce resources;
- ensuring the implementation of international standards and recommended practices; and
- improving cooperation between aeronautical and maritime search and rescue authorities.

South Africa is responsible for a huge SAR area, representing about 10% of the globe and about 28.5 million km2 in total. The South African area is divided into the aeronautical and maritime SAR areas. The aeronautical SAR region covers Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini, and associated flight information regions.

The maritime SAR area stretches about halfway between South Africa and South America on the western side, and about halfway between South Africa and Australia on the eastern side. It also borders on Namibia, Angola, South Africa and Mozambique on the northern side and then extends to the south pole.

Relevant operational structures and substructures were established for Sasar to execute its mandate successfully. The Aeronautical Rescue Coordination Centre (ARCC) and the MRCC are the primary structures responsible for the execution of Sasar's statutory mandate. The ARCC and the MRCC are based at the ATNS and SAMSA.

The SAR only works when several countries and all stakeholders

collaborate across borders. This culture of collaboration dates back to 1959 when the Convention on International Civil Aviation first made provision for cooperation between states. According to this provision, states will individually or in cooperation with other states, arrange for the establishment and prompt provision of the SAR services within their territories to ensure that people in distress get assistance. Regional cooperation also uses scarce resources and helps nations to avoid duplicating efforts and facilities.

Through this collaboration, services are provided for poor states in a uniform way across a wide area. Collaboration also reduces the overall cost of the SAR operations.

Green Transport Strategy (GTS)

The movement of goods and services in time and space defines and influences economic activity. Demand for transport shapes the urban landscape and influences peoples' spatial choices in relation to schooling, places of work, religious services; and economic services such as banking, shopping and basic lifestyle requirements.

Businesses also choose to establish themselves based on market proximity and size, and ease of transport supporting labour, goods and services. These choices contribute in ways that are either favourable or extremely compromising to the well-being of individuals, households and businesses.

According to the Green Transport Strategy for South Africa (2018 – 2050), emissions from the transport sector in South Africa account for 10.8% of the country's total greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions. In addition to these direct emissions arising from the combustion of fuels, there are indirect emissions from the production, refining and transportation of fuels.

Continued growth within the transport sector is likely to have an increasing impact on land resources, water quality, air quality and biodiversity. In urban centres, transport is a major contributor to air pollution and emissions include nitrous oxides and particulates, which contribute to the brown haze seen over many of South Africa's main cities.

These pollutants have a significant impact on human health, increasing risks of respiratory diseases, heart disease, lung cancer and low birth weight – with children and the elderly particularly vulnerable. This places an even greater burden on the healthcare system with substantial medical costs.

Planes, trains and automobiles, carriages, carts and coaches, from history's earliest to modern man's most sophisticated modes of transport, have changed through the ages with little attention paid to man's first step in mobility: walking. In South Africa, walking is one of the most utilised forms of getting people from one place to another, but at enormous cost: financially, emotionally, morally and physically.

It is the responsibility of the DoT to contribute to national economic development through a people-centred approach that creates opportunity and stimulates growth. The department intends to do this by driving the goals of the National Transport Master Plan 2050 as South Africa confronts its crossroads to provide safe, efficient, reliable and affordable transport.

This makes the need for real change within the transport sector urgent and imperative. The GTS aims to minimise the adverse impact of transport on the environment, while addressing current and future transport demands. This is underpinned by sustainable development

principles. The strategy will promote green mobility to ensure that the transport sector supports the achievement of green economic growth targets and the protection of the environment.

The objectives of the GTS include:

- enabling the transport sector to contribute its fair share to the national effort to combat climate change in a balanced fashion;
- promoting behavioural changes towards sustainable mobility alternatives through information, education and awareness raising;
- engaging the low-carbon transition of the sector, to assist with the aligning and developing of policies which promote energy efficiency and emission control measures in all transport modes;
- minimising the adverse effects of transport activities on the environment; and
- facilitating the sector's just transition to a climate resilient transport system and infrastructure.

Road transport has been identified as the primary source of transportrelated carbon dioxide emissions in South Africa, contributing 91.2% of total transport GHG emissions. The heavy reliance of the sector on fossil fuels contributes significantly to total GHG emissions for the country. This justifies a focus on immediate and targeted interventions around road transport to ensure a significant reduction of emissions in the transport sector as a whole.

This will require commitment to resources: significant long-term finance and investment, as well as supplementary work to prepare detailed business plans for finance and investment in transport-related mitigation. There are broad-scale economic opportunities for growth in the public and private sectors.

Some of the benefits include access to employment opportunities for poor communities, an efficiently run public transport system, access to clinics and other healthcare services and less polluted air. Improvements in transport efficiency will also have positive knock-on effects for all economic sectors that use transport.

During the MTSF, as part of implementation of the GTS, the DoT will develop its carbon emission just transition plan to ensure that it contributes to the country's target of keeping emissions between 398 Metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (Mt CO2e) and 614 Mt CO2e range and the commitments set out in the Nationally Determined Contributions.

Transport Month

Transport Month is commemorated in October each year. During Transport Month 2021, government unveiled the S'hamba Sonke Programme, an initiative aimed at addressing the maintenance backlog in the secondary network and contribute to sustainable livelihoods through job creation initiatives.

The initiative allows national and provincial spheres of government to work towards common road maintenance targets while augmenting funding through the Provincial Roads Maintenance Grant. The conceptualisation of the S'hamba Sonke Programme was premised on the reality that while South Africa's national road network is in good condition, this is not the case with secondary road networks or provincial roads.

The initiative is one of the projects that will accelerate efforts to meet the government's target of creating 11 million job opportunities by the year 2030 as outlined in the NDP.

Transport Month 2020 focused on service delivery across all

modes of transport, paying particular attention to roads infrastructure development. It was commemorated under the theme; "Together shaping the future of transport".

The aim was to raise awareness on the important role of transport in the economy and to invite civil society and the corporate sector to participate in providing a safer, more affordable, accessible and reliable transport system for the country across all modes of transport.

south AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22





SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22

Water and Sanitation

Water and Sanitation

South Africa remains a water scarce country and is facing a challenge in the delivery of water and sanitation services caused by, among other factors, insufficient water infrastructure maintenance and investment, recurrent droughts driven by climatic variation, inequities in access to water and sanitation. This is exacerbated by climate change, which continues to present changes in temperature, precipitation and extreme weather events.

The mandate of the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) is set out in the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998) and the Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997)). The department's legislative mandate is to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled by regulating and supporting the delivery of effective water supply and sanitation. This is done in accordance with the requirements of water-related policies and legislation that are critical in delivering on people's right to have enough food and water, growing the economy, and eradicating poverty.

This rainfall produces a total annual runoff of approximately 49 000 million cubic metres (m³)/a. A total of 65% of South Africa has a mean annual rainfall of less than 500 mm and 21% of the country with a mean annual rainfall of less than 200 mm. The country, therefore, experiences severe and prolonged hydrological droughts, which may last as long as 10 years at a time.

The country's water security is mainly reliant on fresh surface water, with ground water and return flows underutilised. There are currently 5 551 registered dams with a total gross storage capacity of 33 291 million m³. Of these registered dams, 4 294 are small (i.e. less than 12 m) serving farms and municipalities. These smaller dams play a critical role in local water security and climate resilience. The total national potential for accessible groundwater, on the other hand, is approximately 4 500 million m³/a; of which between 2 000 and 3 000 million m³/a, is being utilised.

Most of South Africa's freshwater comes from catchments that receive the highest rainfall (strategic water source areas). There are 22 strategic water source areas occupying 8% of the land, however these provide 50% of the surface run-off (water in wetlands, streams and rivers). The strategic water source areas support the water needs of approximately 60% of the population, 67% of national economic activity, and supply approximately 70% of irrigation water.

Agriculture is the largest water use at 61%, followed by municipal use at 27% (including industrial and commercial users provided from municipal systems), with power generation, mining and bulk industrial use, livestock and conservation and afforestation jointly making up the remaining 12%. The assurance level at which agricultural water is supplied is lower than for other sectors at 90%.

Water for power generation is seen as strategically important and is provided with the highest assurance of supply at 99.5%; which translates to 1:200 year risk of failure. Agricultural consumption is largely unmetered, and there are concerns about unauthorised abstraction and water wastage in the sector.

In addition, agricultural users pay a much lower tariff than other users of untreated water and the relatively cheap water has not incentivised the adoption of water efficient irrigation practices. However, the sector is important in terms of jobs and contribution to the GDP. The domestic sector has high water use partly due to municipal non-

revenue water which is currently at 41%. Non-revenue water includes all water supplied that is not paid for, including physical water losses through leaks in the distribution system, illegal connections, unbilled consumption and billed, but unpaid for water use. While figures vary between municipalities and services providers, average physical losses in municipal systems are estimated to be around 35%, against a global best practice in the order of 15%.

The Industrial Policy Action Plan sets out the intentions of South Africa in terms of expanding the manufacturing sector, which will increase water demand in this sector, and which has the potential to increase water pollution if not appropriately regulated. To balance requirements and supply, South Africa will need to reduce water demand, as well as increase supply for a growing population and economy in order to ensure water security by 2030.

Without demand management, currently planned infrastructure development and the broadening of the water mix will not be sufficient to balance supply and demand. However, if the targets of reducing physical losses in municipal systems are reached, as well as a reduction in the per capita consumption to the global average, in addition to the surface and groundwater supplies, and desalination, re-use and treated AMD, there will be a slight surplus available in 2030.

Chapter 4 of the NDP envisages a South Africa that recognises the importance of secure and equitable access to water and sanitation as catalysts for socio-economic development. This is given expression by Priority 1 (economic transformation and job creation) and Priority 4 (spatial integration, human settlements and local government) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), with which the work of the DWS is aligned.

Over the medium term, the DWS planned to continue focusing on enhancing regulatory measures, ensuring that infrastructure is protected and restored, and ensuring that water and sanitation services are managed effectively.

Access to water

The provision of safe and readily available water is important for public health and poverty reduction. According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021, the percentage of households with access to an improved source of water increased from 84.4% to 88.7% between 2002 and 2021.

The increases were most notable in Eastern Cape (+14,9 percentage points) and KwaZulu-Natal (+11,6 percentage points). Despite these notable improvements, access to water actually declined in six provinces between 2002 and 2021. The largest decline was observed in Limpopo (-4,4 percentage points), Mpumalanga (-4,3 percentage points) and North West (-2,2 percentage points).

The declines, however, belie the fact that more households had access to piped water in 2021 than two decades earlier. Through the provision and the efforts of government, support agencies and existing stakeholders, the percentage of households with access to improved sanitation increased by 22,4 percentage points between 2002 and 2021, growing from 61.7% to 84.1%.

The most improvement was noted in Eastern Cape where the percentage of households with access to improved sanitation increased by 58,3 percentage points to 91,7%, and Limpopo in which access increased by 31,6 percentage points to 58,5%. The installation of pit toilets with ventilation pipes played an important part in achieving the

large improvements. A range of reasons, including rapid household growth and urbanisation, as well as a preference for flush toilets have all contributed to the slow progress over the reference period. The relative scarcity of water and regular water interruptions experienced in many parts of the country might increasingly lead to the use of alternative sources of sanitation.

It is notable that the percentage of households whose members usually wash hands with soap and water increased notably between 2019 and 2021 (from 43,6% to 59,1%), while the percentage of households whose members only rinsed their hands with water decreased from 50,8% to 35,2% over the same period of time. Almost three-quarters (73,5%) of households reported that they had access to hand-washing facilities.

According to the GHS, tap water inside their dwellings, off-site or on-site was most common among households in Western Cape (99,4%), Gauteng (98,4%), and Free State (93,6%) and least common in Limpopo (69,4%) and Eastern Cape (71,0%). Since 2002, the percentage of households in Eastern Cape with access to water in the dwelling, on- or off-site increased by 14,9 percentage points and those in KwaZulu-Natal by 11,6 percentage points. Nationally, the percentage of households with access to tap water in their dwellings, off-site or on-site increased by 4,3 percentage points during the same period.

Despite these notable improvements, access to water actually declined in six provinces between 2002 and 2021. The largest declined was observed in Limpopo (-4,4 percentage points), Mpumalanga (-4,3 percentage points), North West (-2,2 percentage points) and Free State (-2,0 percentage points).

In addition, access to water has been declining in both Eastern Cape and Limpopo since at least 2014. On the positive side one should, however, take into account that many more households were provided with water in 2021 than two decades earlier.

An estimated 45,2% of households had access to piped water in their dwellings in 2021. A further 29,4% accessed water on-site while 12,2% relied on communal taps and 1,9% relied on neighbours' taps. Although generally households' access to water improved, 2,7% of households still had to fetch water from rivers, streams, stagnant water pools, dams, wells and springs in 2021.

About 98,6% of households in metros had access to tap water. This type of access to water was most common in Cape Town (99,5%), Nelson Mandela Bay (99,2%), and Johannesburg (99,1%). Mangaung (92,0%) and Ethekwini (97,7%) recorded the lowest access amongst metros. The number and percentage of households with access to piped water had increased since 2006, showing that 14,8 million households had access to piped water in 2021 compared to 9,3 million in 2006

Households in North West (56,7%), Limpopo (56,0%) and Mpumalanga (55,8%) reported the most interruptions, while households in Western Cape (4,9%) and Gauteng (11,3%) experienced the least interruptions. Approximately one-third (30,8%) of South African households reported some dysfunctional water supply service in 2021.

Compared to households nationally, a much smaller percentage of households in metropolitan areas reported water interruptions (14,2% compared to 30,8%). Water interruptions were most common in Nelson Mandela Bay (37,6%), eThekwini (28,1%), and Buffalo City (20,0%) and least common in Cape Town (4,8%) and Ekurhuleni (6,2%).

Sanitation

Environmental hygiene plays an essential role in the prevention of many diseases. It also impacts on the natural environment and the preservation of important natural assets, such as water resources. Proper sanitation is one of the key elements in improving environmental hygiene.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2021, nationally, the percentage of households with access to improved sanitation increased from 61,7% in 2002 to 84,1% in 2021. Households' access to improved sanitation was highest in Western Cape (94,8%) Gauteng (91,8%) and Eastern Cape (91,7%), and most limited in Limpopo (58,5%) and Mpumalanga (63,2%). In the Eastern Cape, households' access to improved sanitation facilities increased by 58,3 percentage points between 2002 and 2021, growing from 33,4% to 91,7%.

Nationally, almost two-thirds (64,8%) of households used flush toilets that were either connected to a public sewerage system or a septic or conservancy tanks, while another 19,3% used pit toilets that are connected to ventilation pipes. Households that did not have access to improved sanitation facilities largely depended on pit toilets without ventilation pipes (13,4%).

The use of flush toilets was most common in Western Cape (94,8%), Gauteng (87,5%) and Free State (75,2%). About one-quarter (25,6%) of households in Limpopo used improve sources of sanitation. The largest percentage of pit toilets with ventilation pipes were observed in Eastern Cape (43,9%), KwaZulu-Natal (34,0%) and Limpopo (32,9%). In the absence of flush toilets, 74,0% of households in Limpopo used pit latrines, most (41,1%) without ventilation pipes.

More than one-third (36,7%) of households in Mpumalanga and 20,5% of households in North West used pit toilets without ventilation pipes.

Households' access to improved sanitation was highest in Buffalo City (99,2%) and Nelson Mandela Bay (98,4%) and least common in eThekwini (83,7%) and Tshwane (83,5%).

Enhancing regulatory measures

Strong regulation is critical to achieve water security in South Africa, in terms of water quality (in rivers and taps) balancing demand and supply, ensuring the safety of dams, and being resilient to climate change impacts. Authorisation for water abstraction, waste discharge, and dam safety, and setting the charges for the use of raw water and the discharge of effluent are some of the tools used by the DWS to regulate the water and sanitation sector.

Standards for water and sanitation services provision and associated tariffs are also governed by the Municipal Systems Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011) and the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003). There are significant challenges in ensuring that the water and sanitation authority sets appropriate tariffs that cover costs, including operation and maintenance costs, and that promote water use efficiency.

In addition to the national water and sanitation policies and legislation, water and sanitation authorites are responsible for developing by-laws that, amongst others, enable regulation of water supply and sanitation provision and use within its area of jurisdiction. The South African Bureau of Standards also sets several water quality standards for the water sector, including drinking water standards and other relevant quidelines. Over the period ahead, the department will continue to

ensure the delivery of safe water and the effective management of wastewater through enforcing various regulatory measures and strengthening its oversight functions. To this end, the blue drop, green drop and no drop regulatory standards are in place to improve asset management practices in municipalities.

Over the MTEF period, the department expects to support 32 district municipalities with developing water and sanitation reliability plans and monitoring the compliance of all water services authorities with regulatory standards.

Over the same period, the department aims to ensure that 80% of applications to authorise water-use are finalised within 90 days and that 963 wastewater systems are assessed for compliance against green drop regulatory requirements.

For activities related to water resources, R270.7 million over the MTEF period is allocated for regulatory compliance in the Water Resources Regulation subprogramme in the Water Resources Management programme; and R220.9 million is allocated for oversight in the Water Resources Institutional Oversight subprogramme in the Water Resources Management programme.

For activities related to water services, R323.9 million over the MTEF period is allocated for regulatory compliance and R71 million is allocated for oversight in the Water Services Regulation subprogramme in the Water Services Management programme.

Protecting and restoring infrastructure

The department will continue to invest in water resources and implement projects such as the phase 2D of the Olifants River water resource development project, the Mokolo-Crocodile water augmentation project, the raising of the Tzaneen and Hazelmere dams, and the Umdloti River development project.

Accordingly, spending in the Water Resources Management programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.7%, from R3.6 billion in 2021/22 to R4.9 billion in 2024/25. This includes spending of R2.1 billion over the medium term to raise the Clanwilliam Dam wall.

Ensuring that infrastructure is protected and restored

Over the medium term, two mega, 24 large and 28 small regional bulk infrastructure projects are expected to be implemented and finalised. These projects and related activities are carried out in the Water Services Management programme, spending in which is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.6%, from R12.2 billion in 2021/22 to R13.9 billion in 2024/25.

Included in this spending is an additional allocation of R3.6 billion over the medium term for the Olifants-Ebenezer water supply scheme, the lower Umkhomazi bulk water scheme, and the bulk potable water and remedial works programme in George local municipality.

Legislation

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 enshrines the basic human right to have access to sufficient water, as well as a safe and healthy environment. Government fulfils these rights through the DWS, assisted by specific legislation, including the:

 National Water Act of 1998, which ensures that South Africa's water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner, for the benefit of all people;

- Water Services Act of 1997, which prescribes the legislative duty of municipalities as water-service authorities to provide water supply and sanitation according to national standards and norms. It also regulates water boards as important water service providers and gives the executive authority and responsibility to the Minister of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation to support and strengthen the capacity of municipalities to manage their own affairs, exercise their powers and perform their functions;
- Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), which provides for the promotion of water-related research through the Water Research Commission (WRC) and the Water Research Fund; and
- National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), which provides for cooperative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that promote cooperative governance and procedures for coordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state.

Budae

The DWS was allocated R17.735 billion for the 2021/22 financial year. The department's total budget over the medium term is R59.6 billion. Transfers and subsidies to departmental agencies, public corporations and municipalities comprise the largest share of the budget, amounting to R34.9 billion over the MTEF period.

Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.6%, from R17.7 billion in 2021/22 to R20.9 billion in 2024/25, mainly due to additional allocations of R5.3 billion over the medium term for capital projects involving water resource and regional bulk infrastructure.

As a result of the expected decrease in the number of personnel from 3 787 in 2021/22 to 3 520 in 2024/25 due to natural attrition, expenditure on compensation of employees is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 0.6%, from R1.9 billion in 2021/22 to R1.8 billion in 2024/25.

Challenges in Water and Sanitation

A number external and internal environment matters affect the DWS's ability to deliver on its mandate. Some of these present various challenges and opportunities impacting on its operations, influencing planning decisions and the required trade-offs. This results in the prioritisation of certain interventions and programmes over others, taking into consideration the required resourcing and associated risks.

Deteriorating water ecosystems

South Africa's aquatic ecosystems include seven of the world's freshwater Eco regions, and are characterised by a wide range of river, wetland and estuarine ecosystem types. Many of these aquatic ecosystems make up the country's ecological infrastructure – nature's equivalent of built infrastructure that generates and delivers benefits in the water value chain.

Ecological infrastructure is currently an under-realised asset that can play a significant role in enhancing returns-on-investment in built infrastructure (e.g. dams), especially if its maintenance is explicitly incorporated into the planning and construction of built infrastructure. Many of the high value aquatic ecological infrastructure assets are

poorly protected, and in some areas of the country are under severe pressure, from intensive agriculture, mining and urban sprawl that results in loss or degradation of ecosystems. Like built infrastructure, ecological infrastructure needs to be maintained, and in some cases restored, in order for its socio-economic benefits to be realised.

It is estimated that South Africa has lost over 50% of its wetlands, and of the remaining 3.2 million ha, a third are already in a poor condition limiting their ability to inter alia regulate water flow and purify water. The loss and degradation of ecological infrastructure negatively affects system yield and increases water-related risks.

Degraded wetlands, for example, lose their ability to release water in times of drought, or to recharge groundwater supplies. Degraded ecological infrastructure increases the vulnerability of people and built infrastructure to floods and increases maintenance and repair costs on built infrastructure. It is often more cost effective to rehabilitate ecological infrastructure than to be faced with an ongoing need to repair or replace built infrastructure.

Programmes

Water resources management

The purpose of the programme is to ensure the protection, use, development, conservation, management and control of water resources in a sustainable manner for the benefit of all people and the environment. It provides for the development of a knowledge base for proper planning and informed decision making. It also provides for the development of effective policies and procedures as well as oversight of all water resource management institutions.

South Africa as a water scarce country is faced with the challenge of protecting water resources (quantity and quality) and the need to utilise water for social and economic development. Some of the country's water resources are overused (polluted, the available water is already allocated and the surrounding environment is in a poor state). Other water resources are hardly used and the dependent environment is still in a natural state. However, South Africa has very few water resources that are still in a natural state and hence the requirement for different levels of protection.

The National Water Act of 1998 provides decision-making tools to achieve a balance between protecting and utilising water resources to ensure that water is available for current and future human use. The classification system and the determination of the resource quality objectives are two mechanisms that are used to balance protection and development. The classification system states the acceptable impacts on the water resource and the unacceptable impacts in order to protect the resource.

It also states the amount of water that can be used from the water resource. The classes, therefore, allow for a grouping of water resources of those that are in a very good state and those that are in a very poor state. The resource quality objectives are an indication of the required level of protection for each water resource. The objectives, therefore, state the desired water quantity and quality, condition of the instream and riparian (river bank) habitat, as well as the condition of the aquatic animal and plant life.

The NWSMP indicates that by 2040, treated acid mine drainage and desalinated seawater will make a significant contribution to South Africa's water mix, ground water usage will increase, and the over-reliance on surface water will reduce. Although some large surface

water schemes are currently planned and developed, South Africa is approaching full utilisation of available surface water yields and is running out of suitable sites for developing large dams.

The water re-use could guarantee availability of water supply (particularly for non-potable water uses); substantially lower water bill; supplement industry's profitability by harvesting valuable resources contained in wastewater; and practice more environmentally sound water usage operations. Although the NWSMP indicates a planned reduction in the reliance of surface water, there will be a development of strategic water resources infrastructure projects — Lesotho Highlands Water Project Phase 2, uMkhomazi Water Project, Mokolo Crocodile (West) Water Augmentation project and many more.

The recent water-related disasters have shown that water security is significantly impacted owing to the delays in implementing certain infrastructure projects as well as water demand management. Although many scholars suggest the diversification of the water mix as a way to respond to water insecurity; this would not be sufficient to balance supply and demand if water demand management is not implemented. Climate change is projected to increase the variability of rainfall throughout the country, and to reduce average rainfall. However, the total water supply requirements in the country will increase due to population and associated economic growth.

There is a need to optimise the water mix which is currently strongly dominated by surface water, with some groundwater and return flows. The delayed reaction of groundwater to climate change impacts and other stresses such as land-use change is one of the motivating factors for its increased use. In the face of climate change, groundwater, which will not experience the increased evaporation that will impact on surface water as temperatures increase, will become increasingly important. Artificial recharge of aquifers will be an important element of water management.

The National Water Act of 1998 requires the establishment of national monitoring and information systems, for all aspects of water resources. There is a well-established network of monitoring points that provide for the collection of data and information to assess among other things water quantity and quality as well as water use. It further includes information on the ecological properties of water resources, both surface and groundwater. The development, maintenance and refurbishment of gauging weirs seeks to improve the coverage of rainfall and runoff gauging that has deteriorated and in some instances no longer functional.

Strong regulation is critical to achieve water security in South Africa, in terms of water quality (in rivers and taps) . An incentive-based regulation initiative pursuing excellence in wastewater service management was introduced to create a paradigm shift from minimum requirement compliance towards continued risk management. The Green Drop Report reviews the water and sanitation authorites compliance with the requirements for wastewater service management

One of the main mechanisms of ensuring access to sufficient water, protection of the environment, and reallocation of water to advance the previously disadvantaged communities is to control water use. Water use registration regulates the manner in which water can be used. Regulations indicate that process of water use applications is undertaken within a period of 300 days of submitting such application.

However, the Framework Agreement for the Jobs Summit requires a review of the turnaround time for considering water use license applications. This is essential in the effective implementation of the various projects particularly emerging farming enterprises in the agricultural sector. The aim of setting of waste discharge standards is to ensure that the aquatic ecosystem will not be compromised.

It also seeks to ensure that the quality will always comply with the requirements for basic human needs and other economic uses, bearing in mind that at least some basic treatment process will be applied before the water is used. It, therefore, supports the pricing strategy in differentiating between different types of water uses and water users as it affects the charges for different uses and users. It is one mechanism that the pricing strategy achieves equity.

Compliance, monitoring and enforcement is one of the priority focus areas identified in the second edition of the National Water Resources Strategy. It is essential to support water allocation and water allocation reform to ensure that water is used according to authorisation conditions, and by legally authorised water users.

The National Water Act of 1998 provides for the establishment and transformation of institutions to assist in giving effect to DWS's mandate. The enactment of the National Water Act of 1998 provided for the establishment of the institutional framework for water resource management. To manage water resources at the catchment level, the National Water Act of 1998 provides for the establishment of catchment management agencies that must ensure that all interested and affected stakeholders, including poor communities that have been disadvantaged and marginalized, participate in the decisions of the agencies. It also provides for the transformation of existing irrigation boards into water user associations that include emerging farmers.

Water Services Management

The programme addresses the water and sanitation services provision across water and sanitation value chain in support to water service authorities. The integration of bulk and retail water services to improve the coherence of the sector and to realise economies of scale and efficient use of water. It also provides for the development of effective policies, strategies, guidelines and procedures and plans as well as oversight and regulation of all water service management institutions.

The Municipal Strategic Self-Assessment is an annual review on the effectiveness of water services management within water and sanitation authorites. The authorities, which may be a district, local, or metropolitan municipality undertake a structured self-evaluation of their current and expected future performance in providing water and sanitation services.

The review is based on five "essence questions" for 18 "business health attributes" related to service delivery in general and water and sanitation services in particular. The Municipal Strategic Self-Assessment reports for each water and sanitation authority provide an insight particularly on the strengths and vulnerabilities in terms of water and sanitation service delivery.

Water conservation and water demand management targets will be set for all water use sectors (namely agriculture, industries, mining, power generation, municipal and domestic water supply to reduce total the water requirements from existing inf astructure. In addition, through the existing grant mechanisms, water conservation and water demand "strategies would be implemented by supporting projects that will directly impact on bulk infrastructure requirements. Domestic rainwater harvesting should be encouraged as a way of improving household

Water and Sanitation

food security, income savings and improved reliability of water supply, especially in rural areas. Although mostly only suitable as augmentation, it has been proven that, with good management, rainwater harvesting can yield more economical water than formal municipal water supply.

An incentive based regulation initiative pursuing excellence in drinking water quality was introduced to create a paradigm shift from minimum requirement compliance towards continued risk management.

The Blue Drop report reviews the water and sanitation authorites compliance with the requirements for drinking water quality management. The review is based on five "essence questions" for 18 "business health attributes" related to service delivery in general and water and sanitation services in particular.

The National Water Act of 1998 provides for the establishment and transformation of institutions to assist in giving effect to the DWS's mandate. The enactment of the Water Services Act of 1997, provided for the establishment of the institutional framework for water services.

The NDP indicates that while local government will retain responsibility for ensuring adequate service provision in its areas, regional water utilities will provide services where municipalities have inadequate technical and financial capacities.

Entities

Breede-Gouritz Catchment Management Agency

The agency plays an important role in protecting, using, developing, conserving, managing and controlling water resources in a cooperative manner within the boundaries of the Breede-Gouritz catchment area.

Over the medium term, the agency plans to continue engaging with users within its area of operation as part of its Public Participation programme, while monitoring and authorising their water usage. At a cost of R176 million over the MTEF period, the agency plans to finalise 85% of user registrations as part of its authorisation project.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.8%, from R75.1 million in 2021/22 to R94.2 million in 2024/25. The agency's main cost driver is compensation of employees, which accounts for an estimated 64.1%(R168.9 million) of its total expenditure over the period ahead. The agency derives all its revenue through transfers from the department. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Consolidated water boards

The water boards are primarily mandated to provide bulk industrial and potable water services to municipalities and industries within their areas of operation, as mandated by the Water Services Act of 1997. The water boards vary in size, activities, customer mix, revenue base and capacity. Rand Water and Umgeni Water are the two largest water boards, whose combined bulk sales accounted for an estimated 81.5% of total sales in 2021/22.

Consolidated expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.8%, from R24.6 billion in 2021/22 to R31.7 billion in 2024/25. The water boards' main cost drivers include the purchasing of raw water, pumping and chemicals, accounting for an estimated 76.4% (R68.5 billion) of total expenditure over the period ahead. Their consolidated revenue is set to increase at an average annual rate of 11.1%, from R29.1 billion in 2021/22 to R39.3 billion in 2024/25, as the sale of bulk water is expected to increase from R26.9 billion in 2021/22 to R37.1 billion 2024/25.

Inkomati-Usuthu Catchment Management Agency

The agency plays a major role in the use, protection and development of water resources in the Inkomati-Usuthu water management area. The agency's water resource management functions include resource allocation, protection, use, conservation, monitoring, planning, development and operation.

Over the medium term, the agency will continue focusing on monitoring, planning and developing activities to manage water resources, and ensuring that all authorisations and recommendations related to water quality are forwarded to the department.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 11.8%, from R139.7 million in 2021/22 to R195.4 million in 2024/25. Transfers from the department account for an estimated 66.5% (R373.4 million) of the agency's revenue over the period ahead, with the remainder generated through licence fees for water use. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Rand Water

Rand Water is mandated to supply quality bulk potable water within its area of supply. The water board's distribution network includes more than 3 056 kilometres (km) of large diameter pipelines, feeding 58 strategically located service reservoirs, with customers including metropolitan municipalities, local municipalities, and mines and industries in and around Gauteng, supplying, on average, 3.7 million litres of water daily.

To meet projected demand and sell 1.7 million megalitres of water in 2024/25, the water board will invest in infrastructure refurbishment projects while maintaining an average loss of non-revenue water at 4.6% over the medium term. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.8%, from R14.4 billion in 2021/22 to R19 billion in 2024/25, driven mainly by water purification and pumping costs.

Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.8%, from R17.8 billion in 2021/22 to R24.2 billion in 2024/25, mainly driven by projected tariff increases and increased sales.

Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA)

The TCTA was established in 1986 as a specialised liability management entity. It is responsible for financing and implementing the development of bulk raw water infrastructure and providing treasury management services to the DWS.

The authority plays an important role in providing financial advisory services, such as structuring and raising project finance, managing debt and setting tariffs; project implementation services; and other technical support to the department and water boards.

By 2024/25, the authority will merge with the Water Trading Entity to form the National Water Resources Infrastructure Agency. Over the medium term, the authority will continue with the implementation of the Berg River-Voëlvlei augmentation scheme, the Mzimvubu water project and phase 2 of Mokolo-Crocodile water augmentation project.

In support of water demand management in the Mgeni system, the authority plans to build an 81m2 dam and conveyance infrastructure. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 24.2%, from R7.9 billion in 2021/22 to R15.1 billion in 2024/25. The authority projects a surplus of R5.6 billion over the period ahead mainly due to delays in the delivery tunnel for the Lesotho Highlands water

project, while revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 27.3%, from R8.4 billion in 2021/22 to R17.4 billion in 2024/25, mainly due to funding for construction received from the Water Trading Entity.

Umgeni Water

Umgeni Water was established in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997 to provide water and sanitation services in its service area, which comprises mostly rural areas in KwaZulu- Natal and the eThekwini metropolitan area.

The water board supplies water to approximately six million consumers. Its ongoing objective is to support socio-economic development through water infrastructure investment in its area of operation. Accordingly, over the medium term, the water board will construct Phase 1 of the Greater Mpofana Regional Water Scheme, the Impendle Bulk Water Supply Scheme, and Phase 3 of the Maphumulo Bulk Water Supply Scheme, targeting largely indigent municipal areas. It also plans to implement the Umkhomazi-Mgeni transfer scheme to provide bulk potable water in the area.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.1%, from R4.3 billion in 2021/22 to R5 billion in 2024/25. Revenue is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 10.5%, from R5.2 billion in 2021/22 to R7 billion in 2024/25, mainly due to an expected increase in bulk water sales.

The Water Trading Entity

The Water Trading Entity's primary role is to manage water infrastructure and resources, and the sale of raw water. Over the medium term, the entity will continue to focus on maintaining existing water resource infrastructure and supplying bulk water to strategic users, such as large industrial companies, to stimulate and support economic development.

By 2024/25, the entity will merge with the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority to form the National Water Resources Infrastructure Agency. In supporting the long-term sustainability of water resources, the entity will implement 16 dam safety rehabilitation projects over the MTEF period. Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.9%, from R15.6 billion in 2021/22 to R18 billion in 2024/25. An additional R2.1 billion is allocated over period ahead to finalise the Olifants-Doorn River water resources project.

The entity expects to generate 82.8% (R50.8 billion) of its revenue through the sale of raw water. Total revenue is expected to be R60.8 billion over the MTEF period.

Water Research Commission

The WRC's mandate is to conduct research on water by determining needs and priorities for research, stimulating and funding water research, promoting the effective transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity building in the water sector.

Over the medium term, the commission plans to bridge knowledge gaps in the sector by prioritising research informed by government policies, needs and international trends. Accordingly, the commission's research will focus on the desalination of seawater, climate change modelling and water availability.

Expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5%, from R337 million in 2021/22 to R390.7 million in 2024/25. Spending on

Research and Development, and Innovation and Impact programmes account for an estimated 51% (R557.9 million) of the commission's total expenditure over the period ahead.

Compensation of employees is the commission's main cost driver, increasing at an average annual rate of 8.6%, from R113.6 million in 2021/22 to R145.5 million in 2024/25. The commission expects to derive 80.6% (R889 million) of its revenue over the MTEF period through the water research levy. Revenue is expected to increase in line with expenditure.

Policies and strategies

- Mine Water Management Policy: the policy seeks to balance the
 mining sector's economic development with the protection and
 ensuring sustainable use of water resources in a manner that
 is beneficial to all. It will provide a coherent and integrated South
 African approach for sustainable mine water management by
 building on existing strengths; addressing gaps and weaknesses
 and seizing identified opportunities relating to mine water
 management, including acid mine drainage.
- Sustainable Hydropower Generation Policy: the policy aims
 to support the long-term energy master plan that pursues
 hydropower as part of the energy mix. In addition, it will provide
 policy positions on the establishment and development
 of hydropower from infrastructure owned by the DWS as part of
 interventions that support and contribute towards sustainable
 power supply in South Africa.
- Integrated Water Quality Management Policy: the policy seeks
 to develop an intergovernmental water quality management
 approach that will facilitate an integrated response to address
 water quality management challenges in the country. The policy
 will also strengthen the existing integrated water quality
 management strategy that identified priority programmes
 to be implemented country-wide.
- National Water and Sanitation Bill: this is a consolidation of the National Water Act of 1998 and the Water Services Act of 1997 to a single legislation. It will clarify the legislative framework regarding water management across the water and sanitation value chain. It will further obviate the need for cross reading between the two Acts.
- National Water Resource Strategy 3 (NWRS-3): the strategy
 provides a framework for the protection, use, development,
 conservation, management and control of water resources for
 the country as a whole. The National Water Act of 1998
 requires the review of the NWRS at intervals of not more than
 five years and this is the third edition the strategy.
- Review of The Water Pricing Strategy: the strategy review seeks
 to improve the financial viability of government's bulk raw water
 business to ensure that this scarce resource is valued by
 all citizens. One of the major changes of the review is to replace
 the return on asset to future infrastructure-built charge over a
 10-year rolling period.
- National water and Sanitation Master Plan (NWSMP): the plan
 operationalises the NWRS and aims at mobilising commitments and
 efforts of all role players and stakeholders in the water and sanitation
 sector towards collectively achieving the desired future state of
 the sector, as defined by government's vision, goals and targets

until 2030. It provides a critical overview of the present state in the sector and the key challenges it is currently facing, together with a consolidated plan of actions required to enable the achievement of the set targets. The plan of actions will include a detailed schedule of consolidated and prioritised interventions, actions, investments, projects and initiatives. For each action, the plan defines specific intermediate and final targets, the parties responsible for their achievement, the deadlines for delivery and the estimated costs or other required resources. The achievements are monitored and evaluated annually and the plan is updated bi-annually to reflect the dynamics in the sector.

National Water Policy

The National Water Policy is underpinned by three fundamental principles for managing water resources: equity, (environmental) sustainability and efficiency. All water users who do not receive their water from a service provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of general authorisation, have a statutory obligation to register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses that must be registered are:

- · diversion of rivers and streams;
- · discharge of waste or water containing waste;
- storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 cubic m³ or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one ha in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission:
- local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works; and
- controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

To promote sustainable and equitable water resource management, the DWS has developed and continues to update a range of strategies for water management.

National Water Resource Strategy 2 (NWRS2)

The NWRS2 sets out the vision and strategic actions for effective water management, including the security of water supply, environmental degradation, and pollution of resources.

The NWRS2 outlines key challenges, constraints and opportunities in water resource management and proposes new approaches that ensure a collective and adequate response for the benefit of all people in South Africa.

The strategy also responds to the priorities set by government in the NDP and the National Water Act of 1998 imperatives that support sustainable development.

It is centred on these key objectives:

 Water supports development and the elimination of poverty and inequality. The strategy recognises that the manner in which water was allocated in the past was unequal and favoured certain sections of the population. The intention, therefore, is to redress past imbalances in the manner in which water was allocated, ensuring that water contributes to the economy and job creation.

 Water is protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner.

The NWRS2 also focuses on water conservation and the management of water demand as key priorities.

Raw Water Pricing Strategy

Since 1994, there have been continued efforts to reform and realign the water value chain so that it can achieve government's objectives. These include ensuring equitable access to water and sanitation, the sustainable use of water for social and economic benefit and ensuring the sustainability of water resources and water services delivery.

As part of this process, the DWS is looking at pricing, financing and economic regulation reforms in the water sector. This project reviews the Raw Water Pricing Strategy, develops infrastructure funding models and recommends an appropriate model and institutional arrangements for an economic regulator for water.

It is generally agreed that pricing and economic regulations play a key role in the provisioning of infrastructure by assuring necessary investments to support socio-economic growth and ensuring that services are widely available and accessible and priced at levels that support current and future needs.

The project will contribute to the following:

- the revision of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy to ensure equitable and appropriate raw water tariffs that will enable sustainable operation and management of raw water infrastructure, and will fund catchment management funding models for water resources infrastructure; and
- the establishment of an economic regulator for the entire water value chain.

The project is strategic in nature and will enable the DWS to have sound water-pricing policies, cost-reflective tariffs for the entire water value chain in South Africa and a good funding framework for infrastructure.

National Groundwater Strategy

Groundwater is a strategic resource in many parts of South Africa, especially in rural areas. It also plays an important role in the supply of water to small towns and villages in the drier parts of the country. There is considerable potential for additional development of groundwater resources to augment existing resources.

The need for improved groundwater management to ensure sustainable and efficient use of the resource was recognised in the NWRS1 and led to the formulation of a National Groundwater Strategy through which strategic actions were undertaken.

Reuse Strategy

The DWS has developed a Water Reuse Strategy to encourage informed decisions relating to water reuse. Reuse could be increased significantly with return flows in coastal cities, where it would otherwise drain into the sea. In coastal cities, water reuse and desalination compete as two options for water conservation. Reuse is becoming increasingly acceptable and feasible owing to increasing shortages, improved purification technology and decreasing treatment costs.

Membrane technologies, also used for desalination of seawater, have become more affordable and have improved. The reuse of treated wastewater would be managed to ensure public health safety.

Infrastructure upgrades and bilateral agreements

The DWS has made good progress with the preparatory work of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project, with Phase 2 underway. The project comprises the construction of Polihali Dam, which will provide an additional 465 million m3 of water per year, bringing the total to about 1 245 million m3 of water per year into the Integrated Vaal River System from Lesotho.

South Africa currently receives approximately 780 million m3 of water per year from Lesotho into its Integrated Vaal River System which supplies water to Gauteng and the surrounding areas. The Integrated Vaal River System needs to be urgently augmented in order for it to cope with the increasing water requirements.

Phase 1 of the Mokolo and Crocodile River West Water Augmentation Project, which will transfer water through a 46-km pipeline and pump station from the Mokolo Dam to the Lephalale area, is complete. A second pipeline will be constructed as Phase 2A of the project to transfer water from the Crocodile River (west) to the Lephalale area.

The raising of the Hazelmere Dam wall will incorporate a Piano Key Weir, which is cutting-edge technology in dam-building. The additional water that will become available from this project is aimed at ensuring the supply of water and supporting the development of human settlements, King Shaka Airport and the Dube TradePort. The construction of the dam wall is completed and the capacity of dam can be increased to 120% on impoundment of the previous dam level which shall be beneficial to water users.

The DWS is proceeding with the planning of the Mzimvubu Water Project, which entails the development of a multipurpose dam (the Ntabelanga) to supply new irrigation development, and the Laleni Dam for hydropower generation. It has initiated the raising of the Tzaneen Dam and construction of the new N'wamitwa Dam for the Groot Letaba River Water Development Project in Limpopo.

The first phase of the multi-phase Lesotho Highlands Water Project entailed the construction of Katse Dam, Mohale Dam, Matsoku Diversion Tunnel and the Muela hydropower station. Lesotho benefits from a sustainable, independent energy supply that will meet the country's electricity requirements and royalty revenue from the project, while South Africa benefits from the security of supply of high quality water that is transferred into the Vaal River system for domestic and industrial use in Gauteng.

As per the provisions of the Phase 2 agreement between governments of Lesotho and South Africa, the implementation of the Kobong Pump Storage Scheme or any other hydro scheme was subject to the outcome of a joint feasibility study. The technical and the economic feasibility studies for the Kobong Pump Storage Scheme were completed in 2013. However, the outcome was that further studies should be undertaken. These included, a market study, an integration study, geotechnical investigations and legal and commercial arrangements.

Lesotho secured funding from the World Bank to undertake the above studies, including convectional hydropower options. The further feasibility studies have looked at pumped storage and conventional hydropower options. The decision was taken to defer the pump storage

option (due to prevailing economic conditions) and advance the conventional options. This entails one site at Oxbow on Malibamatšo River and two sites on the Sengu River.

The topography of the region allows for the possibility of developing hydro-power generation in Lesotho in conjunction with the provision of water supplies to South Africa. For South Africa, construction of this dam and related infrastructure will guarantee the desired level of water availability in Gauteng and the Vaal River system in the most cost-effective manner.

In parallel with water conservation measures in the Vaal River, it will also influence the improvement of water quality amongst many benefits. Phase 2 water delivery and hydropower generation are expected to be commissioned at the same time – early 2026, and the project close out is forecast for December 2028. The Lesotho Highlands Water Project has two main goals:

to contribute to South Africa's economic development by providing South Africa with a supply of low-cost, high-quality water to meet the household and industrial water needs of Gauteng, the industrial heartland of South Africa: and

to contribute to Lesotho's economic development by using the water transfer system to increase the country's capacity for generation of electricity that will meet its requirements and earn it revenue in the form of royalties on the water transferred to South Africa.

Each country has the opportunity to undertake ancillary developments within its borders. These developments include the provision of water for irrigation, potable water supply, the development of tourism, fisheries and other projects for economic and social development.

Rainwater harvesting

The National Rainwater Harvesting Strategy is an adaptation to climate change. Climate change poses significant social, economic and environmental risks, especially in developing countries. This then necessitates the implementation of high impact climate change response measures that will realise considerable mitigation, adaptation and broader socio-economic benefits.

It is in this context that the DWS, in partnership with the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE), is developing the National Rainwater Harvesting Strategy to provide a roadmap for enhanced planning, development and scaled-up implementation of Rainwater Harvesting as a key component of South Africa's water resources and efforts to enhance climate resilience.

The strategy will provide guidance for the implementation of a series of action programmes towards the mainstreaming of Rainwater Harvesting in South Africa. This National Rainwater Harvesting Strategy will also help serve as the guiding tool for district and local municipalities to effectively and economically put Rainwater Harvesting into practice.

The DWS also supports a national Rainwater Harvesting programme, which has a narrow but important focus on the construction of above and below-ground rainwater storage tanks by rural households for food gardens and other productive water uses.

Several municipalities now use roof rainwater tanks for domestic purposes. These have been found to be particularly effective when used in conjunction with other water supply options. Though there are no hard figures yet on how many cubic millimetres per year Rainwater Harvesting can contribute, it is an option that can be implemented in a

short timeframe. Rainwater Harvesting gives people who live in areas where reticulation has not as yet been implemented access to water. The programme targets rural communities through the installation of tanks and awareness campaigns.

A resource guideline has been developed to assist municipalities that are providing Rainwater Harvesting systems to communities as an interim service or to reduce demand on their water supply systems with best practices. In some areas Rainwater Harvesting systems are provided as drought relief but the DWS is using the programme to advise municipalities to plan for alternative water sources or water mix, since municipalities seem to rely on surface water for water services and a lot of water schemes are failing because of dependency on a single source.

Desalination Strategy

The DWS has developed a supporting desalination strategy, which also includes desalination as a technology for treating water other than seawater for water reuse. Desalination of seawater could potentially provide an unlimited resource of fresh water. However, the rising cost of energy may be a deterrent.

As with other infrastructure projects with potential environmental impacts, the planning for a desalination plant will have to undergo an environmental impact assessment in compliance with the NEMA of 1998. The DWS will ensure that desalination is considered as an option for meeting future water requirements, in particular in coastal cities where there is sufficient electricity for desalination.

The target is not only to implement desalination in several locations in South Africa, but also to become an international knowledge centre in this particular field.

Resnurces

South Africa's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The precipitation per year for Africa is 22 300 km3, of which the evaporation rate is 80% and the runoff rate is 20%. Southern Africa only has 12.25% of the total water in Africa, making it a highly arid region.

Rainfall is, however, relatively higher in the northern and eastern parts of southern Africa (the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Zambia and Mozambique) with the drier parts of the region including Namibia, Botswana and South Africa.

South Africa has a mean annual rainfall of approximately 500 mm, compared to the world's average of 860 mm. It is characterised by low, variably distributed rainfall as well as high evaporation rates, resulting in the uneven distribution of run-off across the country.

The country experiences severe and prolonged hydrological droughts, which may last as long as 10 years at a time. The quality of water in South Africa is also negatively impacted by dissolved salts from host rocks in certain areas such as Namaqualand in the Northern Cape.

The surface water potential of the major drainage systems in South Africa are dominated by the Orange and the Limpopo river basins, which are shared with neighbouring countries. Over 60% of the country's river flow comes from 20% of the land area. To overcome the uneven spread of water resources and to manage floods and drought, more than two thirds of the country's mean annual rainfall is currently stored in dams. The country's water security is mainly reliant on fresh surface water,

with groundwater and return flows underused. However, the freshwater available for use is currently at its limit, and alternative sources, such as groundwater need to be further exploited.

In addition, the country shares four major rivers with six neighbouring states, namely Zimbabwe, Botswana, Mozambique, Eswatini, Lesotho and Namibia. Therefore, international agreements on water sharing are in place on all of these river basins.

There is well-developed infrastructure, with more than 4 395 registered dams in South Africa, including 350 dams belonging to the DWS, and a number of large-scale, inter-basin water transfer schemes. Water services infrastructure covers more than 35 000 km of bulk pipelines and 200 000 km of reticulation systems that are managed by 152 water service authorities and providers.

However, this existing infrastructure needs maintenance and the country is already experiencing challenges with lack of focus on sustainable asset management. The schemes also require efficient and effective operations, for which specialised skills and capabilities at all levels are needed.

Major challenges are experienced regarding the capabilities of water services authorities to effectively manage the schemes on a sustainable basis. This issue needs to be dealt with decisively through a review of the mandates and policies in relation to the management of water infrastructure, and available capacity.

Work is also required in terms of rolling-out the establishment of appropriate institutions, such as regional water utilities, as the development of tourism, fisheries and other projects for economic and social development.

Groundwater resources

An estimated 80 000 to 100 000 boreholes are being drilled annually. The National Groundwater Archive is a web-enabled database system that allows capturing, viewing, modifying and extraction (dissemination) of groundwater-related data.

The DWS has a legal obligation to ensure that water resources (including groundwater) are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner. The National Water Act of 1998 requires the establishment of national monitoring and information systems as the availability of information about water resources is regarded as critical to the main purpose of the Act.

The need for groundwater data and information continues to increase to assist in planning to provide water to people, monitoring, drought relief and climate change.

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply, represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa – it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

The lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts means that two thirds of South Africa's surface area depend largely on groundwater. Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is very important.

Through government's commitment towards meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered, small-scale user situation. Groundwater also contributes considerably to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is about 6 000 million m3 a year, while some 4 000 million m3 of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface water flow annually.

Southern Africa also has large hidden underground water reserves, with 12 to 15 aquifer systems, of which three are considered very important for the future. In South Africa, a substantial resource lies in a massive dolomite aquifer system that covers a vast area, extending from Springs and Brakpan, east of Johannesburg, to Lenasia, south of the city; Zuurbekom, Carltonville and Magaliesberg on the West Rand; Kuruman in the Northern Cape, and even as far as parts of Botswana. The Witwatersrand mining basin's aquifer storage capacity is about the size of Lake Kariba.

Managing and developing water resources

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water management areas, of which 11 share international rivers. Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable water.

To underscore its commitment to the pursuit of universal access to water, the DWS is investing in new infrastructure and maintaining and rehabilitating dysfunctional systems to ensure operational efficiency. This is particularly relevant to developing water infrastructure to meet the specific needs of different rural communities. Closely related to rural development is the need for mainstream support to local government to sustain the infrastructure underpinning efficient service delivery to communities.

Managing water quality and wastewater

To ensure compliance with minimum water quality norms and standards, the DWS started the annual Blue Drop and Green Drop assessments to guarantee that water and wastewater systems are managed according to set norms and standards. The department has set a target of 99% compliance with drinking water quality standards, and 80% compliance with wastewater effluent standards.

This incentive-based regulation system aims to improve the quality of municipal drinking water and management of wastewater. Because of the scale and magnitude of resources needed for the National Certification Programme, the Green Drop and Blue Drop programmes take place every second year, alternating with each other.

In a programme's "gap" year, progress in the wastewater sector is tracked and reported via the assessment of the cumulative risk status of treatment systems.

Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs)

SIP 18, which was approved by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC), aims to address water supply and sanitation backlogs to millions of households.

The PICC's 18 SIPs are divided into geographic, energy, spatial and social infrastructure development projects. These projects – headed by different departments – cover more than 150 specific infrastructure interventions in rail, road and ports, dams, irrigation systems, sanitation and electricity.

This 10-year plan will address the estimated backlog of adequate water to 1.4 million households and that of basic sanitation to 2.1 million households. SIP 18 is expected to fast-track the issuing of water licences, expand the capacity of the water system, speed up build programmes, address backlog projects and rehabilitate and upgrade existing water and sanitation infrastructure.

The project, which focuses on priority small towns and rural areas where water service delivery is a problem, is also expected to create jobs, raise the quality of service delivery of water around the country and extend water supply to areas that are either underserviced or unserviced.

The DWS identified several projects that will be used to drive SIP 18, including the Sedibeng Regional Sewer Scheme – a R5-billion project to be implemented in the area. Rand Water's BG3 pipeline, which is sub-Saharan Africa's largest water pipeline, running from the Vaal Dam to its Zoekfontein Plant, 8.6 km away, will increase water distribution in this district and surrounding areas.

The BG3 pipeline runs adjacent to Rand Water's existing BG1 and BG2 pipelines that supply water to Gauteng and parts of the neighbouring Free State, Mpumalanga and North West.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project was designed to resolve the water supply problems to Eskom's Duvha and Matla power stations in Mpumalanga.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project supplements the Komati Water Scheme from the Vaal Eastern Subsystem to help Eskom overcome its water supply challenges. The interaction of the water resources of the Komati, Usutu and Vaal River systems provides a higher assurance of water supply to all Eskom's thermal power stations and other water users in Mpumalanga. The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project will deliver an additional 57 million m3 of water a year to the Komati Water Scheme.

Water Allocation Reform Programme

The Water Allocation Reform Programme's objectives are to ensure equitable access to water, eradicate poverty and promote social and economic development. The programme's priorities are to meet the water needs of historically disadvantaged people, ensure their participation in water resources management and promote the beneficial and efficient use of water in the public interest.

Licences are required for storage and use of water, among other things. To facilitate the availability of water for historically disadvantaged people, attention is also given to the allocation of water following principles of equity and sustainability.

Water and Sanitation

Women in Water

The Women in Water Project aims to strengthen the active participation of rural women in water resource management. Women identify water-related challenges in their communities and conceptualise ideas to address them. They are registered for Women in Water awards. The national winners receive cash prizes which are used for further project development and implementation.

Learning Academy

There is a shortage of skills in the water and sanitation sector. The DWS, through its Learning Academy External Bursary Scheme, provides bursaries yearly to aid in closing this gap. Applications are open to people who would like to pursue careers that are in line with the department's core business.

The department scheme boasts an all-inclusive package recognised in South Africa as being highly competitive. The DWS External Bursary Scheme aims to attract exceptional young and innovative talent to the department.

Students pursuing the following fields of study are eligible to apply: analytic chemistry, aquatic sciences, biochemistry, biological sciences, water and sanitation, geographical information systems, civil/electrical/mechanical engineering, water resource management, environmental law/management/science, water utilisation, cartography, geochemistry, geo-hydrology, geology, hydrology, limnology, microbiology, surveying and water care.

The purpose of the learning academy is to:

- investigate technical and scarce skills development needs within the department;
- address technical and scarce skills gaps in the overall water supply value chain;
- address scarce skills gaps in specific technical areas of the department;
- plan and build capacity for medium- and long-term needs of the department and the water and sanitation sector;
- develop and implement structured training for engineering and scientific graduate trainees;
- develop and propose interventions (regarding mentoring, skills, knowledge transfer and professional registration processes) with the Engineering Council of South Africa, the South African Council for Natural and Scientific Professions and the Surveying Council of South Africa in line with the Occupations Specific Dispensation.

Management of water conservation and demand

Although South Africa has been classified as a water-scarce country, water from the source to the consumer is often lost as a result of inappropriate and inadequate asset management.

Lack of education on the part of the consumer also leads to inefficiency in the day-to-day use of water. The loss of water depletes the country's resources and reduces revenue to water services authorities.

Water leaks account for nearly 36% of the nation's unaccounted for water and costs the country about R7 billion annually. The DWS is also putting in place medium to long-term interventions that are intended to reduce the risks for water scarcity in the future.

These include:

rainwater Harvesting (drinking water, water for livestock, water for irrigation);

- · integrating groundwater and surface water use in the future;
- · desalination at a large scale;
- investing in innovative water-saving solutions, such as the Drop-the-Block Campaign;
- incorporating all municipal and privately-owned dams into the management system or the future;
- implementing further transfer schemes to improve drought resilience:
- building additional storage capacity; and
- rolling out large-scale reuse of water (recycling of effluent, focus on coastal towns where treated effluent is disposed of via sea outfalls and not taken into account in return flows).

Enhanced local government support approach

A rapid response unit in the DWS addresses poor performance of water and wastewater systems, which has resulted in community protests in some cases.

The unit deals with proactive and reactive non-compliance cases of municipal service delivery. The unit's specialists enable the department to intervene directly in high-risk operational situations, where the lives of citizens and the environment are under threat because of water and wastewater treatment failures.

Freshwater Programme

Recognising the value and threatened status of South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, and the need to build competence and leadership in this area, the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) has established a programme focusing on freshwater biodiversity.

The programme aims to grow and consolidate freshwater activities within SANBI. The Freshwater Programme focuses on supporting collaborative freshwater initiatives. These include Working for Wetlands, the National Wetland Inventory, National Freshwater Ecosystems Priority Areas Project, a wetlands mitigation banking scheme with the Grasslands Programme and coal-mining industry, and water-related payments for ecosystem services pilot projects.

Key to the programme's operation will be the further development of strategic relationships with other organisations with shared objectives. It includes managing the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of Water and Sanitation, Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment, and Agriculture. Land Reform and Rural Development.

Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

Monitoring programmes

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs. The evaporation and rainfall station network has 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still operating in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West. There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through a cellular short message system.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges monitors

rainwater quality. The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increased drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The formal protection, restoration and rehabilitation of wetlands is strengthened through improved land-use planning, land and development management policies, as well as operational and regulatory means at national, provincial and local level.

Adopting of ecosystem-based approaches and implementing the open-space planning and management programmes adds impetus to the protection of these systems and associated services, especially at local government level. It requires integrated approaches and the involvement of multiple sectors, particularly those dealing with human settlements, development and planning.

The DWS is also designing programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of the country's water resources.

National Chemical Monitoring Programme

The programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. The main water-quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium-absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is because of high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments.

Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic). Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly because of poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are prone to cholera outbreaks.

Integrated Water Quality Management Strategy

The pollution of South Africa's water resources, both surface and underground water, not only adversely affects human and environmental health but has severe consequences for the economy and social well-being. In response to the country's need to take an improved integrated approach to Water Quality Management, the DWS recently developed the Integrated Water Quality Management Strategy.

This strategy sets forth a number of objectives, each supported by key actions, which collectively aim to ensure that government, in partnership with private sector and civil society, secures water that is fit for use for all. These actions range from the need to strengthen institutions, to the need to improve monitoring and information management, and to strengthen regulation of activities that degrade water quality.

Managing water resources under a changing climate

With climate change, water resources that are already under pressure due to increasing water demand will be under even greater stress in the future. Already, physical evidence suggests that there are changes in historical rain patterns and intensities, as observed in the increasing temperature and drought trends.

Water and Sanitation

Water distribution in South Africa is spatially skewed, with decreasing rainfall and increasing evaporation from east to west. Even though rainfall trends cannot be clearly defined, it can be said with high confidence that potential impacts of climate change in South Africa on water availability will be negative. Just with increasing temperatures alone, without considering other climatic and non-climatic factors, evaporation rates will increase and that will affect water availability. Climate change impacts on the water sector will thus, amplify the current existing conditions.

The DWS has made good progress in trying to understand the impacts of climate change on the different water management areas through conducting Risk and Vulnerability Assessment Studies, and accordingly suggesting adaptation strategies as appropriate.

These studies reveal that catchments in the eastern side of the country, for example, the Mzimvubu-Tsitsikamma water management area, rainfall has shown an increasing trend, and the area is also projected to experience increasing rain days both in the intermediate and distant futures. This, however, comes with other challenges such as severe erosion and siltation.

Evaporation rates, in most cases, have been shown to exceed precipitation, becoming relatively higher in areas where it rains less, for example, in the Lower Vaal and Lower Orange catchments. What needs to be considered even further is not only the direct impacts of climate change on the water sector, but secondary impacts on other water dependent sectors, such as agriculture, mining and energy. As such, any adverse impacts of climate change, may negatively affect progress towards development in a number of economic sectors in the country.

National Water and Sanitation Master Plan

The development of the NWSMP aims at mobilising the commitment and efforts of all role players and stakeholders in the water and sanitation sector towards collectively achieving the desired future state of the sector, as defined by government's vision, goals and targets until 2030 (NDP, Sustainable Development Goals, MTSFs and other key drivers).

It will provide a critical overview of the present state in the sector and the key challenges it is currently facing, together with a consolidated plan of actions required to enable the achievement of the set targets

The plan of actions includes a detailed schedule of consolidated and prioritised interventions, actions, investments, projects and initiatives. For each action, the plan defines specific intermediate and final targets, the parties responsible for their achievement, the deadlines for delivery and the estimated costs or other required resources.

The achievements will be monitored and evaluated annually by a dedicated project management unit managed by the DWS. The master plan will be updated bi-annually to reflect the dynamics in the sector. It will act as the implementation tool for the Water and Sanitation Resources and Services Strategy, and the two documents will be aligned.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP is a national programme managed by Resource Quality Services with support from the WRC, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and various regional and provincial authorities.

It is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems. It focuses on the

biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa;
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the DWS, and other role players, to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner; and
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use, and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

The NAEHMP comprises three separate monitoring programmes, namely:

- · The River Eco-status Monitoring Programme (REMP): This is the oldest component of the NAEHMP. It focuses on the monitoring of ecological conditions of river ecosystems as it is reflected by the system drivers and biological responses. The basis of the REMP is the establishment of a reference condition derived from best available information. Present conditions (ecological category) for the different indicators are determined as a change from reference. The REMP is built upon the use of particular models incorporating existing approved Eco-status models. The assessment can be done on a subquaternary or site level and includes the use of the Index of Habitat Integrity, Fish Response Assessment Index, Macroinvertebrate Response Assessment Index, Vegetation Response Assessment Index and Integrated Eco-status. Monitoring is conducted on a quarterly basis and technical reports produced annually. Currently a number of provinces are only partially implementing the REMP. focussing mostly on the macroinvertebrates and habitat components but the programme is fully implemented in the Inkomati-Usuthu as well as the Breede-Gouritz, Berg-Olifants and Pongola- Mtamvuna water management areas. Information obtained through the REMP is also used in monitoring the biological and habitat components of the Resource Quality Objectives.
- The National Estuaries Monitoring Programme (NEsMP): The purpose of this programme is the monitoring of water quality, physic-chemical and biological aspects for determining long-term trends and changes in the condition of South African estuaries. The NEsMP coordinates national monitoring efforts and provides support in the form of sampling equipment, training, data management and information dissemination, while collaborating institutions collect physic-chemical data and water samples.
- The National Wetland Monitoring Programme: The programme's design is based on minimising duplication of effort, while maximising the value of outputs of wetland assessment and monitoring, finding suitable methods for prioritising wetlands to be assessed and monitored, adaptive management and maximum engagement and participation by stakeholders. It has not been implemented yet, but aims to assess and monitor the extent of wetlands, the threats to, and the change in, the present ecological state and ecosystem services provided by wetlands in South Africa. It is a state-of-wetland reporting programme, designed to demonstrate trends in the state or integrity (biological, physical and chemical components of its ecosystem and their interactions) of wetlands over time.

National Toxicity Monitoring Programme

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme reports on the status of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT) and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the DFFE. The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme was designed to assess the status of water resources through measuring the concentration of a selection of priority pollutants at a number of hot spots, and also assessing the toxicity of the water to some aquatic organisms through direct measurement of effect.

The priority pollutant selection is aligned to the extent possible with South Africa's responsibility for reporting under the Stockholm Convention. The geographic distribution of monitoring points is still largely determined by fiscal and operational constraints. It currently focuses on the upper reaches of the Crocodile (West)-Marico and Olifants River catchments. The combination of chemical and biotic assessment in conjunction with the other national monitoring programmes also supports strategic and operational decision making by identifying areas of impairment of fitness for use.

The first five years of monitoring indicated that the persistent priority pollutant concentrations were generally low but that mild seasonal toxicity occurs, possibly in conjunction with agricultural activity. It also tends to confirm that the major human exposure route of DDT (used in malaria vector control) is unlikely to be through the water. Future development includes extending analyses to riverine sediments.

Education and awareness

Youth development and National Water Week

The subdirectorate Youth Development, within the DWS, is responsible for the coordination of youth development programmes within the department, and the water and sanitation sector. Activities conducted by the unit are guided by the Youth Accord and National Youth Policy Vision 2020, which concentrate on the integrated approach towards job creation, skills development and entrepreneurship. A youth development strategy has been developed as a guiding document towards meeting the commitments made in the African Ministers Council on Water Youth Development Strategy.

National Water Week is an awareness campaign by the DWS. It serves as a powerful campaign mechanism reiterating the value of water, the need for sustainable management of this scarce resource and the role water plays in eradicating poverty and underdevelopment in South Africa.

The campaign seeks to continue building on ongoing awareness creation within the broader South African community. This awareness creation is coupled with the responsibility that every citizen must take in ensuring the integrity of South Africa's water resources and its efficient use. The National Water Week campaign for 2021 took place from 15 to 22 March.

The event focused on educating the public about their responsibility in water conservation initiatives, raising awareness around the need to protect and conserve the country's water resources. World Water Day was celebrated on 22 March 2021.

The day raises awareness of the global water crisis and focuses on the achievement of Sustainable Development Goal 6: Clean Water and Sanitation for all by 2030. The DWS launched the #SaveWater campaign to remind all South Africans that every drop counts.

Despite good rainfall, South Africa remains a water-scarce country

and, as such, is susceptible to sustained droughts exacerbated by climate change.

Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

In line with the DWS's regional and international responsibilities in the water sector, the department entered into collaborative relationships with countries, such as:

- Lesotho, Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, the DRC and Eswatini in the region.
- · Mozambique and Eswatini on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers.
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Sengu River Commission.
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission.
- · Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project.
- · Eswatini on the Komati River Development Project.
- These agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs. South Africa shares four of its major river systems with six immediate neighbouring countries, namely Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Eswatini and Zimbabwe.

In the area of shared river basins, South Africa continued participating in joint water commissions to form part of Africa bilaterals with Botswana on Joint Permanent Cooperation, and with Mozambique regarding the breach of the Usuthu River, where a feasibility study was completed.

South Africa also has global relations with countries such as Iran, China, Denmark, Russia, Mexico, South Korea, Australia, Germany, the Netherlands and Japan.

Acid Mine Drainage

The DWS launched the Eastern Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant, which ensures that the rising water levels in the abandoned Grootvlei mine do not contaminate groundwater. The Eastern Basin Plant in Springs is one of the largest of its kind in the world, treating approximately 110 ML per day.

The plant is among the three main basins in the Witwatersrand Goldfields. These include the Western Basin in the Krugersdorp area, Central Basin in the Germiston area and the Eastern Basin in the Springs area. Both western and central basins have been launched and are running smoothly.

The first long-term solution to acid mine drainage was launched at the Central Basin Acid Mine Drainage Treatment Plant in Germiston in 2016. This was the commencement of several integrated projects aimed at providing a long-term solution to acid mine drainage as well as a water-secure future for the economic hub of Gauteng.

The Eastern Basin Plant in Springs is one of the largest of its kind in the world, treating approximately 110 ML per day. The Eastern Basin Plant is located in one of the three main basins in the Witwatersrand Goldfields. These include the Western Basin in the Krugersdorp area, Central Basin in the Germiston area and the Eastern Basin in the Springs to Nigel areas. Both the Western and Central Basins were commissioned previously and are running smoothly.

SOUTH AFRICA Yearbook 2021/22 Water and Sanitation



